



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





3 2044 106 312 150

**Library**  
**Arnold Arboretum**



**of**  
**Harvard University**

*Received Jan 19, 1912*







#

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S  
  
NEW  
  
LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR  
SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

*FOUNDED ON COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR*

EDITED BY

J. B. GREENOUGH   G. L. KITTREDGE  
A. A. HOWARD   BENJ. L. D'OOGHE



GINN AND COMPANY  
BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON

acc. 1917  
31181

Bot. Dict.  
G85  
1916

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

COPYRIGHT, 1888, BY  
JAMES B. GREENOUGH AND J. H. ALLEN

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY  
GINN AND COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1916, BY  
GEORGE L. KITTREDGE

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

616.9

**The Athenæum Press**  
GINN AND COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

41-4  
R. 4

## PREFACE

THE present book is a careful revision of the edition of 1888. This revision was planned and actually begun in the lifetime of Professor Greenough and has been carried out in accordance with principles that met with his full approval. The renumbering of the sections has made it possible to improve the arrangement of material in many particulars and to avoid a certain amount of repetition which was inevitable in the former edition. Thus, without increasing the size of the volume, the editors have been able to include such new matter as the advance in grammatical science has afforded. The study of historical and comparative syntax has been pursued with considerable vigor during the past fifteen years, and the well-established results of this study have been inserted in their appropriate places. In general, however, the principles and facts of Latin syntax, as set forth by Professor Greenough, have stood the test both of scientific criticism and of practical use in the class-room, and accordingly the many friends of Allen and Greenough's Grammar will not find the new edition strange or unfamiliar in its method or its contents. The editors have seen no occasion to change long-settled nomenclature or to adopt novel classifications when the usual terms and categories have proved satisfactory. On the other hand, they have not hesitated to modify either doctrines or forms of statement whenever improvement seemed possible.

In the matter of "hidden quantity" the editors have been even more conservative than in the former revision. This subject is one of great difficulty, and the results of the most recent investigations are far from harmonious. In many instances the facts

are quite undiscoverable, and, in general, the phenomena are of comparatively slight interest except to special students of the arcana of philology. No vowel has been marked long unless the evidence seemed practically decisive.

The editors have been fortunate in securing the advice and assistance of Professor E. S. Sheldon, of Harvard University, for the first ten pages, dealing with phonetics and phonology. They are equally indebted to Professor E. P. Morris, of Yale University, who has had the kindness to revise the notes on historical and comparative syntax. Particular acknowledgment is also due to Mr. M. Grant Daniell, who has coöperated in the revision throughout, and whose accurate scholarship and long experience as a teacher have been of the greatest service at every point.

SEPTEMBER 1, 1908.

# CONTENTS

## PART I — WORDS AND FORMS

	PAGE
<b>LETTERS AND SOUNDS</b> . . . . .	1-10
Alphabet; Classification of Sounds . . . . .	1-3
Orthography, Syllables, Pronunciation . . . . .	3-5
Quantity and Accent . . . . .	5-7
Combinations; Phonetic Changes . . . . .	7-10
<b>WORDS AND THEIR FORMS</b> . . . . .	11-16
Parts of Speech . . . . .	11, 12
Inflection; Root, Stem, and Base . . . . .	12-14
Gender, Number, and Case . . . . .	14-16
<b>DECLENSION OF NOUNS</b> . . . . .	16-45
General Rules of Declension . . . . .	17
First Declension . . . . .	18-20
Second Declension . . . . .	20-24
Third Declension . . . . .	24-37
Mute Stems . . . . .	25, 26
Liquid and Nasal Stems . . . . .	27, 28
Pure i-Stems . . . . .	29, 30
Mixed i-Stems . . . . .	30, 31
Irregular Nouns . . . . .	33, 34
Greek Nouns . . . . .	34-36
Rules of Gender . . . . .	36, 37
Fourth Declension . . . . .	37-39
Fifth Declension . . . . .	39, 40
Defective and Variable Nouns . . . . .	40-44
Names of Persons . . . . .	45
<b>INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES</b> . . . . .	46-62
First and Second Declensions . . . . .	46-49
Third Declension . . . . .	49-54
Comparison . . . . .	55-57
Numerals . . . . .	58-62
<b>INFLECTION OF PRONOUNS</b> . . . . .	63-71
Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative . . . . .	63-67
Relative, Interrogative, Indefinite . . . . .	68-71
Correlatives (Pronouns and Adverbs) . . . . .	71
<b>CONJUGATION OF VERBS</b> . . . . .	72-125
Inflection . . . . .	72
Signification: Voice, Mood, Tense . . . . .	73-75
Personal Endings . . . . .	76, 77

	PAGE
Forms: Stem and Verb-Endings . . . . .	77-81
The Verb Sum . . . . .	81-83
Regular Verbs . . . . .	84-103
The Four Conjugations; Principal Parts . . . . .	84, 85
Formation of the Three Stems . . . . .	85-89
Synopsis of the Verb . . . . .	90
Peculiarities of Conjugation . . . . .	91
First Conjugation . . . . .	92-95
Second Conjugation . . . . .	96, 97
Third Conjugation . . . . .	98, 99
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	100, 101
Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation . . . . .	102, 103
Deponent Verbs . . . . .	103-106
Periphrastic Conjugations . . . . .	106-108
Irregular Verbs . . . . .	108-115
Defective Verbs . . . . .	116-119
Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	119, 120
Classified Lists of Verbs . . . . .	121-125
PARTICLES . . . . .	126-139
Adverbs . . . . .	126-130
Prepositions . . . . .	130-136
Conjunctions . . . . .	137-139
Interjections . . . . .	139
FORMATION OF WORDS . . . . .	140-162
Roots and Stems . . . . .	140, 141
Suffixes: Primary; Significant Endings . . . . .	141-143
Derivation of Nouns . . . . .	143-148
Derivation of Adjectives . . . . .	148-154
Nouns with Adjective Suffixes; Irregular Derivatives . . . . .	154-156
Derivation of Verbs . . . . .	156-159
Compound Words . . . . .	160-162

## PART II — SYNTAX

INTRODUCTORY NOTE . . . . .	163
THE SENTENCE . . . . .	164-208
Definitions: Subject and Predicate, Modification, etc. . . . .	164-168
Agreement: the Four Concords . . . . .	168
NOUNS: Apposition; Predicate Agreement . . . . .	168-170
ADJECTIVES . . . . .	170-175
Rules of Agreement . . . . .	171, 172
Special Uses . . . . .	172-175
PRONOUNS . . . . .	176-192
Personal and Demonstrative . . . . .	176-180
Reflexive . . . . .	180-183
Possessive . . . . .	183, 184

	PAGE
Relative . . . . .	184-189
Indefinite . . . . .	189-191
Alius and alter . . . . .	192
VERBS . . . . .	193-195
Verb and Subject, Incomplete Sentences . . . . .	193-195
PARTICLES: Adverbs, Conjunctions, Negatives . . . . .	196-204
QUESTIONS . . . . .	205-208
CONSTRUCTION OF CASES . . . . .	209-275
Introductory Note . . . . .	209
NOMINATIVE CASE . . . . .	210
VOCATIVE CASE . . . . .	210
GENITIVE CASE . . . . .	210-224
Genitive with Nouns . . . . .	211-216
Possessive Genitive . . . . .	211, 212
Genitive of Material, of Quality . . . . .	213
Partitive Genitive . . . . .	213-215
Objective Genitive . . . . .	215, 216
Genitive with Adjectives . . . . .	216, 217
Genitive with Verbs . . . . .	218-223
Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting . . . . .	218, 219
Verbs of Reminding . . . . .	219
Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting . . . . .	220
Verbs of Feeling . . . . .	221
Interest and réfert . . . . .	221, 222
Verbs of Plenty and Want; Special Verbs . . . . .	222, 223
Peculiar Genitives: Exclamatory, etc. . . . .	223, 224
DATIVE CASE . . . . .	224-239
Indirect Object with Transitives . . . . .	225-227
Indirect Object with Intransitives . . . . .	227-232
Dative of Possession . . . . .	232, 233
Dative of the Agent . . . . .	233, 234
Dative of Reference . . . . .	234-236
Ethical Dative . . . . .	236
Dative of Separation . . . . .	236, 237
Dative of the Purpose or End . . . . .	237
Dative with Adjectives . . . . .	238, 239
ACCUSATIVE CASE . . . . .	240-248
Direct Object . . . . .	240-242
Cognate Accusative . . . . .	242-244
Two Accusatives . . . . .	244-246
Idiomatic and Special Uses . . . . .	247, 248
ABLATIVE CASE . . . . .	248-265
Uses of the Ablative Proper . . . . .	249-255
Ablative of Separation . . . . .	249, 250
Ablative of Source and Material . . . . .	250-252
Ablative of Cause . . . . .	252, 253



	PAGE
Ablative of Agent . . . . .	253, 254
Ablative of Comparison . . . . .	254, 255
Uses of the Ablative as Instrumental . . . . .	256-265
Ablative of Means or Instrument . . . . .	256-258
Ablative of Manner . . . . .	258
Ablative of Accompaniment . . . . .	258, 259
Ablative of Degree of Difference . . . . .	259, 260
Ablative of Quality . . . . .	260
Ablative of Price . . . . .	261, 262
Ablative of Specification . . . . .	262, 263
Ablative Absolute . . . . .	263-265
Uses of the Ablative as Locative . . . . .	265
TIME AND PLACE . . . . .	266-273
SPECIAL USES OF PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	274, 275
SYNTAX OF THE VERB . . . . .	276-286
MOODS . . . . .	276-293
Introductory Note . . . . .	276, 277
INDICATIVE MOOD . . . . .	277
SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES . . . . .	278-283
Hortatory Subjunctive . . . . .	278, 279
Hortatory Subjunctive in Concessions . . . . .	279
Optative Subjunctive . . . . .	280, 281
Deliberative Subjunctive . . . . .	281
Potential Subjunctive . . . . .	282, 283
IMPERATIVE MOOD . . . . .	283-285
Prohibition (Negative Command) . . . . .	285
INFINITIVE MOOD . . . . .	286-292
Infinitive as Noun . . . . .	286, 287
Infinitive with Impersonals . . . . .	287, 288
Complementary Infinitive . . . . .	289, 290
Infinitive with Subject Accusative . . . . .	290
Infinitive of Purpose ; Peculiar Infinitives . . . . .	290, 291
Exclamatory Infinitive . . . . .	292
Historical Infinitive . . . . .	292
TENSES . . . . .	293-308
Introductory Note . . . . .	293
TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE . . . . .	293-301
Present Tense . . . . .	293-295
Imperfect Tense . . . . .	296-297
Future Tense . . . . .	298
Perfect Tense . . . . .	298-300
Pluperfect Tense . . . . .	300
Future Perfect Tense . . . . .	300
Epistolary Tenses . . . . .	301
TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	301-306
Sequence of Tenses . . . . .	302-306

	PAGE
TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE . . . . .	307, 308
PARTICIPLES . . . . .	309-316
Distinctions of Tense . . . . .	309-311
Uses of Participles . . . . .	311-314
Future Active Participle . . . . .	314, 315
Gerundive (Future Passive Participle) . . . . .	315, 316
GERUND AND GERUNDIVE . . . . .	316-319
SUPINE . . . . .	320
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . .	321-338
Introductory Note . . . . .	321, 322
Protasis and Apodosis . . . . .	322, 323
Classification of Conditions . . . . .	323-325
Simple Present and Past Conditions . . . . .	325, 326
Future Conditions . . . . .	326-328
Conditions Contrary to Fact . . . . .	328-330
General Conditions . . . . .	331
Conditional Relative Clauses . . . . .	332, 333
Condition Disguised . . . . .	333, 334
Condition Omitted . . . . .	334, 335
Complex Conditions . . . . .	335
Clauses of Comparison (Conclusion Omitted) . . . . .	336
Use of Si and its Compounds . . . . .	337, 338
CONCESSIVE CLAUSES . . . . .	338, 339
CLAUSES OF PROVISIO . . . . .	340
CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (FINAL CLAUSES) . . . . .	340-343
CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC . . . . .	343-346
CLAUSES OF RESULT (CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES) . . . . .	346-348
CAUSAL CLAUSES . . . . .	348-350
TEMPORAL CLAUSES . . . . .	350-359
Ubi, ut, cum, quandō, as Indefinite Relatives . . . . .	350
Postquam, ubi, ut, simul atque . . . . .	351
Cum Temporal . . . . .	352-354
Cum Causal or Concessive . . . . .	354, 355
Antequam and priusquam . . . . .	355, 356
Dum, donec, and quoad . . . . .	357-359
CLAUSES WITH quā and quāminus . . . . .	359-361
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES . . . . .	362-384
Introductory Note . . . . .	362
Substantive Clauses of Purpose and Infinitive Clauses . . . . .	362-367
Substantive Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses) . . . . .	367-369
Indicative with quod . . . . .	369, 370
Indirect Questions . . . . .	370-373
INDIRECT DISCOURSE . . . . .	373-384
Introductory Note . . . . .	373, 374
Declaratory Sentences . . . . .	374-377
Subordinate Clauses . . . . .	377, 378

	PAGE
Tenses of the Infinitive . . . . .	378, 379
Tenses of the Subjunctive . . . . .	379, 380
Questions in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	380, 381
Commands in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	381
Conditions in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	381-384
INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES . . . . .	384-386
Informal Indirect Discourse . . . . .	386
Subjunctive of Integral Part (Attraction) . . . . .	386
IMPORTANT RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	387-392
ORDER OF WORDS . . . . .	393-400
General Rules . . . . .	393-398
Special Rules . . . . .	398, 399
Structure of the Period . . . . .	399, 400

## PROSODY

QUANTITY . . . . .	401-405
RHYTHM . . . . .	405-409
Introductory Note . . . . .	405, 406
Measures of Rhythm; Feet . . . . .	406-409
The Musical Accent; Cæsura; Diæresis . . . . .	409
VERSIFICATION . . . . .	410-426
The Verse; Scansion and Elision . . . . .	410, 411
Dactylic Verse . . . . .	411-414
Dactylic Hexameter . . . . .	411, 412
Elegiac Stanza; Other Dactylic Verses . . . . .	413, 414
Iambic Verse . . . . .	414-416
Iambic Trimeter . . . . .	414, 415
Other Iambic Measures . . . . .	416
Trochaic Verse . . . . .	417
Mixed Measures . . . . .	418
Logæædic Verse . . . . .	418-421
Metres of Horace . . . . .	421-425
Index to the Metres of Horace . . . . .	423-425
Other Lyric Poets . . . . .	425
Miscellaneous Measures . . . . .	425, 426
EARLY PROSODY . . . . .	426, 427
MISCELLANEOUS . . . . .	428-431
Reckoning of Time . . . . .	428, 429
Measures of Value, Length, and Capacity . . . . .	429-431
GLOSSARY OF TERMS . . . . .	432-435
INDEX OF VERBS . . . . .	436-444
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS . . . . .	445-475
LATIN AUTHORS AND THEIR WORKS . . . . .	476, 477
PARALLEL REFERENCES . . . . .	479-490

**ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S**  
**NEW LATIN GRAMMAR**



# LATIN GRAMMAR

Latin Grammar is usually treated under three heads: 1. Words and Forms; 2. Syntax; 3. Prosody. Syntax treats of the function of words when joined together as parts of the sentence; Prosody of their arrangement in metrical composition.

## PART FIRST—WORDS AND FORMS

### THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English (which is in fact borrowed from it) except that it does not contain J, U, and W.

NOTE 1.—The Latin alphabet was borrowed in very early times from a Greek alphabet (though not from that most familiar to us) and did not at first contain the letters G and Y. It consisted of capital letters only, and the small letters with which we are familiar did not come into general use until the close of the eighth century of our era.

NOTE 2.—The Latin names of the consonants were as follows:—B, *be* (pronounced *bay*); C, *ce* (pronounced *kay*); D, *de* (*day*); F, *ef*; G, *ge* (*gay*); H, *ha*; K, *ka*; L, *el*; M, *em*; N, *en*; P, *pe* (*pay*); Q, *qu* (*koo*); R, *er*; S, *es*; T, *te* (*tay*); X, *ix*; Z, *zeta* (the Greek name, pronounced *dzayta*). The sound of each vowel was used as its name.

a. The character C originally meant G, a value always retained in the abbreviations C. (for *Gāius*) and Cn. (for *Gnaeus*).

NOTE.—In early Latin C came also to be used for K, and K disappeared except before a in a few words, as Kal. (*Kalendae*), *Karthägō*. Thus there was no distinction in writing between the sounds of g and k. Later this defect was remedied by forming (from C) the new character G. This took the alphabetic place formerly occupied by Z, which had gone out of use. In Cicero's time (see N. D. ii. 93), Y (originally a form of V) and Z were introduced from the ordinary Greek alphabet to represent sounds in words derived from the Greek, and they were put at the end of the Latin alphabet.

b. I and V were used both as vowels and as consonants (see § 5).

NOTE.—V originally denoted the vowel sound u (oo), and F stood for the sound of our consonant w. When F acquired the value of our f, V came to be used for the sound of w as well as for the vowel u.

In this book i is used for both vowel and consonant i, u for vowel u, and v for consonant u:—*iūs, vir, iuvenis*.

## Classification of Sounds

2. The simple Vowels are a, e, i, o, u, y.

The Diphthongs are ae, au, ei, eu, oe, ui, and, in early Latin, ai, oi, ou. In the diphthongs both vowel sounds are heard, one following the other in the same syllable.

3. Consonants are either voiced (*sonant*) or voiceless (*surd*). Voiced consonants are pronounced with the same vocal murmur that is heard in vowels; voiceless consonants lack this murmur.

1. The voiced consonants are b, d, g, l, r, m, n, z, consonant i, v.

2. The voiceless consonants are p, t, c (k, q), f, h, s, x.

4. Consonants are further classified as in the following table:

	LABIALS	DENTALS	PALATALS
Mutes { Voiced ( <i>mediae</i> )	b	d	g
{ Voiceless ( <i>tenuēs</i> )	p	t	c (k, q)
{ Aspirates	ph	th	ch
Nasals	m	n	n (before c, g, q)
Liquids		l, r	
Fricatives ( <i>Spirants</i> )	f <sup>1</sup>	s, z	
Sibilants		s, z	
Semivowels	v		consonant i

Double consonants are x (= cs) and z (= dz); h is merely a breathing.

1. Mutes are pronounced by blocking entirely, for an instant, the passage of the breath through the mouth, and then allowing it to escape with an explosion (distinctly heard before a following vowel). Between the explosion and the vowel there may be a slight puff of breath (h), as in the Aspirates (ph, th, ch).<sup>2</sup>

2. Labials are pronounced with the lips, or lips and teeth.

3. Dentals (sometimes called *Linguals*) are pronounced with the tip of the tongue touching or approaching the upper front teeth.

4. Palatals are pronounced with a part of the upper surface of the tongue touching or approaching the palate.<sup>3</sup>

5. Fricatives (or *Spirants*) are consonants in which the breath passes continuously through the mouth with audible friction.

6. Nasals are like voiced mutes, except that the mouth remains closed and the breath passes through the nose.

<sup>1</sup> Strictly a *labio-dental*, pronounced with the under lip touching the upper teeth.

<sup>2</sup> The aspirates are almost wholly confined to words borrowed from the Greek. In early Latin such borrowed sounds lost their aspiration and became simply p, t, c.

<sup>3</sup> Palatals are often classed as (1) *velars*, pronounced with the tongue touching or rising toward the soft palate (in the back part of the mouth), and (2) *palatals*, in which the tongue touches or rises toward the hard palate (farther forward in the mouth). Compare the initial consonants in *key* and *cool*, whispering the two words, and it will be observed that before e and i the k is sounded farther forward in the mouth than before a, o, or u.

5. The vowels *i* and *u* serve as consonants when pronounced rapidly before a vowel so as to stand in the same syllable.<sup>1</sup> Consonant *i* has the sound of English consonant *y*; consonant *u* (*v*) that of English consonant *w*.

Consonant *i* and *u* (*v*) are sometimes called Semivowels.

NOTE 1.—The Latin alphabet did not distinguish between the vowel and consonant sounds of *i* and *u*, but used each letter (*I* and *V*) with a double value. In modern books *i* and *u* are often used for the vowel sounds, *j* and *v* for the consonant sounds; but in printing in capitals *J* and *U* are avoided:—*IVLIVS* (*Iñlius*). The characters *J* and *U* are only slight modifications of the characters *I* and *V*. The ordinary English sounds of *j* and *v* did not exist in classical Latin, but consonant *u* perhaps approached English *v* in the pronunciation of some persons.

NOTE 2.—In the combinations *qu*, *gu*, and sometimes *su*, *u* seems to be the consonant (*w*). Thus, *aqua*, *anguis*, *cōsuētus* (compare English *quart*, *anguish*, *suave*). In these combinations, however, *u* is reckoned neither as a vowel nor as a consonant.<sup>2</sup>

## ORTHOGRAPHY

6. Latin spelling varied somewhat with the changes in the language and was never absolutely settled in all details.

Thus, we find *libet*, *vortō*, as earlier, and *libet*, *vertō*, as later forms. Other variations are *optumus* and *optimus*, *gerundus* and *gerendus*.

The spelling of the first century of our era, known chiefly from inscriptions, is tolerably uniform, and is commonly used in modern editions of the classics.

*a.* After *v* (consonant *u*), *o* was anciently used instead of *u* (*voltus*, *servos*), and this spelling was not entirely given up until the middle of the first century of our era.

*b.* The older *quo* became *cu* in the Augustan period; in the second century of our era the spelling *qu* established itself in some words:—

*cum*, older *quom*; <sup>3</sup> *equos*, *ecus*, later *equus*; *sequuntur*, *secuntur*, later *sequuntur*; similarly *exstinguant*, *exstingunt*, later *exstinguunt*.

NOTE.—In most modern editions the spelling *qu* is adopted, except in *cum*.

*c.* Between consonant *i* and a preceding *a*, *e*, *o*, or *u*, an *i* was developed as a transient sound, thus producing a diphthong *ai*, *ei*, etc., before the consonant *i*. In such cases but one *i* was written: as, *aiō* (for *†ai-iō*), *māius* (for *†mai-ius*), *pēius* (for *†pei-ius*).

<sup>1</sup> Compare the English word *Indian* as pronounced in two syllables or in three.

<sup>2</sup> In such words it is possible that the preceding consonant was labialized and that no distinct and separate consonant *u* was heard.

<sup>3</sup> The spelling *quum* is very late and without authority.



**d.** Similarly in compounds of *iaciō* but one *i* was written (as, *con-iciō*, not *con-iciō*); but the usual pronunciation probably showed consonant *i* followed by vowel *i* (see § 11. *e*).

NOTE. — Some variations are due to later changes in Latin itself, and these are not now recognized in classical texts.

1. Unaccented *ti* and *ci*, when followed by a vowel, came to be pronounced alike; hence *nūntiō* was later spelled with a *c* and *diciō* with a *t*.

2. The sound of *h* was after a time lost and hence this letter was often omitted (as, *arēna* for *harēna*) or mistakenly written (as, *hūmor* for *ūmor*).

3. The diphthong *ae* early in the time of the Empire acquired the value of long open *e* (about like English *e* in *there*), and similarly *oe* after a time became a long close *e* (about like the English *ey* in *they*); and so both were often confused in spelling with *e*: as, *coena* or *caena* for the correct form *cēna*.

### Syllables

**7.** Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: —

*a-ci-ē, mo-nē, fī-li-us, fe-rō-ci-tā-te.*

**a.** In the division of words into syllables a single consonant (including consonant *i* and *v*) between two vowels is written and pronounced with the following vowel. Doubled consonants are separated: —

*pa-ter, mi-li-tēs, in-fā-ri-a, dī-vi-dō; mit-tō, tol-lō.*

NOTE 1. — Some extend the rule for single consonants to any consonant group (as *sp, st, gn*) that can begin a word. In this book, *dix-it, sax-um*, etc. are preferred to *dī-xit, sa-xum*; the pronunciation was probably *dīc-sit, sac-sum*.

NOTE 2. — A syllable ending with a vowel or diphthong is called *open*: all others are called *close*. Thus in *pa-ter* the first syllable is open, the second close.

**b.** In compounds the parts are separated: —

*ab-est, ob-lātus, dis-cernō, du-plex, dī-stō.*

### Pronunciation

**8.** The so-called Roman Pronunciation of Latin aims to represent approximately the pronunciation of classical times.

VOWELS: *ā* as in *father*;

*ā* as in *idea*.

*ē* as *eh?* (prolonged), or *a* in *date*;

*ē* as *eh?* (clipped) or *e* in *net*.

*ī* as in *machine*;

*ī* as in *holiest* or *sit*.

*ō* as in *holy*;

*ō* as in *obey*.

*ū* as *oo* in *boot*;

*ū* as *oo* in *foot*.

*y* between *u* and *i* (French *u* or German *ü*).

DIPHTHONGS: *ae* like *ay*;

*ei* as in *eight*;

*oe* like *oy* in *boy*;

*eu* as *eh'oo*;

*au* like *ow* in *now*;

*ui* as *oo'ee*.

Consonants are the same as in English, except that —

c and g are as in *come*, *get*, never as in *city*, *gem*.

s as in *sea*, *lips*, never as in *ease*.

Consonant *i* is like *y* in *young*; *u* (consonant *u*) like *w* in *wing*.

*n* in the combinations *ns* and *nf* probably indicates nasalization of the preceding vowel, which was also lengthened; and final *m* in an unaccented syllable probably had a similar nasalizing effect on the preceding vowel.

*ph*, *th*, *ch*, are properly like *p*, *t*, *k*, followed by *h* (which may, for convenience, be neglected); but *ph* probably became like (or nearly like) *f* soon after the classical period, and may be so pronounced to distinguish it from *p*.

*z* is as *dz* in *adze*.

*bs* is like *ps*; *bt* is like *pt*.

NOTE. — Latin is sometimes pronounced with the ordinary English sounds of the letters. The English pronunciation should be used in Roman names occurring in English (as, *Julius Cæsar*); and in familiar quotations, as, *e pluribus unum*; *viva voce*; *vice versa*; *a fortiori*; *veni, vidi, vici*, etc.

### Quantity

9. The Quantity of a Vowel or a Syllable is the time occupied in pronouncing it. Two degrees of Quantity are recognized, — *long* and *short*.

*a.* In syllables, quantity is measured from the beginning of the vowel or diphthong to the end of the syllable.

10. Vowels are either long or short *by nature*, and are pronounced accordingly (§ 8).

*a.* A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: as in *vīa*, *nīhil*.

*b.* A diphthong is long: as in *ædēs*, *fœdus*. So, also, a vowel derived from a diphthong: as in *exclūdō* (from *†ex-claudō*).

*c.* A vowel formed by contraction is long: as in *nīl* (from *nihil*).

*d.* A vowel before *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, is long: as in *cōstāns*, *īnferō*, *māgnus*.

NOTE. — But the quantity of the vowel before *gn* is not certain in all cases.

*e.* A vowel before *nd*, *nt*, is regularly short: as in *amandus*, *amant*.

In this book all vowels known to be long are marked (*ā*, *ē*, etc.), and short vowels are left unmarked (*a*, *e*, etc.). Vowels marked with both signs at once (*ā*, *ē*, etc.) occur sometimes as long and sometimes as short.

NOTE. — The Romans sometimes marked vowel length by a stroke above the letter (called an apex, as, *Ā*; and sometimes the vowel was doubled to indicate length. An *I* made higher than the other letters was occasionally used for *ī*. But none of these devices came into general use.

11. The Quantity of the Syllable is important for the position of the accent and in versification.

*a.* A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is said to be *long by nature*: as, mā-ter, aes, au-la.

*b.* A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants (except a mute before l or r) or by a double consonant (x, z) is said to be *long by position*, but the vowel is pronounced *short*: as, est, ter-ra, sax-um, Me-zen-tius.

NOTE.—When a consonant is doubled the pronunciation should show this distinctly. Thus in mit-tō both t's should be pronounced as in *out-talk* (not merely a single t as in *better*).

*c.* A syllable containing a short vowel followed by a mute before l or r is properly short, but may be used as long in verse. Such a syllable is said to be *common*.

NOTE 1.—In syllables long by position, but having a short vowel, the length is partly due to the first of the consonants, which stands in the same syllable with the vowel. In syllables of "common" quantity (as the first syllable of *patrem*) the ordinary pronunciation was *pa-trem*, but in verse *pat-rem* was allowed so that the syllable could become long.

NOTE 2.—In final syllables ending with a consonant, and containing a short vowel, the quantity in verse is determined by the following word: if this begins with a vowel the final consonant is joined to it in pronunciation; if it begins with a consonant the syllable is long by position.

NOTE 3.—In rules for quantity h is not counted as a consonant, nor is the apparently consonantal u in qu, gu, su (see § 5. n. 2).

*d.* A syllable whose vowel is a, e, o, or u, followed by consonant i, is long whether the vowel itself is long or short: as, ā-iō, mā-ior, pē-ius.

In such cases the length of the syllable is indicated in this book by a circumflex on the vowel.

NOTE.—The length of a syllable before consonant i is due to a transitional sound (vowel i) which forms a diphthong with the preceding vowel: as, ā-iō (for †ai-iō), mā-ior (for †mai-ior). See § 6. c.

*e.* In some compounds of *iaciō* (as, *in-iciō*) the consonant i of the simple verb was probably pronounced (though not written). Thus the first syllable was long by position: as, *in-iciō* (for *in-iciō*). See § 6. d.

In such cases the length of the syllable is not indicated in this book by a circumflex on the vowel.

*f.* When a syllable is long by position the quantity of the vowel is not always determinable. The vowel should be pronounced short unless it is known to be long.

NOTE.—The quantity of a vowel under these circumstances is said to be *hidden*. It is often determined with a greater or less degree of certainty by inscriptional evidence (see § 10. n.) or by other means. In this book, the quantity of all such vowels known to be long is marked.

## Accent

12. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable: as, *Rō'ma*, *fī'dēs*, *tan'gō*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult<sup>1</sup> if that is long (as, *amī'cus*, *monē'tur*, *contin'git*); otherwise on the Antepenult (as, *do'mīnus*, *a'lācris*, *dissociā'bīlis*).

*a.* When an enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short: as, *dēx'que*, *āmārē've*, *tīb'y'ne*, *itā'que* (and . . . so), as distinguished from *itā'que* (therefore). So (according to some) *ex'inde*, *ec'quandō*, etc.

*Exceptions:* 1. Certain apparent compounds of *faciō* retain the accent of the simple verb: as, *benefā'cit*, *calefā'cit* (see § 266. a).

*NOTE.* — These were not true compounds, but phrases.

2. In the second declension the genitive and vocative of nouns in *-ius* and the genitive of those in *-ium* retain the accent of the nominative: as, *Cornē'li*, *Vergī'li*, *ingē'nī* (see § 49. c).

3. Certain words which have lost a final vowel retain the accent of the complete words: as, *illī'c* for *illī'ce*, *prōdū'c* for *prōdūce*, *sati'n* for *sati'sne*.

## Combinations

13. In some cases adjacent words, being pronounced together, are written as one: —

*ūnusquisque* (*ūnus quisque*), *siquis* (*sī quis*), *quārē* (*quā rē*), *quamobrem* (*quam ob rem*; cf. *quās ob rēs*), *rēspūblica* (*rēs pūblica*), *iūsiūrandum* (*iūs iūrandum*), *paterfamiliās* (*pater familiās*).

*NOTE.* — Sometimes a slight change in pronunciation resulted, as, especially in the old poets, before *est* in *homōst* (*homō est*), *periculumst* (*periculum est*), *ausust* (*ausus est*), *quālist* (*quālis est*). Similarly there occur *vin'*, *scin'* for *visne*, *scisne*, *sīs* (*sī vis*), *sōdēs* (*sī audēs*), *sūltis* (*sī vultis*). Compare in English *somebody*, *to breakfast*; *he's*, *I've*, *thou'rt*.

## Phonetic Changes

14. Latin, the language of the ancient Romans, was properly, as its name implies, the language spoken in the plain of Latium, lying south of the Tiber, which was the first territory occupied and governed by the Romans. It is a descendant of an early form of speech commonly called *Indo-European* (by some *Indo-Germanic*), from which are also descended most of the important languages now in use in Europe, including among others English, German, the Slavic and the Celtic languages, and further some now or formerly spoken in Asia, as Sanskrit, Persian, Armenian. Greek likewise

<sup>1</sup> The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.

belongs to the same family. The Romance (or Romanic) languages, of which the most important are Italian, French, Provençal, Spanish, Portuguese, and Roumanian, are modern descendants of spoken Latin.

The earliest known forms of Latin are preserved in a few inscriptions. These increase in number as we approach the time when the language began to be used in literature; that is, about B.C. 250. It is the comparatively stable language of the classical period (B.C. 80–A.D. 14) that is ordinarily meant when we speak of Latin, and it is mainly this that is described in this book.

15. Among the main features in the changes of Latin from the earliest stages of the language as we know it up to the forms of classical Latin may be mentioned the following:—

### Vowel Changes

1. The old diphthong *ai* became the classical *ae* (*aedilis* for old *aifilis*), old *oi* became *oe* or *ū* (*ūnus* for old *oinos*), and old *ou* became *ū* (*dūcō* for old *doucō*).

2. In compound verbs the vowel *a* of the simple verb often appears as *i* or *e*, and *ae* similarly appears as *i*:—

*faciō*, *factum*, but *cōficiō*, *cōfectum*; *caedō*, but *occidō*, and similarly *cecidī*, perfect of *caedō* (cf. *cadō*, *occidō*; *cecidī*, perfect of *cadō*).

NOTE.—This change is commonly ascribed to an accentuation on the first syllable, which seems to have been the rule in Latin before the rule given above (see § 12) became established. The original Indo-European accent, however, was not limited by either of these principles; it was probably a musical accent so-called, consisting in a change of pitch, and not merely in a more forcible utterance of the accented syllable.

3. Two vowels coming together are often contracted:—

*cōgō* for *īco-agō*; *prōmō* for *īpro-emō*; *nīl* for *nihil*; *dēbeō* for *īdē-hibeō* (*īdē-habeō*).

### Consonant Changes

4. An old *s* regularly became *r* between two vowels (*rhotacism*), passing first through the sound of (English) *z*:—

*eram* (cf. *est*); *generis*, genitive of *genus*.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE.—Final *s* sometimes became *r* by analogy: *as*, *honor* (older *honōs*), from the analogy of *honōris*, etc.

5. A dental (*t*, *d*) often became *s*, especially when standing next to *t*, *d*, or *s*: *as*, *equestris* for *īquettris*, *cāsus* for *īcadtus* (cf. 6, below).

6. Many instances of assimilation, partial or complete, are found:—

*cessī* for *īced-sī*; *summus* for *īsupmus*; *scriptus* for *scribtus* (*b* unvoicing to *p* before the voiceless *t*); and in compound verbs (see § 16).

<sup>1</sup> A similar change can be seen in English: *as*, *were* (cf. *was*), *lorn* (cf. *lose*).

Dissimilation, the opposite kind of change, prevented in some cases the repetition of the same sound in successive syllables:—

Thus, *palilia* for *palilia* (from *Palēs*); *meridiēs* for †*medidiēs*; *nātūrālis* with suffix *-ālis* (after *r*), but *populāris* with *-āris* (after *l*).

7. Final *s* was in early Latin not always pronounced: *as*, *plēnu(s) fidēi*.

NOTE.—Traces of this pronunciation existed in Cicero's time. He speaks of the omission of final *s* before a word beginning with a consonant as "countrified" (*subrūsticum*).

8. A final consonant often disappears: *as*, *virgō* for †*virgōn*; *lac* for †*lact*; *cor* for †*cord*.

9. *G*, *c*, and *h* unite with a following *s* to form *x*: *as*, *rēx* for †*rēgs*; *dux* for †*ducs*; *trāxi* for †*trahsi*.<sup>1</sup>

10. *G* and *h* before *t* become *c*: *as*, *rēctum* for †*regtum*; *āctum* for †*agtum*; *trāctum* for †*trahtum*.<sup>2</sup>

11. Between *m* and *s* or *m* and *t*, a *p* is often developed: *as*, *sūmpsī* for †*sūmsī*; *ēemptum* for †*tēmtum*.

16. In compounds with prepositions the final consonant in the preposition was often assimilated to the following consonant, but usage varied considerably.

There is good authority for many complete or partial assimilations; *as*, for *ad*, *acc-*, *agg-*, *app-*, *att-*, instead of *adc-*, *adg-*, etc. Before a labial consonant we find *com-* (*comb-*, *comp-*, *comm-*), but *con-* is the form before *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *cons. i*, *q*, *s*, *t*, *cons. v*; we find *conl-* or *coll-*, *conr-* or *corr-*; *cō-* in *cōnectō*, *cōniveō*, *cōnitor*, *cōnūbium*. In usually changes to *im-* before *p*, *b*, *m*. *Ob* and *sub* may assimilate *b* to a following *c*, *f*, *g*, or *p*; before *s* and *t* the pronunciation of prepositions ending in *b* doubtless had *p*; *surr-*, *summ-*, occur for *subr-*, *subm-*. The inseparable *amb-* loses *b* before a consonant. *Circum* often loses its *m* before *i*. The *s* of *dis* becomes *r* before a vowel and is assimilated to a following *f*; sometimes this prefix appears as *dī-*. Instead of *ex* we find *ef-* before *f* (also *ecf-*). The *d* of *red* and *sēd* is generally lost before a consonant. The preposition is better left unchanged in most other cases.

### Vowel Variations

17. The parent language showed great variation in the vowel sounds of kindred words.<sup>3</sup>

*α*. This variation is often called by the German name *Ablaut*. It has left considerable traces in the forms of Latin words, appearing sometimes as a difference of quantity in the same vowel (*as*, *u*, *ū*; *e*, *ē*), sometimes as a difference in the vowel itself (*as*, *e*, *o*; *i*, *ae*):<sup>4</sup>—

*tegō*, *I cover*, *toga*, *a robe*; *pendō*, *I weigh*, *pondus*, *weight*; *fidēs*, *faith*, *fidus*, *faithful*, *foedus*, *a treaty*; *miser*, *wretched*, *maestus*, *sad*; *dare*, *to give*, *dōnum*, *a gift*; *regō*, *I rule*, *rēx*, *a king*; *dux*, *a leader*, *dūcō* (for older *ducō*), *I lead*. Compare English *drive*, *drove* (*drave*), *driven*; *bind*, *bound*, *band*; *sing*, *sang*, *sung*; etc.

<sup>1</sup> Really for †*traghsi*. The *h* of *trahō* represents an older palatal sound (see § 19).

<sup>2</sup> Really for †*traghtum*. These are cases of partial assimilation (cf. 6, above).

<sup>3</sup> This variation was not without regularity, but was confined within definite limits.

<sup>4</sup> In Greek, however, it is more extensively preserved.

## Kindred Forms

18. Both Latin and English have gone through a series of phonetic changes, different in the two languages, but following definite laws in each. Hence both preserve traces of the older speech in some features of the vowel system, and both show certain correspondences in consonants in words which each language has inherited from the old common stock. Only a few of these correspondences can be mentioned here.

19. The most important correspondences in consonants between Latin and English, in cognate words, may be seen in the following table: — <sup>1</sup>

LATIN	ENGLISH
p: pater	f: <i>father</i> , earlier <i>fader</i> <sup>2</sup>
f from bh: ferō, frāter	b: <i>to bear</i> , <i>brother</i>
b " " lubet, libet	v, f: <i>love</i> , <i>tief</i>
t: tū, tenuis	th: <i>thou</i> , <i>thin</i> <sup>3</sup>
d: duo, dent-	t: <i>two</i> , <i>tooth</i>
f from dh: faciō	d: <i>do</i>
d " " medius	d: <i>mid</i>
b " " ruber	d: <i>red</i>
c: cord-, cornū	h: <i>heart</i> , <i>horn</i>
qu: quod	wh: <i>what</i>
g: genus, gustus	c, k, ch: <i>kin</i> , <i>choose</i>
h (from gh): hortus, haedus	y, g: <i>yard</i> , <i>goat</i>
cons. i: iugum	y: <i>yoke</i>
v: ventus, ovis	w: <i>wind</i> , <i>ewe</i>
v from gv: vivus (for †gvivos), veniō (for †gvemiō). }	qu, c, k: <i>quick</i> , <i>come</i>

NOTE 1. — Sometimes a consonant lost in Latin is still represented in English: as, *niv-* (for †*niv-*), Eng. *snow*; *ānser* (for †*hānser*), Eng. *goose*.

NOTE 2. — From these cases of kindred words in Latin and English must be carefully distinguished those cases in which the Latin word has been taken into English either directly or through some one of the modern descendants of Latin, especially French. Thus *faciō* is kindred with Eng. *do*, but from the Latin participle (*factum*) of this verb comes Eng. *fact*, and from the French descendant (*fait*) of *factum* comes Eng. *feat*.

<sup>1</sup> The Indo-European parent speech had among its consonants voiced aspirates (bh, dh, gh). All these suffered change in Latin, the most important results being, for bh, Latin f, b (English has b, v, or f); for dh, Latin f, b, d (English has d); for gh, Latin h, g (English has y, g). The other mutes suffered in Latin much less change, while in English, as in the other Germanic languages, they have all changed considerably in accordance with what has been called Grimm's Law for the shifting of mutes.

<sup>2</sup> The th in *father* is a late development. The older form *fader* seems to show an exception to the rule that English th corresponds to Latin t. The primitive Germanic form was doubtless in accordance with this rule, but, on account of the position of the accent, which in Germanic was not originally on the first syllable in this word, the consonant underwent a secondary change to d.

<sup>3</sup> But to the group st of Latin corresponds also English st; as in Latin *stō*, English *stand*.

## THE PARTS OF SPEECH

20. Words are divided into eight Parts of Speech: Nouns, Adjectives (including Participles), Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

*a.* A Noun is the name of a person, place, thing, or idea: as, *Caesar*; *Rōma, Rome*; *domus, a house*; *virtūs, virtue*.

Names of particular persons and places are called Proper Nouns; other nouns are called Common.

NOTE.—An Abstract Noun is the name of a quality or idea: as, *audācia, boldness*; *senectūs, old age*. A Collective Noun is the name of a group, class, or the like: as, *turba, crowd*; *exercitus, army*.

*b.* An Adjective is a word that attributes a quality: as, *bonus, good*; *fortis, brave, strong*.

NOTE 1.—A Participle is a word that attributes quality like an adjective, but, being derived from a verb, retains in some degree the power of the verb to assert: as, — *Caesar cōsul creātus, Caesar having been elected consul*.

NOTE 2.—Etymologically there is no difference between a noun and an adjective, both being formed alike. So, too, all names originally attribute quality, and any common name can still be so used. Thus, *King William* distinguishes this William from other Williams, by the attribute of royalty expressed in the name *king*.

*c.* A Pronoun is a word used to distinguish a person, place, thing, or idea without either naming or describing it: as, *is, he*; *quī, who*; *nōs, we*.

Nouns and pronouns are often called Substantives.

*d.* A Verb is a word which is capable of asserting something: as, *sum, I am*; *amat, he loves*.

NOTE.—In all modern speech the verb is usually the only word that asserts anything, and a verb is therefore supposed to be necessary to complete an assertion. Strictly, however, any adjective or noun may, by attributing a quality or giving a name, make a complete assertion. In the infancy of language there could have been no other means of asserting, as the verb is of comparatively late development.

*e.* An Adverb is a word used to express the time, place, or manner of an assertion or attribute: as, *splendidē mendāx, gloriously false*; *hodiē nātus est, he was born to-day*.

NOTE.—These same functions are often performed by cases (see §§ 214–217) of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, and by phrases or sentences. In fact, all adverbs were originally cases or phrases, but have become specialized by use.

*f.* A Preposition is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word or words in the same sentence: as, *per agrōs, it, he goes over the fields*; *ē plūribus ūnum, one out of many*.

NOTE.—Most prepositions are specialized adverbs (cf. § 219). The relations expressed by prepositions were earlier expressed by case-endings.



**g.** A Conjunction is a word which connects words, or groups of words, without affecting their grammatical relations: *as, et, and; sed, but.*

NOTE.—Some adverbs are also used as connectives: These are called Adverbial Conjunctions or Conjunctive (Relative) Adverbs: *as, ubi, where; donec, until.*

**h.** Interjections are mere exclamations and are not strictly to be classed as parts of speech. Thus, — *heus, halloo! ô, oh!*

NOTE.—Interjections sometimes express an emotion which affects a person or thing mentioned, and so have a grammatical connection like other words: *as, vae victis, woe to the conquered (alas for the conquered)!*

## INFLECTION

### 21. Latin is an *inflected language*.

Inflection is a change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relations.

**a.** Inflectional changes sometimes take place in the body of a word, or at the beginning, but oftener in its termination: —

*vōx, a voice; vōcis, of a voice; vocō, I call; vocat, he calls; vocet, let him call; vocāvit, he has called; tangit, he touches; tetigit, he touched.*

**b.** Terminations of inflection had originally independent meanings which are now obscured. They correspond nearly to the use of prepositions, auxiliaries, and personal pronouns in English.

Thus, in *vocat*, the termination is equivalent to *he* or *she*; in *vōcis*, to the preposition *of*; and in *vocet* the change of vowel signifies a change of mood.

**c.** Inflectional changes in the body of a verb usually denote relations of tense or mood, and often correspond to the use of auxiliary verbs in English: —

*frangit, he breaks or is breaking; frēgit, he broke or has broken; mordet, he bites; momordit, he bit.*<sup>1</sup>

**22.** The inflection of Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles to denote gender, number, and case is called Declension, and these parts of speech are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of Verbs to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person is called Conjugation, and the verb is said to be *conjugated*.

NOTE.—Adjectives are often said to have inflections of *comparison*. These are, however, properly stem-formations made by derivation (p. 55, footnote).

<sup>1</sup> The only *proper* inflections of verbs are those of the personal endings; and the changes here referred to are strictly changes of *stem*, but have become a part of the system of inflections.

**23.** Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected and are called Particles.

NOTE.—The term Particle is sometimes limited to such words as *num*, *-ne*, *an* (*interrogative*), *nōn*, *nē* (*negative*), *sī* (*conditional*), etc., which are used simply to indicate the form or construction of a sentence.

### Root, Stem, and Base

**24.** The body of a word, to which the terminations are attached, is called the Stem.

The Stem contains the *idea* of the word without relations; but, except in the first part of a compound (as, *arti-fex*, *artificer*), it cannot ordinarily be used without some termination to express them.<sup>1</sup>

Thus the stem *vōc-* denotes *voice*; with *-s* added it becomes *vōx*, *a voice* or *the voice*, as the subject or agent of an action; with *-is* it becomes *vōcis*, and signifies *of a voice*.

NOTE.—The stem is in many forms so united with the termination that a comparison with other forms is necessary to determine it.

**25.** A Root is the simplest form attainable by analysis of a word into its component parts.

Such a form contains the main idea of the word in a very general sense, and is common also to other words either in the same language or in kindred languages.<sup>2</sup>

Thus the root of the stem *vōc-* is *voc*, which does not mean *to call*, or *I call*, or *calling*, but merely expresses vaguely the idea of calling, and cannot be used as a part of speech without terminations. With *-a* it becomes *vocā-*, the stem of *vocāre* (*to call*); with *-āv-* it is the stem of *vocāvit* (*he called*); with *-āto-* it becomes the stem of *vocātōnis* (*of a calling*). With its vowel lengthened it becomes the stem of *vōx*, *vōc-is* (*a voice*: that by which we call). This stem *vōc-*, with *-ālis* added, means *belonging to a voice*; with *-ūla*, *a little voice*.

NOTE.—In inflected languages, words are built up from Roots, which at a very early time were used alone to express ideas, as is now done in Chinese. Roots are modified into Stems, which, by inflection, become fully formed words. The process by which roots are modified, in the various forms of derivatives and compounds, is called *Stem-building*. The whole of this process is originally one of composition, by which significant endings are added one after another to forms capable of pronunciation and conveying a meaning.

Roots had long ceased to be recognized as such before the Latin existed as a separate language. Consequently the forms which we assume as Latin roots never really existed in Latin, but are the representatives of forms used earlier.

<sup>1</sup> Another exception is the imperative second person singular in *-e* (as, *rege*).

<sup>2</sup> For example, the root *sta* is found in the Sanskrit *tisthāmi*, Greek *στημι*, Latin *sistere* and *stāre*, German *stehen*, and English *stand*.

26. The Stem may be the same as the root: as in *duc-is*, of a leader, *fer-t*, he bears; but it is more frequently formed from the root—

1. By changing or lengthening its vowel: as in *scob-s*, *sawdust* (SCAB, *shave*); *rēg-is*, of a king (REG, *direct*); *vōc-is*, of a voice (VOC, *call*).

2. By the addition of a simple suffix (originally another root): as in *fugā-*, stem of *fuga*, *flight* (FUG + ā-); *regi-s*, *you rule* (REG + stem-ending %); *sini-t*, *he allows* (SI + n%/o-).<sup>1</sup>

3. By two or more of these methods: as in *dūci-t*, *he leads* (DUC + stem-ending %/o-).

4. By derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language. (See §§ 227 ff.)

27. The Base is that part of a word which is unchanged in inflection: as, *serv-* in *servus*; *mēns-* in *mēnsa*; *ign-* in *ignis*.

α. The Base and the Stem are often identical, as in many consonant stems of nouns (as, *rēg-* in *rēg-is*). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional termination. Thus the stem of *servus* is *servo-*; that of *mēnsa*, *mēnsā-*; that of *ignis*, *igni-*.

28. Inflectional terminations are variously modified by combination with the final vowel or consonant of the Stem, and thus the various forms of Declension and Conjugation (see §§ 36, 164) developed.

### GENDER

29. The Genders distinguished in Latin are three: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

30. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

α. Natural Gender is distinction as to the sex of the object denoted: as, *puer* (M.), *boy*; *puella* (F.), *girl*; *rēx* (M.), *king*; *rēgīna* (F.), *queen*.

NOTE 1.—Many nouns have both a masculine and a feminine form to distinguish sex: as, *cervus*, *cerva*, *stag*, *doe*; *cliēns*, *cliēnta*, *client*; *victor*, *victrix*, *conqueror*.

Many designations of persons (as *nauta*, *sailor*) usually though not necessarily male are always treated as masculine. Similarly names of *tribes* and *peoples* are masculine: as, *Rōmānī*, *the Romans*; *Persae*, *the Persians*.

NOTE 2.—A few neuter nouns are used to designate persons as belonging to a class: as, *mancipium tuum*, *your slave* (your chattel).

Many pet names of girls and boys are neuter in form: as, *Paegnium*, *Glycerium*.

NOTE 3.—Names of *classes* or *collections* of persons may be of any gender: as, *exercitus* (M.), *aciēs* (F.), and *agmen* (N.), *army*; *operae* (F. plur.), *workmen*; *cōpia* (F. plur.), *troops*; *senātus* (M.), *senate*; *cohors* (F.), *cohort*; *concilium* (N.), *council*.

<sup>1</sup> These suffixes are Indo-European stem-endings.

**b.** Grammatical Gender is a formal distinction as to sex where no actual sex exists in the object. It is shown by the form of the adjective joined with the noun: as, *lapis m̄agnus* (M.), *a great stone*; *manus mea* (F.), *my hand*.

### General Rules of Gender

**31. Names of Male beings, and of Rivers, Winds, Months, and Mountains, are masculine:—**

*pater, father*; *Iūlius, Julius*; *Tiberis, the Tiber*; *auster, south wind*; *Iānuārius, January*; *Apenninus, the Apennines*.

NOTE.—Names of Months are properly adjectives, the masculine noun *mēsis, month*, being understood: as, *Iānuārius, January*.

**a.** A few names of Rivers ending in -a (as, *Allia*), with the Greek names *Lēthē* and *Styx*, are feminine; others are variable or uncertain.

**b.** Some names of Mountains are feminine or neuter, taking the gender of their termination: as, *Alpēs* (F.), *the Alps*; *Sōracte* (N.).

**32. Names of Female beings, of Cities, Countries, Plants, Trees, and Gems, of many Animals (especially Birds), and of most abstract Qualities, are feminine:—**

*māter, mother*; *Iūlia, Julia*; *Rōma, Rome*; *Italia, Italy*; *rosa, rose*; *pinus, pine*; *sapphirus, sapphire*; *anas, duck*; *vērītās, truth*.

**a.** Some names of Towns and Countries are masculine: as, *Sulmō, Gabii* (plur.); or neuter, as, *Tarentum, Illyricum*.

**b.** A few names of Plants and Gems follow the gender of their termination: as, *centaurēum* (N.), *centaury*; *acanthus* (M.), *bearsfoot*; *opalus* (M.), *opal*.

NOTE.—The gender of most of the above may also be recognized by the terminations, according to the rules given under the several declensions. The names of Roman women were usually feminine adjectives denoting their *gens* or house (see § 108. b).

**33. Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely for their form, are neuter:—**

*fās, right*; *nihil, nothing*; *gummi, gum*; *scīre tuum, your knowledge* (to know); *triste valē, a sad farewell*; *hōc ipsum diū, this very "long."*

**34. Many nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the object. These are said to be of Common Gender: as, *exsul, exile*; *bōs, ox or cow*; *parēns, parent*.**

NOTE.—Several names of animals have a grammatical gender, independent of sex. These are called *epicene*. Thus *lepus, hare*, is always masculine, and *vulpēs, fox*, is always feminine.

### NUMBER AND CASE

**35.** Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and Participles are declined in two Numbers, *singular* and *plural*; and in six Cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *ablative*, *vocative*.

*a.* The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence.

*b.* The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or by the Objective with the preposition *of*.

*c.* The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object (§ 274). It may usually be translated by the Objective with the preposition *to* or *for*.

*d.* The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb (§ 274). It is used also with many of the prepositions.

*e.* The Ablative may usually be translated by the Objective with *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*, or *at*. It is often used with prepositions.

*f.* The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

*g.* All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, are used as object-cases; and are sometimes called Oblique Cases (*cāsūs obliqui*).

*h.* In names of towns and a few other words appear traces of another case (the Locative), denoting the *place where*: as, *Rōmae*, *at Rome*; *rūri*, *in the country*.

NOTE.—Still another case, the Instrumental, appears in a few adverbs (§ 215. 4).

### DECLENSION OF NOUNS

**36.** Declension is produced by adding terminations originally significant to different forms of stems, vowel or consonant. The various phonetic corruptions in the language have given rise to the several declensions. Most of the case-endings, as given in Latin, contain also the final letter of the stem.

Adjectives are, in general, declined like nouns, and are etymologically to be classed with them; but they have several peculiarities of inflection (see § 109 ff.).

**37.** Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, distinguished by the final letter (*characteristic*) of the Stem, and by the case-ending of the Genitive Singular.

DECL.	1	CHARACTERISTIC	ā	GEN. SING.	ae
	2		ō		i
	3		i or a Consonant		is
	4		ū		ūs
	5		e		ei

*a.* The Stem of a noun may be found, if a consonant stem, by omitting the case-ending; if a vowel stem, by substituting for the case-ending the characteristic vowel.

## 38. The following are General Rules of Declension:—

*a.* The Vocative is always the same as the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in *-us* of the second declension, which have *-e* in the vocative. It is not included in the paradigms, unless it differs from the nominative.

*b.* In neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in *-ā*.

*c.* The Accusative singular of all masculines and feminines ends in *-m*; the Accusative plural in *-s*.

*d.* In the last three declensions (and in a few cases in the others) the Dative singular ends in *-i*.

*e.* The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

*f.* The Genitive plural always ends in *-um*.

*g.* Final *-i*, *-o*, *-u* of inflection are always *long*; final *-a* is *short*, except in the Ablative singular of the first declension; final *-e* is *long* in the first and fifth declensions, *short* in the second and third. Final *-is* and *-us* are *long* in plural cases.

## Case-endings of the Five Declensions

39. The regular Case-endings of the several declensions are the following:—<sup>1</sup>

DECL. I	DECL. II		DECL. III		DECL. IV		DECL. V
			SINGULAR				
	F.	M. N.	M., F.	N.	M.	N.	F.
NOM.	-a	{ -us -um —	-s (modified stem)		-us	-ī	-ēs
GEN.	-ae	-ī	-is		-ūs	-ī	-ēī (-ē)
DAT.	-ae	-ō	-ī		-uī (-ī)	-ī	-ēī (-ē)
ACC.	-am	-um -um	-em (-im) (like nom.)		-um	-ī	-em
ABL.	-ā	-ō	-e (-ī)			-ī	-ē
VOC.	-a	-e -um	(like nom.)		-us	-ī	-ēs
PLURAL							
N.V.	-ae	-ī -a	-ēs -a, -ia		-ūs	-ua	-ēs
GEN.	-ārum	-ōrum	-um, -ium		-uum		-ērum
D.AB.	-īs	-īs	-ibus		-ibus (-ubus)		-ēbus
ACC.	-ās	-ōs -a	-ēs (-īs) -a, -ia		-ūs	-ua	-ēs

<sup>1</sup> For ancient, rare, and Greek forms (which are here omitted), see under the several declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION (*ā*-STEMS)

40. The Stem of nouns of the First Declension ends in *ā*. The Nominative ending is *-a* (the stem-vowel shortened), except in Greek nouns.

41. Latin nouns of the First Declension are thus declined: —

stella, f., <i>star</i> STEM <i>stellā</i> -			
SINGULAR			CASE-ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>stella</i>	<i>a star</i>	<i>-a</i>
GEN.	<i>stellae</i>	<i>of a star</i>	<i>-ae</i>
DAT.	<i>stellae</i>	<i>to or for a star</i>	<i>-ae</i>
ACC.	<i>stellam</i>	<i>a star</i>	<i>-am</i>
ABL.	<i>stellā</i>	<i>with, from, by, etc. a star</i>	<i>-ā</i>
PLURAL			
NOM.	<i>stellae</i>	<i>stars</i>	<i>-ae</i>
GEN.	<i>stellārum</i>	<i>of stars</i>	<i>-ārum</i>
DAT.	<i>stellis</i>	<i>to or for stars</i>	<i>-is</i>
ACC.	<i>stellās</i>	<i>stars</i>	<i>-ās</i>
ABL.	<i>stellis</i>	<i>with, from, by, etc. stars</i>	<i>-is</i>

*α.* The Latin has no article; hence *stella* may mean *a star, the star, or simply star*.

## Gender in the First Declension

42. Nouns of the first declension are Feminine.

*Exceptions:* Nouns masculine from their signification: *as, nauta, sailor*. So a few family or personal names: *as, Mūrēna, Dolābella, Scaevola*<sup>1</sup>; also, *Hadria, the Adriatic*.

## Case-Forms in the First Declension

43. *α.* The genitive singular anciently ended in *-āi* (disyllabic), which is occasionally found: *as, aulāi*. The same ending sometimes occurs in the dative, but only as a diphthong.

<sup>1</sup> *Scaevola* is really a feminine adjective, used as a noun, meaning *little left hand*; but, being used as the name of a man (originally a *nickname*), it became masculine. Original genders are often thus changed by a change in the sense of a noun.

**b.** An old genitive in *-ās* is preserved in the word *familiās*, often used in the combinations *pater* (*māter*, *filius*, *filia*) *familiās*, *father*, etc., of a family (plur. *patrēs familiās* or *familiārum*).

**c.** The Locative form for the singular ends in *-ae*; for the plural in *-is* (cf. p. 34, footnote): *as*, *Rōmae*, at *Rome*; *Athēnis*, at *Athens*.

**d.** The genitive plural is sometimes found in *-um* instead of *-ārum*, especially in Greek patronymics, *as*, *Aeneadum*, sons of *Aeneas*, and in compounds with *-cōla* and *-gēna*, signifying *dwelling* and *descent*: *as*, *caelicolum*, *celestials*; *Trōiugenum*, sons of *Troy*; so also in the Greek nouns *amphora* and *drachma*.

**e.** The dative and ablative plural of *dea*, *goddess*, *filia*, *daughter*, end in an older form *-abus* (*deābus*, *filiābus*) to distinguish them from the corresponding cases of *deus*, *god*, and *filius*, *son* (*deis*, *filiis*). So rarely with other words, *as*, *liberta*, *freed-woman*; *mūla*, *she-mule*; *equa*, *mare*. But, except when the two sexes are mentioned together (*as* in formulas, documents, etc.), the form in *-is* is preferred in all but *dea* and *filia*.

NOTE 1.—The old ending of the ablative singular (*-ād*) is sometimes retained in early Latin: *as*, *praidād*, *booty* (later, *praedā*).

NOTE 2.—In the dative and ablative plural *-eis* for *-is* is sometimes found, and *-iis* (*as* in *taeniis*) is occasionally contracted to *-is* (*taenis*); so regularly in words in *-āia* (*as*, *Bāis* from *Bāiae*).

### Greek Nouns of the First Declension

**44.** Many nouns of the First Declension borrowed from the Greek are entirely Latinized (*as*, *aula*, *court*); but others retain traces of their Greek case-forms in the singular.

	<i>Electra</i> , f.	<i>synopsis</i> , f.	<i>art of music</i> , f.
NOM.	<i>Electra</i> (-ā)	<i>epitomē</i>	<i>mūsica</i> (-ē)
GEN.	<i>Electrae</i>	<i>epitomēs</i>	<i>mūsicae</i> (-ēs)
DAT.	<i>Electrae</i>	<i>epitomae</i>	<i>mūsicae</i>
ACC.	<i>Electram</i> (-ān)	<i>epitomēn</i>	<i>mūsicam</i> (-ēn)
ABL.	<i>Electrā</i>	<i>epitomē</i>	<i>mūsicā</i> (-ē)
	<i>Andromache</i> , f.	<i>Aeneas</i> , m.	<i>Persian</i> , m.
NOM.	<i>Andromachē</i> (-a)	<i>Aenēās</i>	<i>Persēs</i> (-a)
GEN.	<i>Andromachēs</i> (-ae)	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>Persae</i>
DAT.	<i>Andromachae</i>	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>Persae</i>
ACC.	<i>Andromachēn</i> (-am)	<i>Aenēān</i> (-am)	<i>Persēn</i> (-am)
ABL.	<i>Andromachē</i> (-ā)	<i>Aenēā</i>	<i>Persē</i> (-ā)
VOC.	<i>Andromachē</i> (-a)	<i>Aenēā</i> (-a)	<i>Persa</i>



	<i>Anchises, m.</i>	<i>son of Æneas, m.</i>	<i>comet, m.</i>
NOM.	Anchisēs	Aeneadēs (-a)	comētēs (-a)
GEN.	Anchisae	Aeneadae	comētae
DAT.	Anchisae	Aeneadae	comētae
ACC.	Anchisēn (-am)	Aeneadēn	comētēn (-am)
ABL.	Anchisē (-ā)	Aeneadē (-ā)	comētā (-ē)
VOC.	Anchisē (-ā, -a)	Aeneadē (-a)	comēta

There are (besides proper names) about thirty-five of these words, several being names of plants or arts: as, *crambē*, *cabbage*; *mūsicē*, *music*. Most have also regular Latin forms: as, *comēta*; but the nominative sometimes has the *a* long.

*a.* Greek forms are found only in the singular; the plural, when it occurs, is regular: as, *comētae*, *-ārum*, etc.

*b.* Many Greek nouns vary between the first, the second, and the third declensions: as, *Boōtāe* (genitive of *Boōtēs*, -is), *Thūcŷdidās* (accusative plural of *Thūcŷdidēs*, -is). See § 52. *a* and § 81.

NOTE. — The Greek accusative *Scipiadam*, from *Scipiadēs*, descendant of the *Scipios*, is found in Horace.

## SECOND DECLENSION (o-STEMS)

45. The Stem of nouns of the Second Declension ends in *ō*: as, *viro-* (stem of *vir*, *man*), *servo-* (stem of *servus* or *servos*, *slave*), *bello-* (stem of *bellum*, *war*).

*a.* The Nominative is formed from the stem by adding *s* in masculines and feminines, and *m* in neuters, the vowel *ō* being weakened to *ū* (see §§ 6. *a*, 46. *N*.<sup>1</sup>).

*b.* In most nouns whose stem ends in *rō* the *s* is not added in the Nominative, but *o* is lost, and *e* intrudes before *r*,<sup>1</sup> if not already present: as, *ager*, stem *agrō*<sup>2</sup>; cf. *puer*, stem *puero*.

*Exceptions*: *erus*, *hesperus*, *īnīperus*, *mōrus*, *numerus*, *taurus*, *umerus*, *uterus*, *virus*, and many Greek nouns.

*c.* The stem-vowel *ō* has a variant form *ē*,<sup>3</sup> which is preserved in the Latin vocative singular of nouns in *-us*: as, *servē*, vocative of *servus*, *slave*.

NOTE. — In composition this *ē* appears as *i*. Thus, — *belli-ger*, *warlike* (from *bellō*/*er*, stem of *bellum*, *war*).

46. Nouns of the Second Declension in *-us* (*-os*) and *-um* (*-om*) are thus declined: —

<sup>1</sup> Compare the English *chamber* from French *chambre*.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Greek *ἀγρός*, which shows the original *o* of the stem.

<sup>3</sup> By so-called *Ablaut* (see § 17. *a*).

*servus, m., slave*  
STEM *servo-*

*bellum, n., war*  
STEM *bello-*

*Pompēius, m., Pompey*  
STEM *Pompēio-*

## SINGULAR

		CASE-ENDINGS		CASE-ENDINGS	
NOM.	servus (-os)	-us (-os)	bellum	-um	Pompēius
GEN.	servi	-i	belli	-i	Pompēi
DAT.	servō	-ō	bellō	-ō	Pompēiō
ACC.	servum (-om)	-um (-om)	bellum	-um	Pompēium
ABL.	servō	-ō	bellō	-ō	Pompēiō
Voc.	serve	-e	bellum	-um	Pompēi (-ō)

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>servi</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>Pompēi</i>
GEN.	<i>servōrum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>	<i>Pompēiōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>servis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>bellis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>Pompēis</i>
ACC.	<i>servōs</i>	<i>-ōs</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>Pompēiōs</i>
ABL.	<i>servis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>bellis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>Pompēis</i>

NOTE 1.—The earlier forms for nominative and accusative were *-os*, *-om*, and these were always retained after *u* and *v* up to the end of the Republic. The terminations *s* and *m* are sometimes omitted in inscriptions: as, *Cornēlio* for *Cornēlios*, *Cornēliom*.

NOTE 2.—Stems in *quo-*, like *equo-*, change *qu* to *c* before *u*. Thus, *-ecus* (earlier *equos*), *equi*, *equō*, *ecum* (earlier *equom*), *eque*. Modern editions disregard this principle.

47. Nouns of the Second Declension in *-er* and *-ir* are thus declined:—

*puer, m., boy*  
STEM *puero-*

*ager, m., field*  
STEM *agro-*

*vir, m., man*  
STEM *viro-*

## SINGULAR

				CASE-ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	—
GEN.	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
DAT.	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>-ō</i>
ACC.	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>-um</i>
ABL.	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>-ō</i>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
GEN.	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>pueris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>viris</i>	<i>-is</i>
ACC.	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>-ōs</i>
ABL.	<i>pueris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>viris</i>	<i>-is</i>

NOTE.—When *e* belongs to the stem, as in *puer*, it is retained throughout; otherwise it appears only in the nominative and vocative singular, as in *ager*.

## Gender in the Second Declension

48. Nouns ending in -us (-os), -er, -ir, are Masculine; those ending in -um (-on) are Neuter.

*Exceptions:* Names of countries and towns in -us (-os) are Feminine: *as*, Aegyptus, Corinthus. Also many names of plants and gems, with the following: *alvus*, belly; *carbasus*, linen (pl. *carbasa*, sails, n.); *colus*, distaff; *humus*, ground; *vannus*, winnowing-shovel.

Many Greek nouns retain their original gender: *as*, arctus (f.), the Polar Bear; *methodus* (f.), method.

*a.* The following in -us are Neuter; their accusative (as with all neuters) is the same as the nominative: *pelagus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely m.), the crowd. They are not found in the plural, except *pelagus*, which has a rare nominative and accusative plural *pelagē*.

NOTE.—The nominative plural neuter *cētē*, sea monsters, occurs; the nominative singular *cētus* occurs in Vitruvius.

## Case-Forms in the Second Declension

49. *a.* The Locative form of this declension ends for the singular in -ī: *as*, *humī*, on the ground; *Corinthī*, at Corinth; for the plural, in -īs: *as*, *Philippīs*, at Philippi (cf. p. 34, footnote).

*b.* The genitive of nouns in -ius or -ium ended, until the Augustan Age, in a single -ī: *as*, *filī*, of a son; *Pompēī*, of Pompey (Pompēius); but the accent of the nominative is retained: *as*, *ingēnī*, of genius.<sup>1</sup>

*c.* Proper names in -ius have -ī in the vocative, retaining the accent of the nominative: *as*, *Vergīlī*. So also, *filius*, son; *genius*, divine guardian: *as*, *audī*, *mī filī*, hear, my son.

Adjectives in -ius form the vocative in -īe, and some of these are occasionally used as nouns: *as*, *Lacedaemonīe*, O Spartan.

NOTE.—Greek names in -ius have the vocative -īe: *as*, *Lyrcīus*, vocative *Lyrcīe*.

*d.* The genitive plural often has -um or (after v) -om (cf. § 8. a) instead of -ōrum, especially in the poets: *as*, *deum*, *superum*, *dīvom*, of the gods; *virum*, of men. Also in compounds of *vir*, and in many words of money, measure, and weight: *as*, *Sēvirum*, of the *Seviri*; *nummum*, of coins; *iūgerum*, of acres.

*e.* The original ending of the ablative singular (-ōd) is sometimes found in early Latin: *as*, *Gnaivōd* (later, *Gnaeō*), *Cneius*.

*f.* Proper names in -āius, -ēius, -ōius (*as*, *Aurunculēius*, *Bōī*), are declined like *Pompēius*.

<sup>1</sup> The genitive in -ī occurs once in Virgil, and constantly in Ovid, but was probably unknown to Cicero.

**g.** *Deus* (M.), *god*, is thus declined:—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM. <i>deus</i>	<i>dei</i> (diī), <i>dī</i>
GEN. <i>dei</i>	<i>deōrum</i> , <i>deum</i>
DAT. <i>deō</i>	<i>deīs</i> (diīs), <i>dīs</i>
ACC. <i>deum</i>	<i>deōs</i>
ABL. <i>deō</i>	<i>deīs</i> (diīs), <i>dīs</i>

NOTE.—The vocative singular of *deus* does not occur in classic Latin, but is said to have been *dee*; *deus* (like the nominative) occurs in the Vulgate. For the genitive plural, *divum* or *divom* (from *divus*, *divine*) is often used.

**50.** The following stems in *ero*-, in which *e* belongs to the stem, retain the *e* throughout and are declined like *puer* (§ 47):—

<i>adulter</i> , <i>adulterer</i> ;	<i>gener</i> , <i>son-in-law</i> ;	<i>puer</i> , <i>boy</i> ;
<i>socer</i> , <i>father-in-law</i> ;	<i>vesper</i> , <i>evening</i> ;	<i>Liber</i> , <i>Bacchus</i> .

Also, the adjective *liber*, *free*, of which *liberī*, *children*, is the plural (§ 111. a), and compounds in *-fer* and *-ger* (stem *fero*-, *gero*): *as*, *lūcifer*, *morning star*; *armiger*, *squire*.

**a.** An old nominative *socerus* occurs. So vocative *puere*, *boy*, as if from †*puerus* (regularly *puer*).

**b.** *Vir*, *man*, has genitive *virī*; the adjective *satur*, *sated*, has *saturī*; *vesper*, *evening*, has ablative *vespere* (locative *vesperī*, *in the evening*).

**c.** *Mulciber*, *Vulcan*, has *-berī* and *-brī* in the genitive. The barbaric names *Hibēr* and *Celtibēr* retain *ē* throughout.

**51.** The following, not having *e* in the stem, insert it in the nominative singular and are declined like *ager* (§ 47):—

<i>ager</i> , <i>field</i> , stem <i>agro</i> -;	<i>coluber</i> , <i>snake</i> ;	<i>magister</i> , <i>master</i> ;
<i>aper</i> , <i>boar</i> ;	<i>conger</i> , <i>sea eel</i> ;	<i>minister</i> , <i>servant</i> ;
<i>arbiter</i> , <i>judge</i> ;	<i>culter</i> , <i>knife</i> ;	<i>oleaster</i> , <i>wild olive</i> ;
<i>auster</i> , <i>south wind</i> ;	<i>faber</i> , <i>smith</i> ;	<i>onager</i> (- <i>grus</i> ), <i>wild ass</i> ;
<i>cancer</i> , <i>crab</i> ;	<i>fiber</i> , <i>beaver</i> ;	<i>scomber</i> (- <i>brus</i> ), <i>mackerel</i> .
<i>caper</i> , <i>goat</i> ;	<i>liber</i> , <i>book</i> ;	

### Greek Nouns of the Second Declension

**52.** Greek nouns of the Second Declension end in *-os*, *-ōs*, masculine or feminine, and in *-on* neuter.

They are mostly proper names and are declined as follows in the Singular, the Plural, when found, being regular:—

	mýthos, m. <i>fable</i>	Athōs, m. <i>Athos</i>	Dēlos, f. <i>Delos</i>	Īlion, n. <i>Ilion</i>
SINGULAR				
NOM.	mýthos	Athōs (-ō)	Dēlos	Īlion
GEN.	mýthī	Athō (-ī)	Dēlī	Īlī
DAT.	mýthō	Athō	Dēlō	Īliō
ACC.	mýthon	Athōn (-um)	Dēlon (-um)	Īlion
ABL.	mýthō	Athō	Dēlō	Īliō
VOC.	mýthe	Athōs	Dēle	Īlion

a. Many names in -ēs belonging to the third declension have also a genitive in -ī: as, Thūcýdidēs, Thūcýdidī (compare § 44. b).

b. Several names in -er have also a nominative in -us: as, Teucer or Teucrus. The name Panthūs has the vocative Panthū (§ 81. 3).

c. The genitive plural of certain titles of books takes the Greek termination -ōn: as, Geōrgicōn, of the *Georgics*.

d. The termination -oe (for Greek -oi) is sometimes found in the nominative plural: as, Adelphoe, the *Adelphi* (a play of Terence).

e. Greek names in -eus (like Orpheus) have forms of the second and third declensions (see § 82).

### THIRD DECLENSION (CONSONANT AND I-STEMS)

53. Nouns of the Third Declension end in a, e, i, ō, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

54. Stems of the Third Declension are classed as follows:—

I. Consonant Stems { a. Mute stems.  
b. Liquid and Nasal stems.

II. I-Stems { a. Pure i-stems.  
b. Mixed i-stems.

55. The Nominative is always derived from the stem.

The variety in form in the Nominative is due to simple modifications of the stem, of which the most important are—

1. Combination of final consonants: as of c (or g) and s to form x; dux, ducis, stem duc-; rēx, rēgis, stem rēg-.

2. Omission of a final consonant: as of a final nasal; leō, leōnis, stem leōn-; ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, stem ōrātiōn-.

3. Omission of a final vowel: as of final i; calcar, calcāris, stem calcārī-.

4. Change of vowel in the final syllable: as of a to e; princeps (for -caps), princípis, stem princip- (for -cap-).

## CONSONANT STEMS

## Mute Stems

56. Masculine and Feminine Nouns with mute stems form the Nominative by adding *s* to the stem.

A labial (*p*) is retained before *s*: *as*, *princeps*.

A lingual (*t*, *d*) is dropped before *s*: *as*, *miles* (stem *milit-*), *cūstōs* (stem *cūstōd-*).

A palatal (*c*, *g*) unites with *s* to form *x*: *as*, *dux* (for *†duc-s*), *rēx* (for *†rēg-s*).

*a*. In dissyllabic stems the final syllable often shows *e* in the nominative and *i* in the stem: *as*, *princeps*, stem *princip-* (for *-cap-*).

57. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

princeps, c., <i>chief</i> STEM princip-		rādix, f., <i>root</i> STEM rādic-		miles, m., <i>soldier</i> STEM milit-	
SINGULAR					
NOM.	princeps	rādix	miles	CASE-ENDINGS	
GEN.	principis	rādicis	militis	-is	
DAT.	principi	rādicī	militī	-ī	
ACC.	principem	rādicem	militem	-em	
ABL.	principē	rādicē	militē	-e	
PLURAL					
NOM.	principēs	rādicēs	militēs	-ēs	
GEN.	principum	rādicum	militum	-um	
DAT.	principibus	rādicibus	militibus	-ibus	
ACC.	principēs	rādicēs	militēs	-ēs	
ABL.	principibus	rādicibus	militibus	-ibus	
cūstōs, c., <i>guard</i> STEM cūstōd-		dux, c., <i>leader</i> STEM duc-		rēx, m., <i>king</i> STEM rēg-	
SINGULAR					
NOM.	cūstōs	dux	rēx	CASE-ENDINGS	
GEN.	cūstōdis	ducis	rēgis	-is	
DAT.	cūstōdī	ducī	rēgī	-ī	
ACC.	cūstōdem	ducem	rēgem	-em	
ABL.	cūstōde	duce	rēge	-e	

## PLURAL

NOM.	cūstōdēs	ducēs	rēgēs	-ēs
GEN.	cūstōdum	ducum	rēgum	-um
DAT.	cūstōdibus	ducibus	rēgibus	-ibus
ACC.	cūstōdēs	ducēs	rēgēs	-ēs
ABL.	cūstōdibus	ducibus	rēgibus	-ibus

*a.* In like manner are declined —

ariēs, -etis (M.), *ram*; comes, -itis (C.), *companion*; lapis, -idis (M.), *stone*;  
iūdex, -icis (M.), *judge*; cornix, -icis (F.), *raven*, and many other nouns.

**58.** Most mute stems are Masculine or Feminine. Those that are neuter have for the Nominative the simple stem. But, —

*a.* Lingual Stems (t, d) ending in two consonants drop the final mute: as, cor (stem cord-), lac (stem lact-). So also stems in -āt- from the Greek: as, poēma (stem poēmat-).

*b.* The stem capit- shows u in the nominative (caput for †capot).

**59.** Nouns of this class are declined as follows: —

	cor, N., heart STEM cord-	caput, N., head STEM capit-	poēma, N., poem STEM poēmat-	
	SINGULAR			CASE-ENDINGS
NOM.	cor	caput	poēma	—
GEN.	cordis	capitis	poēmatīs	-īs
DAT.	cordi	capiti	poēmati	-i
ACC.	cor	caput	poēma	—
ABL.	corde	capite	poēmate	-e
	PLURAL			
NOM.	corda	capita	poēmata	-a
GEN.	—	capitum	poēmatum	-um
DAT.	cordibus	capitibus	poēmatibus	-ibus
ACC.	corda	capita	poēmata	-a
ABL.	cordibus	capitibus	poēmatibus	-ibus

**60.** The following irregularities require notice: —

*a.* Greek neuters with nominative singular in -a (as poēma) frequently end in -īs in the dative and ablative plural, and rarely in -ōrum in the genitive plural; as, poēmatīs (for poēmatibus), poēmatōrum (for poēmatum).

*b.* A number of monosyllabic nouns with mute stems want the genitive plural (like cor). See § 103. g. 2.

Liquid and Nasal Stems (*l, n, r*)

61. In Masculine and Feminine nouns with liquid and nasal stems the Nominative is the same as the stem.

Exceptions are the following:—

1. Stems in *ōn-* drop *n* in the nominative: as in *leglō*, stem *leglōn-*.
2. Stems in *din-* and *gin-* drop *n* and keep an original *ō* in the nominative: as in *virgō*, stem *virgin-*.<sup>1</sup>
3. Stems in *in-* (not *din-* or *gin-*) retain *n* and have *e* instead of *i* in the nominative: as in *cornicen*, stem *cornicin-*.<sup>1</sup>
4. Stems in *tr-* have *-ter* in the nominative: as, *pater*, stem *patr-*.<sup>2</sup>

62. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

	cōnsul, M., <i>consul</i> STEM cōnsul-	leō, M., <i>lion</i> STEM leōn-	virgō, F., <i>maiden</i> STEM virgin-	pater, M., <i>father</i> STEM patr-	
SINGULAR					CASE-ENDINGS
NOM.	cōnsul	leō	virgō	pater	—
GEN.	cōnsulis	leōnis	virginis	patris	-is
DAT.	cōnsuli	leōni	virgini	patri	-i
ACC.	cōnsulem	leōnem	virginem	patrem	-em
ABL.	cōnsule	leōne	virgine	patre	-e
PLURAL					
NOM.	cōnsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	patrēs	-ēs
GEN.	cōnsulūm	leōnūm	virginūm	patrum	-um
DAT.	cōnsulibus	leōnibus	virginibus	patribus	-ibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	patrēs	-ēs
ABL.	cōnsulibus	leōnibus	virginibus	patribus	-ibus

NOTE 1. — Stems in *il-*, *tr-* (*n.*) lose one of their liquids in the nominative: as, *far*, *farris*; *mel*, *mellis*.

NOTE 2. — A few masculine and feminine stems have a nominative in *-s* as well as in *-r*: as, *honōs* or *honor*, *arbōs* or *arbor*.

NOTE 3. — *Canis*, *dog*, and *iuvēnis*, *youth*, have *-is* in the nominative.

<sup>1</sup> These differences depend in part upon special phonetic laws, in accordance with which vowels in weakly accented or unaccented syllables are variously modified, and in part upon the influence of analogy.

<sup>2</sup> These, no doubt, had originally *ter-* in the stem, but this had become weakened to *tr-* in some of the cases even in the parent speech. In Latin only the nominative and vocative singular show the *e*. But cf. *Māspitris* and *Māspiteris* (*Mā[r]s-piter*), quoted by Priscian as old forms.



63. In Neuter nouns with liquid or nasal stems the Nominative is the same as the stem.

*Exceptions:* 1. Stems in *in-* have *e* instead of *i* in the nominative: as in *nōmen*, stem *nōmin-*.

2. Most stems in *er-* and *or-* have *-us* in the nominative: as, *genus*, stem *gener-*<sup>1</sup>

64. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

	nomen, n., <i>name</i> STEM nomin-	genus, n., <i>race</i> STEM gener-	corpus, n., <i>body</i> STEM corpor-	aequor, n., <i>sea</i> STEM aequor-
SINGULAR				
NOM.	nōmen	genus	corpus	aequor
GEN.	nōminis	generis	corporis	aequoris
DAT.	nōminī	generī	corporī	aequorī
ACC.	nōmen	genus	corpus	aequor
ABL.	nōmine	genere	corpore	aequore
PLURAL				
NOM.	nōmina	genera	corpora	aequora
GEN.	nōminum	generum	corporum	aequorum
DAT.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	aequoribus
ACC.	nōmina	genera	corpora	aequora
ABL.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	aequoribus

So also are declined *opus*, *-eris*, *work*; *pīgnus*, *-eris* or *-oris*, *pledge*, etc.

NOTE.—The following real or apparent liquid and nasal stems have the genitive plural in *-ium*, and are to be classed with the *i*-stems: *imber*, *linter*, *ūter*, *venter*; *glīs*, *mās*, *mūs*, [trēn]; also *virēs* (plural of *vis*: see § 79).

### *i*-STEMS

65. Nouns of this class include —

1. Pure *i*-Stems:

*a.* Masculine and Feminine parissyllabic<sup>2</sup> nouns in *-is* and four in *-er*.

*b.* Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar*.

2. Mixed *i*-Stems, declined in the singular like consonant stems, in the plural like *i*-stems.

<sup>1</sup> These were originally *s*-stems (cf. § 15. 4).

<sup>2</sup> I.e. having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular.

Pure *i*-Stems

**66.** Masculine and Feminine parisyllabic nouns in *-is* form the Nominative singular by adding *s* to the stem.

Four stems in *bri-* and *tri-* do not add *s* to form the nominative, but drop *i* and insert *e* before *r*. These are *imber*, *linter*, *üter*, *venter*.

**67.** Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

<i>sitis</i> , <i>F.</i> , <i>thirst</i> STEM <i>siti-</i>	<i>turris</i> , <i>F.</i> , <i>tower</i> STEM <i>turri-</i>	<i>ignis</i> , <i>M.</i> , <i>fire</i> STEM <i>igni-</i>	<i>imber</i> , <i>M.</i> , <i>rain</i> STEM <i>imbri-</i>
---	--	---	--

## SINGULAR

NOM.	<i>sitis</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>imber</i>
GEN.	<i>sitis</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>imbriis</i>
DAT.	<i>siti</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>igni</i>	<i>imbri</i>
ACC.	<i>sitim</i>	<i>turrim (-em)</i>	<i>ignem</i>	<i>imbrem</i>
ABL.	<i>siti</i>	<i>turri (-e)</i>	<i>igni (-e)</i>	<i>imbri (-e)</i>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>turrēs</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>imbrēs</i>
GEN.	<i>turrium</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>imbrium</i>
DAT.	<i>turribus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>imbribus</i>
ACC.	<i>turris (-ēs)</i>	<i>ignis (-ēs)</i>	<i>imbriis (-ēs)</i>
ABL.	<i>turribus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>imbribus</i>

**68.** In Neuters the Nominative is the same as the stem, with final *i* changed to *e*: *as*, *mare*, stem *mari-*. But most nouns<sup>1</sup> in which the *i* of the stem is preceded by *ai* or *ar* lose the final vowel and shorten the preceding *a*: *as*, *animāl*, stem *animāli-*.<sup>2</sup>

*a.* Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar* have *-i* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural: *as*, *animal*, *animālī*, *-ia*, *-ium*.

<sup>1</sup> Such are *animal*, *bacchānal*, *bidental*, *capital*, *cervical*, *cubital*, *lupercal*, *minūtāl*, *puteal*, *quadrantal*, *toral*, *tribūnal*, *vectigal*; *calcar*, *cochlear*, *exemplar*, *lacūnar*, *laquear*, *lūcar*, *lūminar*, *lupānar*, *palear*, *pulvinar*, *torcular*. Cf. the plurals *dentālīa*, *frontālīa*, *genuālīa*, *spōnsālīa*; *altārīa*, *plantārīa*, *speculārīa*, *tālārīa*; also many names of festivals, *as*, *Sāturnālīa*.

<sup>2</sup> Exceptions are *augurālē*, *collārē*, *fōcālē*, *nāvālē*, *penetrālē*, *rāmālē*, *scūtālē*, *tibīālē*; *alveārē*, *capillārē*, *cochleārē*.

69. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

	<i>sedile</i> , N., <i>seat</i> STEM <i>sedili-</i>	<i>animal</i> , N., <i>animal</i> STEM <i>animāli-</i>	<i>calcar</i> , N., <i>spur</i> STEM <i>calcārī-</i>	
	SINGULAR			CASE-ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>sedile</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	-e or —
GEN.	<i>sedilis</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	-is
DAT.	<i>sedilī</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	-ī
ACC.	<i>sedile</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	-e or —
ABL.	<i>sedilī</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	-ī
	PLURAL			
NOM.	<i>sedilia</i>	<i>animālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	-ia
GEN.	<i>sedilium</i>	<i>animālium</i>	<i>calcārium</i>	-ium
DAT.	<i>sedilibus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>	<i>calcāribus</i>	-ibus
ACC.	<i>sedilia</i>	<i>animālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	-ia
ABL.	<i>sedilibus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>	<i>calcāribus</i>	-ibus

#### Mixed *i*-Stems

70. Mixed *i*-stems are either original *i*-stems that have lost their *i*-forms in the singular, or consonant stems that have assumed *i*-forms in the plural.

NOTE.—It is sometimes impossible to distinguish between these two classes.

71. Mixed *i*-stems have *-em* in the accusative and *-e* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive<sup>1</sup> and *-is* or *-ēs* in the accusative plural. They include the following:—

1. Nouns in *-ēs*, gen. *-is*.<sup>2</sup>
2. Monosyllables in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a consonant: *as*, *ars*, *pōns*, *arx*.
3. Polysyllables in *-ns* or *-rs*: *as*, *cliēns*, *cohors*.
4. Nouns in *-tās*, genitive *-tātis* (genitive plural usually *-um*)<sup>1</sup>: *as*, *civitās*.
5. *Penātēs*, *optimātēs*, and nouns denoting birth or abode (*patrials*) in *-ās*, *-is*, plural *-ātēs*, *-ītēs*: *as*, *Arpīnās*, plural *Arpīnātēs*; *Quirīs*, plural *Quirītēs*.
6. The following monosyllables in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a vowel: *dōs*, *fraus*, *glīs*, *līs*, *mās*, *mūs*, *nix*, *nox*, *strix*, *vis*.

<sup>1</sup> There is much variety in the practice of the ancients, some of these words having *-ium*, some *-um*, and some both.

<sup>2</sup> These are *acinacēs*, *aedēs*, *alcēs*, *caedēs*, *cautēs*, *clādēs*, *compāgēs*, *contāgēs*, *famēs*, *fēlēs*, *fidēs* (plural), *indolēs*, *lībēs*, *luēs*, *mēlēs*, *mōlēs*, *nūbēs*, *palumbēs*, *prōlēs*, *propāgēs*, *pūbēs*, *sēdēs*, *saepēs*, *sordēs*, *strāgēs*, *struēs*, *subolēs*, *tābēs*, *torquēs*, *tudēs*, *vātēs*, *vehēs*, *veprēs*, *verrēs*, *vulpēs*; *aedēs* has also nominative *aedis*.

72. Nouns of this class are thus declined:—

<i>nūbēs, F., cloud</i>	<i>urbs, F., city</i>	<i>nox, F., night</i>	<i>cliēns, M., client</i>	<i>aetās, F., age</i>
STEM <i>nūb(i)-</i>	STEM <i>urb(i)-</i>	STEM <i>noct(i)-</i>	STEM <i>client(i)-</i>	STEM <i>aetāt(i)-</i>

## SINGULAR

NOM.	<i>nūbēs</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>nox</i>	<i>cliēns</i>	<i>aetās</i>
GEN.	<i>nūbis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>noctis</i>	<i>clientis</i>	<i>aetātis</i>
DAT.	<i>nūbī</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>noctī</i>	<i>clientī</i>	<i>aetātī</i>
ACC.	<i>nūbem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>noctem</i>	<i>clientem</i>	<i>aetātem</i>
ABL.	<i>nūbe</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>nocte</i>	<i>cliente</i>	<i>aetāte</i>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>nūbēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>noctēs</i>	<i>clientēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>
GEN.	<i>nūbium</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>noctium</i>	<i>clientium</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>aetātium</i> <sup>2</sup>
DAT.	<i>nūbibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>noctibus</i>	<i>clientibus</i>	<i>aetātibus</i>
ACC.	<i>nūbīs(-ēs)</i>	<i>urbīs(-ēs)</i>	<i>noctīs(-ēs)</i>	<i>clientīs(-ēs)</i>	<i>aetātīs(-ēs)</i>
ABL.	<i>nūbibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>noctibus</i>	<i>clientibus</i>	<i>aetātibus</i>

Summary of *i*-Stems

73. The *i*-declension was confused even to the Romans themselves, nor was it stable at all periods of the language, early Latin having *i*-forms which afterwards disappeared. There was a tendency in nouns to lose the *i*-forms, in adjectives to gain them. The nominative plural (*-is*)<sup>3</sup> was most thoroughly lost, next the accusative singular (*-im*), next the ablative (*-ī*); while the genitive and accusative plural (*-ium*, *-īs*) were retained in almost all.

74. *I*-stems show the *i* of the stem in the following forms:—

*a.* They have the genitive plural in *-ium* (but some monosyllables lack it entirely). For a few exceptions, see § 78.

*b.* All neuters have the nominative and accusative plural in *-ia*.

*c.* The accusative plural (*M.* or *F.*) is regularly *-īs*.

*d.* The accusative singular (*M.* or *F.*) of a few ends in *-im* (§ 75).

*e.* The ablative singular of all neuters, and of many masculines and feminines, ends in *-ī* (see § 76).

75. The regular case-ending of the Accusative singular of *i*-stems (*M.* or *F.*) would be *-im*: as, *sitis*, *sitim* (cf. *stella*, *-am*; *servus*, *-um*); but in most nouns this is changed to *-em* (following the consonant declension).

<sup>1</sup> Rarely *clientum*.

<sup>2</sup> Also *aetātium*. Cf. § 71. 4.

<sup>3</sup> An old, though not the original, ending (see p. 32, footnote 2).

**a.** The accusative in **-im** is found exclusively —

1. In Greek nouns and in names of rivers.
2. In *būria*, *cucumis*, *rāvis*, *sitis*, *tussis*, *via*.
3. In adverbs in **-tim** (being accusative of nouns in **-tis**), as, *partim*; and in *amussim*.

**b.** The accusative in **-im** is found sometimes in *febris*, *puppis*, *restis*, *turris*, *secūris*, *sēmentis*, and rarely in many other words.

**76.** The regular form of the Ablative singular of *i*-stems would be **-i**: as, *sitis*, *siti*; but in most nouns this is changed to **-e**.

**a.** The ablative in **-i** is found exclusively —

1. In nouns having the accusative in **-im** (§ 75); also *secūris*.
2. In the following adjectives used as nouns: *aequālis*, *annālis*, *aquālis*, *cōsulāris*, *gentilis*, *molāris*, *primipilāris*, *tribūlis*.
3. In neuters in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**: except *baccar*, *iubar*, *rōte*, and sometimes *mare*.

**b.** The ablative in **-i** is found sometimes —

1. In *avis*, *clāvis*, *febris*, *finis*, *ignis*,<sup>1</sup> *imber*, *lūx*, *nāvis*, *ovis*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *sēmentis*, *strigilis*, *turris*, and occasionally in other words.
2. In the following adjectives used as nouns: *affinis*, *bipennis*, *canālis*, *familiaris*, *nātālis*, *rivālis*, *sapiēns*, *tridēns*, *trirēmis*, *vōcālis*.

NOTE 1. — The ablative of *famēs* is always *famē* (§ 106. e). The defective *māne* has sometimes *māni* (§ 103. b. n.) as ablative.

NOTE 2. — Most names of towns in **-e** (as, *Fraeneste*, *Tergeste*) and *Sōractē*, a mountain, have the ablative in **-e**. *Caere* has *Caerōte*.

NOTE 3. — *Canis* and *iuvenis* have *cane*, *iuvene*.

**77.** The regular Nominative plural of *i*-stems is **-ēs**,<sup>2</sup> but **-is** is occasionally found. The regular Accusative plural **-is** is common, but not exclusively used in any word. An old form for both cases is **-êis** (diphthong).

**78.** The following have **-um** (not **-ium**) in the genitive plural:

1. Always, — *canis*, *iuvenis*,<sup>3</sup> *ambāgēs*, *mare* (once only, otherwise wanting), *volucris*; regularly, *sēdēs*, *vātēs*.
2. Sometimes, — *apis*, *caedēs*, *clādēs*, *mēnsis*, *struēs*, *subolēs*.
3. Very rarely, — *patrials* in **-ās**, **-ātis**; **-is**, **-ītis**; as, *Arpīnās*, *Arpīnātum*; *Samnīs*, *Samnītum*.

<sup>1</sup> Always in the formula *aquā et igni interdīci* (§ 401).

<sup>2</sup> The Indo-European ending of the nominative plural, **-ēs** (preserved in Greek in consonant stems, as *θεοῦς*, *θεοῦν-ēs*), contracts with a stem-vowel and gives **-ēs** in the Latin *i*-declension (cf. the Greek plural *θεοί*). This **-ēs** was extended to consonant stems in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> *Canis* and *iuvenis* are really *n*-stems.

## Irregular Nouns of the Third Declension

79. In many nouns the stem is irregularly modified in the nominative or other cases. Some peculiar forms are thus declined:—

<b>bōs, c.</b> <i>ox, cow</i>	<b>senex, m.</b> <i>old man</i>	<b>carō, f.</b> <i>flesh</i>	<b>os, n.</b> <i>bone</i>	<b>vis, f.</b> <i>force</i>
----------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------	--------------------------------

## SINGULAR

<b>NOM.</b>	<b>bōs</b>	<b>senex</b>	<b>carō</b>	<b>os</b>	<b>vis</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>bōvis</b>	<b>senis</b>	<b>carnis</b>	<b>ossis</b>	<b>vis (rare)</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>bovī</b>	<b>senī</b>	<b>carnī</b>	<b>ossi</b>	<b>vī (rare)</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>bovem</b>	<b>senem</b>	<b>carnem</b>	<b>os</b>	<b>vim</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>bove</b>	<b>sene</b>	<b>carne</b>	<b>osse</b>	<b>vī</b>

## PLURAL

	<i>cattle</i>				<i>strength</i>
<b>NOM.</b>	<b>bovēs</b>	<b>senēs</b>	<b>carnēs</b>	<b>ossa</b>	<b>virēs</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>boum</b>	<b>senum</b>	<b>carnium</b>	<b>ossium</b>	<b>virium</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>bōbus (būbus)</b>	<b>senibus</b>	<b>carnibus</b>	<b>ossibus</b>	<b>viribus</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>bovēs</b>	<b>senēs</b>	<b>carnēs</b>	<b>ossa</b>	<b>virīs (-ēs)</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>bōbus (būbus)</b>	<b>senibus</b>	<b>carnibus</b>	<b>ossibus</b>	<b>viribus</b>

**sūs, c.**  
*swine*

**Iuppiter, m.**  
*Jupiter*

**nix, f.**  
*snow*

**iter, n.**  
*march*

## SINGULAR

<b>NOM.</b>	<b>sūs</b>	<b>Iuppiter<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>nix</b>	<b>iter</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>snis</b>	<b>Iovis</b>	<b>nivis</b>	<b>itineris</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>sui</b>	<b>Iovī</b>	<b>nivī</b>	<b>itinerī</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>suem</b>	<b>Iovem</b>	<b>nivem</b>	<b>iter</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>sue</b>	<b>Iove</b>	<b>nive</b>	<b>itinere</b>

## PLURAL

<b>NOM.</b>	<b>sūēs</b>	<b>nivēs</b>	<b>itinerā</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>suum</b>	<b>nivium</b>	<b>itinerum</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>sūbus (suihus)</b>	<b>nivibus</b>	<b>itineribus</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>sūēs</b>	<b>nivēs</b>	<b>itinerā</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>sūbus (suihus)</b>	<b>nivibus</b>	<b>itineribus</b>

<sup>1</sup> Also Iāpiter.

**a.** Two vowel-stems in *ū*, *grū*- and *sū*-, which follow the third declension, add *s* in the nominative, and are inflected like mute stems: *grūs* has also a nominative *gruis*; *sūs* has both *sui* and *sū* in the dative and ablative plural, *grūs* has only *gruibus*.

**b.** In the stem *bou-* (*bou-*) the diphthong *ou* becomes *ō* in the nominative (*bōs*, *bōvis*).

In *nāv-* (*nau-*) an *i* is added (*nāvis*, *-is*), and it is declined like *turris* (§ 67).

In *lōv-* (= *Zeús*) the diphthong (*ou*) becomes *ū* in *Iū-piter* (for *-pāter*), genitive *Iōvis*, etc.; but the form *Iuppiter* is preferred.

**c.** In *iter*, *itineris* (*N.*), *iecur*, *iecinoris* (*iecoris*) (*N.*), *supellēx*, *supellēctilis* (*F.*), the nominative has been formed from a shorter stem; in *senex*, *senia*, from a longer; so that these words show a combination of forms from two distinct stems.

**d.** In *nix*, *nivis* the nominative retains a *g* from the original stem, the *g* uniting with *s*, the nominative ending, to form *x*. In the other cases the stem assumes the form *niv-* and it adds *i* in the genitive plural.

**e.** *Vās* (*N.*), *vāsis*, keeps *s* throughout; plural *vāsa*, *vāsōrum*. A dative plural *vāsibus* also occurs. There is a rare singular *vāsum*.

### The Locative Case

**80.** The Locative form for nouns of the third declension ends in the singular in *-ī* or *-e*, in the plural in *-ibus*: as, *rūrī*, *in the country*; *Carthāginī* or *Carthāginē*, *at Carthage*; *Trallibus*, *at Tralles*.<sup>1</sup>

### Greek Nouns of the Third Declension

**81.** Many nouns originally Greek — mostly proper names — retain Greek forms of inflection. So especially —

1. Genitive singular in *-os*, as, *tigrīdos*.
2. Accusative singular in *-a*, as, *aethēra*.
3. Vocative singular like the stem, as, *Periclē*, *Orpheu*, *Atlā*.
4. Nominative plural in *-ēs*, as, *hērōēs*.
5. Accusative plural in *-ās*, as, *hērōās*.

<sup>1</sup> The Indo-European locative singular ended in *-ī*, which became *-ē* in Latin. Thus the Latin ablative in *-e* is, historically considered, a locative. The Latin ablative in *-ī* (from *-īd*) was an analogical formation (cf. *-ā* from *-ād*, *-ō* from *-ōd*), properly belonging to *i*-stems. With names of towns and a few other words, a locative function was ascribed to forms in *-ī* (as, *Carthāginī*), partly on the analogy of the real locative of *o*-stems (as, *Corinthī*, § 49. a); but forms in *-ē* also survived in this use. The plural *-ibus* is properly dative or ablative, but in forms like *Trallibus* it has a locative function. Cf. *Philippis* (§ 49. a), in which the ending *-is* is, historically considered, either locative, or instrumental, or both, and *Athēnis* (§ 43. c), in which the ending is formed on the analogy of *o*-stems.

**82.** Some of these forms are seen in the following examples:—

hērōs, m., *hero* lampas, f., *torch* basis, f., *base* tigris, c., *tiger* nāis, f., *naiad*  
STEM hērō- STEM lampad- STEM basi- STEM { tigrīd-  
tigrī- STEM nāid-

## SINGULAR

NOM.	hērōs	lampas	basis	tigris	nāis
GEN.	hērōis	lampados	baseōs	tigris(-idos)	nāidos
DAT.	hērōi	lampadi	basī	tigrī	nāidi
ACC.	hērōa	lampada	basin	tigrin(-ida)	nāida
ABL.	hērōe	lampade	basī	tigrī(-ide)	nāide

## PLURAL

Nom.	hērōēs	lampadēs	basēs	tigrēs	nāidēs
Gen.	hērōum	lampadum	basium(-eōn)	tigrim	nāidum
D., A. <sup>1</sup>	hērōibus	lampadibus	basibus	tigribus	nāidibus
Acc.	hērōās	lampadās	basīs(-eis)	tigrīs(-idās)	nāidās

## PROPER NAMES

<b>NOM.</b>	<b>Didō</b>	<b>Simois</b>	<b>Capy</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>Didōnis (Didūs)</b>	<b>Simoentis</b>	<b>Capyos</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>Didōni (Didō)</b>	<b>Simoenti</b>	<b>Capyi</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>Didōnem (-ō)</b>	<b>Simoenta</b>	<b>Capyn</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>Didōne (-ō)</b>	<b>Simoente</b>	<b>Capyē</b>
<b>VOC.</b>	<b>Didō</b>	<b>Simois</b>	<b>Capy</b>
<b>NOM.</b>	<b>Orpheus</b>	<b>Periclēs</b>	<b>Paris</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>Orpheī (-eōs)</b>	<b>Periclis (-ī)</b>	<b>Paridis</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>Orpheī (-eō)</b>	<b>Pericli (-i)</b>	<b>Paridi</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>Orphea (-um)</b>	<b>Periclem (-ea, -ēn)</b>	{ <b>Paridem,</b> <b>Parim (-in)</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>Orpheō</b>	<b>Pericle</b>	<b>Paride, Pari</b>
<b>VOC.</b>	<b>Orpheu</b>	<b>Periclēs (-ēs)</b>	<b>Pari</b>

**NOTE.**—The regular Latin forms may be used for most of the above.

**83. Other peculiarities are the following:—**

*α.* Delphinus, -i (M.), has also the form delphīn, -inis; Salamīs, -is (F.), has acc. Salamīna.

**b.** Most stems in *īd-* (nom. *-is*) often have also the forms of *i*-stems: as, *tigris*, gen. *-īdis* (*-īdos*) or *-is*; acc. *-īdem* (*-īda*) or *-im* (*-in*); abl. *-īde* or *-ī*. But many, including most feminine proper names, have acc. *-īdem* (*-ida*), abl. *-īde*, — not *-im* or *-ī*. (These stems are irregular also in Greek.)

<sup>1</sup> Dative, *hérðisin* (once only).



*c.* Stems in *en-* sometimes retain *-n* in the nominative: as, *Agamem-nōn* (or *Agamemnō*), genitive *-ōnis*, accusative *-ōna*.

*d.* Stems in *ont-* form the nominative in *-ōn*: as, *horizōn*, *Xenophōn*; but a few are occasionally Latinized into *ōn-* (nom. *-ō*): as, *Dracō*, *-ōnis*; *Antiphō*, *-ōnis*.

*e.* Like *Simois* are declined stems in *ant-*, *ent-*, and a few in *ūnt-* (nominative in *-ās*, *-īs*, *-ūs*): as, *Atlās*, *-antis*; *Trapezūs*, *-ūntis*.

*f.* Some words fluctuate between different declensions: as *Orpheus* between the second and the third.

*g.* *-ōn* is found in the genitive plural in a few Greek titles of books: as, *Metamorphōseōn*, of the *Metamorphoses* (Ovid's well-known poem); *Geōrgicōn*, of the *Georgics* (a poem of Virgil).

### Gender in the Third Declension

84. The Gender of nouns of this declension must be learned by practice and from the Lexicon. Many are masculine or feminine by nature or in accordance with the general rules for gender (p. 15). The most important rules for the others, with their principal exceptions, are the following: —<sup>1</sup>

85. Masculine are nouns in *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, *-ēs* (gen. *-itis*), *-ex* (gen. *-icis*): as, *color*, *flōs*, *imber*, *gurgēs* (*gurgitis*), *vertex* (*verticis*).

Exceptions are the following: —

*a.* Feminine are *arbor*; *cōs*, *dōs*; *linter*.

*b.* Neuter are *ador*, *aequor*, *cor*, *marmor*; *ōs* (*ōris*); also *os* (*ossis*); *cadāver*, *iter*, *tūber*, *ūber*, *vēr*; and names of plants and trees in *-er*: as, *acer*, *papāver*.

86. Feminine are nouns in *-ō*, *-ās*, *-ēs*, *-is*, *-iis*, *-x*, and in *-s* preceded by a consonant: as, *legiō*, *civītās*, *nūbēs*, *avis*, *virtūs*, *arx*, *urbs*. The nouns in *-ō* are mostly those in *-dō* and *-gō*, and abstract and collective nouns in *-iō*.

Exceptions are the following: —

*a.* Masculine are *leō*, *leōnis*; *ligō*, *ōnis*; *sermō*, *-ōnis*; also *cardō*, *harpagō*, *margō*, *ōrdō*, *turbō*; and concrete nouns in *-iō*: as, *pugiō*, *ūniō*, *papiliō*;<sup>2</sup>

*acīnacēs*, *ariēs*, *celēs*, *lebēs*, *pariēs*, *pēs*;

<sup>1</sup> Some nouns of doubtful or variable gender are omitted.

<sup>2</sup> Many nouns in *-ō* (gen. *-ōnis*) are masculine by signification: as, *gerō*, *carrier*; *restiō*, *ropemaker*; and family names (originally nicknames): as, *Cicerō*, *Nāsō*. See §§ 236. c, 255.

Nouns in *-nis* and *-guis* : *as, ignis, sanguis* ; also *axis, caulis, collis, cucumis, ensis, fascia, follis, fustis, lapis, mēnsis, orbis, piscis, postis, pulvis, vōmis* ;  
*mūs* ;  
*calix, fornix, grex, phoenix*, and nouns in *-ex* (gen. *-icis*) (§ 85) ;  
*dēns, fōns, mōns, pōns*.

NOTE.—Some nouns in *-is* and *-ns* which are masculine were originally adjectives or participles agreeing with a masculine noun : *as, Aprilis* (sc. *mēnsis*), *M., April* ; *oriēns* (sc. *sōl*), *M., the east* ; *annālis* (sc. *liber*), *M., the year-book*.

*b.* Neuter are *vās* (*vāsia*) ; *crūs, iūs, pūs, rūs, tūs*.

87. Neuter are nouns in *-a, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ūs* : *as, poēma, mare, animal, nōmen, calcar, rōbur, corpus* ; also *lac* and *caput*.

Exceptions are the following : —

*a.* Masculine are *sāl, sōl, pecten, vultur, lepus*.

*b.* Feminine is *pecus* (gen. *-udis*).

#### FOURTH DECLENSION

88. The Stem of nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in *u*. This is usually weakened to *i* before *-bus*. Masculine and Feminine nouns form the nominative by adding *s* ; Neuters have for nominative the simple stem, but with *ū* (long).

89. Nouns of the Fourth Declension are declined as follows :

*manus, F., hand*    *lacus, M., lake*  
 STEM manu-    STEM lacu-

*genū, N., knee*  
 STEM genu-

#### SINGULAR

			CASE-ENDINGS		CASE-ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>manus</i>	<i>lacus</i>	-us	<i>genū</i>	-ū
GEN.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>lacūs</i>	-ūs	<i>genūs</i>	-ūs
DAT.	<i>manui(-ū)</i>	<i>lacui(-ū)</i>	-ui(-ū)	<i>genū</i>	-ū
ACC.	<i>manum</i>	<i>lacum</i>	-um	<i>genū</i>	-ū
ABL.	<i>manū</i>	<i>lacū</i>	-ū	<i>genū</i>	-ū

#### PLURAL

NOM.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>lacūs</i>	-ūs	<i>genua</i>	-ua
GEN.	<i>manuum</i>	<i>lacuum</i>	-uum	<i>genuum</i>	-uum
DAT.	<i>manibus</i>	<i>lacubus</i>	-ibus(-ubus)	<i>genibus</i>	-ibus
ACC.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>lacūs</i>	-ūs	<i>genua</i>	-ua
ABL.	<i>manibus</i>	<i>lacubus</i>	-ibus(-ubus)	<i>genibus</i>	-ibus

## Gender in the Fourth Declension

90. Most nouns of the Fourth Declension in *-us* are Masculine.

*Exceptions:* The following are Feminine: *acus, anus, colus, domus, idūs* (plural), *manus, nurus, porticus, quinquātrūs* (plural), *socrus, tribus*, with a few names of plants and trees. Also, rarely, *penus, specus*.

91. The only Neuters of the Fourth Declension are *cornū, genū, pecū* (§ 105. *f*), *verū*.<sup>1</sup>

## Case-Forms in the Fourth Declension

92. The following peculiarities in case-forms of the Fourth Declension require notice:—

*a.* A genitive singular in *-ī* (as of the second declension) sometimes occurs in nouns in *-tus*: as, *senātus*, genitive *senātī* (regularly *senātūs*).

*b.* In the genitive plural *-uum* is sometimes pronounced as one syllable, and may then be written *-um*: as, *currum* (Aen. vi. 653) for *curruum*.

*c.* The dative and ablative plural in *-ūbus* are retained in *partus* and *tribus*; so regularly in *artus* and *lacus*, and occasionally in other words; *portus* and *specus* have both *-ubus* and *-ibus*.

*d.* Most names of plants and trees, and *colus, distaff*, have also forms of the second declension: as, *ficus, fig*, genitive *ficūs* or *fici*.

*e.* An old genitive singular in *-uis* or *-uos* and an old genitive plural in *-uom* occur rarely: as, *senātuis, senātuos; fluctuom*.

*f.* The ablative singular ended anciently in *-ūd* (cf. § 43. n. 1): as, *magistrātūd*.

93. *Domus* (F.), *house*, has two stems ending in *u-* and *o-*. Hence it shows forms of both the fourth and second declensions:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
GEN.	<i>domūs</i> ( <i>domī</i> , loc.)	<i>domuum</i> ( <i>domōrum</i> )
DAT.	<i>domui</i> ( <i>domō</i> )	<i>domibus</i>
ACC.	<i>domum</i>	<i>domōs</i> ( <i>domūs</i> )
ABL.	<i>domō</i> ( <i>domū</i> )	<i>domibus</i>

NOTE 1.—The Locative is *domī* (rarely *domui*), *at home*.

NOTE 2.—The Genitive *domī* occurs in Plautus; *domōrum* is late or poetic.

<sup>1</sup> A few other neuters of this declension are mentioned by the ancient grammarians as occurring in certain cases.

94. Most nouns of the Fourth Declension are formed from verb-stems, or roots, by means of the suffix *-tus* (*-sus*) (§ 238. *b*):

*cantus*, *song*, *CAN*, *canō*, *sing*; *cāsus* (for *†cad-tus*), *chance*, *CAD*, *cadō*, *fall*; *exulātus*, *exile*, from *exulō*, *to be an exile* (*exsul*).

*a*. Many are formed either from verb-stems not in use, or by analogy: *cōsulātus* (as if from *†cōsulō*, *-āre*), *senātus*, *incestus*.

*b*. The accusative and the dative or ablative of nouns in *-tus* (*-sus*) form the Supines of verbs (§ 159. *b*): *as*, *spectātum*, *petitum*; *dictū*, *visū*.

*c*. Of many verbal derivatives only the ablative is used as a noun: *as*, *iussū* (*meō*), *by* (*my*) *command*; so *iniussū* (*populī*), *without* (*the people's*) *order*. Of some only the dative is used: *as*, *divisui*.

### FIFTH DECLENSION (*Ē*-STEMS)

95. The Stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ē*-, which appears in all the cases. The Nominative is formed from the stem by adding *s*.

96. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are declined as follows:—

<i>rēs</i> , F., <i>thing</i> STEM <i>rē</i> -		<i>diēs</i> , M., <i>day</i> STEM <i>diē</i> -		<i>fidēs</i> , F., <i>faith</i> STEM <i>fidē</i> -	
SINGULAR					
NOM.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>		<i>fidēs</i>	CASE-ENDINGS -ēs
GEN.	<i>rēī</i>	<i>diēī</i> ( <i>diēs</i> )		<i>fidēī</i>	-ēī (-ēs)
DAT.	<i>rēī</i>	<i>diēī</i> ( <i>diēs</i> )		<i>fidēī</i>	-ēī (-ēs)
ACC.	<i>rem</i>	<i>diem</i>		<i>fidem</i>	-em
ABL.	<i>rē</i>	<i>diē</i>		<i>fidē</i>	-ē
PLURAL					
NOM.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>			-ēs
GEN.	<i>rērum</i>	<i>diērum</i>			-ērum
DAT.	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>diēbus</i>			-ēbus
ACC.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>			-ēs
ABL.	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>diēbus</i>			-ēbus

NOTE.—The *ē* of the stem is shortened in the genitive and dative singular of *fidēs*, *spēs*, *rēs*, but in these it is found long in early Latin. In the accusative singular *e* is always short.

## Gender in the Fifth Declension

97. All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except *diēs* (usually M.), *day*, and *meridiēs* (M.), *noon*.

*a.* *Diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time, and regularly feminine when used of time in general: as, *cōstitutā diē*, *on a set day*; *longa diēs*, *a long time*.

## Case-Forms in the Fifth Declension

98. The following peculiarities require notice:—

*a.* Of nouns of the fifth declension, only *diēs* and *rēs* are declined throughout. Most want the plural, which is, however, found in the nominative or accusative in *aciēs*, *effigiēs*, *ēluviēs*, *faciēs*, *glaciēs*, *seriēs*, *speciēs*, *spēs*.<sup>1</sup>

*b.* The Locative form of this declension ends in *-ē*. It is found only in certain adverbs and expressions of time:—

*hodiē*, *to-day*; *diē quārtō* (old, *quārti*), *the fourth day*;  
*perendiē*, *day after to-morrow*; *prīdiē*, *the day before*.

*c.* The fifth declension is closely related to the first, and several nouns have forms of both: as, *māteria*, *-iēs*; *saevitia*, *-iēs*. The genitive and dative in *-ēi* are rarely found in these words.

*d.* Some nouns vary between the fifth and the third declension: as, *requiēs*, *satiēs* (also *satiās*, genitive *-ātis*), *plēbēs* (also *plēbs*, genitive *plēbis*), *famēs*, genitive *famis*, ablative *famē*.

NOTE.—In the genitive and dative *-ēi* (*-ēi*) was sometimes contracted into *-ēi*: as, *tribūnus plēbēi*, *tribune of the people* (*plēbēs*). Genitives in *-i* and *-ē* also occur: as, *dii* (Aen. i. 636), *plēbi-scitum*, *aciē* (B. G. ii. 23). A few examples of the old genitive in *-ēs* are found (cf. *-ās* in the first declension, § 43. *b*). The dative has rarely *-ē*, and a form in *-i* is cited.

## DEFECTIVE NOUNS

## Nouns wanting in the Plural

99. Some nouns are ordinarily found in the Singular number only (*singulāria tantum*). These are—

1. Most proper names: as, *Caesar*, *Cæsar*; *Gallia*, *Gaul*.
2. Names of things not counted, but reckoned in mass: as, *aurum*, *gold*; *āēr*, *air*; *trīticum*, *wheat*.
3. Abstract nouns: as, *ambitiō*, *ambition*; *fortitūdō*, *courage*; *calor*, *heat*.

<sup>1</sup> The forms *faciērum*, *speciērum*, *speciēbus*, *spērum*, *spēbus*, are cited by grammarians, also *spērēs*, *spēribus*, and some of these occur in late authors.

100. Many of these nouns, however, are used in the plural in some other sense.

*a.* The plural of a proper name may be applied to two or more persons or places, or even things, and so become strictly common:—

*duodecim Caesarēs, the twelve Cæsars.*

*Galliae, the two Gauls (Cis- and Transalpine).*

*Castores, Castor and Pollux; Iovēs, images of Jupiter.*

*b.* The plural of names of things reckoned in mass may denote *particular objects*: as, *aera, bronze utensils, nivēs, snowflakes*; or *different kinds of a thing*: as, *āerēs, airs (good and bad).*

*c.* The plural of abstract nouns denotes *occasions or instances of the quality, or the like*:—

*quaedam excellentiae, some cases of superiority; ōtia, periods of rest; calorēs, frīgora, times of heat and cold.*

### Nouns wanting in the Singular

101. Some nouns are commonly or exclusively found in the Plural (*plūrālia tantum*). Such are—

1. Many names of towns: as, *Athēnae (Athens), Thūrii, Philippī, Vēii.*

2. Names of festivals and games: as, *Olympia, the Olympic Games; Bacchānālia, feast of Bacchus; Quinquātrūs, festival of Minerva; lūdī Rōmānī, the Roman Games.*

3. Names of classes: as, *optimātēs, the upper classes; māiōrēs, ancestors; liberī, children; penātēs, household gods; Quiritēs, citizens (of Rome).*

4. Words plural by signification: as, *arma, weapons; artūs, joints; divitiæ, riches; scālae, stairs; valvae, folding-doors; forēs, double-doors; angustiae, a narrow pass (narrows); moenia, city walls.*

NOTE 1.—Some words, plural by signification in Latin, are translated by English nouns in the singular number: as, *dēliciae, delight, darling; faucēs, throat; fidēs, lyre* (also singular in poetry); *insidiae, ambush; cervicēs, neck; viscera, flesh.*

NOTE 2.—The poets often use the plural number for the singular, sometimes for metrical reasons, sometimes from a mere fashion: as, *ōra (for ōs), the face; scēptra (for scēptum), sceptre; silentia (for silentium), silence.*

102. Some nouns of the above classes (§ 101. 1-4), have a corresponding singular, as noun or adjective, often in a special sense:

1. As noun, to denote a single object: as, *Bacchānal, a spot sacred to Bacchus; optimās, an aristocrat.*

2. As adjective: as, *Catō Māior, Cato the Elder.*

3. In a sense rare, or found only in early Latin: as, *scāla, a ladder; valva, a door; artus, a joint.*

## Nouns Defective in Certain Cases

103. Many nouns are defective in case-forms:<sup>1</sup>—

**a.** Indeclinable nouns, used only as nominative and accusative singular: *fās, nefās, instar, nihil, opus (need), secus*.

NOTE 1.—The indeclinable adjective *necesse* is used as a nominative or accusative.

NOTE 2.—The genitive *nihili* and the ablative *nihilō* (from *nihilum*, *nothing*) occur.

**b.** Nouns found in *one case* only (monoptotes):—

1. In the nominative singular: *glōs* (F.).

2. In the genitive singular: *dicis, nauci* (N.).

3. In the dative singular: *divisui* (M.) (cf. § 94. c).

4. In the accusative singular: *amussim* (M.); *vēnum* (dative *vēnō* in Tacitus).

5. In the ablative singular: *pondō* (N.); *māne* (N.); *astū* (M.), *by craft*; *iussū*, *iniussū*, *nātū*, and many other verbal nouns in *-us* (M.) (§ 94. c).

NOTE.—*Māne* is also used as an indeclinable accusative, and an old form *māni* is used as ablative. *Pondō* with a numeral is often apparently equivalent to *pounds*. A nominative singular *astus* and a plural *astūs* occur rarely in later writers.

6. In the accusative plural: *infitiās*.

**c.** Nouns found in *two cases* only (diptotes):—

1. In the nominative and ablative singular: *fors, forte* (F.).

2. In the genitive and ablative singular: *spontis* (rare), *sponse* (F.).

3. In the accusative singular and plural: *dicam, dicās* (F.).

4. In the accusative and ablative plural: *forās, foris* (F.) (cf. *forēs*), used as adverbs.

**d.** Nouns found in *three cases* only (triptotes):—

1. In the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular: *impetus, -um, -ī* (M.)<sup>2</sup>; *inēs, -em, -ē* (F.).

2. In the nominative, accusative, and dative or ablative plural: *grātēs, -ibus* (F.).

3. In the nominative, genitive, and dative or ablative plural: *iūgera, -um, -ibus* (N.); but *iūgerum*, etc., in the singular (cf. § 105. b).

**e.** Nouns found in *four cases* only (tetraptotes):—

In the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative singular: *diclōnis, -ī, -em, -e* (F.).

**f.** Nouns declined regularly in the *plural*, but defective in the *singular*:—

1. Nouns found in the singular, in genitive, dative, accusative, ablative: *frūgis, -em, -e* (F.); *opis, -ī* (once only), *-em, -e* (F.; nominative *Ops* as a divinity).

2. Nouns found in the dative, accusative, ablative: *precī, -em, -e* (F.).

3. Nouns found in the accusative and ablative: *cassem, -e* (F.); *sordem, -e* (F.).

4. Nouns found in the ablative only: *ambāge* (F.); *fauce* (F.); *obice* (C.).

**g.** Nouns regular in the *singular*, defective in the *plural*:—

<sup>1</sup> Some early or late forms and other rarities are omitted.

<sup>2</sup> The dative singular *impetui* and the ablative plural *impetibus* occur once each.

1. The following neuters have in the plural the nominative and accusative only: *fel* (*fella*), *far* (*farra*), *hordeum* (*hordea*), *iūs*, *broth* (*iūra*), *mel* (*mella*), *murmur* (*murmura*), *pūs* (*pūra*), *rūs* (*rūra*), *tūs* or *thūs* (*tūra*).

NOTE.—The neuter *iūs*, *right*, has only *iūra* in classical writers, but a very rare genitive plural *iūrum* occurs in old Latin.

2. *calx*, *cor*, *cōs*, *crux*, *fax*, *faex*, *lanx*, *lūx*, *nex*, *ōs* (*ōris*),<sup>1</sup> *os* (*ossis*),<sup>2</sup> *pāx*, *pīx*, *rōs*, *sāl*, *sōl*, *vas* (*vadis*), want the genitive plural.

3. Most nouns of the fifth declension want the whole or part of the plural (see § 98. a).

#### *h.* Nouns defective in both *singular* and *plural*.—

1. Noun found in the genitive, accusative, ablative singular; nominative, accusative, dative, ablative plural: *vicia*, -em, -e; -ēs, -ibus.

2. Noun found in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular; genitive plural wanting: *dapis*, -i, -em, -e; -ēs, -ibus.<sup>3</sup>

### VARIABLE NOUNS

104. Many nouns vary either in Declension or in Gender.

105. Nouns that vary in Declension are called *heteroclites*.<sup>4</sup>

*a.* *Colus* (f.), *distaff*; *domus* (f.), *house* (see § 93), and many names of plants in -us, vary between the Second and Fourth Declensions.

*b.* Some nouns vary between the Second and Third: *as*, *iūgerum*, -i, -ō, ablative -ō or -e, plural -a, -um, -ibus; *Mulciber*, genitive -berī and -beris; *sequester*, genitive -trī and -tris; *vās*, *vāsis*, and (old) *vāsum*, -i (§ 79. e).

*c.* Some vary between the Second, Third, and Fourth: *as*, *penus*, *penum*, genitive *penī* and *penoris*, ablative *penū*.

*d.* Many nouns vary between the First and Fifth (see § 98. c).

*e.* Some vary between the Third and Fifth. Thus, — *requiēs* has genitive -ētis, dative wanting, accusative -ētem or -em, ablative -ē (once -ēte); *famēs*, regularly of the third declension, has ablative *famē* (§ 76. n. 1), and *pūbēs* (m.) has once dative *pūbē* (in Plautus).

*f.* *Pecus* varies between the Third and Fourth, having *pecoris*, etc., but also nominative *pecū*, ablative *pecū*; plural *pecua*, genitive *pecuum*.

*g.* Many vary between different stems of the same declension: *as*, *femur* (n.), genitive -oris, also -inis (as from *†femen*); *iecur* (n.), genitive *iecinoris*, *iocinoris*, *iecoris*; *mūnus* (n.), plural *mūnera* and *mūnia*.

<sup>1</sup> The ablative plural *ōribus* is rare, the classical idiom being in *ōre omnium*, *in everybody's mouth*, etc., not in *ōribus omnium*.

<sup>2</sup> The genitive plural *ossium* is late; *ossuum* (from *ossua*, plural of a neuter u-stem) is early and late.

<sup>3</sup> An old nominative *daps* is cited.

<sup>4</sup> That is, "nouns of different inflections" (*ἑτερος*, *another*, and *κλίνω*, *to inflect*).



### 106. Nouns that vary in Gender are said to be *heterogeneous*.<sup>1</sup>

*a.* The following have a masculine form in *-us* and a neuter in *-um*: *balteus*, *cāseus*, *clipeus*, *collum*, *cingulum*, *pīleus*, *tergum*, *vāllum*, with many others of rare occurrence.

*b.* The following have in the Plural a different gender from that of the Singular:—

<i>balneum</i> (N.), <i>bath</i> ;	<i>balneae</i> (F.), <i>baths</i> (an establishment).
<i>caelum</i> (N.), <i>heaven</i> ;	<i>caelōs</i> (M. acc., Lucr.).
<i>carbasus</i> (F.), <i>a sail</i> ;	<i>carbasa</i> (N.) ( <i>-ōrum</i> ), <i>sails</i> .
<i>dēlicium</i> (N.), <i>pleasure</i> ;	<i>dēliciae</i> (F.), <i>pet.</i>
<i>epulum</i> (N.), <i>feast</i> ;	<i>epulae</i> (F.), <i>feast</i> .
<i>frēnum</i> (N.), <i>a bit</i> ;	<i>frēni</i> (M.) or <i>frēna</i> (N.), <i>a bridle</i> .
<i>iocus</i> (M.), <i>a jest</i> ;	<i>ioca</i> (N.), <i>ioci</i> (M.), <i>jest</i> s.
<i>locus</i> (M.), <i>place</i> ;	<i>loca</i> (N.), <i>loci</i> (M., usually <i>topics</i> , <i>passages</i> in books).
<i>rāstrum</i> (N.), <i>a rake</i> ;	<i>rāstri</i> (M.), <i>rāstra</i> (N.), <i>rakes</i> .

NOTE.—Some of these nouns are heteroclitics as well as heterogeneous.

### 107. Many nouns are found in the Plural in a peculiar sense:—

<i>aedēs</i> , <i>-is</i> (F.), <i>temple</i> ;	<i>aedēs</i> , <i>-ium</i> , <i>house</i> .
<i>aqua</i> (F.), <i>water</i> ;	<i>aquae</i> , <i>mineral springs</i> , <i>a watering-place</i> .
<i>auxilium</i> (N.), <i>help</i> ;	<i>auxilia</i> , <i>auxiliaries</i> .
<i>bonum</i> (N.), <i>a good</i> ;	<i>bona</i> , <i>goods</i> , <i>property</i> .
<i>carcer</i> (M.), <i>dungeon</i> ;	<i>carcerēs</i> , <i>barriers</i> (of race-course).
<i>castrum</i> (N.), <i>fort</i> ;	<i>castra</i> , <i>camp</i> .
<i>comitium</i> (N.), <i>place of assembly</i> ;	<i>comitia</i> , <i>an election</i> ( <i>town-meeting</i> ).
<i>cōpia</i> (F.), <i>plenty</i> ;	<i>cōpiae</i> , <i>stores</i> , <i>troops</i> .
<i>fidēs</i> (F.), <i>harp-string</i> ;	<i>fidēs</i> , <i>lyre</i> .
<i>finis</i> (M.), <i>end</i> ;	<i>finēs</i> , <i>bounds</i> , <i>territories</i> .
<i>fortūna</i> (F.), <i>fortune</i> ;	<i>fortūnae</i> , <i>possessions</i> .
<i>grātia</i> (F.), <i>favor</i> (rarely, <i>thanks</i> );	<i>grātiae</i> , <i>thanks</i> (also, <i>the Graces</i> ).
<i>hortus</i> (M.), <i>a garden</i> ;	<i>horti</i> , <i>pleasure-grounds</i> .
<i>impedimentum</i> (N.) <i>hindrance</i> ;	<i>impedimenta</i> , <i>baggage</i> .
<i>littera</i> (F.), <i>letter</i> (of alphabet);	<i>litterae</i> , <i>epistle</i> , <i>literature</i> .
<i>locus</i> (M.), <i>place</i> [plural <i>loca</i> (N.)];	<i>loci</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>topics</i> , <i>places</i> in books.
<i>lūdus</i> (M.), <i>sport</i> ;	<i>lūdī</i> , <i>public games</i> .
<i>mōs</i> (M.), <i>habit</i> , <i>custom</i> ;	<i>mōrēs</i> , <i>character</i> .
<i>nātālis</i> (M.), <i>birthday</i> ;	<i>nātālēs</i> , <i>descent</i> , <i>origin</i> .
<i>opera</i> (F.), <i>work</i> ;	<i>operae</i> , <i>day-laborers</i> ("hands").
[ <i>ops</i> ,] <i>opis</i> (F.), <i>help</i> (§ 103. f. 1);	<i>opēs</i> , <i>resources</i> , <i>wealth</i> .
<i>pars</i> (F.), <i>part</i> ;	<i>partēs</i> , <i>part</i> (on the stage), <i>party</i> .
<i>rōstrum</i> (N.), <i>beak of a ship</i> ;	<i>rōstra</i> , <i>speaker's platform</i> .
<i>sāl</i> (M. or N.), <i>salt</i> ;	<i>salēs</i> , <i>witticisms</i> .
<i>tabella</i> (F.), <i>tablet</i> ;	<i>tabellae</i> , <i>documents</i> , <i>records</i> .

<sup>1</sup> That is, "of different genders" (*ἑτερος*, *another*, and *γένος*, *gender*).

<sup>2</sup> In early writers the regular plural.

## NAMES OF PERSONS

108. A Roman had regularly three names:—(1) the *praenōmen*, or personal name; (2) the *nōmen*, or name of the *gēns* or house; (3) the *cōgnōmen*, or family name:—

Thus in *Mārcus Tullius Cicerō* we have—

*Mārcus*, the *praenōmen*, like our Christian or given name;

*Tullius*, the *nōmen*, properly an adjective denoting of the *Tullian gēns* (or house) whose original head was a real or supposed *Tullus*;

*Cicerō*, the *cōgnōmen*, or family name, often in origin a nickname, — in this case from *cicer*, a *vetch*, or small pea.

NOTE.—When two persons of the same family are mentioned together, the *cōgnōmen* is usually put in the plural: as, *Pūblius et Servius Sullae*.

a. A fourth or fifth name was sometimes given as a mark of honor or distinction, or to show adoption from another *gēns*.

Thus the complete name of Scipio the Younger was *Pūblius Cornēlius Scipiō Africānus Aemiliānus*: *Africānus*, from his exploits in Africa; *Aemiliānus*, as adopted from the *Aemilian gēns*.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE.—The Romans of the classical period had no separate name for these additions, but later grammarians invented the word *agnōmen* to express them.

b. Women had commonly in classical times no personal names, but were known only by the *nōmen* of their *gēns*.

Thus, the wife of Cicero was *Terentia*, and his daughter *Tullia*. A second daughter would have been called *Tullia secunda* or *minor*, a third daughter, *Tullia tertia*, and so on.

c. The commonest *praenomens* are thus abbreviated:—

A. Aulus.	L. Lūcius.	Q. Quintus.
App. (Ap.) Appius.	M. Mārcus.	Ser. Servius.
C. (G.) Gāius ( <i>Caius</i> ) (cf. § 1. a).	M'. Mānius.	Sex. (S.) Sextus.
Cn. (Gn.) Gnaeus ( <i>Cneius</i> ).	Mām. Māmercus.	Sp. Spurius.
D. Decimus.	N. (Num.) Numerius	T. Titus.
K. Kaesō ( <i>Caeso</i> ).	P. Pūblius.	Ti. (Tib.) Tiberius.

NOTE 1.—In the abbreviations C. and Cn., the initial character has the value of G (§ 1. a).

<sup>1</sup> In stating officially the full name of a Roman it was customary to include the *praenōmina* of the father, grandfather, and great-grandfather, together with the name of the tribe to which the individual belonged. Thus in an inscription we find *M. TVL-LIVS M. F. M. N. M. PR. COR. CICERO*, i.e. *Mārcus Tullius Mārci filius Mārci nepōs Mārci pronepōs Cornēliā tribū Cicerō*. The names of grandfather and great-grandfather as well as that of the tribe are usually omitted in literature. The name of a wife or daughter is usually accompanied by that of the husband or father in the genitive: as, *Postumia Servi Sulpicii* (Suet. Iul. 50), *Postumia, wife of Servius Sulpicius*; *Caecilia Metelli* (Div. i. 104), *Caecilia, daughter of Metellus*.

## ADJECTIVES

**109.** Adjectives and Participles are in general formed and declined like Nouns, differing from them only in their use.

1. In accordance with their use, they distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, and agree with their nouns in *gender, number, and case*. Thus, —

*bonus puer, the good boy.*

*bona puella, the good girl.*

*bonum dōnum, the good gift.*

2. In their inflection they are either (1) of the First and Second Declensions, or (2) of the Third Declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*ā-* AND *o-*STEMS)

**110.** Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (*ā-* and *o-*stems) are declined in the Masculine like *servus*, *puer*, or *ager*; in the Feminine like *stella*; and in the Neuter like *bellum*.

The regular type of an adjective of the First and Second Declensions is *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*, which is thus declined: —

*bonus, bona, bonum, good*

	MASCULINE STEM <i>bono-</i>	FEMININE STEM <i>bonā-</i>	NEUTER STEM <i>bono-</i>
SINGULAR			
NOM.	<i>bonus</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
GEN.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
DAT.	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
ACC.	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
ABL.	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>
VOC.	<i>bone</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
PLURAL			
NOM.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
GEN.	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
ACC.	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
ABL.	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>

NOTE. — Stems in *quo-* have nominative *-cus* (*-quos*), *-qua*, *-cum* (*-quom*), accusative *-cum* (*-quom*), *-quam*, *-cum* (*-quom*), to avoid *quu-* (see §§ 6. *b* and 46. *N. 2*). Thus, —

NOM.	propin <u>cus</u> ( <i>-quos</i> )	propin <u>qua</u>	propin <u>cum</u> ( <i>-quom</i> )
GEN.	propinqu <u>i</u>	propinqu <u>ae</u>	propinqu <u>i</u> , etc.

But most modern editions disregard this principle.

*a.* The Genitive Singular masculine of adjectives in *-ius* ends in *-ii*, and the Vocative in *-ie*; not in *-i*, as in nouns (cf. § 49. *b, c*); as, *Lacedaemonius*, *-ii, -ie*.

NOTE. — The possessive *meus*, *my*, has the vocative masculine *mī* (cf. § 145).

111. Stems ending in *ro-* preceded by *e* form the Nominative Masculine like *puer* (§ 47) and are declined as follows: —

*miser, misera, miserum, wretched*

	MASCULINE STEM <i>misero-</i>	FEMININE STEM <i>miserā-</i>	NEUTER STEM <i>miserō-</i>
SINGULAR			
NOM.	<i>miser</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
GEN.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserī</i>
DAT.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserō</i>
ACC.	<i>miserum</i>	<i>miseram</i>	<i>miserum</i>
ABL.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserō</i>
PLURAL			
NOM.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>misera</i>
GEN.	<i>miserōrum</i>	<i>miserārum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>
ACC.	<i>miserōs</i>	<i>miserās</i>	<i>misera</i>
ABL.	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>

*a.* Like *miser* are declined *asper*, *gibber*, *lacer*, *liber*, *prosper* (also *prosperus*), *satur* (*-ura, -urum*), *tener*, with compounds of *-fer* and *-ger*: as, *saetiger, -era, -erum, bristle-bearing*; also, usually, *dexter*. In these the *e* belongs to the stem; but in *dextra* it is often omitted: as, *dextra manus, the right hand*.

NOTE. — Stems in *tro-* (as *procērus*), with *mōrigērus*, *propērus*, have the regular nominative masculine in *-us*.

*b.* The following lack a nominative singular masculine in classic use: *cētera, infera, postera, supera*. They are rarely found in the singular except in certain phrases: as, *posterō diē, the next day*.

NOTE. — An ablative feminine in *-ō* is found in a few Greek adjectives: as, *lecticā octōphorō* (Verr. v. 27).

112. Stems in *ro-* preceded by a consonant form the Nominative Masculine like *ager* (§ 47) and are declined as follows:—

*niger, nigra, nigrum. black*

	MASCULINE STEM <i>nigro-</i>	FEMININE STEM <i>nigrā-</i>	NEUTER STEM <i>nigro-</i>
SINGULAR			
NOM.	<i>niger</i>	<i>nigra</i>	<i>nigrum</i>
GEN.	<i>nigrī</i>	<i>nigrae</i>	<i>nigrī</i>
DAT.	<i>nigrō</i>	<i>nigrae</i>	<i>nigrō</i>
ACC.	<i>nigrum</i>	<i>nigram</i>	<i>nigrum</i>
ABL.	<i>nigrō</i>	<i>nigrā</i>	<i>nigrō</i>

PIURAL			
NOM.	<i>nigrī</i>	<i>nigrae</i>	<i>nigra</i>
GEN.	<i>nigrōrum</i>	<i>nigrārum</i>	<i>nigrōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>nigrīs</i>	<i>nigrīs</i>	<i>nigrīs</i>
ACC.	<i>nigrōs</i>	<i>nigrās</i>	<i>nigra</i>
ABL.	<i>nigrīs</i>	<i>nigrīs</i>	<i>nigrīs</i>

*α.* Like *niger* are declined *aeger, āter, crēber, faber, glaber, integer, lūdicer, macer, piger, pulcher, ruber, sacer, scaber, sinister, taeter, vafer*; also the possessives *noster, vester* (§ 145).

113. The following nine adjectives with their compounds have the Genitive Singular in *-ius* and the Dative in *-i* in all genders:

<i>alius</i> (N. <i>aliud</i> ), <i>other</i> .	<i>tōtus</i> , <i>whole</i> .	<i>alter, -terius</i> , <i>the other</i> .
<i>nūllus</i> , <i>no, none</i> .	<i>ūllus</i> , <i>any</i> .	<i>neuter, -trius</i> , <i>neither</i> .
<i>sōlus</i> , <i>alone</i> .	<i>ūnus</i> , <i>one</i> .	<i>uter, -trius</i> , <i>which (of two)</i> .

Of these the singular is thus declined:—

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
GEN.	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>
DAT.	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>
ACC.	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
ABL.	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>
NOM.	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alter</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>alterum</i>
GEN.	<i>alfus</i>	<i>alfus</i>	<i>alfus</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>
DAT.	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>
ACC.	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteram</i>	<i>alterum</i>
ABL.	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>alterō</i>	<i>alterā</i>	<i>alterō</i>

*a.* The plural of these words is regular, like that of *bonus* (§ 110).

*b.* The genitive in *-ius*, dative in *-i*, and neuter in *-d* are pronominal in origin (cf. *illius*, *illi*, *illud*, and § 146).

*c.* The *i* of the genitive ending *-ius*, though originally long, may be made short in verse; so often in *alterius* and regularly in *utriusque*.

*d.* Instead of *alius*, *alterius* is commonly used, or in the possessive sense the adjective *aliēnus*, *belonging to another, another's*.

*e.* In compounds — as *alteruter* — sometimes both parts are declined, sometimes only the latter. Thus, *alteri utri* or *alterutri*, *to one of the two*.

NOTE. — The regular genitive and dative forms (as in *bonus*) are sometimes found in some of these words: as, genitive and dative feminine, *aliae*; dative masculine, *aliō*. Rare forms are *alis* and *alid* (for *alius*, *aliud*).

### THIRD DECLENSION (CONSONANT AND *i*-STEMS)

114. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus classified: —

1. Adjectives of Three Terminations in the nominative singular, — one for each gender: as, *acer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.

2. Adjectives of Two Terminations, — masculine and feminine the same: as, *levis* (M., F.), *leve* (N.).

3. Adjectives of One Termination, — the same for all three genders: as, *atrōx*.

*a.* Adjectives of two and three terminations are true *i*-stems and hence retain in the ablative singular *-i*, in the neuter plural *-ia*, in the genitive plural *-ium*, and in the accusative plural regularly *-is* (see §§ 73 and 74).<sup>1</sup>

#### Adjectives of Three and of Two Terminations

115. Adjectives of Three Terminations are thus declined: —

*acer*, *ācris*, *ācre*, *keen*, STEM *ācri-*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
GEN.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrīs (-ēs)</i>	<i>ācrīs (-ēs)</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

<sup>1</sup> But the forms of some are doubtful.

**α.** Like *acer* are declined the following stems in *ri*:—

*alacer, campester, celeber, equester, palūster, pedester, puter, salūber, silvester, terrester, volucer.* So also names of months in *-ber*: *as, Octōber* (cf. § 68).

NOTE 1.—This formation is comparatively late, and hence, in the poets and in early Latin, either the masculine or the feminine form of these adjectives was sometimes used for both genders: *as, coetus alacris* (Enn.). In others, as *faenebris, fūnebris, illūstris, lūgubris, mediocris, muliebris*, there is no separate masculine form at all, and these are declined like *levis* (§ 116).

NOTE 2.—*Celer, celeris, celere, swift*, has the genitive plural *celorum*, used only as a noun, denoting a military rank. The proper name *Celer* has the ablative in *-e*.

### 116. Adjectives of Two Terminations are thus declined:—

levis, leve, light, STEM <i>levi-</i>				
SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
NOM.	levis	leve	levēs	levia
GEN.	levis	levis	levium	levium
DAT.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus
ACC.	levem	leve	levīs (-ēs)	levia
ABL.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus

NOTE.—Adjectives of two and three terminations sometimes have an ablative in *-e* in poetry, rarely in prose.

### Adjectives of One Termination

117. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are Consonant stems; but most of them, except Comparatives, have the following forms of *i*-stems:—<sup>1</sup>

- ī in the ablative singular (but often *-e*);
- ia in the nominative and accusative plural neuter;
- ium in the genitive plural;
- is (as well as *-ēs*) in the accusative plural masculine and feminine.

In the other cases they follow the rule for Consonant stems.

**α.** These adjectives, except stems in *l-* or *r-*, form the nominative singular from the stem by adding *s*: *as, atrōx* (stem *atrōc-* + *s*), *egēs* (stem *egent-* + *s*).<sup>2</sup>

**β.** Here belong the present participles in *-ns* (stem *nt-*):<sup>2</sup> *as, amāns, monēns*. They are declined like *egēs* (but cf. § 121).

<sup>1</sup> For details see § 121.

<sup>2</sup> Stems in *nt-* omit *t* before the nominative *-s*.

118. Adjectives of one termination are declined as follows:—

<i>atrōx</i> , <i>fierce</i> , STEM <i>atrōc-</i>			<i>egēns</i> , <i>needy</i> , STEM <i>egent-</i>	
SINGULAR				
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
NOM.	<i>atrōx</i>	<i>atrōx</i>	<i>egēns</i>	<i>egēns</i>
GEN.	<i>atrōcis</i>	<i>atrōcis</i>	<i>egentis</i>	<i>egentis</i>
DAT.	<i>atrōcī</i>	<i>atrōcī</i>	<i>egenti</i>	<i>egenti</i>
ACC.	<i>atrōcem</i>	<i>atrōx</i>	<i>egentem</i>	<i>egēns</i>
ABL.	<i>atrōcī (-e)</i>	<i>atrōcī (-e)</i>	<i>egenti (-e)</i>	<i>egenti (-e)</i>
PLURAL				
NOM.	<i>atrōcēs</i>	<i>atrōcia</i>	<i>egentēs</i>	<i>egentia</i>
GEN.	<i>atrōcium</i>	<i>atrōcium</i>	<i>egentium</i>	<i>egentium</i>
DAT.	<i>atrōcibus</i>	<i>atrōcibus</i>	<i>egentibus</i>	<i>egentibus</i>
ACC.	<i>atrōcis (-ēs)</i>	<i>atrōcia</i>	<i>egentis (-ēs)</i>	<i>egentia</i>
ABL.	<i>atrōcibus</i>	<i>atrōcibus</i>	<i>egentibus</i>	<i>egentibus</i>

119. Other examples are the following:—

<i>concors, harmonious</i> STEM concord-			<i>praeceps, headlong</i> STEM praecipit-	
SINGULAR				
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
NOM.	<i>concors</i>	<i>concors</i>	<i>praeceps</i>	<i>praeceps</i>
GEN.	<i>concordis</i>	<i>concordis</i>	<i>praecipitis</i>	<i>praecipitis</i>
DAT.	<i>concordī</i>	<i>concordī</i>	<i>praecipitī</i>	<i>praecipitī</i>
ACC.	<i>concordem</i>	<i>concors</i>	<i>praecipitem</i>	<i>praeceps</i>
ABL.	<i>concordī</i>	<i>concordī</i>	<i>praecipitī</i>	<i>praecipitī</i>
PLURAL				
NOM.	<i>concordēs</i>	<i>concordia</i>	<i>praecipitēs</i>	<i>praecipitia</i>
GEN.	<i>concordium</i>	<i>concordium</i>	[ <i>praecipitium</i> ] <sup>1</sup>	
DAT.	<i>concordibus</i>	<i>concordibus</i>	<i>praecipitibus</i>	<i>praecipitibus</i>
ACC.	<i>concordis (-ēs)</i>	<i>concordia</i>	<i>praecipitis (-ēs)</i>	<i>praecipitia</i>
ABL.	<i>concordibus</i>	<i>concordibus</i>	<i>praecipitibus</i>	<i>praecipitibus</i>

<sup>1</sup> Given by grammarians, but not found.



*iēns, going*

STEM eunt-

*pār, equal*

STEM par-

*dīves, rich*

STEM divit-

## SINGULAR

	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
NOM.	<i>iēns</i>	<i>iēns</i>	<i>pār</i>	<i>pār</i>	<i>dīves</i>	<i>dīves</i>
GEN.	<i>euntis</i>	<i>euntis</i>	<i>paris</i>	<i>paris</i>	<i>divitis</i>	<i>divitis</i>
DAT.	<i>eunti</i>	<i>eunti</i>	<i>pari</i>	<i>pari</i>	<i>diviti</i>	<i>diviti</i>
ACC.	<i>euntem</i>	<i>iēns</i>	<i>parem</i>	<i>pār</i>	<i>divitem</i>	<i>dīves</i>
ABL.	<i>eunte (-i)</i>	<i>eunte (-i)</i>	<i>pari</i>	<i>pari</i>	<i>divite</i>	<i>divite</i>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>euntēs</i>	<i>euntia</i>	<i>parēs</i>	<i>paria</i>	<i>divitēs</i>	<i>[dītia]</i>
GEN.	<i>euntium</i>	<i>euntium</i>	<i>parium</i>	<i>parium</i>	<i>divitum</i>	<i>divitum</i>
DAT.	<i>euntibus</i>	<i>euntibus</i>	<i>paribus</i>	<i>paribus</i>	<i>divitibus</i>	<i>divitibus</i>
ACC.	<i>euntis (-ēs)</i>	<i>euntia</i>	<i>paris (-ēs)</i>	<i>paria</i>	<i>divitis (-ēs)</i>	<i>[dītia]</i>
ABL.	<i>euntibus</i>	<i>euntibus</i>	<i>paribus</i>	<i>paribus</i>	<i>divitibus</i>	<i>divitibus</i>

*über, fertile*

STEM über-

*vetus, old*

STEM veter-

## SINGULAR

	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
NOM.	<i>über</i>	<i>über</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>
GEN.	<i>überis</i>	<i>überis</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>
DAT.	<i>überi</i>	<i>überi</i>	<i>veteri</i>	<i>veteri</i>
ACC.	<i>überem</i>	<i>über</i>	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>
ABL.	<i>überi</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>überi</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>vetere (-i)</i>	<i>vetere (-i)</i>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>überēs</i>	<i>übera</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
GEN.	<i>überum</i>	<i>überum</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
DAT.	<i>überibus</i>	<i>überibus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
ACC.	<i>überēs</i>	<i>übera</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
ABL.	<i>überibus</i>	<i>überibus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

NOTE. — Of these *vetus* is originally an *s*-stem. In most *s*-stems the *r* has intruded itself into the nominative also, as *bi-corpor* (for *†bi-corpos*), *dēgener* (for *†dē-genes*).

<sup>1</sup> An ablative in *-e* is very rare.

## Declension of Comparatives

## 120. Comparatives are declined as follows:—

	<b>melior, better</b> STEM meliōr- for meliōs-		<b>plūs, more</b> STEM plūr- for plūs-
	<b>SINGULAR</b>		
	<b>M., F.</b>	<b>N.</b>	<b>M., F.</b>
<b>NOM.</b>	melior	melius	—
<b>GEN.</b>	meliōris	meliōris	—
<b>DAT.</b>	meliōrī	meliōrī	—
<b>ACC.</b>	meliōrem	melius	—
<b>ABL.</b>	meliōre (-ī)	meliōre (-ī)	—
			<b>N.</b>
			plūs
			plūris
			—
			plūs
			plūre
	<b>PLURAL</b>		
<b>NOM.</b>	meliōrēs	meliōra	plūrēs
<b>GEN.</b>	meliōrum	meliōrum	plūrium
<b>DAT.</b>	meliōribus	meliōribus	plūribus
<b>ACC.</b>	meliōrēs (-īs)	meliōra	plūrēs (-īs)
<b>ABL.</b>	meliōribus	meliōribus	plūribus
			plūra
			plūrium
			plūribus
			plūra
			plūribus

a. All comparatives except *plūs* are declined like *melior*.

b. The stem of comparatives properly ended in *ōs-*; but this became *or* in the nominative masculine and feminine, and *ōr-* in all other cases except the nominative and accusative singular neuter, where *s* is retained and *ō* is changed to *ū* (cf. *honōr*, *-ōris*; *corpus*, *-ōris*). Thus comparatives appear to have two terminations.

c. The neuter singular *plūs* is used only as a noun. The genitive (rarely the ablative) is used only as an expression of value (cf. § 417). The dative is not found in classic use. The compound *complūrēs*, *several*, has sometimes neuter plural *complūria*.

## Case-Forms of Consonant Stems

## 121. In adjectives of Consonant stems—

a. The Ablative Singular commonly ends in *-ī*, but sometimes *-e*.

1. Adjectives used as nouns (as *superstes*, *survivor*) have *-e*.

2. Participles in *-ns* used as *such* (especially in the ablative absolute, § 419), or as nouns, regularly have *-e*; but participles used as adjectives have regularly *-ī*:—

*dominō imperante*, at the master's command; *ab amante*, by a lover; *ab amanti muliere*, by a loving woman.

3. The following have regularly -ī: — *āmēna*, *anceps*, *concor*s (and other compounds of *cor*), *cōnsors* (but as a substantive, -e), *dēgener*, *hebes*, *ingēns*, *inops*, *memor* (and compounds), *pār* (in prose), *perpes*, *praeceps*, *praepes*, *teres*.

4. The following have regularly -e: — *caeles*, *compos*, [*†dēses*], *dīves*, *hospes*, *particeps*, *pauper*, *prīnceps*, *sōspes*, *superstes*. So also *patrials* (see § 71. 5) and stems in *āt-*, *īt-*, *nt-*, *rt-*, when used as nouns, and sometimes when used as adjectives.

*b.* The Genitive Plural ends commonly in -ium, but has -um in the following:<sup>1</sup> —

1. Always in *compos*, *dīves*, *inops*, *particeps*, *praepes*, *prīnceps*, *supplex*, and compounds of nouns which have -um: *as*, *quadru-pēs*, *bi-color*.

2. Sometimes, in poetry, in participles in -ns: *as*, *silentum concilium*, *a coun-til of the silent shades* (Aen. vi. 432).

*c.* The Accusative Plural regularly ends in -is, but comparatives commonly have -ēs.

*d.* *Vetus* (gen. -*ēris*) and *pūbes* (gen. -*ēris*) regularly have -e in the ablative singular, -a in the nominative and accusative plural, and -um in the genitive plural. For *ūber*, see § 119.

*e.* A few adjectives of one termination, used as nouns, have a feminine form in -a: *as*, *clienta*, *hospita*, with the appellative *Iūnō Sōspita*.

### Irregularities and Special Uses of Adjectives

#### 122. The following special points require notice: —

*a.* Several adjectives vary in declension: *as*, *gracilis* (-us), *hilaris* (-us), *inermis* (-us), *bicolor* (-*ōrus*).

*b.* A few adjectives are indeclinable: *as*, *damnās*, *frūgī* (really a dative of service, see § 382. 1. N. <sup>2</sup>), *nēquam* (originally an adverb), *necesse*, and the pronominal forms *tot*, *quot*, *aliquot*, *totidem*. *Potis* is often used as an indeclinable adjective, but sometimes has *pote* in the neuter.

*c.* Several adjectives are defective: *as*, *exspēs* (only nom.), *exlēx* (*exlēgem*) (only nom. and acc. sing.), *pernox* (*pernocte*) (only nom. and abl. sing.); and *primōris*, *sēminecī*, etc., which lack the nominative singular.

*d.* Many adjectives, from their signification, can be used only in the masculine and feminine. These may be called *adjectives of common gender*.

Such are *adulēscēns*, *youthful*; [*†dēses*], -*idis*, *slothful*; *inops*, -*opis*, *poor*; *sōspes*, -*itis*, *safe*. Similarly, *senex*, *old man*, and *iuvenis*, *young man*, are sometimes called *masculine adjectives*.

For Adjectives used as Nouns, see §§ 288, 289; for Nouns used as Adjectives, see § 321. c; for Adjectives used as Adverbs, see § 214; for Adverbs used as Adjectives, see § 321. d.

<sup>1</sup> Forms in -um sometimes occur in a few others.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

123. In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison: the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

124. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding *-ior* (neuter *-ius*),<sup>1</sup> the Superlative by adding *-issimus* (*-a, -um*), to the stem of the Positive, which loses its final vowel:—

cārus, <i>dear</i> (stem cārō-);	cārior, <i>dearer</i> ;	cārissimus, <i>dearest</i> .
levis, <i>light</i> (stem levi-);	levior, <i>lighter</i> ;	levissimus, <i>lightest</i> .
fēlix, <i>happy</i> (stem fēlic-);	fēlicior, <i>happier</i> ;	fēlicissimus, <i>happiest</i> .
hebes, <i>dull</i> (stem hebet-);	hebetior, <i>duller</i> ;	hebetissimus, <i>dullest</i> .

NOTE.—A form of diminutive is made upon the stem of some comparatives: as, *grandiusculus*, *a little larger* (see § 243).

*a.* Participles when used as adjectives are regularly compared:—

patiēns, *patient*; patientior, *patientissimus*.

apertus, *open*; apertior, *apertissimus*.

125. Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the nominative. The comparative is regular:—

ācer, *keen*; ācrior, *ācerrimus*.

miser, *wretched*; miserior, *miserrimus*.

*a.* So *vetus* (gen. *veteris*) has superlative *veterrimus*, from the old form *veter*; and *mātūrus*, besides its regular superlative (*mātūrissimus*), has a rare form *mātūrrimus*.

For the comparative of *vetus*, *vetustior* (from *vetustus*) is used.

126. Six adjectives in *-ilis* form the Superlative by adding *-ilimus* to the stem clipped of its final *i*. These are *facilis*, *difficilis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*.

facilis (stem *facili-*), *easy*; facillior, *facillimus*.

127. Compounds in *-dicus* (*saying*) and *-volus* (*willing*) take in their comparison the forms of the corresponding participles *dicēns* and *volēns*, which were anciently used as adjectives:—

maledicus, *slandorous*; maledicentior, *maledicentissimus*.

malevolus, *spiteful*; malevolentior, *malevolentissimus*.

<sup>1</sup>The comparative suffix (earlier *-iōs*) is akin to the Greek *-ίων*, or the Sanskrit *-iyan*s. That of the superlative (*-issimus*) is a double form of uncertain origin. It appears to contain the *is-* of the old suffix *-is-to-s* (seen in ἡδ-ιστο-ς and English *sweetest*) and also the old *-mo-s* (seen in *pri-mus*, *mini-mus*, etc.). The endings *-limus* and *-rimus* are formed by assimilation (§ 15. 6) from *-simus*. The comparative and superlative are really new stems, and are not strictly to be regarded as forms of inflection.

*a.* So, by analogy, compounds in *-ficus* :—

*māgnificus, grand*; *māgnificentior, māgnificentissimus*.

**128.** Some adjectives are compared by means of the adverbs *magis, more*, and *maximē, most*.

So especially adjectives in *-us* preceded by *e* or *i* :—

*idōneus, fit*; *magis idōneus, maximē idōneus*.

NOTE.—But *pius* has *piissimus* in the superlative, — a form condemned by Cicero, but common in inscriptions; equally common, however, is the irregular *pientissimus*.

### Irregular Comparison

**129.** Several adjectives have in their comparison irregular forms :—

<i>bonus, good</i> ;	<i>melior, better</i> ;	<i>optimus, best</i> .
<i>malus, bad</i> ;	<i>pēior, worse</i> ;	<i>peissimus, worst</i> .
<i>māgnus, great</i> ;	<i>māior, greater</i> ;	<i>maximus, greatest</i> .
<i>parvus, small</i> ;	<i>minor, less</i> ;	<i>minimus, least</i> .
<i>multus, much</i> ;	<i>plūs (N.) (§ 120), more</i> ;	<i>plūrimus, most</i> .
<i>multi, many</i> ;	<i>plūrēs, more</i> ;	<i>plūrimī, most</i> .
<i>nēquam</i> (indecl., § 122. b), <i>worthless</i> ;	<i>nēquior</i> ;	<i>nēquissimus</i> .
<i>frūgi</i> (indecl., § 122. b), <i>use- ful, worthy</i> ;	<i>frūgālior</i> ;	<i>frūgālissimus</i> .
<i>dexter, on the right, handy</i> ;	<i>dexterior</i> ;	<i>dextimus</i> .

NOTE.—These irregularities arise from the use of different stems (cf. § 127). Thus *frūgālior* and *frūgālissimus* are formed from the stem *frūgāl-*, but are used as the comparative and superlative of the indeclinable *frūgi*.

### Defective Comparison

**130.** Some Comparatives and Superlatives appear without a Positive :—

<i>ōclor, swifter</i> ;	<i>ōclissimus, swiftest</i> .
<i>potior, preferable</i> ; <sup>1</sup>	<i>potissimus, most important</i> .

*a.* The following are formed from stems not used as adjectives :<sup>2</sup>—

<sup>1</sup> The old positive *potis* occurs in the sense of *able, possible*.

<sup>2</sup> The forms in *-trā* and *-terus* were originally comparative (cf. *alter*), so that the comparatives in *-terior* are double comparatives. *Inferus* and *superus* are comparatives of a still more primitive form (cf. the English comparative in *-er*).

The superlatives in *-timus* (*-tumus*) are relics of old forms of comparison; those in *-mus* like *īmus, summus, primus*, are still more primitive. Forms like *extrēmus* are superlatives of a comparative. In fact, comparison has always been treated with an accumulation of endings, as children say *furtherer* and *furtherest*.

cis, citrā (adv., <i>on this side</i> ):	citerior, <i>hither</i> ;	citimus, <i>hithermost</i> .
dē (prep., <i>down</i> ):	dēterior, <i>worse</i> ;	dēterrīmus, <i>worst</i> .
in, intrā (prep., <i>in, within</i> ):	interior, <i>inner</i> ;	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
prae, prō (prep., <i>before</i> ):	prior, <i>former</i> ;	primus, <i>first</i> .
prope (adv., <i>near</i> ):	propior, <i>nearer</i> ;	proximus, <i>next</i> .
ultrā (adv., <i>beyond</i> ):	ulterior, <i>farther</i> ;	ultimus, <i>farthest</i> .

**b.** Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):—

exterus, <i>outward</i> ;	exterior, <i>outer</i> ;	extrēmus (extimus), <i>outmost</i> .
Inferus, <i>below</i> (see § 111. b);	inferior, <i>lower</i> ;	Infimus (imus), <i>lowest</i> .
posterus, <i>following</i> ;	posterior, <i>latter</i> ;	postrēmus (postumus), <i>last</i> .
superus, <i>above</i> ;	superior, <i>higher</i> ;	suprēmus or summus, <i>highest</i> .

But the plurals, *exteri, foreigners*; *inferi, the gods below*; *posterī, posterity*; *superi, the heavenly gods*, are common.

NOTE.—The superlative *postumus* has the special sense of *last-born*, and was a well-known surname.

**131.** Several adjectives lack the Comparative or the Superlative:—

**a.** The Comparative is rare or wanting in the following:—

bellus,	inclutus (or inclitus),	novus,
caesius,	invictus,	pius,
falsus,	invitus,	sacer,
fidus (with its compounds),	meritus,	vafer.

**b.** The Superlative is wanting in many adjectives in *-ilis* or *-ibilis* (as, *agilis, probābilis*), and in the following:—

actūsus	exilis	prōclivis	surdus
agrestis	ingēns	propinquus	taciturnus
alacer	iēfūnus	satur	tempestivus
arcānus	longinquus	sēgnis	teres
caecus	obliquus	sērus	vicinus
diūturnus	opimus	supīnus	

**c.** From *iuvenis, youth*, *senex, old man* (cf. § 122. d), are formed the comparatives *iūnior, younger*, *senior, older*. For these, however, *minor nātū* and *maior nātū* are sometimes used (*nātū* being often omitted).

The superlative is regularly expressed by *minimus* and *maximus*, with or without *nātū*.

NOTE.—In these phrases *nātū* is ablative of specification (see § 418).

**d.** Many adjectives (as *aureus, golden*) are from their meaning incapable of comparison.

NOTE.—But each language has its own usage in this respect. Thus, *niger, glossy black*, and *candidus, shining white*, are compared; but not *āter* or *albus*, meaning *absolute* dead black or white (except that *Plautus* once has *ātrior*).

## NUMERALS

132. The Latin Numerals may be classified as follows:—

## I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES:

1. Cardinal Numbers, answering the question *how many?* as, *ūnus, one*; *duo, two*, etc.

2. Ordinal Numbers,<sup>1</sup> adjectives derived (in most cases) from the Cardinals, and answering the question *which in order?* as, *primus, first*; *secundus, second*, etc.

3. Distributive Numerals, answering the question *how many at a time?* as, *singulī, one at a time*; *binī, two by two*, etc.

II. NUMERAL ADVERBS, answering the question *how often?* as, *semel, once*; *bis, twice*, etc.

## Cardinals and Ordinals

133. These two series are as follows:—

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN NUMERALS
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i>	primus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>	I
2. duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus (alter), <i>second</i>	II
3. trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	IIII or IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIII or IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim (decem (et) trēs)	tertius decimus (decimus (et) tertius)	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIII or XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēviginti (octōdecim)	duodēvicēnsimus (octāvus decimus)	XVIII

<sup>1</sup> The Ordinals (except *secundus, tertius, octāvus, nōnus*) are formed by means of suffixes related to those used in the superlative and in part identical with them. Thus, *decimus* (compare the form *infimus*) may be regarded as the last of a series of ten; *primus* is a superlative of a stem akin to *prō*; the forms in -tus (*quārtus, quīntus, sextus*) may be compared with the corresponding Greek forms in -τος, and with superlatives in -ω-τος-, while the others have the superlative ending -timus (changed to -simus). Of the exceptions, *secundus* is a participle of *sequor*; *alter* is a comparative form (compare -ρεος in Greek), and *nōnus* is contracted from *novenos*. The cardinal multiples of ten are compounds of -gint- 'ten' (a fragment of a derivative from *decem*).

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN NUMERALS
19. ūndēviginti (novendecim)	ūndēvicēnsimus (nōnus decimus)	XVIII or XIX
20. viginti	vicēnsimus (vigēnsimus)	XX
21. viginti ūnus (or ūnus et viginti, etc.)	vicēnsimus primus (ūnus et vicēnsimus, etc.)	XXI
30. trīgintā	tricēnsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	XXXX or XL
50. quinquāgintā	quinquāgēnsimus	↓ or L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	LXXXX or XC
100. centum	centēnsimus	C
101. centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēnsimus primus, etc.	CI
200. ducenti, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC
300. trecenti	trecentēnsimus	CCC
400. quadringenti	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC
500. quingenti	quingentēnsimus	D
600. sescenti	sescentēnsimus	DC
700. septingenti	septingentēnsimus	DCC
800. octingenti	octingentēnsimus	DCCC
900. nōngenti	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC
1000. mille	millēnsimus	CO (CIC) or M
5000. quinque milia (millia)	quinqūēns millēnsimus	IDC
10,000. decem milia (millia)	decīēns millēnsimus	CCIDC
100,000. centum milia (millia)	centīēns millēnsimus	CCCIDC

NOTE 1. — The forms in -ēnsimus are often written without the *n*: as, vicēsimus, etc.

NOTE 2. — The forms octōdecim, novendecim are rare, duodēviginti (*two from twenty*), ūndēviginti (*one from twenty*), being used instead. So 28, 29; 38, 39; etc. may be expressed either by the subtraction of *two* and *one* or by the addition of *eight* and *nine* respectively.

### Declension of Cardinals and Ordinals

**134.** Of the Cardinals only ūnus, duo, trēs, the *hundreds* above one hundred, and mille when used as a noun, are declinable.

*a.* For the declension of ūnus, see § 113. It often has the meaning of *same* or *only*. The plural is used in this sense; but also, as a simple numeral, to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning: as, ūna castra, *one camp* (cf. § 137. *b*). The plural occurs also in the phrase ūnī et alterī, *one party and the other* (the ones and the others).

*b.* Duo,<sup>1</sup> two, and trēs, three, are thus declined: —

<sup>1</sup> The form in -o is a remnant of the *dual number*, which was lost in Latin, but is found in cognate languages. So in ambō, *both*, which preserves -ō (cf. δῶω and § 629. *b*).



	M.	F.	N.	M., F.	N.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ACC.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs (trīs)	tria
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

NOTE. — *Ambō*, both, is declined like *duo*.

c. The hundreds, up to 1000, are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are regularly declined like the plural of *bonus*.

d. *Mille*, a thousand, is in the singular an indeclinable adjective: —

*mille modis*, in a thousand ways.

*cum mille hominibus*, with a thousand men.

*mille trahēns variōs colōrēs* (Aen. iv. 701), drawing out a thousand various colors.

In the plural it is used as a neuter noun, and is declined like the plural of *sedile* (§ 69): *milia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.

NOTE. — The singular *mille* is sometimes found as a noun in the nominative and accusative: as, *mille hominum misit*, he sent a thousand (of) men; in the other cases rarely, except in connection with the same case of *milia*: as, *cum octō millibus peditum*, *mille equitum*, with eight thousand foot and a thousand horse.

e. The ordinals are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are regularly declined like *bonus*.

### 135. Cardinals and Ordinals have the following uses: —

a. In numbers below 100, if units precede tens, *et* is generally inserted: *duo et vigintī*; otherwise *et* is omitted: *vigintī duo*.

b. In numbers above 100 the highest denomination generally stands first, the next second, etc., as in English. *Et* is either omitted entirely, or stands between the two highest denominations: — *mille (et) septingentī sexāgintā quattuor*, 1764.

NOTE. — Observe the following combinations of numerals with substantives: —

*ūnus et vigintī militēs*, or *vigintī militēs (et) ūnus*, 21 soldiers.

*duo milia quingentī militēs*, or *duo milia militum et quingentī*, 2500 soldiers.

*militēs mille ducentī trigintā ūnus*, 1231 soldiers.

c. After *milia* the name of the objects enumerated is in the genitive:

*duo milia hominum*, two thousand men.<sup>1</sup>

*cum tribus millibus militum*, with three thousand soldiers.

*milia passuum tria*, three thousand paces (three miles).

d. For *million*, *billion*, *trillion*, etc., the Romans had no special words, but these numbers were expressed by multiplication (cf. § 138. a).

<sup>1</sup> Or, in poetry, *bis mille hominēs*, twice a thousand men.

c. Fractions are expressed, as in English, by cardinals in the numerator and ordinals in the denominator. The feminine gender is used to agree with *pars* expressed or understood:—*two-sevenths*, *duae septimae* (sc. *partēs*); *three-eighths*, *trēs octāvae* (sc. *partēs*).

*One-half* is *dīmidia pars* or *dīmidium*.

NOTE 1.—When the numerator is *one*, it is omitted and *pars* is expressed: *one-third*, *tertia pars*; *one-fourth*, *quārta pars*.

NOTE 2.—When the denominator is but one greater than the numerator, the numerator only is given: *two-thirds*, *duae partēs*; *three-fourths*, *trēs partēs*, etc.

NOTE 3.—Fractions are also expressed by special words derived from *as*, *a pound*: *as*, *triēns*, *a third*; *bēs*, *two-thirds*. See § 637.

### Distributives

136. Distributive Numerals are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

NOTE.—These answer to the interrogative *quotēni*, *how many of each?* or *how many at a time?*

1. <i>singulī</i> , <i>one by one</i>	18. <i>octōnī dēni</i> or <i>duo-</i>	100. <i>centēni</i>
2. <i>binī</i> , <i>two by two</i>	<i>dēvicēni</i>	200. <i>ducentēni</i>
3. <i>ternī</i> , <i>trīni</i>	19. <i>novēni dēni</i> or <i>ūn-</i>	300. <i>trecentēni</i>
4. <i>quaternī</i>	<i>dēvicēni</i>	400. <i>quadringēni</i>
5. <i>quīni</i>	20. <i>vicēni</i>	500. <i>quingēni</i>
6. <i>sēni</i>	21. <i>vicēni singulī</i> , etc.	600. <i>secentēni</i>
7. <i>septēni</i>	30. <i>trīcentēni</i>	700. <i>septingēni</i>
8. <i>octōnī</i>	40. <i>quadragēni</i>	800. <i>octingēni</i>
9. <i>novēni</i>	50. <i>quinquagēni</i>	900. <i>nōngēni</i>
10. <i>dēni</i>	60. <i>sexagēni</i>	1000. <i>millēni</i>
11. <i>ūndēni</i>	70. <i>septuagēni</i>	2000. <i>binā milia</i>
12. <i>duodēni</i>	80. <i>octogēni</i>	10,000. <i>dēna milia</i>
13. <i>ternī dēni</i> , etc.	90. <i>nōnagēni</i>	100,000. <i>centēna milia</i>

137. Distributives are used as follows:—

a. In the sense of *so many apiece* or *on each side*: *as*, *singula singulīs*, *one apiece* (one each to each one); *agri septēna iūgera plēbī dīvisa sunt*, i.e. *seven jugera to each citizen* (seven jugera each), etc.

b. Instead of cardinals, to express simple number, when a noun plural in form but usually singular in meaning is used in a plural sense: *as*, *binā castra*, *two camps* (*duo castra* would mean *two forts*). With such nouns *trīni*, not *ternī*, is used for *three*: *as*, *trīna* (not *terna*) *castra*, *three camps*; *terna castra* means *camps in threes*.

c. In multiplication: *as*, *bis binā*, *twice two*; *ter septēnis diēbus*, *in thrice seven days*.

d. By the poets instead of cardinal numbers, particularly where *pairs* or *sets* are spoken of: *as*, *binā hastilia*, *two shafts* (two in a set).

## Numeral Adverbs

138. The Numeral Adverbs answer the question *quotiēns* (*quotiēs*), *how many times? how often?*

1. <i>semel, once</i>	12. <i>duodeciēns</i>	40. <i>quadrāgiēns</i>
2. <i>bis, twice</i>	13. <i>terdecīēns</i>	50. <i>quīnquāgiēns</i>
3. <i>ter, thrice</i>	14. <i>quaterdecīēns</i>	60. <i>sexāgiēns</i>
4. <i>quater</i>	15. <i>quīndecīēns</i>	70. <i>septuāgiēns</i>
5. <i>quīnquiēns (-ēs)<sup>1</sup></i>	16. <i>sēdecīēns</i>	80. <i>octōgiēns</i>
6. <i>sexiēns</i>	17. <i>septiēsdēciēns</i>	90. <i>nōnāgiēns</i>
7. <i>septiēns</i>	18. <i>duodēviciēns</i>	100. <i>centiēns</i>
8. <i>octiēns</i>	19. <i>ūndēviciēns</i>	200. <i>ducentiēns</i>
9. <i>noviēns</i>	20. <i>viciēns</i>	300. <i>trecentiēns</i>
10. <i>decīēns</i>	21. <i>semel viciēns,<sup>2</sup> etc.</i>	1000. <i>mīliēns</i>
11. <i>ūndecīēns</i>	30. <i>trīciēns</i>	10,000. <i>decīēns mīliēns</i>

*a.* Numeral Adverbs are used with *mille* to express the higher numbers :

*ter et trīciēns* (*centēna milia*) *sēstertium*, 3,300,000 *sesterces* (three and thirty times a hundred thousand *sesterces*).

*viciēns ac septiēs mīliēs* (*centēna milia*) *sēstertium*, 2,700,000,000 *sesterces* (twenty-seven thousand times a hundred thousand).

NOTE.—These large numbers are used almost exclusively in reckoning money, and *centēna milia* is regularly omitted (see § 634).

## Other Numerals

139. The following adjectives are called Multiplicatives:—

*simplex, single; duplex, double, twofold; triplex, triple, threefold; quadruplex, quīnquīplex, septēplex, decēplex, centuplex, sēsquīplex* ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ ), *multiplex* (*manifold*).

*a.* Proportionals are: *duplus, triplus, quadruplus, octuplus, etc., twice as great, thrice as great, etc.*

*b.* Temporals: *bīmus, trīmus, of two or three years' age; biennīs, triennīs, lasting two or three years; bimēstris, trimēstris, of two or three months; bīdium, a period of two days; biennium, a period of two years.*

*c.* Partitives: *bīnārius, ternārius, of two or three parts.*

*d.* Other derivatives are: *ūniō, unity; bīniō, the two (of dice); primānus, of the first legion; primārius, of the first rank; dēnārius, a sum of 10 asses; bīnus (distributive), double, etc.*

<sup>1</sup> Forms in -ns are often written without the n.

<sup>2</sup> Also written *viciēns et semel* or *viciēns semel, etc.*

## PRONOUNS

**140.** Pronouns are used as Nouns or as Adjectives. They are divided into the following seven classes: —

1. Personal Pronouns: as, *ego, I*.
2. Reflexive Pronouns: as, *sē, himself*.
3. Possessive Pronouns: as, *meus, my*.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns: as, *hic, this; ille, that*.
5. Relative Pronouns: as, *quī, who*.
6. Interrogative Pronouns: as, *quis, who?*
7. Indefinite Pronouns: as, *aliquis, some one*.

**141.** Pronouns have special forms of declension.

NOTE.—These special forms are, in general, survivals of a very ancient form of declension differing from that of nouns.

## Personal Pronouns

**142.** The Personal pronouns of the *first person* are *ego, I, nōs, we*; of the *second person*, *tū, thou or you, vōs, ye or you*. The personal pronouns of the *third person* — *he, she, it, they* — are wanting in Latin, a demonstrative being sometimes used instead.

**143.** *Ego* and *tū* are declined as follows: —

## FIRST PERSON

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOM.	<i>ego, I</i>	<i>nōs, we</i>
GEN.	<i>meī, of me</i>	<i>nostrum, nostrī, of us</i>
DAT.	<i>mihi (mī), to me</i>	<i>nōbīs, to us</i>
ACC.	<i>mē, me</i>	<i>nōs, us</i>
ABL.	<i>mē, by me</i>	<i>nōbīs, by us</i>

## SECOND PERSON

NOM.	<i>tū, thou or you</i>	<i>vōs, ye or you</i>
GEN.	<i>tuī, of thee or you</i>	<i>vestrum, vestrī; vostrum (-trī)</i>
DAT.	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
ACC.	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
ABL.	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

**a.** The plural *nōs* is often used for the singular *ego*; the plural *vōs* is never so used for the singular *tū*.

NOTE.—Old forms are genitive *mis*, *tis*; accusative and ablative *mēd*, *tēd* (cf. § 43. n. 1).

- b.* The forms *nostrum*, *vestrum*, etc., are used *partitively*: —  
*ūnusquisque nostrum*, *each one of us*.  
*vestrum omnium*, *of all of you*.

NOTE.—The forms of the genitive of the personal pronouns are really the genitives of the possessives: *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, genitive singular neuter: *nostrum*, *vestrum*, genitive plural masculine or neuter. So in early and later Latin we find *ūna* *vestrārū*, *one of you (women)*.

- c.* The genitives *meī*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, are chiefly used *objectively* (§ 347): —

*memor sis nostrī*, *be mindful of us (me)*.  
*mē tui pudet*, *I am ashamed of you*.

- d.* Emphatic forms of *tū* are *tūte* and *tūtemet* (*tūtmet*). The other cases of the personal pronouns, excepting the genitive plural, are made emphatic by adding *-met*: *as*, *egomet*, *vōsmet*.

NOTE.—Early emphatic forms are *mēpte* and *tēpte*.

- e.* Reduplicated forms are found in the accusative and ablative singular: *as*, *mēmē*, *tētē*.

- f.* The preposition *cum*, *with*, is joined enclitically with the ablative: *as*, *tēcum loquitur*, *he talks with you*.

### Reflexive Pronouns

144. Reflexive Pronouns are used in the Oblique Cases to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand (see § 299): *as*, *sē amat*, *he loves himself*.

- a.* In the *first* and *second* persons the oblique cases of the Personal pronouns are used as Reflexives: *as*, *mē videō*, *I see myself*; *tē laudās*, *you praise yourself*; *nōbis persuādēmus*, *we persuade ourselves*.

- b.* The Reflexive pronoun of the *third* person has a special form used only in this sense, the same for both singular and plural. It is thus declined: —

GEN.	<i>sui</i> , <i>of himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>
DAT.	<i>sibi</i> , <i>to himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>
ACC.	<i>sē</i> ( <i>sēsē</i> ), <i>himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>
ABL.	<i>sē</i> ( <i>sēsē</i> ), [ <i>by</i> ] <i>himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>

NOTE 1.—Emphatic and reduplicated forms of *sē* are made as in the personals (see § 143. *d*, *e*). The preposition *cum* is added enclitically: *as*, *sēcum*, *with himself*, etc.

NOTE 2.—An old form *sēd* occurs in the accusative and ablative.

## Possessive Pronouns

## 145. The Possessive pronouns are:—

FIRST PERSON.	<b>meus</b> , <i>my</i>	<b>noster</b> , <i>our</i>
SECOND PERSON.	<b>tuus</b> , <i>thy, your</i>	<b>vester</b> , <i>your</i>
THIRD PERSON.	<b>suus</b> , <i>his, her, its</i>	<b>eius</b> , <i>their</i>

These are really adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are so declined (see §§ 110–112). But **meus** has regularly **mī** (rarely **meus**) in the vocative singular masculine.

NOTE.—**Suus** is used only as a reflexive, referring to the subject. For a possessive pronoun of the third person not referring to the subject, the genitive of a demonstrative must be used. Thus, *patrem suum occidit*, *he killed his (own) father*; but *patrem eius occidit*, *he killed his (somebody else's) father*.

*a.* Emphatic forms in **-pte** are found in the ablative singular: **suōpte**.

*b.* A rare possessive **cūius** (**quōius**), **-a**, **-um**, *whose*, is formed from the genitive singular of the relative or interrogative pronoun (**quī, quis**). It may be either interrogative or relative in force according to its derivation, but is usually the former.

*c.* The reciprocals *one another* and *each other* are expressed by **inter sē** or **alter . . . alterum**:—

**alter alterius ova frangit**, *they break each other's eggs* (one . . . of the other).  
**inter sē amant**, *they love one another* (they love among themselves).

## Demonstrative Pronouns

146. The Demonstrative Pronouns are used to *point out* or designate a person or thing for special attention, either *with nouns* as Adjectives or *alone* as Pronouns. They are:—**hic**, *this*; **is**, *ille*, **iste**, *that*; with the Intensive **ipse**, *self*, and **idem**, *same*;<sup>1</sup> and are thus declined:—

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
GEN.	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
ACC.	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>hāc</b>
ABL.	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

<sup>1</sup> These demonstratives are combinations of *o-* and *i-* stems, which are not clearly distinguishable.

NOTE 1. — *Hic* is a compound of the stem *ho-* with the demonstrative enclitic *-ce*. In most of the cases final *e* is dropped, in some the whole termination. But in these latter it is sometimes retained for emphasis: *as, hūius-ce, hīs-ce*. In early Latin *-c* alone is retained in some of these (*hōrunc*). The vowel in *hic, hōc*, was originally short, and perhaps this quantity was always retained. *Ille* and *iste* are sometimes found with the same enclitic: *illic, illaec, illuc*; also *illoc*. See *a*, p. 67.

NOTE 2. — For the dative and ablative plural of *hic* the old form *hībus* is sometimes found; *haec* occurs (rarely) for *hae*.

			<i>is, that</i>			
SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, ii (ī)	eae	ea
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs (īs)	eīs, iīs (īs)	eīs, iīs (īs)
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs (īs)	eīs, iīs (īs)	eīs, iīs (īs)

NOTE 3. — Obsolete forms are *eae* (dat. fem.), and *eābus* or *ībus* (dat. plur.). For dative *eī* are found also *ēi* and *ēi* (monosyllabic); *ēi, ēos*, etc., also occur in the plural.

			<i>ille, that</i>			
SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
DAT.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
ABL.	illo	illa	illo	illis	illis	illis

*Iste, ista, istud, that (yonder)*, is declined like *ille*.

NOTE 4. — *Ille* replaces an earlier *ollus* (*olle*), of which several forms occur.

NOTE 5. — *Iste* is sometimes found in early writers in the form *ste* etc. The first syllable of *ille* and *ipse* is very often used as short in early poetry.

NOTE 6. — The forms *illī, isti* (gen.), and *illae, istae* (dat.), are sometimes found; also the nominative plural *istaecae, illaee* (for *istae, illae*). See *a*, p. 67.

			<i>ipse, self</i>			
SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
GEN.	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
ACC.	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
ABL.	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

NOTE 7. — *Ipse* is compounded of *is* and *-pse* (a pronominal particle of uncertain origin: cf. § 145. a), meaning *self*. The former part was originally declined, as in *reipse* (for *rē eāpse*), *in fact*. An old form *ipsus* occurs, with superlative *ipsissimus*, *own self*, used for comic effect.

NOTE 8. — The intensive *-pse* is found in the forms *eāpse* (nominative), *eumpse*, *eāmpse*, *eōpse*, *eāpse* (ablative).

īdem, the same						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	īdem	eādem	īdem	īdem (ei-)	eaedem	eādem
GEN.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem or isdem		
ACC.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīdem or isdem		

NOTE 9. — *īdem* is the demonstrative *is* with the indeclinable suffix *-dem*. The masculine *īdem* is for *īsdem*; the neuter *īdem*, however, is not for *īddem*, but is a relic of an older formation. A final *m* of *is* is changed to *n* before *d*: as, *eundem* for *eumdem*, etc. The plural forms *īdem*, *īadem*, are often written *īidem*, *īiadem*.

a. *Ille* and *iste* appear in combination with the demonstrative particle *-c*, shortened from *-ce*, in the following forms: —

SINGULAR						
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	illic	illaec	illuc (illoc)	istic	istaec	istuc (istoc)
ACC.	illunc	illanc	illuc (illoc)	istunc	istanc	istuc (istoc)
ABL.	illōc	illāc	illōc	istōc	istāc	istōc

PLURAL						
N., ACC.	—	—	illaec	—	—	istaec

NOTE 1. — The appended *-ce* is also found with pronouns in numerous combinations: as, *hūiusce*, *hunce*, *hōrunce*, *hārunce*, *hēsce*, *hīsce* (cf. § 146. N. 1), *illiusce*, *isce*; also with the interrogative *-ne*, in *hōcine*, *hōscine*, *istucine*, *illicine*, etc.

NOTE 2. — By composition with *ecce* or *em*, *behold!* are formed *ecum* (for *ecce eum*), *eccam*, *ecōs*, *eccās*; *eccillum* (for *ecce illum*); *ellum* (for *em illum*), *ellam*, *ellōs*, *ellās*; *eccistam*. These forms are dramatic and colloquial.

b. The combinations *hūiusmodī* (*hūiuscemodī*), *ēiusmodī*, etc., are used as indeclinable adjectives, equivalent to *tālis*, *such*: as, *rēs ēiusmodī*, *such a thing* (a thing of that sort: cf. § 345. a).

For uses of the Demonstrative Pronouns, see §§ 296 ff.



## Relative Pronouns

147. The Relative Pronoun *quī*, *who*, *which*, is thus declined :—

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns

148. The Substantive Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, *who*? *quid*, *what*? is declined in the Singular as follows :—

	M., F.	N.
NOM.	quis	quid
GEN.	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quō

The Plural is the same as that of the Relative, *quī*, *quae*, *quae*.

*a.* The singular *quis* is either masculine or of indeterminate gender, but in old writers it is sometimes distinctly feminine.

*b.* The Adjective Interrogative Pronoun, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, *what kind of*? *what*? *which*? is declined throughout like the Relative :—

SUBSTANTIVE	ADJECTIVE
quis vocat, <i>who calls</i> ?	quī homō vocat, <i>what man calls</i> ?
quid vidēs, <i>what do you see</i> ?	quod templum vidēs, <i>what temple do you see</i> ?

NOTE.—But *quī* is often used without any apparent adjective force; and *quis* is very common as an adjective, especially with words denoting a person: as, *quī nōminat mē*? *who calls my name*? *quis diēs fuit*? *what day was it*? *quis homō*? *what man*? but often *quī homō*? *what kind of man*? *nesciō quī sis*, *I know not who you are*.

*c.* *Quisnam*, *pray*, *who*? is an emphatic interrogative. It has both substantive and adjective forms like *quis*, *quī*.

149. The Indefinite Pronouns *quis*, *any one*, and *quī*, *any*, are declined like the corresponding Interrogatives, but *qua* is commonly used for *quae* except in the nominative plural feminine :—

SUBSTANTIVE :	<i>quis, any one ; quid, anything.</i>
ADJECTIVE :	<i>quī, qua (quae), quod, any.</i>

*a.* The feminine forms *qua* and *quae* are sometimes used substantively.

*b.* The indefinites *quis* and *quī* are rare except after *sī, nisi, nē*, and *num*, and in compounds (see § 310. *a, b*).

NOTE. — After these particles *quī* is often used as a substantive and *quis* as an adjective (cf. § 148. *b. N.*).

### Case-Forms of *quī* and *quis*

150. The Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns are originally of the same stem, and most of the forms are the same (compare § 147 with § 148). The stem has two forms in the masculine and neuter, *quo-*, *qui-*, and one for the feminine, *quā-*. The interrogative sense is doubtless the original one.

*a.* Old forms for the genitive and dative singular are *quōtus, quōi*.

*b.* The form *quī* is used for the ablative of both numbers and all genders; but especially as an adverb (*how, by which way, in any way*), and in the combination *quicum*, *with whom*, as an interrogative or an indefinite relative.

*c.* A nominative plural *quēs* (stem *qui-*) is found in early Latin. A dative and ablative *quīs* (stem *quo-*) is not infrequent, even in classic Latin.

*d.* The preposition *cum* is joined enclitically to all forms of the ablative, as with the personal pronouns (§ 143. *f*): *as, quōcum, quicum, quibuscum*.

NOTE. — But occasionally *cum* precedes: *as, cum quō* (Iuv. iv. 9).

### Compounds of *quis* and *quī*

151. The pronouns *quis* and *quī* appear in various combinations.

*a.* The adverb *-cumque* (*-cunque*) (cf. *quisque*) added to the relative makes an indefinite relative, which is declined like the simple word: *as, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever ; cūiscumque, etc.*

NOTE. — This suffix, with the same meaning, may be used with any relative: *as, quāiscumque, of whatever sort ; quandōcumque* (also rarely *quandōque*), *whenever ; ubicumque, wherever.*

*b.* In *quisquis, whoever*, both parts are declined, but the only forms in common use are *quisquis, quidquid* (*quicquid*) and *quōquō*.

NOTE 1. — Rare forms are *quemquem* and *quibusquibus*; an ablative *quīquī* is sometimes found in early Latin; the ablative feminine *quāquā* is both late and rare. *Cuicui* occurs as a genitive in the phrase *cuicui modi, of whatever kind*. Other cases are cited, but have no authority. In early Latin *quisquis* is occasionally feminine.

NOTE 2. — *Quisquis* is usually substantive, except in the ablative *quōquō*, which is more commonly an adjective.

c. The indefinite pronouns *quidam*, *a certain (one)*; *quīvis*, *quīlibet*, *any you please*, are used both as substantives and as adjectives. The first part is declined like the relative *quī*, but the neuter has both *quid-* (substantive) and *quod-* (adjective):—

<i>quidam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quiddam (quoddam)</i>
<i>quīvis</i>	<i>quaevis</i>	<i>quidvis (quodvis)</i>

*Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *d* in the accusative singular (*quendam*, *m.*; *quandam*, *f.*) and the genitive plural (*quōrundam*, *m., n.*; *quārundam*, *f.*).

d. The indefinite pronouns *quispiam*, *some, any*, and *quisquam*, *any at all*, are used both as substantives and as adjectives. *Quispiam* has feminine *quae-piam* (adjective), neuter *quidpiam* (substantive) and *quodpiam* (adjective); the plural is very rare. *Quisquam* is both masculine and feminine; the neuter is *quidquam* (*quicquam*), substantive only; there is no plural. *Ūllus*, *-a, -um*, is commonly used as the adjective corresponding to *quisquam*.

e. The indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (substantive), *some one*, *aliquī* (adjective), *some*, is declined like *quis* and *quī*, but *aliqua* is used instead of *aliquae* except in the nominative plural feminine:—

## SINGULAR

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
NOM.	<i>aliquis (aliquī)</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquid (aliquid)</i>
GEN.	<i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>
DAT.	<i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>
ACC.	<i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>	<i>aliquid (aliquid)</i>
ABL.	<i>aliquō</i>	<i>aliquā</i>	<i>aliquō</i>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>aliquī</i>	<i>aliquae</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
GEN.	<i>aliquōrum</i>	<i>aliquārum</i>	<i>aliquōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>
ACC.	<i>aliquōs</i>	<i>aliquās</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
ABL.	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>

NOTE. — *Aliquī* is sometimes used substantively and *aliquis* as an adjective.

f. The indefinite pronoun *ecquis* (substantive), *whether any one*, *ecqui* (adjective), *whether any*, is declined like *aliquis*, but has either *ecquae* or *ecqua* in the nominative singular feminine of the adjective form.

NOTE. — *Ecquis* (*ecquī*) has no genitive singular, and in the plural occurs in the nominative and accusative only.

g. The enclitic particle *-que* added to the interrogative gives a *universal*: *as, quisque, every one; uterque, each of two, or both. Quisque* is declined

like the interrogative *quis, quī*: — substantive, *quisque, quidque*; adjective, *quique, quaeque, quodque*.

In the compound *unusquisque*, *every single one*, both parts are declined (genitive *unuscūiusque*), and they are sometimes written separately and even separated by other words: —

*nō in ūnō quidem quōque* (Lael. 92), *not even in a single one*.

*h.* The relative and interrogative have rarely a possessive adjective *cūius* (-a, -um), older *quōius*, *whose*; and a patrial *cūiās* (*cūiāt*-), *of what country*.

*i.* *Quantus*, *how great*, *quālis*, *of what sort*, are derivative adjectives from the interrogative. They are either interrogative or relative, corresponding respectively to the demonstratives *tantus*, *tālis* (§ 152). Indefinite compounds are *quantuscumque* and *quālis cumque* (see § 151. a).

### Correlatives

152. Many Pronouns, Pronominal Adjectives, and Adverbs have corresponding *demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite* forms. Such parallel forms are called Correlatives. They are shown in the following table: —

DEMON.	REL.	INTERROG.	INDEF. REL.	INDEF.
<i>is</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quis?</i>	<i>quisquis</i>	<i>aliquis</i>
<i>that</i>	<i>who</i>	<i>who?</i>	<i>whoever</i>	<i>some one</i>
<i>tantus</i>	<i>quantus</i>	<i>quantus?</i>	<i>quantuscumque</i>	<i>aliquantus</i>
<i>so great</i>	<i>how (as) great</i>	<i>how great?</i>	<i>however great</i>	<i>some</i>
<i>tālis</i>	<i>quālis</i>	<i>quālis?</i>	<i>quālis cumque</i>	—
<i>such</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>of what sort?</i>	<i>of whatever kind</i>	
<i>ibi</i>	<i>ubi</i>	<i>ubi?</i>	<i>ubi ubi</i>	<i>alicubi</i>
<i>there</i>	<i>where</i>	<i>where?</i>	<i>wherever</i>	<i>somewhere</i>
<i>eō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō?</i>	<i>quōquō</i>	<i>aliquō</i>
<i>thither</i>	<i>whither</i>	<i>whither?</i>	<i>whithersoever</i>	(to) <i>somewhere</i>
<i>eā</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quā?</i>	<i>quāquā</i>	<i>aliquā</i>
<i>that way</i>	<i>which way</i>	<i>which way?</i>	<i>whithersoever</i>	<i>somewhere</i>
<i>inde</i>	<i>unde</i>	<i>unde?</i>	<i>undecumque</i>	<i>alicunde</i>
<i>thence</i>	<i>whence</i>	<i>whence?</i>	<i>whencesoever</i>	<i>from somewhere</i>
<i>tum</i>	<i>cum</i>	<i>quandō?</i>	<i>quandōcumque</i>	<i>aliquandō</i>
<i>then</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>when?</i>	<i>whenever</i>	<i>at some time</i>
<i>tot</i>	<i>quot</i>	<i>quot?</i>	<i>quotquot</i>	<i>aliquot</i>
<i>so many</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>how many?</i>	<i>however many</i>	<i>some, several</i>
<i>totiēns</i>	<i>quotiēns</i>	<i>quotiēns?</i>	<i>quotiēns cumque</i>	<i>aliquotiēns</i>
<i>so often</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>how often?</i>	<i>however often</i>	<i>at several times</i>

## VERBS

## CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

153. The inflection of the Verb is called its Conjugation.

## Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, Number

154. Through its conjugation the Verb expresses Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, and Number.

*a.* The Voices are two: Active and Passive.

*b.* The Moods are four: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE.—The Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative are called *Finite Moods* in distinction from the Infinitive.

*c.* The Tenses are six, viz.:—

1. For continued action, Present, Imperfect, Future.

2. For completed action, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

The Indicative Mood has all six tenses, but the Subjunctive has no future or future perfect, and the Imperative has only the present and the future. The Infinitive has the present, perfect, and future.

*d.* The Persons are three: First, Second, and Third.

*e.* The Numbers are two: Singular and Plural.

## Noun and Adjective Forms

155. The following Noun and Adjective forms are also included in the inflection of the Latin Verb:—

*a.* Four Participles,<sup>2</sup> viz.:—

*Active*: the Present and Future Participles.

*Passive*: the Perfect Participle and the Gerundive.<sup>3</sup>

*b.* The Gerund: this is in form a neuter noun of the second declension, used only in the oblique cases of the singular.

*c.* The Supine: this is in form a verbal noun of the fourth declension in the accusative (-um) and dative or ablative (-ū)<sup>4</sup> singular.

<sup>1</sup> The Infinitive is strictly the locative case of an abstract noun, expressing the action of the verb (§ 451).

<sup>2</sup> The Participles are adjectives in inflection and meaning, but have the power of verbs in construction and in distinguishing time.

<sup>3</sup> The Gerundive is also used as an adjective of *necessity, duty*, etc. (§ 158. *d*). In late use it became a Future Passive Participle.

<sup>4</sup> Originally locative.

## SIGNIFICATION OF THE FORMS OF THE VERB

## Voices

156. The Active and Passive Voices in Latin generally correspond to the active and passive in English; but —

*a.* The passive voice often has a reflexive meaning: —

*ferro accingor, I gird myself with my sword.*

*Turnus vertitur, Turnus turns (himself).*

*induitur vestem, he puts on his (own) clothes.*

NOTE. — This use corresponds very nearly to the Greek Middle voice, and is doubtless a survival of the original meaning of the passive (p. 76, footnote 2).

*b.* Many verbs are passive in form, but active or reflexive in meaning. These are called Deponents (§ 190):<sup>1</sup> *as, hortor, I exhort; sequor, I follow.*

*c.* Some verbs with active meaning have the passive form in the perfect tenses; these are called Semi-Deponents: *as, audeo, audere, ausus sum, dare.*

## Moods

157. The Moods are used as follows: —

*a.* The Indicative Mood is used for most *direct assertions and interrogations*: *as, — valēsne? valeo, are you well? I am well.*

*b.* The Subjunctive Mood has many idiomatic uses, as in *commands, conditions, and various dependent clauses*. It is often translated by the English Indicative; frequently by means of the auxiliaries *may, might, would, should*;<sup>2</sup> sometimes by the (rare) Subjunctive; sometimes by the Infinitive; and often by the Imperative, especially in *prohibitions*. A few characteristic examples of its use are the following: —

*eāmus, let us go; nē abeat, let him not depart.*

*adsum ut videam, I am here to see (that I may see).*

*tū nē quaesieris, do not thou inquire.*

*beātus sis, may you be blessed.*

*quid morer, why should I delay?*

*nescio quid scribam, I know not what to write.*

*si moneam, audiat, if I should warn, he would hear.*

<sup>1</sup> That is, verbs which have laid aside (*dēponere*) the passive meaning.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin uses the subjunctive in many cases where we use the indicative; and we use a colorless auxiliary in many cases where the Latin employs a separate verb with more definite meaning. Thus, *I may write* is often not *scribam* (subjunctive), but *licet mihi scribere; I can write* is *possum scribere; I would write* is *scribam, scriberem, or scribere velim (vellem); I should write, (if, etc.), scriberem (si) . . . , or (implying duty) oportet mē scribere.*

c. The Imperative is used for *exhortation, entreaty, or command*; but the Subjunctive is often used instead (§§ 439, 450):—

*liber estō, he shall be free.*

*nō ossa legitō, do not gather the bones.*

d. The Infinitive is used chiefly as an indeclinable noun, as the subject or complement of another verb (§§ 452, 456. n.). In special constructions it takes the place of the Indicative, and may be translated by that mood in English (see Indirect Discourse, § 580 ff.).

NOTE.—For the Syntax of the Moods, see § 436 ff.

### Participles

158. The Participles are used as follows:—

a. The Present Participle (ending in *-ns*) has commonly the same meaning and use as the English participle in *-ing*; as, *vocāns, calling*; *legentēs, reading*. (For its inflection, see *egēns*, § 118.)

b. The Future Participle (ending in *-ūrus*) is oftenest used to express what is *likely* or *about* to happen: as, *rēctūrus, about to rule*; *audītūrus, about to hear*.

NOTE.—With the tenses of *esse, to be*, it forms the First Periphrastic Conjugation (see § 195): as, *urbs est cāsūra, the city is about to fall*; *mānsūrus eram, I was going to stay*.

c. The Perfect Participle (ending in *-tus, -sus*) has two uses:—

1. It is sometimes equivalent to the English perfect passive participle: as, *tēctus, sheltered*; *acceptus, accepted*; *ictus, having been struck*; and often has simply an adjective meaning: as, *acceptus, acceptable*.

2. It is used with the verb *to be (esse)* to form certain tenses of the passive: as, *vocātus est, he was (has been) called*.

NOTE.—There is no Perfect Active or Present Passive Participle in Latin. For substitutes see §§ 492, 493.

d. The Gerundive (ending in *-ndus*), has two uses:—

1. It is often used as an adjective implying obligation, necessity, or propriety (*ought* or *must*): as, *audiendus est, he must be heard*.

NOTE.—When thus used with the tenses of the verb *to be (esse)* it forms the Second Periphrastic Conjugation: *dēligendus erat, he ought to have been chosen* (§ 196).

2. In the oblique cases the Gerundive commonly has the same meaning as the Gerund (cf. § 159. a), though its construction is different. (For examples, see § 503 ff.)

## Gerund and Supine

159. The Gerund and Supine are used as follows:—

**a.** The Gerund is a verbal noun, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun in *-ing* (§ 502): as, *loquendī causā*, *for the sake of speaking*.

NOTE.—The Gerund is found only in the oblique cases. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive: thus, *scribere est ūtile*, *writing (to write) is useful*; but, *ars scribendī*, *the art of writing*.

**b.** The Supine is in form a noun of the fourth declension (§ 94. b), found only in the accusative ending in *-tum*, *-sum*, and the dative or ablative ending in *-tū*, *-sū*.

The Supine in *-um* is used after verbs and the Supine in *-ū* after adjectives (§§ 509, 510):—

*vēnit spectātum*, *he came to see*; *mirābile dictū*, *wonderful to tell*.

## Tenses of the Finite Verb

160. The Tenses of the Indicative have, in general, the same meaning as the corresponding tenses in English:—

**a.** Of continued action,

1. PRESENT: *scribō*, *I write, I am writing, I do write*.

2. IMPERFECT: *scribēbam*, *I wrote, I was writing, I did write*.

3. FUTURE: *scribam*, *I shall write*.

**b.** Of completed action,

4. PERFECT: *scripsī*, *I have written, I wrote*.

5. PLUPERFECT: *scripseram*, *I had written*.

6. FUTURE PERFECT: *scripserō*, *I shall have written*.

161. The Perfect Indicative has two separate uses,—the Perfect Definite and the Perfect Historical (or Indefinite).

1. The Perfect Definite represents the action of the verb as completed in present time, and corresponds to the English perfect with *have*: as, *scripsī*, *I have written*.

2. The Perfect Historical *narrates* a simple act or state in past time without representing it as in progress or continuing. It corresponds to the English past or preterite and the Greek aorist: as, *scripsit*, *he wrote*.

162. The Tenses of the Subjunctive are chiefly used in dependent clauses, following the rule for the Sequence of Tenses; but have also special idiomatic uses (see Syntax).

For the use of Tenses in the Imperative, see §§ 448, 449.



## PERSONAL ENDINGS

163. Verbs have regular terminations<sup>1</sup> for each of the three Persons, both singular and plural, active and passive.<sup>2</sup> These are :

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR			
1. -m (-ō):	am-ō, <i>I love.</i>	-r (-or):	amo-r, <i>I am loved.</i>
2. -s:	amā-s, <i>thou lovest.</i>	-ris (-re):	amā-ris, <i>thou art loved.</i>
3. -t:	ama-t, <i>he loves.</i>	-tur:	amā-tur, <i>he is loved.</i>
PLURAL			
1. -mus:	amā-mus, <i>we love.</i>	-mur:	amā-mur, <i>we are loved.</i>
2. -tis:	amā-tis, <i>you love.</i>	-mini:	amā-mini, <i>you are loved.</i>
3. -nt:	ama-nt, <i>they love.</i>	-ntur:	ama-ntur, <i>they are loved.</i>

a. The Perfect Indicative active has the special terminations<sup>3</sup>:—

SING. 1. -i:	amāv-i, <i>I loved.</i>
2. -is-ti:	amāv-is-ti, <i>thou lovedst.</i>
3. -i-t:	amāv-i-t, <i>he loved.</i>
PLUR. 1. -i-mus:	amāv-i-mus, <i>we loved.</i>
2. -is-tis:	amāv-is-tis, <i>you loved.</i>
3. -ērunt (-ēre):	amāv-ērunt (-ēre), <i>they loved.</i>

b. The Imperative has the following terminations:—

Singular		PRESENT ACTIVE		Plural	
2. —:	amā, <i>love thou.</i>	-te:		amā-te,	<i>love ye.</i>
FUTURE ACTIVE					
2. -tō:	amā-tō, <i>thou shalt love.</i>	-tōte:		amā-tōte,	<i>ye shall love.</i>
3. -tō:	amā-tō, <i>he shall love.</i>	-ntō:		ama-ntō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Most of these seem to be fragments of old pronouns, whose signification is thus added to that of the verb-stem (cf. § 36). But the ending -mini in the second person plural of the passive is perhaps a remnant of the participial form found in the Greek *-μενος*, and has supplanted the proper form, which does not appear in Latin. The personal ending -nt is probably connected with the participial nt- (nominative -ns).

<sup>2</sup> The Passive is an old Middle Voice, peculiar to the Italic and Celtic languages, and of uncertain origin.

<sup>3</sup> Of these terminations -i is not a personal ending, but appears to represent an Indo-European tense-sign -ai of the Perfect Middle. In -is-ti and -is-tis, -ti and -tis are personal endings; for -is-, see § 169. c. n. In -i-t and -i-mus, -t and -mus are personal endings, and i is of uncertain origin. Both -ērunt and -ēre are also of doubtful origin, but the former contains the personal ending -nt.

	<i>Singular</i>	PRESENT PASSIVE	<i>Plural</i>
2. -re:	amā-re, <i>be thou loved.</i>	-mini:	amā-mini, <i>be ye loved.</i>
		FUTURE PASSIVE	
2. -tor:	amā-tor, <i>thou shalt be loved.</i>	—	—
3. -tor:	amā-tor, <i>he shall be loved.</i>	-ntor:	ama-ntor, <i>they shall be loved.</i>

## FORMS OF THE VERB

## The Three Stems

164. The forms of the verb may be referred to three stems, called (1) the Present, (2) the Perfect, and (3) the Supine stem.

## 1. On the Present stem are formed —

The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, Active and Passive.

The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, Active and Passive.

The Imperative, Active and Passive.

The Present Infinitive, Active and Passive.

The Present Participle, the Gerundive, and the Gerund.

## 2. On the Perfect stem are formed —

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Active.

The Perfect Infinitive Active.

3. On the Supine stem are formed <sup>1</sup> —

a. The Perfect Passive Participle, which combines with the forms of the verb *sum*, *be*, to make —

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive.

The Perfect Infinitive Passive.

b. The Future Active Participle, which combines with *esse* to make the Future Active Infinitive.

c. The Supine in -um and -ū. The Supine in -um combines with *iri* to make the Future Passive Infinitive (§ 203. a).

NOTE. — The Perfect Participle with *fore* also makes a Future Passive Infinitive (as, *amātus fore*). For *fore* (*futūrum esse*) *ut* with the subjunctive, see § 569. 3. a.

<sup>1</sup> The Perfect Passive and Future Active Participles and the Supine, though strictly noun-forms, each with its own suffix, agree in having the first letter of the suffix (*t*) the same and in suffering the same phonetic change (*t* to *s*, see § 15. 5). Hence these forms, along with several sets of derivatives (in -tor, -tūra, etc., see § 238. b. n.<sup>1</sup>), were felt by the Romans as belonging to one system, and are conveniently associated with the Supine Stem. Thus, from *pingō*, we have *pictum*, *pictus*, *pictūrus*, *pictor*, *pictūra*; from *riđeo*, *risum* (for *trid-tum*), *risus* (part.), *risus* (noun), *risūrus*, *risiō*, *risor*, *risibilia*.

## VERB-ENDINGS

165. Every form of the finite verb is made up of two parts:

1. The STEM (see § 24). This is either the root or a modification or development of it.

2. The ENDING, consisting of —

1. the Signs of Mood and Tense (see §§ 168, 169).

2. the Personal Ending (see § 163).

Thus in the verb *vocā-bā-s*, *you were calling*, the root is *voc*, modified into the verb-stem *vocā-*, which by the addition of the ending *-bā*s becomes the imperfect tense *vocābās*; and this ending consists of the tense-sign *bā-* and the personal ending *(-s)* of the second person singular.

166. The Verb-endings, as they are formed by the signs for mood and tense combined with personal endings, are —

ACTIVE			PASSIVE		
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT			PRESENT		
SING. 1. -ō	Vowel-Change: I, <sup>1</sup> to ē; II, to eđ; III, to ġ; IV, to id.	-m	-or	Vowel-Change: as in Active.	-r
2. -s		-s	-ris (-re)		-ris (-re)
3. -t		-t	-tur		-tur
PLUR. 1. -mus		-mus	-mur		-mur
2. -tis		-tis	-mini		-mini
3. -nt		-nt	-ntur		-ntur
IMPERFECT			IMPERFECT		
SING. 1. -ba-m		-re-m	-ba-r		-re-r
2. -bā-s		-rē-s	-bā-ris (-re)		-rē-ris (-re)
3. -ba-t		-re-t	-bā-tur		-rē-tur
PLUR. 1. -bā-mus		-rē-mus	-bā-mur		-rē-mur
2. -bā-tis		-rē-tis	-bā-mini		-rē-mini
3. -ba-nt		-re-nt	-ba-ntur		-re-ntur
INDICATIVE			INDICATIVE		
FUTURE			FUTURE		
	I, II <sup>1</sup>	III, IV		I, II	III, IV <sup>1</sup>
SING. 1. -b-ō	Vowel-Change: as indicated in Italian; verbs in -ō retaining before these vowels.	-a-m	-bo-r	Vowel-Change: as in Active.	-a-r
2. -bi-s		-ē-s	-be-ris (-re)		-ē-ris (-re)
3. -bi-t		-e-t	-bi-tur		-ē-tur
PLUR. 1. -bi-mus		-ē-mus	-bi-mur		-ē-mur
2. -bi-tis		-ē-tis	-bi-mini		-ē-mini
3. -bu-nt		-e-nt	-bu-ntur		-e-ntur

<sup>1</sup> These numerals refer to the four conjugations given later (see § 171).

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PERFECT		PERFECT	
SING. 1. -i	-eri-m	-tus (-ta, -tum)	<div> <div>sum</div> <div>es</div> <div>est</div> </div> <div>sim</div> <div>sis</div> <div>sit</div>
2. -is-ti	-eri-s		
3. -it	-eri-t		
PLUR. 1. -i-mus	-eri-mus	-ti (-tae, -ta)	<div> <div>sumus</div> <div>estis</div> <div>sunt</div> </div> <div>simus</div> <div>sitis</div> <div>sint</div>
2. -is-tis	-eri-tis		
3. -eru-nt (-ēre)	-eri-nt		
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
SING. 1. -era-m	-isse-m	-tus (-ta, -tum)	<div> <div>eram</div> <div>erās</div> <div>erat</div> </div> <div>essem</div> <div>essēs</div> <div>esset</div>
2. -erā-s	-issē-s		
3. -era-t	-isse-t		
PLUR. 1. -erā-mus	-issē-mus	-ti (-tae, -ta)	<div> <div>erāmus</div> <div>erātis</div> <div>erant</div> </div> <div>essēmus</div> <div>essētis</div> <div>essent</div>
2. -erā-tis	-issē-tis		
3. -era-nt	-isse-nt		
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
SING. 1. -er-ō		-tus (-ta, -tum)	<div> <div>erō</div> <div>eris</div> <div>erit</div> </div>
2. -eri-s			
3. -eri-t			
PLUR. 1. -eri-mus		-ti (-tae, -ta)	<div> <div>erimus</div> <div>eritis</div> <div>erunt</div> </div>
2. -eri-tis			
3. -eri-nt			
PRESENT		IMPERATIVE	
SING. 2. —	PLUR. 2. -te	SING. 2. -re	PRESENT
			PLUR. 2. -mini
FUTURE		FUTURE	
2. -tō	2. -tōte	2. -tor	
3. -tō	3. -ntō	3. -tor	3. -ntor

For convenience a table of the Noun and Adjective forms of the verb is here added.

		INFINITIVE	
PRES.	-re (Pres. stem)	I, II, IV. -ri ; III. -i	
PERF.	-isse (Perf. stem)	-tus (-ta, -tum) esse	
FUT.	-tūrus (-a, -um) esse	-tum iri	
		PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	-ns, -ntis	PERF.	-tus, -ta, -tum
FUT.	-tūrus, -a, -um	GER.	-ndus, -nda, -ndum
GERUND		SUPINE	
-ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō		-tum, -tū	

**167.** A long vowel is shortened before the personal endings -m (-r), -t, -nt (-ntur): as, ame-t (for older amē-t), habet (for habē-t), mone-nt, mone-ntur.

**168.** The tenses of the Present System are made from the Present Stem as follows: —<sup>1</sup>

**a.** In the Present Indicative the personal endings are added directly to the present stem. Thus, — present stem arā-: arā-s, arā-mus, arā-tis.

**b.** In the Imperfect Indicative the suffix -bam, -bās, etc. (originally a complete verb) is added to the present stem: as, arā-bam, arā-bās, arā-bāmus.

NOTE. — The form †bam was apparently an aorist of the Indo-European root BHU (cf. fui, futurus, φῶω, English *be*, *been*), and meant *I was*. This was added to a complete word, originally a case of a verbal noun, as in *I was a-seeing*; hence vidē-bam. The form probably began in the Second or Third Conjugation and was extended to the others. The *a* was at first long, but was shortened in certain forms (§ 167).

**c.** In the Future Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations a similar suffix, -bō, -bis, etc., is added to the present stem: as, arā-bō, arā-bis, monē-bō.

NOTE. — The form †bō was probably a present tense of the root BHU, with a future meaning, and was affixed to a noun-form as described in *b*. n.

**d.** In the Future Indicative of the Third and Fourth Conjugations the terminations -am, -ēs, etc. (as, teg-am, teg-ēs, audi-am, audi-ēs) are really subjunctive endings used in a future sense (see *e*). The vowel was originally long throughout. For shortening, see § 167.

**e.** In the Present Subjunctive the personal endings were added to a form of the present stem ending in ē- or ā-, which was shortened in certain forms (§ 167). Thus, ame-m, amē-s, tegā-mus, tega-nt.

NOTE 1. — The vowel ē (seen in the First Conjugation: as, am-ē-s) is an inherited subjunctive mood-sign. It appears to be the thematic vowel *e* (§ 174. 1) lengthened. The ā of the other conjugations (mone-ā-s, reg-ā-s, audi-ā-s) is of uncertain origin.

NOTE 2. — In a few irregular verbs a Present Subjunctive in -im, -is, etc. occurs: as, sim, sis, simus, velim, velis, etc. This is an old optative, *i* being a form of the Indo-European optative mood-sign *yē*- (cf. siem, siēs, siet, § 170. *b*. n.). The vowel has been shortened in the first and third persons singular and the third person plural.

**f.** In the Imperfect Subjunctive the suffix -rem, -rēs, etc. is added to the present stem: as, amā-rem, amā-rēs, monē-rem, tege-rem, audi-rem.

NOTE. — The stem element -rē- is of uncertain origin and is not found outside of Italic. The *r* is doubtless the aorist sign *s* (cf. es-se-m, es-sē-s) changed to *r* between two vowels (§ 15. 4). The ē is probably the subjunctive mood-sign (see *e*).

<sup>1</sup> The conjugation of a verb consists of separate formations from a root, gradually grouped together, systematized, and supplemented by new formations made on old lines to supply deficiencies. Some of the forms were inherited from the parent speech; others were developed in the course of the history of the Italic dialects or of the Latin language itself.

169. The tenses of the Perfect System in the active voice are made from the Perfect Stem as follows:—

*a.* In the Perfect Indicative the endings -ī, -istī, etc. are added directly to the perfect stem: as, amāv-istī, tēx-istī.

*b.* In the Pluperfect Indicative the suffix -eram, -erās, etc. is added to the perfect stem: as, amāv-eram, monu-erās, tēx-erat.

NOTE.—This seems to represent an older *†-is-ām* etc. formed on the analogy of the Future Perfect in -erō (older *†-is-ō*: see *c* below) and influenced by *eram* (imperfect of *sum*) in comparison with *erō* (future of *sum*).

*c.* In the Future Perfect the suffix -erō, -eris, etc. is added to the perfect stem: as, amāv-erō, monu-eris, tēx-erit.

NOTE.—This formation was originally a subjunctive of the *s*-aorist, ending probably in *†-is-ō*. The -is- is doubtless the same as that seen in the second person singular of the perfect indicative (*vid-is-tī*), in the perfect infinitive (*vid-is-se*), and in the pluperfect subjunctive (*vid-is-sem*), *s* being the aorist sign and *i* probably an old stem vowel.

*d.* In the Perfect Subjunctive the suffix -erim, -eris, etc. is added to the perfect stem: as, amāv-erim, monu-eris, tēx-erit.

NOTE.—This formation was originally an optative of the *s*-aorist (-er- for older -is-, as in the future perfect, see *c* above). The *i* after *r* is the optative mood-sign *i* shortened (see § 168. *c. n. 2*). Forms in -is, -it, -imus, -itis, are sometimes found. The shortening in -is, -imus, -itis, is due to confusion with the future perfect.

*e.* In the Pluperfect Subjunctive the suffix -issem, -issēs, etc. is added to the perfect stem: as, amāv-issem, monu-issēs, tēx-isset.

NOTE.—Apparently this tense was formed on the analogy of the pluperfect indicative in *†-is-ām* (later -er-am, see *b*), and influenced by *essem* (earlier *†esēm*) in its relation to *eram* (earlier *†esām*).<sup>1</sup>

### The Verb *Sum*

170. The verb *sum*, *be*, is both irregular and defective, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

Its conjugation is given at the outset, on account of its importance for the inflection of other verbs.

<sup>1</sup> The signs of mood and tense are often said to be inserted between the root (or verb-stem) and the personal ending. No such insertion is possible in a language developed like the Latin. All true verb-forms are the result, as shown above, of *composition*; that is, of adding to the root or the stem either personal endings or fully developed auxiliaries (themselves containing the personal terminations), or of imitation of such processes. Thus *vidēsāmus* is made by adding to *vidē-*, originally a significant word or a form conceived as such, a full verbal form *†sāmus*, not by inserting -bā- between *vidē-* and -mus (§ 168. *b*).

PRINCIPAL PARTS : Present Indicative *sum*, Present Infinitive *esse*,  
Perfect Indicative *fuī*, Future Participle *futūrus*.

PRESENT STEM <i>es-</i>		PERFECT STEM <i>fu-</i>	SUPINE STEM <i>fut-</i>
INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		PRESENT	
SING.	1. <i>sum, I am</i>		<i>sim</i> <sup>1</sup>
	2. <i>ēs, thou art (you are)</i>		<i>sis</i>
	3. <i>est, he (she, it) is</i>		<i>sit</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>sumus, we are</i>		<i>simus</i>
	2. <i>estis, you are</i>		<i>sitis</i>
	3. <i>sunt, they are</i>		<i>sint</i>
		IMPERFECT	
SING.	1. <i>eram, I was</i>		<i>essem</i>
	2. <i>erās, you were</i>		<i>essēs</i>
	3. <i>erat, he (she, it) was</i>		<i>esset</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>erāmus, we were</i>		<i>essēmus</i>
	2. <i>erātis, you were</i>		<i>essētis</i>
	3. <i>erant, they were</i>		<i>essent</i>
		FUTURE	
SING.	1. <i>erō, I shall be</i>		
	2. <i>eris, you will be</i>		
	3. <i>erit, he will be</i>		
PLUR.	1. <i>erimus, we shall be</i>		
	2. <i>eritis, you will be</i>		
	3. <i>erunt, they will be</i>		
		PERFECT	
SING.	1. <i>fuī, I was (have been)</i>		<i>fuerim</i>
	2. <i>fuisti, you were</i>		<i>fueris</i>
	3. <i>fuit, he was</i>		<i>fuerit</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>fuius, we were</i>		<i>fuerimus</i>
	2. <i>fuistis, you were</i>		<i>fueritis</i>
	3. <i>fuērunt, fuēre, they were</i>		<i>fuerint</i>
		PLUPERFECT	
SING.	1. <i>fueram, I had been</i>		<i>fuissem</i>
	2. <i>fuerās, you had been</i>		<i>fuisēs</i>
	3. <i>fuerat, he had been</i>		<i>fuisset</i>

<sup>1</sup> All translations of the Subjunctive are misleading, and hence none is given; see § 157. b.

PLUR. 1. fuerāmus, <i>we had been</i>	fuissēmus
2. fuerātis, <i>you had been</i>	fuissētis
3. fuerant, <i>they had been</i>	fuissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

SING. 1. fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>	PLUR. 1. fuerimus, <i>we shall have been</i>
2. fueris, <i>you will have been</i>	2. fueritis, <i>you will have been</i>
3. fuerit, <i>he will have been</i>	3. fuerint, <i>they will have been</i>

## IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	SING. 2. ēs, <i>be thou</i>	PLUR. 2. este, <i>be ye</i>
FUTURE	2. estō, <i>thou shalt be</i>	2. estōte, <i>ye shall be</i>
	3. estō, <i>he shall be</i>	3. suntō, <i>they shall be</i>

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	esse, <i>to be</i>
PERFECT	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>
FUTURE	futūrus esse or fore, <i>to be about to be</i>

## PARTICIPLE

FUTURE	futūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to be</i>
--------	--------------------------------------

*α.* For *essem*, *essēs*, etc., *forem*, *forēs*, *foret*, *forent*, are often used; so *fore* for *futūrus esse*.

*β.* The Present Participle, which would regularly be *tsōns*,<sup>1</sup> appears in the adjective *in-sōns*, *innocent*, and in a modified form in *ab-sēns*, *prae-sēns*. The simple form *ēns* is sometimes found in late or philosophical Latin as a participle or abstract noun, in the forms *ēns*, *being*; *entia*, *things which are*.

NOTE.—Old forms are:—Indicative: Future, *escit*, *escunt* (strictly an inchoative present, see § 263. 1).

Subjunctive: Present, *siem*, *siēs*, *siet*, *sient*; *fuam*, *fuās*, *fuat*, *fuant*; Perfect, *fūvi-mus*; Pluperfect, *fūvisset*.

The root of the verb *sum* is *ES*, which in the imperfect is changed to *ER* (see § 15. 4), and in many forms is shortened to *s*. Some of its modifications, as found in several languages more or less closely related to Latin, may be seen in the following table, — the Sanskrit *syām* corresponding to the Latin *sim* (*siem*):—

	SANSKRIT	GREEK		LATIN	LITHUANIAN
as-mi	<i>syām</i> (optative)	ἐμμι <sup>2</sup>	s-um	<i>sim</i> ( <i>siem</i> )	es-mi
as-i	<i>syās</i>	ἐσσι <sup>2</sup>	es	<i>sis</i> ( <i>siēs</i> )	es-i
as-ti	<i>syāt</i>	ἐσσι	es-t	<i>sit</i> ( <i>siet</i> )	es-ti
s-mas	<i>syāma</i>	ἐσμεν	s-umus	<i>simus</i>	es-me
s-tha	<i>syāta</i>	ἐστέ	es-tis	<i>sitis</i>	es-te
s-anti	<i>syus</i>	ἐντι <sup>2</sup>	s-unt	<i>sint</i> ( <i>sient</i> )	es-ti

The Perfect and Supine stems, *fu-*, *fut-*, are kindred with the Greek *ἐφν*, and with the English *be*.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Sanskrit *sant*. Greek *σν*.

<sup>2</sup> Old form.



### The Four Conjugations

171. Verbs are classed in Four Regular Conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before *-re* in the Present Infinitive Active: —

CONJUGATION	INFINITIVE ENDING	STEM
First	-āre ( <i>amāre</i> )	ā
Second	-ēre ( <i>monēre</i> )	ē
Third	-ĕre ( <i>regĕre</i> )	ĕ
Fourth	-ire ( <i>audire</i> )	i

### The Principal Parts

172. The Principal Parts of a verb, showing the three stems which determine its conjugation throughout, are —

1. The Present Indicative (*as, amō*)
  2. The Present Infinitive (*as, amā-re*)
  3. The Perfect Indicative (*as, amāv-ī*), showing the Perfect Stem.
  4. The neuter of the Perfect Participle (*as, amāt-um*), or, if that form is not in use, the Future Active Participle (*amāt-ūrus*), showing the Supine Stem.
- /

173. The regular forms of the Four Conjugations are seen in the following: —

First Conjugation: —

Active, *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love.*

Passive, *amor, amārī, amātus.*

Present Stem *amā-*, Perfect Stem *amāv-*, Supine Stem *amāt-*.

Second Conjugation: —

Active, *dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, blot out.*

Passive, *dēleor, dēlēri, dēlētus.*

Present Stem *dēlē-*, Perfect Stem *dēlēv-*, Supine Stem *dēlēt-*.

In the Second conjugation, however, the characteristic *ē* rarely appears in the perfect and perfect participle. The common type is, therefore: —

Active, *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, warn.*

Passive, *moneor, monēri, monitus.*

Present Stem *monē-*, Perfect Stem *monu-*, Supine Stem *monit-*.

## Third Conjugation:—

Active, *tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, cover.*Passive, *tegor, tegi, tēctus.*Present Stem *tegō-*, Perfect Stem *tēx-*, Supine Stem *tēct-*.

## Fourth Conjugation:—

Active, *audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum, hear.*Passive, *audior, audiri, auditus.*Present Stem *audi-*, Perfect Stem *audiv-*, Supine Stem *audit-*.

**a.** In many verbs the principal parts take forms belonging to two or more different conjugations (cf. § 189):—

1, 2, *domō, domāre, domui, domitum, subdue.*2, 3, *maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsum, remain.*3, 4, *petō, petere, petivi, petitum, seek.*4, 3, *vinciō, vincere, vixi, victum, bind.*

Such verbs are referred to the conjugation to which the Present stem conforms.

## Present Stem

**174.** The parent (Indo-European) speech from which Latin comes had two main classes of verbs:—

1. Thematic Verbs, in which a so-called *thematic vowel* (%, in Latin  $\frac{1}{2}u$ ) appeared between the root and the personal ending: *as, leg-i-tis* (for  $\dagger leg-o-tes$ ), *leg-u-nt* (for  $\dagger leg-o-nti$ ).<sup>1</sup>

2. Athematic Verbs, in which the personal endings were added directly to the root: *as, es-t, es-tis* (root *es*)<sup>2</sup>, *dā-mus* (*dā*, root *DA*), *fer-t* (*ferō*, root *FER*).

Of the Athematic Verbs few survive in Latin, and these are counted as irregular, except such as have been forced into one of the four "regular" conjugations. Even the irregular verbs have admitted many forms of the thematic type.

Of the Thematic Verbs a large number remain. These may be divided into two classes:—

1. Verbs which preserve the thematic vowel *e* or *o* (in Latin *i* or *u*) before the personal endings. — These make up the Third Conjugation. The present stem is formed in various ways (§ 176), but always ends in a short vowel % (Latin  $\frac{1}{2}u$ ). Examples are *tegō* (stem *teg%-*), *sterimus* (stem *stern%-*) for  $\dagger ster-no-mos$ , *plectunt* (stem *plect%-*) for  $\dagger plect-to-nti$ . So *nōscō* (stem *gnōsc%-*) for *gnō-sc-ō*. Verbs like *nōscō* became the type for a large number of verbs in *-scō*, called *inceptives* (§ 263. 1).

2. Verbs which form the present stem by means of the suffix *y%-*, which already contained the thematic vowel %. — Verbs of this class in which any vowel (except *u*) came in contact with the suffix *y%-* suffered contraction so as to present a long vowel  $\bar{a}$ -,  $\bar{ē}$ -,  $\bar{i}$ -, at the end of the stem. In this contraction the thematic % disappeared. These became the types of the First, Second, and Fourth conjugations respectively. In imitation of these long vowel-stems numerous verbs were formed by the Romans themselves (after the mode of formation had been entirely forgotten) from noun- and

<sup>1</sup> Cf.  $\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\epsilon\tau\epsilon$ ,  $\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\omicron\mu\epsilon\nu$ ; Doric  $\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\omicron\nu\tau\iota$ .

<sup>2</sup> Cf.  $\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\tau\iota$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\tau\acute{\epsilon}$  (see p. 83, note).

adjective-stems. This came to be the regular way of forming new verbs, just as in English the borrowed suffix *-ize* can be added to nouns and adjectives to make verbs: as, *macadamize*, *modernize*.

Thematic verbs of the second class in which a consonant or *u* came into contact with the suffix *y%o-* suffered various phonetic changes. Such verbs fall partly into the Third Conjugation, giving rise to an irregular form of it, and partly into the Fourth, and some have forms of both. Examples are:—(cōn)spiciō (-spicēre) for †spekyō; veniō (venire) for †(g)vem-yō; cupiō, cupēre, but cupivī; orior, oritur, but orīri. Note, however, pluō (pluere) for †plu-yō; and hence, by analogy, acuō (acuere) for †acu-yō.

In all these cases many cross-analogies and errors as well as phonetic changes have been at work to produce irregularities. Hence has arisen the traditional system which is practically represented in §§ 175, 176.

**175. The Present Stem may be found by dropping -re in the Present Infinitive:—**

amā-re, stem amā-; monē-re, stem monē-; tegē-re, stem tegē-; audi-re, stem audi-.

**176. The Present Stem is formed from the Root in all regular verbs in one of the following ways:—**

**a.** In the First, Second, and Fourth conjugations, by adding a *long vowel* (ā-, ē-, ī-) to the root, whose vowel is sometimes changed: as, vocā-re (voc), monē-re (MEN, cf. meminī), sopī-re (sop).<sup>1</sup>

NOTE.—Verb-stems of these conjugations are almost all really formed from noun-stems on the pattern of older formations (see § 174).

**b.** In the Third Conjugation, by adding a *short vowel* *e%*<sup>2</sup> to the root. In Latin this *e%* usually appears as *i*/<sub>u</sub>, but *e* is preserved in some forms. Thus, tegi-s (root REG), ali-tis (AL), regu-nt (REG); but tegē-ris (tegē-re), alē-ris.

1. The stem-vowel *e%* (*i*/<sub>u</sub>) may be preceded by *n*, *t*, or *sc*:<sup>3</sup> as, tem-ni-tis, tem-nu-nt, tem-nē-ris (TEM); plec-ti-s (PLEC); crē-sci-tis (CRē).

2. Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation (as, capiō, capēre) show in some forms an *i* before the final vowel of the stem: as, cap-i-unt (CAP), fug-i-unt (FUG).

**c.** The root may be changed—

1. By the repetition of a part of it (*reduplication*): as, gi-gn-e-re (GEN).

2. By the insertion of a nasal (*m* or *n*): as, find-e-re (FID), tang-e-re (TAG).

<sup>1</sup> Most verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations form the present stem by adding the suffix *-y%o-* to a noun-stem. The *ā* of the First Conjugation is the stem-ending of the noun (as, plantā-re, from plantā-, stem of planta). The *ē* of the Second and the *ī* of the Fourth Conjugation are due to contraction of the short vowel of the noun-stem with the ending *-y%o-*. Thus albēre is from alb%o-, stem of albus; finire is from fini-, stem of finis. Some verbs of these classes, however, come from roots ending in a vowel.

<sup>2</sup> This is the so-called "thematic vowel."

<sup>3</sup> In these verbs the stem-ending added to the root is respectively *-n%o-*, *-t%o-*, *-sc%o-*.

*d.* In some verbs the present stem is formed from a noun-stem in *u*: *as*, *statu-e-re* (*statu-s*), *aestu-ā-re* (*aestu-s*); cf. *acuō*, *acuere*.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE 1.—A few isolated forms use the simple root as a present stem: *as*, *fer-re*, *fer-t*; *es-se*; *vel-le*, *vul-t*. These are counted as irregular.

NOTE 2.—In some verbs the final consonant of the root is doubled before the stem-vowel: *as*, *pell-i-tis* (*PEL*), *mitt-i-tis* (*MIT*).

*e.* Some verbs have roots ending in a vowel. In these the present stem is generally identical with the root: *as*, *da-mus* (*DA*), *flē-mus* (stem *flē*, root form unknown).<sup>2</sup> But others, as *rui-mus* (*RU*), are formed with an additional vowel according to the analogy of the verbs described in *d*.

NOTE.—Some verbs of this class reduplicate the root: *as*, *si-st-e-re* (*STA*, cf. *stāre*).

### Perfect Stem

177. The Perfect Stem is formed as follows:—

*a.* The suffix *v* (*u*) is added to the verb-stem: *as*, *vocā-v-i*, *audī-v-i*; or to the root: *as*, *son-u-i* (*sonā-re*, root *SON*), *mon-u-i* (*monē-re*, *MON* treated as a root).<sup>3</sup>

NOTE.—In a few verbs the vowel of the root is transposed and lengthened: *as*, *strā-v-i* (*sternō*, *STAR*), *sprē-v-i* (*spernō*, *SPAR*).

*b.* The suffix *s* is added to the root: *as*, *carp-s-i* (*CARP*), *tēx-i* (for *tēg-s-i*, *TEG*).<sup>4</sup>

NOTE.—The modifications of the present stem sometimes appear in the perfect: *as*, *finx-i* (*FIG*, present stem *figē*), *sānx-i* (*SAC*, present stem *sancī*).

*c.* The root is *reduplicated* by prefixing the first consonant—generally with *ē*, sometimes with the root-vowel: *as*, *ce-cid-i* (*cadō*, *CAD*), *to-tond-i* (*tondeō*, *TOND*).

NOTE.—In *fid-i* (for *†fe-fid-i*, *fidō*), *scid-i* (for *†sci-scid-i*, *scindō*), the reduplication has been lost, leaving merely the root.

*d.* The root vowel is lengthened, sometimes with vowel change: *as*, *lēg-i* (*lēgō*), *ēm-i* (*ēmō*), *vid-i* (*vidēō*), *fūg-i* (*fūgō*), *ēg-i* (*ēgō*).

*e.* Sometimes the perfect stem has the same formation that appears in the present tense: *as*, *vert-i* (*vertō*), *solv-i* (*solvo*).

*f.* Sometimes the perfect is formed from a lost or imaginary stem: *as*, *peti-v-i* (as if from *†petiō*, *†petī-re*, *PET*).

<sup>1</sup> These are either old formations in *-y%* in which the *y* has disappeared after the *u* (as, *statuō* for *†statu-yō*) or later imitations of such forms.

<sup>2</sup> In some of the verbs of this class the present stem was originally identical with the root; in others the ending *-y%* was added, but has been absorbed by contraction.

<sup>3</sup> The *v*-perfect is a form of uncertain origin peculiar to the Latin.

<sup>4</sup> The *s*-perfect is in origin an aorist. Thus, *dix-i* (for *†dica-i*) corresponds to the Greek aorist *ἔδειξα* (for *†δείκω*).

## Supine Stem

178. The Supine Stem may be found by dropping *-um* from the Supine. It is formed by adding *t* (or, by a phonetic change, *s*)—

*a.* To the present stem: as, *amā-t-um*, *dēlē-t-um*, *audī-t-um*.

*b.* To the root, with or without *ī*: as, *cap-t-um* (*capīō*, *CAP*), *moni-t-um* (*moneō*, *MON* used as root), *cās-um* (for *†cad-t-um*, *CAD*), *lēc-t-um* (*LEG*).

NOTE 1.—By phonetic change *dt* and *tt* become *s* (*dēfēns-um*, *vers-um* for *†dēfend-t-um*, *†vert-t-um*); *bt* becomes *pt* (*scrip-t-um* for *†scrib-t-um*); *gt* becomes *ct* (*rec-t-um* for *†reg-t-um*).<sup>1</sup>

NOTE 2.—The modifications of the present stem sometimes appear in the supine: as, *ting-t-um* (*tingō*, *TIG*), *tēn-s-um* for *†tend-t-um* (*ten-d-ō*, *TEN*).

NOTE 3.—The supine is sometimes from a lost or imaginary verb-stem: as, *petī-t-um* (as if from *†peti-ō*, *†peti-re*, *PET*).

NOTE 4.—A few verbs form the supine stem in *s* after the analogy of verbs in *d* and *t*: as, *fal-s-um* (*fallō*), *pul-s-um* (*pellō*).

## Forms of Conjugation

179. The forms of the several conjugations from which, by adding the verb-endings in § 166, all the moods and tenses can be made are as follows:—

*a.* The First Conjugation includes all verbs which add *ā-* to the root to form the present stem:<sup>2</sup> as, *amā-re*; with a few whose root ends in *a* (*†for*, *fā-rī*; *flō*, *flā-re*; *nō*, *nā-re*; *stō*, *stā-re*).

1. The stem-vowel *ā-* is lost before *-ō*: as, *amō* = *†amā-(y)ō*; and in the present subjunctive it is changed to *ē*: as, *amē-s*, *amē-mus*.

2. The perfect stem regularly adds *v*, the supine stem *t*, to the present stem: as, *amā-v-ī*, *amā-t-um*. For exceptions, see § 209. *a.*

*b.* The Second Conjugation includes all verbs which add *ē-* to the root to form the present stem: as, *monē-re*; with a few whose root ends in *ē*: as, *flē-ō*, *flē-re*; *ne-ō*, *nē-re*; *re-or*, *rē-rī* (cf. § 176. *e*).

1. In the present subjunctive *ā* is added to the verb-stem: as, *mone-ā-s*, *mone-ā-mus* (cf. § 168. *e*).

2. A few verbs form the perfect stem by adding *v* (*u*), and the supine stem by adding *t*, to the present stem: as, *dēlē-v-ī*, *dēlē-t-um*. But most form the perfect stem by adding *v* (*u*) to the root, and the supine stem by adding *t* to a weaker form of the present stem, ending in *ī*: as, *mon-u-ī*, *moni-t-um*. For lists, see § 210.

<sup>1</sup> For these modifications of the supine stem, see § 15. 5, 6, 10.

<sup>2</sup> The present stem is thus the verb-stem. For exceptions, see § 209. *a.*

**c.** The Third Conjugation includes all verbs (not irregular, see § 197) which add *ĕ* to the root to form the present stem: as, *tegĕ-re*, *capĕ-re*; with a few whose root ends in *e*: as, *se-rĕ-re* for *†se-se-re* (reduplicated from *se*, cf. *sātum*).

1. The stem-vowel *ĕ* is regularly lost before *-ō*, and becomes *u*<sup>1</sup> before *-nt* and *i* before the other endings of the indicative and imperative: as, *teg-ō*, *tegi-t*, *tegu-nt*; in the imperfect indicative it becomes *ē*: as, *tegē-bam*, *tegē-bās*, etc.; in the future, *ē*: as, *tegē-s* (except in the first person singular, *tega-m*, *tega-r*); in the present subjunctive, *ā*: as, *tegā-s*.

Verbs in *-iō* lose the *i* before a consonant and also before *i*, *ī*, and *ē* (except in the future, the participle, the gerund, and the gerundive). Thus, — *capi-at*, *capi-unt*, *capi-ēbat*, *capi-ēs*, *capi-et*, *capi-ent*; but, *cap-it* (not *†capi-it*), *cap-eret*.

2. All varieties of perfect and supine stems are found in this conjugation. See lists, § 211. The perfect is not formed from the present stem, but from the root.

**d.** The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs which add *i* to the root to form the present stem: as, *audī-re*.<sup>2</sup> In these the perfect and supine stems regularly add *v*, *t*, to the verb-stem: as, *audī-v-i*, *audī-t-um*.<sup>3</sup> Endings like those of the third conjugation are added in the third person plural of the present (indicative and imperative), in the imperfect and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive: as, *audī-unt*, *audī-ēbat*, *audī-ētis*, *audī-at*, the *i* being regularly short before a vowel.

**e.** The Present Imperative Active (second person singular) is the same as the present stem: as, *amā*, *monē*, *tegē*, *audī*. But verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation omit *i*: as, *capĕ* (not *†capie*).

**f.** The tenses of *completed action* in the Active voice are all regularly formed by adding the tense-endings (given in § 166) to the perfect stem: as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-eram*, *amāv-erō*, *amāv-erim*, *amāv-issem*, *amāv-issee*.

**g.** The tenses of *completed action* in the Passive voice are formed by adding to the perfect participle the corresponding tenses of *continued action* of the verb *esse*: as, perfect *amātus sum*; pluperfect *amātus eram*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> The gerundive varies between *-endus* and *-undus*.

<sup>2</sup> A few are formed from noun-stems, as *finī-re* (from *fini-s*), and a few roots perhaps end in *i*; but these are not distinguishable in form.

<sup>3</sup> For exceptions, see § 212. *b*.

## Synopsis of the Verb

180. The following synopsis shows the forms of the verb arranged according to the three stems (§ 164). *Amō*, a regular verb of the first conjugation, is taken as a type.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *Active*, *amō*, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātum*.

*Passive*, *amor*, *amārī*, *amātus sum*.

PRESENT STEM amā-		PERFECT STEM amāv-	SUPINE STEM amāt-
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Present stem, amā-			
INDICATIVE			
PRES.	amō		amo-r
IMPERF.	amā-bam		amā-bar
FUT.	amā-bō		amā-bor
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRES.	ame-m		ame-r
IMPERF.	amā-rem		amā-rer
IMPERATIVE			
PRES.	amā		amā-re
FUT.	amā-tō		amā-tor
INFINITIVE			
PRES.	amā-re		amā-rī
PARTICIPLE			
PRES.	amā-ns		GERUNDIVE ama-ndus
GERUND	ama-ndī		
Perfect stem, amāv-		Supine stem, amāt-	
INDICATIVE			
PERF.	amāv-I		amāt-us sum
PLUPERF.	amāv-eram		amāt-us eram
FUT. PERF.	amāv-erō		amāt-us erō
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PERF.	amāv-erim		amāt-us sim
PLUPERF.	amāv-issem		amāt-us essem
INFINITIVE			
PERF.	amāv-isse		
Supine stem, amāt-			
INFINITIVE			
PERF.			amāt-us esse
FUT.	amāt-ūrus esse		amāt-um iri
PARTICIPLE			
FUT.	amāt-urus		PERF. amāt-us
SUPINE	amāt-um	amāt-ū	

### Peculiarities of Conjugation

**181.** In tenses formed upon the Perfect Stem, *v* between two vowels is often lost and contraction takes place.

*a.* Perfects in *-āvī, -ēvī, -ōvī*, often contract the two vowels into *ā, ē, ō*, respectively: *as, amāsse* for *amāvisse*; *amārim* for *amāverim*; *amāssem* for *amāvissem*; *cōsuērat* for *cōsuēverat*; *flēstis* for *flēvistis*; *nōsse* for *nōvisse*. So in perfects in *-vī*, where the *v* is a part of the present stem: *as, commōrat* for *commōverat*.

NOTE.—The first person of the perfect indicative (*as, amāvī*) is never contracted, the third very rarely.

*b.* Perfects in *-ivī* regularly omit *v*, but rarely contract the vowels except before *st* and *ss*, and very rarely in the third person perfect:—

*audieram* for *audiveram*; *audisse* for *audivisse*; *audisti* for *audivisti*; *abīit* for *abīvit*; *abīerunt* for *abīverunt*.

NOTE 1.—The forms *siris, sirit, siritis, sirint*, for *sīveris* etc. (from *sīverō* or *sīverim*), are archaic.

NOTE 2.—In many forms from the perfect stem *is, iss, sis*, are lost in like manner, when *s* would be repeated if they were retained: *as, dixī* for *dixisti* (*x = cs*); *trāxe* for *trāxisse*; *ēvāsti* for *ēvāsisti*; *vixet* for *vixisset*; *ērēpsēmus* for *ērēpsissēmus*; *dēcēsse* for *dēcēssisse*. These forms belong to archaic and colloquial usage.

**182.** Four verbs, — *dicō, dūcō, faciō, ferō*, — with their compounds, drop the vowel-termination of the Imperative, making *dic, dūc, faci, fer*; but compounds in *-ficiō* retain it, *as, cōnfice*.

NOTE.—The imperative forms *dīce, dūce, face* (never *fere*), occur in early Latin.

*a.* For the imperative of *sciō*, the future form *scītō* is always used in the singular, and *scītōte* usually in the plural.

**183.** The following ancient forms are found chiefly in poetry:

1. In the fourth conjugation, *-ibam, -ibō*, for *-iēbam, -iam* (future). These forms are regular in *eō, go* (§ 203).

2. In the present subjunctive, *-im*: *as in duim, perduim*, retained in religious formulas and often in comedy. This form is regular in *sum* and *volō* and their compounds (§§ 170, 199).

3. In the perfect subjunctive and future perfect indicative, *-sim, -sō*: *as, faxim, faxō, iussō, recēpsō* (= *fēcerim* etc.); *ausim* (= *ausus sim*).

4. In the passive infinitive, *-ier*: *as, vocārier* for *vocārī*; *agier* for *agī*.

5. A form in *-āssō, -āssere* is found used as a future perfect: *as, amāssis*, from *amō*; *levāssō*, from *levō*; *impetrāssere*, from *impetrō*; *iūdicāssit*, from *iūdicō* (cf. § 263. 2. *b. n.*).



FIRST CONJUGATION (*ā*-STEMS) — ACTIVE VOICE

184. The First Conjugation includes all verbs which add *ā*- to the root to form the present stem, with a few whose root ends in *a*-. The verb *amō*, *love*, is conjugated as follows: —

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Present Indicative *amō*, Present Infinitive *amāre*,  
Perfect Indicative *amāvī*, Supine *amātum*.

PRESENT STEM *amā*-PERFECT STEM *amāv*-SUPINE STEM *amāt*-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SUBJUNCTIVE

*amō*,<sup>1</sup> *I love, am loving, do love**amās*, *thou lovest (you love)**amat*, *he (she, it) loves**amāmus*, *we love**amātis*, *you love**amant*, *they love**amem*<sup>2</sup>*amēs**amet**amēmus**amētis**ament*

IMPERFECT

*amābam*, *I loved, was loving, did love**amābās*, *you loved**amābat*, *he loved**amābāmus*, *we loved**amābātis*, *you loved**amābant*, *they loved**amārem**amārēs**amāret**amārēmus**amārētis**amārent*

FUTURE

*amābō*, *I shall love**amābis*, *you will love**amābit*, *he will love**amābimus*, *we shall love**amābitis*, *you will love**amābunt*, *they will love*

<sup>1</sup> The stem-vowel *ā*- is lost before *-ō*, and in the Present Subjunctive becomes *ē*-.  
<sup>2</sup> The translation of the Subjunctive varies widely according to the construction.

Hence no translation of this mood is given in the paradigms.

INDICATIVE	PERFECT	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>amāvī, I loved, have loved</i>		<i>amāverim</i>
<i>amāvisti, you loved</i>		<i>amāveris</i>
<i>amāvit, he loved</i>		<i>amāverit</i>
<i>amāvimus, we loved</i>		<i>amāverimus</i>
<i>amāvistis, you loved</i>		<i>amāveritis</i>
<i>amāverunt (-ēre), they loved</i>		<i>amāverint</i>

PLUPERFECT	
<i>amāveram, I had loved</i>	<i>amāvissem</i>
<i>amāverās, you had loved</i>	<i>amāvissēs</i>
<i>amāverat, he had loved</i>	<i>amāvisset</i>
<i>amāverāmus, we had loved</i>	<i>amāvissēmus</i>
<i>amāverātis, you had loved</i>	<i>amāvissētis</i>
<i>amāverant, they had loved</i>	<i>amāvissent</i>

FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>amāverō, I shall have loved</i>	<i>amāverimus, we shall have loved</i>
<i>amāveris, you will have loved</i>	<i>amāveritis, you will have loved</i>
<i>amāverit, he will have loved</i>	<i>amāverint, they will have loved</i>

IMPERATIVE	
<i>PRESENT amā, love thou</i>	<i>amāte, love ye</i>
<i>FUTURE amātō, thou shalt love</i>	<i>amātōte, ye shall love</i>
<i>amātō, he shall love</i>	<i>amantō, they shall love</i>

INFINITIVE	
<i>PRESENT amāre, to love</i>	
<i>PERFECT amāvisse or amāsse, to have loved</i>	
<i>FUTURE amātūrus esse, to be about to love</i>	

PARTICIPLES	
<i>PRESENT amāns, -antis, loving</i>	
<i>FUTURE amātūrus, -a, -um, about to love</i>	

GERUND	
<i>GENITIVE amandī, of loving</i>	<i>ACCUSATIVE amandum, loving</i>
<i>DATIVE amandō, for loving</i>	<i>ABLATIVE amandō, by loving</i>

SUPINE	
<i>amātum, to love</i>	<i>amātū, to love</i>

FIRST CONJUGATION (*ā*-STEMS)—PASSIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Present Indicative *amor*, Present Infinitive *amāri*,  
Perfect Indicative *amātus sum*.<sup>1</sup>

PRESENT STEM *amā-*SUPINE STEM *amāt-*

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*amor*,<sup>2</sup> *I am loved, being loved*  
*amāris (-re)*, *you are loved*  
*amātur*, *he is loved*

*amāmur*, *we are loved*  
*amāmini*, *you are loved*  
*amantur*, *they are loved*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*amer*<sup>3</sup>  
*amēris (-re)*  
*amētur*

*amēmur*  
*amēmini*  
*amentur*

## IMPERFECT

*amābar*, *I was loved, being loved*  
*amābāris (-re)*, *you were loved*  
*amābātur*, *he was loved*

*amābāmur*, *we were loved*  
*amābāmini*, *you were loved*  
*amābantur*, *they were loved*

*amārer*  
*amārēris (-re)*  
*amārētur*

*amārēmur*  
*amārēmini*  
*amārentur*

## FUTURE

*amābor*, *I shall be loved*  
*amāberis (-re)*, *you will be loved*  
*amābitur*, *he will be loved*

*amābimur*, *we shall be loved*  
*amābimini*, *you will be loved*  
*amābuntur*, *they will be loved*

<sup>1</sup> *Fui*, *fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used instead of *sum*, *es*, etc.; so also *fueram* instead of *eram* and *fuerō* instead of *erō*. Similarly in the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive *fuerim*, *fueris*, etc. are sometimes used instead of *sim*, *sis*, etc., and *fuissem* instead of *essem*.

<sup>2</sup> The stem-vowel *ā*- is lost before *-or*, and in the Present Subjunctive becomes *ē*-.

<sup>3</sup> The translation of the Subjunctive varies widely according to the construction. Hence no translation of this mood is given in the paradigms.

## INDICATIVE

## PERFECT

## SUBJUNCTIVE

**amātus sum**,<sup>1</sup> *I was loved*  
**amātus es**, *you were loved*  
**amātus est**, *he was loved*

**amātus sim**<sup>1</sup>  
**amātus sis**  
**amātus sit**

**amāti sumus**, *we were loved*  
**amāti estis**, *you were loved*  
**amāti sunt**, *they were loved*

**amāti simus**  
**amāti sitis**  
**amāti sint**

## PLUPERFECT

**amātus eram**,<sup>1</sup> *I had been loved*  
**amātus erās**, *you had been loved*  
**amātus erat**, *he had been loved*

**amātus essem**<sup>1</sup>  
**amātus esēs**  
**amātus esset**

**amāti erāmus**, *we had been loved*  
**amāti erātis**, *you had been loved*  
**amāti erant**, *they had been loved*

**amāti essēmus**  
**amāti essētis**  
**amāti essent**

## FUTURE PERFECT

## Singular

## Plural

**amātus erō**,<sup>1</sup> *I shall have been loved*  
**amātus eris**, *you will have, etc.*  
**amātus erit**, *he will have, etc.*

**amāti erimus**, *we shall have, etc.*  
**amāti eritis**, *you will have, etc.*  
**amāti erunt**, *they will have, etc.*

## IMPERATIVE

**PRESENT** **amāre**, *be thou loved*  
**FUTURE** **amātor**, *thou shalt be loved*  
**amātor**, *he shall be loved*

**amāmini**, *be ye loved*  


---

**amantor**, *they shall be loved*

## INFINITIVE

**PRESENT** **amāri**, *to be loved*  
**PERFECT** **amātus esse**, *to have been loved*  
**FUTURE** **amātum iri**, *to be about to be loved*

## PARTICIPLES

**PERFECT** **amātus**, -a, -um, *loved (beloved, or having been loved)*  
**FUTURE (GERUNDIVE)** **amandus**, -a, -um, *to-be-loved (lovely)*

<sup>1</sup> See page 94, footnote 1.

## SECOND CONJUGATION (ē-STEMS)

185. The Second Conjugation includes all verbs which add *ē* to the root to form the present stem, with a few whose root ends in *ē*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *Active*, *moneō*, *monēre*, *monuī*, *monitum* ;  
*Passive*, *moneor*, *monēri*, *monitus sum*.

PRESENT STEM *monē-*PERFECT STEM *monu-*SUPINE STEM *monit-*

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT				PRESENT			
moneō, <i>I warn</i>	moneam <sup>1</sup>	moneor	monear <sup>1</sup>	monēris (-re)	moneāris (-re)		
monēs, <i>you warn</i>	moneās	monētur	moneātur				
monet, <i>he warns</i>	moneat						
monēmus	moneāmus	monēmur	moneāmur				
monētis	moneātis	monēmini	moneāmini				
monent	moneant	monentur	moneantur				
IMPERFECT				IMPERFECT			
monēbam	monērem	monēbar	monērer	monēbāris (-re)	monērēris (-re)		
monēbās	monērēs	monēbātur	monērētur				
monēbat	monēret						
monēbāmus	monērēmus	monēbāmur	monērēmur				
monēbātis	monērētis	monēbāmini	monērēmini				
monēbant	monērent	monēbantur	monērentur				
FUTURE				FUTURE			
monēbō		monēbor		monēberis (-re)			
monēbis		monēbitur					
monēbit							
monēbimus		monēbimur					
monēbitis		monēbimini					
monēbunt		monēbuntur					

<sup>1</sup> See § 179. b. 1.

*Active Voice*

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PERFECT

monuī	monuerim
monuistī	monueris
monuit	monuerit
monuimus	monuerimus
monuistis	monueritis
monuērunt (-re)	monuerint

## PLUPERFECT

monueram	monuissē
monuerās	monuissēs
monuerat	monuisset
monuerāmus	monuissēmus
monuerātis	monuissētis
monuerant	monuissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

monuerō
monueris
monuerit
monuerimus
monueritis
monuerint

*Passive Voice*

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PERFECT

monitus sum <sup>1</sup>	monitus sim <sup>1</sup>
monitus es	monitus sis
monitus est	monitus sit
monitī sumus	monitī simus
monitī estis	monitī sitis
monitī sunt	monitī sint

## PLUPERFECT

monitus eram <sup>1</sup>	monitus essem <sup>1</sup>
monitus erās	monitus essēs
monitus erat	monitus esset
monitī erāmus	monitī essēmus
monitī erātis	monitī essētis
monitī erant	monitī essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

monitus erō <sup>1</sup>
monitus eris
monitus erit
monitī erimus
monitī eritis
monitī erunt

## IMPERATIVE

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRESENT	monē	monēte	PRESENT	monēre	monēmini
FUTURE	monētō	monētōte	FUTURE	monētor	_____
	monētō	monentō		monētor	monentor

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	monēre	monērī
PERFECT	monuisse	monitus esse
FUTURE	monitūrus esse	monitum irī

## PARTICIPLES

PRESENT	monēns, -entis	PERFECT	monitus, -a, -um
FUTURE	monitūrus, -a, -um	GERUNDIVE	monendus, -a, -um

## GERUND

## SUPINE

monendī, -dō, -dum, -dō	monitum, monitū
-------------------------	-----------------

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 1 on page 94.

## THIRD CONJUGATION (ǣ-STEMS)

186. The Third Conjugation includes all verbs (not irregular, see § 197) which add ǣ- to the root to form the present stem, with a few whose root ends in ǣ-.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Active*, tegō, tegere, tēxi, tectum ;  
*Passive*, tegor, tegi, tectus sum.

PRESENT STEM tego-

PERFECT STEM tēx-<sup>1</sup>

SUPINE STEM tēct-

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

## PRESENT

tegō, <sup>2</sup> <i>I cover</i>	tegam <sup>2</sup>
tegis, <i>you cover</i>	tegās
tegit, <i>he covers</i>	tegat
tegitur	tegāmur
tegitis	tegātis
tegitur	tegant

tegor <sup>2</sup>	tegar <sup>2</sup>
tegeris (-re)	tegaris (-re)
tegitur	tegatur
tegitur	tegāmur
tegitur	tegāmini
tegitur	tegantur

## IMPERFECT

## IMPERFECT

tegēbam	tegerem
tegēbās	tegerēs
tegēbat	tegeret
tegēbāmus	tegerēmus
tegēbātis	tegerētis
tegēbant	tegerent

tegēbar	tegerer
tegēbāris (-re)	tegerēris (-re)
tegēbātur	tegerētur
tegēbāmur	tegerēmur
tegēbāmini	tegerēmini
tegēbantur	tegerentur

## FUTURE

## FUTURE

tegam <sup>2</sup>
tegēs
teget
tegēmus
tegētis
tegent

tegar <sup>2</sup>
tegeris (-re)
tegetur
tegēmur
tegēmini
tegentur

<sup>1</sup> The perfect stem in this conjugation is always formed from the root; tēx- is for tēg- (see § 15. 9).

<sup>2</sup> See § 179. c. 1.

*Active Voice**Passive Voice*

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PERFECT

## PERFECT

tēxī              tēxerim  
 tēxistī        tēxeris  
 tēxit           tēxerit  
 tēximus       tēxerimus  
 tēxistis       tēxeritis  
 tēxērunt (-re) tēxerint

tēctus sum <sup>1</sup>    tēctus sim <sup>1</sup>  
 tēctus es        tēctus sis  
 tēctus est       tēctus sit  
 tēctī sumus      tēctī sīmus  
 tēctī estis       tēctī sītis  
 tēctī sunt       tēctī sint

## PLUPERFECT

## PLUPERFECT

tēxeram        tēxissem  
 tēxerās        tēxissēs  
 tēxerat        tēxisset  
 tēxerāmus      tēxissēmus  
 tēxerātis       tēxissētis  
 tēxerant       tēxissent

tēctus eram <sup>1</sup>    tēctus essem <sup>1</sup>  
 tēctus erās      tēctus essēs  
 tēctus erat      tēctus esset  
 tēctī erāmus     tēctī essēmus  
 tēctī erātis      tēctī essētis  
 tēctī erant       tēctī essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

## FUTURE PERFECT

tēxerō  
 tēxeris  
 tēxerit  
 tēxerimus  
 tēxeritis  
 tēxerint

tēctus erō <sup>1</sup>  
 tēctus eris  
 tēctus erit  
 tēctī erimus  
 tēctī eritis  
 tēctī erunt

## IMPERATIVE

*Singular*      *Plural*  
 PRESENT      *j*ege      tegite  
 FUTURE        tegitō    tegitōte  
                   tegitō    teguntō

*Singular*      *Plural*  
 tegere           tegimini  
 tegitor           ———  
 tegitor           teguntor

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT      tegere  
 PERFECT       tēxisse  
 FUTURE       tēctūrus esse

tegī  
 tēctus esse  
 tēctum iri

## PARTICIPLES

PRESENT      tegēns, -entis  
 FUTURE       tēctūrus, -a, -um

PERFECT       tēctus, -a, -um  
 GERUNDIVE    tēgendus (-undus)

## GERUND

## SUPINE

tegendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

tēctum, tēctū

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 1 on page 94.



FOURTH CONJUGATION (*i*-STEMS)

187. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs which add *i*- to the root to form the present stem.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Active*, audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum;  
*Passive*, audior, audiri, auditus sum.

PRESENT STEM audi-

PERFECT STEM audīv-

SUPINE STEM audit-

## ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

audiō, <i>I hear</i>	audiam <sup>1</sup>
audīs, <i>you hear</i>	audiās
audit, <i>he hears</i>	audiat
audimus	audiāmus
auditis	audiātis
audiunt	audiant

## IMPERFECT

audiēbam <sup>1</sup>	audīrem
audiēbās	audīrēs
audiēbat	audīret
audiēbāmus	audīrēmus
audiēbātis	audīrētis
audiēbant	audīrent

## FUTURE

audiam <sup>1</sup>
audiēs
audiet
audiemus
audietis
audient

## PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

audior	audiar <sup>1</sup>
audiris (-re)	audiāris (-re)
auditur	audiātur
audimur	audiāmur
audimini	audiāmini
audiuntur	audiantur

## IMPERFECT

audiēbar <sup>1</sup>	audīrer
audiēbāris (-re)	audīrēris (-re)
audiēbātur	audīrētur
audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
audiēbāmini	audīrēmini
audiēbantur	audīrentur

## FUTURE

audiar <sup>1</sup>
audiēris (-re)
audiētur
audiemur
audiēmini
audientur

<sup>1</sup> See § 179. d.

*Active Voice*

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PERFECT

audīvī	audīverim
audīvistī	audīveris
audīvit	audīverit
audīvimus	audīverimus
audīvistis	audīveritis
audīvērunt(-re)	audīverint

## PLUPERFECT

audīveram	audīvissem
audīverās	audīvisseās
audīverat	audīvisset
audīverāmus	audīvisseāmus
audīverātis	audīvisseētis
audīverant	audīvisissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

audīverō
audīveris
audīverit
audīverimus
audīveritis
audīverint

*Passive Voice*

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PERFECT

audītus sum <sup>1</sup>	audītus sim <sup>1</sup>
audītus es	audītus sis
audītus est	audītus sit
audītī sumus	audītī sīmus
audītī estis	audītī sītis
audītī sunt	audītī sint

## PLUPERFECT

audītus eram <sup>1</sup>	audītus essem <sup>1</sup>
audītus erās	audītus essēs
audītus erat	audītus esset
audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
audītī erātis	audītī essētis
audītī erant	audītī essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

audītus erō <sup>1</sup>
audītus eris
audītus erit
audītī erimus
audītī eritis
audītī erunt

## IMPERATIVE

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRESENT	audī	audīte	audīre	audīmini
FUTURE	audītō	audītōte	audītor	—
	audītō	audiuntō	audītor	audiuntor

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	audīre	audīrī
PERFECT	audīvisse	audītus esse
FUTURE	audītūrus esse	audītum iri

## PARTICIPLES

PRESENT	audiēns, -lentis	PERFECT	audītus, -a, -um
FUTURE	audītūrus, -a, -um	GERUNDIVE	audiendus, -a, -um

## GERUND

## SUPINE

audiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō	audītum, audītū
--------------------------	-----------------

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 1, p. 94.

VERBS IN *-iō* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

188. Verbs of the Third Conjugation in *-iō* have certain forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. They lose the *i* of the stem before a consonant and also before *i*, *ī*, and *ē* (except in the future, the participle, the gerund, and the gerundive).<sup>1</sup> Verbs of this class are conjugated as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Active*, *capīō*, *capēre*, *cēpī*, *captum*;  
*Passive*, *capior*, *capī*, *captus sum*.

PRESENT STEM *capie-* (*cape-*)PERFECT STEM *cēp-*SUPINE STEM *capt-*

## ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

<i>capīō</i> , <i>I take</i>	<i>capiam</i>
<i>capis</i> , <i>you take</i>	<i>capias</i>
<i>capit</i> , <i>he takes</i>	<i>capiat</i>
<i>capimus</i>	<i>capiamus</i>
<i>capitis</i>	<i>capiatīs</i>
<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capiant</i>

## IMPERFECT

<i>capiebam</i>	<i>caperem</i>
-----------------	----------------

## FUTURE

<i>capiam</i>
<i>capies</i>
<i>capiet</i> , etc.

## PERFECT

<i>cēpī</i>	<i>cēperim</i>
-------------	----------------

## PLUPERFECT

<i>cēperam</i>	<i>cēpissem</i>
----------------	-----------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>cēperō</i>
---------------

## PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE      SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

<i>capior</i>	<i>capiar</i>
<i>caperis</i> (-re)	<i>capiaris</i> (-re)
<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiat̃ur</i>
<i>capimur</i>	<i>capiamur</i>
<i>capimini</i>	<i>capiamini</i>
<i>capiuntur</i>	<i>capiantur</i>

## IMPERFECT

<i>capiebar</i>	<i>caperer</i>
-----------------	----------------

## FUTURE

<i>capiar</i>
<i>capieris</i> (-re)
<i>capietur</i> , etc.

## PERFECT

<i>captus sum</i>	<i>captus sim</i>
-------------------	-------------------

## PLUPERFECT

<i>captus eram</i>	<i>captus essem</i>
--------------------	---------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>captus erō</i>
-------------------

<sup>1</sup> This is a practical working rule. The actual explanation of the forms of such verbs is not fully understood.

*Active Voice**Passive Voice*

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

Singular Plural

cape capite

## PRESENT

Singular

Plural

capere

capimini

## FUTURE

capitō capitōte

capitō capiunto

## FUTURE

capitor

capitor

capiuntor

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

capere

capi

## PERFECT

cēpisse

captus esse

## FUTURE

captūrus esse

captum iri

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

capiēns, -ientis

## PERFECT

captus, -a, -um

## FUTURE

captūrus, -a, -um

## GERUNDIVE

capiendus, -a, -um

## GERUND

capiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

## SUPINE

captum, -tū

## Parallel Forms

189. Many verbs have more than one set of forms, of which only one is generally found in classic use: —

lavō, lavāre or lavēre, *wash* (see § 211. e).

scateō, scatēre or scatēre, *gush forth*.

lūdificō, -āre, or lūdificor, -ārī, *mock*.

fulgō, fulgēre, or fulgēō, fulgēre, *shine*.

## DEPONENT VERBS

190. Deponent Verbs have the forms of the Passive Voice, with an active or reflexive signification: —

PRINCIPAL  
PARTS

{ First conjugation : mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus, *admire*.  
 { Second conjugation : vereor, verērī, veritus, *fear*.  
 { Third conjugation : sequor, sequī, secūtus, *follow*.  
 { Fourth conjugation : partior, partīrī, partītus, *share*.

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	miror	vereor	sequor	partior
	mirāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	partiris (-re)
	mirātur	verētur	sequitur	partitur
	mirāmur	verēmur	sequimur	partimur
	mirāmini	verēmini	sequimini	partimini
	mirantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
IMPF.	mirābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
FUT.	mirābor	verēbor	sequar	partiar
PERF.	mirātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum
PLUP.	mirātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram
F. P.	mirātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	mirer	verear	sequar	partiar
IMPF.	mirārer	verērer	sequerer	partirer
PERF.	mirātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
PLUP.	mirātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	mirāre	verēre	sequere	partiēre
FUT.	mirātor	verētor	sequitor	partitor

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	mirārī	verērī	sequī	partiī
PERF.	mirātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
FUT.	mirātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partītūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	mirāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
FUT.	mirātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
PERF.	mirātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
GER.	mirandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

## GERUND

mirandī, -ō, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.
-------------------	---------------	----------------	-----------------

## SUPINE

mirātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	partītum, -tū
--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

**a.** Deponents have the participles of both voices :—

*sequēns, following.*

*secūtūrus, about to follow.*

*secūtus, having followed.*

*sequendus, to be followed.*

**b.** The perfect participle generally has an active sense, but in verbs otherwise deponent it is often passive: as, *mercātus, bought*; *adeptus, gained* (or *having gained*).

**c.** The future infinitive is always in the active form: thus, *sequor* has *secūtūrus* (-a, -um) *esse* (not *secūtum iri*).

**d.** The gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in transitive verbs, or intransitive verbs used impersonally:—

*hōc cōfītendum est, this must be acknowledged.*

*moriendum est omnibus, all must die.*

**e.** Most deponents are intransitive or reflexive in meaning, corresponding to what in Greek is called the Middle Voice (§ 156. a. n.).

**f.** Some deponents are occasionally used in a passive sense: as, *crīminor, I accuse, or I am accused.*

**g.** About twenty verbs have an active meaning in both active and passive forms: as, *mereō* or *mereor, I deserve.*

**191.** More than half of all deponents are of the First Conjugation, and all of these are regular. The following deponents are irregular:—

*adsentior, -iri, adsēnsus, assent.*

*apiscor, (-ip-), -i, aptus (-eptus), get.*

*dēfētiscor, -i, -fessus, faint.*

*expergiscor, -i, -perrēctus, rouse.*

*experior, -iri, expertus, try.*

*fateor, -eri, fassus, confess.*

*fruor, -i, fructus (fruitus), enjoy.*

*fungor, -i, fūctus, fulfil.*

*gradior (-gredior), -i, gressus, step.*

*irāscor, -i, irātus, be angry.*

*lābor, -i, lāpsus, fall.*

*loquor, -i, locūtus, speak.*

*mētiōr, -iri, mēnsus, measure.*

*-minīscor, -i, -mentus, think.*

*moriōr, -i (-iri), mortuus (moritūrus), die.*

*nancīscor, -i, nactus (nāctus), find.*

*nāscor, -i, nātus, be born.*

*nītor, -i, nīsus (nīxus), strive.*

*oblīviscor, -i, oblītus, forget.*

*opperior, -iri, oppertus, await.*

*ōrdior, -iri, ōrsus, begin.*

*orior, -iri, ortus (oritūrus), rise* (3d conjugation in most forms).

*pacīscor, -i, pactus, bargain.*

*patior (-petior), -i, passus (-pessus), suffer.*

*-plector, -i, -plexus, clasp.*

*proficīscor, -i, profectus, set out.*

*queror, -i, questus, complain.*

*reor, -eri, ratus, think.*

*revertor, -i, reversus, return.*

*ringor, -i, rictus, snarl.*

*sequor, -i, secūtus, follow.*

*tueor, -eri, tuitus (tūtus), defend.*

*ulcīscor, -i, ultus, avenge.*

*ūtor, -i, ūsus, use, employ.*

NOTE.—The deponent *comperior, -iri, compertus*, is rarely found for *comperiō, -ire*. *Revertor*, until the time of Augustus, had regularly the active forms in the perfect system, *reverti, reverteram*, etc.

**a.** The following deponents have no supine stem :—

*dēvertor*, -tī, *turn aside* (to lodge).

*diffiteor*, -ēri, *deny*.

*fatiscor*, -i, *gape*.

*liquor*, -i, *melt* (intrans.).

*medeor*, -ēri, *heal*.

*reminiscor*, -i, *call to mind*.

*vescor*, -i, *feed upon*.

NOTE.—Deponents are really passive (or middle) verbs whose active voice has disappeared. There is hardly one that does not show signs of having been used in the active at some period of the language.

### Semi-Deponents

**192.** A few verbs having no perfect stem are regular in the present, but appear in the tenses of completed action as deponents. These are called Semi-deponents. They are :—

*audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus*, *dare*.

*fidō*, *fidēre*, *fisus*, *trust*.

*gaudeō*, *gaudēre*, *gāvisus*, *rejoice*.

*soleō*, *solēre*, *solitus*, *be wont*.

**a.** From *audeō* there is an old perfect subjunctive *ausim*. The form *sōdēs* (for *sī audēs*), *an thou wilt*, is frequent in the dramatists and rare elsewhere.

**b.** The active forms *vāpulō*, *vāpulāre*, *be flogged*, and *vēnēō*, *vēnīre*, *be sold* (contracted from *vēnum īre*, *go to sale*), have a passive meaning, and are sometimes called *neutral passives*. To these may be added *fieri*, *to be made* (§ 204), and *exsulāre*, *to be banished* (live in exile); cf. *accēdere*, *to be added*.

NOTE.—The following verbs are sometimes found as semi-deponents: *iūrō*, *iūrāre*, *iūrātus*, *swear*; *nūbō*, *nūbere*, *nūpta*, *marry*; *placeō*, *placēre*, *placitus*, *please*.

### THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

**193.** A Periphrastic form, as the name indicates, is a “roundabout way of speaking.” In the widest sense, all verb-phrases consisting of participles and *sum* are Periphrastic Forms. The Present Participle is, however, rarely so used, and the Perfect Participle with *sum* is included in the regular conjugation (*amātus sum*, *eram*, etc.). Hence the term Periphrastic Conjugation is usually restricted to verb-phrases consisting of the Future Active Participle or the Gerundive with *sum*.

NOTE.—The Future Passive Infinitive, as *amātum iri*, formed from the infinitive passive of *eō*, *go*, used impersonally with the supine in -um, may also be classed as a periphrastic form (§ 203. a).

**194.** There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, known respectively as the First (or Active) and the Second (or Passive).

**a.** The First Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Future Active Participle with the forms of *sum*, and denotes a *future or intended action*.

**b.** The Second Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Gerundive with the forms of *sum*, and denotes *obligation, necessity, or propriety*.

**c.** The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly throughout the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

## 195. The First Periphrastic Conjugation :—

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	amātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love</i>
IMPERFECT	amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love</i>
FUTURE	amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>
PERFECT	amātūrus fui, <i>I have been, was, about to love</i>
PLUPERFECT	amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	amātūrus sim
IMPERFECT	amātūrus essem
PERFECT	amātūrus fuerim
PLUPERFECT	amātūrus fuisset

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love</i>
PERFECT	amātūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love</i>

So in the other conjugations :—

Second : monitūrus sum, *I am about to advise.*

Third : tectūrus sum, *I am about to cover.*

Fourth : auditūrus sum, *I am about to hear.*

Third (in -iō) : captūrus sum, *I am about to take.*

## 196. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation :—

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i>
IMPERFECT	amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
FUTURE	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>
PERFECT	amandus fui, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
PLUPERFECT	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	amandus sim
IMPERFECT	amandus essem
PERFECT	amandus fuerim
PLUPERFECT	amandus fuisset

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved</i>
PERFECT	amandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved</i>



So in the other conjugations :—

Second : *monendus sum, I am to be, must be, advised.*

Third : *tegendus sum, I am to be, must be, covered.*

Fourth : *audiendus sum, I am to be, must be, heard.*

Third (in -iō) : *captendus sum, I am to be, must be, taken.*

### IRREGULAR VERBS

197. Several verbs add some of the personal endings of the present system directly to the root,<sup>1</sup> or combine two verbs in their inflection. These are called Irregular Verbs. They are *sum, volō, ferō, edō, dō, eō, queō, fiō*, and their compounds.

*Sum* has already been inflected in § 170.

198. *Sum* is compounded without any change of inflection with the prepositions *ab, ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, prō* (earlier form *prōd*), *sub, super*.

*a.* In the compound *prōsum* (*help*), *prō* retains its original *d* before *e* :

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfuturus*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRESENT	<i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
	<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
	<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>prōderam</i>	<i>prōderāmus</i>	<i>prōdessem</i>	<i>prōdessēmus</i>
FUTURE	<i>prōderō</i>	<i>prōderimus</i>	—	—
PERFECT	<i>prōfui</i>	<i>prōfuimus</i>	<i>prōfuerim</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>
PLUPERFECT	<i>prōfueram</i>	<i>prōfuerāmus</i>	<i>prōfuissem</i>	<i>prōfuissēmus</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>prōfuerō</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>	—	—

### IMPERATIVE

PRESENT *prōdes, prōdeste* FUTURE *prōdestō, prōdestōte*

### INFINITIVE

PRESENT *prōdesse* PERFECT *prōfuisse*  
FUTURE *prōfuturus esse*

### PARTICIPLE

FUTURE *prōfuturus*

<sup>1</sup> These are athematic verbs, see § 174. 2.

**b.** *Sum* is also compounded with the adjective *potis*, or *pote*, *able*, making the verb *possum* (*be able, can*). *Possum* is inflected as follows:—<sup>1</sup>

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *possum, posse, potui*<sup>2</sup>

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i> <sup>*</sup>	<i>Plural</i>
PRESENT	possum potes potest	possumus potestis possunt	possim possis possit	possimus possitis possint
IMPERFECT	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUTURE	poterō	poterimus	—	—
PERFECT	potui	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUPERFECT	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
FUT. PERF.	potuerō	potuerimus	—	—

INFINITIVE  
PRES. *posse*                      PERF. *potuisse*

PARTICIPLE  
PRES. *potēns* (adjective), *powerful*

## 199.

*volō, nōlō, mālō*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: { *volō, velle, volui, —, be willing, will, wish*  
*nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, be unwilling, will not*  
*mālō, mälle, mālui, —, be more willing, prefer*

NOTE. — *Nōlō* and *mālō* are compounds of *volō*. *Nōlō* is for *ne-volō*, and *mālō* for *mā-volō* from *maḡe-volō*.

## INDICATIVE

	<i>volō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
PRESENT	<i>vīs</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>vult</i> ( <i>volt</i> ) <i>volumus</i> <i>vultis</i> ( <i>voltis</i> ) <i>volunt</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i> <i>nōn vult</i> <i>nōlumus</i> <i>nōn vultis</i> <i>nōlunt</i>	<i>māvīs</i> <i>māvult</i> <i>mālumus</i> <i>māvultis</i> <i>mālunt</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>volēbam</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>
FUTURE	<i>volam, volēs, etc.</i>	<i>nōlam, nōlēs, etc.</i>	<i>mālam, mālēs, etc.</i>
PERFECT	<i>volui</i>	<i>nōlui</i>	<i>mālui</i>
PLUPERFECT	<i>volueram</i>	<i>nōlueram</i>	<i>mālueram</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>voluerō</i>	<i>nōluerō</i>	<i>māluerō</i>

<sup>1</sup> The forms *potis sum, pote sum, etc.* occur in early writers. Other early forms are *potesse; possiem, -ēs, -et; poterint, potisit* (for *possit*); *potestur* and *possitur* (used with a passive infinitive, cf. § 205. a).

<sup>2</sup> *Potui* is from an obsolete *\*potēre*.

<sup>3</sup> *Vīs* is from a different root.

SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT	velim, -is, -it, velimus, -itis, -int	nōlim	mālim
IMPERFECT	vellem, <sup>1</sup> -ēs, -et, vellēmus, -ētis, -ent	nōllem	māllem
PERFECT	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUPERFECT	voluissē	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT	—	nōlī, nōlite	—
FUTURE	—	nōlitō, etc.	—

INFINITIVE			
PRESENT	velle <sup>1</sup>	nōlle	mālle
PERFECT	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLES			
PRESENT	volēns, -entis	nōlēns, -entis	—

NOTE.—The forms *sīs* for *sī vis*, *sūltis* for *sī vultis*, and the forms *nēvis* (*nē-vīs*), *nēvolt*, *māvolō*, *māvolunt*, *māvelim*, *māvellem*, etc., occur in early writers.

## 200.

*Ferō*, bear, carry, endure<sup>2</sup>

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō*, *ferre*,<sup>3</sup> *tulī*, *lātum*

PRESENT STEM fer-		PERFECT STEM tul-		SUPINE STEM lāt-	
ACTIVE			PASSIVE		
INDICATIVE					
PRESENT	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur	
	fers	fertis	ferris (-re)	ferimini	
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur	
IMPERFECT	ferēbam		ferēbar		
FUTURE	feram		ferar		
PERFECT	tulī		lātus sum		
PLUPERFECT	tuleram		lātus eram		
FUTURE PERFECT	tulerō		lātus erō		

<sup>1</sup> *Vellem* is for *†vel-sēm*, and *velle* for *†vel-se* (cf. *es-se*), the *s* being assimilated to the *l* preceding.

<sup>2</sup> *Ferō* has two independent stems: *fer-* in the present system, and *tul-* (for *tol-*) in the perfect from *TOL*, root of *tollō*. The perfect *tetuli* occurs in Plautus. In the participle the root is weakened to *tl-*, *lātum* standing for *†tlātum* (cf. *τλητός*).

<sup>3</sup> *Ferre*, *ferrem*, are for *†fer-se*, *†fer-sēm* (cf. *es-se*, *es-sem*), *s* being assimilated to preceding *r*; or *ferre*, *ferrem*, may be for *†ferrese*, *†feresēm* (see § 15. 4).

*Active**Passive*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	feram
IMPERFECT	ferrem <sup>1</sup>
PERFECT	tulerim
PLUPERFECT	tulissem

ferar
ferrer
lātus sim
lātus essem

## IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	fer	ferite
FUTURE	fertō	fertōte
	fertō	feruntō

ferre	ferimini
fertor	
fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	ferre
PERFECT	tulisse
FUTURE	lāturus esse

ferri
lātus esse
lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES

PRESENT	ferēns, -entis
FUTURE	lāturus

PERFECT	lātus
GERUNDIVE	ferendus

## GERUND

## SUPINE

ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

lātum, lātū

*a.* The compounds of *ferō*, conjugated like the simple verb, are the following:—

ad-	adferō	adferre	attuli	allātum
au-, ab-	auferō	auferre	abstuli	ablātum
con-	cōnferō	cōnferre	contuli	collātum
dis-, di-	differō	differre	distuli	dilātum
ex-, ē-	efferō	efferre	extuli	elātum
in-	inferō	inferre	intuli	illātum
ob-	offerō	offerre	obtuli	oblātum
re-	referō	referre	rettuli	relātum
sub-	sufferō	sufferre	sustuli <sup>2</sup>	sublātum <sup>2</sup>

NOTE. — In these compounds the phonetic changes in the preposition are especially to be noted. *ab-* and *au-* are two distinct prepositions with the same meaning.

<sup>1</sup> See note 3, page 110.

<sup>2</sup> *Sustuli* and *sublātum* also supply the perfect and participle of the verb *tollō*.

201. *Edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum, eat*, is regular of the third conjugation, but has also an archaic present subjunctive and some alternative forms directly from the root (*ED*), without the thematic vowel. These are in full-faced type.

## ACTIVE

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	edō, edis (ēs <sup>1</sup> ), edit (ēst) edimus, editis (ēstis), edunt
IMPERFECT	edēbam, edēbās, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	edam (edim), edās (edīs), edat (edit) edāmus (edimus), edātis (editis), edant (edint)
IMPERFECT	ederem, ederēs (ēssēs), ederet (ēssēt) ederēmus (ēssēmus), ederētis (ēssētis), ederent (ēssent)

## IMPERATIVE

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRESENT	ede (ēe)	edite (ēste)
FUTURE	editō (ēstō) editō (ēstō)	editōte (ēstōte) eduntō

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	edere (ēsse)
PERFECT	ēdisse
FUTURE	ēsūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES

PRESENT	edēns, -entis
FUTURE	ēsūrus <sup>2</sup>

## GERUND

edendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

## SUPINE

ēsum, ēsū <sup>2</sup>

*α.* In the Passive the following irregular forms occur in the third person singular: Present Indicative *ēstur*, Imperfect Subjunctive *ēssētur*.

<sup>1</sup> In *ēs* etc. the *e* is long. In the corresponding forms of *sum*, *e* is short. The difference in quantity between *ēdō* and *ēs* etc. depends upon inherited vowel variation (§ 17. *α*).

<sup>2</sup> Old forms are *ēsūrus* and supine *ēssum*.

202. The irregular verb *dō, give*, is conjugated as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dō, dāre, dedī, datum*

PRESENT STEM *dā-*

PERFECT STEM *ded-*

SUPINE STEM *dat-*

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT	<i>dō</i>	<i>damus</i>	—	<i>damur</i>
	<i>dās</i>	<i>datīs</i>	<i>darīs (-re)</i>	<i>daminī</i>
	<i>dat</i>	<i>dant</i>	<i>datur</i>	<i>dantur</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>dabam</i>		<i>dabar</i>	
FUTURE	<i>dabō</i>		<i>dābor</i>	
PERFECT	<i>dedī</i>		<i>datus sum</i>	
PLUPERFECT	<i>dederam</i>		<i>datus eram</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>dederō</i>		<i>datus erō</i>	
SUBJUNCTIVE				
PRESENT	<i>dem, dēs, det, etc.</i>		—, <i>dēris (-re), dētur, etc.</i>	
IMPERFECT	<i>darem</i>		<i>darer</i>	
PERFECT	<i>dederim</i>		<i>datus sim</i>	
PLUPERFECT	<i>dedissem</i>		<i>datus essem</i>	

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	<i>dā</i>	<i>date</i>	<i>dare</i>	<i>daminī</i>
FUTURE	<i>datō</i>	<i>datōte</i>	<i>dator</i>	—
	<i>datō</i>	<i>dantō</i>	<i>dator</i>	<i>dantor</i>

INFINITIVE

PRESENT	<i>dare</i>	<i>darī</i>
PERFECT	<i>dedisse</i>	<i>datus esse</i>
FUTURE	<i>datūrus esse</i>	<i>datum irī</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT	<i>dāns, dantis</i>	PERFECT	<i>datus</i>
FUTURE	<i>datūrus</i>	GERUNDIVE	<i>dandus</i>

GERUND

*dandī, -dō, -dum, -dō*

SUPINE

*datum, datū*

For compounds of *dō*, see § 209. α. π.

203. Eō, *go*.<sup>1</sup> PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ii (ivī), itum

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	eō, is, it imus, itis, eunt	eam, eās, eat eāmus, eātis, eant
IMPERFECT	ibam, ibās, ibat ibāmus, ibātis, ibant	irem, irēs, iret irēmus, irētis, irent
FUTURE	ibō, ibis, ibit ibimus, ibitis, ibunt	
PERFECT	ii (ivī)	ierim (iverim)
PLUPERFECT	ieram (iveram)	issem (ivissem)
FUTURE PERFECT	ierō (iverō)	

## IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	i	FUTURE	itō, itōte
	ite		itō, euntō

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT	ire	PERFECT	isse (ivisse)	FUTURE	itūrus esse
---------	-----	---------	---------------	--------	-------------

## PARTICIPLES

PRESENT	iēns, <i>gen.</i> euntis	FUTURE	itūrus	GERUNDIVE	eundum
	GERUND	eundī, -dō, -dum, -dō		SUPINE	itum, itū

*a.* The compounds *adeō*, *approach*, *ineō*, *enter*, and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive:—

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	adeor	IMPF.. adībar	PRES.	adear
	adris	FUT. adībor	IMPF.	adīrer
	aditur	PERF. aditus sum	PERF.	aditus sim
	adimur	PLUP. aditus eram	PLUP.	aditus essem
	adimini	F. P. aditus erō		
	adeuntur			
	INFIN. adiri	aditus esse	PART.	aditus adeundus

Thus inflected, the forms of *eō* are used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive: *as, itum est* (§ 208. *d*). The infinitive *iri* is used with the supine in *-um* to make the future infinitive passive (§ 193. *n*). The verb *vēneō*, *be sold* (i.e. *vēnum eō, go to sale*), has also several forms in the passive.

*b.* In the perfect system of *eō* the forms with *v* are very rare in the simple verb and unusual in the compounds.

*c.* *ii* before *s* is regularly contracted to *i*: *as, isse*.

<sup>1</sup> The root of *eō* is *ei* (weak form *i*). This *ei* becomes *i* except before *a*, *o*, and *u*, where it becomes *e* (cf. *eō*, *eam*, *eunt*). The strong form of the root, *i*, is shortened before a vowel or final *-t*; the weak form, *i*, appears in *itum* and *itūrus*.

**d.** The compound *ambiō* is inflected regularly like a verb of the fourth conjugation. But it has also *ambibat* in the imperfect indicative.

**e.** *Prō* with *eō* retains its original *d*: *as, prōdeō, prōdis, prōdit*.

**204.** *Faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, make*, is regular. But it has imperative *fac* in the active, and, besides the regular forms, the future perfect *faxō*, perfect subjunctive *faxim*. The passive of *faciō* is — *fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made or become*.

The present system of *fiō* is regular of the fourth conjugation, but the subjunctive imperfect is *fierem*, and the infinitive *fieri*.

NOTE. — The forms in brackets are not used in good prose.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	<i>fiō, fis, fit</i> [ <i>fīmus</i> ], [ <i>fītis</i> ], <i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiam, fiās, fiat</i> <i>fiāmus, fiātis, fiant</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>fiēbam, fiēbās, etc.</i>	<i>fierem, fierēs, etc.</i>
FUTURE	<i>fiam, fiēs, etc.</i>	
PERFECT	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>
PLUPERFECT	<i>factus eram</i>	<i>factus essem</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>factus erō</i>	

IMPERATIVE  
[*fī, fīte, fitō, —*]<sup>1</sup>

	INFINITIVE	
PRESENT <i>fieri</i>	PERFECT <i>factus esse</i>	FUTURE <i>factum iri</i>

PARTICIPLES  
PERFECT *factus* GERUNDIVM *faciendus*

**a.** Most compounds of *faciō* with prepositions weaken *ā* to *i* in the present stem and to *ē* in the supine stem, and are inflected regularly like verbs in *-iō*: —

*cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, finish*.

*cōnficior, cōnfici, cōnfectus*.

**b.** Other compounds retain *a*, and have *-fiō* in the passive: *as, benefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum*; passive *benefiō, -fieri, -factus, benefit*. These retain the accent of the simple verb: *as, bene-fā'cis* (§ 12. *a, Exc.*).

**c.** A few isolated forms of *fiō* occur in other compounds: —

*cōnfāt, it happens, cōnfiunt*; *cōnfiat*; *cōnfieret, cōnfierent*; *cōnfieri*.

*dēfāt, it lacks, dēfiunt*; *dēfiet*; *dēfiat*; *dēfieri*.

*effieri, to be effected*.

*infīō, begin (to speak), infāt*.

*interfiat, let him perish*; *interfieri, to perish*.

*superfāt, it remains over*; *superfiat, superfieri*.

<sup>1</sup> The imperative is rarely found, and then only in early writers.



## DEFECTIVE VERBS

205. Some verbs have lost the Present System, and use only tenses of the Perfect, in which they are inflected regularly. These are —

coepti, <sup>1</sup> <i>I began</i>		ōdi, <sup>2</sup> <i>I hate</i>		memini, <sup>3</sup> <i>I remember</i>	
INDICATIVE					
PERFECT	coepti	ōdī	meminī		
PLUPERFECT	coeperam	ōderam	memineram		
FUTURE PERFECT	coeperō	ōderō	meminerō		
SUBJUNCTIVE					
PERFECT	coeperim	ōderim	meminerim		
PLUPERFECT	coepissem	ōdissem	meminissem		
IMPERATIVE					
			mementō		
			mementōte		
INFINITIVE					
PERFECT	coepisse	ōdisse	meminisse		
FUTURE	coeptūrus esse	ōsūrus esse			
PARTICIPLES					
PERFECT	coeptus, <i>begun</i>	ōsus, <i>hating or hated</i>			
FUTURE	coeptūrus	ōsūrus, <i>likely to hate</i>			

*a.* The passive of *coepti* is often used with the passive infinitive: as, *coeptus sum vocārī*, *I began to be called*, but *coepti vocāre*, *I began to call*. For the present system *incipiō* is used.

NOTE. — Early and rare forms are *coeptiō*, *coepiam*, *coeperet*, *coepere*.

*b.* The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of *ōdī* and *meminī* have the meanings of a Present, Imperfect, and Future respectively: —

*ōdī*, *I hate*; *ōderam*, *I hated (was hating)*; *ōderō*, *I shall hate*.

NOTE 1. — A present participle *meminēns* is early and late.

NOTE 2. — *Nōvī* and *cōnsuēvī* (usually referred to *nōscō* and *cōnsuēscō*) are often used in the sense of *I know* (have learned) and *I am accustomed* (have become accustomed) as preteritive verbs. Many other verbs are occasionally used in the same way (see 476. n.).

<sup>1</sup> Root *AP* (as in *apiscor*) with *co*(*n*).

<sup>2</sup> Root *OD*, as in *ōdium*.

<sup>3</sup> Root *MEN*, as in *mēns*.

**206.** Many verbs are found only in the Present System. Such are *maereō*, *-ēre*, *be sorrowful* (cf. *maestus*, *sad*); *feriō*, *-ire*, *strike*.

In many the simple verb is incomplete, but the missing parts occur in its compounds: as, *vādō*, *vādere*, *in-vāsi*, *in-vāsum*.

Some verbs occur very commonly, but only in a few forms:—

**a.** *Āiō*, *I say*:—

INDIC.	PRES.	āiō, ais, <sup>1</sup> ait; —, —, āiunt
	IMPF.	āiēbam, <sup>2</sup> āiēbās, etc.
SUBJV.	PRES.	—, āiās, āiat; —, —, āiant
IMPER.		ai (rare)
PART.		āiēns

The vowels *a* and *i* are pronounced separately (*a-is*, *a-it*) except sometimes in old or colloquial Latin. Before a vowel, one *i* stands for two (see § 6. c):—thus *āiō* was pronounced *āi-yō* and was sometimes written *aiiō*.

**b.** *Inquam*, *I say*, except in poetry, is used only in direct quotations (cf. the English *quoth*).

INDIC.	PRES.	inquam, inquis, inquit; inquitus (late), inquitunt
	IMPF.	—, —, inquitēbat; —, —, —
	FUT.	—, inquitēs, inquiet; —, —, —
	PERF.	inquit, inquitī, —; —, —, —
IMPER.	PRES.	inque
	FUT.	inquitō

The only common forms are *inquam*, *inquis*, *inquit*, *inquitunt*, and the future *inquitēs*, *inquiet*.

**c.** The deponent *fāri*, *to speak*, has the following forms:—

INDIC.	PRES.	—, —, fātur; —, —, fantur
	FUT.	fābor, —, fābitur; —, —, —
	PERF.	—, —, fātus est; —, —, fātī sunt
	PLUP.	fātus eram, —, fātus erat; —, —, —
IMPER.	PRES.	fāre
INFIN.	PRES.	fāri
PART.	PRES.	fāns, fantis, etc. (in singular)
	PERF.	fātus ( <i>having spoken</i> )
	GER.	fandus ( <i>to be spoken of</i> )
GERUND, gen.	fandi, abl.	fandō
	SUPINE	fātū

Several forms compounded with the prepositions *ex*, *prae*, *prō*, *inter*, occur: as, *prae-fātur*, *prae-fāmur*, *affāri*, *prō-fātus*, *inter-fātur*, etc. The compound *infāns* is regularly used as a noun (*child*). *Infandus*, *nefandus*, are used as adjectives, *unspeakable*, *abominable*.

<sup>1</sup> The second singular *ais* with the interrogative *-ne* is often written *ain*.

<sup>2</sup> An old imperfect *aibam*, *aibās*, etc. (dissyllabic) is sometimes found.

d. *Queō, I can, nequeō, I cannot*, are conjugated like *eō*. They are rarely used except in the present. *Queō* is regularly accompanied by a negative. The forms given below occur, those in full-faced type in classic prose. The Imperative, Gerund, and Supine are wanting.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT				PRESENT			
queō	queam			nequeō (nōn queō)	nequeam		
quīs	queās			nequīs	nequeās		
quit	queat			nequit	nequeat		
quīmus	queāmus			nequīmus	nequeāmus		
quītis	—			nequītis	—		
queunt	queant			nequeunt	nequeant		
IMPERFECT				IMPERFECT			
quībam	—			—	nequīrem		
quībat	quīret			nequībat	nequīret		
—	quīrent			nequībant	nequīrent		
FUTURE				FUTURE			
quībō				nequībit			
quībunt				nequībunt			
PERFECT				PERFECT			
quīvi	—			nequīvi	nequīverim		
—	—			nequīstī	—		
quīvit	quīverit (-ierit)			nequīvit (nequīit)	nequīverit		
quīvērunt (-ēre)	quīerint			nequīvērunt (-quīēre)	nequīverint		
PLUPERFECT				PLUPERFECT			
—	—			nequīverat (-ierat)	nequīvisset (-quīisset)		
—	quīviscent			nequīverant (-ierant)	nequīscent		
				INFINITIVE			
quīre	quīsse			nequīre	nequīvisse (-quīisse)		
				PARTICIPLES			
quīēns				nequīēns, nequeuntēs			

NOTE. — A few passive forms are used with passive infinitives: *as, quītur, queuntur, quītus sum, queātur, queantur, nequītur, nequitum*; but none of these occurs in classic prose.

*e. Quaesō, I ask, beg* (original form of *quaerō*), has —

INDIC. PRES. *quaesō, quaesūmus*

NOTE. — Other forms of *quaesō* are found occasionally in early Latin. For the perfect system (*quaesivī*, etc.), see *quaerō* (§ 211. *d*).

*f. Ovāre, to triumph*, has the following: —

INDIC. PRES. *ovās, ovat*

SUBJV. PRES. *ovet*

IMPF. *ovāret*

PART. *ovāns, ovātūrus, ovātus*

GER. *ovandi*

*g. A few verbs are found chiefly in the Imperative: —*

PRES. singular *salvē*, plural *salvēte*, FUT. *salvētō, hail!* (from *salvus, safe and sound*). An infinitive *salvēre* and the indicative forms *salveō, salvētis, salvēbis*, are rare.

PRES. singular *avē* (or *havē*), plural *avēte*, FUT. *avētō, hail or farewell*. An infinitive *avēre* also occurs.

PRES. singular *cēdo*, plural *cēdite* (*cette*), *give, tell*.

PRES. singular *apage, begone* (properly a Greek word).

### IMPERSONAL VERBS

207. Many verbs, from their meaning, appear only in the *third person singular*, the *infinitive*, and the *gerund*. These are called *Impersonal Verbs*, as having no personal subject.<sup>1</sup> The passive of many intransitive verbs is used in the same way.

CONJ. I	II	III	IV	PASS. CONJ. I
<i>it is plain</i>	<i>it is allowed</i>	<i>it chances</i>	<i>it results</i>	<i>it is fought</i>
<i>cōnstat</i>	<i>licet</i>	<i>accidit</i>	<i>evenit</i>	<i>pūgnātur</i>
<i>cōnstābat</i>	<i>licēbat</i>	<i>accidēbat</i>	<i>eveniēbat</i>	<i>pūgnābātur</i>
<i>cōnstābit</i>	<i>licēbit</i>	<i>accidet</i>	<i>eveniet</i>	<i>pūgnābitur</i>
<i>cōnstitit</i>	<i>licuit, -itum est</i>	<i>accidit</i>	<i>evenit</i>	<i>pūgnātum est</i>
<i>cōnstitērat</i>	<i>licuerat</i>	<i>acciderat</i>	<i>evenērat</i>	<i>pūgnātum erat</i>
<i>cōnstitērit</i>	<i>licuerit</i>	<i>acciderit</i>	<i>evenērit</i>	<i>pūgnātum erit</i>
<i>cōnstet</i>	<i>liceat</i>	<i>accidat</i>	<i>eveniat</i>	<i>pūgnētur</i>
<i>cōnstāret</i>	<i>liceret</i>	<i>accideret</i>	<i>eveniret</i>	<i>pūgnārētur</i>
<i>cōnstitērit</i>	<i>licuerit</i>	<i>acciderit</i>	<i>evenērit</i>	<i>pūgnātum sit</i>
<i>cōnstitisset</i>	<i>licuisset</i>	<i>accidisset</i>	<i>evenisset</i>	<i>pūgnātum esset</i>
<i>cōnstāre</i>	<i>licēre</i>	<i>accidēre</i>	<i>evenīre</i>	<i>pūgnārī</i>
<i>cōnstitisse</i>	<i>licuisse</i>	<i>accidisse</i>	<i>evenisse</i>	<i>pūgnātum esse</i>
<i>-stātūrum esse</i>	<i>-itūrum esse</i>	—	<i>-tūrum esse</i>	<i>pūgnātum iri</i>

<sup>1</sup> With impersonal verbs the word *it* is used in English, having usually no representative in Latin, though *id, hōc, illud*, are often used nearly in the same way.

### 208. Impersonal Verbs may be classified as follows: —

#### a. Verbs expressing the *operations of nature* and the *time of day*: —

vesperāscit (inceptive, § 263. 1), <i>it grows late.</i>	ningit, <i>it snows.</i>
lūciscit hōc, <i>it is getting light.</i>	fulgurat, <i>it lightens.</i>
grandinat, <i>it hails.</i>	tonat, <i>it thunders.</i>
pluit, <i>it rains.</i>	rōrat, <i>the dew falls.</i>

NOTE. — In these no subject is distinctly thought of. Sometimes, however, the verb is used personally with the name of a divinity as the subject: as, *Iuppiter tonat, Jupiter thunders.* In poetry other subjects are occasionally used: as, *fundae saxa pluunt, the slings rain stones.*

#### b. Verbs of *feeling*, where the person who is the proper subject becomes the object, as being himself affected by the feeling expressed in the verb (§ 354. b): —

miseret, <i>it grieves.</i>	paenitet (poenitet), <i>it repents.</i>
piget, <i>it disgusts.</i>	puDET, <i>it shames.</i>
taedet, <i>it wearies.</i>	
miseret mē, <i>I pity (it distresses me);</i>	puDET mē, <i>I am ashamed.</i>

NOTE. — Such verbs often have also a passive form: as, *misereor, I pity (am moved to pity);* and occasionally other parts: as, *paenitūrus* (as from *paeniō*), *paenitendus*, *puDendus*, *pertaesum est*, *pigitum est.*

#### c. Verbs which have a *phrase* or *clause* as their subject (cf. §§ 454, 569. 2): —

accidit, <i>contingit, evenit, obtingit, obvenit, fit, it happens.</i>	dēlectat, <i>iuvat, it delights.</i>
libet, <i>it pleases.</i>	oportet, <i>it is fitting, ought.</i>
licet, <i>it is permitted.</i>	necesse est, <i>it is needful.</i>
certum est, <i>it is resolved.</i>	praestat, <i>it is better.</i>
cōstat, <i>it is clear.</i>	interest, <i>rēfert, it concerns.</i>
placet, <i>it seems good (pleases).</i>	vacat, <i>there is leisure.</i>
vidētur, <i>it seems, seems good.</i>	restat, <i>superest, it remains.</i>
decet, <i>it is becoming.</i>	

NOTE. — Many of these verbs may be used personally; as, *vacō, I have leisure.* *Libet* and *licet* have also the passive forms *libitum* (*licitum*) *est* etc. The participles *libēns* and *licēns* are used as adjectives.

#### d. The *passive of intransitive verbs* is very often used impersonally (see synopsis in § 207): —

ventum est, <i>they came (there was coming).</i>
pūgnātur, <i>there is fighting (it is fought).</i>
itur, <i>some one goes (it is gone).</i>
parcitur mihi, <i>I am spared (it is spared to me, see § 372).</i>

NOTE. — The impersonal use of the passive proceeds from its original *reflexive* (or *middle*) meaning, the action being regarded as *accomplishing itself* (compare the French *cela se fait*).

## CLASSIFIED LISTS OF VERBS

## First Conjugation

**209.** There are about 360 simple verbs of the First Conjugation, most of them formed directly on a noun- or adjective-stem: *armō, arm* (*arma, arms*); *caecō, to blind* (*caecus, blind*); *exsulō, be an exile* (*exsul, an exile*) (§ 259).

Their conjugation is usually regular, like *amō*; though of many only a few forms are found in use.

**a.** The following verbs form their Perfect and Supine stems irregularly. Those marked \* have also regular forms.

<i>crepō, crepui</i> (-crepāvi), -crepit-, <i>resound</i> .	<i>plicō, *plicui, *plicit-, fold</i> .
<i>cubō, *cubui, -cubit-, lie down</i> .	<i>pōtō, pōtāvi, *pōt-, drink</i> .
<i>dō, dāre, dedi, dāt-, give</i> (DA).	<i>secō, secui, sect-, cut</i> .
<i>domō, domui, domit-, subdue</i> .	<i>sonō, sonui, sonit-,<sup>1</sup> sound</i> .
<i>fricō, fricui, *frict-, rub</i> .	<i>stō, steti, -stat- (-stit-), stand</i> .
<i>iuuō</i> (ad- <i>iuuō</i> ), <i>iūvi, iūt-,<sup>1</sup> help</i> .	<i>tonō, tonui, *-tonit-, thunder</i> .
<i>micō, micui, —, glitter</i> .	<i>vetō, vetui, vetit-, forbid</i> .
<i>necō, *necui, necāt- (-nect-), kill</i> . <sup>2</sup>	

NOTE.—Compounds of these verbs have the following forms:—

*crepō*: *con-crepui, dis-crepui* or *-crepāvi*; *in-crepui* or *-crepāvi*.

*dō*: *circum-, inter-, pessum-, satis-, venum-dō, -dedi, -dāt-,* of the first conjugation. Other compounds belong to the root *DHA*, *put*, and are of the third conjugation: *as, condō, condere, condidi, conditum*.

*micō*: *di-micāvi, -micāt-; ē-micui, -micāt-*.

*plicō*: *re-, sub- (sup-), multi-plicō, -plicāvi, -plicāt-; ex-plicō* (unfold), *-ui, -it-; (explain), -āvi, -āt-; im-plicō, -āvi (-ui), -ātum (-itum)*.

*stō*: *cōn-stō, -stīti, (-stātūrus); ad-, re-stō, -stīti, —; ante- (anti-), inter-, super-stō, -steti, —; circum-stō, -steti (-stīti), —; prae-stō, -stīti, -stit- (-stāt-); di-stō, ex-stō,* no perfect or supine (future participle *ex-stātūrus*).

## Second Conjugation

**210.** There are nearly 120 simple verbs of the Second Conjugation, most of them denominative verbs of condition, having a corresponding noun and adjective from the same root, and an inceptive in *-scō* (§ 263. 1):—

*caleō, be warm; calor, warmth; calidus, warm; calēscō, grow warm*.  
*timeō, fear; timor, fear; timidus, timid; per-timēscō, to take fright*.

<sup>1</sup> Future Participle also in *-stūrus* (either in the simple verb or in composition).

<sup>2</sup> *Necō* has regularly *necāvi, necātum*, except in composition.

*a.* Most verbs of the second conjugation are inflected like *moneō*, but many lack the supine (as, *arceō*, *ward off*; *careō*, *lack*; *egeō*, *need*; *timeō*, *fear*), and a number have neither perfect nor supine (as, *maereō*, *be sad*).

*b.* The following keep *ē* in all the systems:—

<i>dōleō</i> , <i>destroy</i>	<i>dēlere</i>	<i>dōlēvi</i>	<i>dōlētum</i>
<i>fleō</i> , <i>weep</i>	<i>flēre</i>	<i>flēvi</i>	<i>flētum</i>
<i>neō</i> , <i>sew</i>	<i>nēre</i>	<i>nēvi</i>	[ <i>nētum</i> ]
<i>vieō</i> , <i>plait</i>	<i>viēre</i>	[ <i>viēvi</i> ]	<i>viētum</i>
<i>com-pleō</i> , <i>fill up</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>-plēre</i>	<i>-plēvi</i>	<i>-plētum</i>

*c.* The following show special irregularities:—

<i>algeō</i> , <i>alsi</i> , <i>be cold</i> .	<i>mulceō</i> , <i>mulsi</i> , <i>muls-</i> , <i>soothe</i> .
<i>ārdeō</i> , <i>ārsi</i> , <i>ārsurus</i> , <i>burn</i> .	<i>mulgeō</i> , <i>mulsi</i> , <i>muls-</i> , <i>milk</i> .
<i>audeō</i> , <i>ausus sum</i> , <i>dare</i> .	( <i>cō</i> ) <i>niveō</i> , <i>-nivi</i> ( <i>-nixi</i> ), <i>—</i> , <i>wink</i> .
<i>augeō</i> , <i>auxi</i> , <i>auct-</i> , <i>increase</i> .	( <i>ab</i> ) <i>oleō</i> , <i>-olēvi</i> , <i>-olit-</i> , <i>destroy</i> .
<i>caveō</i> , <i>cāvi</i> , <i>caut-</i> , <i>care</i> .	<i>pendeō</i> , <i>pependi</i> , <i>-pēns-</i> , <i>hang</i> .
<i>censeō</i> , <i>cēnsui</i> , <i>cēns-</i> , <i>value</i> .	<i>prandeō</i> , <i>prandi</i> , <i>prāns-</i> , <i>dine</i> .
<i>cieō</i> , <i>civi</i> , <i>cit-</i> , <i>excite</i> .	<i>rideō</i> , <i>risi</i> , <i>-ris-</i> , <i>laugh</i> .
<i>doceō</i> , <i>docui</i> , <i>doct-</i> , <i>teach</i> .	<i>sedeō</i> , <i>sēdi</i> , <i>sess-</i> , <i>sit</i> .
<i>faveō</i> , <i>fāvi</i> , <i>faut-</i> , <i>favor</i> .	<i>soleō</i> , <i>solitus sum</i> , <i>be wont</i> .
<i>ferveō</i> , <i>fervi</i> ( <i>ferbui</i> ), <i>—</i> , <i>glow</i> .	<i>sorbeō</i> , <i>sorbui</i> ( <i>sorpsi</i> ), <i>—</i> , <i>suck</i> .
<i>foveō</i> , <i>fōvi</i> , <i>fōt-</i> , <i>cherish</i> .	<i>spondeō</i> , <i>spopondi</i> , <i>spōns-</i> , <i>pledge</i> .
<i>fulgeō</i> , <i>fulsi</i> , <i>—</i> , <i>shine</i> .	<i>strideō</i> , <i>stridi</i> , <i>—</i> , <i>whiz</i> .
<i>gaudeō</i> , <i>gāvisus sum</i> , <i>rejoice</i> .	<i>suādeō</i> , <i>suāsi</i> , <i>suās-</i> , <i>urge</i> .
<i>haereō</i> , <i>haesi</i> , <i>haes-</i> , <i>cling</i> .	<i>teneō</i> ( <i>-tineō</i> ), <i>tenui</i> , <i>-tent-</i> , <i>hold</i> .
<i>indulgeō</i> , <i>indulsi</i> , <i>indult-</i> , <i>indulge</i> .	<i>tergeō</i> , <i>tersi</i> , <i>ters-</i> , <i>wipe</i> .
<i>iubeō</i> , <i>iussi</i> , <i>iuss-</i> , <i>order</i> .	<i>tondeō</i> , <i>-totondi</i> ( <i>-tondi</i> ), <i>tōns-</i> , <i>shear</i> .
<i>liqueō</i> , <i>licui</i> ( <i>liqui</i> ), <i>—</i> , <i>melt</i> .	<i>torqueō</i> , <i>torsi</i> , <i>tort-</i> , <i>twist</i> .
<i>lāceō</i> , <i>lūxi</i> , <i>—</i> , <i>shine</i> .	<i>torreō</i> , <i>torrui</i> , <i>tost-</i> , <i>roast</i> .
<i>lāgeō</i> , <i>lūxi</i> , <i>—</i> , <i>mourn</i> .	<i>turgeō</i> , <i>tursi</i> , <i>—</i> , <i>swell</i> .
<i>maneō</i> , <i>mānsi</i> , <i>māns-</i> , <i>wait</i> .	<i>urgeō</i> , <i>ursi</i> , <i>—</i> , <i>urge</i> .
<i>misceō</i> , <i>-cui</i> , <i>mixt</i> ( <i>mist-</i> ), <i>mix</i> .	<i>videō</i> , <i>vidi</i> , <i>vis-</i> , <i>see</i> .
<i>mordeō</i> , <i>momordi</i> , <i>mors-</i> , <i>bite</i> .	<i>voveō</i> , <i>vōvi</i> , <i>vōt-</i> , <i>vow</i> .
<i>moveō</i> , <i>mōvi</i> , <i>mōt-</i> , <i>move</i> .	

### Third Conjugation

211. The following lists include most simple verbs of the Third Conjugation, classed according to the formation of the Perfect Stem:—

*a.* Forming the perfect stem in *s* (*x*) (§ 177. *b* and note):—

<i>angō</i> , <i>ānxi</i> , <i>—</i> , <i>choke</i> .	<i>claudō</i> , <i>clausi</i> , <i>claus-</i> , <i>shut</i> .
<i>carpō</i> , <i>carpsi</i> , <i>carpt-</i> , <i>pluck</i> .	<i>cōmō</i> , <i>cōmpsi</i> , <i>cōmpt-</i> , <i>comb</i> , <i>deck</i> .
<i>cēdō</i> , <i>cessi</i> , <i>cess-</i> , <i>yield</i> .	<i>coquō</i> , <i>coxi</i> , <i>coct-</i> , <i>cook</i> .
<i>cīngō</i> , <i>cīnxi</i> , <i>cīnct-</i> , <i>bind</i> .	<i>-cutiō</i> , <i>-cussi</i> , <i>-cuss-</i> , <i>shake</i> .

<sup>1</sup> And other compounds of *-pleō*.

dēmō, dēmpai, dēmp-, *take away*.  
 dicō, dixi, dict-, *say*.  
 dividō, divisi, divis-, *divide*.  
 dūcō, dūxi, duct-, *guide*.  
 ēmungō, -mūnxi, -mūnct-, *clean out*.  
 figō, fixi, fix-, *fix*.  
 fingō [FIG], finxi, flect-, *fashion*.  
 flectō, flexi, flex-, *bend*.  
 -figō, -fixi, -flect-, —, *smite*.  
 fluō, flūxi, flux-, *flow*.  
 frendō, —, frēs- (fress-), *gnash*.  
 frigō, frixi, frict-, *fry*.  
 gerō, gessi, gest-, *carry*.  
 iungō, iūnxi, iūnct-, *join*.  
 laedō, laesi, laes-, *hurt*.  
 -liciō, -lexi, -lect-, *entice* (ēlicui, -licit-).  
 lūdo, lūsi, lūs-, *play*.  
 mergō, mersi, mers-, *plunge*.  
 mittō, misi, miss-, *send*.  
 nectō [NEX], nexi (nexui), nex-, *weave*.  
 nūbō, nūpsi, nūpt-, *marry*.  
 pectō, pexi, pex-, *comb*.  
 pergō, perrexī, perrect-, *go on*.  
 pingō [PIG], pinxi, pict-, *paint*.  
 plangō [PLAG], plānxi, plānct-, *beat*.  
 plaudō, plausi, plaus-, *applaud*.  
 plectō, plexi, plex-, *braid*.  
 premō, pressi, press-, *press*.  
 prēmō, -mpsi, -mpt-, *bring out*.

quatō, (-cussi), quass-, *shake*.  
 rādō, rāsi, rās-, *scrape*.  
 regō, rēxi, rēct-, *rule*.  
 rēpō, rēpsi, —, *creep*.  
 rōdō, rōsi, rōs-, *gnaw*.  
 scalpō, scalpsi, scalpt-, *scrape*.  
 scribō, scripsi, script-, *write*.  
 sculpō, sculpsi, sculpt-, *carve*.  
 serpō, serpsi, —, *crawl*.  
 spargō, sparsi, spars-, *scatter*.  
 -spiciō, -spexi, -spect-, *view*.  
 -stinguō, -stinxi, -stinct-, *quench*.  
 stringō, strinxī, strict-, *bind*.  
 struō, strūxi, strūct-, *build*.  
 sūgō, sūxi, sūct-, *suck*.  
 sūmō, sūmpsi, sūmpt-, *take*.  
 surgō, surrēxi, surrēct-, *rise*.  
 tegō, tēxi, tēct-, *shelter*.  
 temnō, -tempai, -tempt-, *despise*.  
 tergō, tersi, ters-, *wipe*.  
 tingō, tinxi, tinct-, *stain*.  
 trahō, trāxi, trāct-, *drag*.  
 trūdō, trūsi, trūs-, *thrust*.  
 unguō (ungō), ūnxi, ūnct-, *anoint*.  
 ūrō, ussi, ust-, *burn*.  
 vādō, -vāsi, -vās-, *go*.  
 vehō, vēxi, vect-, *draw*.  
 vivō, vixi, vict-, *live*.

**b. Reduplicated in the perfect (§ 177. c):—**

cadō, cecidi, cās-, *fall*.  
 caedō, cecidi, caes-, *cut*.  
 canō, cecini, —, *sing*.  
 currō, cucurri, curs-, *run*.  
 discō [DIC], didici, —, *learn*.  
 -dō [DHA], -didi, -dit- (as in ab-dō, etc.,  
 with crēdō, vēndō), *put*.  
 fallō, fefelli, fals-, *deceive*.  
 pangō [PAG], pepigi (-pēgi), pāct-, *fasten*,  
*fix, bargain*.  
 parcō, peperci (parai), (parsūrus), *spare*.

pariō, peperī, part- (paritūrus), *bring forth*.  
 pellō, pepuli, puls-, *drive*.  
 pendō, pependi, pēns-, *weigh*.  
 poscō, poposci, —, *demand*.  
 pungō [PUG], pupugi (-pūnxi), pūnct-,  
*prick*.  
 sistō [STA], stiti, stat-, *stop*.  
 tangō [TAG], tetigi, tāct-, *touch*.  
 tendō [TEN], tetendi (-tendi), tent-, *stretch*.  
 tundō [TUD], tutudi, tūns- (-tūs-), *beat*.

**c. Adding u (v) to the verb-root (§ 177. a):—**

alō, alui, alt- (alit-), *nourish*.  
 cernō, crēvi, -crēt-, *decree*.  
 colō, colui, cult-, *dwell, till*.

compescō, compescui, —, *restrain*.  
 cōsulō, -lui, cōsult-, *consult*.  
 crēscō, crēvi, crēt-, *increase*.



-cumbō [CUB], -cubui, -cubit-, *lie down*.  
 depsō, depsui, depst-, *knead*.  
 fremō, fremui, —, *roar*.  
 gemō, gemui, —, *groan*.  
 gignō [GEN], genui, genit-, *beget*.  
 metō, messui, -mess-, *reap*.  
 molō, molui, molit-, *grind*.  
 occulō, occului, occult-, *hide*.  
 (ad)olēscō, -ēvi, -ult-, *grow up*.  
 pascō, pāvi, pāst-, *feed*.  
 percellō, -culi, -culs-, *upset*.  
 pōnō [POS], posui, posit-, *put*.  
 quiescō, quiēvi, quiēt-, *rest*.

rapīō, rapui, rapt-, *seize*.  
 sciscō, scivi, scit-, *decree*.  
 serō, sēvi, sat-, *sow*.  
 serō, serui, sert-, *entwine*.  
 sinō, sivi, sit-, *permit*.  
 spernō, sprēvi, sprēt-, *scorn*.  
 sternō, strāvi, strāt-, *strew*.  
 stertō, -stertui, —, *snore*.  
 strepō, strepui, —, *sound*.  
 suēscō, suēvi, suēt-, *be wont*.  
 texō, texui, text-, *weave*.  
 tremō, tremui, —, *tremble*.  
 vomō, vomui, —, *vomit*.

*d.* Adding *iv* to the verb-root (§ 177. *f*):—

arcessō,<sup>1</sup> -ivi, arcessit-, *summon*.  
 capessō, capessivi, —, *undertake*.  
 cupiō, cupivi, cupit-, *desire*.  
 incessō, incessivi, —, *attack*.  
 laccessō, laccessivi, laccessit-, *provoke*.

petō, petivi, petit-, *seek*.  
 quaerō, quaesivi, quaesit-, *seek*.  
 rudō, rudivi, —, *bray*.  
 sapiō, sapivi, —, *be wise*.  
 terō, trivi, trit-, *rub*.

*e.* Lengthening the vowel of the root (cf. § 177. *d*):—

agō, ēgi, āct-, *drive*.  
 capiō, cēpi, capt-, *take*.  
 edō, ēdi, ēsum, eat (see § 201).  
 emō, ēmi, ēmpt-, *buy*.  
 faciō, fēci, fact-, *make* (see § 204).  
 fodiō, fōdi, foss-, *dig*.  
 frangō [FRAG], frēgi, frāct-, *break*.  
 fugiō, fūgi, (fugitūrus), *flee*.  
 fundō [FUD], fūdi, fūs-, *pour*.  
 iaciō, iēci, iact-, *throw* (-iciō, -iect-).

lavō, lāvi, lōt- (laut-), wash (also regular of first conjugation).  
 legō,<sup>2</sup> lēgi, lēct-, *gather*.  
 linō [LI], lēvi (livi), lit-, *smear*.  
 linquō [LIC], -liqui, -lict-, *leave*.  
 nōscō [GNO], nōvi, nōt- (cō-gnit-, ā-gnit-, ad-gnit-), *know*.  
 rumpō [RUF], rūpi, rupt-, *burst*.  
 scabō, scābi, —, *scratch*.  
 vincō [VIC], vici, vict-, *conquer*.

*f.* Retaining the present stem or verb-root (cf. § 177. *e*):—

acuō, -ui, -ūt-, *sharpen*.  
 arguō, -ui, -ūt-, *accuse*.  
 bibō, bibi, (pōtus), *drink*.  
 -cendō, -cendi, -cēns-, *kindle*.  
 (con)gruō, -ui, —, *agree*.  
 cūdō, -cūdi, -cūs-, *forge*.  
 facessō, -ii (facessi), facessit-, *execute*.  
 -fendō, -fendi, -fēns-, *ward off*.  
 findō [FID], fidi,<sup>3</sup> fias-, *split*.  
 icō, ici, ict-, *hit*.

imbuō, -ui, -ūt-, *give a taste of*.  
 luō, lui, -lūt-, *wash*.  
 mandō, mandī, māns-, *chew*.  
 metuō, -ui, -ūt-, *fear*.  
 minuō, -ui, -ūt-, *lessen*.  
 -nuō, -nui, —, *nod*.  
 pandō, pandi, pāns- (pass-), *open*.  
 pinsō, -si, pins- (pinst-, pist-), *bruise*.  
 prehendō, -hendi, -hēns-, *seize*.  
 ruō, rui, rut- (ruitūrus), *fall*.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes accersō, etc.

<sup>2</sup> The following compounds of legō have -lēxi: diligō, intellegō, negligō.

<sup>3</sup> In this the perfect stem is the same as the verb-root, having lost the reduplication (§ 177. c. N.).

scandō, -scendī, -scēnsus, *climb*.  
 scindō [scid], scidī,<sup>1</sup> sciss-, *tear*.  
 sidō, sidī (-sēdī), -sess-, *settle*.  
 solvō, solvī, solūt-, *loose, pay*.  
 spuō, -uī, —, *spit*.  
 statuō, -uī, -ūt-, *establish*.  
 sternuo, -uī, —, *sneeze*.  
 stridō, stridī, —, *whiz*.

suō, suī, sūt-, *sew*.  
 (ex)uō, -uī, -ūt-, *put off*.  
 tribuō, -uī, -ūt-, *assign*.  
 vellō, vellī (-vulsi), vuls-, *pluck*.  
 verrō, -verri, vers-, *sweep*.  
 vertō, verti, vers-, *turn*.  
 visō [vid], visī, vis-, *visit*.  
 volvō, volvī, volūt-, *turn*.

NOTE.—Several have no perfect or supine: as, claudō, *limp*; fatiscō, *gape*; hīscō, *yawn*; tollō (sustulī, sublātum, supplied from sufferō), *raise*; vergō, *incline*.

### Fourth Conjugation

212. There are — besides a few deponents and some regular derivatives in -ūriō, as, ēsuriō, *be hungry* (cf. § 263. 4) — about 60 verbs of this conjugation, a large proportion of them being *descriptive* verbs: like —

crōciō, *croak*; mūgiō, *bellow*; tinnīō, *tinkle*.

a. Most verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are conjugated regularly, like audiō, though a number lack the supine.

b. The following verbs show special peculiarities: —

amiciō, amixī (-cuī), amict-, *clothe*.  
 aperiō, aperuī, apert-, *open*.  
 comperiō, -peri, compert-, *find*.  
 farciō, farsī, fartum, *stuff*.  
 feriō, —, —, *strike*.  
 fulciō, fulsī, fult-, *prop*.  
 hauriō, hausī, haust- (hausūrus), *drain*.  
 operiō, operuī, opert-, *cover*.  
 reperiō, repperī, repert-, *find*.

saepiō, saepsiī, saept-, *hedge in*.  
 saliō (-siliō), saluī (salii), [salt- (-sult-)],  
*leap*.  
 sanciō [sac], sānxī, sānct-, *sanction*.  
 sarcīō, sarsī, sart-, *patch*.  
 sentiō, sēnsī, sēns-, *feel*.  
 sepeīō, sepeīvī, sepult-, *bury*.  
 veniō, vēnī, vent-, *come*.  
 vinciō, vīnxī, vīnct-, *bind*.

For Index of Verbs, see pp. 436 ff.

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 3, page 124.

## PARTICLES

**213.** Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are called Particles.

In their origin Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions are either (1) *case-forms*, actual or extinct, or (2) *compounds* and *phrases*.

Particles cannot always be distinctly classified, for many adverbs are used also as prepositions and many as conjunctions (§§ 219 and 222).

## ADVERBS

## DERIVATION OF ADVERBS

**214.** Adverbs are regularly formed from Adjectives as follows :

*a.* From adjectives of the *first and second declensions* by changing the characteristic vowel of the stem to *-ē* : as, *cārē*, *dearly*, from *cārus*, *dear* (stem *cāro-*) ; *amicē*, *like a friend*, from *amicus*, *friendly* (stem *amico-*).

NOTE. — The ending *-ē* is a relic of an old ablative in *-ēd* (cf. § 43. n. 1).

*b.* From adjectives of the *third declension* by adding *-ter* to the stem. Stems in *nt-* (nom. *-ns*) lose the *t-*. All others are treated as *i-*stems : —

*fortiter*, *bravely*, from *fortis* (stem *forti-*), *brave*.

*ācriter*, *eagerly*, from *ācer* (stem *ācri-*), *eager*.

*vigilanter*, *watchfully*, from *vigilāns* (stem *vigilant-*).

*prūdentē*, *prudently*, from *prūdēns* (stem *prudent-*).

*aliter*, *otherwise*, from *alius* (old stem *ali-*).

NOTE. — This suffix is perhaps the same as *-ter* in the Greek *-τερος* and in *uter*, *alter*. If so, these adverbs are in origin either neuter accusatives (cf. *d*) or masculine nominatives.

*c.* Some adjectives of the *first and second declensions* have adverbs of both forms (*-ē* and *-ter*). Thus *dūrus*, *hard*, has both *dūrē* and *dūriter*; *miser*, *wretched*, has both *miserē* and *miseriter*.

*d.* The *neuter accusative* of adjectives and pronouns is often used as an adverb : as, *multum*, *much* ; *facilē*, *easily* ; *quid*, *why*.

This is the origin of the ending *-ius* in the comparative degree of adverbs (§ 218) : as, *ācius*, *more keenly* (positive *ācriter*) ; *facilius*, *more easily* (positive *facilē*).

NOTE. — These adverbs are strictly cognate accusatives (§ 390).

*e.* The *ablative singular neuter* or (less commonly) *feminine* of adjectives, pronouns, and nouns may be used adverbially : as, *falsō*, *falsely* ; *citō*,

*quickly* (with shortened o); *rēctā* (viā), *straight* (straightway); *crēbrō*, *frequently*; *volgō*, *commonly*; *fortē*, *by chance*; *spontē*, *of one's own accord*.

NOTE. — Some adverbs are derived from adjectives not in use: *as*, *abundē*, *plentifully* (as if from *†abundus*; cf. *abundō*, *abound*); *saepē*, *often* (as if from *†saepis*, *dense*, *close-packed*; cf. *saepēs*, *hedge*, and *saepiō*, *hedge in*).

215. Further examples of Adverbs and other Particles which are in origin case-forms of nouns or pronouns are given below. In some the case is not obvious, and in some it is doubtful.

1. Neuter Accusative forms: *nōn* (for *nē-oinom*, later *finum*), *not*; *iterum* (comparative of *i-*, stem of *is*), *a second time*; *dēmum* (superlative of *dē*, *down*), *at last*.

2. Feminine Accusatives: *partim*, *partly*. So *statim*, *on the spot*; *saltem*, *at least* (generally *saltem*), from lost nouns in *-tis* (genitive *-tis*). Thus *-tim* became a regular adverbial termination; and by means of it adverbs were made from many noun- and verb-stems immediately, without the intervention of any form which could have an accusative in *-tim*: *as*, *sēparātīm*, *separately*, from *sēparātus*, *separate*. Some adverbs that appear to be feminine accusative are possibly instrumental: *as*, *palam*, *openly*; *perperam*, *wrongly*; *tam*, *so*; *quam*, *as*.

3. Plural Accusatives: *as*, *aliās*, *elsewhere*; *forās*, *out of doors* (as end of motion). So perhaps *quia*, *because*.

4. Ablative or Instrumental forms: *quā*, *where*; *intrā*, *within*; *extrā*, *outside*; *quī*, *how*; *aliquī*, *somehow*; *foris*, *out of doors*; *quō*, *whither*; *adē*, *to that degree*; *ultrō*, *beyond*; *citrō*, *this side* (as end of motion); *retrō*, *back*; *illōc* (for *illō-ce*), *weakened to illūc*, *thither*. Those in *-trō* are from comparative stems (cf. *ūl*, *cis*, *re-*).

5. Locative forms: *ibi*, *there*; *ubi*, *where*; *illī*, *illī-c*, *there*; *peregrī* (*peregrē*), *abroad*; *hic* (for *†hī-ce*), *here*. Also the compounds *hodiē* (probably for *†hōdiē*), *to-day*; *perendiē*, *day after to-morrow*.

6. Of uncertain formation: (1) those in *-tus* (usually preceded by *i*), with an ablative meaning: *as*, *funditus*, *from the bottom*, *utterly*; *divinitus*, *from above*, *providentially*; *intus*, *within*; *penitus*, *within*; (2) those in *-dem*, *-dam*, *-dō*: *as*, *quidem*, *indeed*; *quondam*, *once*; *quandō* (cf. *dōnec*), *when*; (3) *dum* (probably accusative of time), *while*; *iam*, *now*.

216. A phrase or short sentence has sometimes grown together into an adverb (cf. *notwithstanding*, *nevertheless*, *besides*): —

*postmodo*, *presently* (a short time after).

*dēnuō* (for *dē novō*), *anew*.

*vidēlicet* (for *vidē licet*), *to wit* (see, you may).

*nihilōminus*, *nevertheless* (by nothing the less).

NOTE. — Other examples are: — *antēā*, old *antideā*, *before* (*ante eā*, probably ablative or instrumental); *ilicō* (in *locō*), *on the spot*, *immediately*; *prōrsus*, *absolutely* (*prō vorsus*, *straight ahead*); *rūrsus* (*re-vorsus*), *again*; *quotannis*, *yearly* (*quot annis*, *as many years as there are*); *quam-ob-rem*, *wherefore*; *cōminis*, *hand to hand* (*con manus*); *ēminus*, *at long range* (*ex manus*); *nīmīrum*, *without doubt* (*nī mīrum*); *ob-viam* (*as in ire obviam*, *to go to meet*); *prīdem* (cf. *prae* and *-dem* in *i-dem*), *for some time*; *forsan* (*fors an*), *perhaps* (it's a chance whether); *forsitan* (*fors sit an*), *perhaps* (it would be a chance whether); *scilicet* (*scēi, licet*), *that is to say* (know, you may; cf. *i-licet*, *you may go*); *actūtum* (*actū*, *on the act*, and *tum*, *then*).

## CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS

217. The classes of Adverbs, with examples, are as follows : —

a. Adverbs of Place<sup>1</sup>

<i>hic, here.</i>	<i>hūc, hither.</i>	<i>hinc, hence.</i>	<i>hāc, by this way.</i>
<i>ibi, there.</i>	<i>eō, thither.</i>	<i>inde, thence.</i>	<i>eā, by that way.</i>
<i>istic, there.</i>	<i>istūc, thither.</i>	<i>istinc, thence.</i>	<i>istā, by that way.</i>
<i>illic, there.</i>	<i>illūc, thither.</i>	<i>illinc, thence.</i>	<i>illā (illāc), “ “</i>
<i>ubi, where.</i>	<i>quō, whither.</i>	<i>unde, whence.</i>	<i>quā, by what way.</i>
<i>alicubi, somewhere.</i>	<i>aliquō, somewhither, (to) somewhere.</i>	<i>alicunde, from some- where.</i>	<i>aliquā, by some way.</i>
<i>ibidem, in the same place.</i>	<i>eōdem, to the same place.</i>	<i>indidem, from the same place.</i>	<i>eādem, by the same way.</i>
<i>alibi, elsewhere, in another place.</i>	<i>aliō, elsewhere, to another place.</i>	<i>aliunde, from an- other place.</i>	<i>aliā, in another way.</i>
<i>ubiubi, wherever.</i>	<i>quōquō, whitherso- ever.</i>	<i>undecunque, whence- soever.</i>	<i>quāquā, in whatever way.</i>
<i>ubivis, anywhere, where you will.</i>	<i>quōvis, anywhere, whither you will.</i>	<i>undique, from every quarter.</i>	<i>quāvis, by whatever way.</i>
<i>sicubi, if anywhere.</i>	<i>siquō, if anywhere (anywhither).</i>	<i>sicunde, if from any- where.</i>	<i>siquā, if anywhere.</i>
<i>nēcubi, lest any- where.</i>	<i>nēquō, lest any- whither.</i>	<i>nēcunde, lest from anywhere.</i>	<i>nēquā, lest any- where.</i>

NOTE. — The demonstrative adverbs *hic*, *ibi*, *istic*, *illū*, *illic*, and their correlatives, correspond in signification with the pronouns *hic*, *is*, *iste*, *ille* (see § 146), and are often equivalent to these pronouns with a preposition : as, *inde* = *ab eō*, etc. So the relative or interrogative *ubi* corresponds with *qui* (*quis*), *ali-cubi* with *aliquis*, *ubiubi* with *quisquis*, *sī-cubi* with *siquis* (see §§ 147–151, with the table of correlatives in § 152).

*ūsq̄ue*, all the way to ; *usquam*, anywhere ; *nusquam*, nowhere ; *citrō*, to this side ; *intrō*, inwardly ; *ultrō*, beyond (or freely, i.e. beyond what is required) ; *porrō*, further on.

*quōrsum* (for *quō* *vorsum*, whither turned ?), to what end ? *hōrsum*, this way ; *prōrsum*, forward (*prōrsum*, utterly) ; *intrōrsum*, inwardly ; *retrōrsum*, backward ; *sūrsum*, upward ; *deorsum*, downward ; *seorsum*, apart ; *aliōrsum*, another way.

## b. Adverbs of Time

*quandō*, when ? (interrogative) ; *cum* (*quom*), when (relative) ; *ut*, when, as ; *nunc*, now ; *tunc* (*tum*), then ; *mox*, presently ; *iam*, already ; *dum*, while ; *iam diū*, iam diū, iam pridem, long ago, long since.

<sup>1</sup> All these adverbs were originally case-forms of pronouns. The forms in *-bi* and *-ic* are locative, those in *-ō* and *-ūc*, *-ā* and *-āc*, ablative (see § 215) ; those in *-inc* are from *-im* (of uncertain origin) with the particle *-ce* added (thus *illim*, *illinc*).

primum (primō), *first*; deinde (postea), *next after*; postrēmum (postrēmō), *finally*; posteāquam, postquam, *when (after that, as soon as)*.

umquam (unquam), *ever*; numquam (nunquam), *never*; semper, *always*.

aliquandō, *at some time, at length*; quandōque (quandōcumque), *whenever*; dēnique, *at last*.

quotiēns (quotiēs), *how often*; totiēns, *so often*; aliquotiēns, *a number of times*.

cotidiē, *every day*; hodiē, *to-day*; heri, *yesterday*; crās, *to-morrow*; pridīē, *the day before*; postridīē, *the day after*; in diēs, *from day to day*.

nōndum, *not yet*; necdum, *nor yet*; vixdum, *scarce yet*; quam primum, *as soon as possible*; saepe, *often*; crēbrō, *frequently*; iam nōn, *no longer*.

### c. Adverbs of Manner, Degree, or Cause

quam, *how, as*; tam, *so*; quamvis, *however much, although*; paene, *almost*; magis, *more*; valdē, *greatly*; vix, *hardly*.

cūr, quārē, *why*; ideō, idcirco, propterea, *on this account, because*; eō, *therefore*; ergō, itaque, igitur, *therefore*.

ita, sic, *so*; ut (utī), *as, how*; utut, utcumque, *however*.

### d. Interrogative Particles

an, -ne, anne, utrum, utrumne, num, *whether*.

nōne, annōn, *whether not*; numquid, ecquid, *whether at all*.

On the use of the Interrogative Particles, see §§ 332, 335.

### e. Negative Particles

nōn, *not* (in simple denial); haud, minimē, *not* (in contradiction); nē, *not* (in prohibition); nēve, neu, *nor*; nēdum, *much less*.

nē, *lest*; neque, nec, *nor*; nē . . . quidem, *not even*.

nōn modo . . . vērū (sed) etiam, *not only . . . but also*.

nōn modo . . . sed nē . . . quidem, *not only NOT . . . but not even*.

sī minus, *if not*; quō minus (quōminus), *so as not*.

quīn (relative), *but that*; (interrogative), *why not?*

nē, nec (in composition), *not*; so in nesciō, *I know not*; negō, *I say no* (āiō, *I say yes*); negōtium, *business* (nec-ōtium); nēmō (nē- and hemō, old form of homō), *no one*; nē quis, *lest any one*; neque enim, *for . . . not*.

For the use of Negative Particles, see § 325 ff.

For the Syntax and Peculiar uses of Adverbs, see § 320 ff.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

218. The Comparative of Adverbs is the neuter accusative of the comparative of the corresponding adjective; the Superlative is the Adverb in -ē formed regularly from the superlative of the Adjective:—

cārē, *dearly* (from cārus, *dear*); cārius, cārissimē.  
 miserē (miseriter), *wretchedly* (from miser, *wretched*); miserius, miserrimē.  
 leviter (from levis, *light*); levius, levissimē.  
 audācter (audāciter) (from audāx, *bold*); audācius, audācissimē.  
 benē, *well* (from bonus, *good*); melius, optimē.  
 malē, *ill* (from malus, *bad*); pēius, pessimē.

a. The following are irregular or defective:—

diū, *long* (in time); diūtius, diūtissimē.  
 potius, *rather*; potissimum, *first of all, in preference to all*.  
 saepe, *often*; saepius, *oftener, again*; saepissimē.  
 satis, *enough*; satius, *preferable*.  
 secus, *otherwise*; sētius, *worse*.  
 multum (multō), *magis, maximē, much, more, most*.  
 parum, *not enough*; minus, *less*; minimē, *least*.  
 nūper, *newly*; nūperimē.  
 temperē, *seasonably*; temperius.

NOTE.—In poetry the comparative *magis* is sometimes used instead of *magis*.

## PREPOSITIONS

219. Prepositions were not originally distinguished from Adverbs in form or meaning, but have become specialized in use. They developed comparatively late in the history of language. In the early stages of language development the cases alone were sufficient to indicate the sense, but, as the force of the case-endings weakened, adverbs were used for greater precision (cf. § 338). These adverbs, from their habitual association with particular cases, became Prepositions; but many retained also their independent function as adverbs.

Most prepositions are true case-forms: as, the comparative ablatives *extrā, infrā, suprā* (for *exterā, inferā, superā*), and the accusatives *circum, cōram, cum* (cf. § 215). *Circiter* is an adverbial formation from *circum* (cf. § 214. b. N.); *praeter* is the comparative of *prae, propter* of *prope*.<sup>1</sup> Of the remainder, *versus* is a petrified nominative (participle of *vertō*); *adversus* is a compound of *versus*; *trāns* is probably an old present participle (cf. *in-trā-re*); while the origin of the brief forms *ab, ad, dē, ex, ob*, is obscure and doubtful.

220. Prepositions are regularly used either with the Accusative or with the Ablative.

a. The following prepositions are used with the Accusative:—

<i>ad, to.</i>	<i>circiter, about.</i>	<i>intrā, inside.</i>
<i>adversus, against.</i>	<i>cis, citrā, this side.</i>	<i>iūxtā, near.</i>
<i>adversum, towards.</i>	<i>contrā, against.</i>	<i>ob, on account of.</i>
<i>ante, before.</i>	<i>ergā, towards.</i>	<i>pene, in the power of.</i>
<i>apud, at, near.</i>	<i>extrā, outside.</i>	<i>per, through.</i>
<i>circā, around.</i>	<i>infrā, below.</i>	<i>pōne, behind.</i>
<i>circum, around.</i>	<i>inter, among.</i>	<i>post, after.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The case-form of these prepositions in *-ter* is doubtful.

praeter, <i>beyond.</i>	secundum, <i>next to.</i>	ultrā, <i>on the further side.</i>
prope, <i>near.</i>	suprā, <i>above.</i>	versus, <i>towards.</i>
propter, <i>on account of.</i>	trāns, <i>across.</i>	

b. The following prepositions are used with the Ablative: — <sup>1</sup>

ā, ab, <i>away from, by.</i>	ē, ex, <i>out of.</i>
absque, <i>without, but for.</i>	prae, <i>in comparison with.</i>
cōram, <i>in presence of.</i>	prō, <i>in front of, for.</i>
cum, <i>with.</i>	sine, <i>without.</i>
dē, <i>from.</i>	tenus, <i>up to, as far as.</i>

c. The following may be used with either the Accusative or the Ablative, but with a difference in meaning: —

in, <i>into, in.</i>	sub, <i>under.</i>
subter, <i>beneath.</i>	super, <i>above.</i>

In and sub, when followed by the accusative, indicate *motion to*, when by the ablative, *rest in*, a place:

vēnit in aedīs, *he came into the house*; erat in aedibus, *he was in the house.*

disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur, *the system is thought to have been discovered in Great Britain and thence brought over to Gaul.*

sub ilice cōsederat, *he had seated himself under an ilex.*

sub lēgēs mittere orbem, *to subject the world to laws (to send the world under laws).*

221. The uses of the Prepositions are as follows: —

1. **Ā, ab, away from,<sup>2</sup> from, off from,** with the ablative.

a. Of place: as, — ab urbe profectus est, *he set out from the city.*

b. Of time: (1) *from*: as, — ab hōrā tertiā ad vesperam, *from the third hour till evening*; (2) *just after*: as, — ab eō magistratū, *after [holding] that office.*

c. Idiomatic uses: ā reliquīs differunt, *they differ from the others*; ā parvulis, *from early childhood*; prope ab urbe, *near (not far from) the city*; liberāre ab, *to set free from*; occisus ab hoste (perlit ab hoste), *slain by an enemy*; ab hāc parte, *on this side*; ab rē eius, *to his advantage*; ā rē publicā, *for the interest of the state.*

2. **Ad, to, towards, at, near,** with the accusative (cf. in, into).

a. Of place: as, — ad urbem vēnit, *he came to the city*; ad merīdiem, *towards the south*; ad exercitum, *to the army*; ad hostem, *toward the enemy*; ad urbem, *near the city.*

b. Of time: as, — ad nōnam hōram, *till the ninth hour.*

c. With persons: as, — ad eum vēnit, *he came to him.*

<sup>1</sup> For palam etc., see § 432.

<sup>2</sup> Ab signifies direction from the object, but often *towards* the speaker; compare dē, *down from*, and ex, *out of*.



d. Idiomatic uses: *ad supplicia dēscendunt, they resort to punishment*; *ad haec respondit, to this he answered*; *ad tempus, at the [fit] time*; *adire ad rem publicam, to go into public life*; *ad petendam pācem, to seek peace*; *ad latera, on the flank*; *ad arma, to arms*; *ad hunc modum, in this way*; *quem ad modum, how, as*; *ad centum, nearly a hundred*; *ad hōc, besides*; *omnēs ad finem, all to a man*; *ad diem, on the day*.

3. *Ante, in front of, before*, with the accusative (cf. *post, after*).

a. Of place: *as, — ante portam, in front of the gate*; *ante exercitum, in advance of the army*.

b. Of time: *as, — ante bellum, before the war*.

c. Idiomatic uses: *ante urbem captam, before the city was taken*; *ante diem quintum (a.d.v.) Kal., the fifth day before the Calends*; *ante quadriennium, four years before or ago*; *ante tempus, too soon (before the time)*.

4. *Apud, at, by, among*, with the accusative.

a. Of place (rare and archaic): *as, — apud forum, at the forum (in the market-place)*.

b. With reference to persons or communities: *as, — apud Helvētiōs, among the Helvetians*; *apud populum, before the people*; *apud aliquem, at one's house*; *apud sē, at home or in his senses*; *apud Cicerōnem, in [the works of] Cicero*.

5. *Circā, about, around*, with the accusative (cf. *circum, circiter*).

a. Of place: *templa circā forum, the temples about the forum*; *circā sē habet, he has with him (of persons)*.

b. Of time or number (in poetry and later writers): *circā eandem hōram, about the same hour*; *circā Idūs Octōbris, about the fifteenth of October*; *circā decem milia, about ten thousand*.

c. Figuratively (in later writers), *about, in regard to* (cf. *dē*): *circā quem pūgna est, with regard to whom, etc.*; *circā deōs neglegentior, rather neglectful of (i.e. in worshipping) the gods*.

6. *Circiter, about*, with the accusative.

a. Of time or number: *circiter Idūs Novembris, about the thirteenth of November*; *circiter meridiem, about noon*.

7. *Circum, about, around*, with the accusative.

a. Of place: *circum haec loca, hereabout*; *circum Capuam, round Capua*; *circum illum, with him*; *lēgātio circum Insulās missa, an embassy sent to the islands round about*; *circum amicōs, to his friends round about*.

8. *Contrā, opposite, against*, with the accusative.

*contrā Ītaliā, over against Italy*; *contrā haec, in answer to this*.

a. Often as adverb: *as, — haec contrā, this in reply*; *contrā autem, but on the other hand*; *quod contrā, whereas, on the other hand*.

9. *Cum, with, together with*, with the ablative.

a. Of place: *as*, — *vāde mēcum*, *go with me*; *cum omnibus impedimentis*, *with all [their] baggage*.

b. Of time: *as*, — *primā cum lūce*, *at early dawn* (with first light).

c. Idiomatic uses: *māgnō cum dolōre*, *with great sorrow*; *commūnicāre aliquid cum aliquō*, *share something with some one*; *cum malō suō*, *to his own hurt*; *cōnfigere cum hoste*, *to fight with the enemy*; *esse cum telō*, *to go armed*; *cum silentiō*, *in silence*.

10. *Dē*, *down from, from*, with the ablative (cf. *ab*, *away from*; *ex*, *out of*).

a. Of place: *as*, — *dē caelō dēmissus*, *sent down from heaven*; *dē nāvibus dēsilire*, *to jump down from the ships*.

b. Figuratively, concerning, about, of:<sup>1</sup> *as*, — *cōgnōscit dē Clōdī caede*, *he learns of the murder of Clodius*; *cōnsilia dē bellō*, *plans of war*.

c. In a partitive sense (compare *ex*), *out of, of*: *as*, — *ūnus dē plēbe*, *one of the people*.

d. Idiomatic uses: *multis dē causis*, *for many reasons*; *quā dē causā*, *for which reason*; *dē imprōvisō*, *of a sudden*; *dē industriā*, *on purpose*; *dē integrō*, *anew*; *dē tertiā vigiliā*, *just at midnight* (starting at the third watch); *dē mēse Decembrī nāvigare*, *to sail as early as December*.

11. *Ex*, *ē*, *from* (the midst, opposed to *in*), *out of*, with the ablative (cf. *ab* and *dē*).

a. Of place: *as*, — *ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt*, *they flew out from all parts of the forest*; *ex Hispaniā*, [a man] *from Spain*.

b. Of time: *as*, — *ex eō diē quintus*, *the fifth day from that* (four days after); *ex hōc diē*, *from this day forth*.

c. Idiomatically or less exactly: *ex cōsulātū*, *right after his consulship*; *ex eius sententiā*, *according to his opinion*; *ex aequō*, *justly*; *ex imprōvisō*, *unexpectedly*; *ex tuā rē*, *to your advantage*; *māgnā ex parte*, *in a great degree*; *ex equō pugnāre*, *to fight on horseback*; *ex ūsū*, *expedient*; *ē regiōne*, *opposite*; *quaerere ex aliquō*, *to ask of some one*; *ex senātūs cōsultō*, *according to the decrees of the senate*; *ex fugā*, *in [their] flight* (proceeding immediately from it); *ūnus ē filiis*, *one of the sons*.

12. *In*, with the accusative or the ablative.

1. With the accusative, *into* (opposed to *ex*).

a. Of place: *as*, — *in Italiā contendit*, *he hastens into Italy*.

b. Of time, *till, until*: *as*, — *in lūcem*, *till daylight*.

c. Idiomatically or less exactly: *in meridiem*, *towards the south*; *amor in (ergā, adversus) patrem*, *love for his father*; *in arā cōnfūgit*, *he fled to the altar* (on the steps, or merely to); *in diēs*, *from day to day*; *in longitudinem*, *lengthwise*; *in lātitudinem patēbat*, *extended in width*; *in haec verba iūrāre*, *to swear to these words*; *hunc in modum*, *in this way*; *ōrātiō in Catillinā*, *a speech against*

<sup>1</sup> Of originally meant *from* (cf. *off*).

*Catiline*; in perpetuum, *forever*; in pēius, *for the worse*; in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth* (for the day).

2. With the ablative, *in, on, among*.

In very various connections: as, — in castris, *in the camp* (cf. ad castra, *to, at, or near the camp*); in mari, *on the sea*; in urbe esse, *to be in town*; in tempore, *in season*; in scribendō, *while writing*; est mihi in animō, *I have it in mind, I intend*; in ancoris, *at anchor*; in hoc homine, *in the case of this man*; in dubio esse, *to be in doubt*.

13. *Infra*, *below*, with the accusative.

a. Of place: as, — ad mare infra oppidum, *by the sea below the town*; infra caelum, *under the sky*.

b. Figuratively or less exactly: as, — infra Homērum, *later than Homer*; infra trēs pedēs, *less than three feet*; infra elephantōs, *smaller than elephants*; infra infimōs omnis, *the lowest of the low*.

14. *Inter*, *between, among*, with the accusative.

inter mē et Scipionem, *between myself and Scipio*; inter ōs et offam, *between the cup and the lip* (the mouth and the morsel); inter hostium tela, *amid the weapons of the enemy*; inter omnis primus, *first of all*; inter bibendum, *while drinking*; inter sē loquuntur, *they talk together*.

15. *Ob*, *towards, on account of*, with the accusative.

a. Literally: (1) of motion (archaic): as, — ob Rōmam, *towards Rome* (Ennius); ob viam, *to the road* (preserved as adverb, *in the way of*). (2) Of place in which, *before*, in a few phrases: as, — ob oculōs, *before the eyes*.

b. Figuratively, *in return for* (mostly archaic, probably a word of account, balancing one thing *against* another): as, — ob mulierem, *in pay for the woman*; ob rem, *for gain*. Hence applied to reason, cause, and the like, *on account of* (a similar mercantile idea), *for*: as, — ob eam causam, *for that reason*; quam ob rem (quamobrem), *wherefore, why*.

16. *Per*, *through, over*, with the accusative.

a. Of motion: as, — per urbem ire, *to go through the city*; per mūrōs, *over the walls*.

b. Of time: as, — per hiemem, *throughout the winter*.

c. Figuratively, of persons as means or instruments: as, — per hominēs idōneos, *through the instrumentality of suitable persons*; licet per mē, *you* (etc.) *may for all me*. Hence, stat per mē, *it is through my instrumentality*; so, per sē, *in and of itself*.

d. Weakened, in many adverbial expressions: as, — per locum, *in jest*; per speciem, *in show, ostentatiously*.

17. *Prae*, *in front of*, with the ablative.

a. Literally, of place (in a few connections): as, — prae sē portāre, *to carry in one's arms*; prae sē ferre, *to carry before one*, (hence figuratively) *exhibit, proclaim ostentatiously, make known*.

b. Figuratively, of hindrance, as by an obstacle in front (compare English for): *as*, — *prae gaudiō conticuit*, *he was silent for joy*.

c. Of comparison: *as*, — *prae magnitudine corporum suorum*, *in comparison with their own great size*.

### 18. *Praeter*, *along by*, *by*, with the accusative.

a. Literally: *as*, — *praeter castra*, *by the camp* (along by, in front of); *praeter oculos*, *before the eyes*.

b. Figuratively, *beyond*, *besides*, *more than*, *in addition to*, *except*: *as*, — *praeter spem*, *beyond hope*; *praeter alios*, *more than others*; *praeter paucos*, *with the exception of a few*.

### 19. *Prō*, *in front of*, with the ablative.

*sedens prō aede Castoris*, *sitting in front of the temple of Castor*; *prō populō*, *in presence of the people*. So *prō rostris*, *on [the front of] the rostra*; *prō contione*, *before the assembly* (in a speech).

a. In various idiomatic uses: *prō lege*, *in defence of the law*; *prō vitulā*, *instead of a heifer*; *prō centum milibus*, *as good as a hundred thousand*; *prō ratā parte*, *in due proportion*; *prō hāc vice*, *for this once*; *prō cōsule*, *in place of consul*; *prō viribus*, *considering his strength*; *prō virili parte*, *to the best of one's ability*; *prō tuā prudenā*, *in accordance with your wisdom*.

### 20. *Propter*, *near*, *by*, with the accusative.

*propter tē sedet*, *he sits next you*. Hence, *on account of* (cf. *all along of*): *as*, — *propter metum*, *through fear*.

### 21. *Secundum*,<sup>1</sup> *just behind*, *following*, with the accusative.

a. Literally: *as*, — *ite secundum mē* (Plaut.), *go behind me*; *secundum litus*, *near the shore*; *secundum flūmen*, *along the stream* (cf. *secundō flūmine*, *down stream*).

b. Figuratively, *according to*: *as*, — *secundum naturam*, *according to nature*.

### 22. *Sub*, *under*, *up to*, with the accusative or the ablative.

1. Of motion, with the accusative: *as*, — *sub montem succedere*, *to come close to the hill*.

a. Idiomatically: *sub noctem*, *towards night*; *sub lūcem*, *near daylight*; *sub haec dicta*, *at (following) these words*.

2. Of rest, with the ablative: *as*, — *sub Iove*, *in the open air* (under the heaven, personified as Jove); *sub monte*, *at the foot of the hill*.

a. Idiomatically: *sub eodem tempore*, *about the same time* (just after it).

### 23. *Subter*, *under*, *below*, with the accusative (sometimes, in poetry, the ablative).

*subter togam* (Liv.), *under his mantle*; but, — *subter litore* (Catull.), *below the shore*.

### 24. *Super*,<sup>2</sup> with the accusative or the ablative.

<sup>1</sup> Old participle of *sequor*.

<sup>2</sup> Comparative of *sub*.

1. With the accusative, *above, over, on, beyond, upon*.

a. Of place: *super vāllum praecipitārī* (Iug. 58), *to be hurled over the rampart*; *super laterēs coria inducuntur* (B.C. ii. 10), *hides are drawn over the bricks*; *super terrae tumulum statui* (Legg. ii. 65), *to be placed on the mound of earth*; *super Numidiam* (Iug. 19), *beyond Numidia*.

b. Idiomatically or less exactly: *vulnus super vulnus*, *wound upon wound*; *super vinum* (Q. C. viii. 4), *over his wine*.

2. With the ablative, *concerning, about* (the only use with this case in prose).

*hāc super rē*, *concerning this thing*; *super tāli rē*, *about such an affair*; *litterās super tantā rē expectāre*, *to wait for a letter in a matter of such importance*.

a. Poetically, in other senses: *ligna super focō largē repōnēs* (Hor. Od. i. 9. 5), *piling logs generously on the fire*; *nocte super mediā* (Aen. ix. 61), *after midnight*.

25. *Suprā*, *on top of, above*, with the accusative.

*suprā terram*, *on the surface of the earth*. So also figuratively: *as*, — *suprā hanc memoriā*, *before our remembrance*; *suprā mōrem*, *more than usual*; *suprā quod*, *besides*.

26. *Tenus* (postpositive), *as far as, up to*, regularly with the ablative, sometimes with the genitive (cf. § 359. b).

1. With the ablative: *Taurō tenus*, *as far as Taurus*; *capulō tenus*, *up to the hill*.

2. With the genitive: *Cumārū tenus* (Fam. viii. 1. 2), *as far as Cumae*.

NOTE 1. — *Tenus* is frequently connected with the feminine of an adjective pronoun, making an adverbial phrase: *as*, *hāctenus*, *hitherto*; *quātenus*, *so far as*; *dē hāc rē hāctenus*, *so much for that* (about this matter so far).

NOTE 2. — *Tenus* was originally a neuter noun, meaning *line* or *extent*. In its use with the genitive (mostly poetical) it may be regarded as an adverbial accusative (§ 397. a).

27. *Trans*, *across, over, through, by*, with the accusative.

a. Of motion: *as*, — *trāns mare currunt*, *they run across the sea*; *trāns flūmen ferre*, *to carry over a river*; *trāns aethera*, *through the sky*; *trāns caput iace*, *throw over your head*.

b. Of rest: *as*, — *trāns Rhēnum incolunt*, *they live across the Rhine*.

28. *Ultrā*, *beyond* (on the further side), with the accusative.

*cis Padum ultrāque*, *on this side of the Po and beyond*; *ultrā eum numerum*, *more than that number*; *ultrā fidem*, *incredible*; *ultrā modum*, *immoderate*.

NOTE. — Some adverbs appear as prepositions: *as*, *intus*, *insuper* (see § 219). For Prepositions in Compounds, see § 267.

## CONJUNCTIONS

**222.** Conjunctions, like prepositions (cf. § 219), are closely related to adverbs, and are either petrified cases of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, or obscured phrases: *as*, *quod*, an old accusative; *dum*, probably an old accusative (cf. *tum*, *cum*); *vērū*, an old neuter ablative of *vērū*; *nihilōminus*, *none the less*; *proinde*, lit. *forward from there*. Most conjunctions are connected with *pronominal* adverbs, which cannot always be referred to their original case-forms.

**223.** Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences. They are of two classes, Coördinate and Subordinate: —

*a.* Coördinate, connecting coördinate or similar constructions (see § 278.

2. *a*). These are: —

1. Copulative or disjunctive, implying a *connection or separation* of thought as well as of words: *as*, *et*, *and*; *aut*, *or*; *neque*, *nor*.

2. Adversative, implying a connection of words, but a contrast in thought: *as*, *sed*, *but*.

3. Causal, introducing a cause or reason: *as*, *nam*, *for*.

4. Illative, denoting an inference: *as*, *igitur*, *therefore*.

*b.* Subordinate, connecting a subordinate or independent clause with that on which it depends (see § 278. 2. *b*). These are: —

1. Conditional, denoting a condition or hypothesis: *as*, *si*, *if*; *nisi*, *unless*.

2. Comparative, implying comparison as well as condition: *as*, *ac si*, *as if*.

3. Concessive, denoting a concession or admission: *as*, *quamquam*, *although* (lit. *however much it may be true that, etc.*).

4. Temporal: *as*, *postquam*, *after*.

5. Consecutive, expressing result: *as*, *ut*, *so that*.

6. Final, expressing purpose: *as*, *ut*, *in order that*; *nē*, *that not*.

7. Causal, expressing cause: *as*, *quia*, *because*.

**224.** Conjunctions are more numerous and more accurately distinguished in Latin than in English. The following list includes the common conjunctions <sup>1</sup> and conjunctive phrases: —

## COÖRDINATE

*a.* Copulative and Disjunctive

*et*, *-que*, *atque* (*ac*), *and*.

*et . . . et*; *et . . . -que* (*atque*); *-que . . . et*; *-que . . . -que* (poetical), *both . . . and*.

*etiam*, *quoque*, *neque nōn* (*necnōn*), *quā etiam*, *itidem* (*item*), *also*.

*cum . . . tum*; *tum . . . tum*, *both . . . and*; *not only . . . but also*.

<sup>1</sup> Some of these have been included in the classification of adverbs. See also list of Correlatives, § 152.

quā . . . quā, *on the one hand . . . on the other hand.*

modo . . . modo, *now . . . now.*

aut . . . aut; vel . . . vel (-ve), *either . . . or.*

sive (seu) . . . sive, *whether . . . or.*

nec (neque) . . . nec (neque); neque . . . nec; nec . . . neque (rare), *neither . . . nor.*

et . . . neque, *both . . . and not.*

nec . . . et; nec (neque) . . . -que, *neither (both not) . . . and.*

### b. Adversative

sed, autem, vērū, vērō, at, atquē, *but.*

tamen, attamen, sed tamen, vērū tamen, *but yet, nevertheless.*

nihilōminus, *none the less.*

at vērō, *but in truth; enimvērō, for in truth.*

cāterum, *on the other hand, but.*

### c. Causal

nam, namque, enim, etenim, *for.*

quāpropter, quārē, quamobrem, quōcircā, unde, *wherefore, whence.*

### d. Illative

ergō, igitur, itaque, idē, idcircō, inde, proinde, *therefore, accordingly.*

## SUBORDINATE

### a. Conditional

sī, if; sīn, *but if; nisi (nī), unless, if not; quod sī, but if.*

modo, dum, dummodo, sī modo, *if only, provided.*

dummodo nē (dum nē, modo nē), *provided only not.*

### b. Comparative

ut, utī, sicut, *just as; velut, as, so as; prout, praeut, ceu, like as, according as.*

tamquam (tanquam), quasi, ut sī, ac sī, velut, velutī, velut sī, *as if.*

quam, atque (ac), *as, than.*

### c. Concessive

etsī, etiamsī, tametsī, *even if; quamquam (quanquam), although.*

quamvis, quantumvis, quamlibet, quantumlibet, *however much.*

licet (properly a verb), ut, cum (quom), *though, suppose, whereas.*

### d. Temporal

cum (quom), quandō, *when; ubi, ut, when, as; cum primum, ut primum, ubi primum,*

*simul, simul ac, simul atque, as soon as; postquam (posteaquam), after.*

prius . . . quam, ante . . . quam, *before; nōn ante . . . quam, not . . . until.*

dum, usque dum, dōnec, quoad, *until, as long as, while.*

## e. Consecutive and Final

ut (utī), quō, *so that, in order that.*

nē, ut nē, *lest (that . . . not, in order that not)*; nēve (neu), *that not, nor.*

quā (after negatives), quōminus, *but that (so as to prevent), that not.*

## f. Causal

quia, quod, quoniam (tquom-iam), quandō, *because.*

cum (quom), *since.*

quandōquidem, sī quidem, quippe, ut pote, *since indeed, inasmuch as.*

propterea . . . quod, *for this reason . . . that.* ~

On the use of Conjunctions, see §§ 323, 324.

## INTERJECTIONS

**225.** Some Interjections are mere natural exclamations of feeling; others are derived from inflected parts of speech, e.g. the imperatives *em, lo* (probably for *eme, take*); *age, come*, etc. Names of deities occur in *herclē, pol* (from *Pollux*), etc. Many Latin interjections are borrowed from the Greek, as *euge, euhoe*, etc.

**226.** The following list comprises most of the Interjections in common use: —

ō, ēn, ecce, ehem, papae, vāh (of *astonishment*).

iō, ēvae, ēvoe, euhoe (of *joy*).

heu, ēheu, vae, alas (of *sorrow*).

heus, eho, ehodum, ho (of *calling*); st, hist.

ēia, euge (of *praise*).

prō (of *attestation*): as, prō pudor, *shame!*



## FORMATION OF WORDS

**227.** All formation of words is originally a process of composition. An element significant in itself is added to another significant element, and thus the meaning of the two is combined. No other combination is possible for the formation either of inflections or of stems. Thus, in fact, *words* (since roots and stems are significant elements, and so words) are first placed side by side, then brought under one accent, and finally felt as one word. The gradual process is seen in *sea voyage*, *sea-nymph*, *seaside*. But as all derivation, properly so called, appears as a combination of uninflected stems, every type of formation in use must antedate inflection. Hence words were not in strictness derived either from nouns or from verbs, but from *stems* which were neither, because they were in fact both; for the distinction between noun-stems and verb-stems had not yet been made.

After the development of Inflection, however, that one of several kindred words which seemed the simplest was regarded as the *primitive* form, and from this the other words of the group were thought to be *derived*. Such supposed processes of formation were then imitated, often erroneously, and in this way *new modes of derivation* arose. Thus new adjectives were formed from nouns, new nouns from adjectives, new adjectives from verbs, and new verbs from adjectives and nouns.

In course of time the real or apparent relations of many words became confused, so that nouns and adjectives once supposed to come from nouns were often assigned to verbs, and others once supposed to come from verbs were assigned to nouns.

Further, since the language was constantly changing, many words went out of use, and do not occur in the literature as we have it. Thus many Derivatives survive of which the Primitive is lost.

Finally, since all conscious word-formation is imitative, intermediate steps in derivation were sometimes omitted, and occasionally apparent Derivatives occur for which no proper Primitive ever existed.

## ROOTS AND STEMS

**228.** Roots<sup>1</sup> are of two kinds: —

1. *Verbal*, expressing ideas of action or condition (sensible phenomena).
2. *Pronominal*, expressing ideas of position and direction.

From verbal roots come all parts of speech except pronouns and certain particles derived from pronominal roots.

**229.** Stems are either identical with roots or derived from them. They are of two classes: (1) Noun-stems (including Adjective-stems) and (2) Verb-stems.

NOTE. — Noun-stems and verb-stems were not originally different (see p. 163), and in the consciousness of the Romans were often confounded; but in general they were treated as distinct.

**230.** Words are formed by inflection: (1) from roots inflected as stems; (2) from derived stems (see § 232).

<sup>1</sup> For the distinction between Roots and Stems, see §§ 24, 25.

### 231. A root used as a stem may appear —

*a.* With a short vowel: as, *duc-is* (*dux*), *DUC*; *nec-is* (*nex*); *i-s*, *i-d*. So in verbs: *as*, *es-t*, *fer-t* (cf. § 174. 2).

*b.* With a long vowel<sup>1</sup>: as, *lūc-is* (*lūx*), *LUC*; *pāc-is* (*pāx*). So in verbs: *dūc-ō*, *i-s* for *īeis*, from *eō*, *īre*; *fātūr* from *fāri*.

*c.* With reduplication: as, *fur-fur*, *mar-mor*, *mur-mur*. So in verbs: *as*, *gi-gnō* (root *GEN*), *si-stō* (root *STA*).

## DERIVED STEMS AND SUFFIXES

232. Derived Stems are formed from roots or from other stems by means of *suffixes*. These are: —

1. Primary: added to the root, or (in later times by analogy) to verb-stems.

2. Secondary: added to a noun-stem or an adjective-stem.

Both primary and secondary suffixes are for the most part pronominal roots (§ 228. 2), but a few are of doubtful origin.

NOTE 1. — The distinction between primary and secondary suffixes, not being original (see § 227), is continually lost sight of in the development of a language. Suffixes once primary are used as secondary, and those once secondary are used as primary. Thus in *hosticus* (*hosti* + *cus*) the suffix *-cus*, originally *ko-* (see § 234. II. 12) primary, as in *paucus*, has become secondary, and is thus regularly used to form derivatives; but in *pudicus*, *apricus*, it is treated as primary again, because these words were really or apparently connected with verbs. So in English *-able* was borrowed as a primary suffix (*tolerable*, *eatable*), but also makes forms like *clubbable*, *salable*; *-some* is properly a secondary suffix, as in *toilsome*, *lonesome*, but makes also such words as *meddlesome*, *venturesome*.

NOTE 2. — It is the *stem* of the word, not the *nominative*, that is formed by the derivative suffix. For convenience, however, the nominative will usually be given.

### Primary. Suffixes

233. The words in Latin formed immediately from the root by means of Primary Suffixes, are few. For —

1. Inherited words so formed were mostly further developed by the addition of other suffixes, as we might make an adjective *lone-ly-some-ish*, meaning nothing more than *lone*, *lonely*, or *lonesome*.

2. By such accumulation of suffixes, new compound suffixes were formed which crowded out even the old types of derivation. Thus, —

<sup>1</sup> The difference in vowel-quantity in the same root (as *dūc*) depends on inherited variations (see § 17. a).

A word like *mēns*, *mentis*, by the suffix *ōn-* (nom. *-ō*), gave *mentiō*, and this, being divided into *men* + *tiō*, gave rise to a new type of abstract nouns in *-tiō*: as, *lēgā-tiō*, *embassy*.

A word like *auditor*, by the suffix *io-* (nom. *-ius*), gave rise to adjectives like *audītōr-ius*, of which the neuter (*audītōrium*) is used to denote the *place where* the action of the verb is performed. Hence *tōrio-* (nom. *-tōrium*), *n.*, becomes a regular noun-suffix (§ 250. *a*).

So in English such a word as *suffocation* gives a suffix *-ation*, and with this is made *starvation*, though there is no such word as *starvate*.

## 234. Examples of primary stem-suffixes are:—

### I. Vowel suffixes:—

1. *o-* (M., N.), *ā-* (F.), found in nouns and adjectives of the first two declensions: as, *sonus*, *lūdus*, *vagus*, *toga* (root *TEG*).

2. *i-*, as in *ovis*, *avis*; in Latin frequently changed, as in *rūpēs*, or lost, as in *scobs* (*scobis*, root *SCAB*).

3. *u-*, disguised in most adjectives by an additional *i*, as in *suā-vis* (for *tsuād-vis*, instead of *tsuā-dus*, cf. *ῥόδός*), *ten-uis* (root *TEN* in *tendō*), and remaining alone only in nouns of the fourth declension, as *acus* (root *AK*, *sharp*, in *ācer*, *aciēs*, *ῥάκς*), *pecū*, *genū*.

### II. Suffixes with a consonant:—

1. *to-* (M., N.), *tā-* (F.), in the regular perfect passive participle, as *tēctus*, *tēctum*; sometimes with an active sense, as in *pōtus*, *prānsus*; and found in a few words not recognized as participles, as *pūtus* (cf. *pūrus*), *altus* (*alō*).

2. *ti-* in abstracts and rarely in nouns of agency, as *messis*, *vestis*, *pars*, *mēns*. But in many the *i* is lost.

3. *tu-* in abstracts (including supines), sometimes becoming concretes, as *āctus*, *lūctus*.

4. *no-* (M., N.), *nā-* (F.), forming perfect participles in other languages, and in Latin making adjectives of like participial meaning, which often become nouns, as *māgnus*, *plēnus*, *rēgnum*.

5. *ni-*, in nouns of agency and adjectives, as *ignis*, *sēgnis*.

6. *nu-*, rare, as in *manū*, *pinus*, *cornū*.

7. *mo-* (*mā-*), with various meanings, as in *animus*, *almus*, *firmus*, *forma*.

8. *vo-* (*vā-*) (commonly *uo-*, *uā-*), with an active or passive meaning, as in *equus* (*equos*), *arvum*, *cōspiciuus*, *exiguus*, *vacivus* (*vacuus*).

9. *ro-* (*rā-*), as in *ager* (stem *ag-ro-*), *integer* (cf. *intāctus*), *sacer*, *plēri-que* (cf. *plēnus*, *plētus*).

10. *lo-* (*lā-*), as in *caelum* (for *tsaed-lum*), *chisel*, *exemplum*, *sella* (for *tsedla*).

11. *yo-* (*yā-*), forming gerundives in other languages, and in Latin making adjectives and abstracts, including many of the first and fifth declensions, as *eximius*, *audācia*, *Flōrentia*, *perniciēs*.

12. *ko-* (*kā-*), sometimes primary, as in *pauci* (cf. *παῖς*), *locus* (for *stlocus*). In many cases the vowel of this termination is lost, leaving a consonant stem: as, *apex*, *cortex*, *loquāx*.

13. en- (on-, ãn-, õn-), in nouns of agency and abstracts: as, aspergõ, compägõ (-inis), gerõ (-õnis).

14. men-, expressing *means*, often passing into the action itself: as, agmen, flûmen, fulmen.

15. ter- (tor-, tēr-, tōr-, tr-), forming nouns of *agency*: as, pater (i.e. *protector*), frāter (i.e. *supporter*), ōrātor.

16. tro-, forming nouns of *means*: as, claustrum (CLAUD), mûlctrum (MULG).

17. es- (os-), forming names of actions, passing into concretes: as, genus (generis), tempus (see § 15. 4). The infinitive in -ere (as in reg-ere) is a locative of this stem (-er-e for †es-i).

18. nt- (ont-, ent-), forming present active *participles*: as, legēns, with some adjectives from roots unknown: as, frequēns, recēns.

The above, with some suffixes given below, belong to the Indo-European parent speech, and most of them were not felt as living formations in the Latin.

### Significant Endings

235. Both primary and secondary suffixes, especially in the form of compound suffixes, were used in Latin with more or less consciousness of their meaning. They may therefore be called Significant Endings.

They form: (1) Nouns of Agency; (2) Abstract Nouns (including Names of Actions); (3) Adjectives (active or passive).

NOTE.—There is really no difference in etymology between an adjective and a noun, except that some formations are habitually used as adjectives and others as nouns (§ 20. b. n. 2).

## DERIVATION OF NOUNS

### Nouns of Agency

236. Nouns of Agency properly denote the *agent* or *doer* of an action. But they include many words in which the idea of agency has entirely faded out, and also many words used as adjectives.

α. Nouns denoting the *agent* or *doer* of an action are formed from roots or verb-stems by means of the suffixes —

-tor (-sor), M.; -trix, F.

can-tor, can-trix, *singer*;

vic-tor, vic-trix, *conqueror* (victorious);

tōn-sor (for †tōnd-tor), tōns-trix (for

†tōnd-trix), *hair-cutter*;

peti-tor, *candidate*;

can-ere (root CAN), *to sing*.

vinc-ere (VIC), *to conquer*.

tōnd-ēre (TOND as root), *to shear*.

pet-ēre (PET; peti- as stem), *to seek*.

By analogy *-tor* is sometimes added to noun-stems, but these may be stems of lost verbs: as, *viā-tor*, *traveller*, from *via*, *way* (but cf. the verb *inviō*).

NOTE 1.—The termination *-tor* (*-sor*) has the same phonetic change as the supine ending *-tum* (*-sum*), and is added to the same form of root or verb-stem as that ending. The stem-ending is *tōr-* (§ 234. II. 15), which is shortened in the nominative.

NOTE 2.—The feminine form is always *-trix*. Masculines in *-sor* lack the feminine, except *expulsor* (*expultrix*) and *tōnsor* (*tōnstrix*).

*b.* *t-, m. or f.*, added to verb-stems makes nouns in *-es* (*-itis*, *-etis*; stem *it-, et-*) descriptive of a character:—

*prae-stes*, *-stitis*, (verb-stem from root *sta*, *stāre*, *stand*), *guardian*.

*teges*, *-etis* (verb-stem *tege-*, cf. *tegō*, *cover*), *a coverer, a mat*.

*pedes*, *-itis* (*pēs*, *ped-is*, *foot*, and *i*, root of *ire*, *go*), *foot-soldier*.

*c.* *-ō* (genitive *-ōnis*, stem *ōn-*), *m.*, added to verb-stems<sup>1</sup> indicates a person employed in some specific art or trade:—

*com-bibō* (*BIB* as root in *bibō*, *bibere*, *drink*), *a pot-companion*.

*gerō*, *-ōnis* (*GES* in *gerō*, *gerere*, *carry*), *a carrier*.

NOTE.—This termination is also used to form many nouns descriptive of personal characteristics (cf. § 255).

### Names of Actions and Abstract Nouns

**237.** Names of Actions are confused, through their terminations, with real abstract nouns (names of *qualities*), and with concrete nouns denoting *means* and *instrument*.

They are also used to express the *concrete result* of an action (as often in English).

Thus *legiō* is literally *the act of collecting*, but comes to mean *legion* (the body of soldiers collected); cf. *levy* in English.

**238.** Abstract Nouns and Names of Actions are formed from roots and verb-stems by means of the endings—

*a.* Added to roots or forms conceived as roots—

NOM.	-or, m.	-ēs, f.	-us, n.
GEN.	-ōris	-is	-eris or -oris
STEM	ōr- (earlier ōs-)	i-	er- (earlier e/o-)
<i>tim-or</i> , <i>fear</i> ;		<i>timēre</i> , <i>to fear</i> .	
<i>am-or</i> , <i>love</i> ;		<i>amāre</i> , <i>to love</i> .	
<i>sēd-ēs</i> , <i>seat</i> ;		<i>sedēre</i> , <i>to sit</i> .	
<i>caed-ēs</i> , <i>slaughter</i> ;		<i>caedere</i> , <i>to kill</i> .	
<i>genus</i> , <i>birth, race</i> ;		<i>GEN</i> , <i>to be born</i> (root of <i>gignō</i> , <i>bear</i> ).	

<sup>1</sup> So conceived, but perhaps this termination was originally added to noun-stems.

NOTE.—Many nouns of this class are formed by analogy from imaginary roots: as *facinus* from a supposed root *FACIN*.

6. Apparently added to roots or verb-stems —

NOM.	-iō, F.	-tiō (-siō), F.	-tūra (-sūra), F.	-tus, M.
GEN.	-iōnis	-tiōnis (-siōnis)	-tūrae (-sūrae)	-tūs (-sūs)
STEM	iōn-	tiōn- (-siōn-)	tūrā- (sūrā-)	tu- (su-)

leg-iō, a collecting (*levy*), a legion;

reg-iō, a direction, a region;

vocā-tiō, a calling;

mōli-tiō, a toiling;

scrip-tūra, a writing;

sēn-sus (for *†sent-tus*), feeling;

legere, to collect.

regere, to direct.

vocāre, to call.

mōliri, to toil.

scribere, to write.

sentire, to feel.

NOTE 1.—*-tiō*, *-tūra*, *-tus* are added to roots or verb-stems precisely as *-tor*, with the same phonetic change (cf. § 236. a. n. 1). Hence they are conveniently associated with the supine stem (see § 178). They sometimes form nouns when there is no corresponding verb in use: as, *senātus*, senate (cf. *senex*); *mentiō*, mention (cf. *mēns*); *fētūra*, offspring (cf. *fētus*); *litterātūra*, literature (cf. *litterae*); *cōsulātus*, consulship (cf. *cōsul*).

NOTE 2.—Of these endings, *-tus* was originally primary (cf. § 234. II. 3.); *-iō* is a compound formed by adding *ōn-* to a stem ending in a vowel (originally *i*): as, *dic-iō* (cf. *-dicus* and *dicis*); *-tiō* is a compound formed by adding *ōn-* to stems in *ti-*: as, *grad-i-tiō* (cf. *grad-ātim*); *-tūra* is formed by adding *-ra*, feminine of *-rus*, to stems in *tu-*: as, *nātūra* from *nātus*; *statūra* from *status* (cf. *figūra*, of like meaning, from a simple stem, *figu-s*; and *mātūra*, *Mātūra*).

239. Nouns denoting *acts*, or *means* and *results* of acts, are formed from roots or verb-stems by the use of the suffixes —

*-men*, N.; *-mentum*, N.; *-mōnium*, N.; *-mōnia*, F.

ag-men, line of march, band;

regi-men, rule;

regi-mentum, rule;

certā-men, contest, battle;

So colu-men, pillar; mō-men, movement; nō-men, name; flū-men, stream.

testi-mōnium, testimony;

queri-mōnia, complaint;

ag, root of *agere*, to lead.

regi- (rege-), stem of *regere*, to direct.

certā-, stem of *certāre*, to contend.

testāri, to witness.

queri, to complain.

*-mōnium* and *-mōnia* are also used as secondary, forming nouns from other nouns and from adjectives: as, *sāncti-mōnia*, sanctity (*sāctus*, holy); *mātri-mōnium*, marriage (*māter*, mother).

NOTE.—Of these endings, *-men* is primary (cf. § 234. II. 14); *-mentum* is a compound of *men-* and *to-*, and appears for the most part later in the language than *-men*: as, *mōmen*, movement (Lucr.); *mōmentum* (later). So *elementum* is a development from *L-M-N-a*, *L-m-n's* (letters of the alphabet), changed to *elementa* along with other nouns in *-men*. *-mōnium* and *-mōnia* were originally compound secondary suffixes formed from *mōn-* (a by-form of *men-*), which was early associated with *mo-*. Thus *almus*

(stem *almo-*), *fostering*; *Almōn*, a river near Rome; *alimōnia*, *support*. But the last was formed directly from *alō* when *-mōnia* had become established as a supposed primary suffix.

**240.** Nouns denoting *means* or *instrument* are formed from roots and verb-stems (rarely from noun-stems) by means of the neuter suffixes —

**-bulum, -culum, -brum, -orum, -trum**

<i>pā-bulum</i> , <i>fodder</i> ;	<i>pāscere</i> , <i>to feed</i> .
<i>sta-bulum</i> , <i>stall</i> ;	<i>stāre</i> , <i>to stand</i> .
<i>vehi-culum</i> , <i>wagon</i> ;	<i>vehere</i> , <i>to carry</i> .
<i>candēla-brum</i> , <i>andlestick</i> ;	<i>candēla</i> , <i>candle</i> (a secondary formation).
<i>sepul-crum</i> , <i>tomb</i> ;	<i>sepelire</i> , <i>to bury</i> .
<i>claus-trum</i> († <i>claud-trum</i> ), <i>bar</i> ;	<i>claudere</i> , <i>to shut</i> .
<i>arā-trum</i> , <i>plough</i> ;	<i>arāre</i> , <i>to plough</i> .

NOTE. — *-trum* (stem *tro-*) was an old formation from *tor-* (§ 234. II. 15), with the stem suffix *o-*, and *-clum* (stem *clo-* for *tlo-*) appears to be related; *-culum* is the same as *-clum*; *-bulum* contains *lo-* (§ 234. II. 9, 10) and *-brum* is closely related.

*a.* A few masculines and feminines of the same formation occur as nouns and adjectives: —

<i>fā-bula</i> , <i>tale</i> ;	<i>fāri</i> , <i>to speak</i> .
<i>ridi-culus</i> , <i>laughable</i> ;	<i>ridere</i> , <i>to laugh</i> .
<i>fa-ber</i> , <i>smith</i> ;	<i>facere</i> , <i>to make</i> .
<i>late-bra</i> , <i>hiding-place</i> ;	<i>latere</i> , <i>to hide</i> .
<i>tere-bra</i> , <i>auger</i> ;	<i>terere</i> , <i>to bore</i> .
<i>mulc-tra</i> , <i>milk-pail</i> ;	<i>mulgere</i> , <i>to milk</i> .

**241.** Abstract Nouns, mostly from adjective-stems, rarely from noun-stems, are formed by means of the secondary feminine suffixes —

**-ia (-iēs), -tia (-tiēs), -tās, -tūs, -tūdō**

<i>audāc-ia</i> , <i>boldness</i> ;	<i>audāx</i> , <i>bold</i> .
<i>pauper-iēs</i> , <i>poverty</i> ;	<i>pauper</i> , <i>poor</i> .
<i>tristi-tia</i> , <i>sadness</i> ;	<i>tristis</i> , <i>sad</i> .
<i>sēgni-tiēs</i> , <i>laziness</i> ;	<i>sēgnis</i> , <i>lazy</i> .
<i>boni-tās</i> , <i>goodness</i> ;	<i>bonus</i> , <i>good</i> .
<i>senec-tūs</i> , <i>age</i> ;	<i>senex</i> , <i>old</i> .
<i>māgni-tūdō</i> , <i>greatness</i> ;	<i>māgnus</i> , <i>great</i> .

1. In stems ending in *o-* or *ā-* the stem-vowel is lost before *-ia* (as *superb-ia*) and appears as *i* before *-tās*, *-tūs*, *-tia* (as in *boni-tās*, above).

2. Consonant stems often insert *i* before *-tās*: as, *loquāx* (stem *loquāc-*), *loquāci-tās*; but *hones-tās*, *māies-tās* (as if from old adjectives in *-es*), *über-tās*, *volup-tās*. *o* after *i* is changed to *e*: as, *pīus* (stem *pīo-*), *pīe-tās*; *socius*, *socie-tās*.

*a.* In like manner -dō and -gō (F.) form abstract nouns, but are associated with verbs and apparently added to verb-stems: —

cupī-dō, *desire*, from cupere, *to desire* (as if from stem cupī-).

dulcē-dō, *sweetness* (cf. dulcis, *sweet*), as if from a stem dulcē, cf. dulcē-scō.

lumbā-gō, *lumbago* (cf. lumbus, *loin*), as if from flumbō, -āre.

NOTE. — Of these, -ia is inherited as secondary (cf. § 234. II. 11). -tia is formed by adding -ia to stems with a t-suffix: as, militā, from miles (stem milit-); molestia from molestus; clementia from clemens; whence by analogy, mali-tia, avāri-tia. -tās is inherited, but its component parts, tā- + ti-, are found as suffixes in the same sense: as, senecta from senex; sēmen-tis from sēmen. -tūs is tū- + ti-, cf. servitū-dō. -dō and -gō appear only with long vowels, as from verb-stems, by a false analogy; but -dō is do- + ōn-: as, cupidus, cupīdō; gravidus, gravēdō (cf. gravē-scō); albidus, albēdō (cf. albē-scō); formidus, *hot*, formīdō (cf. formīdulōsus), (*hot flash?*) fear; -gō is possibly co- + ōn-; cf. vorāx, vorāgō, but cf. Cethēgus. -tūdō is compounded of -dō with tu-stems, which acquire a long vowel from association with verb-stems in u- (cf. volūmen, from volvō): as, cōnsuētū-dō, valētū-dō, habitū-dō, sollicitū-dō; whence servitūdō (cf. servitūs, -tūtis).

*b.* Neuter Abstracts, which easily pass into concretes denoting *offices* and *groups*, are formed from noun-stems and perhaps from verb-stems by means of the suffixes —

-ium, -tium

hospit-ium, *hospitality, an inn*; <sup>1</sup>  
collēg-ium, *colleagueship, a college*;  
auspic-ium, *soothsaying, an omen*;  
gaud-ium, *joy*;  
effug-ium, *escape*;  
benefic-ium, *a kindness*;  
dēsider-ium, *longing*;

adverb-ium, *adverb*;  
interlūn-ium, *time of new moon*;  
rēgīfug-ium, *flight of the kings*;  
servi-tium, *slavery, the slave class*;

hospes (gen. hospit-is), *a guest*.  
collēga, *a colleague*.  
auspex (gen. auspic-is), *a soothsayer*.  
gaudēre, *to rejoice*.  
effugere, *to escape*.  
benefacere, *to benefit*; cf. beneficus.  
dēsiderāre, *to miss*, from īdē-sidēs, *out of place, of missing soldiers*.  
ad verbum, [*added*] *to a verb*.  
inter lūnās, *between moons*.  
rēgis fuga, *flight of a king*.  
servus, *a slave*.

Vowel stems lose their vowel before -ium: as, collēg-ium, from collēga.

NOTE. — -ium is the neuter of the adjective suffix -ius. It is an inherited primary suffix, but is used with great freedom as secondary. -tium is formed like -tia, by adding -ium to stems with t: as, exit-ium, equit-ium (cf. exitus, equitēs); so, by analogy, calvitium, servitium (from calvus, servus).

*c.* Less commonly, abstract nouns (which usually become concrete) are formed from noun-stems (confused with verb-stems) by means of the suffixes —

<sup>1</sup> The abstract meaning is put first.



-nia, F.; -nium, -lium, -cinium, N.

pecū-nia, *money (chattels)*;  
 contici-nium, *the hush of night*;  
 auxi-lium, *help*;  
 lātrō-cinium, *robbery*;

pecti, *cattle*.  
 conticēscere, *to become still*.  
 augēre, *to increase*.  
 latrō, *robber* (cf. latrōcinor, *rob*, implying an adjective †latrōcinus).

For Diminutives and Patronymics, see §§ 243, 244.

### DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES

**242.** Derivative Adjectives, which often become nouns, are either *Nominal* (from nouns or adjectives) or *Verbal* (as from roots or verb-stems).

#### Nominal Adjectives

**243.** Diminutive Adjectives are usually confined to one gender, that of the primitive, and are used as *Diminutive Nouns*.

They are formed by means of the suffixes —

-ulus (-a, -um), -olus (after a vowel), -culus, -ellus, -illus

riv-ulus, *a streamlet*;  
 gladi-ulus, *a small sword*;  
 fili-ulus, *a little son*;  
 fili-ola, *a little daughter*;  
 ātri-olum, *a little hall*;  
 homun-culus, *a dwarf*;  
 auri-cula, *a little ear*;  
 mūnus-culum, *a little gift*;  
 cōdic-illi, *writing-tablets*;  
 mis-ellus, *rather wretched*;  
 lib-ellus, *a little book*;  
 aure-olus (-a, -um), *golden*;  
 parv-ulus (later parv-ulus), *very small*;  
 māius-culus, *somewhat larger*;

rivus, *a brook*.  
 gladius, *a sword*.  
 filius, *a son*.  
 filia, *a daughter*.  
 ātrium, *a hall*.  
 homō, *a man*.  
 auris, *an ear*.  
 mūnus, N., *a gift*.  
 cōdex, *a block*.  
 miser, *wretched*.  
 liber, *a book*.  
 aureus (-a, -um), *golden*.  
 parvus (-a, -um), *little*.  
 māior (old māiōs), *greater*.

NOTE 1. — These diminutive endings are all formed by adding -ulus to various stems. The formation is the same as that of -ulus in § 251. But these words became settled as diminutives, and retained their connection with nouns. So in English the diminutives *whitish*, *reddish*, are of the same formation as *bookish* and *snappish*. -culus comes from -ulus added to adjectives in -cus formed from stems in n- and s-: as, iuven-cus, Aurun-cus (cf. Aurunculēius), pris-cus, whence the cu becomes a part of the termination, and the whole ending (-culus) is used elsewhere, but mostly with n- and s- stems, in accordance with its origin.

NOTE 2. — Diminutives are often used to express affection, pity, or contempt: as, dōliciōlae, *little pet*; muliercula, *a poor (weak) woman*; Graeculus, *a miserable Greek*.

**α.** -ciō, added to stems in *n*-, has the same diminutive force, but is used with masculines only: as, *homun-ciō*, a dwarf (from *homō*, a man).

**244.** Patronymics, indicating *descent* or *relationship*, are formed by adding to proper names the suffixes —

-adēs, -idēs, -idēs, -eus, *m.*; -ās, -is, -īs, *f.*

These words, originally Greek adjectives, have almost all become nouns in Latin: —

*Atlās*: *Atlanti-adēs*, *Mercury*; *Atlanti-idēs* (*Gr. plur.*), *the Pleiads*.

*Scipiō*: *Scipi-adēs*, *son of Scipio*.

*Tyndareus*: *Tyndar-idēs*, *Castor or Pollux, son of Tyndarus*; *Tyndar-is*, *Helen, daughter of Tyndarus*.

*Anchisēs*: *Anchisi-adēs*, *Aeneas, son of Anchises*.

*Thēseus*: *Thēs-idēs*, *son of Theseus*.

*Tydeus*: *Tyđ-idēs*, *Diomedes, son of Tydeus*.

*Oileus*: *Āiāx Oil-eus*, *son of Oileus*.

*Cisseus*: *Cissē-is*, *Hecuba, daughter of Cisseus*.

*Thaumās*: *Thaumant-iās*, *Iris, daughter of Thaumās*.

*Hesperus*: *Hesper-ides* (from *Hesper-is*, -idis), *plur.*, *the daughters of Hesperus, the Hesperides*.

**245.** Adjectives meaning *full of*, *prone to*, are formed from noun-stems with the suffixes —

-ōsus, -lēns, -lentus

*fluctu-ōsus*, *billowy*;

*form-ōsus*, *beautiful*;

*pericul-ōsus*, *dangerous*;

*pesti-lēns*, *pesti-lentus*, *pestilent*;

*vino-lentus*, *vin-ōsus*, *given to drink*;

*fluctus*, *a billow*.

*forma*, *beauty*.

*periculum*, *danger*.

*pestis*, *pest*.

*vinum*, *wine*.

**246.** Adjectives meaning *provided with* are formed from nouns by means of the regular participial endings —

-tus, -ātus, -itus, -ūtus

*fūnes-tus*, *deadly*;

*hones-tus*, *honorable*;

*faus-tus* (for *favēs-tus*), *favorable*;

*barb-ātus*, *bearded*;

*turr-itus*, *turreted*;

*corn-ūtus*, *horned*;

*fūnus* (*st. fūner*-, older *fūn\*/s-*), *death*.

*honor*, *honor*.

*favor*, *favor*.

*barba*, *a beard*.

*turris*, *a tower*.

*cornū*, *a horn*.

NOTE. — *-ātus*, *-itus*, *-ūtus*, imply reference to an imaginary verb-stem; *-tus* is added directly to nouns without any such reference.

**247.** Adjectives of various meanings, but signifying in general *made of* or *belonging to*, are formed from nouns by means of the suffixes —

-eus, -ius, -āceus, -īcius, -āneus (-neus), -ticius

aur-eus, <i>golden</i> ;	aurum, <i>gold</i> .
patr-ius, <i>paternal</i> ;	pater, <i>a father</i> .
uxōr-ius, <i>uxorious</i> ;	uxor, <i>a wife</i> .
ros-āceus, <i>of roses</i> ;	rosa, <i>a rose</i> .
later-icius, <i>of brick</i> ;	later, <i>a brick</i> .
praesent-āneus, <i>operating instantly</i> ;	praesēns, <i>present</i> .
extr-āneus, <i>external</i> ;	extrā, <i>without</i> .
subterr-āneus, <i>subterranean</i> ;	sub terrā, <i>underground</i> .
salig-neus, <i>of willow</i> ;	salix, <i>willow</i> .
volā-ticius, <i>winged</i> (volātus, <i>a flight</i> ) ;	volāre, <i>to fly</i> .
domes-ticius, <i>of the house, domestic</i> ;	domus, <i>a house</i> .
silvā-ticius, <i>sylvan</i> ;	silva, <i>a wood</i> .

NOTE. — -ius is originally primitive (§ 234. II. 11) ; -eus corresponds to Greek -εως, -eos, and has lost a y-sound (cf. yo-, § 234. II. 11) ; -īcius and -āceus are formed by adding -ius and -eus to stems in ī-c-, ā-c- (suffix ko-, § 234. II. 12) ; -neus is no- + -eus (§ 234. II. 4) ; -āneus is formed by adding -neus to ā-stems ; -ticius is a formation with -cus (cf. hosti-cus with silvā-ticius), and has been affected by the analogy of participial stems in to- (nominative -tus).

**248.** Adjectives denoting *pertaining to* are formed from noun-stems with the suffixes —

-ālis, -āris, -ēlis, -īlis, -ūlis

nātūr-ālis, <i>natural</i> ;	nātūra, <i>nature</i> .
popul-āris, <i>fellow-countryman</i> ;	populus, <i>a people</i> .
patru-ēlis, <i>cousin</i> ;	patruus, <i>uncle</i> .
host-īlis, <i>hostile</i> ;	hostis, <i>an enemy</i> .
cur-ūlis, <i>curule</i> ;	currus, <i>a chariot</i> .

NOTE. — The suffixes arise from adding -lis (stem li-) to various vowel stems. The long vowels are due partly to confusion between stem and suffix (cf. vitā-lis, from vitā-, with rēg-ālis), partly to confusion with verb-stems: cf. Aprilis (aperire), edūlis (edere), with senilis (senex). -ris is an inherited suffix, but in most of these formations -āris arises by differentiation for -ālis in words containing an l (as milit-āris).

**249.** Adjectives with the sense of *belonging to* are formed by means of the suffixes —

-ānus, -ēnus, -īnus ; -ās, -ēnsis ; -ous, -acus (-ācus), -icius ; -eus, -ēius, -īcius

1. So from common nouns : —

mont-ānus, <i>of the mountains</i> ;	mōns (stem monti-), <i>mountain</i> .
veter-ānus, <i>veteran</i> ;	vetus (stem veter-), <i>old</i> .
antelūc-ānus, <i>before daylight</i> ;	ante lūcem, <i>before light</i> .

terr-ēnus, <i>earthly</i> ;	terra, <i>earth</i> .
ser-ēnus, <i>calm</i> (of evening stillness);	sērus, <i>late</i> .
coll-inus, <i>of a hill</i> ;	collis, <i>hill</i> .
div-inus, <i>divine</i> ;	divus, <i>god</i> .
libert-inus, <i>of the class of freedmen</i> ;	libertus, <i>one's freedman</i> .
cūi-ās, <i>of what country?</i>	quis, <i>who?</i>
infim-ās, <i>of the lowest rank</i> ;	infimus, <i>lowest</i> .
for-ēnsis, <i>of a market-place, or the Forum</i> ;	forum, <i>a market-place</i> .
civi-cus, <i>civic, of a citizen</i> ;	civis, <i>a citizen</i> .
fullōn-icus, <i>of a fuller</i> ;	fullō, <i>a fuller</i> .
mer-ācus, <i>pure</i> ;	merum, <i>pure wine</i> .
fēmin-eus, <i>of a woman, feminine</i> ;	fēmina, <i>a woman</i> .
lact-eus, <i>milky</i> ;	lac, <i>milk</i> (stem lacti-).
plēb-ēius, <i>of the commons, plebeian</i> ;	plēbēs, <i>the commons</i> .
patr-icius, <i>patrician</i> ;	pater, <i>father</i> .

2. But especially from proper nouns to denote *belonging to or coming from* :

Rōm-ānus, <i>Roman</i> ;	Rōma, <i>Rome</i> .
Sull-āni, <i>Sulla's veterans</i> ;	Sulla.
Cyzic-ēni, <i>Cyzicenes, people of Cyzicus</i> ;	Cyzicus.
Ligur-inus, <i>of Liguria</i> ;	Liguria.
Arpin-ās, <i>of Arpinum</i> ;	Arpinum.
Sicili-ēnsis, <i>Sicilian</i> ;	Sicilia, <i>Sicily</i> .
īli-acus, <i>Trojan</i> (a Greek form);	īlium, <i>Troy</i> .
Platōn-icus, <i>Platonic</i> ;	Platō.
Aquil-ēius, <i>a Roman name</i> ;	Aquila.
Aquil-ēia, <i>a town in Italy</i> ;	

a. Many derivative adjectives with these endings have by usage become nouns : —

Silv-ānus, m., <i>a god of the woods</i> ;	silva, <i>a wood</i> .
membr-āna, f., <i>skin</i> ;	membrum, <i>limb</i> .
Aemili-ānus, m., <i>name of Scipio Africanus</i> ;	Aemilia (gēns).
lani-ēna, f., <i>a butcher's stall</i> ;	lanius, <i>butcher</i> .
Aufidi-ēnus, m., <i>a Roman name</i> ;	†Aufidius (Aufidus).
inquit-inus, m., <i>a lodger</i> ;	incola, <i>an inhabitant</i> .
Caec-ina, used as m., <i>a Roman name</i> ;	caecus, <i>blind</i> .
ru-ina, f., <i>a fall</i> ;	ruō, <i>fall</i> (no noun existing).
doctr-ina, f., <i>learning</i> ;	doctor, <i>teacher</i> .

NOTE. — Of these terminations, -ānus, -ēnus, -inus are compounded from -nus added to a stem-vowel: as, arca, arcānus; collis, collīnus. The long vowels come from a confusion with verb-stems (as in plē-nus, finī-tus, tribū-tus), and from the noun-stem in ā-: as, arcānus. A few nouns occur of similar formation, as if from verb-stems in ō- and ū-: as, colōnus (colō, cf. incolā), patrōnus (cf. patrō, -āre), tribūnus (cf. tribuō, tribus), Portūnus (cf. portus), Vacūna (cf. vacō, vacuus).

250. Other adjectives meaning in a general way *belonging to* (especially of *places* and *times*) are formed with the suffixes —

-ter (-tris), -ester (-estris), -timus, -nus, -ernus, -urnus, -ternus (-turnus)

palūs-ter, <i>of the marshes</i> ;	palūs, <i>a marsh</i> .
pedes-ter, <i>of the foot-soldiers</i> ;	pedes, <i>a footman</i> .
sēmēs-tris, <i>lasting six months</i> ;	sex mēnsēs, <i>six months</i> .
silv-ester, silv-estris, <i>woody</i> ;	silva, <i>a wood</i> .
fini-timus, <i>neighboring, on the borders</i> ;	finis, <i>an end</i> .
mari-timus, <i>of the sea</i> ;	mare, <i>sea</i> .
vēr-nus, <i>vernal</i> ;	vēr, <i>spring</i> .
hodi-ernus, <i>of to-day</i> ;	hodiē, <i>to-day</i> .
di-urnus, <i>daily</i> ;	diēs, <i>day</i> .
hes-ternus, <i>of yesterday</i> ;	herī (old hesī), <i>yesterday</i> .
diū-turnus, <i>lasting</i> ;	diū, <i>long (in time)</i> .

NOTE. — Of these, -ester is formed by adding tri- (cf. tro-, § 234. II. 16) to stems in t- or d-. Thus tpedet-tri- becomes pedestri-, and others follow the analogy. -nus is an inherited suffix (§ 234. II. 4). -ernus and -urnus are formed by adding -nus to s-stems: as, diur-nus (for tdius-nus), and hence, by analogy, hodiernus (hodiē). By an extension of the same principle were formed the suffixes -ternus and -turnus from words like paternus and nocturnus.

α. Adjectives meaning *belonging to* are formed from nouns by means of the suffixes —

-ārius, -tōrius (-sōrius)

ōrdin-ārius, <i>regular</i> ;	ōrdō, <i>rank, order</i> .
argent-ārius, <i>of silver or money</i> ;	argentum, <i>silver</i> .
extr-ārius, <i>stranger</i> ;	extrā, <i>outside</i> .
meri-tōrius, <i>profitable</i> ;	meritus, <i>earned</i> .
dēvor-sōrius, <i>of an inn</i> (cf. § 254. 5);	dēvorsus, <i>turned aside</i> .

NOTE 1. — Here -ius (§ 234. II. 11) is added to shorter forms in -āris and -or: as, pecūliārius (from pecūliāris), bellātōrius (from bellātor).

NOTE 2. — These adjectives are often fixed as nouns (see § 254).

### Verbal Adjectives

251. Adjectives expressing the action of the verb as a *quality* or *tendency* are formed from real or apparent verb-stems with the suffixes —

-āx, -idus, -ulus, -vus (-uus, -ivus, -tīvus)

-āx denotes a *faulty* or *aggressive* tendency; -tīvus is oftener *passive*.

pūgn-āx, <i>pugnacious</i> ;	pūgnāre, <i>to fight</i> .
aud-āx, <i>bold</i> ;	audēre, <i>to dare</i> .
cup-idus, <i>eager</i> ;	cupere, <i>to desire</i> .
bib-ulus, <i>thirsty</i> (as dry earth etc.);	bibere, <i>to drink</i> .
proter-vus, <i>violent, wanton</i> ;	prōterere, <i>to trample</i> .

**noc-uus (noc-ivus), hurtful, injurious;**  
**recid-ivus, restored;**  
**cap-tivus, captive; m., a prisoner of war;**

**nocēre, to do harm.**  
**recidere, to fall back.**  
**capere, to take.**

NOTE.—Of these, **-āx** is a reduction of **-ācus** (stem-vowel **ā** + **-cus**), become independent and used with verb-stems. Similar forms in **-ēx**, **-ōx**, **-ix**, and **-ūx** are found or employed in derivatives: as, **imbrex**, **m.**, a rain-tile (from **imber**); **senex**, **old** (from **seni-s**); **ferōx**, **fierce** (from **ferus**); **atrōx**, **savage** (from **āter**, **black**); **celōx**, **r.**, a yacht (cf. **cellō**); **fēlix**, **happy**, originally **fertile** (cf. **fēlō**, **suck**); **fidūcia**, **r.**, **confidence** (as from **fidūx**); cf. also **victrix** (from **victor**). So **mandūcus**, **chewing** (from **mandō**).

**-idus** is no doubt denominative, as in **herbidus**, **grassy** (from **herba**, **herb**); **tumidus**, **swollen** (cf. **tumu-lus**, **hill**; **tumul-tus**, **uproar**); **callidus**, **tough, cunning** (cf. **callum**, **tough flesh**); **mūcidus**, **slimy** (cf. **mūcus**, **slime**); **tābidus**, **wasting** (cf. **tābēs**, **wasting disease**). But later it was used to form adjectives directly from verb-stems.

**-ulus** is the same suffix as in diminutives, but attached to verb-stems. Cf. **aemulus**, **rivaling** (cf. **imitor** and **imāgō**); **sēdulus**, **sitting by, attentive** (cf. **domi-seda**, **home-staying**, and **sēdō**, **set, settle**, hence **calm**); **pendulus**, **hanging** (cf. **pondō**, **ablative, in weight**; **perpendicularum**, **a plummet**; **appendix**, **an addition**); **strāgulus**, **covering** (cf. **strāgēs**); **legulus**, **a picker** (cf. **sacri-legus**, **a picker up of things sacred**).

**-vus** seems originally primary (cf. § 234. II. 8), but **-ivus** and **-tivus** have become secondary and are used with nouns: as, **aestivus**, **of summer** (from **aestus**, **heat**); **tempestivus**, **timely** (from **tempus**); cf. **domes-ticus** (from **domus**).

**252. Adjectives expressing passive qualities, but occasionally active, are formed by means of the suffixes —**

**-ilis, -bilis, -ius, -tilis (-silis)**

**frag-ilis, frail;**  
**nō-bilis, well known, famous;**  
**exim-ius, choice, rare (cf. ē-greg-ius);**  
**ag-ilis, active;**  
**hab-ilis, handy;**  
**al-tilis, fattened (see note);**

**frangere (FRAG), to break.**  
**nōscere (GNO), to know.**  
**eximere, to take out, select.**  
**agere, to drive.**  
**habēre, to hold.**  
**alere, to nourish.**

NOTE.—Of these, **-ius** is primary, but is also used as secondary (cf. § 241. b. n.). **-ilis** is both primary (as in **agilis**, **fragilis**) and secondary (as in **similis**, **like**, cf. **ὁμός**, **ὅματος**, English **same**); **-bilis** is in some way related to **-bulum** and **-brum** (§ 240. n.); in **-tilis** and **-silis**, **-lis** is added to **to-** (**so-**), stem of the perfect participle: as, **fossilis**, **dug up** (from **fossus**, **dug**); **volātilis**, **winged** (from **volātus**, **flight**).

**253. Verbal Adjectives that are Participial in meaning are formed with the suffixes —**

**-ndus, -bundus, -cundus**

**a. -ndus** (the same as the gerundive ending) forms a few active or reflexive adjectives: —

**secu-ndus, second** (the following), **favorable;** **sequi, to follow.**  
**rotu-ndus, round** (whirling)<sup>1</sup>; **rotāre, to whirl.**

<sup>1</sup> Cf. **volvendīs mēnsibus** (Aen. i. 269), **in the revolving months**; cf. **oriundī ab Sabinis** (Liv. i. 17), **sprung from the Sabines**, where **oriundī** = **orti**.

**b.** -bundus, -cundus, denote a continuance of the act or quality expressed by the verb:—

vītā-bundus, <i>avoiding</i> ;	vītāre, <i>to shun</i> .
treme-bundus, <i>trembling</i> ;	tremere, <i>to tremble</i> .
mori-bundus, <i>dying, at the point of death</i> ;	moriri, <i>to die</i> .
fā-cundus, <i>eloquent</i> ;	fāri, <i>to speak</i> .
fē-cundus, <i>fruitful</i> ;	root FĒ, <i>nourish</i> .
irā-cundus, <i>irascible</i> ;	cf. irāsci, <i>to be angry</i> .

NOTE.—These must have been originally nominal: as in the series, rubus, *red bush*; rubidus (but no trubicus), *ruddy*; Rubicōn, *Red River* (cf. Miniō, a river of Etruria; Minius, a river of Lusitania); rubicundus (as in averruncus, homin-culus). So turba, *commotion*; turbō, *a top*; turbidus, *roily*, etc. Cf. apexabō, longabō, gravēdō, dulcēdō.

**c.** Here belong also the participial suffixes -minus, -mnus (cf. Greek -μενος), from which are formed a few nouns in which the participial force is still discernible:—<sup>1</sup>

fē-mina, <i>woman</i> (the nourisher);	root FĒ, <i>nourish</i> .
alu-mnus, <i>a foster-child, nursling</i> ;	aleŕe, <i>to nourish</i> .

### Nouns with Adjective Suffixes

**254.** Many fixed forms of the Nominal Adjective suffixes mentioned in the preceding sections, make Nouns more or less regularly used in particular senses:—

1. -ārius, *person employed about anything*:—

argent-ārius, *m., silversmith, broker*, from argentum, *silver*.  
 Corinthi-ārius, *m., worker in Corinthian bronze* (sarcastic nickname of Augustus),  
 \*from (aes) Corinthium, *Corinthian bronze*.  
 centōn-ārius, *m., ragman*, from centō, *patchwork*.

2. -āria, *thing connected with something*:—

argent-āria, *f., bank*, from argentum, *silver*.  
 arēn-āriae, *f. plural, sandpits*, from arēna, *sand*.  
 Asin-āria, *f., name of a play*, from asinus, *ass*.<sup>2</sup>

3. -ārium, *place of a thing* (with a few of more general meaning):—

aer-ārium, *n., treasury*, from aes, *copper*.  
 tepid-ārium, *n., warm bath*, from tepidus, *warm*.  
 sūd-ārium, *n., a towel*, cf. sūdō, -āre, *sweat*.  
 sal-ārium, *n., salt money, salary*, from sāl, *salt*.  
 calend-ārium, *n., a note-book*, from calendae, *calends*.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. § 163. footnote 1.

<sup>2</sup> Probably an adjective with fābula, *play*, understood.

## 4. -tōria (-sōria): —

*Agitā-tōria*, F., a play of Plautus, *The Carter*, from *agitātor*.  
*vor-sōria*, F., a *tack* (nautical), from *versus*, a *turn*.

## 5. -tōrium (-sōrium), place of action (with a few of more general meaning):

*dēvor-sōrium*, N., an *inn*, as from *dēvortō*, *turn aside*.  
*audi-tōrium*, N., a *lecture-room*, as from *audiō*, *hear*.  
*ten-tōrium*, N., a *tent*, as from *tendō*, *stretch*.  
*tēc-tōrium*, N., *plaster*, as from *tegō*, *tēctus*, *cover*.  
*por-tōrium*, N., *toll*, cf. *portō*, *carry*, and *portus*, *harbor*.

## 6. -lle, animal-stall: —

*bov-lle*, N., *cattle-stall*, from *bōs*, *bōvis*, *ox*, *cow*.  
*ov-lle*, N., *sheepfold*, from *ovis*, stem *ovi-*, *sheep*.

## 7. -al for -āle, thing connected with the primitive: —

*capit-al*, N., *headdress*, *capital crime*, from *caput*, *head*.  
*penetr-āle* (especially in plural), N., *inner apartment*, cf. *penetrō*, *enter*.  
*Sātūrn-ālia*, N. plural (the regular form for names of festivals), *feast of Saturn*, from *Sātūrnus*.

## 8. -ētum, N. (cf. -ātus, -ūtus, see § 246. N.), -tum, place of a thing, especially with names of trees and plants to designate where these grow: —

*querc-ētum*, N., *oak grove*, from *quercus*, *oak*.  
*oliv-ētum*, N., *olive grove*, from *oliva*, *an olive tree*.  
*salic-tum*, N., *a willow thicket*, from *salix*, *a willow tree*.  
*Argil-ētum*, N., *The Clay Pit*, from *argilla*, *clay*.

## 9. -cus (sometimes with inserted i, -icus), -īcus, in any one of the genders, with various meanings: —

*vili-cus*, M., a *steward*, *vili-ca*, F., a *stewardess*, from *villa*, *farm-house*.  
*fabr-ica*, F., a *workshop*, from *faber*, *workman*.  
*am-icus*, M., *am-ica*, F., *friend*, cf. *amāre*, *to love*.  
*būbul-cus*, M., *ox-tender*, from *būb-ulus*, diminutive, cf. *bōs*, *ox*.  
*cant-icum*, N., *song*, from *cantus*, *act of singing*.  
*rubr-ica*, F., *red paint*, from *ruber*, *red*.

## 10. -eus, -ea, -eum, with various meanings: —

*alv-eus*, M., a *trough*, from *alvus*, *the belly*.  
*capr-ea*, F., a *wild she-goat*, from *caper*, *he-goat*.  
*flamm-eum*, N., a *bridal veil*, from *flamma*, *flame*, from its color.

## 11. -ter (stem tri-), -aster, -ester: —

*eques-ter*, M., *knight*, for *tequet-ter*.  
*sequ-ester*, M., a *stake-holder*, from derivative of *sequor*, *follow*.  
*ole-aster*, M., *wild olive*, from *olea*, *an olive tree*.



## IRREGULAR DERIVATIVES

255. The suffix -ō (genitive -ōnis, stem ōn-), usually added to verb-stems (see § 236. c), is sometimes used with noun-stems to form nouns denoting *possessed of*. These were originally adjectives expressing *quality* or *character*, and hence often appear as *proper names* : —

epulae, *a feast*; epul-ō, *a feaster*.

nāsus, *a nose*; nās-ō, *with a large nose* (also as a proper name).

volus (in bene-volus), *wishing*; vol-ōnēs (plural), *volunteers*.

frōns, *forehead*; front-ō, *big-head* (also as a proper name).

cūria, *a curia*; cūri-ō, *head of a curia* (also as a proper name).

restis, *a rope*; resti-ō, *a rope-maker*.

α. Rarely suffixes are added to *compound stems* imagined, but not used in their compound form : —

ad-verb-ium, *adverb*; ad, *to*, and verbum, *verb*, but without the intervening †adverbus.

lāti-fund-ium, *large estate*; lātus, *wide*, fundus, *estate*, but without the intervening †lātifundus.

su-ove-taur-ilia, *a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and a bull*; sūs, *swine*, ovis, *sheep*, taurus, *bull*, where the primitive would be impossible in Latin, though such formations are common in Sanskrit.

## DERIVATION OF VERBS

256. Verbs may be classed as *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

1. Primitive Verbs are those inherited by the Latin from the parent speech.
2. Derivative Verbs are those formed in the development of the Latin as a separate language.

257. Derivative Verbs are of two main classes : —

1. Denominative Verbs, formed from nouns or adjectives.
2. Verbs apparently derived from the stems of other verbs.

## Denominative Verbs

258. Verbs were formed in Latin from almost every form of noun-stem and adjective-stem.

259. 1. Verbs of the First Conjugation are formed directly from ā-stems, regularly with a transitive meaning: as, fuga, *flight*; fugāre, *put to flight*.

2. Many verbs of the First Conjugation are formed from *o*-stems, changing the *o* into *ā*-. These are more commonly transitive: —

*stimulō, -āre, to incite, from stimulus, a goad (stem stimulo-).*

*aequō, -āre, to make even, from aequus, even (stem aequo-).*

*hibernō, -āre, to pass the winter, from hibernus, of the winter (stem hiberno-).*

*albō, -āre, to whiten, from albus, white (stem albo-).*

*piō, -āre, to expiate, from pius, pure (stem pio-).*

*novō, -āre, to renew, from novus, new (stem novo-).*

*armō, -āre, to arm, from arma, arms (stem armo-).*

*damnō, -āre, to injure, from damnum, injury (stem damno-).*

3. A few verbs, generally intransitive, are formed by analogy from consonant and *i*- or *u*-stems, adding *ā* to the stem: —<sup>1</sup>

*vigilō, -āre, to watch, from vigil, awake.*

*exsulō, -āre, to be in exile, from exsul, an exile.*

*auspicor, -ārī, to take the auspices, from auspex (stem auspic-), augur.*

*pulverō, -āre, to turn (anything) to dust, from pulvis (stem pulver- for pulvis-), dust.*

*aestuō, -āre, to surge, boil, from aestus (stem aestu-), tide, seething.*

*levō, -āre, to lighten, from levis (stem levi-), light.*

260. A few verbs of the Second Conjugation (generally intransitive) are recognizable as formed from noun-stems; but most are inherited, or the primitive noun-stem is lost: —

*albeō, -ēre, to be white, from albus (stem alb°/o-), white.*

*cāneo, -ēre, to be hoary, from cānus (stem cān°/o-), hoary.*

*clāreō, -ēre, to shine, from clārus, bright.*

*claudēō, -ēre, to be lame, from claudus, lame.*

*algeō, -ēre, to be cold, cf. algidus, cold.*

261. Some verbs of the Third Conjugation in *-uō, -uere*, are formed from noun-stems in *u*- and have lost a consonant *i*: —

*statuō (for †statu-yō), -ere, to set up, from status, position.*

*metuō, -ere, to fear, from metus, fear.*

*acuō, -ere, to sharpen, from acus, needle.*

*arguō, -ere, to clear up, from inherited stem †argu-, bright (cf. ἀργυρος).*

NOTE. — Many verbs in *u* are inherited, being formed from roots in *u*: *as, fluō, fluere, flow*; *so-lvō (for †sē-luō, cf. λύω), solvere, dissolve*. Some roots have a parasitic *u*: *as, loquor, locūtus, speak*.

<sup>1</sup> The type of all or most of the denominative formations in §§ 259-262 was inherited, but the process went on in the development of Latin as a separate language.

**262.** Many *i*-verbs or verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are formed from *i*-stems: —

*mōlior*, -*irī*, to *toil*, from *mōlēs* (-*is*), *mass*.

*finiō*, -*ire*, to *bound*, from *finis*, *end*.

*sitiō*, -*ire*, to *thirst*, from *sitis*, *thirst*.

*stabiliō*, -*ire*, to *establish*, from *stabilis*, *stable*.

*a.* Some arise by confusion from other stems treated as *i*-stems: —

*bulliō*, -*ire*, to *boil*, from *bulla* (stem *bullā*-), *bubble*.

*condiō*, -*ire*, to *preserve*, from *condus* (stem *condo*-), *storekeeper*.

*insāniō*, -*ire*, to *rave*, from *insānus* (stem *insāno*-), *mad*.

*gestiō*, -*ire*, to *show wild longing*, from *gestus* (stem *gestu*-), *gesture*.

NOTE. — Some of this form are of doubtful origin: *as*, *ōrdior*, *begin*, cf. *ōrō* and *exōrdium*. The formation is closely akin to that of verbs in -*iō* of the third conjugation (p. 102).

*b.* Some are formed with -*iō* from consonant stems: —

*cūstōdiō*, -*ire*, to *guard*, from *cūstōs* (stem *cūstōd*-), *guardian*.

*fulguriō*, -*ire*, to *lighten*, from *fulgur*, *lightning*.

NOTE. — Here probably belong the so-called *desideratives* in -*uriō* (see § 263. 4. *u.*).

### Verbs from Other Verbs

**263.** The following four classes of verbs regularly derived from other verbs have special meanings connected with their terminations.

NOTE. — These classes are all really denominative in their origin, but the formations had become so associated with actual verbs that new derivatives were often formed directly from verbs without the intervention of a noun-stem.

1. Inceptives or Inchoatives add -*scō*<sup>1</sup> to the present stem of verbs. They denote the *beginning* of an action and are of the Third Conjugation. Of some there is no simple verb in existence: —

*calē-scō*, *grow warm*, from *caleō*, *be warm*.

*labā-scō*, *begin to totter*, from *labō*, *totter*.

*sci-scō*, *determine*, from *sciō*, *know*.

*con-cupi-scō*, *conceive a desire for*, from *cupiō*, *desire*.

*alē-scō*, *grow*, from *alō*, *feed*.

So *irā-scō*, *get angry*; cf. *irā-tus*.

*iuvēnē-scō*, *grow young*; cf. *iuvenis*, *young man*.

*mītē-scō*, *grow mild*; cf. *mītis*, *mild*.

*vesperā-scit*, *it is getting late*; cf. *vesper*, *evening*.

<sup>1</sup> For -*scō* in primary formation, see § 176. *b.* 1.

**NOTE.**—Inceptives properly have only the present stem, but many use the perfect and supine systems of simple verbs: as, *calēscō, grow warm, calui; ardēscō, blaze forth, ārsi; proficiscor, set out, profectus.*

2. Intensives or Iteratives are formed from the Supine stem and end in *-tō* or *-itō* (rarely *-sō*). They denote a *forcible* or *repeated* action, but this special sense often disappears. Those derived from verbs of the First Conjugation end in *-itō* (not *-ātō*).

*iac-tō, hurl, from iaciō, throw.*

*dormi-tō, be sleepy, from dormiō, sleep.*

*vol-itō, flit, from volō, fly.*

*vēndi-tō, try to sell, from vēndō, sell.*

*quas-sō, shatter, from quatiō, shake.*

They are of the first conjugation, and are properly denominative.

*a.* Compound suffixes *-titō, -sitō*, are formed with a few verbs. These are probably derived from other Iteratives; thus, *cantitō* may come from *cantō*, iterative of *canō, sing.*

*b.* Another form of Intensives—sometimes called Meditatives, or verbs of *practice*—ends in *-essō* (rarely *-issō*). These denote a certain *energy* or *eagerness* of action rather than its repetition:—

*cap-essō, lay hold on, from capiō, take.*

*fac-essō, do (with energy), from faciō, do.*

*pet-esso, pet-issō, seek (eagerly), from petō, seek.*

These are of the third conjugation, usually having the perfect and supine of the fourth:—

*arcessō, arcessēre, arcessivī, arcessitum, summon.*

*laccessō, laccessēre, laccessivī, laccessitum, provoke.*

**NOTE.**—The verbs in *-essō, -issō*, show the same formation as *levāssō, impetrāssere, iudicāssit*, etc. (§ 183. 5), but its origin is not fully explained.

3. Diminutives end in *-illō*, and denote a *feeble* or *petty* action:—

*cav-illor, jest, cf. cavilla, raillery.*

*cant-illō, chirp or warble, from cantō, sing.*

**NOTE.**—Diminutives are formed from verb-stems derived from real or supposed diminutive nouns.

4. Desideratives end in *-turiō (-suriō)*, and express *longing* or *wishing*. They are of the fourth conjugation, and only two are in common use:—

*par-turiō, be in labor, from pariō, bring forth.*

*ē-suriō (for ēd-turiō), be hungry, from edō, eat.*

Others are used by the dramatists.

**NOTE.**—Desideratives are probably derived from some noun of agency: as, *ēmp-turiō, wish to buy, from ēmp-tor, buyer. Visō, go to see, is an inherited desiderative of a different formation.*

## COMPOUND WORDS

**264.** A Compound Word is one whose stem is made up of two or more simple stems.

*a.* A final stem-vowel of the first member of the compound usually disappears before a vowel, and usually takes the form of *i* before a consonant. Only the second member receives inflection.<sup>1</sup>

*b.* Only noun-stems can be thus compounded. A preposition, however, often becomes attached to a verb.

**265.** New stems are formed by Composition in three ways:—

1. The second part is simply added to the first:—

su-ove-taurilia (sūs, ovis, taurus), *the sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and a bull* (cf. § 255. *a*).

septen-decim (septem, decem), *seventeen*.

2. The first part modifies the second as an adjective or adverb (*Determinative Compounds*):—

lāti-fundium (lātus, fundus), *a large landed estate*.

omni-potēns (omnis, potēns), *omnipotent*.

3. The first part has the force of a case, and the second a verbal force (*Objective Compounds*):—

agri-cola (ager, *field*, †cola akin to colō, *cultivate*), *a farmer*.

armi-ger (arma, *arms*, †ger akin to gerō, *carry*), *armor-bearer*.

corni-cen (cornū, *horn*, †cen akin to canō, *sing*), *horn-blower*.

carni-fex (carō, *flesh*, †fex akin to faciō, *make*), *executioner*.

*a.* Compounds of the above kinds, in which the last word is a noun, may become adjectives, meaning *possessed of* the quality denoted:—

ālī-pēs (āla, *wing*, pēs, *foot*), *wing-footed*.

māgn-animus (māgnus, *great*, animus, *soul*), *great-souled*.

an-teps (amb-, *at both ends*, caput, *head*), *double*.

NOTE.—Many compounds of the above classes appear only in the form of some further derivative, the proper compound not being found in Latin.

<sup>1</sup> The second part generally has its usual inflection; but, as this kind of composition is in fact older than inflection, the compounded stem sometimes has an inflection of its own (as, cornicen, -cinis; lūcifer, -feri; lūdex, -dixis), from stems not occurring in Latin. Especially do compound adjectives in Latin take the form of *i*-stems: as, animus, exanimis; nōrma, abnōrmis (see § 73). In composition, stems regularly have their uninflected form: as, igni-spiciū, *divining by fire*. But in *o*- and *ā*-stems the final vowel of the stem appears as *i*, as in ālī-pēs (from āla, stem ālā-); and *i*- is so common a termination of compounded stems, that it is often added to stems which do not properly have it: as, flōri-comus, *flower-crowned* (from flōs, flōr-is, and coma, *hair*).

### Syntactic Compounds

**266.** In many apparent compounds, complete words — not stems — have grown together in speech. These are not strictly compounds in the etymological sense. They are called Syntactic Compounds. Examples are: —

*a.* Compounds of *faciō*, *factō*, with an actual or formerly existing noun-stem confounded with a verbal stem in *-ē*. These are *causative* in force:

*cōnsuē-faciō*, *habituate* (cf. *cōnsuē-scō*, *become accustomed*).

*cale-faciō*, *cale-factō*, *to heat* (cf. *calē-scō*, *grow warm*).

*b.* An adverb or noun combined with a verb: —

*bene-dicō* (*bene*, *well*, *dicō*, *speak*), *to bless*.

*satis-faciō* (*satis*, *enough*, *faciō*, *do*), *to do enough (for)*.

*c.* Many apparent compounds of stems: —

*fide-iubeō* (*fide*, *surety*, *iubeō*, *command*), *to give surety*.

*mān-suētus* (*manui*, *to the hand*, *suētus*, *accustomed*), *tame*.

*Mārci-por* (*Mārci puer*, *slave of Marcus*).

*Iuppiter* (*†Iū*, old vocative, and *pater*), *father Jove*.

*anim-advertō* (*animus advertō*), *attend to, punish*.

*d.* A few phrases forced into the ordinary inflections of nouns: —

*prō-cōsul*, *proconsul* (for *prō cōsule*, *instead of a consul*).

*trium-vir*, *triumvir* (singular from *trium virōrum*).

*septen-triō*, *the Bear*, a constellation (supposed singular of *septem triōnēs*, *the Seven Plough-Oxen*).

In all these cases it is to be observed that *words*, not *stems*, are united.

**267.** Many syntactic compounds are formed by prefixing a Particle to some other part of speech.

*a.* Prepositions are often prefixed to Verbs. In these compounds the prepositions retain their original adverbial sense: —

*ā*, *ab*, *AWAY*: *ā-mittere*, *to send away*.

*ad*, *TO*, *TOWARDS*: *ad-ferre* (*ad-ferō*), *to bring*.

*ante*, *BEFORE*: *ante-ferre*, *to prefer*; *ante-cellere*, *to excel*.

*circum*, *AROUND*: *circum-mūnre*, *to fortify completely*.

*com-*, *con-* (*cum*), *TOGETHER* OR *FORCIBLY*: *cōn-ferre*, *to bring together*; *collocāre*, *to set firm*.

*dē*, *DOWN*, *UTTERLY*: *dē-spicere*, *despise*; *dē-struere*, *destroy*.

*ē*, *ex*, *OUT*: *ef-ferre* (*ec-ferō*), *to carry forth, uplift*.

*in* (with verbs), *IN*, *ON*, *AGAINST*: *in-ferre*, *to bear against*.

*inter*, *BETWEEN*, *TO PIECES*: *inter-rumpere*, *to interrupt*.

*ob*, *TOWARDS*, *TO MEET*: *of-ferre*, *to offer*; *ob-venire*, *to meet*.

*sub*, *UNDER*, *UP FROM UNDER*: *sub-struere*, *to build beneath*; *sub-dūcere*, *to lead up*.

*super*, *UPON*, *OVER AND ABOVE*: *super-fluere*, *to overflow*.

NOTE 1.—In such compounds, however, the prepositions sometimes have their ordinary force as prepositions, especially *ad*, *in*, *circum*, *trans*, and govern the case of a noun: *as, transire flumen, to cross a river* (see § 388. b).

NOTE 2.—Short *a* of the root is weakened to *i* before one consonant, to *e* before two: *as, faciō, cōficiō, cōfectus; iaciō, ēiciō, ēiectus*. But long *a* is retained: *as, perāctus*.

**b.** VERBS are also compounded with the following *inseparable particles*, which do not appear as prepositions in Latin:—

**amb-** (*am-*, *an-*), AROUND: *amb-ire, to go about* (cf. *ἀμφί, about*).

**dis-**, **di-**, ASUNDER, APART: *dis-cēdere, to depart* (cf. *duo, two*); *di-videre, to divide*.

**por-**, FORWARD: *por-tendere, to hold forth, predict* (cf. *porrō, forth*).

**red-**, **re-**, BACK, AGAIN: *red-ire, to return*; *re-clūdere, to open* (from *claudō, shut*); *re-ficere, to repair* (make again).

**sēd-**, **sē-**, APART: *sē-cernō, to separate*; cf. *sēd-itiō, a going apart, secession* (*eō, ire, to go*).

**c.** Many Verbals are found compounded with a preposition, like the verbs to which they correspond:—

*per-fuga, deserter*; cf. *per-fugiō*.

*trā-dux, vine-branch*; cf. *trā-ducō* (*trāns-ducō*).

*ad-vena, stranger*; cf. *ad-veniō*.

*con-iux* (*con-iūnx*), *spouse*; cf. *con-iungō*.

*in-dex, pointer out*; cf. *in-dicō*.

*prae-ses, guardian*; cf. *prae-sideō*.

*com-bibō, boon companion*; cf. *com-bibō, -ēre*.

**d.** An Adjective is sometimes modified by an adverbial prefix.

1. Of these, *per-* (less commonly *prae-*), *very*; *sub-*, *somewhat*; *in-*, *not*, are regular, and are very freely prefixed to adjectives:—

*per-māgnus, very large*.

*per-pauci, very few*.

*sub-rūsticus, rather clownish*.

*sub-fuscus, darkish*.

*prae-longus, very long*.

*in-nocuus, harmless*.

*in-imicus, unfriendly*.

*in-sānus, insane*.

*in-finītus, boundless*.

*im-pūrus, impure*.

NOTE.—*Per* and *sub*, in these senses, are also prefixed to verbs: *as, per-terreō, terrify*; *sub-rideō, smile*. In *ignōscō, pardon*, *in-* appears to be the negative-prefix

2. The negative *in-* sometimes appears in combination with an adjective that does not occur alone:—

*in-ermis, unarmed* (cf. *arma, arms*).

*im-bellis, unwarlike* (cf. *bellum, war*).

*im-pūnis, without punishment* (cf. *poena, punishment*).

*in-teger, untouched, whole* (cf. *tangō, to touch, root tag*).

*in-vītus, unwilling* (probably from root seen in *vi-s, thou wishest*).

## PART SECOND—SYNTAX

### INTRODUCTORY NOTE

268. The study of formal grammar arose at a late period in the history of language, and dealt with language as a fully developed product. Accordingly the terms of Syntax correspond to the logical habits of thought and forms of expression that had grown up at such a period, and have a *logical* as well as a merely *grammatical* meaning. But a developed syntactical structure is not essential to the expression of thought. A form of words—like *ō puerum pulchrum! oh! beautiful boy*—expresses a thought and might even be called a sentence; though it does not logically declare anything, and does not, strictly speaking, make what is usually called a sentence at all.

At a very early period of spoken language, word-forms were no doubt significant in themselves, without inflections, and constituted the whole of language,—just as to a child the name of some familiar object will stand for all he can say about it. At a somewhat later stage, such uninflected words put side by side made a rudimentary form of proposition: as a child might say *fire bright; horse run*. With this began the first form of logical distinction, that of Subject and Predicate; but as yet there was no distinction in form between noun and verb, and no fixed distinction in function. At a later stage forms were differentiated in function and—by various processes of composition which cannot be fully traced—inflections were developed. These served to express *person, tense, case*, and other grammatical relations, and we have true Parts of Speech.

Not until language reached this last stage was there any fixed limit to the association of words, or any rule prescribing the manner in which they should be combined. But gradually, by usage, particular forms came to be limited to special functions (as nouns, verbs, adjectives), and fixed customs arose of combining words into what we now call Sentences. These customs are in part the result of general laws or modes of thought (logic), resulting from our habits of mind (*General Grammar*); and in part are what may be called By-Laws, established by custom in a given language (*Particular Grammar*), and making what is called the Syntax of that language.

In the fully developed methods of expression to which we are almost exclusively accustomed, the unit of expression is the *Sentence*: that is, the completed statement, with its distinct Subject and Predicate. Originally sentences were simple. But two simple sentence-forms may be used together, without the grammatical subordination of either, to express a more complex form of thought than could be denoted by one alone. This is *parataxis* (arrangement side by side). Since, however, the two sentences, independent in form, were in fact used to express parts of a complex whole and were therefore mutually dependent, the sense of unity found expression in conjunctions, which denoted the grammatical subordination of the one to the other. This is *hypotaxis* (arrangement under, subordination). In this way, through various stages of development, which correspond to our habitual modes of thought, there were produced various forms of *complex sentences*. Thus, to express the complex idea *I beseech you to pardon me*, the two simple sentence-forms *quaesō ignōscās* were used side by side, *quaesō ignōscās*; then the feeling of grammatical subordination found expression in a conjunction, *quaesō ut ignōscās*, forming a complex sentence. The results of these processes constitute the subject-matter of Syntax.



## THE SENTENCE

## Kinds of Sentences

269. A Sentence is a form of words which contains a Statement, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command.

*a.* A sentence in the form of a Statement is called a Declarative Sentence: as, — *canis currit, the dog runs.*

*b.* A sentence in the form of a Question is called an Interrogative Sentence: as, — *canisne currit? does the dog run?*

*c.* A sentence in the form of an Exclamation is called an Exclamatory Sentence: as, — *quam celeriter currit canis! how fast the dog runs!*

*d.* A sentence in the form of a Command, an Exhortation, or an Entreaty is called an Imperative Sentence: as, — *ī, curre per Alpīs, go, run across the Alps; currat canis, let the dog run.*

## Subject and Predicate

270. Every sentence consists of a Subject and a Predicate.

The Subject of a sentence is the *person or thing spoken of*. The Predicate is *that which is said* of the Subject.

Thus in *canis currit, the dog runs*, *canis* is the subject, and *currit* the predicate.

271. The Subject of a sentence is usually a Noun or Pronoun, or some word or group of words used as a Noun: —

*equitēs ad Caesarem vēnērunt, the cavalry came to Caesar.*

*hūmānum est errāre, to err is human.*

*quaeritur num mors malum sit, the question is whether death is an evil.*

*a.* But in Latin the subject is often implied in the termination of the verb: —

*sedē-mus, we sit.*

*curri-tis, you run.*

*inqui-t, says he.*

272. The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb (as in *canis currit, the dog runs*), or it may consist of some form of *sum* and a Noun or Adjective which *describes* or *defines* the subject (as in *Caesar cōsul erat, Caesar was consul*).

Such a noun or adjective is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective, and the verb *sum* is called the Copula (i.e. the *connective*).

Thus in the example given, *Caesar* is the subject, *cōsul* the predicate noun, and *erat* the copula (see § 288).

## Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

**273.** Verbs are either Transitive or Intransitive.

1. A Transitive Verb has or requires a direct object to complete its sense (see § 274): as, — *frātre*m cecidit, *he slew his brother*.

2. An Intransitive Verb admits of no direct object to complete its sense: —

*cadō*, *I fall* (or *am falling*).      *sōl* lūcet, *the sun shines* (or *is shining*).

NOTE 1. — Among transitive verbs Factitive Verbs are sometimes distinguished as a separate class. These state an act which *produces* the thing expressed by the word which completes their sense. Thus *mēnsam* fēcit, *he made a table* (which was not in existence before), is distinguished from *mēnsam* percussit, *he struck a table* (which already existed).

NOTE 2. — A transitive verb may often be used *absolutely*, i.e. without any object expressed: as, — *arat*, *he is ploughing*, where the verb does not cease to be transitive because the object is left indefinite, as we see by adding, — *quid*, *what?* *agrum* suum, *his land*.

NOTE 3. — Transitive and Intransitive Verbs are often called Active and Neuter Verbs respectively.

## Object

**274.** The person or thing immediately affected by the action of a verb is called the Direct Object.

A person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb is called the Indirect Object.

Only transitive verbs can have a Direct Object; but an Indirect Object may be used with both transitive and intransitive verbs (§§ 362, 366): —

*pater* vocat *filium* (direct object), *the father calls his son*.

*mihi* (ind. obj.) *agrum* (dir. obj.) ostendit, *he showed me a field*.

*mihi* (ind. obj.) placet, *it is pleasing to me*.

NOTE. — The distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs is not a fixed distinction, for most transitive verbs may be used intransitively, and many verbs usually intransitive may take a direct object and so become transitive (§ 388. a).

*a.* With certain verbs, the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative is used where the English, from a difference in meaning, requires the direct object (Objective): —

*hominem* vidēō, *I see the man* (Accusative).

*homīni* servīō, *I serve the man* (Dative, see § 367).

*hominis* misereor, *I pity the man* (Genitive, see § 354. a).

*homīne* amīcō ūtor, *I treat the man as a friend* (Ablative, see § 410).

**b.** Many verbs transitive in Latin are rendered into English by an intransitive verb with a preposition:—

*petit aprum, he aims at the boar.*

*laudem affectat, he strives after praise.*

*cūrat valētūdinem, he takes care of his health.*

*meum cāsum doluērunt, they grieved at my misfortune.*

*ridet nostram āmentiam (Quinct. 55), he laughs at our stupidity.*

**275.** When a transitive verb is changed from the Active to the Passive voice, the Direct Object becomes the Subject and is put in the Nominative case:—

*Active: pater filium vocat, the father calls his son.*

*Passive: filius ā patre vocātur, the son is called by his father.*

*Active: lūnam et stellās vidēmus, we see the moon and the stars.*

*Passive: lūna et stellae videntur, the moon and stars are seen (appear).*

### Modification

**276.** A Subject or a Predicate may be *modified* by a single word, or by a group of words (a *phrase* or a *clause*).

The modifying word or group of words may itself be modified in the same way.

**a.** A single modifying word may be an adjective, an adverb, an appositive (§ 282), or the oblique case of a noun.

Thus in the sentence *vir fortis patienter fert*, a *brave man endures patiently*, the adjective *fortis*, *brave*, modifies the subject *vir*, *man*, and the adverb *patienter*, *patiently*, modifies the predicate *fert*, *endures*.

**b.** The modifying word is in some cases said to *limit* the word to which it belongs.

Thus in the sentence *puerī patrem vidēō*, *I see the boy's father*, the genitive *puerī* limits *patrem* (by excluding any other father).

**277.** A Phrase is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, which may be used as an Adjective or an Adverb.

Thus in the sentence *vir fuit summā nōbilitāte*, *he was a man of the highest nobility*, the words *summā nōbilitāte*, *of the highest nobility*, are used for the adjective *nōbilis*, *noble* (or *nōbilissimus*, *very noble*), and are called an Adjective Phrase.

So in the sentence *māgnā celeritāte vēnit*, *he came with great speed*, the words *māgnā celeritāte*, *with great speed*, are used for the adverb *celeriter*, *quickly* (or *celerrimē*, *very quickly*), and are called an Adverbial Phrase.

### Clauses and Sentences

**278.** Sentences are either Simple or Compound.

1. A sentence containing a single statement is called a Simple Sentence.

2. A sentence containing more than one statement is called a Compound Sentence, and each single statement in it is called a Clause.

*a.* If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be Coördinate. They are usually connected by a Coördinate Conjunction (§ 223. *a*); but this is sometimes omitted:—

*divide et imperā, divide and control. But,—*  
*vēni, vidi, vici, I came, I saw, I conquered.*

*b.* If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be Subordinate, and the clause modified is called the Main Clause.

This subordination is indicated by some connecting word, either a Subordinate Conjunction (§ 223. *b*) or a Relative:—

*oderint dum metuant, let them hate so long as they fear.*  
*servum misit quem sēcum habēbat, he sent the slave whom he had with him.*

A sentence containing one or more subordinate clauses is sometimes called Complex.

NOTE.—A subordinate clause may itself be modified by other subordinate clauses.

**279.** Subordinate Clauses are of various kinds.

*a.* A clause introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb is called a Relative Clause:—

*Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum (B. G. iv. 10),*  
*the Meuse rises in the Vosges mountains, which are on the borders of the*  
*Lingones.*

For Relative Pronouns (or Relative Adverbs) serving to connect independent sentences, see § 308. *f*.

*b.* A clause introduced by an Adverb of Time is called a Temporal Clause:—

*cum tacent, clāmant (Cat. i. 21), while they are silent, they cry aloud.*  
*hominēs aegrī morbō gravī, cum iactantur aestū febrique, sī aquam gelidam*  
*biberint, primō relevārī videntur (id. i. 31), men suffering with a severe*  
*sickness, when they are tossing with the heat of fever, if they drink cold*  
*water, seem at first to be relieved.*

**c.** A clause containing a Condition, introduced by *sī, if* (or some equivalent expression), is called a Conditional Clause. A sentence containing a conditional clause is called a Conditional Sentence.

Thus, *si aquam gelidam biberint, primō relevārī videntur* (in *b*, above) is a Conditional Sentence, and *si . . . biberint* is a Conditional Clause.

**d.** A clause expressing the Purpose of an action is called a Final Clause:—

*edō ut vivam, I eat to live* (that I may live).

*mīsit lēgātōs quī dicerent, he sent ambassadors to say* (who should say).

**e.** A clause expressing the Result of an action is called a Consecutive Clause:—<sup>1</sup>

*tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem, I was too far away to see* (so far away that I did not see).

## AGREEMENT

**280.** A word is said to *agree* with another when it is required by usage to be in the same Gender, Number, Case, or Person.

The following are the general forms of agreement, sometimes called the Four Concords:—

1. The agreement of the Noun in Apposition or as Predicate (§§ 281-284).

2. The agreement of the Adjective with its Noun (§ 286).

3. The agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent (§ 305).

4. The agreement of the Finite Verb with its Subject (§ 316).

**a.** A word sometimes takes the gender or number, not of the word with which it should regularly agree, but of some other word *implied* in that word.

This use is called Synesis, or *cōnstructiō ad sēnsū* (construction according to sense).

## AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

**281.** A noun used to *describe* another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in Case.

The descriptive noun may be either an Appositive (§ 282) or a Predicate noun (§ 283).

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the classes defined in *a-e* are not mutually exclusive, but that a single clause may belong to several of them at once. Thus a relative clause is usually subordinate, and may be at the same time temporal or conditional; and subordinate clauses may be coordinate with each other.

### Apposition

**282.** A noun used to *describe* another, and standing in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an Appositive, and is said to be *in apposition* : —

externus timor, maximum concordiae vinculum, iungēbat animōs (Liv. ii. 89),  
*fear of the foreigner, the chief bond of harmony, united their hearts.*  
 [Here the appositive belongs to the subject.]

quattuor hic primum ōmen equōs vidi (Aen. iii. 537), *I saw here four horses, the first omen.* [Here both nouns are in the predicate.]

litterās Graecās senex didici (Cat. M. 26), *I learned Greek when an old man.*  
 [Here *senex*, though in apposition with the subject of *didici*, really states something further : viz., the time, condition, etc., of the act (*Predicate Apposition*).]

**a.** Words expressing *parts* may be in apposition with a word including the parts, or vice versa (*Partitive Apposition*) : —

Nec P. Popilius neque Q. Metellus, clārissimī viri atque amplissimī, vim tribūniciam sustinere potuerunt (Clu. 96), *neither Publius Popilius nor Quintus Metellus, [both of them] distinguished and honorable men, could withstand the power of the tribunes.*

Gnaeus et Pūblius Scipiōnēs, *Cneius and Publius Scipio* (the Scipios).

**b.** An Adjective may be used as an appositive : —

ea Sex. Rōscium inopem recēpit (Rosc. Am. 27), *she received Sextus Roscius in his poverty* (needy).

**c.** An appositive generally agrees with its noun in Gender and Number when it can : —

sequuntur nātūram, optimam ducem (Lael. 19), *they follow nature, the best guide.*

omnium doctrinārum inventricēs Athēnās (De Or. i. 13), *Athens, discoverer of all learning.*

NOTE. — But such agreement is often impossible : as, — ōlim truncus eram ficulnus, inutile lignum (Hor. S. i. 8. 1), *I once was a fig-tree trunk, a useless log.*

**d.** A common noun in apposition with a Locative (§ 427) is put in the Ablative, with or without the preposition in : —

Antiochiaē, celebri quondam urbe (Arch. 4), *at Antioch, once a famous city.*

Albae cōstitērunt, in urbe mūnitā (Phil. iv. 6), *they halted at Alba, a fortified town.*

For a Genitive in apposition with a Possessive Pronoun or an Adjective, see § 302. e.

For the so-called Appositional Genitive, see § 343. d.

For the construction with nōmen est, see § 373. a.

### Predicate Noun or Adjective

**283.** With *sum* and a few other intransitive or passive verbs, a noun or an adjective *describing* or *defining* the subject may stand in the predicate. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective.

The verb *sum* is especially common in this construction, and when so used is called the *copula* (i.e. connective).

Other verbs which take a predicate noun or adjective are the so-called *copulative verbs* signifying *to become*, *to be made*, *to be named*, *to appear*, and the like.

**284.** A Predicate Noun or Adjective after the copula *sum* or a copulative verb is in the same case as the Subject:—

*pācis semper auctor fui* (Lig. 28), *I have always been an adviser of peace.*

*quae pertinācia quibusdam, eadem aliis cōstantia vidēri potest* (Marc. 31),  
*what may seem obstinacy to some, may seem to others consistency.*

*ēius mortis sedētis ultōrēs* (Mil. 79), *you sit as avengers of his death.*

*habeātur vir ēgregius Paulus* (Cat. iv. 21), *let Paulus be regarded as an extraordinary man.*

*ego patrōnus exstiti* (Rosc. Am. 5), *I have come forward as an advocate.*

*dicit nōn omnis bonōs esse beātōs*, *he says that not all good men are happy.*

**a.** A predicate noun referring to two or more singular nouns is in the plural:—

*cōsulēs creantur Caesar et Sērvilius* (B. C. iii. 1), *Cæsar and Sērvilius are elected consuls.*

**b.** *Sum* in the sense of *exist* makes a complete predicate without a predicate noun or adjective. It is then called the *substantive verb*:—

*sunt viri fortēs*, *there are (exist) brave men.* [Cf. *vixēre fortēs ante Agamemnona* (Hor. Od. iv. 9. 25), *brave men lived before Agamemnon.*]

For Predicate Accusative and Predicate Ablative, see §§ 392, 415. n.

## AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

### Attributive and Predicate Adjectives

**285.** Adjectives are either Attributive or Predicate.

1. An Attributive Adjective simply qualifies its noun without the intervention of a verb or participle, expressed or implied: *as*, — *bonus imperātor*, *a good commander*; *stellae lūcidae*, *bright stars*; *verbum Graecum*, *a Greek word*.

## 2. All other adjectives are called Predicate Adjectives:—

stellae lūcidae erant, *the stars were bright.*

sit Scipiō clārus (Cat. iv. 21), *let Scipio be illustrious.*

hominēs mītis reddidit (Inv. i. 2), *has rendered men mild.*

tria praedia Capitōni propria trāduntur (Rosc. Am. 21), *three farms are handed over to Capito as his own.*

cōsilium cēperunt plēnum sceleris (id. 28), *they formed a plan full of villany.*

NOTE.—A predicate adjective may be used with *sum* or a copulative verb (§ 283); it may have the construction of a predicate accusative after a verb of *naming, calling, or the like* (§ 393. N.); or it may be used in apposition like a noun (§ 282. b).

## Rules of Agreement

286. Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in *Gender, Number, and Case*:—

vir fortis, *a brave man.*

illa mulier, *that woman.*

urbium magnarum, *of great cities.*

cum ducentis militibus, *with two hundred soldiers.*

imperator victus est, *the general was beaten.*

secutae sunt tempestates, *storms followed.*

NOTE.—All rules for the agreement of adjectives apply also to adjective pronouns and to participles:

a. With two or more nouns the adjective is regularly plural, but often agrees with the nearest (especially when attributive):—

Nisus et Euryalus primi (Aen. v. 294), *Nisus and Euryalus first.*

Caesaris omni et gratia et opibus fruor (Fam. i. 9. 21), *I enjoy all Caesar's favor and resources.*

NOTE.—An adjective referring to two nouns connected by the preposition *cum* is occasionally plural (*synesis*, § 280. a): as,—Iuba cum Labienō capti (B. Afr. 52), *Juba and Labienus were taken.*

b. A collective noun may take an adjective of a different gender and number agreeing with the gender and number of the individuals implied (*synesis*, § 280. a):—

pars certare parati (Aen. v. 108), *a part ready to contend.*

coloniae aliquot deductae, Prisci Latini appellati (Liv. i. 3), *several colonies were planted (led out) [of men] called Old Latins.*

multitudo convicti sunt (Tac. Ann. xv. 44), *a multitude were convicted.*

magna pars raptae (id. i. 9), *a large part [of the women] were seized.*

NOTE.—A superlative in the predicate rarely takes the gender of a partitive genitive by which it is limited: as,—velocissimum animalium delphinus est (Plin. N. H. ix. 20), *the dolphin is the swiftest [creature] of creatures.*



**287.** One adjective may belong in sense to two or more nouns of different genders. In such cases, —

1. An Attributive Adjective agrees with the nearest noun: —

*multae operae ac laboris, of much trouble and toil.*

*vita mōrēsque mei, my life and character.*

*sī rēs, sī vir, sī tempus ūllum dignum fuit (Mil. 19), if any thing, if any man, if any time was fit.*

2. A Predicate Adjective may agree with the nearest noun, if the nouns form one connected idea: —

*factus est strepitus et admurmurātiō (Verr. i. 45), a noise of assent was made (noise and murmur).*

NOTE. — This is only when the copula agrees with the nearest subject (§ 317. c).

3. But generally, a Predicate Adjective will be masculine, if nouns of different genders mean *living beings*; neuter, if *things without life*: —

*uxor deinde ac liberī amplexī (Liv. ii. 40), then his wife and children embraced him.*

*labor (m.) voluptāsque (f.) societāte quādam inter sē nātūrālī sunt iūcta (n.) (id. v. 4), labor and delight are bound together by a certain natural alliance.*

4. If nouns of different genders include both living beings and things without life, a Predicate Adjective is sometimes masculine (or feminine), sometimes neuter, and sometimes agrees in gender with the nearest if that is plural: —

*rēx rēgiaque classis ūnā profectī (Liv. xxi. 50), the king and the royal fleet set out together.*

*nātūrā inimica sunt libera civitās et rēx (id. xlv. 24), by nature a free state and a king are hostile.*

*lēgātōs sortēsque ōrāculi exspectandās (id. v. 15), that the ambassadors and the replies of the oracle should be waited for.*

a. Two or more abstract nouns of the same gender may have a Predicate Adjective in the neuter plural (cf. § 289. c): —

*stultitia et temeritās et iniūstitia . . . sunt fugienda (Fin. iii. 89), folly, rashness, and injustice are [things] to be shunned.*

### Adjectives used Substantively

**288.** Adjectives are often used as Nouns (*substantively*), the masculine usually to denote *men* or *people in general* of that kind, the feminine *women*, and the neuter *things*: —

omnēs, *all men* (everybody).  
 mǎiōrēs, *ancestors*.  
 Rōmāni, *Romans*.  
 liberta, *a freedwoman*.  
 sapiēns, *a sage* (philosopher).  
 boni, *the good* (good people).

omnia, *all things* (everything).  
 minōrēs, *descendants*.  
 barbari, *barbarians*.  
 Sabinae, *the Sabine wives*.  
 amicus, *a friend*.  
 bona, *goods, property*.

NOTE. — The plural of adjectives, pronouns, and participles is very common in this use. The singular is comparatively rare except in the neuter (§ 289. a, c) and in words that have become practically nouns.

a. Certain adjectives have become practically nouns, and are often modified by other adjectives or by the possessive genitive: —

tuus vicinus proximus, *your next-door neighbor*.  
 propinqui ceteri, *his other relatives*.  
 meus aequalis, *a man of my own age*.  
 eius familiaris Catilina (Har. Resp. 5), *his intimate friend Catiline*.  
 Leptae nostri familiarissimus (Fam. ix. 13. 2), *a very close friend of our friend Lepta*.

b. When ambiguity would arise from the substantive use of an adjective, a noun must be added: —

boni, *the good*; omnia, *everything* (all things); but, —  
 potentia omnium rerum, *power over everything*.

c. Many adjectives are used substantively either in the singular or the plural, with the added meaning of some noun which is understood from constant association: —

Africus [ventus], *the southwest wind*; Ianuarius [mēnsis], *January*; vitulina [carō], *veal* (calf's flesh); fera [bēstia], *a wild beast*; patria [terra], *the fatherland*; Gallia [terra], *Gaul* (the land of the Galli); hiberna [castra], *winter quarters*; trirēmis [nāvis], *a three-banked galley, trireme*; argentarius [faber], *a silversmith*; regia [domus], *the palace*; Latinae [fēriae], *the Latin festival*.

NOTE. — These adjectives are *specific* in meaning, not *generic* like those in § 288. They include the names of winds and months (§ 31).

For Nouns used as Adjectives, see § 321. c.

For Adverbs used like Adjectives, see § 321. d.

289. Neuter Adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses: —

a. The neuter *singular* may denote either a single object or an abstract quality: —

rapto vivere, *to live by plunder*. In arido, *on dry ground*.  
 honestum, *an honorable act, or virtue* (as a quality).  
 opus est mātūrātō, *there is need of haste*. [Cf. impersonal passives, § 208. d.]

**b.** The neuter *plural* is used to signify *objects in general* having the quality denoted, and hence may stand for the abstract idea:—

*honesta, honorable deeds* (in general). *praeterita, the past* (lit., by-gones).  
*omnēs fortia laudant, all men praise bravery* (brave things).

**c.** A neuter adjective may be used as an appositive or predicate noun with a noun of different gender (cf. § 287. a):—

*triste lupus stabulis* (Ecl. iii. 80), *the wolf [is] a grievous thing for the fold.*  
*varium et mutabile semper fēmina* (Aen. iv. 569), *woman is ever a changing and fickle thing.*  
*malum mihi videtur esse mors* (Tusc. i. 9), *death seems to me to be an evil.*

**d.** A neuter adjective may be used as an attributive or a predicate adjective with an infinitive or a substantive clause:—

*istuc ipsum nōn esse* (Tusc. i. 12), *that very "not to be."*  
*hūmānum est errāre, to err is human.*  
*aliud est errāre Caesarem nōlle, aliud nōlle miserēri* (Lig. 16), *it is one thing to be unwilling that Caesar should err, another to be unwilling that he should pity.*

### Adjectives with Adverbial Force

**290.** An adjective, agreeing with the subject or object, is often used to qualify the action of the verb, and so has the force of an adverb:—

*primus vēnit, he was the first to come* (came first).  
*nūllus dubitō, I no way doubt.*  
*laeti audiēre, they were glad to hear.*  
*erat Rōmae frequēns* (Rosc. Am. 16), *he was often at Rome.*  
*sērus in caelum redeās* (Hor. Od. i. 2. 45), *mayst thou return late to heaven.*

### Comparatives and Superlatives

**291.** Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows:—

**a.** The Comparative denotes a *considerable* or *excessive* degree of a quality: as,—*brevior, rather short*; *audācior, too bold.*

**b.** The Superlative (*of eminence*) often denotes a *very high* degree of a quality without implying a distinct comparison: as,—*mōns altissimus, a very high mountain.*

NOTE.—The Superlative of Eminence is much used in complimentary references to persons and may often be translated by the simple positive.

c. With *quam*, *vel*, or *ünus* the Superlative denotes the *highest possible degree* : —

*quam plüriimí, as many as possible.*

*quam maximé potest (maximé quam potest), as much as can be.*

*vel minimus, the very least.*

*vir ünus doctissimus, the one most learned man.*

NOTE 1. — A high degree of a quality is also denoted by such adverbs as *admodum*, *valdê*, *very*, or by *per* or *prae* in composition (§ 267. d. 1): *as*, — *valdê malus, very bad* = *peissimus*; *permágnus, very great*; *praealtus, very high (or deep)*.

NOTE 2. — A low degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* in composition: *as*, — *subrústicus, rather clownish*, or by *minus, not very*; *minimé, not at all*; *parum, not enough*; *nön satis, not much*.

NOTE 3. — The comparative *máiörës* (for *máiörës nātū, greater by birth*) has the special signification of *ancestors*; so *minörës* often means *descendants*.

For the Superlative with *quisque*, see § 313. b. For the construction of a substantive after a Comparative, see §§ 406, 407; for that of a clause, see § 535. c, 571. a. For the Ablative of Degree of Difference with a Comparative (*multô* etc.), see § 414.

292. When two qualities of an object are compared, both adjectives are in the Comparative : —

*longior quam lätior aciês erat* (Liv. xxvii. 48), *the line was longer than it was broad (or, rather long than broad)*.

*vërior quam grätior* (id. xxii. 38), *more true than agreeable*.

NOTE. — So also with adverbs: *as*, — *libentius quam vërius* (Mil. 78), *with more freedom than truth*.

α. Where *magis* is used, both adjectives are in the positive : —

*disertus magis quam sapiëns* (Att. x. 1. 4), *eloquent rather than wise*.

*cläri magis quam honesti* (Iug. 8), *more renowned than honorable*.

NOTE. — A comparative and a positive, or even two positives, are sometimes connected by *quam*. This use is rarer and less elegant than those before noticed : —

*cläris máiöribus quam vetustis* (Tac. Ann. iv. 61), *of a family more famous than old*.

*vehementius quam cautê* (Tac. Agr. 4), *with more fury than good heed*.

293. Superlatives (and more rarely Comparatives) denoting order and succession — also *medius*, [*cëterus*], *reliquus* — usually designate not *what object*, but *what part of it*, is meant : —

*summus mōns, the top of the hill*.

*in ultimâ plateâ, at the end of the place*.

*prior actiô, the earlier part of an action*.

*reliqui captivi, the rest of the prisoners*.

*in colle mediô* (B. G. i. 24), *half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill)*.

*inter cëteram plānitie* (Iug. 92), *in a region elsewhere level*.

NOTE. — A similar use is found in *sêrâ* (*multâ*) *nocte, late at night*, and the like. But *medium viae, the middle of the way*; *multum diêi, much of the day*, also occur.

## PRONOUNS

**294.** A Pronoun indicates some person or thing without either naming or describing it. Pronouns are derived from a distinct class of roots, which seem to have denoted only ideas of place and direction (§ 228. 2), and from which nouns or verbs can very rarely be formed. They may therefore stand for Nouns when the person or thing, being already present to the senses or imagination, needs only to be *pointed out*, not *named*.

Some pronouns indicate the object in itself, without reference to its class, and have no distinction of gender. These are Personal Pronouns. They stand syntactically for Nouns, and have the same construction as nouns.

Other pronouns designate a particular object of a class, and take the gender of the individuals of that class. These are called Adjective Pronouns. They stand for Adjectives; and have the same construction as adjectives.

Others are used in both ways; and, though called adjective pronouns, may also be treated as personal, taking, however, the gender of the object indicated.

In accordance with their meanings and uses, Pronouns are classified as follows:—

Personal Pronouns (§ 295).	Interrogative Pronouns (§ 333).
Demonstrative Pronouns (§ 296).	Relative Pronouns (§ 303).
Reflexive Pronouns (§ 299).	Indefinite Pronouns (§ 309).
Possessive Pronouns (§ 302).	

## Personal Pronouns

**295.** The Personal Pronouns have, in general, the same constructions as nouns.

**a.** The personal pronouns are not expressed as subjects, except for distinction or emphasis:—

tē vocō, *I call you.* But,—

quis mē vocat? ego tē vocō, *who is calling me? I (emphatic) am calling you.*

**b.** The personal pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in *-um* being used *partitively* (§ 346), and that in *-i* oftenest *objectively* (§ 348):—

māior vestrum, *the elder of you.*

habētis ducem memorem vestri, oblitum sui (Cat. iv. 19), *you have a leader who thinks (is mindful) of you and forgets (is forgetful of) himself.*

pars nostrum, *a part (i.e. some) of us.*

**NOTE 1.**—The genitives nostrum, vestrum, are occasionally used objectively (§ 348): as,—cupidus vestrum (Verr. iii. 224), *fond of you*; cūstōs vestrum (Cat. iii. 29), *the guardian of you* (your guardian).

**NOTE 2.**—"One of themselves" is expressed by *ūnus ex suis* or *ipsis* (rarely *ex sē*), or *ūnus suorum*.

**c.** The Latin has no personal pronouns of the third person except the reflexive *sē*. The want is supplied by a Demonstrative or Relative (§§ 296. 2, 308. f).

### Demonstrative Pronouns

**296.** Demonstrative Pronouns are used either adjectively or substantively.

1. As adjectives, they follow the rules for the agreement of adjectives and are called Adjective Pronouns or Pronominal Adjectives (§§ 286, 287):—

*hōc proeliō factō, after this battle was fought (this battle having been fought).  
eōdem proeliō, in the same battle.  
ex eis aedificiis, out of those buildings.*

2. As substantives, they are equivalent to personal pronouns. This use is regular in the oblique cases, especially of *is*:—

*Caesar et exercitus eius, Caesar and his army (not suus). [But, Caesar exercitum suum dimisit, Caesar disbanded his [own] army.]*

*si obsidēs ab eis dentur (B. G. i. 14), if hostages should be given by them (persons just spoken of).*

*hi sunt extrā provinciā trāns Rhodanum primī (id. i. 10), they (those just mentioned) are the first [inhabitants] across the Rhone.*

*ille minimum propter adulescentiam poterat (id. i. 20), he (emphatic) had very little power, on account of his youth.*

*α.* An adjective pronoun usually agrees with an appositive or predicate noun, if there be one, rather than with the word to which it refers (cf. § 306):—

*hic locus est unus quō perfugiant; hic portus, haec arx, haec ara sociōrum (Verr. v. 126), this is the only place to which they can flee for refuge; this is the haven, this the citadel, this the altar of the allies.*

*rērum caput hōc erat, hic fōns (Hor. Ep. i. 17. 45), this was the head of things, this the source.*

*eam sapientiam interpretantur quam adhūc mortālis nēmō est cōsecūtus [for id . . . quod] (Lael. 18), they explain that [thing] to be wisdom which no man ever yet attained.*

**297.** The main uses of *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, and *is* are the following:—

*α.* *Hic* is used of what is *near the speaker* (in time, place, or thought). It is hence called the *demonstrative of the first person*.

It is sometimes used of the speaker himself; sometimes for “the latter” of two persons or things mentioned in speech or writing; more rarely for “the former,” when that, though more remote *on the written page*, is nearer the speaker in *time, place, or thought*. Often it refers to that which has *just been mentioned*.

**b.** *Ille* is used of what is *remote* (in time, etc.); and is hence called the *demonstrative of the third person*.

It is sometimes used to mean "the former"; also (usually following its noun) of what is *famous* or *well-known*; often (especially the neuter *illud*) to mean "the following."

**c.** *Iste* is used of what is *between the two others* in remoteness: often in allusion to the person addressed,—hence called the *demonstrative of the second person*.

It especially refers to one's opponent (in court, etc.), and frequently implies antagonism or contempt.

**d.** *Is* is a weaker demonstrative than the others and is especially common as a personal pronoun. It does not denote any special object, but refers to one just mentioned, or to be afterwards explained by a relative. Often it is merely a correlative to the relative *qui*:—

*vēnit mihi obviam tuus puer, is mihi litterās abs tē reddidit* (Att. ii. 1. 1),  
*your boy met me, he delivered to me a letter from you.*

*eum quem, one whom.*

*eum cōsulem qui nōn dubitet* (Cat. iv. 24), *a consul who will not hesitate.*

**e.** The pronouns *hic*, *ille*, and *is* are used to point in either direction, back to something just mentioned or forward to something about to be mentioned.

The neuter forms often refer to a clause, phrase, or idea:—

*est illud quidem vel maximum, animum vidēre* (Tusc. i. 52), *that is in truth a very great thing,—to see the soul.*

**f.** The demonstratives are sometimes used as *pronouns of reference*, to indicate with emphasis a noun or phrase just mentioned:—

*nullam virtūs aliam mercēdem dēsiderat praeter hanc laudis* (Arch. 28),  
*virtue wants no other reward except that [just mentioned] of praise.*

NOTE.—But the ordinary English use of *that of* is hardly known in Latin. Commonly the genitive construction is continued without a pronoun, or some other construction is preferred:—

*cum ei Simōnidēs artem memoriae pollicērētur: obliuīōnis, inquit, māllem* (Fin. ii. 104), *when Simonides promised him the art of memory, "I should prefer," said he, "[that] of forgetfulness."*

*Caesaris exercitus Pompēiānōs ad Pharsālūm vicit, the army of Caesar defeated that of Pompey (the Pompeians) at Pharsalus.*

**298.** The main uses of *idem* and *ipse* are as follows:—

**a.** When a quality or act is ascribed with emphasis to a person or thing already named, *is* or *idem* (often with the concessive *quidem*) is used to indicate that person or thing:—

per unum servum et eum ex gladiatōriō lūdō (Att. i. 16. 5), *by means of a single slave, and that too one from the gladiatorial school.*

vincula, et ea sempiterna (Cat. iv. 7), *imprisonment, and that perpetual.*

Ti. Gracchus rēgnum occupāre cōnātus est, vel rēgnāvit is quidem paucōs mēnsis (Lael. 41), *Tiberius Gracchus tried to usurp royal power, or rather he actually reigned a few months.*

NOTE. — So rarely with ille: as, — nunc dextrā ingemināns ictūs, nunc ille sinistrā (Aen. v. 457), *now dealing redoubled blows with his right hand, now (he) with his left.* [In imitation of the Homeric δ γε: cf. Aen. v. 334; ix. 796.]

**b. Idem, the same,** is often used where the English requires an adverb or adverbial phrase (*also, too, yet, at the same time*): —

ōratiō splendida et grandis et eadem in primis facēta (Brut. 273), *an oration, brilliant, able, and very witty too.*

cum [haec] dicat, negat idem esse in Deō grātiā (N. D. i. 121), *when he says this, he denies also that there is mercy with God (he, the same man).*

NOTE. — This is really the same use as in a above, but in this case the pronoun cannot be represented by a pronoun in English.

**c. The intensive ipse, self,** is used with any of the other pronouns, with a noun, or with a temporal adverb for the sake of emphasis: —

turpe mihi ipsi vidēbātur (Phil. i. 9), *even to me (to me myself) it seemed disgraceful.*

id ipsum, *that very thing*; quod ipsum, *which of itself alone.*

in eum ipsum locum, *to that very place.*

tum ipsum (Off. ii. 60), *at that very time.*

NOTE 1. — The emphasis of ipse is often expressed in English by *just, very, mere*, etc.

NOTE 2. — In English, the pronouns *himself* etc. are used both intensively (as, *he will come himself*) and reflexively (as, *he will kill himself*): in Latin the former would be translated by ipse, the latter by sē or sēsē.

**d. Ipse** is often used alone, substantively, as follows: —

1. As an emphatic pronoun of the third person: —

idque rei publicae praeclārū, ipsīs glōriōsum (Phil. ii. 27), *and this was splendid for the state, glorious for themselves.*

omnēs boni quantum in ipsis fuit (id. ii. 29), *all good men so far as was in their power (in themselves).*

dī capiti ipsius generique reservent (Aen. viii. 484), *may the gods hold in reserve [such a fate] to fall on his own and his son-in-law's head.*

2. To emphasize an omitted subject of the first or second person: —

vōbiscum ipsi recordāmini (Phil. ii. 1), *remember in your own minds (yourselves with yourselves).*

3. To distinguish the principal personage from subordinate persons: —

ipse dixit (cf. αὐτός ἔφα), *he (the Master) said it.*

Nōmentānus erat super ipsum (Hor. S. ii. 8. 23), *Nomentanus was above [the host] himself [at table].*



e. *Ipse* is often (is rarely) used instead of a reflexive (see § 300. b).

f. *Ipse* usually agrees with the subject, even when the real emphasis in English is on a reflexive in the predicate:—

*mē ipse cōsōlor* (Lael. 10), *I console myself*. [Not *mē ipsum*, as the English would lead us to expect.]

### Reflexive Pronouns

299. The Reflexive Pronoun (*sē*), and usually its corresponding possessive (*suus*), are used in the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause:—

*sē ex nāvi prōiecit* (B. G. iv. 25), *he threw himself from the ship*.

*Dumnorigem ad sē vocat* (id. i. 20), *he calls Dumnorix to him*.

*sēsē castris tenēbant* (id. iii. 24), *they kept themselves in camp*.

*contemni sē putant* (Cat. M. 65), *they think they are despised*.

*Caesar suās cōpiās subducit* (B. G. i. 22), *Cæsar leads up his troops*.

*Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trāseundum* (id. iv. 16), *Cæsar decided that he must cross the Rhine* (the Rhine must be crossed by himself).

a. For reflexives of the first and second persons the oblique cases of the personal pronouns (*mei*, *tui*, etc.) and the corresponding possessives (*meus*, *tuus*, etc.) are used:—

*mortī mē obtuli* (Mil. 94), *I have exposed myself to death*.

*hinc tē rēginae ad limina perfer* (Aen. i. 389), *do you go (bear yourself) hence to the queen's threshold*.

*quid est quod tantis nōs in laboribus exerceāmus* (Arch. 29), *what reason is there why we should exert ourselves in so great toils?*

*singulis vōbis novēnōs ex turmis manipulisque vestri similēs eligit* (Liv. xxi. 54), *for each of you pick out from the squadrons and maniples nine like yourselves*.

300. In a subordinate clause of a complex sentence there is a double use of Reflexives.

1. The reflexive may always be used to refer to the subject of its own clause (*Direct Reflexive*):—

*iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē boni cōstantia* (B. G. i. 40), *it can be determined how much good firmness possesses (has in itself)*.

[Caesar] *nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germāni ē suis finibus trānsirent* (id. i. 28), *Cæsar did not wish this place to lie vacant, for fear the Germans would cross over from their territories*.

*sī qua significātiō virtūtis elūceat ad quam sē similis animus adplicet et adiungat* (Lael. 48), *if any sign of virtue shine forth to which a similar disposition may attach itself*.

2. If the subordinate clause expresses the words or thought of the subject of the main clause, the reflexive is regularly used to refer to that subject (*Indirect Reflexive*):—

petiŕunt ut sibi liceret (B. G. i. 30), *they begged that it might be allowed them* (the petitioners).

Iccius nŕntium mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittatur (id. ii. 6), *Iccius sends a message that unless relief be furnished him, etc.*

decima legiŕ ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iudiciū fēcisset (id. i. 41), *the tenth legion thanked him because [they said] he had expressed a high opinion of them.*

si obsidēs ab eis (the Helvetians) sibi (Cæsar, who is the speaker) dentur, sē (Cæsar) cum eis pācem esse factūrum (id. i. 14), [Cæsar said that] *if hostages were given him by them he would make peace with them.*

NOTE.—Sometimes the person or thing to which the reflexive refers is not the grammatical subject of the main clause, though it is in effect the subject of discourse: Thus,—cum ipsi deŕ nihil minus grātum futūrum sit quam nŕn omnibus patēre ad sē plācandum viam (Legg. ii. 25), *since to God himself nothing will be less pleasing than that the way to appease him should not be open to all men.*

a. If the subordinate clause does not express the words or thought of the main subject, the reflexive is not regularly used, though it is occasionally found:—

sunt ita multi ut eŕs carcer capere nŕn possit (Cat. ii. 22), *they are so many that the prison cannot hold them.* [Here sē could not be used; so also in the example following.]

ibi in proximis villis ita bipartitŕ fuērunt, ut Tiberis inter eŕs et pŕns interesset (id. iii. 5), *there they stationed themselves in the nearest farm-houses, in two divisions, in such a manner that the Tiber and the bridge were between them* (the divisions).

nŕn fuit eŕ contentus quod ei præter spem acciderat (Manil. 25), *he was not content with that which had happened to him beyond his hope.*

Compare: qui fit, Maecēnās, ut nēmŕ, quam sibi sortem seu ratiŕ dederit seu fors obiēcerit, illā contentus vivat (Hor. S. i. 1. 1), *how comes it, Maecenas, that nobody lives contented with that lot which choice has assigned him or chance has thrown in his way?* [Here sibi is used to put the thought into the mind of the discontented man.]

b. Ipse is often (is rarely) used instead of an *indirect reflexive*, either to avoid ambiguity or from carelessness; and in later writers is sometimes found instead of the *direct reflexive*:—

cŕr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērarent (B. G. i. 40), *why (he asked) should they despair of their own courage or his diligence?*

omnia aut ipŕs aut hostēs populātŕs (Q. C. iii. 5. 6), [they said that] *either they themselves or the enemy had laid all waste.* [Direct reflexive.]

quī sē ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs (the persons referred to by sē above) atque Ariovistum . . . timēre dicēbant (B. G. i. 39), *those of them who wished to be thought less timid said they did not fear the enemy, but were afraid of the narrows and the vast extent of the forests which were between themselves and Ariovistus.*

audistis nūper dicere lēgātōs Tyndaritānōs Mercurium quī sacris anniversariis apud eōs colerētur esse sublātum (Verr. iv. 84), *you have just heard the ambassadors from Tyndaris say that the statue of Mercury which was worshipped with annual rites among them was taken away.* [Here Cicero wavers between apud eōs colēbātur, a remark of his own, and apud sē colerētur, the words of the ambassadors. eōs does not strictly refer to the ambassadors, but to the people — the Tyndaritani.]

### 301. Special uses of the Reflexive are the following:—

*a.* The reflexive in a subordinate clause sometimes refers to the subject of a suppressed main clause:—

Paetus omnis librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1), *Paetus gave me all the books which (as he said in the act of donation) his brother had left him.*

*b.* The reflexive may refer to any noun or pronoun in its own clause which is so emphasized as to become the *subject of discourse*:—

Sōcratem civēs suī interfēcērunt, *Socrates was put to death by his own fellow-citizens.*

quī poterat salūs sua cuiquam nōn probārī (Mil. 81), *how can any one fail to approve his own safety?* [In this and the preceding example the emphasis is preserved in English by the change of voice.]

hunc si secūtī erunt suī comitēs (Cat. ii. 10), *this man, if his companions follow him.*

NOTE.—Occasionally the clause to which the reflexive really belongs is absorbed: as,—studeō sanāre sibi ipsōs (Cat. ii. 17), *I am anxious to cure these men for their own benefit* (i.e. ut sanī sibi sint).

*c.* Suus is used for *one's own* as emphatically opposed to *that of others*, in any part of the sentence and with reference to any word in it:—

suīs flammis delēte Fidēnās (Liv. iv. 33), *destroy Fidenæ with its own fires* (the fires kindled by that city, figuratively). [Cf. Cat. i. 32.]

*d.* The reflexive may depend upon a verbal noun or adjective:—  
suī laus, *self-praise.*

habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī (Cat. iv. 19), *you have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself.*

perditī hominēs cum suī similibus servīs (Phil. i. 5), *abandoned men with slaves like themselves.*

**e.** The reflexive may refer to the subject implied in an infinitive or verbal abstract used indefinitely:—

contentum suis rebus esse maximae sunt divitiae (Par. 51), *the greatest wealth is to be content with one's own.*

cui proposita sit conservatio sui (Fin. v. 37), *one whose aim is self-preservation.*

**f.** Inter se (nos, vos), among themselves (ourselves, yourselves), is regularly used to express reciprocal action or relation:—

inter se confligunt (Cat. i. 25), *contend with each other.*

inter se continentur (Arch. 2), *are joined to each other.*

### Possessive Pronouns

**302.** The Possessive Pronouns are derivative adjectives, which take the gender, number, and case of the noun to which they belong, not those of the possessor:—

haec ornamenta sunt mea (Val. iv. 4), *these are my jewels.* [mea is neuter plural, though the speaker is a woman.]

mei sunt ordinēs, mea discriptiō (Cat. M. 59), *mine are the rows, mine the arrangement.* [mea is feminine, though the speaker is Cyrus.]

multa in nostrō collēgiō praeclāra (id. 64), [there are] *many fine things in our college.* [nostrō is neuter singular, though men are referred to.]

Germāni suās cōpiās castris ēdūxerunt (B. G. i. 51), *the Germans led their troops out of the camp.*

**a.** To express possession and similar ideas the possessive pronouns are regularly used, not the genitive of the personal or reflexive pronouns (§ 343. a):—

domus mea, *my house.* [Not domus mei.]

pater noster, *our father.* [Not pater nostri.]

patrimōnium tuum, *your inheritance.* [Not tui.]

**NOTE 1.**—Exceptions are rare in classic Latin, common in later writers. For the use of a possessive pronoun instead of an Objective Genitive, see § 348. a.

**NOTE 2.**—The Interrogative Possessive cuius, -a, -um, occurs in poetry and early Latin: as, —cūm pecus (Ecl. iii. 1), *whose flock?* The genitive cuius is generally used instead.

**b.** The possessives have often the acquired meaning of *peculiar to, favorable or propitious towards*, the person or thing spoken of:—

[petere] ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine ūtātur (B. G. ii. 14), *they asked (they said) that he would show his [wonted] clemency and humanity.*

Ignorantī quem portum petat nullus suus ventus est (Sen. Ep. 71. 3), *to him who knows not what port he is bound to, no wind is fair (his own).*

tempore tuō pugnāsti (Liv. xxxviii. 45. 10), *did you fight at a fit time?*

**NOTE.**—This use is merely a natural development of the meaning of the possessive, and the pronoun may often be rendered literally.

c. The possessives are regularly omitted (like other pronouns) when they are plainly implied in the context:—

*socium fraudāvit, he cheated his partner.* [*socium suum* would be distinctive, *his partner* (and not another's); *suum socium*, emphatic, *his own partner.*]

d. Possessive pronouns and adjectives implying possession are often used substantively to denote some special class or relation:—

*nostrī, our countrymen, or men of our party.*

*suōs continēbat* (B. G. i. 15), *he held his men in check.*

*flamma extrēma meōrum* (Aen. ii. 431), *last flames of my countrymen.*

*Sullāni, the veterans of Sulla's army; Pompēiāni, the partisans of Pompey.*

NOTE.—There is no reason to suppose an ellipsis here. The adjective becomes a noun like other adjectives (see § 288).

e. A possessive pronoun or an adjective implying possession may take an appositive in the genitive case agreeing in gender, number, and case with an implied noun or pronoun:—

*meā sōlius causā* (Ter. Heaut. 129), *for my sake only.*

*in nostrō omnium flētū* (Mil. 92), *amid the tears of us all.*

*ex Annianā Milōnis domō* (Att. iv. 3. 3), *out of Annius Milo's house.* [Equivalent to *ex Annī Milōnis domō.*]

*nostra omnium patria, the country of us all.*

*suum ipsius rēgnum, his own kingdom.*

For the special reflexive use of the possessive *suus*, see §§ 299, 300.

### Relative Pronouns

**303.** A Relative Pronoun agrees with some word expressed or implied either in its own clause, or (often) in the antecedent (demonstrative) clause. In the fullest construction the antecedent is expressed in both clauses, with more commonly a corresponding *demonstrative* to which the relative refers: as, — *iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat* (B. G. iv. 7), *he began to march into those PLACES in which PLACES he heard the Germans were.* But one of these nouns is commonly omitted.

The antecedent is in Latin very frequently (rarely in English) found in the relative clause, but more commonly in the antecedent clause.

Thus relatives serve two uses at the same time:—

1. As Nouns (or Adjectives) in their own clause: as, — *eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur* (B. G. vii. 77), *those who were besieged at Alesia.*

2. As Connectives: as, — *T. Balvntius, quī superiōre annō primum pilum dūxerat* (id. v. 35), *Titus Balvntius, who the year before had been a centurion of the first rank.*

When the antecedent is in a different sentence, the relative is often equivalent to a demonstrative with a conjunction: as, — *quae cum ita sint (= et cum ea ita sint), [and] since this is so.*

The subordinating force did not belong to the relative originally, but was developed from an interrogative or indefinite meaning specialized by use. But the subordinating and the later connective force were acquired by *quī* at such an early period that the steps of the process cannot now be traced.

**304.** A Relative Pronoun indicates a relation between its own clause and some substantive. This substantive is called the Antecedent of the relative.

Thus, in the sentence —

*eum nihil delectabat quod fās esset* (Mil. 43), *nothing pleased him which was right,*

the relative *quod* connects its antecedent *nihil* with the predicate *fās esset*, indicating a relation between the two.

**305.** A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in *Gender* and *Number*; but its *Case* depends on its construction in the clause in which it stands: —

*ea diēs quam cōstituerat vēnit* (B. G. i. 8), *that day which he had appointed came.*

*pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī* (id. i. 7), *he orders the bridge which was near Geneva to be cut down.*

*Aduatuci, dē quibus suprà diximus, domum revertērunt* (id. ii. 29), *the Aduatuci, of whom we have spoken above, returned home.*

NOTE. — This rule applies to all relative words so far as they are variable in form: *as, quālis, quantus, quicumque*, etc.

**α.** If a relative has two or more antecedents, it follows the rules for the agreement of predicate adjectives (§§ 286, 287): —

*filium et filiam, quōs valdē dilēxit, unō tempore amisit*, *he lost at the same time a son and a daughter whom he dearly loved.*

*grandēs nātū matrēs et parvulī liberī, quōrum utrōrumque aetās misericordiam nostram requirit* (Verr. v. 129), *aged matrons and little children, whose time of life in each case demands our compassion.*

*otium atque divitiae, quae prima mortālēs putant* (Sall. Cat. 36), *idleness and wealth, which men count the first* (objects of desire).

*eae frūgēs et fructūs quōs terra gignit* (N. D. ii. 37), *those fruits and crops which the earth produces.*

For the Person of the verb agreeing with the Relative, see § 316. *a*.

**306.** A Relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number (cf. § 296. *a*): —

*mare etiam quem Neptūnum esse dicēbās* (N. D. iii. 52), *the sea, too, which you said was Neptune.* [Not *quod*.]

*Thēbae ipsae, quod Boeōtiae caput est* (Liv. xlii. 44), *even Thebes, which is the chief city of Boeotia.* [Not *quae*.]

NOTE. — This rule is occasionally violated: *as, — flūmen quod appellātur Tamesis* (B. G. v. 11), *a river which is called the Thames.*

**a.** A relative occasionally agrees with its antecedent in case (by attraction): —

*sī aliquid agās eōrum quōrum cōnsuēstī* (Fam. v. 14), *if you should do something of what you are used to do.* [For eōrum quae.]

NOTE. — Occasionally the antecedent is attracted into the case of the relative: —  
*urbem quam statuō vestra est* (Aen. i. 573), *the city which I am founding is yours.*  
*Naucratem, quem convenire voluī, in nāvī nōn erat* (Pl. Am. 1009), *Naucrates, whom I wished to meet, was not on board the ship.*

**b.** A relative may agree in gender and number with an implied antecedent: —

*quārtum genus . . . quī in vetere aere aliēnō vacillant* (Cat. ii. 21), *a fourth class, who are staggering under old debts.*

*ūnus ex eō numerō quī parātī erant* (Iug. 35), *one of the number [of those] who were ready.*

*conīūrāvere pauci, dē quā* [i.e. conīūrātiōne] *dicam* (Sall. Cat. 18), *a few have conspired, of which [conspiracy] I will speak.*

NOTE. — So regularly when the antecedent is implied in a possessive pronoun: as, —  
*nostra ācta, quōs tyrannōs vocās* (Vat. 29), *the deeds of us, whom you call tyrants.*  
 [Here quōs agrees with the nostrum (genitive plural) implied in nostra.]

### Antecedent of the Relative

**307.** The Antecedent Noun sometimes appears in both clauses; but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted.

**a.** The antecedent noun may be repeated in the relative clause: —

*locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī dēlēgerant* (B. G. ii. 18), *the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this.*

**b.** The antecedent noun may appear only in the relative clause, agreeing with the relative in case: —

*quās rēs in cōsulātū nostrō gessimus attigit hic versibus* (Arch. 28), *he has touched in verse the things which I did in my consulship.*

*quae prima innocentis mihi dēfensiō est oblāta suscēpi* (Sull. 92), *I undertook the first defence of an innocent man that was offered me.*

NOTE. — In this case the relative clause usually comes first (cf. § 308. d) and a demonstrative usually stands in the antecedent clause: —

*quae pars civitātis calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit* (B. G. i. 12), *that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.*

*quae grātia currum fuit vivis, eadem sequitur* (Aen. vi. 653), *the same pleasure that they took in chariots in their lifetime follows them (after death).*

*quī fit ut nēmō, quam sibi sortem ratiō dederit, illā contentus vivat* (cf. Hor. S. i. 1. 1), *how does it happen that no one lives contented with the lot which choice has assigned him?*

**c.** The antecedent may be omitted, especially if it is indefinite: —  
 qui decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat (B. G. iv. 25), [the man] *who bore the eagle of the tenth legion.*  
 qui cōgnōscerent mīsit (id. i. 21), *he sent [men] to reconnoitre.*

**d.** The phrase *id quod* or *quae rēs* may be used (instead of *quod* alone) to refer to a group of words or an idea: —

[obtrectātum est] Gabiniō dicam anne Pompēiō? an utrique — *id quod est vērius?* (Manil. 57), *an affront has been offered — shall I say to Gabinius or to Pompey? or — which is truer — to both?*

*multum sunt in vēnātiōnibus, quae rēs virēs alit* (B. G. iv. 1), *they spend much time in hunting, which [practice] increases their strength.*

NOTE. — But *quod* alone often occurs: as, — *Cassius noster, quod mihi māgnae voluptāti fuit, hostem reliēcerat* (Fam. ii. 10), *our friend Cassius — which was a great satisfaction to me — had driven back the enemy.*

**e.** The antecedent noun, when in apposition with the main clause, or with some word of it, is put in the relative clause: —

*fīrmī [amici], cūius generis est māgna pēnūria* (Lael. 62), *steadfast friends, a class of which there is great lack* (of which class there is, etc.).

**f.** A predicate adjective (especially a superlative) belonging to the antecedent may stand in the relative clause: —

*vāsa ea quae pulcherrima apud eum viderat* (Verr. iv. 63), *those most beautiful vessels which he had seen at his house.* [Nearly equivalent to the vessels of which he had seen some very beautiful ones.]

### Special Uses of the Relative

**308.** In the use of Relatives, the following points are to be observed: —

**a.** The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English: —

*liber quem mihi dedisti*, *the book you gave me.*

*is sum qui semper fui*, *I am the same man I always was.*

*eō in locō est dē quō tibi locūtus sum*, *he is in the place I told you of.*

**b.** When two relative clauses are connected by a copulative conjunction, a relative pronoun sometimes stands in the first, and a demonstrative in the last: —

*erat profectus obviam legiōnibus Macedonicis quattuor, quās sibi conciliāre pecūniā cōgitābat easque ad urbem addūcere* (Fam. xii. 23. 2), *he had set out to meet four legions from Macedonia, which he thought to win over to himself by a gift of money and to lead (them) to the city.*



c. A relative clause in Latin often takes the place of some other construction in English, — particularly of a participle, an appositive, or a noun of agency : —

*lêgês quae nunc sunt, the existing laws* (the laws which now exist).

*Caesar qui Galliam vicit, Caesar the conqueror of Gaul.*

*iûsta glôria qui est fructus virtûtis* (Pison. 57), *true glory* [which is] *the fruit of virtue.*

*ille qui petit, the plaintiff* (he who sues).

*qui legit, a reader* (one who reads).

d. In formal or emphatic discourse, the relative clause usually comes first, often containing the antecedent noun (cf. § 307. b) : —

*quae pars civitâtis Helvêtiæ insignem calamitatem populô Rômânô intulerat, ea princeps poenâs persolvit* (B. G. i. 12), *the portion of the Helvetian state which had brought a serious disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.*

NOTE. — In colloquial language, the relative clause in such cases often contains a redundant demonstrative pronoun which logically belongs in the antecedent clause: as, — *ille qui cōsultê cavet, diûtinê uti bene licet partum bene* (Plaut. Rud. 1240), *he who is on his guard, he may long enjoy what he has well obtained.*

e. The relative with an abstract noun may be used in a parenthetical clause to *characterize a person*, like the English *such* : —

*quae vestra prûdentia est* (Cael. 45), *such is your wisdom.* [Equivalent to *prô vestrâ prûdentiâ.*]

*audissês comœodôs vel lëctôrem vel lyristên, vel, quae mea liberâlitàs, omnês* (Plin. Ep. i. 15), *you would have listened to comedians, or a reader, or a lyre-player, or — such is my liberality — to all of them.*

f. A relative pronoun (or adverb) often stands at the beginning of an independent sentence or clause, serving to connect it with the sentence or clause that precedes : —

*Caesar statuit exspectandam classem; quae ubi convênit* (B. G. iii. 14), *Caesar decided that he must wait for the fleet; and when this had come together, etc.*

*quae qui audiêbant, and those who heard this* (which things).

*quae cum ita sint, and since this is so.*

*quôrum quod simile factum* (Cat. iv. 13), *what deed of theirs like this?*

*quô cum vênisset, and when he had come there* (whither when he had come).

NOTE. — This arrangement is common even when another relative or an interrogative follows. The relative may usually be translated by an English demonstrative, with or without *and*.

g. A relative adverb is regularly used in referring to an antecedent in the Locative case; so, often, to express any relation of place instead of the formal relative pronoun : —

mortuus Cūmis quō sē contulerat (Liv. ii. 21), *having died at Cumæ, whither he had retired.* [Here in *quam urbem* might be used, but not in *quās.*]

locus quō aditus nōn erat, *a place to which (whither) there was no access.*

rēgna unde genus dūcis (Aen. v. 801), *the kingdom from which you derive your race.*

unde petitur, *the defendant* (he from whom something is demanded).

**h.** The relatives *quī, quālis, quantus, quot*, etc. are often rendered simply by *as* in English:—

Idem quod semper, *the same as always.*

cum esset tālis quālem tē esse videō (Mur. 32), *since he was such a man as I see you are.*

tanta dīmīcātiō quanta numquam fuit (Att. vii. 1. 2), *such a fight as never was before.*

tot mala quot sidera (Ov. Tr. i. 5. 47), *as many troubles as stars in the sky.*

**i.** The general construction of relatives is found in clauses introduced by relative adverbs: *as, ubi, quō, unde, cum, quārē.*

### Indefinite Pronouns

**309.** The Indefinite Pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is meant, without designating *what one*.

**310.** *Quis, quispiam, aliquis, quidam*, are *particular indefinites*, meaning *some, a certain, any*. Of these, *quis*, *any one*, is least definite, and *quidam*, *a certain one*, most definite; *aliquis* and *quispiam*, *some one*, stand between the two:—

dixerit quis (*quispiam*), *some one may say.*

aliqui philosophi ita putant, *some philosophers think so.* [*quidam* would mean *certain persons* defined to the speaker's mind, though not named.]

habitant hic quaedam mulierēs pauperculae (Ter. Ad. 647), *some poor women live here* [i.e. some women he knows of; *some women or other* would be *aliquae* or *nesciō quae*].

**a.** The indefinite *quis* is rare except in the combinations *sī quis*, *if any*; *nisi quis*, *if any . . . not*; *nē quis*, *lest any, in order that none*; *num quis* (*ecquis*), *whether any*; and in relative clauses.

**b.** The compounds *quispiam* and *aliquis* are often used instead of *quis* after *sī, nisi, nē*, and *num*, and are rather more emphatic:—

quid sī hōc quispiam voluit deus (Ter. Eun. 875), *what if some god had desired this?*

nisi alicui suōrum negōtium daret (Nep. Dion. 8. 2), *unless he should employ some one of his friends.*

cavēbat Pompēius omnia, nē aliquid vōs timērētis (Mil. 66), *Pompey took every precaution, so that you might have no fear.*

**311.** In a *particular* negative *aliquis* (*aliqui*), *some one* (*some*), is regularly used, where in a *universal* negative *quisquam*, *any one*, or *ullus*, *any*, would be required: —

*iustitia numquam nocet cuiquam* (Fin. i. 50), *justice never does harm to anybody*. [*alicui* would mean to *somebody who possesses it*.]

*nōn sine aliquō metū*, *not without some fear*. But, — *sine ullō metū*, *without any fear*.

*cum aliquid nōn habeās* (Tusc. i. 88), *when there is something you have not*.

NOTE. — The same distinction holds between *quis* and *aliquis* on the one hand, and *quisquam* (*ullus*) on the other, in conditional and other sentences when a negative is expressed or suggested: —

*si quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit* (Lael. 9), *if any man was (ever) a sage, he was*.

*dum praesidia ūlla fuērunt* (Rosc. Am. 126), *while there were any armed forces*.

*si quid in tē peccāvī* (Att. iii. 15. 4), *if I have done wrong towards you* [in any particular case (see § 310)].

**312.** *Quivis* or *quilibet* (*any one you will*), *quisquam*, and the corresponding adjective *ullus*, *any at all*, are *general indefinites*.

*Quivis* and *quilibet* are used chiefly in *affirmative* clauses, *quisquam* and *ullus* in clauses where a *universal negative* is expressed or suggested: —

*nōn cuivis hominī contingit adire Corinthum* (Hor. Ep. i. 17. 36), *it is not every man's luck to go to Corinth*. [*nōn cuiquam* would mean *not any man's*.]

*quemlibet modo aliquem* (Acad. ii. 132), *anybody you will, provided it be somebody*.

*si quisquam est timidus*, *is ego sum* (Fam. vi. 14. 1), *if any man is timorous, I am he*.

*si tempus est ūllum iūre hominis necandī* (Mil. 9), *if there is any occasion whatever when homicide is justifiable*.

NOTE. — The use of the indefinites is very various, and must be learned from the *Lexicon* and from practice. The choice among them may depend merely on the point of view of the speaker, so that they are often practically interchangeable. The differences are (with few exceptions) those of logic, not of syntax.

**313.** The distributives *quisque* (*every*), *uterque* (*each of two*), and *ūnus quisque* (*every single one*) are used in general assertions: —

*bonus liber melior est quisque quō maior* (Plin. Ep. i. 20. 4), *the larger a good book is, the better* (each good book is better in proportion, etc.).

*ambō exercitūs suās quisque abeunt domōs* (Liv. ii. 7. 1), *both armies go away, every man to his home*.

*uterque utrīque erat exercitus in cōspectū* (B. G. vii. 35), *each army was in sight of the other* (each to each).

*pōnere ante oculos ūnum quemque rēgum* (Par. i. 11), *set before your eyes each of the kings*.

**a.** Quisque regularly stands in a dependent clause, if there is one: —  
quō quisque est sollertior, hōc docet Irācundius (Rosc. Com. 31), *the keener-witted a man is, the more impatiently he teaches.*

NOTE. — Quisque is generally postpositive<sup>1</sup>: as, suum cuique, *to every man his own.*

**b.** Quisque is idiomatically used with superlatives and with ordinal numerals: —

nōbilissimus quisque, *all the noblest* (one after the other in the order of their nobility).<sup>2</sup>

primō quōque tempore (Rosc. Am. 36), *at the very first opportunity.*

antiquissimum quodque tempus (B. G. i. 45), *the most ancient times.*

decimus quisque (id. v. 52), *one in ten.*

NOTE 1. — Two superlatives with quisque imply a proportion: as, — sapientissimus quisque aequissimō animō moritur (Cat. M. 83), *the wisest men die with the greatest equanimity.*

NOTE 2. — Quotus quisque has the signification of *how many, pray?* often in a disparaging sense (*how few*): —

quotus enim quisque disertus? quotus quisque iūris peritus est (Planc. 62), *for how few are eloquent! how few are learned in the law!*

quotus enim istud quisque fēcisset (Lig. 26), *for how many would have done this?* [i.e. scarcely anybody would have done it].

**314. Nēmō, no one, is used of persons only —**

**1.** As a substantive: —

nēmīnem accūsāt, *he accuses no one.*

**2.** As an adjective pronoun instead of nūllus: —

vir nēmō bonus (Legg. ii. 41), *no good man.*

NOTE. — Even when used as a substantive, nēmō may take a noun in apposition: as, — nēmō scriptor, *nobody [who is] a writer.*

**a.** Nūllus, *no*, is commonly an adjective; but in the genitive and ablative singular it is regularly used instead of the corresponding cases of nēmō, and in the plural it may be either an adjective or a substantive: —

nūllum mittitur tēlum (B. C. ii. 13), *not a missile is thrown.*

nūllō hoste prohibente (B. G. iii. 6), *without opposition from the enemy.*

nūllus Insector calamitātem (Phil. ii. 98), *I persecute the misfortune of no one.*

nūllō adiuvante (id. x. 4), *with the help of no one* (no one helping).

nūllī erant praedōnēs (Flacc. 28), *there were no pirates.*

nūllī eximentur (Pison. 94), *none shall be taken away.*

For nōn nēmō, nōn nūllus (nōn nūllī), see § 326. a.

<sup>1</sup> That is, it does not stand first in its clause.

<sup>2</sup> As, in taking things one by one off a pile, each thing is uppermost when you take it.

*Alius and Alter*

**315.** *Alius* means simply *other, another* (of an indefinite number); *alter, the other* (of two), often the *second* in a series; *ceteri* and *reliqui*, *all the rest, the others*; *alteruter, one of the two*: —

propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum (B. G. i. 7), *because (as they said) they had no other way.*

ūni epistolae respondi, veniō ad alteram (Fam. ii. 17. 6), *one letter I have answered, I come to the other.*

alterum genus (Cat. ii. 19), *the second class.*

iēcissē ipse mē potius in profundum ut ceteros cōservārem (Sest. 45), *I should have rather thrown myself into the deep to save the rest.*

Servilius cōsul, reliquique magistrātūs (B. C. iii. 21), *Servilius the consul and the rest of the magistrates.*

cum sit necesse alterum utrum vincere (Fam. vi. 3), *since it must be that one of the two should prevail.*

NOTE. — *Alter* is often used, especially with negatives, in reference to an indefinite number where *one* is opposed to *all the rest* taken singly: —

dum nē sit tē ditior alter (Hor. S. i. 1. 40), *so long as another is not richer than you (lit. the other, there being at the moment only two persons considered).*

nōn ut magis alter, amicus (id. i. 5. 33), *a friend such that no other is more so.*

*a.* The expressions *alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other, alius . . . alius, one . . . another*, may be used in pairs to denote either *division* of a group or *reciprocity* of action: —

alteri dimicant, alteri victōrem timent (Fam. vi. 3), *one party fights, the other fears the victor.*

alteram alteri praesidiō esse iusserat (B. C. iii. 89), *he had ordered each (of the two legions) to support the other.*

alii gladiis adoriuntur, alii fragmentis saeptōrum (Sest. 79), *some make an attack with swords, others with fragments of the railings.*

alius ex aliō causam quaerit (B. G. vi. 37), *they ask each other the reason.*

alius alium percentāmur (Pl. Stich. 370), *we keep asking each other.*

*b.* *Alius* and *alter* are often used to express *one* as well as *another (the other)* of the objects referred to: —

alter cōsulum, *one of the [two] consuls.*

aliud est maledicere, aliud accūsāre (Cael. 6), *it is one thing to slander, another to accuse.*

*c.* *Alius* repeated in another case, or with an adverb from the same stem, expresses briefly a double statement: —

alius aliud petit, *one man seeks one thing, another another (another seeks another thing).*

iussit aliōs alibi fodere (Liv. xlv. 38), *he ordered different persons to dig in different places.*

alii aliō locō resistēbant (B. C. ii. 39), *some halted in one place, some in another.*

## VERBS

## Agreement of Verb and Subject

**316. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person : —**

ego statuō, *I resolve.*                      senātus decrevit, *the senate ordered.*  
 silent lēgēs inter arma (Mil. 11), *the laws are dumb in time of war.*

NOTE. — In verb-forms containing a participle, the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number (§ 286): —

orātiō est habita, *the plea was delivered.*      bellum exortum est, *a war arose.*

**a. A verb having a relative as its subject takes the person of the expressed or implied antecedent : —**

adsum qui fēci (Aen. ix. 427), *here am I who did it.*  
 tū, qui scis, omnem diligentiam adhibēbis (Att. v. 2. 3), *you, who know, will use all diligence.*  
 vidēte quam dēspiciāmur omnēs qui sumus ē mūnicipiis (Phil. iii. 15), *see how all of us are scorned who are from the free towns.*

**b. A verb sometimes agrees in number (and a participle in the verb-form in number and gender) with an appositive or predicate noun : —**

amantium irae amoris integrātiō est (Ter. And. 555), *the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*  
 nōn omnis error stultitia dicenda est (Div. ii. 90), *not every error should be called folly.*  
 Corinthus lūmen Graeciae extinctum est (cf. Manil. 11), *Corinth, the light of Greece, is put out.*

## Double or Collective Subject

**317. Two or more Singular Subjects take a verb in the Plural:**

pater et avus mortuī sunt, *his father and grandfather are dead.*

NOTE. — So rarely (by *synesis*, § 280. a) when to a singular subject is attached an ablative with *cum*: as, — dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur (Liv. xxi. 60), *the general and several leading men are taken.*

**a. When subjects are of different persons, the verb is usually in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third : —**

si tū et Tullia valētis ego et Cicerō valēmus (Fam. xiv. 5), *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.* [Notice that the first person is also first in order, not last, as by courtesy in English.]

NOTE. — In case of different genders a participle in a verb-form follows the rule for predicate adjectives (see § 287. 2-4).

**b.** If the subjects are connected by disjunctives (§ 223. *a*), or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular:—

quem neque fidēs neque iūs iurandum neque illum misericordia repressit (Ter. Ad. 306), *not faith, nor oath, nay, nor mercy, checked him.*

senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit (Fam. v. 8), *the Roman senate and people understand.* [But, neque Caesar neque ego habiti essēmus (id. xi. 20), *neither Cæsar nor I should have been considered.*]

fāma et vita innocentis dēfēditur (Rosc. Am. 15), *the reputation and life of an innocent man are defended.*

est in eō virtūs et probitās et summum officium summaque observantia (Fam. xiii. 28 A. 2), *in him are to be found worth, uprightness, the highest sense of duty, and the greatest devotion.*

NOTE.—So almost always when the subjects are abstract nouns.

**c.** When a verb belongs to two or more subjects *separately*, it often agrees with one and is understood with the others:—

intercēdit M. Antōnius Q. Cassius tribūni plēbis (B. C. i. 2), *Mark Antony and Quintus Cassius, tribunes of the people, interpose.*

hōc mihi et Peripatēticī et vetus Acadēmia concēdit (Acad. ii. 113), *this both the Peripatetic philosophers and the Old Academy grant me.*

**d.** A collective noun commonly takes a verb in the singular; but the plural is often found with collective nouns when *individuals* are thought of (§ 280. *a*):—

(1) senātus haec intellegit (Cat. i. 2), *the senate is aware of this.*

ad hiberna exercitus redit (Liv. xxi. 22), *the army returns to winter-quarters.*

plēbēs ā patribus sēcessit (Sall. Cat. 33), *the plebs seceded from the patricians.*

(2) pars praedās agēbant (Iug. 32), *a part brought in booty.*

cum tanta multitudō lapidēs conicerent (B. G. ii. 6), *when such a crowd were throwing stones.*

NOTE 1.—The point of view may change in the course of a sentence: as,—equitā-tum omnem . . . quem habēbat praemittit, qui videant (B. G. i. 15), *he sent ahead all the cavalry he had, to see (who should see).*

NOTE 2.—The singular of a noun regularly denoting an individual is sometimes used collectively to denote a group: as, Poenus, *the Carthaginians*; miles, *the soldiery*; eques, *the cavalry*.

**e.** Quisque, *each*, and ūnus quisque, *every single one*, have very often a plural verb, but may be considered as in partitive apposition with a plural subject implied (cf. § 282. *a*):—

sibi quisque habeant quod suum est (Pl. Curc. 180), *let every one keep his own (let them keep every man his own).*

NOTE.—So also uterque, *each (of two)*, and the reciprocal phrases alius . . . alium, alter . . . alterum (§ 315. *a*).

## Omission of Subject or Verb

318. The Subject of the Verb is sometimes omitted : —

*a.* A Personal pronoun, as subject, is usually omitted unless emphatic : —

*loquor, I speak.* But, *ego loquor, it is I that speak.*

*b.* An *indefinite* subject is often omitted : — *crēderēs, you would have supposed ; putāmus, we (people) think ; dicunt, ferunt, perhibent, they say.*

*c.* A passive verb is often used impersonally without a subject expressed or understood (§ 208. *d*) : —

*diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est (B. G. i. 26), they fought long and vigorously.*

319. The verb is sometimes omitted : —

*a.* *Dicō, faciō, agō*, and other common verbs are often omitted in familiar phrases : —

*quōrsum haec [spectant], what does this aim at?*

*ex ungue leōnem [cōgnōscēs], you will know a lion by his claw.*

*quid multa, what need of many words? (why should I say much?)*

*quid? quod, what of this, that . . . ? (what shall I say of this, that . . . ?)*

[A form of transition.]

*Aeolus haec contrā (Aen. i. 76), Æolus thus [spoke] in reply.*

*tum Cotta [inquit], then said Cotta.*

*dī meliōra [dunt]! (Cat. M. 47), Heaven forfend (may the gods grant better things)!*

*unde [venis] et quō [tendis]? (Hor. S. ii. 4. 1), where from and whither bound? [Cf. id. i. 9. 62 for the full form.]*

*b.* The copula *sum* is very commonly omitted in the present indicative and present infinitive, rarely (except by late authors) in the subjunctive : —

*tū coniūnx (Aen. iv. 113), you [are] his wife.*

*quid ergō? audācissimus ego ex omnibus (Ros. Am. 2), what then? am I the boldest of all?*

*omnia praeclāra rara (Lael. 79), all the best things are rare.*

*potest incidere saepe contentiō et comparātiō dē duōbus honestis utrum honestius (Off. i. 162), there may often occur a comparison of two honorable actions, as to which is the more honorable. [Here, if any copula were expressed, it would be sit, but the direct question would be complete without any.]*

*accipe quae peragenda prius (Aen. vi. 136), hear what is first to be accomplished. [Direct: quae peragenda prius?]*



## PARTICLES

## Adverbs

**320.** The proper function of Adverbs, as petrified case-forms, is to modify Verbs: as, — *celeriter ire, to go with speed.* It is from this use that they derive their name (adverbium, from *ad, to,* and *verbum, verb*; see § 241. *b*). They also modify adjectives, showing in what manner or degree the quality described is manifested: as, *splendidè mendāx, gloriously false.* More rarely they modify other adverbs: as, *nimis graviter, too severely.* Many adverbs, especially relative adverbs, serve as connectives, and are hardly to be distinguished from conjunctions (see § 20. *g. n.*).<sup>1</sup>

**321.** Adverbs are used to modify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs.

*a.* A Demonstrative or Relative adverb is often equivalent to the corresponding Pronoun with a preposition (see § 308. *g*): —

*eō* [= *in ea*] *impōnit vāsa* (Iug. 75), *upon them*\* (thither, thereon, on the beasts) *he puts the camp-utensils.*

*eō* *millitēs impōnere* (B. G. i. 42), *to put soldiers upon them* (the horses).

*apud eōs quō* [= *ad quōs*] *sē contulit* (Verr. iv. 38), *among those to whom* (whither) *he resorted.*

*qui eum necāset unde* [= *quō*] *ipse nātus esset* (Rosc. Am. 71), *one who should have killed his own father* (him whence he had his birth).

*ō condiciōnēs miserās administrandārum prōvinciārum ubi* [= *in quibus*] *sevēritās periculōsa est* (Flacc. 87), *O! wretched terms of managing the provinces, where strictness is dangerous.*

*b.* The participles *dictum* and *factum*, when used as nouns, are regularly modified by adverbs rather than by adjectives; so occasionally other perfect participles: —

*praeclārē facta* (Nep. Timoth. 1), *glorious deeds* (things gloriously done).

*multa facētē dicta* (Off. i. 104), *many witty sayings.*

*c.* A noun is sometimes used as an adjective, and may then be modified by an adverb: —

*victor exercitus*, *the victorious army.*

*admodum puer*, *quite a boy* (young).

*magis vir*, *more of a man* (more manly).

*populum lātē rēgem* (Aen. i. 21), *a people ruling far and wide.*

NOTE. — Very rarely adverbs are used with nouns which have no adjective force but which contain a verbal idea: —

*hinc abitiō* (Plaut. Rud. 503), *a going away from here.*

*quid cōgitē dē obviām itione* (Att. xiii. 50), *what I think about going to meet* (him). [Perhaps felt as a compound.]

<sup>1</sup> For the derivation and classification of adverbs, see §§ 214-217.

*d.* A few adverbs appear to be used like adjectives. Such are *obviam*, *palam*, sometimes *contrā*, and occasionally others:—

*fit obviam Clōdiō* (Mil. 29), *he falls in with* (becomes in the way of) *Clodius*.

[Cf. the adjective *obvius*: *as*, — *sī ille obvius ei futūrus nōn erat* (id. 47), *if he was not likely to fall in with him.*]

*haec commemorō quae sunt palam* (Pison. 11), *I mention these facts, which are well-known.*

*alia probabilia, contrā alia dicimus* (Off. ii. 7), *we call some things probable, others the opposite* (not probable). [In this use, *contrā* contradicts a previous adjective, and so in a manner repeats it.]

*erī semper lēnitās* (Ter. And. 175), *my master's constant* (always) *gentleness*. [An imitation of a Greek construction.]

NOTE.—In some cases one can hardly say whether the adverb is treated as an adjective modifying the noun, or the noun modified is treated as an adjective (as in *c* above).

For *propius*, *prīdiē*, *palam*, and other adverbs used as prepositions, see § 432.

**322.** The following adverbs require special notice:—

*a.* *Etiam* (*et iam*), *also, even*, is stronger than *quoque*, *also*, and usually precedes the emphatic word, while *quoque* follows it:—

*nōn verbis solum sed etiam vī* (Verr. ii. 64), *not only by words, but also by force.*

*hōc quoque malefīcium* (Rosc. Am. 117), *this crime too.*

*b.* *Nunc*<sup>1</sup> means definitely *now, in the immediate present*, and is rarely used of the immediate past.

*Iam* means *now, already, at length, presently*, and includes a reference to previous time through which the state of things described has been or will be reached. It may be used of *any* time. With negatives *iam* means (*no*) *longer*.

*Tum*, *then*, is correlative to *cum*, *when*, and may be used of any time. *Tunc*, *then, at that time*, is a strengthened form of *tum* (*†tum-ce*, cf. *nunc*):—

*ut iam antea dixi*, *as I have already said before.*

*sī iam satis aetātis atque rōboris haberet* (Rosc. Am. 149), *if he had attained a suitable age and strength* (lit. *if he now had*, as he will have by and by).

*nōn est iam lēnitāti locus*, *there is no longer room for mercy.*

*quod iam erat institūtum*, *which had come to be a practice* (had now been established).

*nunc quidem dēlēta est, tunc florēbat* (Lael. 13), *now ('t is true) she [Greece] is ruined, then she was in her glory.*

*tum cum regnābat*, *at the time when he reigned.*

<sup>1</sup> For *†num-ce*; cf. *tunc* (for *†tum-ce*).

c. *Certō* means *certainly*, *certē* (usually) *at least, at any rate*: —  
*certō sciō, I know for a certainty; ego certē, I at least.*

d. *Primum* means *first* (*first in order, or for the first time*), and implies a *series* of events or acts. *Primō* means *at first*, as opposed to *afterwards*, giving prominence merely to the difference of time: —

*hōc primum sentiō, this I hold in the first place.*

*aedīs primō ruere rēbāmur, at first we thought the house was falling.*

NOTE. — In enumerations, *primum* (or *primō*) is often followed by *deinde*, *secondly*, in the next place, or by *tum*, *then*, or by both in succession. *Deinde* may be several times repeated (*secondly, thirdly*, etc.). The series is often closed by *dēnique* or *postrēmō*, *lastly, finally*. Thus, — *primum dē genere bellī, deinde dē māgnitūdine, tum dē imperātore dēligendō* (Manil. 6), *first of the kind of war, next of its magnitude, then of the choice of a commander.*

e. *Quidem*, *indeed*, gives emphasis, and often has a *concessive* meaning, especially when followed by *sed, autem*, etc.: —

*hōc quidem vidēre licet* (Lael. 54), *this surely one may see.* [Emphatic.]

*[sēcūrītās] speciē quidem blanda, sed reāpse multis locis repudianda* (id. 47),  
*(tranquillity) in appearance, 't is true, attractive, but in reality to be rejected for many reasons.* [Concessive.]

f. *Nē . . . quidem* means *not even* or *not . . . either*. The emphatic word or words must stand between *nē* and *quidem*: —

*sed nē Iugurtha quidem quiētus erat* (Iug. 51), *but Jugurtha was not quiet either.*

*ego autem nē irāscī possum quidem iis quōs valdē amō* (Att. ii. 19. 1), *but I cannot even get angry with those whom I love very much.*

NOTE. — *Equidem* has the same senses as *quidem*, but is in Cicero confined to the first person. Thus, — *equidem adprobābō* (Fam. ii. 3. 2), *I for my part shall approve.*

## CONJUNCTIONS<sup>1</sup>

323. Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood that precedes them: —

*scriptum senātui et populō* (Cat. iii. 10), *written to the senate and people.*

*ut eās [partis] sārārēs et cōfirmārēs* (Mil. 68), *that you might cure and strengthen those parts.*

*neque meā prūdentiā neque hūmānis cōsiliis frētus* (Cat. ii. 29), *relying neither on my own foresight nor on human wisdom.*

<sup>1</sup> For the classification of conjunctions, see §§ 223, 224.

**a.** Conjunctions of Comparison (as *ut, quam, tamquam, quasi*) also commonly connect similar constructions:—

his igitur *quam* physicis potius crēdendum existimās (Div. ii. 37), *do you think these are more to be trusted than the natural philosophers?*

hominem callidiōrem vidī nēminem *quam* Phormiōnem (Ter. Ph. 591), *a shrewder man I never saw than Phormio* (cf. § 407).

ut nōn omne vinum sic nōn omnis nātūra vetustāte coacēscit (Cat. M. 65), *as every wine does not sour with age, so [does] not every nature.*

in mē *quasi* in tyrannum (Phil. xiv. 15), *against me as against a tyrant.*

**b.** Two or more coördinate words, phrases, or sentences are often put together without the use of conjunctions (*Asyndeton*, § 601. c):

omnēs dī, hominēs, *all gods and men.*

summī, mediī, infimī, *the highest, the middle class, and the lowest.*

iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nobīs reliquērunt (B. G. vii. 77), *they have left us our rights, our laws, our fields, our liberty.*

**c.** 1. Where there are more than two coördinate words etc., a conjunction, if used, is ordinarily used with all (or all except the first):—

aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniuriā potentiōrum (B. G. vi. 13), *by debt, excessive taxation, or oppression on the part of the powerful.*

at sunt mōrōsi et anxī et irācundi et difficilēs senēs (Cat. M. 65), *but (you say) old men are capricious, solicitous, choleric, and fussy.*

2. But words are often so divided into groups that the members of the groups omit the conjunction (or express it), while the groups themselves express the conjunction (or omit it):—

propudium illud et portentum, L. Antōnius Insigne odium omnium hominum (Phil. xiv. 8), *that wretch and monster, Lucius Antonius, the abomination of all men.*

utrumque ēgit graviter, auctōritāte et offēnsiōne animī nōn acerbā (Lael. 77), *he acted in both cases with dignity, without loss of authority and with no bitterness of feeling.*

3. The enclitic *-que* is sometimes used with the last member of a series, even when there is no grouping apparent:—

vōce voltū mōtūque (Brut. 110), *by voice, expression, and gesture.*

cūram cōsiliū vigilantiamque (Phil. vii. 20), *care, wisdom, and vigilance.*

quōrum auctōritātem dignitātem voluntātemque dēfēderās (Fam. i. 7. 2), *whose dignity, honor, and wishes you had defended.*

**d.** Two adjectives belonging to the same noun are regularly connected by a conjunction:—

multae et gravēs causae, *many weighty reasons.*

vir liber ac fortis (Rep. ii. 34), *a free and brave man.*

**e.** Often the same conjunction is repeated in two coördinate clauses:

et . . . et (-que . . . -que), *both . . . and*.

aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.

vel . . . vel, *either . . . or*. [Examples in § 324. e.]

sive (seu) . . . sive (seu), *whether . . . or*. [Examples in § 324. f.]

**f.** Many adverbs are similarly used in pairs, as conjunctions, partly or wholly losing their adverbial force:—

nunc . . . nunc, tum . . . tum, iam . . . iam, *now . . . now*.

modo . . . modo, *now . . . now*.

simul . . . simul, *at the same time . . . at the same time*.

quā . . . quā, *now . . . now, both . . . and, alike [this] and [that]*.

modo ait modo negat (Ter. Eun. 714), *now he says yes, now no*.

simul grātiās agit, simul grātulātur (Q. C. vi. 7. 15), *he thanks him and at the same time congratulates him*.

erumpunt saepe vitia amicōrum tum in ipsōs amicōs tum in aliēnōs (Lael. 76), *the faults of friends sometimes break out, now against their friends themselves, now against strangers*.

quā maris quā fēminās (Pl. Mil. 1113), *both males and females*.

**g.** Certain relative and demonstrative adverbs are used correlatively as conjunctions:—

ut (rel.) . . . ita, sic (dem.), *as (while) . . . so (yet)*.

tam (dem.) . . . quam (rel.), *so (as) . . . as*.

cum (rel.) . . . tum (dem.), *while . . . so also; not only . . . but also*.

**324.** The following Conjunctions require notice:—

**a.** Et, and, simply connects words or clauses; -que combines more closely into one connected whole. -que is always enclitic to the word connected or to the first or second of two or more words connected:

cum coniugibus et liberis, *with [their] wives and children*.

ferro ignique, *with fire and sword*. [Not as separate things, but as the combined means of devastation.]

aquā et igni interdictus, *forbidden the use of water and fire*. [In a legal formula, where they are considered separately.]

**b.** Atque (ac), and, adds with some emphasis or with some implied reflection on the word added. Hence it is often equivalent to *and so*, *and yet*, *and besides*, *and then*. But these distinctions depend very much upon the feeling of the speaker, and are often untranslatable:—

omnia honesta atque inhonesta, *everything honorable and dishonorable* (too, without the slightest distinction).

ūsus atque disciplina, *practice and theory beside* (the more important or less expected).

atque ego crēdō, *and yet I believe* (for my part).

**c. Atque (ac)**, in the sense of *as, than*, is also used after words of comparison and likeness:—

*simul atque, as soon as.*

*nōn secus (nōn aliter) ac sī, not otherwise than if.*

*prō eō ac debui, as was my duty (in accordance as I ought).*

*aequē ac tū, as much as you.*

*haud minus ac iussi faciunt, they do just as they are ordered.*

For *and not*, see § 328. *a.*

**d. Sed** and the more emphatic **vērūm** or **vērō**, *but*, are used to introduce something in opposition to what precedes, especially after negatives (*not this . . . but something else*). **At** (old form **ast**) introduces with emphasis a new point in an argument, but is also used like the others; sometimes it means *at least*. **At enim** is almost always used to introduce a supposed objection which is presently to be overthrown. **At** is more rarely used alone in this sense.

**Autem**, *however, now*, is the weakest of the adversatives, and often marks a mere transition and has hardly any adversative force perceptible. **Atquē**, *however, now*, sometimes introduces an objection and sometimes a fresh step in the reasoning. **Quod sī**, *but if, and if, now if*, is used to continue an argument.

**NOTE.**—**Et, -que, and atque (ac)** are sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest *but*, especially when a negative clause is followed by an affirmative clause continuing the same thought: *as, —impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerunt ac terga vertērunt (B. G. iv. 35), the enemy could not stand the onset, but turned their backs.*

**e. Aut, or**, excludes the alternative; **vel** (an old imperative of **volō**) and **-ve** give a choice between two alternatives. But this distinction is not always observed:—

*sed quis ego sum aut quae est in mē facultās (Lael. 17), but who am I or what special capacity have I?* [Here **vel** could not be used, because in fact a negative is implied and both alternatives are excluded.]

*aut bibat aut abeat (Tusc. v. 118), let him drink or (if he won't do that, then let him) quit.* [Here **vel** would mean, let him do either as he chooses.]

*vita tālis fuit vel fortunā vel gloriā (Lael. 12), his life was such either in respect to fortune or fame (whichever way you look at it).*

*sī propinquos habeant imbēcilliores vel animō vel fortunā (id. 70), if they have relatives beneath them either in spirit or in fortune (in either respect, for example, or in both).*

*aut deorum aut regum filii (id. 70), sons either of gods or of kings.* [Here one case would exclude the other.]

*implicati vel usū diuturnō vel etiam officiis (id. 85), entangled either by close intimacy or even by obligations.* [Here the second case might exclude the first.]

**f. Sive (seu)** is properly used in disjunctive conditions (*if either . . . or if*), but also with alternative words and clauses, especially with two names for the same thing: —

*sive* inridēns *sive* quod ita putāret (De Or. i. 91), *either laughingly or because he really thought so.*

*sive* deae *seu* sint volucrēs (Aen. iii. 262), *whether they (the Harpies) are goddesses or birds.*

**g. Vel, even, for instance,** is often used as an intensive particle with no alternative force: as, — **vel minimus**, *the very least.*

**h. Nam and namque, for,** usually introduce a real reason, formally expressed, for a previous statement; **enim** (always postpositive), a less important explanatory circumstance put in by the way; **etenim** (*for, you see; for, you know; for, mind you*) and its negative **neque enim** introduce something self-evident or needing no proof.

(*ea vita*) quae est sōla vīta nōminanda. **nam** dum sumus inclūsī in hīs compāgibus corporis, mūnere quōdam necessitātis et gravī opere perfungimur; **est enim** animus caelestis, etc. (Cat. M. 77), (*that life which alone deserves to be called life; for so long as we are confined by the body's frame, we perform a sort of necessary function and heavy task. For the soul is from heaven.*

*hārum trium sententiārum nūlli prōrsus adsentior. nec enim illa prima vērā est* (Lael. 57), *for of course that first one isn't true.*

**i. Ergō, therefore,** is used of things proved formally, but often has a weakened force. **Igitur, then, accordingly,** is weaker than **ergō** and is used in passing from one stage of an argument to another. **Itaque, therefore, accordingly, and so,** is used in proofs or inferences from the nature of things rather than in formal logical proof. All of these are often used merely to resume a train of thought broken by a digression or parenthesis. **Idcirco, for this reason, on this account,** is regularly followed (or preceded) by a correlative (as, **quia, quod, si, ut, nē**), and refers to the special point introduced by the correlative.

malum mihi videtur esse mors. **est miserum igitur**, quoniam malum. certē. **ergō** et ei quibus evēnit iam ut morerentur et ei quibus eventūrum est miseri. mihi ita videtur. nēmō **ergō** nōn miser. (Tusc. i. 9.) *Death seems to me to be an evil. 'It is wretched, then, since it is an evil.' Certainly. 'Therefore, all those who have already died and who are to die hereafter are wretched.' So it appears to me. 'There is no one, therefore, who is not wretched.'*

**quia** nātūra mūtārī nōn potest, **idcirco** vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt (Lael. 32), *because nature cannot be changed, for this reason true friendships are eternal.*

*j.* Autem, enim, and *vērō* are *postpositive*<sup>1</sup>; so generally *igitur* and often *tamen*.

*k.* Two conjunctions of similar meaning are often used together for the sake of emphasis or to bind a sentence more closely to what precedes: as, at *vērō*, *but in truth, but surely, still, however*; *itaque* *ergō*, *accordingly then*; *namque*, *for*; *et-enim*, *for, you see, for of course* (§ 324. *h*).

For Conjunctions introducing Subordinate Clauses, see Syntax.

### Negative Particles<sup>2</sup>

**325.** In the use of the Negative Particles, the following points are to be observed: —

**326.** Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative: —

*nēmō nōn* audiet, *every one will hear* (nobody will not hear). .

*nōn* possum *nōn* cōfiteri (Fam. ix. 14. 1), *I must confess*.

ut . . . *nē nōn* timēre quidem sine aliquō timōre possimus (Mil. 2), *so that we cannot even be relieved of fear without some fear*.

*a.* Many compounds or phrases of which *nōn* is the first part express an *indefinite* affirmative: —

*nōn* nullus, *some*; *nōn* nulli (= aliqui), *some few*.

*nōn* nihil (= aliquid), *something*.

*nōn* nēmō (= aliquot), *sundry persons*.

*nōn* numquam (= aliquotiēns), *sometimes*.

*b.* Two negatives of which the second is *nōn* (belonging to the predicate) express a *universal* affirmative: —

*nēmō nōn*, nullus *nōn*, *nobody* [does] *not*, i.e. *everybody* [does]. [Cf. *nōn* *nēmō*, *not nobody*, i.e. *somebody*.]

nihil *nōn*, *everything*. [Cf. *nōn* nihil, *something*.]

numquam *nōn*, *never not*, i.e. *always*. [Cf. *nōn* numquam, *sometimes*.]

*c.* A statement is often made emphatic by denying its contrary (*Litotes*, § 641): —

*nōn* semel (= saepissimē), *often enough* (not once only).

*nōn* haec sine nūmine divom eveniunt (Aen. ii. 777), *these things do not occur without the will of the gods*.

haec *nōn* nimis exquirō (Att. vii. 18. 3), *not very much*, i.e. *very little*.

NOTE. — Compare *nōn* nullus, *nōn* nēmō, etc., in *a* above.

<sup>1</sup> That is, they do not stand first in their clause.

<sup>2</sup> For a list of Negative Particles, see § 217. *e*.



### 327. A *general* negation is not destroyed —

1. By a following *nē* . . . *quidem*, *not even*, or *nōn modo*, *not only* : —  
*numquam tū nōn modo otium, sed nē bellum quidem nisi nefarium concupisti*  
*(Cat. i. 25), not only have you never desired repose, but you have never*  
*desired any war except one which was infamous.*

2. By succeeding negatives each introducing a separate subordinate member : —

*eaque nesciēbant nec ubi nec quālia essent* (Tusc. iii. 4), *they knew not where*  
*or of what kind these things were.*

3. By *neque* introducing a coördinate member : —

*nequēō satis mirārī neque conicere* (Ter. Eun. 547), *I cannot wonder enough*  
*nor conjecture.*

328. The negative is frequently joined with a conjunction or with an indefinite pronoun or adverb. Hence the forms of negation in Latin differ from those in English in many expressions : —

*nūllū (neutrī) crēdō* (not *nōn crēdō illū*), *I do not believe either* (I believe neither).

*sine illō periculō* (less commonly *cum nūllō*), *with no danger* (without any danger).

*nihil umquam audīvī iūcundius*, *I never heard anything more amusing.*

Cf. *negō haec esse vērā* (not *dicō nōn esse*), *I say this is not true* (I deny, etc.).

*α.* In the second of two connected ideas, *and not* is regularly expressed by *neque* (*nec*), not by *et nōn* : —

*hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt* (B. G. i. 53), *the enemy*  
*turned and fled, and did not stop fleeing until, etc.*

NOTE. — Similarly *nec quisquam* is regularly used for *et nēmō*; *neque illius* for *et nūllus*; *nec umquam* for *et numquam*; *nēve* (*neu*), for *et nē*.

329. The particle *immo*, *nay*, is used to contradict some part of a preceding statement or question, or its form; in the latter case, the same statement is often repeated in a stronger form, so that *immo* becomes nearly equivalent to *yes* (*nay but*, *nay rather*) : —

*causa igitur nōn bona est? immo optima* (Att. ix. 7. 4), *is the cause then not*  
*a good one? on the contrary, the best.*

*α.* *Minus*, *less* (especially with *sī*, *if*, *quō*, *in order that*), and *minimē*, *least*, often have a negative force : —

*sī minus possunt*, *if they cannot*. [For *quō minus*, see § 558. b.]

*audācissimus ego ex omnibus? minimē* (Rosc. Am. 2), *am I the boldest of*  
*them all? by no means* (not at all).

## QUESTIONS

## Forms of Interrogation

**330.** Questions are either Direct or Indirect.

1. A Direct Question gives the exact words of the speaker:—

quid est? *what is it?*

ubi sum? *where am I?*

2. An Indirect Question gives the substance of the question, adapted to the form of the sentence in which it is quoted. It depends on a verb or other expression of *asking, doubting, knowing*, or the like:—

rogāvit quid esset, *he asked what it was.* [Direct: quid est, *what is it?*]

nesciō ubi sim, *I know not where I am.* [Direct: ubi sum, *where am I?*]

**331.** Questions in Latin are introduced by special interrogative words, and are not distinguished by the order of words, as in English.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE.—The form of Indirect Questions (in English introduced by *whether*, or by an interrogative pronoun or adverb) is in Latin the same as that of Direct; the difference being only in the verb, which in indirect questions is regularly in the Subjunctive (§ 574).

**332.** A question of *simple fact*, requiring the answer *yes* or *no*, is formed by adding the enclitic *-ne* to the emphatic word:—

tūne id veritus es (Q. Fr. i. 3. 1), *did you fear that?*

hīcine vir usquam nisi in patriā moriētur (Mil. 104), *shall this man die anywhere but in his native land?*

is tibi mortemne vidētur aut dolōrem timēre (Tusc. v. 88), *does he seem to you to fear death or pain?*

*a.* The interrogative particle *-ne* is sometimes omitted:—

patēre tua cōsilia nōn sentis (Cat. i. 1), *do you not see that your schemes are manifest?* (you do not see, eh?)

NOTE.—In such cases, as no sign of interrogation appears, it is often doubtful whether the sentence is a question or an ironical statement.

*b.* When the enclitic *-ne* is added to a negative word, as in *nōnne*, an *affirmative* answer is expected. The particle *num* suggests a *negative* answer:—

nōnne animadvertis (N. D. iii. 89), *do you not observe?*

num dubium est (Rosc. Am. 107), *there is no doubt, is there?*

NOTE.—In Indirect Questions *num* commonly loses its peculiar force and means simply *whether*.

<sup>1</sup> For a list of Interrogative Particles, see § 217. d.

c. The particle *-ne* often when added to the verb, less commonly when added to some other word, has the force of *nōne*:—

*meministine mē in senātū dicere* (Cat. i. 7), *don't you remember my saying in the Senate?*

*rēctēne interpretor sententiam tuam* (Tusc. iii. 37), *do I not rightly interpret your meaning?*

NOTE 1.—This was evidently the original meaning of *-ne*; but in most cases the negative force was lost and *-ne* was used merely to express a question. So the English interrogative *no?* shades off into *eh?*

NOTE 2.—The enclitic *-ne* is sometimes added to other interrogative words: as, *utrumne, whether?* *anne, or;* *quantane* (Hor. S. ii. 3. 317), *how big?* *quōne malō* (id. ii. 3. 295), *by what curse?*

333. A question concerning *some special circumstance* is formed by prefixing to the sentence an interrogative pronoun or adverb as in English (§ 152):—

*quid exspectās* (Cat. ii. 18), *what are you looking forward to?*

*quō igitur haec spectant* (Fam. vi. 6. 11), *whither then is all this tending?*

*īcare, ubi es* (Ov. M. viii. 232), *Icarus, where are you?*

*quod vectigal vōbīs tūtum fuit? quem socium dēfendistis? cui praesidiō classibus vestris fuistis?* (Manil. 32), *what revenue has been safe for you? what ally have you defended? whom have you guarded with your fleets?*

NOTE.—A question of this form becomes an exclamation by changing the tone of the voice: as,—

*quālis vir erat!* *what a man he was!*

*quot calamitatēs passi sumus!* *how many misfortunes we have suffered!*

*quō studiō cōsentiunt* (Cat. iv. 15), *with what zeal they unite!*

α. The particles *-nam* (enclitic) and *tandem* may be added to interrogative pronouns and adverbs for the sake of emphasis:—

*quisnam est, pray who is it?* [*quis tandem est?* would be stronger.]

*ubinam gentium sumus* (Cat. i. 9), *where in the world are we?*

*in quā tandem urbe hōc disputant* (Mil. 7), *in what city, pray, do they maintain this?*

NOTE.—*Tandem* is sometimes added to verbs:—

*ain tandem* (Fam. ix. 21), *you don't say so! (say you so, pray?)*

*itane tandem uxōrem dūxit Antiphō* (Ter. Ph. 231), *so then, eh? Antipho's got married.*

### Double Questions

334. A Double or Alternative Question is an inquiry as to which of two or more supposed cases is the true one.

335. In Double or Alternative Questions, *utrum* or *-ne, whether*, stands in the first member; *an, anne, or, annōn, necne, or not*, in the second; and usually *an* in the third, if there be one:—

*utrum* nescis, an prō nihilō id putās (Fam. x. 26), *is it that you don't know, or do you think nothing of it?*

vōsne L. Domitium an vōs Domitius dēseruit (B. C. ii. 82), *did you desert Lucius Domitius, or did Domitius desert you?*

quaerō servōsne an liberōs (Rosc. Am. 74), *I ask whether slaves or free.*

*utrum* hostem an vōs an fortunam utriusque populi ignōrātis (Liv. xxi. 10), *is it the enemy, or yourselves, or the fortune of the two peoples, that you do not know?*

NOTE. — *Anne* for *an* is rare. *Necne* is rare in direct questions, but in indirect questions it is commoner than *annōn*. In poetry *-ne* . . . *-ne* sometimes occurs.

*a.* The interrogative particle is often omitted in the first member; in which case *an* or *-ne* (*anne*, *necne*) may stand in the second: —

Gabiniō dicam *anne* Pompēiō an utrique (Manil. 57), *shall I say to Gabinius, or to Pompey, or to both?*

sunt haec tua verba *necne* (Tusc. iii. 41), *are these your words or not?*

quaesivi ā Catilinā in conventū apud M. Laecam fuisset *necne* (Cat. ii. 13), *I asked Catiline whether he had been at the meeting at Marcus Laeca's or not.*

*b.* Sometimes the first member is omitted or implied, and *an* (*anne*) alone asks the question, — usually with indignation or surprise: —

an tū miserōs putās illōs (Tusc. i. 13), *what! do you think those men wretched?*

an iste unquam dē sē bonam spem habuisset, nisi dē vōbīs malam opiniōnem animō imbibisset (Verr. i. 42), *would he ever have had good hopes about himself unless he had conceived an evil opinion of you?*

*c.* Sometimes the second member is omitted or implied, and *utrum* may ask a question to which there is no alternative: —

*utrum* est in clārissimis civibus is, quem . . . (Flacc. 45), *is he among the noblest citizens, whom, etc.?*

*d.* The following table exhibits the various forms of alternative questions: —

<i>utrum</i>	. . .	<i>an</i>	. . .	<i>an</i>
<i>utrum</i>	. . .	<i>annōn</i>	( <i>necne</i> , see § 335. π.)	
—	. . .	<i>an</i>	( <i>anne</i> )	
<i>-ne</i>	. . .	<i>an</i>		
—	. . .	<i>-ne</i> , <i>necne</i>		
<i>-ne</i>	. . .	<i>necne</i>		
<i>-ne</i>	. . .	<i>-ne</i>		

NOTE. — From double (*alternative*) questions must be distinguished those which are in themselves single, but of which *some detail* is alternative. These have the common disjunctive particles *aut* or *vel* (*-ve*). Thus, — *quaerō num iniūstē aut impropē fēcerit* (Off. iii. 54), *I ask whether he acted unjustly or even dishonestly*. Here there is no double question. The only inquiry is whether the man did *either* of the two things supposed, not *which* of the two he did.

## Question and Answer

**336.** There is no one Latin word in common use meaning simply *yes* or *no*. In answering a question *affirmatively*, the verb or some other emphatic word is generally repeated; in answering *negatively*, the verb, etc., with *nōn* or a similar negative:—

valetne, *is he well?* valet, *yes* (he is well).

eratne tēcum, *was he with you?* nōn erat, *no* (he was not).

num quidnam novī? *there is nothing new, is there?* nihil sãnē, *oh! nothing.*

*a.* An intensive or negative particle, a phrase, or a clause is sometimes used to answer a direct question:—

1. For *YES*:—

vērō, *in truth, true, no doubt, yes.*

ita vērō, *certainly* (so in truth), etc.

etiam, *even so, yes, etc.*

sãnē quidem, *yes, no doubt, etc.*

ita, *so, true, etc.*

ita est, *it is so, true, etc.*

sãnē, *surely, no doubt, doubtless, etc.*

certē, *certainly, unquestionably, etc.*

factum, *true, it's a fact, you're right, etc.* (lit., it was done).

2. For *NO*:—

nōn, *not so.*

nūllō modō, *by no means.*

minimē, *not at all* (lit., in the smallest degree, cf. § 329. a).

minimē vērō, *no, not by any means; oh! no, etc.*

nōn quidem, *why, no; certainly not, etc.*

nōn hercle vērō, *why, gracious, no!* (certainly not, by Hercules!)

Examples are:—

quidnam? an laudātiōnēs? *ita, why, what? is it eulogies? just so.*

aut etiam aut nōn respondēre (Acad. ii. 104), *to answer* (categorically) *yes or no.*

estne ut fertur forma? sãnē (Ter. Eun. 361), *is she as handsome as they say she is?* (is her beauty as it is said?) *oh! yes.*

miser ergō Archelāus? certē si iniustus (Tusc. v. 35), *was Archelaus wretched then? certainly, if he was unjust.*

an haec contemnitis? minimē (De Or. ii. 295), *do you despise these things? not at all.*

volucribusne et feris? minimē vērō (Tusc. i. 104), *to the birds and beasts? why, of course not.*

ex tuī animī sentiētiā tū uxōrem habēs? nōn hercle, ex meī animī sentiētiā (De Or. ii. 260), *Lord! no, etc.*

**337.** In answering a double question, one member of the alternative, or some part of it, must be repeated:—

vidisti an dē auditō nūntiās?—egomet vidi (Plaut. Merc. 902), *did you see it or are you repeating something you have heard?*—*I saw it myself.*

## CONSTRUCTION OF CASES

**338.** The Cases of nouns express their relations to other words in the sentence. The most primitive way of expressing such relations was by mere juxtaposition of uninflected forms. From this arose in time composition, i.e. the growing together of stems, by means of which a complex expression arises with its parts mutually dependent. Thus such a complex as *armi-gero-* came to mean *arm-bearing*; *fidicen-*, *playing on the lyre*. Later, Cases were formed by means of suffixes expressing more definitely such relations, and Syntax began. But the primitive method of composition still continues to hold an important place even in the most highly developed languages.

Originally the Indo-European family of languages, to which Latin belongs, had at least seven case-forms, besides the Vocative. But in Latin the Locative and the Instrumental were lost<sup>1</sup> except in a few words (where they remained without being recognized as cases), and their functions were divided among the other cases.

The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative express the simplest and perhaps the earliest case-relations. The Nominative is the case of the Subject, and generally ends in *-s*. The Vocative, usually without a termination, or like the Nominative (§ 38. a), perhaps never had a suffix of its own.<sup>2</sup> The Accusative, most frequently formed by the suffix *-m*, originally connected the noun loosely with the verb-idea, not necessarily expressed by a verb proper, but as well by a noun or an adjective (see § 386).

The Genitive appears to have expressed a great variety of relations and to have had no single primitive meaning; and the same may be true of the Dative.

The other cases perhaps at first expressed relations of place or direction (*to*, *from*, *at*, *with*), though this is not clear in all instances. The earlier meanings, however, have become confused with each other, and in many instances the cases are no longer distinguishable in meaning or in form. Thus the Locative was for the most part lost from its confusion with the Dative and Ablative; and its function was often performed by the Ablative, which is freely used to express the *place where* (§ 421). To indicate the case-relations — especially those of place — more precisely, Prepositions (originally adverbs) gradually came into use. The case-endings, thus losing something of their significance, were less distinctly pronounced as time went on (see § 36, *phonetic decay*), and prepositions have finally superseded them in the modern languages derived from Latin. But in Latin a large and various body of relations was still expressed by case-forms. It is to be noticed that in their *literal* use cases tended to adopt the preposition, and in their *figurative* uses to retain the old construction. (See Ablative of Separation, §§ 402-404; Ablative of Place and Time, § 421 ff.)

The word *cāsus*, *case*, is a translation of the Greek *πτῶσις*, *a falling away* (from the erect position). The term *πτῶσις* was originally applied to the Oblique Cases (§ 35. g), to mark them as variations from the Nominative which was called *ὀρθή*, *erect* (*cāsus rēctus*). The later name *Nominative* (*cāsus nōminātivus*) is from *nōminō*, and means the *naming* case. The other case-names (except *Ablative*) are of Greek origin. The name *Genitive* (*cāsus genetivus*) is a translation of *γενική* [*πτῶσις*], from *γένος* (*class*), and refers to the *class* to which a thing belongs. *Dative* (*cāsus dativus*, from *dō*) is translated from *δοτική*, and means the case of *giving*. *Accusative* (*accūsātivus*, from *accūsō*) is a mistranslation of *αἰτιατική* (the case of *causing*), from *αἷρα*, *cause*, and meant to the Romans the case of *accusing*. The name *Vocative* (*vocātivus*, from *vocō*) is translated from *κλητική* (the case of *calling*). The name *Ablative* (*ablātivus*, from *ablātus*, *auferō*) means *taking from*. This case the Greek had lost.

<sup>1</sup> Some of the endings, however, which in Latin are assigned to the dative and ablative are doubtless of locative or instrumental origin (see p. 34, footnote).

<sup>2</sup> The *e*-vocative of the second declension is a form of the stem (§ 45. c).

## NOMINATIVE CASE

**339.** The Subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative: —

*Caesar Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat* (B. G. iv. 17), *Cæsar had determined to cross the Rhine.*

For the omission of a pronominal subject, see § 295. a.

**a.** The nominative may be used in exclamations: —

*ēn dextra fidēsque* (Aen. iv. 597), *lo, the faith and plighted word!*

*ecce tuæ litteræ dē Varrōne* (Att. xiii. 16), *lo and behold, your letters about Varro!*

NOTE. — But the accusative is more common (§ 397. d).

## VOCATIVE CASE

**340.** The Vocative is the case of direct address: —

*Tiberine pater, tē, sāncte, precor* (Liv. ii. 10), *O father Tiber, thee, holy one, I pray.*

*rēs omnis mihi tēcum erit, Hortēnsī* (Verr. i. 33), *my whole attention will be devoted to you, Hortensius.*

**a.** A noun in the nominative in apposition with the subject of the imperative mood is sometimes used instead of the vocative: —

*audi tū, populus Albānus* (Liv. i. 24), *hear, thou people of Alba.*

**b.** The vocative of an adjective is sometimes used in poetry instead of the nominative, where the verb is in the second person: —

*quō moritūre ruis* (Aen. x. 811), *whither art thou rushing to thy doom?*

*cēnsōrem trabeāte salūtās* (Pers. iii. 29), *robed you salute the censor.*

**c.** The vocative *macte* is used as a predicate in the phrase *macte estō* (virtūte), *success attend your (valor):* —

*iubērem tē macte virtūte esse* (Liv. ii. 12), *I should bid you go on and prosper in your valor.*

*macte novā virtūte puer* (Aen. ix. 641), *success attend your valor, boy!*

NOTE. — As the original quantity of the final *e* in *macte* is not determinable, it may be that the word was an adverb, as in *bene est* and the like.

## GENITIVE CASE

**341.** The Genitive is regularly used to express the relation of one noun to another. Hence it is sometimes called the *adjective* case, to distinguish it from the Dative and the Ablative, which may be called *adverbial* cases.

The uses of the Genitive may be classified as follows:—

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| I. Genitive with Nouns:       | { 1. Of Possession (§ 343).<br>{ 2. Of Material (§ 344).<br>{ 3. Of Quality (§ 345).<br>{ 4. Of the Whole, after words designating a Part (Partitive, § 346).<br>{ 5. With Nouns of Action and Feeling (§ 348). |
| II. Genitive with Adjectives: | { 1. After Relative Adjectives (or Verbals) (§ 349).<br>{ 2. Of Specification (later use) (§ 349. d).   |
| III. Genitive with Verbs:     | { 1. Of Memory, Feeling, etc. (§§ 350, 351, 354).<br>{ 2. Of Accusing, etc. (Charge or Penalty) (§ 352).  |

### GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

**342.** A noun used to limit or define another, and *not* meaning the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive.

This relation is most frequently expressed in English by the preposition *of*, sometimes by the English genitive (or possessive) case:—

*libri Cicerōnis*, the books of Cicero, or Cicero's books.

*inimici Caesaris*, Cæsar's enemies, or the enemies of Cæsar.

*talentum auri*, a talent of gold.

*vir summae virtutis*, a man of the greatest courage.

But observe the following equivalents:—

*vacātiō labōris*, a respite FROM toil.

*petitiō cōsulātus*, candidacy FOR the consulship.

*rēgnū civitatīs*, royal power OVER the state.

### Possessive Genitive

**343.** The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs:—

*Alexandri canis*, Alexander's dog.

*potentiā Pompēi* (Sall. Cat. 19), Pompey's power.

*Ariovisti mors* (B. G. v. 29), the death of Ariovistus.

*perditōrum temeritās* (Mil. 22), the recklessness of desperate men.

**NOTE 1.**—The Possessive Genitive may denote (1) the actual owner (as in *Alexander's dog*) or author (as in *Cicero's writings*), or (2) the person or thing that possesses some feeling or quality or does some act (as in *Cicero's eloquence*, *the strength of the bridge*, *Catiline's evil deeds*). In the latter use it is sometimes called the Subjective Genitive; but this term properly includes the possessive genitive and several other genitive constructions (nearly all, in fact, except the Objective Genitive, § 347).

**NOTE 2.**—The noun limited is understood in a few expressions:—

*ad Castoris [aediēs]* (Quinct. 17), at the [temple] of Castor. [Cf. *St. Paul's*.]

*Flaccus Claudii*, Flaccus [slave] of Claudius.

*Hectoris Andromachē* (Aen. iii. 319), Hector's [wife] Andromache.



**a.** For the genitive of possession a possessive or derivative adjective is often used, — regularly for the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns (§ 302. *a*): —

liber meus, *my book*. [Not liber mei.]  
 aliēna pericula, *other men's dangers*. [But also aliōrum.]  
 Sullāna tempora, *the times of Sulla*. [Often Sullae.]

**b.** The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb (*Predicate Genitive*): —

haec domus est patris mei, *this house is my father's*.  
 iam mē Pompēi tōtum esse scīs (Fam. ii. 13), *you know I am now all for Pompey* (all Pompey's).  
 summa laus et tua et Brūti est (Fam. xii. 4. 2), *the highest praise is due both to you and to Brutus* (is both yours and Brutus's).  
 compendī facere, *to save* (make of saving).  
 lucri facere, *to get the benefit of* (make of profit).

NOTE. — These genitives bear the same relation to the examples in § 343 that a predicate noun bears to an appositive (§§ 282, 283).

**c.** An infinitive or a clause, when used as a noun, is often limited by a genitive in the predicate: —

neque sui iūdicī [erat] discernere (B. C. i. 35), *nor was it for his judgment to decide* (nor did it belong to his judgment).  
 cūiusvis hominis est errāre (Phil. xii. 5), *it is any man's [liability] to err*.  
 negāvit mōris esse Graecōrum, ut in conviviō virōrum accumberent mulierēs (Verr. ii. 1. 66), *he said it was not the custom of the Greeks for women to appear as guests* (recline) *at the banquets of men*.  
 sed timidī est optāre necem (Ov. M. iv. 115), *but 't is the coward's part to wish for death*.  
 stulti erat spērāre, suādēre impudentis (Phil. ii. 23), *it was folly* (the part of a fool) *to hope, effrontery to urge*.  
 sapientis est pauca loqui, *it is wise* (the part of a wise man) *to say little*.  
 [Not sapiēs (neuter) est, etc.]

NOTE 1. — This construction is regular with adjectives of the third declension instead of the neuter nominative (see the last two examples).

NOTE 2. — A derivative or possessive adjective may be used for the genitive in this construction, and must be used for the genitive of a personal pronoun: —

mentīrī nōn est meum [not mei], *it is not for me to lie*.  
 hūmānum [for hominis] est errāre, *it is man's nature to err* (to err is human).

**d.** A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition (*Appositional Genitive*) (§ 282): —

nōmen insāniae (for nōmen insānia), *the word madness*.  
 oppidum Antiochiaē (for oppidum Antiochia, the regular form), *the city of Antioch*.

## Genitive of Material

**344.** The Genitive may denote the Substance or Material of which a thing consists (cf. § 403):—

talentum auri, *a talent of gold.*

flūmina lactis, *rivers of milk.*

## Genitive of Quality

**345.** The Genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective:—

vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the highest courage.* [But not *vir virtūtis.*]

māgnae est dēliberātiōnis, *it is an affair of great deliberation.*

māgni formīca labōris (Hor. S. i. 1. 33), *the ant [a creature] of great toil.*

ille autem sui iūdicī (Nep. Att. 9), *but he [a man] of independent (his own) judgment.*

NOTE.—Compare Ablative of Quality (§ 415). In expressions of quality, the genitive or the ablative may often be used indifferently: as, praestanti prūdentiā vir, *a man of surpassing wisdom*; maximī animī homō, *a man of the greatest courage*. In classic prose, however, the genitive of quality is much less common than the ablative; it is practically confined to expressions of measure or number, to a phrase with eius, and to nouns modified by māgnus, maximus, summus, or tantus. In general the Genitive is used rather of *essential*, the Ablative of *special* or *incidental* characteristics.

*a.* The genitive of quality is found in the adjective phrases eius modi, cūius modi (equivalent to tālis, *such*; quālis, *of what sort*):—

eius modi sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae, utī (B. G. iii. 29), *such storms followed, that, etc.*

*b.* The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of *length, depth, etc.* (*Genitive of Measure*):—

fossa trium pedum, *a trench of three feet [in depth].*

mūrus sēdecim pedum, *a wall of sixteen feet [high].*

For the Genitive of Quality used to express *indefinite value*, see § 417.

## Partitive Genitive

**346.** Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs.

*a.* Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are—

1. Nouns or Pronouns (cf. also 3 below):—

pars militum, *part of the soldiers.* quis nostrum, *which of us?*

nihil erat reliquū, *there was nothing left.*

nēmō eōrum (B. G. vii. 66), *not a man of them.*

māgnam partem eōrum interfecērunt (id. ii. 23), *they killed a large part of them.*

2. Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like *alius*, *alter*, *nūllus*, etc.:—

*unus tribūnōrum*, *one of the tribunes* (see c below).

*sapientum octāvus* (Hor. S. ii. 3. 296), *the eighth of the wise men*.

*mīlia passuum sescenta* (B. G. iv. 3), *six hundred miles* (thousands of paces).

*māior frātrum*, *the elder of the brothers*.

*animālium fortiōra*, *the stronger [of] animals*.

*Suebōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium* (B. G. iv. 1), *the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans*.

*alter cōsul*, *one of the [two] consuls*.

*nūlla eārum* (B. G. iv. 28), *not one of them* (the ships).

3. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, used as nouns:—

*tantum spatī*, *so much [of] space*.

*aliquid nummōrum*, *a few pence* (something of coins).

*id locī* (or *locōrum*), *that spot of ground*; *id temporis*, *at that time* (§ 397. a).

*plāna urbis*, *the level parts of the town*.

*quid novī*, *what news?* (what of new?)

*paulum frūmenti* (B. C. i. 78), *a little grain*.

*plūs dolōris* (B. G. i. 20), *more grief*.

*suū aliquid timōris* (B. C. ii. 29), *some fear of his own* (something of his own fear).

NOTE 1.—In classic prose neuter adjectives (not pronominal) seldom take a partitive genitive, except *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, and similar words.

NOTE 2.—The genitive of adjectives of the *third declension* is rarely used partitively:—*nihil novī* (genitive), *nothing new*; but, — *nihil memorābile* (nominative), *nothing worth mention* (not *nihil memorābilis*).

4. Adverbs, especially those of Quantity and of Place:—

*parum ōtī*, *not much ease* (too little of ease).

*satis pecūniae*, *money enough* (enough of money).

*plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitatū valet* (B. G. v. 3), *is strongest of all Gaul in cavalry*.

*ubinam gentium sumus* (Cat. i. 9), *where in the world are we* (where of nations)?

*ubique terrarū et gentium* (Verr. v. 143), *wherever in the whole world*.

*rēs erat eō iam locī ut* (Sest. 68), *the business had now reached such a point that*, etc.

*eō miseriarū* (Iug. 14. 3), *to that [pitch] of misery*.

*inde locī*, *next in order* (thence of place). [Poetical.]

b. The poets and later writers often use the partitive genitive after adjectives, instead of a noun in its proper case:—

*sequimur tē, sācte deōrum* (Aen. iv. 576), *we follow thee, O holy deity*. [For *sācte deus* (§ 49. g. n.)]

*nigrae lānārum* (Plin. H. N. viii. 193), *black wools*. [For *nigrae lānae*.]

*expediti militum* (Liv. xxx. 9), *light-armed soldiers*. [For *expediti militēs*.]

*hominum cūctōs* (Ov. M. iv. 631), *all men*. [For *cūctōs hominēs*; cf. e.]

**c.** Cardinal numerals (except *mīlia*) regularly take the Ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the Partitive Genitive. So also *quidam*, *a certain one*, commonly, and other words occasionally : —

*ūnus ex tribūnis*, *one of the tribunes*. [But also, *ūnus tribūnōrum* (cf. a. 2).]

*minimus ex illis* (Iug. 11), *the youngest of them*.

*medius ex tribus* (ib.), *the middle one of the three*.

*quidam ex militibus*, *certain of the soldiers*.

*ūnus dē multis* (Fin. ii. 66), *one of the many*.

*pauci dē nostris cadunt* (B. G. i. 15), *a few of our men fall*.

*hominem dē comitibus meis*, *a man of my companions*.

**d.** *Uterque*, *both* (properly *each*), and *quisque*, *each*, with Nouns are regularly used as adjectives in agreement, but with Pronouns take a partitive genitive : —

*uterque cōsul*, *both the consuls*; but, *uterque nostrum*, *both of us*.

*ūnus quisque vestrum*, *each one of you*.

*utraq̃ue castra*, *both camps*.

**e.** Numbers and words of quantity including the *whole* of any thing take a case in agreement, and not the partitive genitive. So also words denoting a part when *only that part* is thought of : —

*nōs omnēs*, *all of us* (we all). [Not *omnēs nostrum*.]

*quot sunt hostēs*, *how many of the enemy are there?*

*cavē inimicōs, qui multi sunt*, *beware of your enemies, who are many*.

*multi militēs*, *many of the soldiers*.

*nēmō Rōmānus*, *not one Roman*.

### Objective Genitive

**347.** The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

**348.** Nouns of *action*, *agency*, and *feeling* govern the Genitive of the Object : —

*cāritās tui*, *affection for you*.

*vacātiō mūneris*, *relief from duty*.

*fuga malōrum*, *refuge from disaster*.

*contentiō honōrum*, *struggle for office*.

*dēsiderium ōti*, *longing for rest*.

*grātia benefici*, *gratitude for kindness*.

*precātiō deōrum*, *prayer to the gods*.

*opiniō virtūtis*, *reputation for valor*.

**NOTE.** — This usage is an extension of the idea of *belonging to* (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase *odium Caesaris*, *hate of Caesar*, the hate in a passive sense *belongs to Caesar*, as *odium*, though in its active sense he is the *object* of it, as *hate* (cf. a). The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase *amor patris*, *love of a father*, may mean *love felt by a father*, *a father's love* (subjective genitive), or *love towards a father* (objective genitive).

**a.** The objective genitive is sometimes replaced by a possessive pronoun or other derivative adjective:—

*mea invidia*, *my unpopularity* (the dislike of which I am the object). [Cf. *odium mei* (Har. Resp. 5), *hatred of me*.]

*laudātor meus* (Att. i. 16. 5), *my eulogist* (one who praises me). [Cf. *nostri laudātor* (id. i. 14. 6).]

*Clōdianum crimen* (Mil. 72), *the murder of Clodius* (the Clodian charge). [As we say, *the Nathan murder*.]

*metus hostilis* (Iug. 41), *fear of the enemy* (hostile fear).

*ea quae faciēbat, tuā sē fiduciā facere dicēbat* (Verr. v. 176), *what he was doing, he said he did relying on you* (with your reliance).

*neque neglegentiā tuā, neque id odiō fecit tuō* (Ter. Ph. 1016), *he did this neither from neglect nor from hatred of you*.

**b.** Rarely the objective genitive is used with a noun already limited by another genitive:—

*animi multarum rerum percursiō* (Tusc. iv. 31), *the mind's traversing of many things*.

**c.** A noun with a preposition is often used instead of the objective genitive:—

*odium in Antōnium* (Fam. x. 5. 3), *hate of Antony*.

*merita ergā mē* (id. i. 1. 1), *services to me*.

*meam in tē pietātem* (id. i. 9. 1), *my devotion to you*.

*impetus in urbem* (Phil. xii. 29), *an attack on the city*.

*excessus ē vitā* (Fin. iii. 60), *departure from life*. [Also, *excessus vitae*, Tusc. i. 27.]

*adoptiō in Domitium* (Tac. Ann. xii. 25), *the adoption of Domitius*. [A late and bold extension of this construction.]

NOTE.—So also in late writers the dative of reference (cf. § 366. b): *as, — longō bellō māteria* (Tac. H. i. 89), *resources for a long war*.

### GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

**349.** Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the Objective Genitive.

**a.** Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt*, and their opposites govern the genitive:—

*avidī laudis* (Manil. 7), *greedy of praise*.

*fastidiōsus litterarum*, *disdaining letters*.

*iūris peritus*, *skilled in law*. [So also the ablative, *iūre*, cf. § 418.]

*memorem vestri, oblitum sui* (Cat. iv. 19), *mindful of you, forgetful of himself*.

*rationis et orationis expertēs* (Off. i. 50), *devoid of sense and speech*.

*nostrae consuetudinis imperiti* (B.G. iv. 22), *unacquainted with our customs*.

plēnus fidei, *full of good faith.*

omnis spei egēnam (Tac. Ann. i. 53), *destitute of all hope.*

tempestātum potentem (Aen. i. 80), *having sway over the storms.*

impotēns irae (Liv. xxix. 9. 9), *ungovernable in anger.*

conspiratiōnis participēs (Cat. iii. 14), *sharing in the conspiracy.*

affinis rei capitālis (Verr. ii. 2. 94), *involved in a capital crime.*

insons culpae (Liv. xxii. 49), *innocent of guilt.*

**b.** Participles in -ns govern the genitive when they are used as adjectives, i.e. when they denote a *constant disposition* and not a *particular act*: —

si quem tuī amantiōrem cōgnōvistī (Q. Fr. i. 1. 15), *if you have become acquainted with any one more fond of you.*

multitūdō insolēns belli (B. C. ii. 36), *a crowd unused to war.*

erat Iugurtha appetēns glōriæ militāris (Iug. 7), *Jugurtha was eager for military glory.*

NOTE 1. — Participles in -ns, when used as participles, take the case regularly governed by the verb to which they belong: as, — Sp. Maellum rēgnū appetentem interēmit (Cat. M. 56), *he put to death Spurius Maelius, who was aspiring to royal power.*

NOTE 2. — Occasionally participial forms in -ns are treated as participles (see note 1) even when they express a *disposition* or *character*: as, — virtūs quam alii ipsam temperantiam dicunt esse, alii obtemperantem temperantiae praeceptis et eam subsequentem (Tusc. iv. 30), *observant of the teachings of temperance and obedient to her.*

**c.** Verbals in -āx (§ 251) govern the genitive in poetry and later Latin: —

iūstum et tenācem prōpositi virum (Hor. Od. iii. 3), *a man just and steadfast to his purpose.*

circus capāx populī (Ov. A. A. i. 136), *a circus big enough to hold the people.*

cibi vinique capācissimus (Liv. ix. 16. 13), *a very great eater and drinker* (very able to contain food and wine).

**d.** The poets and later writers use the genitive with almost any adjective, to denote that *with reference to which* the quality exists (*Genitive of Specification*): —

callidus rei militāris (Tac. H. ii. 32), *skilled in soldiery.*

pauper aquae (Hor. Od. iii. 30. 11), *scant of water.*

nōtus animi paterni (id. ii. 2. 6), *famed for a paternal spirit.*

fessi rerum (Aen. i. 178), *weary of toil.*

integer vitae scelerisque purus (Hor. Od. i. 22. 1), *upright in life, and unstained by guilt.*

NOTE. — The Genitive of Specification is only an extension of the construction with adjectives requiring an object of reference (§ 349). Thus callidus denotes *knowledge*; pauper, *want*; purus, *innocence*; and so these words in a manner belong to the classes under **a**.

For the Ablative of Specification, the prose construction, see § 418. For Adjectives of *likeness* etc. with the Genitive, apparently Objective, see § 385. **c**. For Adjectives with animi (locative in origin), see § 358.

## GENITIVE WITH VERBS

## Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting

**350.** Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object:—

**a.** *Memini* takes the Accusative when it has the literal sense of *retaining in the mind* what one has seen, heard, or learned. Hence the accusative is used of *persons* whom one remembers as acquaintances, or of *things* which one has experienced.

So *obliscor* in the opposite sense, — to *forget* literally, to *lose all memory of a thing* (very rarely, of a person).

*Cinnam memini* (Phil. v. 17), *I remember Cinna*.

*utinam avum tuum meminissēs* (id. i. 34), *oh! that you could remember your grandfather!* (but he died before you were born).

*Postumium, cūius statuam in Isthmō meminisse tē dicis* (Att. xiii. 32), *Postumius, whose statue you say you remember* (to have seen) *on the Isthmus*.  
*omnia meminit Siron Epicūri dogmata* (Acad. ii. 106), *Siron remembers all the doctrines of Epicurus*.

*multa ab aliis audita meminērunt* (De Or. ii. 355), *they remember many things that they have heard from others*.

*tōtam causam oblitus est* (Brut. 217), *he forgot the whole case*.

*hinc iam obliscere Grāiōs* (Aen. ii. 148), *from henceforth forget the Greeks* (i.e. not merely *disregard* them, but *banish them from your mind*, as if you had never known them).

**b.** *Memini* takes the Genitive when it means to *be mindful* or *regardful of* a person or thing, to *think of* somebody or something (often with special interest or warmth of feeling).

So *obliscor* in the opposite sense, — to *disregard*, or *dismiss from the mind*, — and the adjective *oblitus*, *careless* or *regardless*.

*ipse sui meminerat* (Verr. ii. 136), *he was mindful of himself* (of his own interests).

*faciam ut hūius loci diēque mēique semper memineris* (Ter. Eun. 801), *I will make you remember this place and this day and me as long as you live*.

*nec mē meminisse pigēbit Elissae, dum memor ipse mēi* (Aen. iv. 335), *nor shall I feel regret at the thought of Elissa, so long as I remember myself*.

*meminerint verēcundiae* (Off. i. 122), *let them cherish modesty*.

*hūmānae infirmitātis memini* (Liv. xxx. 31. 6), *I remember human weakness*.  
*obliscit temporum mēōrum, meminisse actiōnum* (Fam. i. 9. 8), *to disregard my own interests, to be mindful of the matters at issue*.

*nec tamen Epicūri licet obliscī* (Fin. v. 3), *and yet I must not forget Epicurus*.  
*obliscere caedis atque incendiōrum* (Cat. i. 6), *turn your mind from slaughter and conflagrations* (dismiss them from your thoughts).

NOTE 1. — With both *memini* and *obliscor* the personal and reflexive pronouns are regularly in the Genitive; neuter pronouns and adjectives used substantively are regularly in the Accusative; abstract nouns are often in the Genitive. These uses come in each instance from the natural meaning of the verbs (as defined above).

NOTE 2. — *Memini* in the sense of *mention* takes the Genitive: as, — *eundem Achillem citius supra meminimus* (B. C. iii. 108), *that same Achilles whom I mentioned above*.

c. *Reminiscor* is rare. It takes the Accusative in the literal sense of *call to mind, recollect*; the Genitive in the more figurative sense of *be mindful of*: —

*dulcis moriens reminiscitur Argos* (Aen. x. 782), *as he dies he calls to mind his beloved Argos*.

*reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum* (B. G. i. 13), *let him remember both the former discomfiture of the Roman people and the ancient valor of the Helvetians*. [A warning, — *let him bear it in mind* (and beware)!]

d. *Recordor, recollect, recall*, regularly takes the Accusative: —

*recordare consensum illum theatri* (Phil. i. 30), *recall that unanimous agreement of the [audience in the] theatre*.

*recordamini omnis civilis dissensionis* (Cat. iii. 24), *call to mind all the civil wars*.

NOTE. — *Recordor* takes the genitive once (Pison. 12); it is never used with a personal object, but may be followed by *dē* with the ablative of the person or thing (cf. § 351. N.): —

*dē tē recordor* (Scaur. 49), *I remember about you*.

*dē illis* (lacrimis) *recordor* (Planc. 104), *I am reminded of those tears*.

### Verbs of Reminding

351. Verbs of *reminding* take with the Accusative of the person a Genitive of the thing; except in the case of a neuter pronoun, which is put in the accusative (cf. § 390. c).

So *admoneō, commoneō, commonefaciō, commonefiō*. But *moneō* with the genitive is found in late writers only.

*Catilina admonēbat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suae* (Sall. Cat. 21), *Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his cupidity*.

*eōs hōc moneō* (Cat. ii. 20), *I give them this warning*.

*quod vōs lēx commonet* (Verr. iii. 40), *that which the law reminds you of*.

NOTE. — All these verbs often take *dē* with the ablative, and the accusative of nouns as well as of pronouns is sometimes used with them: —

*saepius tē admoneō dē sygraphā Sittianā* (Fam. viii. 4. 5) *I remind you again and again of Sittius's bond*.

*officium vestrum ut vōs malō cōgātis commoneŕier* (Plant. Ps. 150), *that you may by misfortune force yourselves to be reminded of your duty*.



## Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting

**352.** Verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting*, take the Genitive of the Charge or Penalty:—

*arguit mē furti, he accuses me of theft.*

*peculātūs damnātus (pecūniæ publicæ damnātus) (Flacc. 43), condemned for embezzlement.*

*videō nōn tē absolūtum esse improbitātis, sed illōs damnātōs esse caedis (Verr. ii. 1. 72), I see, not that you were acquitted of outrage, but that they were condemned for homicide.*

**a.** Peculiar genitives, under this construction, are—

*capitis, as in damnare capitis, to sentence to death.*

*māiestātis [laesae], treason (crime against the dignity of the state).*

*repetundārum [rērum], extortion (lit. of an action for reclaiming money).*

*vōti damnātus (or reus), bound [to the payment] of one's vow, i.e. successful in one's effort.*

*pecūniæ (damnare, iudicare, see note).*

*dupli etc., as in dupli condemnare, condemn to pay twofold.*

**NOTE.**—The origin of these genitive constructions is pointed at by *pecūniæ damnare* (Gell. xx. 1. 38), *to condemn to pay money*, in a case of injury to the person; *quantæ pecūniæ iudicāti essent* (id. xx. 1. 47), *how much money they were adjudged to pay*, in a mere suit for debt; *cōfessī aeris ac dēbiti iudicāti* (id. xx. 1. 42), *adjudged to owe an admitted sum due*. These expressions show that the genitive of the penalty comes from the use of the genitive of value to express a *sum of money due* either as a debt or as a fine. Since in early civilizations all offences could be compounded by the payment of fines, the genitive came to be used of other punishments, not pecuniary. From this to the genitive of the actual crime is an easy transition, inasmuch as there is always a confusion between crime and penalty (cf. Eng. *guilty of death*). It is quite unnecessary to assume an ellipsis of *crimine* or *iudiciō*.

**353.** Other constructions for the Charge or Penalty are—

1. The Ablative of Price: regularly of a *definite amount* of fine, and often of indefinite penalties (cf. § 416):—

*Frusinātēs tertiā parte agrī damnāti (Liv. x. 1), the people of Frusino condemned [to forfeit] a third part of their land.*

2. The Ablative with *dē*, or the Accusative with *inter*, in idiomatic expressions:—

*dē aleā, for gambling; dē ambitū, for bribery.*

*dē pecūnīs repetundīs, of extortion (cf. § 352. a).*

*inter sicāriōs (Rosc. Am. 90), as an assassin (among the assassins).*

*dē vi et māiestātis damnāti (Phil. i. 21), convicted of assault and treason.*

**NOTE.**—The accusative with *ad* and *in* occurs in later writers to express the *penalty*: as,—*ad mortem* (Tac. Ann. xvi. 21), *to death*; *ad (in) metallā, to the mines*.

## Verbs of Feeling

**354.** Many verbs of *feeling* take the Genitive of the object which excites the feeling.

- a.* Verbs of *pity*, as *miserer* and *miserescō*, take the genitive:—  
*miseremini familiae, iudicēs, miseremini patriae, miseremini filii* (Flacc. 106),  
*have pity on the family, etc.*  
*miserere animi nōn digna ferentis* (Aen. ii. 144), *pity a soul that endures*  
*unworthy things.*  
*miserescite regis* (id. viii. 573), *pity the king.* [Poetical.]

NOTE.—But *miseror, commiseror, bewail*, take the accusative: *as, — commūnem*  
*condiciōnem miserāri* (Mur. 55), *bewail the common lot.*

*b.* As impersonals, *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet* (or *pertaesum est*), take the genitive of the *cause of the feeling* and the accusative of the *person affected*:—

*quōs infāmiae suae neque pudet neque taedet* (Verr. i. 35), *who are neither*  
*ashamed nor weary of their dishonor.*

*mē miseret parietum ipsōrum* (Phil. ii. 69), *I pity the very walls.*

*mē civitātis mōrum piget taedetque* (Iug. 4), *I am sick and tired of the ways*  
*of the state.*

*decemvirōrum vōs pertaesum est* (Liv. iii. 67), *you became tired of the decemvirs.*

*c.* With *miseret, paenitet, etc.*, the *cause of the feeling* may be expressed by an infinitive or a clause:—

*neque mē paenitet mortālīs inimicitias habere* (Rab. Post. 32), *nor am I sorry*  
*to have deadly enmities.*

*nōn dedisse istunc pudet; mē quia nōn accēpi piget* (Pl. Pseud. 282), *he is*  
*ashamed not to have given; I am sorry because I have not received.*

NOTE.—*Miseret* etc. are sometimes used personally with a neuter pronoun as subject: *as, — nōn tē haec pudet* (Ter. Ad. 754), *do not these things shame you?*

## Interest and Rēfert

**355.** The impersonals *interest* and *rēfert* take the Genitive of the person (rarely of the thing) affected.

The subject of the verb is a neuter pronoun or a substantive clause:—

*Clōdī intererat Milōnem perire* (cf. Mil. 56), *it was the interest of Clodius that*  
*Milo should die.*

*aliquid quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur* (Iug. 111), *something*  
*which seemed to be more for their interest than his own.*

*videō enim quid meā intersit, quid utriusque nostrum* (Fam. vii. 23. 4), *for I*  
*see what is for my good and for the good of us both.*

**a.** Instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun the corresponding possessive is used in the ablative singular feminine after *interest* or *rēfert*:—

quid tuā id rēfert? māgnī (Ter. Ph. 723), *how does that concern you? much.*  
[See also the last two examples above.]

vehementer intererat vestrā qui patrēs estis (Plin. Ep. iv. 13. 4), *it would be very much to your advantage, you who are fathers.*

NOTE.—This is the only construction with *rēfert* in classic prose, except in one passage in Sallust (see example above).

**b.** The accusative with *ad* is used with *interest* and *rēfert* to express the thing with reference to which one is interested:—

māgnī ad honōrem nostrum interest (Fam. xvi. 1), *it is of great consequence to our honor.*

rēfert etiam ad fructū (Varr. R. R. i. 16. 6), *it makes a difference as to the crop.*

NOTE 1.—Very rarely the *person* is expressed by *ad* and the accusative, or (with *rēfert*) by the dative (probably a popular corruption):—

quid id ad mē aut ad meam rem rēfert (Pl. Pers. 513), *what difference does that make to me or to my interests?*

quid rēferat intrā nātūrae finis viventī (Hor. S. i. 1. 49), *what difference does it make to me who live within the limits of natural desire?*

nōn rēferre dēdecorī (Tac. Ann. xv. 65), *that it makes no difference as to the disgrace.*

NOTE 2.—The degree of interest is expressed by a genitive of value, an adverb, or an adverbial accusative.

### Verbs of Plenty and Want

**356.** Verbs of Plenty and Want sometimes govern the genitive (cf. § 409. *a. N.*):—

convivium vicinōrum compleō (Cat. M. 46, in the mouth of Cato), *I fill up the banquet with my neighbors.*

implentur veteris Bacchī pinguisque ferinae (Aen. i. 215), *they fill themselves with old wine and fat venison.*

nē quis auxili egeat (B. G. vi. 11), *lest any require aid.*

quid est quod dēfēnsiōnis indigeat (Ros. Am. 34), *what is there that needs defence?*

quae ad cōsōlandum māiōris ingeni et ad ferendum singulāris virtūtis indigent (Fam. vi. 4. 2), [sorrows] *which for their comforting need more ability, and for endurance unusual courage.*

NOTE.—Verbs of plenty and want more commonly take the ablative (see §§ 409. *a.*, 401), except *egeō*, which takes either case, and *indigeō*. But the genitive is by a Greek idiom often used in poetry instead of the ablative with all words denoting *separation* and *want* (cf. § 357. *b. 3*):—

abstinētō irarum (Hor. Od. iii. 27. 69), *refrain from wrath.*

operum solūtis (id. iii. 17. 16), *free from toils.*

dēsine mollium querellarum (id. ii. 9. 17), *have done with weak complaints.*

## Genitive with Special Verbs

**357.** The Genitive is used with certain special verbs.

*a.* The genitive sometimes follows *potior*, *get possession of*; as always in the phrase *potiri rerum*, *to be master of affairs* :—

*illius regni potiri* (Fam. i. 7. 5), *to become master of that kingdom.*

*Cleanthēs sōlem dominārī et rerum potiri putat* (Acad. ii. 126), *Cleantes thinks the sun holds sway and is lord of the universe.*

NOTE.—But *potior* usually takes the ablative (see § 410).

*b.* Some other verbs rarely take the genitive—

1. By analogy with those mentioned in § 354 :—

*neque hūius sis veritus fēminae primāriae* (Ter. Ph. 971), *and you had no respect for this high-born lady.*

2. As akin to adjectives which take the genitive :—

*fastidit mei* (Plaut. Aul. 245), *he disdains me.* [Cf. *fastidiōsus*.]

*studet tui* (quoted N. D. iii. 72), *he is zealous for you.* [Cf. *studiōsus*.]

3. In imitation of the Greek :—

*iūstitiaene prius mirer, belline labōrum* (Aen. xi. 126), *shall I rather admire his justice or his toils in war?*

*neque ille sēpositi ciceris nec longae invidit avēnae* (Hor. S. ii. 6. 84), *nor did he grudge his garnered peas, etc.* [But cf. *invidus*, *parcus*.]

*labōrum dēcipitur* (Hor. Od. ii. 13. 38), *he is beguiled of his woes.*

*mē labōrum levās* (Pl. Rud. 247), *you relieve me of my troubles.*

**358.** The apparent Genitive *animi* (really Locative) is used with a few verbs and adjectives of *feeling* and the like :—

*Antiphō mē excruciat animi* (Ter. Ph. 187), *Antipho tortures my mind* (me in my mind).

*qui pendet animi* (Tusc. iv. 35), *who is in suspense.*

*mē animi fallit* (Lucr. i. 922), *my mind deceives me.*

So, by analogy, *dēsipiēbam mentis* (Pl. Epid. 138), *I was out of my head.*

*aeger animi*, *sick at heart*; *cōnfusus animi*, *disturbed in spirit.*

*sānus mentis aut animi* (Pl. Trin. 454), *sound in mind or heart.*

## PECULIAR GENITIVES

**359.** Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following :—

*a.* A poetical genitive occurs rarely in exclamations, in imitation of the Greek (*Genitive of Exclamation*) :—

*dī immortālēs, mercimōnī lepidi* (Pl. Most. 912), *good heavens! what a charming bargain!*

*foederis heu taciti* (Prop. iv. 7. 21), *alas for the unspoken agreement!*

**b.** The genitive is often used with the ablatives *causā, grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of;* and the indeclinable *instar, like;* also with *pridīē, the day before; postridīē, the day after; tenus, as far as:*

*honoris causā, with due respect (for the sake of honor).*

*verbi grātiā, for example.*

*ēius lēgis ergō, on account of this law.*

*equus instar montis (Aen. ii. 15), a horse huge as a mountain (the image of a mountain).*

*laterum tenus (id. x. 210), as far as the sides.*

NOTE 1. — Of these the genitive with *causā* is a development from the possessive genitive and resembles that in *nōmen insāniae* (§ 343. d). The others are of various origin.

NOTE 2. — In prose of the Republican Period *pridīē* and *postridīē* are thus used only in the expressions *pridīē (postridīē) ēius diēi, the day before (after) that* (cf. "the eve, the morrow of that day"). Tacitus uses the construction with other words: *as, — postridīē insidiārum, the day after the plot.* For the accusative, see § 432. *a.* *Tenus* takes also the ablative (p. 136).

## DATIVE CASE

**360.** The Dative is probably, like the Genitive, a grammatical case, that is, it is a form appropriated to the expression of a variety of relations other than that of the direct object. But it is held by some to be a Locative with the primary meaning of *to or towards*, and the poetic uses (like it *clāmor caelō*, Aen. v. 451) are regarded as survivals of the original use.

In Latin the Dative has two classes of meanings: —

1. The Dative denotes an object not as *caused* by the action, or *directly affected* by it (like the Accusative), but as reciprocally *sharing* in the action or *receiving it consciously* or actively. Thus in *dedit puerō librum, he gave the boy a book, or fecit mihi iniūriam, he did me a wrong*, there is an idea of *the boy's receiving the book*, and of *my feeling the wrong*. Hence expressions denoting *persons*, or *things with personal attributes*, are more likely to be in the dative than those denoting mere *things*. So in Spanish the dative is used whenever a *person* is the object of an action; *yo veo al hombre, I see [to] the man*. This difference between the Accusative and the Dative (i.e. between the Direct and the Indirect Object) depends upon the point of view implied in the verb or existing in the mind of the writer. Hence Latin verbs of similar meaning (to an English mind) often differ in the case of their object (see § 367. a).

2. The Dative is used to express the *purpose* of an action or that for which it *serves* (see § 382). This construction is especially used with abstract expressions, or those implying an action.

These two classes of Datives approach each other in some cases and are occasionally confounded, as in §§ 383, 384.

The uses of the Dative are the following: —

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Indirect Object (general use): | { 1. With Transitives (§ 362).<br>{ 2. With Intransitives (§§ 366–372).<br>{ 1. Of Possession (with <i>esse</i> ) (§ 373).<br>{ 2. Of Agency (with Gerundive) (§ 374).<br>2. Special or Idiomatic Uses:         { 3. Of Reference ( <i>dativus commodi</i> ) (§§ 376–381).<br>{ 4. Of Purpose or End (predicate use) (§ 382).<br>{ 5. Of Fitness etc. (with Adjectives) (§§ 383, 384). |
|-----------------------------------|--|

## INDIRECT OBJECT

**361.** The Dative is used to denote the object *indirectly affected* by an action.

This is called the Indirect Object (§ 274). It is usually denoted in English by the objective with *to* :—

*cēdite tēpori*, *yield to the occasion.*

*prōvincia Cicerōni obtigit*, *the province fell by lot to Cicero.*

*inimicis nōn crēdimus*, *we do not trust [to] our enemies.*

## INDIRECT OBJECT WITH TRANSITIVES

**362.** The Dative of the Indirect Object with the Accusative of the Direct may be used with any transitive verb whose meaning allows (see § 274) :—

*dō tibi librum*, *I give you a book.*

*illud tibi affirmō* (Fam. i. 7. 5), *this I assure you.*

*commendō tibi ēius omnia negōtia* (id. i. 3), *I put all his affairs in your hands* (commit them to you).

*dabis profectō misericordiae quod irācundiae negāvistī* (Deiot. 40), *you will surely grant to mercy what you refused to wrath.*

*litterās ā tē mihi stator tuus reddidit* (Fam. ii. 17), *your messenger delivered to me a letter from you.*

**a.** Many verbs have both a transitive and an intransitive use, and take either the Accusative with the Dative, or the Dative alone :—

*mihi id aurum crēdidit* (cf. Plaut. Aul. 15), *he trusted that gold to me.*

*equō nē crēdite* (Aen. ii. 48), *put not your trust in the horse.*

*concessit senātus postulātiōnī tuae* (Mur. 47), *the senate yielded to your demand.*

*concēdere amicis quidquid velint* (Lael. 38), *to grant to friends all they may wish.*

**363.** Certain verbs implying motion vary in their construction between the Dative of the Indirect Object and the Accusative of the End of Motion (§§ 426, 427) :—

1. Some verbs implying motion take the Accusative (usually with *ad* or *in*) instead of the Indirect Object, when the idea of *motion* prevails :—

*litterās quās ad Pompēium scripsi* (Att. iii. 8. 4), *the letter which I have written [and sent] to Pompey.* [Cf. *nōn quō habērem quod tibi scriberem* (id. iv. 4A), *not that I had anything to write to you.*]

*litterae extemplō Rōmam scriptae* (Liv. xli. 16), *a letter was immediately written* [and sent] *to Rome*.

*hostis in fugam dat* (B. G. v. 51), *he puts the enemy to flight*. [Cf. *ut mē dem fugae* (Att. vii. 28), *to take to flight*.]

*omnēs rem ad Pompēium deferri volunt* (Fam. i. 1), *all wish the matter to be put in the hands of Pompey* (referred to Pompey).

2. On the other hand, many verbs of motion usually followed by the Accusative with *ad* or *in*, take the Dative when the idea of *motion* is merged in some other idea:—

*mihi litterās mittere* (Fam. vii. 12), *to send me a letter*.

*eum librum tibi mīsi* (id. vii. 19), *I sent you that book*.

*nec quicquam quod nōn mihi Cæsar dētulerit* (id. iv. 13), *and nothing which Cæsar did not communicate to me*.

*cūrēs ut mihi vehantur* (id. viii. 4. 5), *take care that they be conveyed to me*.

*cum alius alii subsidium ferrent* (B. G. ii. 26), *while one lent aid to another*.

**364.** Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing<sup>1</sup>:—

*dōnat corōnās suis*, *he presents wreaths to his men*; or,

*dōnat suōs corōnis*, *he presents his men with wreaths*.

*vincula exuere sibi* (Ov. M. vii. 772), *to shake off the leash* (from himself).

*omnis armīs exiit* (B. G. v. 51), *he stripped them all of their arms*.

NOTE 1.—*Interdicō*, *forbid*, takes either (1) the Dative of the person and the Ablative of the thing, or (2) in later writers, the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing:—

*aquā et ignī alicui interdicerē*, *to forbid one the use of fire and water*. [The regular formula for banishment.]

*interdixit histriōnibus scaenam* (Suet. Dom. 7), *he forbade the actors* [to appear on] *the stage* (he prohibited the stage to the actors).

*fēminis* (dat.) *purpuræ ūsū interdīcēmus* (Liv. xxxiv. 7), *shall we forbid women the wearing of purple?*

NOTE 2.—The Dative with the Accusative is used in poetry with many verbs of preventing, protecting, and the like, which usually take the Accusative and Ablative. *Interclūdō* and *prohibeō* sometimes take the Dative and Accusative, even in prose:—

*hīc omnis aditūs ad Sullam interclūdere* (Ros. Am. 110), *to shut these men off from all access to Sulla* (close to them every approach). [Cf. *utī commēta Cæsarem interclūderet* (B. G. i. 48), *to shut Cæsar off from supplies*.]

*hunc* (oestrum) *arcēbis pecorī* (Georg. iii. 154), *you shall keep this away from the flock*. [Cf. *illum arcuit Galliā* (Phil. v. 37), *he excluded him from Gaul*.]

*sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite* (Ecl. vii. 47), *keep the summer heat from the flock*. [Cf. *utī sē ā contumēliis inimicōrum dēfenderet* (B. C. i. 22), *to defend himself from the slanders of his enemies*.]

<sup>1</sup> Such are *dōnō*, *impertiō*, *indūō*, *exuō*, *adspargō*, *inspargō*, *circumdō*, and in poetry *accingō*, *implicō*, and similar verbs.

**365.** Verbs which in the active voice take the Accusative and Dative retain the Dative when used in the passive: —

nūtiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī (B. C. ii. 37), *these same things were announced to Curio*. [Active: nūtiābant (quidam) haec eadem Cūriōnī.]  
 nec docendī Caesaris propinquis eius spatium datur, nec tribūnis plēbis sui periculī dēprecandī facultās tribuitur (id. i. 5), *no time is given Caesar's relatives to inform him, and no opportunity is granted to the tribunes of the plebs to avert danger from themselves*.  
 prōvinciae privātae dēcernuntur (id. i. 6), *provinces are voted to private citizens*.

### INDIRECT OBJECT WITH INTRANSITIVES

**366.** The Dative of the Indirect Object may be used with any Intransitive verb whose meaning allows: —

cēdant arma togae (Phil. ii. 20), *let arms give place to the gown*.  
 Caesarī respondet, *he replies to Caesar*.

Caesarī respondētur, *a reply is given to Caesar* (Caesar is replied to). [Cf. § 372.]  
 respondi maximis criminibus (Phil. ii. 36), *I have answered the heaviest charges*.  
 ut ita cuique eveniat (id. ii. 119), *that it may so turn out to each*.

NOTE 1. — Intransitive verbs have no Direct Object. The Indirect Object, therefore, in these cases stands alone as in the second example (but cf. § 362. a).

NOTE 2. — Cēdō, *yield*, sometimes takes the Ablative of the thing along with the Dative of the person: as, — cēdere alicui possēssione hortōrum (cf. Mil. 75), *to give up to one the possession of a garden*.

**a.** Many phrases consisting of a noun with the copula *sum* or a copulative verb are equivalent to an intransitive verb and take a kind of indirect object (cf. § 367. a. n.<sup>2</sup>):—

auctor esse alicui, *to advise or instigate one* (cf. persuādēō).  
 quis huic rei testis est (Quinct. 37), *who testifies (is witness) to this fact?*  
 is finis populatiōnibus fuit (Liv. ii. 30. 9), *this put an end to the raids*.

**b.** The dative is sometimes used without a copulative verb in a sense approaching that of the genitive (cf. §§ 367. d, 377):—

légātus frātri (Mur. 32), *a lieutenant to his brother* (i.e. a man assigned to his brother).  
 ministri sceleribus (Tac. Ann. vi. 36), *agents of crime*. [Cf. sēditionis ministri (id. i. 17), *agents of sedition*.]  
 miseris suis remedium mortem exspectāre (Sall. Cat. 40), *to look for death as a cure for their miseries*. [Cf. sōlus meārum miseriarūmst remedium (Ter. Ad. 294).]

NOTE. — The cases in *a* and *b* differ from the constructions of § 367. a. n.<sup>2</sup> and § 377 in that the dative is more closely connected in idea with some single word to which it serves as an indirect object.



## Indirect Object with Special Verbs

**367.** Many verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare*,<sup>1</sup> take the Dative:—

cūr mihi invidēs, *why do you envy me?*

mihi parcit atque ignōscit, *he spares and pardons me.*

ignōsce patriō dolōri (Liv. iii. 48), *excuse a father's grief.*

subveni patriae, opitulāre conlégae (Fam. x. 10. 2), *come to the aid of your country, help your colleague.*

mihi nōn displicet (Clu. 144), *it does not displease me.*

nōn omnibus serviō (Att. xiii. 49), *I am not a servant to every man.*

nōn parcam operae (Fam. xiii. 27), *I will spare no pains.*

sic mihi persuāsi (Cat. M. 78), *so I have persuaded myself.*

mihi Fabius debēbit ignōscere si minus eius fāmae parcere vidēbor quam antea

cōnsului (Tull. 3), *Fabius will have to pardon me if I seem to spare his reputation less than I have heretofore regarded it.*

huic legiōni Caesar cōfidēbat maximē (B. G. i. 40. 15), *in this legion Caesar trusted most.*

In these verbs the Latin retains an original intransitive meaning. Thus: *invidēre*, to *envy*, is literally to *look askance at*; *servire* is to *be a slave to*; *suādēre* is to *make a thing pleasant* (sweet) to.

**a.** Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative.

Such are *iuvō*, *adiuvō*, *help*; *laedō*, *injure*; *iubeō*, *order*; *dēficiō*, *fail*; *dēlectō*, *please*:—

hic pulvis oculum meum laedit, *this dust hurts my eye.* [Cf. multa oculis nocent, *many things are injurious to the eyes.*]

**NOTE 1.**—*Fidō* and *cōfidō* take also the Ablative (§ 431): as, — multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant (B. G. iii. 9), *they had great confidence in the strength of their position.*

**NOTE 2.**—Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are—*praestō esse*, *be on hand* (cf. *adesse*); *mōrem gerere*, *humor* (cf. *mōnigerāri*); *grātum facere*, *do a favor* (cf. *grātificāri*); *dictō audiēns esse*, *be obedient* (cf. *obedire*); *cui fidem habēbat* (E. G. i. 19), *in whom he had confidence* (cf. *cōfidēbat*).

So also many phrases where no corresponding verb exists. Such are—*bene* (male, *pulchrē*, *aegrē*, etc.) *esse*, *be well* (*ill*, etc.) *off*; *iniūriam facere*, *do injustice to*; *diem dicere*, *bring to trial* (name a day for, etc.); *agere grātiās*, *express one's thanks*; *habēre grātiām*, *feel thankful*; *referre grātiām*, *repay a favor*; *opus esse*, *be necessary*; *damnum dare*, *inflict an injury*; *acceptum* (*expēnsū*) *ferre* (*esse*), *credit* (*charge*); *honōrem habēre*, *to pay honor to*.

<sup>1</sup> These include, among others, the following: *adversor*, *cōdō*, *crēdō*, *faveō*, *fidō*, *ignōscō*, *imperō*, *indulgeō*, *invidēō*, *irāscor*, *minitor*, *nocēō*, *parcō*, *pāreō*, *placeō*, *resistō*, *serviō*, *studeō*, *suādēō* (*persuādēō*), *suscēnsēō*, *temperō* (*obtemperō*).

**b.** Some verbs are used *transitively* with the Accusative or *intransitively* with the Dative without perceptible difference of meaning.

Such are *adūlor*, *aemulor*, *dēspērō*, *praestōlor*, *medeor* : —

*adūlātus est Antōniō* (Nep. Att. 8), *he flattered Antony.*

*adūlārī Nerōnem* (Tac. Ann. xvi. 19), *to flatter Nero.*

*pācem nōn dēspērās* (Att. viii. 15. 3), *you do not despair of peace.*

*salūtī dēspērāre vetuit* (Clu. 68), *he forbade him to despair of safety.*

**c.** Some verbs are used *transitively* with the Accusative or *intransitively* with the Dative with a difference of meaning : — <sup>1</sup>

*partī civium cōsulant* (Off. i. 85), *they consult for a part of the citizens.*

*cum tē cōsuluissem* (Fam. xi. 29), *when I had consulted you.*

*metuēns pueris* (Plaut. Am. 1113), *anxious for the children.*

*nec metuunt deōs* (Ter. Hec. 772), *they fear not even the gods.* [So also *timeō.*]

*prōspicite patriae* (Cat. iv. 3), *have regard for the state.*

*prōspicere sēdem senectūtī* (Liv. iv. 49. 14), *to provide a habitation for old age.*

[So also *prōvideō.*]

**d.** A few verbal nouns (as *insidiae*, *ambush*; *obtemperātiō*, *obedience*) rarely take the dative like the corresponding verbs : —

*insidiae cōsulī* (Sall. Cat. 32), *the plot against the consul* (cf. *insidiōr*).

*obtemperātiō lēgibus* (Legg. i. 42), *obedience to the laws* (cf. *obtemperō*).

*sibi ipsī respōsiō* (De Or. iii. 207), *an answer to himself* (cf. *respondeō*).

NOTE. — In these cases the dative depends immediately upon the verbal force of the noun and not on any complex idea (cf. § 366. a, b).

### 368. The Dative is used —

1. With the impersonals *libet* (*lubet*), *it pleases*, and *licet*, *it is allowed* : —

*quod mihi maximē lubet* (Fam. i. 8. 3), *what most pleases me.*

*quasi tibi nōn liceret* (id. vi. 8), *as if you were not permitted.*

2. With verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male* : —

*mihi ipse numquam satisfaciō* (Fam. i. 1), *I never satisfy myself.*

*optimō virō maledicere* (Deiot. 28), *to speak ill of a most excellent man.*

*pulchrum est benefacere rei publicae* (Sall. Cat. 3), *it is a glorious thing to benefit the state.*

NOTE. — These are not real compounds, but phrases, and were apparently felt as such by the Romans. Thus, — *satis officiō meō*, *satis illōrum voluntātī qui ā mē hōc petivērunt factum esse arbitrābor* (Verr. v. 130), *I shall consider that enough has been done for my duty, enough for the wishes of those who asked this of me.*

<sup>1</sup> See the Lexicon under *caveō*, *conveniō*, *cupiō*, *insistō*, *maneō*, *praevertō*, *recipiō*, *renūtiō*, *solvō*, *succedō*.

3. With *grātificor*, *grātulor*, *nūbō*, *permittō*, *plaudō*, *probō*, *studeō*, *supplicō*, *excellō* :—

*Pompēiō sē grātificārī putant* (Fam. i. 1), *they suppose they are doing Pompey a service.*

*grātulor tibi, mi Balbe* (id. vi. 12), *I congratulate you, my dear Balbus.*

*tibi permittō respondere* (N. D. iii. 4), *I give you leave to answer.*

*mihi plaudō ipse domi* (Hor. S. i. 1. 66), *I applaud myself at home.*

*cum inimicī M. Fontēi vōbis ac populō Rōmānō minentur, amicī ac propinquī supplicent vōbis* (Font. 35), *while the enemies of Marcus Fontēius are threatening you and the Roman people too, while his friends and relatives are beseeching you.*

NOTE.—*Misceō* and *iungō* sometimes take the dative (see § 413. a. π.). *Haerēō* usually takes the ablative, with or without in, rarely the dative: *as, — haerentem capiti corōnam* (Hor. S. i. 10. 49), *a wreath clinging to the head.*

a. The dative is often used by the poets in constructions which would in prose require a noun with a preposition. So especially with verbs of *contending* (§ 413. b) :—

*contendis Homērō* (Prop. i. 7. 3), *you vie with Homer.* [In prose: *cum Homērō.*] *placitōne etiam pūgnābis amōrī* (Aen. iv. 38), *will you struggle even against a love that pleases you?*

*tibi certat* (Ecl. v. 8), *vies with you.* [tēcum.]

*differt sērmōnī* (Hor. S. i. 4. 48), *differs from prose.* [ā sērmōne, § 401.]

*laterī abdidit ēnsem* (Aen. ii. 553), *buried the sword in his side.* [in latere, § 430.]

For the Dative instead of *ad* with the Accusative, see § 428. λ.

369. Some verbs ordinarily intransitive may have an Accusative of the direct object along with the Dative of the indirect (cf. § 362. a) :—

*cui cum rēx crucem minārētur* (Tusc. i. 102), *and when the king threatened him with the cross.*

*Crētēnsibus obsidēs imperāvit* (Manil. 35), *he exacted hostages of the Cretans.* *omnia sibi Ignōscere* (Vell. ii. 30), *to pardon one's self everything.*

*Ascaniōne pater Rōmānās invidet arcēs* (Aen. iv. 234), *does the father envy Ascanius his Roman citadels?* [With *invidet* this construction is poetic or late.]

a. With the passive voice this dative may be retained :—

*qui iam nunc sanguinem meum sibi indulgēri aequum cēset* (Liv. xl. 15. 16), *who even now thinks it right that my blood should be granted to him as a favor.*

*singulis cēnsōribus dēnārii trecentī imperātī sunt* (Verr. ii. 137), *three hundred denarii were exacted of each censor.*

*Scaevolae concessa est fācundiae virtūs* (Quint. xii. 3. 9), *to Scaevola has been granted excellence in oratory.*

## Indirect Object with Compounds

**370.** Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and some with *circum*, admit the Dative of the indirect object:—

*neque enim adsentior eis* (Lael. 13), *for I do not agree with them.*

*quantum nātūra hominis pecudibus antecēdit* (Off. i. 105), *so far as man's nature is superior to brutes.*

*sī sibi ipse cōsentit* (id. i. 5), *if he is in accord with himself.*

*virtūtēs semper voluptātibus inhaerent* (Fin. i. 68), *virtues are always connected with pleasures.*

*omnibus negōtiis nōn interfuit solum sed praefuit* (id. i. 6), *he not only had a hand in all matters, but took the lead in them.*

*tempestati obsequi artis est* (Fam. i. 9. 21), *it is a point of skill to yield to the weather.*

*nec umquam succumbet inimicis* (Deiot. 36), *and he will never yield to his foes.*

*cum et Brūtus cuilibet ducum praefendus vidērētur et Vatinius nulli nōn esset postferendus* (Vell. ii. 69), *since Brutus seemed worthy of being put before any of the generals and Vatinius deserved to be put after all of them.*

*a.* In these cases the dative depends not on the preposition, but on the compound verb in its acquired meaning. Hence, if the acquired meaning is not suited to an indirect object, the original construction of the simple verb remains.

Thus in *convocat suos*, *he calls his men together*, the idea of *calling* is not so modified as to make an indirect object appropriate. So *hominem interficere*, *to make way with a man* (kill him). But in *praeficere imperatorem bellō*, *to put a man as commander-in-chief in charge of a war*, the idea resulting from the composition is suited to an indirect object (see also *b*, §§ 371, 388. *b*).

NOTE 1.—Some of these verbs, being originally transitive, take also a direct object: as,—*nē offerāmus nos periculis* (Off. i. 83), *that we may not expose ourselves to perils.*

NOTE 2.—The construction of § 370 is not different in its nature from that of §§ 362, 366, and 367; but the compound verbs make a convenient group.

*b.* Some compounds of *ad*, *ante*, *ob*, with a few others, have acquired a transitive meaning, and take the accusative (cf. § 388. *b*):—<sup>1</sup>

*nos oppūgnat* (Fam. i. 1), *he opposes us.*

*quis audeat bene comitatū aggređi* (Phil. xii. 25), *who would dare encounter a man well attended?*

*manus obire* (Lael. 7), *to attend to a duty.*

<sup>1</sup> Such verbs are *aggredior*, *adeō*, *antecēdō*, *anteō*, *antegredior*, *conveniō*, *ineō*, *obeō*, *offendō*, *oppūgnō*, *praescēdō*, *subeō*.

c. The adjective *obvius* and the adverb *obviam* with a verb take the dative:—

*sī ille obvius eī futūrus nōn erat* (Mil. 47), *if he was not intending to get in his way.*

*mihī obviam vēnistī* (Fam. ii. 16. 3), *you came to meet me.*

371. When *place* or *motion* is distinctly thought of, the verbs mentioned in § 370 regularly take a noun with a preposition:

*inhaeret in visceribus* (Tusc. iv. 24), *it remains fixed in the vitals.*

*homine confunctō mēcum* (Tull. 4), *a man united to me.*

*cum hōc concurrat ipse Eumenēs* (Nep. Eum. 4. 1), *with him Eumenes himself engages in combat* (runs together).

*Inserite oculōs in cūriam* (Font. 43), *fix your eyes on the senate-house.*

*Ignis qui est ob ōs offūsus* (Tim. 14), *the fire which is diffused before the sight.*

*obicitur contrā istōrum impetū Macedonia* (Font. 44), *Macedonia is set to withstand their attacks.* [Cf. *sī quis vōbīs error obiectus* (Caec. 5), *if any mistake has been caused you.*]

*in segetem flamma incidit* (Aen. ii. 304), *the fire falls upon the standing corn.*

NOTE.—But the usage varies in different authors, in different words, and often in the same word and the same sense. The Lexicon must be consulted for each verb.

372. Intransitive verbs that govern the dative are used *impersonally* in the passive (§ 208. d). The dative is retained (cf. § 365):

*cui parci potuit* (Liv. xxi. 14), *who could be spared?*

*nōn modo nōn invidētur illi aetāti verum etiam favetur* (Off. ii. 45), *that age (youth) not only is not envied, but is even favored.*

*temporī serviendum est* (Fam. ix. 7), *we must serve the exigency of the occasion.*

NOTE.—In poetry the personal construction is sometimes found: as,—*cūr invidetur* (Hor. A. P. 56), *why am I envied?*

### Dative of Possession

373. The Dative is used with *esse* and similar words to denote Possession:—

*est mihī domī pater* (Ecl. iii. 33), *I have a father at home* (there is to me).

*homīni cum deō similitūdō est* (Legg. i. 25), *man has a likeness to God.*

*quibus opēs nullae sunt* (Sall. Cat. 37), *[those] who have no wealth.*

NOTE.—The Genitive or a Possessive with *esse* emphasizes the *possessor*; the Dative, the fact of *possession*: as,—*liber est meus*, *the book is MINE* (and no one's else); *est mihī liber*, *I HAVE a book* (among other things).

α. With *nōmen est*, and similar expressions, the *name* is often put in the Dative by a kind of apposition with the *person*; but the Nominative is also common:—

(1) cui *Āfricānō* fuit cōgnōmen (Liv. xxv. 2), *whose (to whom) surname was Africanus.*

puerō ab inopiā *Egeriō* inditum nōmen (id. i. 34), *the name Egerius was given the boy from his poverty.*

(2) puerō nōmen est *Mārcus*, *the boy's name is Marcus* (to the boy is, etc.).  
cui nōmen *Arethūsa* (Verr. iv. 118), [a fount] *called Arethusa.*

NOTE. — In early Latin the dative is usual; Cicero prefers the nominative, Livy the dative; Sallust uses the dative only. In later Latin the genitive also occurs (cf. § 343. d):  
as, — Q. Metellō *Macedonici* nōmen inditum est (Vell. i. 11), *to Quintus Metellus the name of Macedonicus was given.*

**b.** *Dēsum* takes the dative; so occasionally *absum* (which regularly has the ablative): —

*hōc ūnum Cæsari dēfuit* (B.G. iv. 26), *this only was lacking to Cæsar.*  
*quid huic abesse poterit* (De Or. i. 48), *what can be wanting to him?*

### Dative of the Agent

**374.** The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests: —

*haec vōbīs prōvincia est dēfendenda* (Manil. 14), *this province is for you to defend* (to be defended by you).

*mihi est pūgnandum*, *I have to fight* (i.e. the need of fighting is to me: cf. *mihi est liber*, *I have a book*, § 373. n.).

**α.** This is the regular way of expressing the *agent* with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§ 196).

NOTE 1. — The Ablative of the Agent with *ab* (§ 405) is sometimes used with the Second Periphrastic Conjugation when the Dative would be ambiguous or when a stronger expression is desired: —

*quibus est ā vōbīs cōsulendum* (Manil. 6), *for whom you must consult.* [Here two datives, *quibus* and *vōbīs*, would have been ambiguous.]

*rem ab omnibus vōbīs prōvidendam* (Rabir. 4), *that the matter must be attended to by all of you.* [The dative might mean *for all of you*.]

NOTE 2. — The Dative of the Agent is either a special use of the Dative of Possession or a development of the Dative of Reference (§ 376).

**375.** The Dative of the Agent is common with *perfect participles* (especially when used in an adjective sense), but rare with other parts of the verb: —

*mihi dēliberātum et cōstitutum est* (Leg. Agr. i. 25), *I have deliberated and resolved* (it has been deliberated by me).

*mihi rēs prōvisa est* (Verr. iv. 91), *the matter has been provided for by me.*  
*sic dissimillimis bēstiolis cōmūniter cibus quaeritur* (N. D. ii. 123), *so by very different creatures food is sought in common.*

**a.** The Dative of the Agent is used by the poets and later writers with almost any passive verb:—

neque cernitur ulli (Aen. i. 440), *nor is seen by any.*

fēlix est dicta sororī (Ov. Fast. iii. 1. 597), *she was called happy by her sister.*

Aelia Paetina Narcissō fovēbātur (Tac. Ann. xii. 1), *Ælia Pætina was favored by Narcissus.*

**b.** The dative of the person who *sees* or *thinks* is regularly used after *videor*, *seem*:—

vidētur mihi, *it seems (or seems good) to me.*

dīs aliter visum [est] (Aen. ii. 428), *it seemed otherwise to the gods.*

videor mihi perspicere ipsius animum (Fam. iv. 13. 5), *I seem (to myself) to see the soul of the man himself.*

NOTE.—The verb *probāre*, *approve* (originally a mercantile word), takes a Dative of Reference (§ 376), which has become so firmly attached that it is often retained with the passive, seemingly as Dative of Agent:—

haec sententia et illi et nobis probābātur (Fam. i. 7. 5), *this view met both his approval and mine* (was made acceptable both to him and to me).

hōc cōsiliū plērisque nōn probābātur (B. C. i. 72), *this plan was not approved by the majority.* [But also, cōsiliū ā cūnctis probābātur (id. i. 74).]

### Dative of Reference

**376.** The Dative often depends, not on any *particular word*, but on the *general meaning* of the sentence (*Dative of Reference*).

The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage,<sup>1</sup> as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed.

tibi arās (Plaut. Merc. 71), *you plough for yourself.*

tuās rēs tibi habētō (Plaut. Trin. 286), *keep your goods to yourself* (formula of divorce).

laudāvit mihi frātreū, *he praised my brother* (out of regard for me; *laudāvit frātreū meū* would imply no such motive).

meritōs mactāvit honōrēs, taurum Neptūnō, taurum tibi, pulcher Apollō (Aen. iii. 118), *he offered the sacrifices due, a bull to Neptune, a bull to thee, beautiful Apollo.*

NOTE.—In this construction the meaning of the sentence is complete without the dative, which is not, as in the preceding constructions, closely connected with any single word. Thus the Dative of Reference is easily distinguishable in most instances even when the sentence consists of only two words, as in the first example.

**377.** The Dative of Reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word:

<sup>1</sup> *Dativus commodi aut incommodi.*

iter Poenis vel corporibus suis obstruere (Cat. M. 75), *to block the march of the Carthaginians even with their own bodies* (to block, etc., for the disadvantage of, etc.).

sē in cōspectum nautis dedit (Verr. v. 86), *he put himself in sight of the sailors* (he put himself to the sailors into sight).

versatur mihi ante oculos (id. v. 123), *it comes before my eyes* (it comes to me before the eyes).

**378.** The Dative is used of the person from whose *point of view* an opinion is stated or a situation or a direction is defined.

This is often called the Dative of the Person Judging,<sup>1</sup> but is merely a weakened variety of the Dative of Reference. It is used —

1. Of the mental point of view (*in my opinion, according to me, etc.*): —

Platō mihi ūnus Instar est centum milium (Brut. 191), *in my opinion* (to me) *Plato alone is worth a hundred thousand.*

erit ille mihi semper deus (Ecl. i. 7), *he will always be a god to me* (in my regard).

quae est ista servitūs tam clārō hominī (Par. 41), *what is that slavery according to the view of this distinguished man?*

2. Of the local point of view (*as you go in etc.*). In this use the person is commonly denoted indefinitely by a participle in the dative plural: —

oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpirō (B. C. iii. 80), *the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus* (to those coming, etc.).

laevā parte sinum intranti (Liv. xxvi. 26), *on the left as you sail up the gulf* (to one entering).

est urbe ēgressis tumulus (Aen. ii. 713), *there is, as you come out of the city, a mound* (to those having come out).

NOTE. — The Dative of the Person Judging is (by a Greek idiom) rarely modified by *nōlēns, volēns* (participles of *nōlēō, volēō*), or by some similar word: —

ut quibusque bellum invitis aut cupientibus erat (Tac. Ann. i. 59), *as each might receive the war reluctantly or gladly.*

ut militibus labōs volentibus esset (Iug. 100), *that the soldiers might assume the task willingly.*

**379.** The Dative of Reference is used idiomatically without any verb in colloquial questions and exclamations: —

quō mihi fortunam (Hor. Ep. i. 5. 12), *of what use to me is fortune?*

unde mihi lapidem (Hor. S. ii. 7. 116), *where can I get a stone?*

quō tibi, Tili (id. i. 6. 24), *what use for you, Tilius?*

<sup>1</sup> *Dativus iudicantis.*



a. The dative of reference is sometimes used after interjections:

ei (hei) mihi (Aen. ii. 274), *ah me!*

vae victis (Liv. v. 48), *woe to the conquered.*

em tibi, *there, take that (there for you)!* [Cf. § 380.]

NOTE.—To express FOR—meaning *instead of, in defence of, in behalf of*—the ablative with *pro* is used:—

*pro patriā mori* (Hor. Od. iii. 2. 13), *to die for one's country.*

*ego ibō pro tē* (Plaut. Most. 1131), *I will go instead of you.*

### Ethical Dative

380. The Dative of the Personal Pronouns is used to show a certain interest felt by the person indicated.<sup>1</sup>

This construction is called the Ethical Dative.<sup>2</sup> It is really a faded variety of the Dative of Reference.

*quid mihi Celsus agit* (Hor. Ep. i. 3. 15), *pray what is Celsus doing?*

*suo sibi servit patri* (Plaut. Capt. 5), *he serves his own father.*

*at tibi repente venit mihi Caninius* (Fam. ix. 2), *but, look you, of a sudden comes to me Caninius.*

*hem tibi talentum argenti* (Pl. Truc. 60), *hark ye, a talent of silver.*

*quid tibi vis*, *what would you have (what do you wish for yourself)?*

### Dative of Separation

381. Many verbs of *taking away* and the like take the Dative (especially of a *person*) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 401).

Such are compounds of *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, and a few of *ad*:—

*aureum ei detrāxit amiculum* (N. D. iii. 83), *he took from him his cloak of gold.*

*hunc mihi terrōrem ēripe* (Cat. i. 18), *take from me this terror.*

*vītam adulēscētibz vis aufert* (Cat. M. 71), *violence deprives young men of life.*

*nihil enim tibi detrāxit senātus* (Fam. i. 5 B), *for the senate has taken nothing from you.*

*nec mihi hunc errōrem extorquēri volō* (Cat. M. 85), *nor do I wish this error wrested from me.*

NOTE.—The Dative of Separation is a variety of the Dative of Reference. It represents the action as *done to* the person or thing, and is thus more vivid than the Ablative.

<sup>1</sup> Compare "I'll rhyme you so eight years together."—*As You Like It*, iii. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Dativus ēthicus.*

*α.* The distinct idea of *motion* requires the ablative with a preposition — thus generally with names of *things* (§ 426. 1): —

*illum ex periculō ēripuit* (B. G. iv. 12), *he dragged him out of danger.*

NOTE. — Sometimes the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing with a preposition are both used with the same verb: as, — *mihi praeda dē manibus ēripitur* (Verr. ii. 1. 142), *the booty is wrested from my hands.*

### Dative of the Purpose or End

382. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected.

This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: —

1. The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that *for which a thing serves* or *which it accomplishes*, often with another dative of the person or thing affected: —

*rei publicae clādi sunt* (Iug. 85. 43), *they are ruin to the state* (they are for a disaster to the state).

*māgnō ūsui nostris fuit* (B. G. iv. 25), *it was of great service to our men* (to our men for great use).

*tertiam aciem nostris subsidiō misit* (id. i. 52), *he sent the third line as a relief to our men.*

*suis salūti fuit* (id. vii. 50), *he was the salvation of his men.*

*evenit facile quod dis cordi esset* (Liv. i. 39), *that came to pass easily which was desired by the gods* (was for a pleasure [lit. heart] to the gods).

NOTE 1. — This construction is often called the Dative of Service, or the Double Dative construction. The verb is usually *sum*. The noun expressing the *end for which* is regularly abstract and singular in number and is never modified by an adjective, except one of degree (*māgnus*, *minor*, etc.), or by a genitive.

NOTE 2. — The word *frūgi* used as an adjective is a dative of this kind: —

*cōgis mē dicere inimicum frūgi* (Font. 39), *you compel me to call my enemy Honest.*  
*homīnēs satis fortēs et plānē frūgi* (Verr. iii. 67), *men brave enough and thoroughly honest.* Cf. *erō frūgi bonae* (Plaut. Pseud. 468), *I will be good for something.* [See § 122. b.]

2. The Dative of Purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions, and with freedom in poetry: —

*locum castris dēligit* (B. G. vii. 16), *he selects a site for a camp.*

*receptui canere*, *to sound a retreat* (for a retreat).

*receptui signum* (Phil. xiii. 15), *the signal for retreat.*

*optāvit locum rēgnō* (Aen. iii. 109), *he chose a place for a kingdom.*

*locum insidiis circumspectāre* (Liv. xxi. 53), *to look about for a place for an ambush.* [Cf. *locum sēditionis quaerere* (id. iii. 46).]

For the Dative of the Gerundive denoting Purpose, see § 505. b.

## Dative with Adjectives

**383.** The Dative is used after Adjectives or Adverbs, to denote that *to which the given quality is directed, for which it exists, or towards which it tends.*

NOTE. — The dative with certain adjectives is in origin a Dative of Purpose or End.

**384.** The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of *fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination,* and their opposites : <sup>1</sup>

nihil est tam nātūrae aptum (Lael. 17), *nothing is so fitted to nature.*

nihil difficile amanti putō (Or. 33), *I think nothing hard to a lover.*

castris idōneum locum dēlēgit (B. G. i. 49), *he selected a place suitable for a camp.*

tribūni nobīs sunt amici (Q. Fr. i. 2. 16), *the tribunes are friendly to us.*

esse propitius potest nēmīni (N. D. i. 124), *he can be gracious to nobody.*

māgnis autem virīs prosperae semper omnēs rēs (id. ii. 167), *but to great men everything is always favorable.*

sēdēs huic nostrō nōn importūna sermōni (De Or. iii. 18), *a place not unsuitable for this conversation of ours.*

cui fundō erat affinis M. Tullius (Tull. 14), *to which estate Marcus Tullius was next neighbor.*

convenienter nātūrae vivere (Off. iii. 13), *to live in accordance with nature* (ὁμολογουμένως τῇ φύσει).

NOTE 1. — So, also, in poetic and colloquial use, with *idem*: as, — invītum quī servat idem facit occidenti (Hor. A. P. 467), *he who saves a man against his will does the same as one who kills him.*

NOTE 2. — Adjectives of *likeness* are often followed by *atque* (ac), *as*. So also the adverbs *aequē, pariter, similiter*, etc. The pronoun *idem* has regularly *atque* or a relative: —

sī parem sapientiam habet ac formam (Plaut. Mil. 1251), *if he has sense equal to his beauty* (like as his beauty).

tē suspicor eisdem rēbus quibus mē ipsum commovērī (Cat. M. 1), *I suspect you are disturbed by the same things by which I am.*

**385.** Other constructions are sometimes found where the dative might be expected: —

*a.* Adjectives of *fitness* or *use* take oftener the Accusative with *ad* to denote the purpose or end; but regularly the Dative of *persons*: —

aptus ad rem militārem, *fit for a soldier's duty.*

locus ad insidiās aptior (Mil. 53), *a place fitter for lying in wait.*

nobīs ūtile est ad hanc rem (cf. Ter. And. 287), *it is of use to us for this thing.*

<sup>1</sup> Adjectives of this kind are *accommodātus, aptus; amicus, inimicus, infestus, invisus, molestus; idōneus, opportunus, proprius; ūtilis, inūtilis; affinis, finitimus, propinquus, vicinus; pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis; iūcundus, grātus; nōtus, ignōtus*, and others.

**b.** Adjectives and nouns of *inclination* and the like may take the Accusative with *in* or *ergā*:—

*cōmis in uxōrem* (Hor. Ep. ii. 2. 183), *kind to his wife.*

*divina bonitās ergā hominēs* (N. D. ii. 60), *the divine goodness towards men.*

*dē benevolentia quam quisque habeat ergā nōs* (Off. i. 47), *in regard to each man's good will which he has towards us.*

*gratiōrem mē esse in tē* (Fam. xi. 10), *that I am more grateful to you.*

**c.** Some adjectives of *likeness*, *nearness*, *belonging*, and a few others, ordinarily requiring the Dative, often take the Possessive Genitive:—<sup>1</sup>

*quod ut illi proprium ac perpetuum sit . . . optāre dēbētis* (Manil. 48), *which you ought to pray may be secure (his own) and lasting to him.* [Dative.]

*fuit hōc quondam proprium populi Rōmāni* (id. 32), *this was once the peculiar characteristic of the Roman people.* [Genitive.]

*cūm utriusq; sis maximē necessarius* (Att. ix. 7 A), *since you are especially bound to both.* [Dative.]

*prōcūrātor aequē utriusque necessarius* (Quinct. 86), *an agent alike closely connected with both.* [Genitive.]

1. The genitive is especially used with these adjectives when they are used wholly or approximately as nouns:—

*amicus Cicerōni*, *friendly to Cicero.* But, *Cicerōnis amicus*, *a friend of Cicero*; and even, *Cicerōnis amicissimus*, *a very great friend of Cicero.*

*crēticus et eius aequālis pæan* (Or. 215), *the cretic and its equivalent the pæan.* *hi erant affines istius* (Verr. ii. 86), *these were this man's fellows.*

2. After *similis*, *like*, the genitive is more common in early writers. Cicero regularly uses the genitive of *persons*, and either the genitive or the dative of *things*. With personal pronouns the genitive is regular (*mei*, *tui*, etc.), and also in *verī similis*, *probable*:—

*domini similis es* (Ter. Eun. 496), *you're like your master* (your master's like).

*ut essemus similes deōrum* (N. D. i. 91), *that we might be like the gods.*

*est similis maiōrum suorum* (Ter. Ad. 411), *he's like his ancestors.*

*patris similis esse* (Off. i. 121), *to be like his father.*

*simia quam similis turpissima bestia nobis* (N. D. i. 97, quoted from Enn.), *how like us is that wretched beast the ape!*

*si enim hōc illi simile sit, est illud huic* (id. i. 90), *for if this is like that, that is like this.*

NOTE.—The genitive in this construction is not objective like those in § 349. but possessive (cf. § 343).

For the Dative or Accusative with *propior*, *proximus*, *propius*, *proximē*, see § 432. a.

<sup>1</sup> Such are *aequālis*, *affinis*, *aliēnus*, *amicus*, *cognātus*, *commūnis*, *cōnsanguineus*, *contrārius*, *dispār*, *familiāris*, *finitimus*, *inimicus*, *necessārius*, *pār*, *pecūliāris*, *propinquus*, *proprius* (regularly genitive), *sacer*, *similis*, *superstes*, *vicinus*.

## ACCUSATIVE CASE

**386.** The Accusative originally served to connect the noun more or less loosely with the verb-idea, whether expressed by a verb proper or by a verbal noun or adjective. Its earliest use was perhaps to repeat the verb-idea as in the Cognate Accusative (*run a race, fight a battle*, see § 390). From this it would be a short step to the Factive Accusative (denoting the result of an act, as in *make a table, drill a hole*, cf. § 273. n.<sup>1</sup>). From this last could easily come the common accusative (of Affecting, *break a table, plug a hole*, see § 387. a). Traces of all these uses appear in the language, and the loose connection of noun with verb-idea is seen in the use of stems in composition (cf. § 265. 3).<sup>1</sup> It is impossible, however, to derive the various constructions of the accusative with certainty from any single function of that case.

The uses of the accusative may be classified as follows:

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| I. Primary Object:   | 1. Directly affected by the Action (§ 387. a).<br>2. Effect of the Action { Thing produced (§ 387. a).<br>Cognate Accusative (§ 390).   |
| II. Two Accusatives: | 1. Predicate Accusative (Of Naming etc.) (§ 393).<br>2. Of Asking or Teaching (§ 396).<br>3. Of Concealing (§ 396. c).  |
| III. Idiomatic Uses: | 1. Adverbial (§ 397. a).<br>2. Of Specification (Greek Accusative) (§ 397. b).<br>3. Of Extent and Duration (§§ 423, 425).<br>4. Of Exclamation (§ 397. d).<br>5. Subject of Infinitive (§ 397. e). |

## Direct Object

**387.** The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative (§ 274).

a. The Accusative of the Direct Object denotes (1) that which is *directly affected*, or (2) that which is *caused* or *produced* by the action of the verb:—

(1) *Brūtus Caesarem interfēcit, Brutus killed Cæsar.*

(2) *aedem facere, to make a temple.* [Cf. *proelium pugnāre, to fight a battle*, § 390.]

NOTE.—There is no definite line by which transitive verbs can be distinguished from intransitive. Verbs which usually take a direct object (expressed or implied) are called transitive, but many of these are often used *intransitively* or *absolutely*. Thus *timeō, I fear*, is transitive in the sentence *inimicum timeō, I fear my enemy*, but intransitive (*absolute*) in *nōn timēre, don't be afraid*. Again, many verbs are transitive in one sense and intransitive in another: as, — *Helvētiōs superāvērunt Rōmānī, the Romans overcame the Helvetians*; but *nihil superābat, nothing remained* (was left over). So also many verbs commonly intransitive may be used transitively with a slight change of meaning: as, — *ridēs, you are laughing*; but *mē ridēs, you're laughing at me*.

<sup>1</sup> Compare *armiger, armor-bearer*, with *arma gerere, to bear arms*; *fidicen, lyre-player*, with *fidibus canere, to (play on) sing to the lyre*. Compare also *istanc taciō (Plant.), the [act of] touching her*, with *istanc tangere, to touch her* (§ 388. d. n.<sup>2</sup>).

**b.** The object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes its subject in the passive, and is put in the nominative (§ 275):—

Brūtus Caesarem interfēcit, *Brutus killed Caesar.*

Caesar ā Brūtō interfectus est, *Caesar was killed by Brutus.*

domum aedificat, *he builds a house.*

domus aedificātur, *the house is building (being built).*

### 388. Certain special verbs require notice.

**a.** Many verbs apparently intransitive, expressing *feeling*, take an accusative, and may be used in the passive:—

meum cāsum lūctumque doluērunt (Sest. 145), *they grieved at my calamity and sorrow.*

si nōn Acrisium risissent Iuppiter et Venus (Hor. Od. iii. 16. 5), *if Jupiter and Venus had not laughed at Acrisius.*

ridētur ab omni conventū (Hor. S. i. 7. 22), *he is laughed at by the whole assembly.*

For the Cognate Accusative with verbs of *taste, smell*, and the like, see § 390. a.

**NOTE.**—Some verbs commonly intransitive may be used transitively (especially in poetry) from a similarity of meaning with other verbs that take the accusative:—

gemēns ignōminiam (Georg. iii. 226), *groaning at the disgrace.* [Cf. *doleō.*]

festināre fugam (Aen. iv. 575), *to hasten their flight.* [Cf. *accelerō.*]

cōmptōs ārsit erinis (Hor. Od. iv. 9. 13), *she burned with love for his well-combed locks.* [Cf. *adamō.*]

**b.** Verbs of motion, compounds of *circum*, *trāns*, and *praeter*, and a few others, frequently become transitive, and take the accusative (cf. § 370. b):—

mortem obire, *to die (to meet death).*

cōsulātum ineunt (Liv. ii. 28), *they enter upon the consulship.*

nēmīnem convēni (Fam. ix. 14), *I met no one.*

si insulam adisset (B. G. iv. 20), *if he should go to the island.*

trānsire flūmen (id. ii. 23), *to cross the river* (cf. § 395).

civēs qui circumstant senātum (Cat. i. 21), *the citizens who stand about the senate.*

**NOTE.**—Among such verbs are some compounds of *ad*, *in*, *per*, and *sub*.

**c.** The accusative is used after the impersonals *deceat*, *dēdeceat*, *dēlectat*, *iuvat*, *oportet*, *fallit*, *fugit*, *praeterit*:—

ita ut vōs deceat (Plaut. Most. 729), *so as befits you.*

mē pedibus dēlectat claudere verba (Hor. S. ii. 1. 28), *my delight is (it pleases me) to arrange words in measure.*

nisi mē fallit, *unless I am mistaken (unless it deceives me).*

iūvit mē tibi tuās litterās prōfuisse (Fam. v. 21. 3), *it pleased me that your literary studies had profited you.*

tē nōn praeterit (Fam. i. 8. 2), *it does not escape your notice.*

NOTE 1.—So after *latet* in poetry and post-classical prose: as,—*latet plerūque* (Plin. N. H. ii. 82), *it is unknown to most persons*.

NOTE 2.—These verbs are merely ordinary transitives with an idiomatic signification. Hence most of them are also used personally.

NOTE 3.—*Decet* and *latet* sometimes take the dative:—

*ita nobis decet* (Ter. Ad. 928), *thus it befits us*.

*hostique Rōma latet* (Sil. It. xii. 614), *and Rome lies hidden from the foe*.

d. A few verbs in isolated expressions take the accusative from a forcing of their meaning. Such expressions are:—

*ferire foedus*, *to strike a treaty* (i.e. to sanction by striking down a victim).

*vincere iudicium* (spōnsiōnem, rem, hōc), *to prevail on a trial, etc.* [As if the case were a difficulty to overcome; cf. *vincere iter*, Aen. vi. 688.]

*aequor nāvigāre* (Aen. i. 67), *to sail the sea*. [As if it were *trānsire*, § 388. b.]

*maria aspera iūrō* (id. vi. 351), *I swear by the rough seas* (cf. id. vi. 324).

[The accusative with verbs of *swearing* is chiefly poetic.]

*noctis dormire*, *to sleep* [whole] *nights* (to spend in sleep).

NOTE 1.—These accusatives are of various kinds. The last example approaches the cognate construction (cf. the second example under § 390).

NOTE 2.—In early and popular usage some nouns and adjectives derived from transitive verbs retain verbal force sufficient to govern the accusative:—

*quid tibi istanc tātctō est* (Plaut. Poen. 1308), *what business have you to touch her?*

[Cf. *tangō*.]

*mīrābundū bēstiam* (Ap. Met. iv. 16), *full of wonder at the creature*. [Cf. *mīror*.]

*vitābundus castra* (Liv. xxv. 13), *trying to avoid the camp*. [Cf. *vitō*.]

389. Many verbs ordinarily transitive may be used *absolutely*, having their natural object in the ablative with *dē* (§ 273. N. 2):—

*priusquam Pompōnius dē ēius adventū cōgnōsceret* (B. C. iii. 101), *before Pomponius could learn of his coming*. [Cf. *ēius adventū cōgnitō*, *his arrival being discovered*.]

For Accusative and Genitive after Impersonals, see § 354. b. For the Accusative after the impersonal Gerundive with *esse*, see § 500. 3.

### Cognate Accusative

390. An intransitive verb often takes the Accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner.

This construction is called the *Cognate Accusative* or *Accusative of Kindred Signification*:—

*tūtiorē vitā vivere* (Verr. ii. 118), *to live a safer life*.

*tertiā iam aetātem hominū vivēbat* (Cat. M. 31), *he was now living the third generation of men*.

*servitūtem servīre*, *to be in slavery*.

*coire societātem*, *to [go together and] form an alliance*.

**a.** Verbs of *taste*, *smell*, and the like take a cognate accusative of the quality: —

vinum redolēns (Phil. ii. 63), *smelling* [of] *wine*.

herbam mella sapiunt (Plin. H. N. xi. 18), *the honey tastes* [of] *grass*.

olēre malitiam (Rosc. Com. 20), *to have the odor of malice*.

Cordubae nātis poētis, pingue quiddam sonantibus atque peregrinum (Arch. 26), *to poets born at Cordova, whose speech had a somewhat thick and foreign accent*.

**b.** The cognate accusative is often loosely used by the poets: —  
huic errori similem [errōrem] insānīre (Hor. S. ii. 3. 62), *to suffer a delusion like this*.

saltāre Cyclōpa (id. i. 5. 63), *to dance the Cyclops* (represent in dancing).

Bacchānālia vivere (Iuv. ii. 3), *to live in revellings*.

Amaryllida resonāre (Ecl. i. 5), *to reēcho* [the name of] *Amaryllis*.

intonuit laevum (Aen. ii. 698), *it thundered on the left*.

dulce ridentem, dulce loquentem (Hor. Od. i. 22. 23), *sweetly smiling, sweetly prattling*.

acerba tuēns (Aen. ix. 794), *looking fiercely*. [Cf. Eng. "to look daggers."]

torvum clāmat (id. vii. 399), *he cries harshly*.

**c.** A neuter pronoun or an adjective of indefinite meaning is very common as cognate accusative (cf. §§ 214, d, 397. a): —

Empedoclēs multa alia peccat (N. D. i. 29), *Empedocles commits many other errors*.

ego illud adsentior Theophrastō (De Or. iii. 184), *in this I agree with Theophrastus*.

multum tē ista fefellit opiniō (Verr. ii. 1. 88), *you were much deceived in this expectation* (this expectation deceived you much).

plūs valeō, *I have more strength*.

plūrimum potest, *he is strongest*.

quid mē ista laedunt (Leg. Agr. ii. 32), *what harm do those things do me?*

hōc tē moneō, *I give you this warning* (cf. d. n. <sup>1</sup>).

id laetor, *I rejoice at this* (cf. d. n. <sup>1</sup>).

quid moror, *why do I delay?*

quae hominēs arant, nāvīgant, aedificant (Sall. Cat. ii. 7), *what men do in ploughing, sailing, and building*.

**d.** So in many common phrases: —

sī quid ille sē velit (B. G. i. 34), *if he should want anything of him* (if he should want him in anything).

numquid, Geta, aliud mē vis (Ter. Ph. 151), *can I do anything more for you, Geta* (there is nothing you want of me, is there)? [A common form of leave-taking.]

quid est quod, etc., *why is it that, etc.*? [Cf. hōc erat quod (Aen. ii. 664), *was it for this that, etc.*]



NOTE 1.— In these cases substantives *with a definite meaning* would be in some other construction:—

*in hoc eodem peccat, he errs in this same point.*

*bonis rebus laetari, to rejoice at prosperity.* [Also: *in, de, or ex.*]

*de testamento monere, to remind one of the will.* [Later: genitive, § 351.]

*offici admonere, to remind one of his duty.* [Also: *de officio.*]

NOTE 2.— In some of these cases the connection of the accusative with the verb has so faded out that the words have become real adverbs: *as, — multum, plus, plurimum; plerumque, for the most part, generally; ceterum, cetera, for the rest, otherwise, but; primum, first; nihil, by no means, not at all; aliquid, somewhat; quid, why; facile, easily.* So in the comparative of adverbs (§ 218). But the line cannot be sharply drawn, and some of the examples under *b* may be classed as adverbial.

## TWO ACCUSATIVES

391. Some transitive verbs take a second accusative in addition to their Direct Object.

This second accusative is either (1) a Predicate Accusative or (2) a Secondary Object.

### Predicate Accusative

392. An accusative in the Predicate referring to the same person or thing as the Direct Object, but not in apposition with it, is called a Predicate Accusative.

393. Verbs of *naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing*, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object:—

*o Spartace, quem enim te potius appellem (Phil. xiii. 22), O Spartacus, for what else shall I call you (than Spartacus)?*

*Ciceronem consulem creare, to elect Cicero consul.*

*me augurem nominaverunt (Phil. ii. 4), they nominated me for augur.*

*cum gratias ageret quod se consulem fecisset (De Or. ii. 268), when he thanked him-because he had made him consul (supported his candidacy).*

*hominem prae se neminem putavit (Rosc. Am. 135), he thought nobody a man in comparison with himself.*

*ducem se praeibit (Vat. 33), he offered himself as a leader.*

NOTE.— The predicate accusative may be an adjective: *as, — homines mitis reddidit et mansuetos (Inv. i. 2), has made men mild and gentle.*

**α.** In changing from the active voice to the passive, the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative (§ 284):—

*rex ab suis appellatur (B. G. viii. 4), he is called king by his subjects.* [Active: *sui eum regem appellant.*]

### Secondary Object

**394.** The Accusative of the Secondary Object is used (along with the direct object) to denote something more remotely affected by the action of the verb.

**395.** Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take (in addition to the direct object) a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition:—

Caesar Germānōs flūmen trāicit (B. C. i. 83), *Caesar throws the Germans across the river.*

idem iūs iūrāndum adigit Afrānium (id. i. 76), *he exacts the same oath from Afranius.*

quōs Pompēius omnia sua praesidia circumdūxit (id. iii. 61), *whom Pompey conducted through all his garrison.*

**NOTE 1.**—This construction is common only with trādūcō, trāciō, and trānsportō. The preposition is sometimes repeated with compounds of trāns, and usually with compounds of the other prepositions. The ablative is also used:—

dōnec rēs suās trāns Halyn flūmen trāicerent (Liv. xxxviii. 25), *till they should get their possessions across the river Halys.*

(exercitus) Padō trāiectus Cremonam (id. xxi. 56), *the army was conveyed across the Po to Cremona (by way of the Po, § 429. a).*

**NOTE 2.**—The secondary object may be retained with a passive verb: as, — Belgae Rhēnum trādūcti sunt (B. G. ii. 4), *the Belgians were led over the Rhine.*

**NOTE 3.**—The double construction indicated in § 395 is possible only when the force of the preposition and the force of the verb are each distinctly felt in the compound, the verb governing the direct, and the preposition the secondary object.

But often the two parts of the compound become closely united to form a transitive verb of simple meaning. In this case the compound verb is transitive solely by virtue of its prepositional part and can have but one accusative,—the same which was formerly the secondary object, but which now becomes the direct. So trāciō comes to mean either (1) *to pierce* (anybody) [by hurling] or (2) *to cross* (a river etc.):—

gladiō hominem trāicit, *he pierced the man with a sword.* [Here iaciō has lost all transitive force, and serves simply to give the force of a verb to the meaning of trāns, and to tell the manner of the act.]

Rhodanum trāicit, *he crossed the Rhone.* [Here iaciō has become simply a verb of motion, and trāciō is hardly distinguishable from trānsēō.]

In these examples hominem and Rhodanum, which would be secondary objects if trāicit were used in its primary signification, have become the direct objects. Hence in the passive construction they become the subjects and are put in the nominative:—

homō trāiectus est gladiō, *the man was pierced with a sword.*

Rhodanus trāiectus est, *the Rhone was crossed.*

The poetical trāiectus lōra (Aen. ii. 273), *pierced with thongs*, comes from a mixture of two constructions: (1) eum trāicit lōra, *he rove thongs through him*,<sup>1</sup> and (2) eum trāicit lōris, *he pierced him with thongs.* In putting the sentence into a passive form, the direct object of the former (lōra) is irregularly kept, and the direct object of the latter (eum) is made the subject.

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps not found in the active, but cf. trāiectō fīne (Aen. v. 488).

396. Some verbs of *asking* and *teaching* may take two accusatives, one of the Person (*direct object*), and the other of the Thing (*secondary object*):—

mē sententiam rogāvit, *he asked me my opinion.*

ōtium divōs rogat (Hor. Od. ii. 16. 1), *he prays the gods for rest.*

haec praetorem postulābās (Tull. 39), *you demanded this of the praetor.*

aedilis populum rogāre (Liv. vi. 42), *to ask the people [to elect] aediles.*

docēre puerōs elementā, *to teach children their A B C's.*

NOTE.—This construction is found in classical authors with *ōrō*, *poscō*, *repscō*, *rogō*, *interrogō*, *flāgitō*, *doceō*.

a. Some verbs of *asking* take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, *petō* (ab), *quaerō* (ex, ab, dē); usually *poscō* (ab), *flāgitō* (ab), *postulō* (ab), and occasionally others:—

pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt (B. G. ii. 13), *they sought peace from the Romans.*  
quod quaesivit ex mē P. Apulēius (Phil. vi. 1), *what Publius Apuleius asked of me.*

b. With the passive of some verbs of asking or teaching, the *person* or the *thing* may be used as subject (cf. c. N. <sup>2</sup>):—

Caesar sententiam rogātus est, *Cæsar was asked his opinion.*

id ab eō flāgitābātur (B. C. i. 71), *this was urgently demanded of him.*

NOTE.—The accusative of the *thing* may be retained with the passive of *rogō*, and of verbs of teaching, and occasionally with a few other verbs:—

fuērant hōc rogāti (Cael. 64), *they had been asked this.*

poscor meum Laelapa (Ov. M. vii. 771), *I am asked for my Laelaps.*

Cicerō cūncta ēdoctus (Sall. Cat. 45), *Cicero, being informed of everything.*

But with most verbs of asking in prose the accusative of the thing becomes the subject nominative, and the accusative of the person is put in the ablative with a preposition: as,—*nē* *postulantur* *quidem* *virēs ā senectūte* (Cat. M. 34), *strength is not even expected of an old man* (asked from old age).

c. The verb *cēlō*, *conceal*, may take two accusatives, and the usually intransitive *lateō*, *lie hid*, an accusative of the person:—

nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem T. Ampli (Fam. ii. 16. 3), *I did not conceal from you the talk of Titus Ampius.*

nec latuēre doli frātre m Iūnōnis (Aen. i. 130), *nor did the wiles of Juno escape the notice of her brother.*

NOTE 1.—The accusative of the person with *lateō* is late or poetical (§ 388. c. N. <sup>1</sup>).

NOTE 2.—All the double constructions indicated in § 396 arise from the wavering meaning of the verbs. Thus *doceō* means both to *show* a thing, and to *instruct* a person; *cēlō*, to *keep* a person in the dark, and to *hide* a thing; *rogō*, to *question* a person, and to *ask* a question or a thing. Thus either accusative may be regarded as the direct object, and so become the subject of the passive (cf. b above), but for convenience the accusative of the thing is usually called secondary.

## Idiomatic Uses

**397.** The Accusative has the following special uses :—

**a.** The accusative is found in a few adverbial phrases (*Adverbial Accusative*):—

id temporis, *at that time*; id (istuc) aetātis, *at that age*.

id (quod) genus, *of that (what) sort* (perhaps originally nominative).

meam vicem, *on my part*.

bonam partem, *in a great measure*; maximam partem, *for the most part*.

virile (muliebre) secus, *of the male (female) sex* (probably originally in apposition).

quod si, *but if* (as to which, if); quod nisi, *if not*.

**b.** The so-called *synecdochical* or Greek Accusative, found in poetry and later Latin, is used to denote the part affected :—

caput nectentur (Aen. v. 309), *their heads shall be bound* (they shall be bound about the head).

ardentis oculōs suffecti sanguine et igni (id. ii. 210), *their glaring eyes blood-shot and blazing with fire* (suffused as to their eyes with blood and fire).

nūda genū (id. i. 320), *with her knee bare* (bare as to the knee).

femur trāgulā ictus (Liv. xxi. 7. 10), *wounded in the thigh by a dart*.

NOTE.—This construction is also called the Accusative of Specification.

**c.** In many apparently similar expressions the accusative may be regarded as the direct object of a verb in the middle voice (§ 156. a):

inūtile ferrum cingitur (Aen. ii. 510), *he girds on the useless steel*.

nodō sinūs collēcta fluentis (id. i. 320), *having her flowing folds gathered in a knot*.

umerōs internor pelle leōnis (id. ii. 722), *I cover my shoulders with a lion's skin*.

prōtinus induitur faciem cultumque Diānae (Ov. M. ii. 425), *forthwith she assumes the shape and garb of Diana*.

**d.** The Accusative is used in Exclamations :—

ō fortunātam rem publicam, *O fortunate republic!* [Cf. ō fortunāta mors (Phil. xiv. 31), *oh, happy death!* (§ 339. a).]

ō mē infēlicem (Mil. 102), *oh, unhappy I!*

mē miserum, *ah, wretched me!*

ēn quattuor ārās (Ecl. v. 65), *lo, four altars!*

ellum (= em illum), *there he is!* [Cf. § 146. a. n. 2.]

eccōs (= ecce eōs), *there they are, look at them!*

prō deum fidem, *good heavens* (O protection of the gods)!

hōcine saeculum (Ter. Ad. 304), *O this generation!*

huncine hominem (Verr. v. 62), *this man, good heavens!*

NOTE 1.—Such expressions usually depend upon some long-forgotten verb. The substantive is commonly accompanied by an adjective. The use of *-ne* in some cases suggests an original question, as in *quid? what? why? tell me*.

NOTE 2.—The omission of the verb has given rise to some other idiomatic accusatives. Such are:—

*salūtem* (sc. *dicit*) (in addressing a letter), *greeting*.

*mē diūs fidius* (sc. *adiuvet*), *so help me heaven* (the god of faith).

*unde mihi lapidem* (Hor. S. ii. 7. 116), *where can I get a stone?*

*quō mihi fortunam* (Hor. Ep. i. 5. 12), *of what use to me is fortune?* [No verb thought of.]

**e.** The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative:—

*intellegō tē sapere* (Fam. vii. 32. 3), *I perceive that you are wise*.

*eās rēs iactāri nōlēbat* (B. G. i. 18), *he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed*.

NOTE.—This construction is especially common with verbs of *knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving* (§ 580).

**f.** The accusative in later writers is sometimes used in apposition with a clause:—

*dēserunt tribūnāl . . . manūs intentantēs, causam discordiæ et initium armōrum* (Tac. Ann. i. 27), *they abandon the tribunal shaking their fists, — a cause of dissension and the beginning of war*.

NOTE.—This construction is an extension (under Greek influence) of a usage more nearly within the ordinary rules, such as, — *Eumenem prōdidere Antiochō, pācis mercēdem* (Sall. Ep. Mith. 8), *they betrayed Eumenes to Antiochus, the price of peace*. [Here Eumenes may be regarded as the price, although the real price is the betrayal.]

For the Accusative of the End of Motion, see § 427. 2; for the Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space, see §§ 423, 425; for the Accusative with Prepositions, see § 220.

## ABLATIVE CASE

**398.** Under the name Ablative are included the meanings and, in part, the forms of three cases, — the Ablative proper, expressing the relation *FROM*; the Locative, *IN*; and the Instrumental, *WITH* or *BY*. These three cases were originally not wholly distinct in meaning, and their confusion was rendered more certain (1) by the development of meanings that approached each other and (2) by phonetic decay, by means of which these cases have become largely identical in form. Compare, for the first, the phrases *à parte dexterā*, *on the right*; *quam ob causam*, *FROM which cause*; *ad fāmam*, *AT (in consequence of) the report*; and, for the second, the like forms of the dative and ablative plural, the old dative in *-ē* of the fifth declension (§ 96), and the loss of the original *-d* of the ablative (§ 49. e; cf. §§ 43. N. <sup>1</sup>, 92. f, 214. a. N.).

The relation of *FROM* includes *separation, source, cause, agent, and comparison*; that of *WITH* or *BY*, *accompaniment, instrument, means, manner, quality, and price*; that of *IN* or *AT*, *place, time, circumstance*. This classification according to the original cases (to which, however, too great a degree of certainty should not be attached)<sup>1</sup> is set forth in the following table:—

<sup>1</sup> Thus the Ablative of Cause may be, at least in part, of Instrumental origin, and the Ablative Absolute appears to combine the Instrumental and the Locative.

I. Ablative Proper ( <i>from</i> ) ( <i>Separative</i> ):	{ 1. Of Separation, Privation, and Want (§ 400). 2. Of Source (participles of origin etc.) (§ 403). 3. Of Cause ( <i>labōrō, exsiliō</i> , etc.) (§ 404). 4. Of Agent (with <i>ab</i> after Passives) (§ 405). 5. Of Comparison ( <i>THAN</i> ) (§ 406).
II. Instrumental Ablative ( <i>with</i> ):	{ 1. Of Manner, Means, and Instrument (§ 408 ff.). 2. Of Object of the Deponents <i>ūt</i> etc. (§ 410). 3. Of Accompaniment (with <i>cum</i> ) (§ 413). 4. Of Degree of Difference (§ 414). 5. Of Quality (with Adjectives) (§ 415). 6. Of Price and Exchange (§ 416). 7. Of Specification (§ 418). 8. Ablative Absolute (§ 419).
III. Locative Ablative ( <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> , <i>at</i> ):	{ 1. Of Place <i>where</i> (commonly with <i>in</i> ) (§ 421). 2. Of Time and Circumstance (§ 423).

**399.** The Ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions *from*; *in*, *at*; *with*, *by*: —

*liberāre metū*, to deliver from fear.  
*excultus doctrinā*, trained in learning.  
*hōc ipsō tempore*, at this very time.  
*caecus avāritiā*, blind with avarice.  
*occlusus gladiō*, slain by the sword.

## USES OF THE ABLATIVE PROPER

### Ablative of Separation

**400.** Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative.

**401.** Verbs meaning to *remove*, *set free*, *be absent*, *deprive*, and *want*, take the Ablative (sometimes with *ab* or *ex*): —

*oculis sē privāvit* (Fin. v. 87), he deprived himself of eyes.  
*omni Galliā Rōmānis interdicit* (B. G. i. 46), he (Ariovistus) bars the Romans from the whole of Gaul.  
*ei aquā et ignī interdicitur* (Vell. ii. 45), he is debarred the use of fire and water. [The regular formula of banishment.]  
*voluptātibus carēre* (Cat. M. 7), to lack enjoyments.  
*nōn egeō medicinā* (Lael. 10), I want no physic.  
*levāmur superstitiōne*, *liberāmur mortis metū* (Fin. i. 63), we are relieved from superstition, we are freed from fear of death.  
*soluti ā cupiditātibus* (Leg. Agr. i. 27), freed from desires.  
*multōs ex his incommodis pecūniā sē liberāsse* (Verr. v. 23), that many have freed themselves by money from these inconveniences.

For the Genitive with verbs of *separation* and *want*, see § 356. n.

**402.** Verbs compounded with *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, (1) take the simple Ablative when used *figuratively*; but (2) when used literally to denote actual *separation* or *motion*, they usually require a preposition (§ 426. 1): —

(1) *cōnātū dēsistere* (B. G. i. 8), *to desist from the attempt.*

*dēsine commūnibus locis* (Acad. ii. 80), *quit commonplaces.*

*abire magistratū*, *to leave one's office.*

*abstinere iniuriā*, *to refrain from wrong.*

(2) *ā prōpositō aberrāre* (Fin. v. 83), *to wander from the point.*

*dē provinciā dēcedere* (Verr. ii. 48), *to withdraw from one's province.*

*ab iūre abire* (id. ii. 114), *to go outside of the law.*

*ex civitate excessere* (B. G. vi. 8), *they departed from the state.* [But cf.

*finibus suis excesserant* (id. iv. 18), *they had left their own territory.]*

*ā magnō dēmissum nōmen Iūlō* (Aen. i. 288), *a name descended (sent down) from great Iulus.*

For the Dative used instead of the Ablative of Separation, see § 381. For the Ablative of the actual *place whence* in idiomatic expressions, see §§ 427. 1, 428. f.

*a.* Adjectives denoting *freedom* and *want* are followed by the ablative: —

*urbs nūda praesidiō* (Att. vii. 13), *the city naked of defence.*

*immunis militiā* (Liv. i. 43), *free of military service.*

*plēbs orba tribūnis* (Leg. iii. 9), *the people deprived of tribunes.*

NOTE. — A preposition sometimes occurs: —

*ā culpā vacuus* (Sall. Cat. 14), *free from blame.*

*liberī ā dēliciis* (Leg. Agr. i. 27), *free from luxuries.*

*Messāna ab his rebus vacua atque nūda est* (Verr. iv. 3), *Messana is empty and bare of these things.*

For the Genitive with adjectives of want, see § 349. *a.*

### Ablative of Source and Material

**403.** The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists: —

#### 1. Source: —

*Rhēnus oritur ex Lepontis* (B. G. iv. 10), *the Rhine rises in (from) the country of the Lepontii.*

*ab his sermō oritur* (Lael. 5), *the conversation is begun by (arises from) them.*

*cūius ratiōnis vim atque utilitatem ex illō caelestī Epicūri volumine accēpimus* (N. D. i. 43), *of this reasoning we have learned the power and advantage from that divine book of Epicurus.*

*suāvitatem odōrum quī afflārentur ē flōribus* (Cat. M. 59), *the sweetness of the odors which breathed from the flowers.*

## 2. Material :—

erat tōtus ex fraude et mendāciō factus (Clu. 72), *he was entirely made up of fraud and falsehood.*

valvās māgnificentiorēs, ex aurō atque ebore perfectiorēs (Verr. iv. 124), *more splendid doors, more finely wrought of gold and ivory.*

factum dē cautibus antrum (Ov. M. i. 575), *a cave formed of rocks.*

templum dē marmore pōnam (Georg. iii. 13), *I'll build a temple of marble.*

NOTE 1.—In poetry the preposition is often omitted.

NOTE 2.—The Ablative of Material is a development of the Ablative of Source. For the Genitive of Material, see § 344.

*a.* Participles denoting *birth* or *origin* are followed by the Ablative of Source, generally without a preposition :—<sup>1</sup>

love nātus et Māiā (N. D. iii. 56), *son of Jupiter and Maia.*

ēdite rēgibus (Hor. Od. i. 1. 1), *descendant of kings.*

quō sanguine crētus (Aen. ii. 74), *born of what blood.*

genitae Pandione (Ov. M. vi. 666), *daughters of Pandion.*

NOTE 1.—A preposition (ab, dē, ex) is usually expressed with pronouns, with the name of the mother, and often with that of other ancestors :—

ex mē hic nātus nōn est sed ex frātre meō (Ter. Ad. 40), *this is not my son, but my brother's (not born from me, etc.).*

cum ex utrāque [uxōre] filius nātus esset (De Or. i. 183), *each wife having had a son (when a son had been born of each wife).*

Bēlus et omnēs ā Bēlō (Aen. i. 730), *Belus and all his descendants.*

NOTE 2.—Rarely, the place of birth is expressed by the ablative of source: as, — dēsiderāvit C. Fleginātem Placentiā, A. Grānium Puteolīs (B. C. iii. 71), *he lost Caius Fleginas of Placentia, Aulus Granius of Puteoli.*

NOTE 3.—The Roman tribe is regularly expressed by the ablative alone: as, — Q. Verrem Rōmiliā (Verr. i. 23), *Quintus Verres of the Romilian tribe.*

*b.* Some verbs may take the Ablative of Material without a preposition. Such are cōnstāre, cōnsistere, and continēri.<sup>2</sup> But with cōnstāre, ex is more common :—

domūs amoenitās nōn aedificiō sed silvā cōnstābat (Nep. Att. 13), *the charm of the house consisted not in the buildings but in the woods.*

ex animō cōnstāmus et corpore (Fin. iv. 19), *we consist of soul and body.*

vita corpore et spiritū continētur (Marc. 28), *life consists of body and spirit.*

*c.* The Ablative of Material without a preposition is used with facere, fieri, and similar words, in the sense of *do with, become of* :—

quid hōc homine faciātis (Verr. ii. 1. 42), *what are you going to do with this man?*

quid Tulliolā meā fiet (Fam. xiv. 4. 3), *what will become of my dear Tullia?*

quid tē futurum est (Verr. ii. 155), *what will become of you?*

<sup>1</sup> As nātus, satus, ēditus, genitus, ortus, prōgnātus, generātus, crētus, creātus, oriundus.

<sup>2</sup> The ablative with cōnsistere and continēri is probably locative in origin (cf. § 431).



d. The Ablative of Material with *ex*, and in poetry without a preposition, sometimes depends directly on a noun: —

*nōn pauca pōcula ex aurō* (Verr. iv. 62), *not a few cups of gold.*  
*scopulis pendentibus antrum* (Aen. i. 166), *a cave of hanging rocks.*

For Ablative of Source instead of Partitive Genitive, see § 346. c.

### Ablative of Cause

404. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause: —<sup>1</sup>

*negligentiā plectimur* (Lael. 85), *we are chastised for negligence.*  
*gubernātoris ars utilitātē nōn arte laudātur* (Fin. i. 42), *the pilot's skill is praised for its service, not its skill.*  
*certis dē causis*, *for cogent reasons.*  
*ex vulnere aeger* (Rep. ii. 38), *disabled by (from) a wound.*  
*mare ā sōle lucet* (Acad. ii. 105), *the sea gleams in the sun* (from the sun).

a. The Ablative of Cause without a preposition is used with *labōrō* (also with *ex*), *exsiliō*, *exsultō*, *triumphō*, *lacrimō*, *ārdeō*: —

*doleō tē aliis malis labōrāre* (Fam. iv. 3), *I am sorry that you suffer with other ills.* [Cf. *ex aere aliēnō labōrāre* (B. C. iii. 22), *to labor under debt* (from another's money).]  
*exultāre laetitiā, triumphāre gaudiō coepit* (Clu. 14), *she began to exult in gladness, and triumph in joy.*  
*exsilui gaudiō* (Fam. xvi. 16), *I jumped for joy.* [Cf. *lacrimō gaudiō* (Ter. Ad. 409), *I weep for joy.*]  
*ardēre dolore et irā* (Att. ii. 19. 5), *to be on fire with pain and anger.*

For *gaudeō* and *glōrior*, see § 431.

b. The *motive* which influences the mind of the person acting is expressed by the ablative of cause; the *object* exciting the emotion often by *ob*<sup>2</sup> or *propter* with the accusative: —

*nōn ob praedam aut spoliandi cupidine* (Tac. H. i. 63), *not for booty or through lust of plunder.*  
*amicitia ex sē et propter sē expetenda* (Fin. ii. 83), *friendship must be sought of and for itself.*

NOTE. — But these constructions are often confused: as, — *pārere lēgibus propter metum* (Par. 34), *to obey the laws on account of fear.* [Here *metum* is almost equivalent to "the terrors of the law," and hence *propter* is used, though the ablative would be more natural.]

<sup>1</sup> The *cause*, in the ablative, is originally *source*, as is shown by the use of *ab*, *dē*, *ex*; but when the accusative with *ad*, *ob*, is used, the idea of cause arises from *nearness*. Occasionally it is difficult to distinguish between *cause* and *means* (which is the old instrumental case) or *circumstance* (which is either the Locative or the Instrumental).

<sup>2</sup> Originally a mercantile use: cf. *ob decem minās*, *for the price of ten minas*.

c. The ablatives *causā* and *grātiā*, *for the sake of*, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement:—

*eā causā*, *on account of this*; *quā grātiā* (Ter. Eun. 99), *for what purpose?*  
*meā causā*, *for my sake*; *meā grātiā* (Plaut.), *for my sake*.

*ex meā et rei publicae causā*, *for my own sake and the republic's*.

*praedictionis causā* (N. D. iii. 5), *by way of prophecy*.

*exempli grātiā* (*verbi grātiā*), *for example*.

*sui purgandi grātiā*, *for the sake of clearing themselves*.

NOTE.—But *grātiā* with possessives in this use is rare.

### Ablative of Agent

405. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*:—

*laudātur ab his*, *culpātur ab illis* (Hor. S. i. 2. 11), *he is praised by these, blamed by those*.

*ab animō tuō quidquid agitur id agitur ā tē* (Tusc. i. 52), *whatever is done by your soul is done by yourself*.

*ā filiis in iudicium vocātus est* (Cat. M. 22), *he was brought to trial by his sons*.  
*cum ā cunctō cōsensū plausus esset multiplex datus* (id. 64), *when great applause had been given by the whole audience*.

*nē virtūs ab audaciā vinceretur* (Sest. 92), *that valor might not be overborne by audacity*. [*Audācia* is in a manner *personified*.]

NOTE 1.—This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the *source* or *author* of the action.

NOTE 2.—The ablative of the *agent* (which requires *ā* or *ab*) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of *instrument*, which has no preposition (§ 409). Thus — *occisus gladiō*, *slain by a sword*; but, *occisus ab hoste*, *slain by an enemy*.

NOTE 3.—The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting *persons*, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly *personified*, as in the last example under the rule.

a. The ablative of the agent with *ab* is sometimes used after intransitive verbs that have a passive sense:—

*perire ab hoste*, *to be slain by an enemy*.

b. The personal agent, when considered as instrument or means, is often expressed by *per* with the accusative, or by *operā* with a genitive or possessive:—

*ab explorātoribus certior factus est* (B. G. i. 21), *he was informed by scouts* (in person). But,—

*per explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est* (id. i. 12), *Cæsar was informed by* (means of) *scouts*.

*elantae operā Neptūni* (Plaut. Rud. 699), *washed clean by the services of Neptune*.

*nōn meā operā ēvenit* (Ter. Hec. 228), *it hasn't happened through me* (by my exertions). [Cf. *ēius operā*, B. G. v. 27.]

NOTE 1. — The ablative of means or instrument is often used instead of the ablative of agent, especially in military phrases: as, — *haec excubitōribus tenēbantur* (B. G. vii. 69), *these (redoubts) were held by means of sentinels.*

NOTE 2. — An animal is sometimes regarded as the means or instrument, sometimes as the agent. Hence both the simple ablative and the ablative with *ab* occur: — *equō vehī*, *to ride on horseback* (be conveyed by means of a horse). [Not *ab equō.*] *clipeōs ā mūrībus esse dērōsōs* (Div. i. 99), *that the shields were gnawed by mice.* For the Dative of the Agent with the Gerundive, see § 374.

### Ablative of Comparison

406. The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative<sup>1</sup> signifying *than*: —

*Catō est Cicerōne eloquentior*, *Cato is more eloquent than Cicero.*

*quid nobīs duōbus labōriōsius est* (Mil. 5), *what more burdened with toil than we two?*

*vilius argentum est aurō, virtūtibus aurum* (Hor. Ep. i. 1. 52), *silver is less precious than gold, gold than virtue.*

*a.* The idiomatic ablatives *opiniōne*, *spē*, *solitō*, *dictō*, *aequō*, *crēdibili*, and *iustō* are used after comparatives instead of a clause: —

*celerius opiniōne* (Fam. xiv. 23), *faster than one would think.*

*sērius spē omnium* (Liv. xxvi. 26), *later than all hoped* (than the hope of all).

*amnis solitō citātor* (id. xxiii. 19. 11), *a stream swifter than its wont.*

*gravius aequō* (Sall. Cat. 51), *more seriously than was right.*

407. The comparative may be followed by *quam*, *than*. When *quam* is used, the two things compared are put in the same case: —

*nōn callidior es quam hīc* (Rosc. Am. 49), *you are not more cunning than he.*  
*cōtōnibus accommodātor est quam iūdicīs* (Clu. 2), *fitter for popular assemblies than for courts.*

*misericordiā dignior quam contumeliā* (Pison. 32), *more worthy of pity than of disgrace.*

*a.* The construction with *quam* is required when the first of the things compared is not in the Nominative or Accusative.

NOTE 1. — There are several limitations on the use of the ablative of comparison, even when the first of the things compared is in the nominative or accusative. Thus the *quam* construction is regularly used (1) when the comparative is in agreement with a genitive, dative, or ablative: as, — *senex est eō meliōre condiōne quam adulescēs* (Cat. M. 68), *an old man is in this respect in a better position than a young man*; and (2) when the second member of the comparison is modified by a clause: as, — *minor fuit aliquantō is qui primus fabulam dedit quam ei qui*, etc. (Brut. 73), *he who first presented a play was somewhat younger than those who*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point *from which* we reckon. Thus, “*Cicero is eloquent*”; but, starting *from him*, we come to Cato, who is “*more so than he.*”

NOTE 2.—The poets sometimes use the ablative of comparison where the prose construction requires *quam*: as,—*pāne egeō iam mellitis potiōre placentis* (Hor. Ep. i. 10. 11), *I now want bread better than honey-cakes.*

NOTE 3.—Relative pronouns having a definite antecedent never take *quam* in this construction, but always the ablative: as,—*rēx erat Aenēās nobīs, quō iūstior alter nec*, etc. (Aen. i. 544), *Aeneas was our king, than whom no other [was] more righteous.*

*b.* In sentences expressing or implying a *general negative* the ablative (rather than *quam*) is the regular construction when the first member of the comparison is in the nominative or accusative:—

*nihil dētestābilius dēdecore, nihil foedius servitūte* (Phil. iii. 36), *nothing is more dreadful than disgrace, nothing viler than slavery.*

*nēmīnem esse cārīōrem tē* (Att. x. 8A. 1), *that no one is dearer than you.*

*c.* After the comparatives *plūs, minus, amplius, longius*, without *quam*, a word of *measure* or *number* is often used with no change in its case:—

*plūs septingentī captī* (Liv. xli. 12), *more than seven hundred were taken.*  
[Nominative.]

*plūs tertiā parte interfectā* (B. G. iii. 6), *more than a third part being slain.*  
[Ablative Absolute.]

*aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur* (id. ii. 29), *an approach of not more than two hundred feet in width was left.*  
[Genitive of Measure: § 345. b.]

NOTE.—The noun takes the case required by the context, without reference to the comparative, which is in a sort of apposition: “seven hundred were taken [and] more.”

*d.* *Alius* is sometimes followed by the ablative in poetic and colloquial use; in formal prose it is followed by *ac* (atque), *et*, more rarely by *nisi, quam*:—

*nec quicquam aliud libertāte commūnī* (Fam. xi. 2), *nothing else than the common liberty.*

*alius Lysippō* (Hor. Ep. ii. 1. 240), *another than Lysippus.*

*num aliud vidētur esse ac meōrum bonōrum direptiō* (Dom. 51), *does it seem anything different from the plundering of my property?*

*erat historia nihil aliud nisi annālium cōfectiō* (De Or. ii. 52), *history was nothing else but a compiling of records.*

*e.* The comparative of an adverb is usually followed by *quam*, rarely by the ablative except in poetry:—

*tempus tē citius quam ōrātiō dēficeret* (Rosc. Am. 89), *time would fail you sooner than words. But,—*

*cur olivum sanguine viperinō cautius vitat* (Hor. Od. i. 8. 9), *why does he shun oil more carefully than viper's blood?*

NOTE.—Prepositions meaning *before* or *beyond* (as *ante, prae, praeter, suprā*) are sometimes used with a comparative: as,—*scelere ante aliōs immānior omnis* (Aen. i. 347), *more monstrous in crime than all other men.*

## USES OF THE ABLATIVE AS INSTRUMENTAL

**408.** Means, Instrument, Manner, and Accompaniment are denoted by the Instrumental Ablative (see § 398), but some of these uses more commonly require a preposition. As they all come from one source (the old *Instrumental Case*) no sharp line can be drawn between them, and indeed the Romans themselves can hardly have thought of any distinction. Thus, in *omnibus precibus orābant*, *they entreated with every* [kind of] *prayer*, the ablative, properly that of *means*, cannot be distinguished from that of *manner*.

## Ablative of Means or Instrument

**409.** The Ablative is used to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action: —

*certantēs pūgnis, calcibus, unguibus, morsū dēnique* (Tusc. v. 77), *fighting with fists, heels, nails, and even teeth.*

*cum pūgnis et calcibus concisus esset* (Verr. iii. 56), *when he had been pummelled with their fists and heels.*

*meis labōribus interitū rem publicam liberāvi* (Sull. 33), *by my toils I have saved the state from ruin.*

*multae istārum arborum meā manū sunt satae* (Cat. M. 59), *many of those trees were set out with my own hands.*

*vi victa vis, vel potius oppressa virtūte audācia est* (Mil. 30), *violence was overcome by violence, or rather, boldness was put down by courage.*

**a.** The Ablative of Means is used with verbs and adjectives of *filling*, *abounding*, and the like: —

*Deus bonis omnibus explēvit mundum* (Tim. 3), *God has filled the world with all good things.*

*aggere et crātibus fossās explent* (B. G. vii. 86), *they fill up the ditches with earth and fascines.*

*tōtum montem hominibus complēvit* (id. i. 24), *he filled the whole mountain with men.*

*opimus praedā* (Verr. ii. 1. 132), *rich with spoils.*

*vita plēna et cōferta voluptātibus* (Sest. 23), *life filled and crowded with delights.*

*Forum Appi differtum nautis* (Hor. S. i. 5. 4), *Forum Appii crammed with bargemen.*

**NOTE.**—In poetry the Genitive is often used with these words. *Complēō* and *implēō* sometimes take the genitive in prose (cf. § 356); so regularly *plēnus* and (with personal nouns) *complētus* and *refertus* (§ 349. a): —

*omnia plēna luctūs et mæroris fuerunt* (Sest. 128), *everything was full of grief and mourning.*

*ollam dēnāriōrum implēre* (Fam. ix. 18), *to fill a pot with money.* [Here evidently colloquial, otherwise rare in Cicero.]

*convivium vicinōrum complēō* (Cat. M. 46, in the mouth of Cato), *I fill up the banquet with my neighbors.*

*cum complētus mercātorū carcer esset* (Verr. v. 147), *when the prison was full of traders.*

410. The deponents *ūtor*, *fruo*, *fungo*, *potior*, *vesco*, with several of their compounds,<sup>1</sup> govern the Ablative:—

*ūtar* *vestrā benignitāte* (Arch. 18), *I will avail myself of your kindness.*

*ita mihi salvā rē publicā vōbiscum perfrui liceat* (Cat. iv. 11), *so may I enjoy with you the state secure and prosperous.*

*fungi ināni mūnere* (Aen. vi. 885), *to perform an idle service.*

*auro hērōs potitur* (Ov. M. vii. 156), *the hero takes the gold.*

*lacte et ferinā carne vescēbantur* (Iug. 89), *they fed on milk and game.*

NOTE.—This is properly an Ablative of Means (*instrumental*) and the verbs are really in the middle voice (§ 156. a). Thus *ūtor* with the ablative signifies *I employ myself* (or *avail myself*) by means of, etc. But these earlier meanings disappeared from the language, leaving the construction as we find it.

a. *Potior* sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase *potiri rērum*, *to get control or be master of affairs* (§ 357. a):—

*tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant* (B. G. i. 3), *they hope they can get possession of the whole of Gaul.*

NOTE 1.—In early Latin, these verbs are sometimes transitive and take the accusative:—

*fūctus est officium* (Ter. Ph. 281), *he performed the part, etc.*

*ille patria potitur commoda* (Ter. Ad. 871), *he enjoys his ancestral estate.*

NOTE 2.—The Gerundive of these verbs is used personally in the passive as if the verb were transitive (but cf. § 500. 3): as, — *Hēraclīo omnia ūtenda ac possidenda trādidērat* (Verr. ii. 46), *he had given over everything to Heracilius for his use and possession* (to be used and possessed).

411. *Opus* and *ūsus*, signifying *need*, take the Ablative:—<sup>2</sup>

*magistrātibus opus est* (Leg. iii. 5), *there is need of magistrates.*

*nunc viribus ūsus* (Aen. viii. 441), *now there is need of strength.*

NOTE.—The ablative with *ūsus* is not common in classic prose.

a. With *opus* the ablative of a perfect participle is often found, either agreeing with a noun or used as a neuter abstract noun:—

*opus est tuā expromptā malitiā atque astūtiā* (Ter. And. 723), *I must have your best cunning and cleverness set to work.*

*properatō opus erat* (cf. Mil. 49), *there was need of haste.*

NOTE 1.—So rarely with *ūsus* in comedy: as, — *quid istis ūsust cōscriptis* (Pl. Bacch. 749), *what's the good of having them in writing?*

NOTE 2.—The omission of the noun gives rise to complex constructions: as, — *quid opus factōst* (cf. B. G. i. 42), *what must be done?* [Cf. *quid opus est fieri?* with *quō factō opus est?*]

<sup>1</sup> These are *abūtor*, *deūtor* (very rare), *dēfungo*, *dēfruo*, *perfruo*, *perfungo*.

<sup>2</sup> This construction is properly an instrumental one, in which *opus* and *ūsus* mean *work* and *service*, and the ablative expresses that *with which* the work is performed or the service rendered. The noun *ūsus* follows the analogy of the verb *ūtor*, and the ablative with *opus est* appears to be an extension of that with *ūsus est*.

**b.** *Opus* is often found in the predicate, with the *thing needed* in the nominative as subject:—

*dux nobilis et auctor opus est* (Fam. ii. 6. 4), *we need a chief and responsible adviser* (a chief, etc., is necessary for us).

*si quid ipsi opus esset* (B. G. i. 34), *if he himself wanted anything* (if anything should be necessary for him).

*quae opus sunt* (Cato R. R. 14. 3), *things which are required*.

### Ablative of Manner

**412.** The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with *cum*, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun:

*cum celeritate venit*, *he came with speed*. But,—

*summā celeritate venit*, *he came with the greatest speed*.

*quid refert quā mē ratione cōgātis* (Lael. 26), *what difference does it make in what way you compel me?*

**a.** But *cum* is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective:—

*quantō id cum periculō fecerit* (B. G. i. 17), *at what risk he did this*.

*nōn minōre cum taediō recubant* (Plin. Ep. ix. 17. 3), *they recline with no less weariness*.

**b.** With such words of manner as *modō*, *pactō*, *ratione*, *ritū*, *vī*, *viā*, and with stock expressions which have become virtually adverbs (as *silentiō*, *īfure*, *iniuriā*), *cum* is not used:—

*apis Matinae mōre modōque carmina fingō* (Hor. Od. iv. 2. 28), *in the style and manner of a Matinian bee I fashion songs*.

NOTE.—So in poetry the ablative of manner often omits *cum*: as,—*insequitur cumulo aquae mōns* (Aen. i. 106), *a mountain of water follows in a mass*. [Cf. *marmure* (id. i. 124); *rimis* (id. i. 123).]

### Ablative of Accompaniment

**413.** Accompaniment is denoted by the Ablative, regularly with *cum*:—

*cum coniugibus ac liberis* (Att. viii. 2. 3), *with wives and children*.

*cum funditoribus sagittariisque flūmen transgressi* (B. G. ii. 19), *having crossed the river with the archers and slingers*.

*quae supplicatio si cum ceteris cōferatur* (Cat. iii. 15), *if this thanksgiving be compared with others*.

*quae [lēx] esse cum tēlō vetat* (Mil. 11), *the law which forbids [one] to go armed* (be with a weapon).

*si secum suos eduxerit* (Cat. i. 30), *if he leads out with him his associates*. [For *secum*, see § 144. b. n.<sup>1</sup>.]

**a.** The ablative is used without *cum* in some military phrases, and here and there by early writers : —

*subaequēbātur omnibus cōpiis* (B. G. ii. 19), *he followed close with all his forces.* [But also *cum omnibus cōpiis*, id. i. 26.]

*hōc praesidiō profectus est* (Verr. ii. 1. 86), *with this force he set out.*

**NOTE.** — *Misceō* and *iungō*, with some of their compounds, and *cōfundō* take either (1) the Ablative of Accompaniment with or without *cum*, or (2) sometimes the Dative (mostly poetical or late) : —

*mixta dolōre voluptās* (B. Al. 56), *pleasure mingled with pain.*

*cūius animum cum suō misceat* (Lael. 81), *whose soul he may mingle with his own.*

*flētumque cruōri miscuit* (Ov. M. iv. 140), *and mingled tears with blood.*

*Caesar eas cohortis cum exercitū suō coniūxit* (B. C. i. 18), *Cæsar united those cohorts with his own army.*

*āēr coniūctus terris* (Lucr. v. 562), *air united with earth.*

*hūmānō capiti cervicem equinam iungere* (Hor. A. P. 1), *to join to a human head a horse's neck.*

**b.** Words of Contention and the like require *cum* : —

*armis cum hoste certāre* (Off. iii. 87), *to fight with the enemy in arms.*

*libenter haec cum Q. Catulō disputārem* (Manil. 66), *I should gladly discuss these matters with Quintus Catulus.*

**NOTE.** — But words of contention may take the Dative in poetry (see § 368. a).

### Ablative of Degree of Difference

**414.** With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference : —

*quinque milibus passuum distat*, *it is five miles distant.*

*ā milibus passuum circiter duobus* (B. G. v. 32), *at a distance of about two miles.* [For *ā* as an adverb, see § 438. 3.]

*aliquot ante annis* (Tusc. i. 4), *several years before.*

*aliquantō post suspexit* (Rep. vi. 9), *a while after, he looked up.*

*multō mē vigilāre ācrius* (Cat. i. 8), *that I watch much more sharply.*

*nihilō erat ipse Cyclops quam ariēs prūdētiōr* (Tusc. v. 116), *the Cyclops himself was not a whit wiser than the ram.*

**a.** The ablatives *quō . . . eō* (*hōc*), and *quantō . . . tantō*, are used correlatively with comparatives, like the English *the . . . the*<sup>1</sup> : —

*quō minus cupiditātis, eō plūs auctōritātis* (Liv. xxiv. 28), *the less greed, the more weight* (by what the less, by that the more).

*quantō erat gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae mittēbantur* (B. G. v. 45), *the severer the siege was, the more frequently letters were sent.*

<sup>1</sup> In this phrase *the* is not the definite article but a pronominal adverb, being the Anglo-Saxon *thý*, the instrumental case of the pronoun *that*, *that*. This pronoun is used both as relative (*by which*, *by how much*) and as demonstrative (*by that*, *by so much*). Thus *the . . . the* corresponds exactly to *quō . . . eō*.



NOTE.—To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of *quō* and *eō* (*hōc*) with a comparative, even when they have ceased to be distinctly felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause:—

*eōque mē minus paenitet* (N. D. i. 8), *and for that reason I regret less*, etc. (by so much the less I regret).

*haec eō facilius faciēbant, quod* (B. G. iii. 12), *this they did the more easily for this reason, because*, etc. [Cf. *hōc māiōre spē*, quod (id. iii. 9).]

b. The Ablative of Comparison (§ 406) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference are sometimes used together with the same adjective:—

*paulō minus ducentis* (B. C. iii. 28), *a little less than two hundred*.

*patria, quae mihi vitā meā multō est cārior* (Cat. i. 27), *my country, which is much dearer to me than life*.

But the construction with *quam* is more common.

### Ablative of Quality

415. The *quality* of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier.

This is called the *Descriptive Ablative* or *Ablative of Quality*:—<sup>1</sup>

*animō meliōre sunt gladiatōrēs* (Cat. ii. 28), *the gladiators are of a better mind*.

*quae cum esset civitās aequissimō iūre ac foedere* (Arch. 8), *as this was a city with perfectly equal constitutional rights*.

*mulierem eximiā pulchritūdine* (Verr. ii. 1. 64), *a woman of rare beauty*.

*Aristotelēs, vir summō ingeniō, scientiā, cōpiā* (Tusc. i. 7), *Aristotle, a man of the greatest genius, learning, and gift of expression*.

*dē Domitiō dixit versum Graecum eādē sententiā* (Deiot. 25), *concerning Domitius he recited a Greek line of the same tenor*.

NOTE.—The Ablative of Quality (like the Genitive of Quality, § 345) modifies a substantive by *describing* it. It is therefore equivalent to an adjective, and may be either attributive or predicate. In this it differs from other ablatives, which are equivalent to adverbs.

a. In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but *physical* qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative (cf. § 345. n.):—

*capillō sunt prōmissō* (B. G. v. 14), *they have long hair*.

*ut capite opertō sit* (Cat. M. 34), *to have his head covered* (to be with covered head).

*quam fuit inbēcillus P. Āfricāni filius, quam tenni aut nullā potius valētūdine* (id. 35), *how weak was the son of Africanus, of what feeble health, or rather none at all!*

<sup>1</sup> It was originally instrumental and appears to have developed from *accompaniment* (§ 413) and *manner* (§ 412).

## Ablative of Price

**416.** The *price* of a thing is put in the Ablative: —

agrum vëndidit sēstertium sex mīlibus, *he sold the land for 6000 sesterces.*

Antōnius rēgna addixit pecūniā (Phil. vii. 15), *Antony sold thrones for money.*

logōs ridiculōs: quis cēnā poscit (Pl. Stich. 221), *jokes: who wants them for (at the price of) a dinner?*

māgnō illi ea cūctātiō stetit (Liv. ii. 36), *that hesitation cost him dear.*

**NOTE.** — To this head is to be referred the Ablative of the Penalty (§ 353. 1).

**417.** Certain adjectives of quantity are used in the Genitive to denote *indefinite value*. Such are *māgni*, *parvi*, *tanti*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*: —

meā māgni interest, *it is of great consequence to me.*

illud parvi rēfert (Manil. 18), *this is of small account.*

est mihi tanti (Cat. ii. 15), *it is worth the price (it is of so much).*

Verrēsne tibi tanti fuit (Verr. ii. 1. 77), *was Verres of so much account to you?*

tantōne minōris decumae vēniērunt (id. iii. 106), *were the tithes sold for so much less?*

ut tē redimās captum quam quēās minimō: sī nequēās paululō, at quantī quēās (Ter. Eun. 74), *to ransom yourself, when captured, at the cheapest rate you can; if you can't for a small sum, then at any rate for what you can.*

**NOTE.** — These are really Genitives of Quality (§ 345. b).

*a.* The genitive of certain colorless nouns is used to denote *indefinite value*. Such are *nihilī* (*nīlī*), *nothing*; *assis*, *a farthing* (rare); *floccl* (a lock of wool), *a straw*: —

nōn flocci faciō (Att. xiii. 50), *I care not a straw.* [Colloquial.]

utinam ego istuc abs tē factum nīlī penderem (Ter. Eun. 94), *O that I cared nothing for this being done by you!* [Colloquial.]

*b.* With verbs of *exchanging*, either the *thing taken* or the *thing given* in exchange may be in the Ablative of Price. Such are *mūtō*, *commūtō*, *permūtō*, *vertō*: —

fidem suam et religiōnem pecūniā commūtāre (Clu. 129), *to barter his faith and conscience for money.*

exsilium patriā sēde mūtāvit (Q. C. iii. 7. 11), *he exchanged his native land for exile* (he took exile in exchange for his native land).

vēlōx saepe Lucrētilem mūtāt Lycæō Faunus (Hor. Od. i. 17. 1), *nimble Faunus often changes Lycæus for Lucretilis.* [He takes Lucretilis at the price of Lycæus, i.e. he goes from Lycæus to Lucretilis.]

vertere fūneribus triumphōs (id. i. 35. 4), *to change the triumph to the funeral train* (exchange triumphs for funerals). [Poetical.]

NOTE. — With verbs of exchanging *cum* is often used, perhaps with a different conception of the action: as, — *ariēs . . . cum croceō mūtābit vellera lūtō* (Ecl. iv. 44), *the ram shall change his fleece for [one dyed with] the yellow saffron.*

c. With verbs of *buying* and *selling* the simple Ablative of Price must be used, except in the case of *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris*: —

*quanti eam ēmit? vili . . . quot minis? quadrāgintā minis* (Pl. Epid. 51),  
*what did he buy her for? Cheap. For how many minae? Forty.*

### Ablative of Specification

418. The Ablative of Specification denotes that *in respect to which* anything is or is done: —

*virtūte praecēdunt* (B. G. i. 1), *they excel in courage.*

*claudus alterō pede* (Nep. Ages. 8), *lame of one foot.*

*linguā haesitantēs, vōce absoni* (De Or. i. 115), *hesitating in speech, harsh in voice.*

*sunt enim hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine* (Off. i. 105), *for they are men not in fact, but in name.*

*māior nātū, minor nātū*, *older; younger* (cf. § 131. c).

*paulum aetate prōgressi* (Cat. M. 33), *somewhat advanced in age.*

*corpore senex esse poterit, animō numquam erit* (id. 38), *he may be an old man in body, he never will be [old] at heart.*

a. To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative expresses that *in accordance with which* anything is or is done: —

*meō iūre*, *with perfect right*; but, *meō modō*, *in my fashion.*

*meā sententiā*, *in my opinion*; but also more formally, *ex meā sententiā*.

[Here the sense is the same, but the first ablative is *specification*, the second *source*.]

*propinquitāte coniūctōs atque nātūrā* (Lael. 50), *closely allied by kindred and nature.* [Here the ablative is not different in sense from those above, but no doubt is a development of *means*.]

*qui vincit viribus* (id. 55), *who surpasses in strength.* [Here it is impossible to tell whether *viribus* is the *means* of the superiority or that *in respect to which* one is superior.]

NOTE. — As the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. The ablative of *specification* (originally *instrumental*) is closely akin to that of *manner*, and shows some resemblance to *means* and *cause*.

For the Supine in *-ū* as an Ablative of Specification, see § 510.

b. The adjectives *dignus* and *indignus* take the ablative: —

*vir patre, avō, māiōribus suis dignissimus* (Phil. iii. 25), *a man most worthy of his father, grandfather, and ancestors.*

*tū omni honōre indignissimum iūdicāvit* (Vat. 39), *he judged you entirely unworthy of every honor.*

NOTE 1. — So the verb *dignor* in poetry and later prose: as, — *haud equidem tālī mē dignor honōre* (Aen. i. 335), *I do not deem myself worthy of such an honor.*

NOTE 2. — *Dignus* and *indignus* sometimes take the genitive in colloquial usage and in poetry: —

*cūram dignissimam tuae virtūtis* (Balbus in Att. viii. 15), *care most worthy of your noble character.*

*dignus salūtis* (Plaut. Trin. 1153), *worthy of safety.*

*māgnōrum haud umquam indignus avōrum* (Aen. xii. 649), *never unworthy of my great ancestors.*

### Ablative Absolute

419. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute: —<sup>1</sup>

*Caesar, acceptis litteris, nūntium mittit* (B. G. v. 46), *having received the letter, Caesar sends a messenger* (the letter having been received).

*quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar apud milites cōtīōnātur* (B. C. i. 7), *having learned this, Caesar makes a speech to the soldiers.*

*fugātō omni equitātū* (B. G. vii. 68), *all the cavalry being put to flight.*

*interfectō Indutiomārō* (id. vi. 2), *upon the death of Indutiomarus.*

*nōndum hieme cōfectā in finis Nerviorum contendit* (id. vi. 3), *though the winter was not yet over, he hastened into the territory of the Nervii.*

*compressi [sunt] cōnātūs nullō tumultū publicē concitātō* (Cat. i. 11), *the attempts were put down without exciting any general alarm.*

*nē vōbīs quidem omnibus rē etiam tum probātā* (id. ii. 4), *since at that time the facts were not yet proved even to all of you.*

NOTE. — The ablative absolute is an *adverbial modifier* of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name *absolute* (*absolutus*, i.e. *free* or *unconnected*). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause.

a. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction: —<sup>2</sup>

*exiguā parte aestātis reliquā* (B. G. iv. 20), *when but a small part of the summer was left* (a small part of the summer remaining).

*L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō consulis* (id. v. 1), *in the consulship of Lucius Domitius and Appius Claudius* (Lucius Domitius and Appius Claudius [being] consuls). [The regular way of expressing a date, see § 424. g.]

*nīl dēspērāndum Teucrō duce et auspice Teucrō* (Hor. Od. i. 7. 27), *there should be no despair under Teucer's leadership and auspices* (Teucer being leader, etc.).

<sup>1</sup> The Ablative Absolute is perhaps of *instrumental* origin. It is, however, sometimes explained as an outgrowth of the *locative*, and in any event certain locative constructions (of *place* and *time*) must have contributed to its development.

<sup>2</sup> The present participle of *esse*, wanting in Latin (§ 170. b), is used in Sanskrit and Greek as in English.

**b.** A phrase or clause, used substantively, sometimes occurs as ablative absolute with a participle or an adjective:—

*incertō quid peterent* (Liv. xxviii. 36), *as it was uncertain what they should aim at* (it being uncertain, etc.).

*comptō vānum esse formīdinem* (Tac. Ann. i. 66), *when it was found that the alarm was groundless.*

*cūr praetereāt dēmōnstrātō* (Inv. ii. 34), *when the reason for omitting it has been explained* (why it is passed by being explained).

NOTE.—This construction is very rare except in later Latin.

**c.** A participle or an adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the ablative absolute without a substantive:—

*cōsultō* (Off. i. 27), *on purpose* (the matter having been deliberated on).

*mihi optātō vēneris* (Att. xiii. 28. 3), *you will come in accordance with my wish.*

*serēnō* (Liv. xxxi. 12), *under a clear sky* (it [being] clear).

*nec auspiciātō nec litātō* (id. v. 38), *with no auspices or favorable sacrifice.*

*tranquillō, ut aiunt, quilibet gubernātor est* (Sen. Ep. 85. 34), *in good weather, as they say, any man's a pilot.*

**420.** The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause.

Thus it may replace—

1. A Temporal Clause (§ 541 ff.):—

*pater interfectō*, [his] *father having been killed*. [This corresponds to *cum pater interfectus esset*, *when his father had been killed*.]

*recentibus sceleris eiūs vestigiis* (Q. C. vii. 1. 1), *while the traces of the crime were fresh*. [Cf. *dum recentia sunt vestigia*.]

2. A Causal Clause (§ 540):—

*at ei qui Alesiae obsidēbantur praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum expectāverant, cōsumptō omni frūmentō, conciliō coactō cōsultābant* (B. G. vii. 77), *but those who were under siege at Alesia, since the time, etc., had expired, and their grain had been exhausted, calling a council* (see 5 below), *consulted together*. [Cf. *cum diēs praeterisset*, etc.]

*Dārēus, dēspērātā pāce, ad reparandās viris intendit animum* (Q. C. iv. 6. 1), *Darius, since he despaired of peace, devoted his energies to recruiting his forces*. [Cf. *cum pācem dēspērāret*.]

3. A Concessive Clause (§ 527):—

*at eō repugnante fiēbat* (cōsul), *immo vērō eō fiēbat magis* (Mil. 34), *but though he (Clodius) opposed, he (Milo) was likely to be elected consul; nay, rather, etc.*

*turribus excitātis, tamen hās altitudō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat* (B. G. iii. 14), *although towers had been built up, still the high sterns of the enemy's ships rose above them*.

## 4. A Conditional Clause (§ 521):—

occurrēbat ei, mancam et debilem praetūram futūram suam, cōsule Milōne (Mil. 25), *it occurred to him that his praetorship would be maimed and feeble, if Milo were consul.* [si Milō cōsul esset.]

quā (regiōne) subactā licēbit dēcurrere in illud mare (Q. C. ix. 3. 13), *if this region is subdued, we shall be free to run down into that sea.*

quā quidem detractā (Arch. 28), *if this be taken away.*

## 5. A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance:—

ego haec & Chrȳsogonō meā sponte, remōtō Sex. Rōsciō, quaerō (Rosc. Am. 130), *of my own accord, without reference to Sextus Roscius* (Sextus Roscius being put aside), *I ask these questions of Chrysogonus.*

nec imperante nec sciente nec praesente dominō (Mil. 29), *without their master's giving orders, or knowing it, or being present.*

NOTE.—As the English Nominative Absolute is far less common than the Ablative Absolute in Latin, a change of form is generally required in translation. Thus the present participle is oftenest to be rendered in English by a relative clause with *when* or *while*; and the perfect passive participle by the perfect active participle. These changes may be seen in the following example:—

At illi, intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis eiēcērunt; impetūque in eos factō quī erant in statione prō castris conlocatī, ācritēr pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidio cohortibus & Caesare, cum hae (perezi-guō intermissō loci spatio inter sē) cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumis recēpērunt.—CAESAR, B. G. v. 15.

But they, *having paused a space, while our men were unaware and busied in fortifying the camp, suddenly threw themselves out of the woods; then, making an attack upon those who were on guard in front of the camp, they fought fiercely; and, though two cohorts had been sent by Caesar as reinforcements, after these had taken their position (leaving very little space of ground between them), as our men were alarmed by the strange kind of fighting, they dashed most daringly through the midst of them and got off safe.*

For the Ablative with Prepositions, see § 220.

## THE ABLATIVE AS LOCATIVE

## Ablative of Place

421. The *Locative Case* was originally used (literally) to denote the *place where* and (figuratively) to denote the *time when* (a development from the idea of place). But this case was preserved only in names of towns and a few other words, and the *place where* is usually denoted by the Ablative. In this construction the Ablative was, no doubt, used at first without a preposition, but afterwards it became associated in most instances with the preposition *in*.

422. In expressions of Time and Place the Latin shows a variety of idiomatic constructions (Ablative, Accusative, and Locative), which are systematically treated in § 423 ff.

## TIME AND PLACE

## Time

**423.** Time *when*, or *within which*, is expressed by the Ablative; time *how long* by the Accusative.

## 1. Ablative:—

cōstitutā diē, *on the appointed day*; primā luce, *at daybreak*.

quotā hōrā, *at what o'clock?* tertiā vigiliā, *in the third watch*.

tribus proximis annis (Iug. 11), *within the last three years*.

diēbus viginti quinque aggerem extruxerunt (B. G. vii. 24), *within twenty-five days they finished building a mound*.

## 2. Accusative:—

diēs continuos trigintā, *for thirty days together*.

cum triduum iter fecisset (B. G. ii. 16), *when he had marched three days*.

NOTE.—The Ablative of Time is *locative* in its origin (§ 421); the Accusative is the same as that of the *extent of space* (§ 425).

**424.** Special constructions of *time* are the following:—

*a.* The Ablative of time *within which* sometimes takes in, and the Accusative of time *how long* per, for greater precision:—

in diēbus proximis decem (Iug. 28), *within the next ten days*.

ludi per decem diēs (Cat. iii. 20), *games for ten days*.

*b.* Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative:—

militēs quinque hōris proelium sustinuerant (B. C. i. 47), *the men had sustained the fight five hours*.

NOTE.—In this use the period of time is regarded as that *within which* the act is done, and it is only implied that the act lasted *through* the period. Cf. inter annos quattuordecim (B. G. i. 36), *for fourteen years*.

*c.* Time *during which* or *within which* may be expressed by the Accusative or Ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral:—

quintō diē, *within [just] four days* (lit. on the fifth day). [The Romans counted both ends, see § 631. d.]

regnāt iam sextum annum, *he has reigned going on six years*.

*d.* Many expressions have in Latin the construction of *time when*, where in English the main idea is rather of *place*:—

pugnā Cannēnsi (or, apud Cannās), *in the fight at Cannæ*.

ludis Rōmānis, *at the Roman games*.

omnibus Gallicis bellis, *in all the Gallic wars*.

**e.** In many idiomatic expressions of time, the Accusative with *ad*, *in*, or *sub* is used. Such are the following:—

*supplicatio decreta est in Kalendas Ianuarias, a thanksgiving was voted for the first of January.*

*convenerunt ad diem, they assembled on the [appointed] day.*

*ad vesperum, till evening; sub vesperum, towards evening.*

*sub idem tempus, about the same time; sub noctem, at nightfall.*

**f.** Distance of time *before* or *after* anything is variously expressed:

*post (ante) tres annos, post tertium annum, tres post annos, tertium post annum, tribus post annis, tertio post anno (§ 414), three years after.*

*tribus annis (tertio anno) post exilium (postquam electus est), three years after his exile.*

*his tribus proximis annis, within the last three years.*

*paucis annis, a few years hence.*

*abhinc annos tres (tribus annis), ante hos tres annos, three years ago.*

*triennium est cum (tres anni sunt cum), it is three years since.*

*octavo mense quam, the eighth month after (see § 434. n.).*

**g.** In Dates the phrase *ante diem* (a. d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition.

The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, usually without a conjunction (§ 419. a):—

*is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (quintum Kalendas Aprilis) L. Pisone A. Gabinio consulibus (B. G. i. 6), that day was the 5th before the calends of April (March 28), in the consulship of Piso and Gabinius.*

*in a. d. v. Kal. Nov. (Cat. i. 7), to the 5th day before the calends of November (Oct. 28).*

*xv. Kal. Sextilis, the 15th day before the calends of August (July 18). [Full form: quinto decimo die ante Kalendas.]*

For the Roman Calendar, see § 631.

### Extent of Space

**425.** Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative:—

*fossas quindecim pedes latas (B. G. vii 72), trenches fifteen feet broad.*

*progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim (id. v. 9), having advanced about twelve miles.*

*in omni vita sua quemque a recta conscientia transversum unguem non oportet discedere (quoted in Att. xiii. 20), in all one's life, one should not depart a nail's breadth from straightforward conscience.*

**NOTE.**—This Accusative denotes the object *through* or *over which* the action takes place, and is kindred with the Accusative of the End of Motion (§ 427. 2).



*a.* Measure is often expressed by the Genitive of Quality (§ 345. *b*):  
 vallum duodecim pedum (B. G. vii. 72), *a rampart of twelve feet* (in height).

*b.* Distance when considered as *extent of space* is put in the Accusative; when considered as *degree of difference*, in the Ablative (§ 414): —

milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra pōnit (B. G. i. 22), *he pitches his camp three miles from their camp.*

quinque dierum iter abest (Liv. xxx. 29), *it is distant five days' march.*

trigintā milibus passuum infrā eum locum (B. G. vi. 35), *thirty miles below that place* (below by thirty miles).

### Relations of Place

426. Relations of Place<sup>1</sup> are expressed as follows: —

1. The *place from which*, by the Ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*.
2. The *place to which* (or *end of motion*), by the Accusative with *ad* or *in*.
3. The *place where*, by the Ablative with *in* (*Locative Ablative*).

Examples are: —

1. Place *from which*: —

ā septentrīōne, *from the north.*

cum ā vōbīs discesserō (Cat. M. 79), *when I leave you.*

dē prōvinciā dēcedere, *to come away from one's province.*

dē monte, *down from the mountain.*

negōtiātor ex Āfricā (Verr. ii. 1. 14), *a merchant from Africa.*

ex Britannīā obaidēs misērunt (B. G. iv. 38), *they sent hostages from Britain.*

Mōsa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō (id. iv. 10), *the Meuse (flows from) rises in the Vosges mountains.*

2. Place *to which* (*end of motion*): —

nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnērunt (B. G. ii. 17), *they came by night to the Nervii.*

adibam ad istum fundum (Caec. 82), *I was going to that estate.*

in Āfricam nāvigāvit, *he sailed to Africa*; in Ītaliā profectus, *gone to Italy.*

légātum in Treverōs mittit (B. G. iii. 11), *he sends his lieutenant into the [country of the] Treveri.*

<sup>1</sup> Originally all these relations were expressed by the cases alone. The accusative, in one of its oldest functions, denoted the *end of motion*; the ablative, in its proper meaning of separation, denoted the *place from which*, and, in its locative function, the *place where*. The prepositions, originally adverbs, were afterwards added to define more exactly the direction of motion (as in *to upward, toward us*), and by long association became indispensable except as indicated below.

## 3. Place where :—

in hac urbe vitam dēgit, *he passed his life in this city.*

sī in Galliā remanērent (B. G. iv. 8), *if they remained in Gaul.*

dum haec in Venetiā geruntur (id. iii. 17), *while this was going on among the Veneti.*

oppidum in insulā positum (id. vii. 58), *a town situated on an island.*

**427.** With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows :—

1. The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition.
2. The place to which, by the Accusative without a preposition.
3. The place where, by the Locative.<sup>1</sup>

Examples are :—

## 1. Place from which :—

Rōmā profectus, *having set out from Rome*; Rōmā abesse, *to be absent from Rome.*

domō abire, *to leave home*; rūre reversus, *having returned from the country.*

## 2. Place to which :—

cum Rōmam sextō diē Mutinā vēnisset (Fam. xi. 6. 1), *when he had come to Rome from Modena in five days* (on the sixth day).

Dēlō Rhodum nāvigāre, *to sail from Delos to Rhodes.*

rūs ibō, *I shall go into the country.*

domum iit, *he went home.*<sup>2</sup> [So, suās domōs abire, *to go to their homes.*]

## 3. Place where (or at which) :—

Rōmae, *at Rome* (Rōma).

Rhodī, *at Rhodes* (Rhodus).

Samī, *at Samos.*

Tīburi or Tībure, *at Tiber.*

Philippī, *at Philippi.*

domī (rarely domui), *at home.*

Athēnīs, *at Athens* (Athēnae).

Lānuvī, *at Lanuvium.*

Cypri, *at Cyprus.*

Cūribus, *at Cures.*

Capreīs, *at Capri* (Capreae).

rūri, *in the country.*

**a.** The Locative Case is also preserved in the following nouns, which are used (like names of towns) without a preposition :—

bellī, militiae (in contrast to domī), *abroad, in military service.*

humī, *on the ground.*

vesperī (-e), *in the evening.*

forīs, *out of doors.*

animī (see § 358).

herī (-e), *yesterday.*

temperī, *betimes.*

Cf. infēlici arbori (Liv. i. 26), *on the ill-omened (barren) tree*; terrā marique, *by land and sea.*

<sup>1</sup> The Locative has in the singular of the first and second declensions the same form as the Genitive, in the plural and in the third declension the same form as the Dative or Ablative. (See p. 34, footnote.)

<sup>2</sup> The English home in this construction is, like domum, an old accusative of the end of motion.

**428.** Special uses of place *from which*, *to which*, and *where* are the following:—

*a.* With names of towns and small islands *ab* is often used to denote *from the vicinity of*, and *ad* to denote *towards*, *to the neighborhood of*:—

ut à Mutinā discēderet (Phil. xiv. 4), *that he should retire from Modena (which he was besieging).*

erat à Gergoviā dēspectus in castra (B. G. vii. 45), *there was from about Gergovia a view into the camp.*

ad Alesiam proficiscuntur (id. vii. 76), *they set out for Alesia.*

ad Alesiam perveniunt (id. vii. 79), *they arrive at Alesia (i.e. in the neighborhood of the town).*

D. Laelius cum classe ad Brundisium vēnit (B. C. iii. 100), *Decimus Laelius came to Brundisium with a fleet (arriving in the harbor).*

*b.* The general words *urbs*, *oppidum*, *insula* require a preposition to express the place *from which*, *to which*, or *where*:—

*ab* (ex) urbe, *from the city.*

in urbe, *in the city.*

ad urbem, *to the city.*

Rōmæ in urbe, *in the city of Rome.*

in urbem, *into the city.*

Rōmā ex urbe, *from the city of Rome.*

ad urbem Rōmam (Rōmam ad urbem), *to the city of Rome.*

*c.* With the name of a country, *ad* denotes *to the borders*; *in* with the accusative, *into the country itself*. Similarly *ab* denotes *away from the outside*; *ex*, *out of the interior*.

Thus *ad Italiam pervēnit* would mean *he came to the frontier*, regardless of the destination; *in Italiam*, *he went to Italy*, i.e. to a place within it, to Rome, for instance.

So *ab Italiā profectus est* would mean *he came away from the frontier*, regardless of the original starting-point; *ex Italiā*, *he came from Italy*, from within, as from Rome, for instance.

*d.* With all names of places *at*, meaning *near* (not *in*), is expressed by *ad* or *apud* with the accusative.

pugna ad Cannās, *the fight at Cannae.*

conchās ad Caiētā legunt (De Or. ii. 22), *at Caieta (along the shore).*

ad (apud) Inferōs, *in the world below (near, or among, those below).*

ad foris, *at the doors.*

ad iānuam, *at the door.*

NOTE 1.—*In the neighborhood of* may be expressed by *circā* with the accusative; *among*, by *apud* with the accusative:—

apud Graecōs, *among the Greeks.*

apud mē, *at my house.*

apud Solēnsis (Leg. ii. 41), *at Soli.*

circā Capuam, *round about Capua.*

NOTE 2.—In citing an *author*, *apud* is regularly used; in citing a particular *work*, *in*. Thus,—*apud Xenophōntem*, *in Xenophon*; but, in *Xenophōntis Oeconomicōs*, *in Xenophon's Oeconomicus*.

**e.** Large islands, and all places when thought of as a *territory* and not as a *locality*, are treated like names of countries:—

in Siciliā, in Sicily.

in Ithacā leporēs illāti moriuntur (Plin. H. N. viii. 226), in Ithaca hares, when carried there, die. [Ulysses lived at Ithaca would require Ithacae.]

**f.** The Ablative without a preposition is used to denote the *place from which* in certain idiomatic expressions:—

cessisset patriā (Mil. 68), he would have left his country.

patriā pellere, to drive out of the country.

manū mittere, to emancipate (let go from the hand).

**g.** The poets and later writers often omit the preposition with the place *from which* or *to which* when it would be required in classical prose:—

mānīs Acherontē remissōs (Aen. v. 99), the spirits returned from Acheron.

Scythiā profecti (Q. C. iv. 12. 11), setting out from Scythia.

Italiam Laviniaque vēnit litora (Aen. i. 2), he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.

terram Hesperiam veniēs (id. ii. 781), you shall come to the Hesperian land.

Aegyptum proficiscitur (Tac. Ann. ii. 59), he sets out for Egypt.

**h.** In poetry the place *to which* is often expressed by the Dative, occasionally also in later prose:—

it clamor caelō (Aen. v. 451), a shout goes up to the sky.

facilis dēscēsus Avernō (id. vi. 126), easy is the descent to Avernus.

diadēma capiti repōnere iussit (Val. Max. v. 1. 9), he ordered him to put back the diadem on his head.

**i.** The preposition is not used with the supine in -um (§ 509) and in the following old phrases:—

exsequiās ire, to go to the funeral.

infitiās ire, to resort to denial.

pessum ire, to go to ruin.

pessum dare, to ruin (cf. perdō).

vēnum dare, to sell (give to sale). [Hence vēndere.]

vēnum ire, to be sold (go to sale). [Hence vēnīre.]

forās (used as adverb), out: as, — forās ēgredi, to go out of doors.

suppetiās advenire, to come to one's assistance.

**j.** When two or more names of place are used with a verb of motion, each must be under its own construction:—

quadriduō quō haec gesta sunt rēs ad Chrysogonum in castra L. Sullae Volaterrās dēfertur (Ros. Am. 20), within four days after this was done, the matter was reported to Chrysogonus in Sulla's camp at Volaterrae.

NOTE.—The accusative with or without a preposition is often used in Latin when motion to a place is implied but not expressed in English (see *k*, N.).

**k.** *Domum* denoting the place *to which*, and the locative *domi*, may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive:—

*domum rēgis* (Deiot. 17), *to the king's house*. [But also in *M. Laecae domum* (Cat. i. 8), *to Marcus Laeca's house*.]

*domi meae*, *at my house*; *domi Caesaris*, *at Caesar's house*.

*domi suae vel aliēnae*, *at his own or another's house*.

NOTE.—At times when thus modified, and regularly when otherwise modified, in *domum* or in *domō* is used:—

in *domum privātam* conveniunt (Tac. H. iv. 55), *they come together in a private house*.

in *Mārci Crassi castissimā domō* (Cael. 9), *in the chaste home of Marcus Crassus*.

[Cf. *ex Anniānā Milōnis domō*, § 302. e.]

**429.** The *place where* is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances:—

1. Often in indefinite words, such as *locō*, *parte*, etc.:—

*quibus locō positis* (De Or. iii. 153), *when these are set in position*.

*quā parte bellī vicerant* (Liv. xxi. 22), *the branch of warfare in which they were victorious*.

*locis certis horrea cōstituit* (B. C. iii. 32), *he established granaries in particular places*.

2. Frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives (regularly when *tōtus* is used):—

*mediā urbe* (Liv. i. 33), *in the middle of the city*.

*tōtā Siciliā* (Verr. iv. 51), *throughout Sicily* (in the whole of Sicily).

*tōtā Tarracinā* (De Or. ii. 240), *in all Tarracina*.

*cūctā Asiā atque Graeciā* (Manil. 12), *throughout the whole of Asia and Greece too*.

3. In many idiomatic expressions which have lost the idea of place:

*pendēmus animis* (Tusc. i. 96), *we are in suspense of mind* (in our minds).

*socius periculis vōbiscum aderō* (Iug. 85. 47), *I will be present with you, a companion in dangers*.

4. Freely in poetry:—

*litore curvō* (Aen. iii. 16), *on the winding shore*.

*antrō sēclūsa relinquit* (id. iii. 446), *she leaves them shut up in the cave*.

*Ēpirō, Hesperīā* (id. iii. 503), *in Epirus, in Hesperia*.

*premit altum corde dolōrem* (id. i. 209), *he keeps down the pain deep in his heart*.

**α.** The *way by which* is put in the Ablative without a preposition:

*viā breviorē equitēs praemisi* (Fam. x. 9), *I sent forward the cavalry by a shorter road*.

*Aegaeō mari trāiēcit* (Liv. xxxvii. 14), *he crossed by way of the Aegean Sea*.

*prōvehimur pelagō* (Aen. iii. 506), *we sail forth over the sea*.

NOTE.—In this use the *way by which* is conceived as the means of passage.

**b.** Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with *ab* (rarely *ex*), properly meaning *from*:—<sup>1</sup>

ā tergō, *in the rear*; ā sinistrā, *on the left hand*. [Cf. *hinc*, *on this side*.]

ā parte Pompēianā, *on the side of Pompey*.

ex alterā parte, *on the other side*.

māgnā ex parte, *in a great degree (from, i.e. in, a great part)*.

**430.** Verbs of *placing*, though implying motion, take the construction of the place *where*:—

Such are *pōnō*, *locō*, *collocō*, *statuō*, *cōstituō*, etc.:—

quī in sēde ac domō collocāvit (Par. 25), *who put [one] into his place and home*.

statuitur eques Rōmānus in Aprōnī conviviō (Verr. iii. 62), *a Roman knight is brought into a banquet of Apronius*.

insula Dēlos in Aegaeō mari posita (Manil. 55), *the island of Delos, situated in the Aegean Sea*.

sī in unō Pompēiō omniā pōnerētis (id. 59), *if you made everything depend on Pompey alone*.

NOTE.—Compounds of *pōnō* take various constructions (see the Lexicon under each word).

**431.** Several verbs are followed by the Ablative.

These are *acquiēscō*, *dēlector*, *laetor*, *gaudeō*, *glōrior*, *nītor*, *stō*, *maneō*, *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *cōsistō*, *contineor*.

nōminibus veterum glōriantur (Or. 169), *they glory in the names of the ancients*.

[Also, *dē divitils* (in virtūte, circā rem, aliquid, haec) glōriāri.]

spēs nīti (Att. iii. 9), *to rely on hope*.

prudentiā fidēs (Off. i. 81), *trusting in prudence*.

NOTE.—The ablative with these verbs sometimes takes the preposition *in* (but *fidō* in *is late*), and the ablative with them is probably locative. Thus,—in quibus causa nītitur (Cael. 25), *on whom the case depends*.

With several of these verbs the neuter Accusative of pronouns is often found. For *fidō* and *cōfidō* with the Dative, see § 367.

**a.** The verbals *frētus*, *contentus*, and *laetus* take the Locative Ablative:—

frētus grātiā Brūtī (Att. v. 21. 12), *relying on the favor of Brutus*.

laetus praedā, *rejoicing in the booty*.

contentus sorte, *content with his lot*. [Possibly Ablative of Cause.]

nōn fuit contentus glōriā (Dom. 101), *he was not content with the glory*.

NOTE.—So *intentus*, rarely: *as*,—aliquō negotiō intentus (Sall. Cat. 2), *intent on some occupation*.

<sup>1</sup> Apparently the direction whence the sensuous impression comes.

SPECIAL USES OF PREPOSITIONS<sup>1</sup>

## Adverbs and Prepositions

**432.** Certain Adverbs and Adjectives are sometimes used as Prepositions:—

*a.* The adverbs *pridīē*, *postridīē*, *propius*, *proximē*, less frequently the adjectives *propior* and *proximus*, may be followed by the Accusative:—

*pridīē Nōnās Māiās* (Att. ii. 11), *the day before the Nones of May* (see § 631).

*postridīē lūdōs* (Att. xvi. 4), *the day after the games*.

*propius periculum* (Liv. xxi. 1), *nearer to danger*.

*propior montem* (Iug. 49), *nearer the hill*.

*proximus mare oceanum* (B. G. iii. 7), *nearest the ocean*.

NOTE.—*Pridīē* and *postridīē* take also the Genitive (§ 359. b). *Propior*, *propius*, *proximus*, and *proximē*, take also the Dative, or the Ablative with *ab*:—

*propius Tiberī quam Thermopylīs* (Nep. Hann. 8), *nearer to the Tiber than to Thermopylæ*.

*Sugambri quī sunt proximī Rhēnō* (B. G. vi. 35), *the Sugambri, who are nearest to the Rhine*.

*proximus ā postrēmō* (Or. 217), *next to the last*.

*b.* *Ūsque* sometimes takes the Accusative, but *fīsque ad* is much more common:—

*terminōs ūsque Libyæ* (Iust. i. 1. 5), *to the bounds of Libya*.

*ūsque ad castra hostium* (B. G. i. 51), *to the enemy's camp*.

*c.* The adverbs *palam*, *procul*, *simul*, may be used as prepositions and take the Ablative:—

*rem crēditōrī palam populō solvit* (Liv. vi. 14), *he paid the debt to his creditor in the presence of the people*.

*haud procul castrīs in modum mūnicij exstrūcta* (Tac. H. iv. 22), *not far from the camp, built up like a town*.

*simul nobīs habitat barbarus* (Ov. Tr. v. 10. 29), *close among us dwells the barbarian*.

NOTE.—But *simul* regularly takes *cum*; *procul* is usually followed by *ab* in classic writers; and the use of *palam* as a preposition is comparatively late.

*d.* The adverb *clam* is found in early Latin with the Accusative, also once with the Genitive and once in classical Latin with the Ablative:—

*clam mātrem suam* (Pl. Mil. 112), *unknown to his mother*.

*clam patris* (id. Merc. 43), *without his father's knowledge*.

*clam vōbīs* (B. C. ii. 32. 8), *without your knowledge*.

<sup>1</sup> For a list of Prepositions with their ordinary uses, see § 221.

**433.** Prepositions often retain their original meaning as Adverbs:—

1. *Ante* and *post* in relations of time:—

*quōs paulō ante diximus* (Brut. 32), *whom I mentioned a little while ago.*  
*post tribus diēbus*, *three days after* (cf. § 424. f).

2. *Adversus*, *circiter*, *prope*:—

*nēmō adversus* *ibat* (Liv. xxxvii. 13. 8), *no one went out in opposition.*  
*circiter pars quārta* (Sall. Cat. 56), *about the fourth part.*  
*prope exanimātus*, *nearly lifeless.*

3. *Ā* or *ab*, *off*, in expressions of *distance*, with the Ablative of Degree of Difference (§ 414):—

*ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum expectābant* (B. G. v. 32), *at a distance of about two miles (about two miles off) they awaited the approach of the Romans.*

4. In general, prepositions ending in *-ā*:—

*Aeolus haec contrā* (Aen. i. 76), *thus Æolus in reply.*  
*forte fuit iuxtā tumulus* (id. iii. 22), *there happened to be a mound close by.*

**434.** Some Prepositions and Adverbs which imply *comparison* are followed, like comparatives, by *quam*, which may be separated by several words, or even clauses.

Such words are *ante*, *prius*, *post*, *postea*, *pridie*, *postridie*; also *magis* and *prae* in compounds:—

*neque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dedit* (Liv. xxxix. 10), *nor did he let him go until he gave a pledge.*

*post diem tertium quam dixerat* (Mil. 44), *the third day after he said it.*

*Catō ipse iam servire quam pugnare māvult* (Att. vii. 15), *Cato himself by this time had rather be a slave than fight.*

*Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia praeferre* (B. G. i. 17), *[they] prefer the rule of Gauls to that of Romans.*

NOTE.—The ablative of time is sometimes followed by *quam* in the same way (§ 424. f): *as, — octāvō mēse quam* (Liv. xxi. 15), *within eight months after, etc.*

**435.** The following Prepositions sometimes come after their nouns: *ad*, *citrā*, *circum*, *contrā*, *dē*, *ē* (*ex*), *inter*, *iuxtā*, *penes*, *propter*, *ultrā*; so regularly *tenus* and *versus*, and occasionally others:—

*[ūsus] quem penes arbitrium est et iūs et norma loquendi* (Hor. A. P. 72), *custom, under whose control is the choice, right, and rule of speech.*

*cūius ā mē corpus est cremātum, quod contrā decuit ab illō meum* (Cat. M. 84), *whose body I burned [on the funeral pile], while on the contrary (contrary to which) mine should have been burned by him.*



## SYNTAX OF THE VERB

### MOODS AND TENSES

**436.** The Syntax of the Verb relates chiefly to the use of the Moods (which express the *manner* in which the action is conceived) and the Tenses (which express the *time* of the action). There is no difference in origin between mood and tense; and hence the uses of mood and tense frequently cross each other. Thus the tenses sometimes have modal significations (compare indicative in apodosis, § 517. c; future for imperative, § 449. b); and the moods sometimes express time (compare subjunctive in future conditions, § 516. b, and notice the want of a future subjunctive).

The parent language had, besides the Imperative mood, two or more forms with modal signification. Of these, the Subjunctive appears with two sets of terminations, -ā-m, -ā-s, in the present tense (moneam, dicam), and -e-m, -e-s, in the present (amem) or other tenses (essem, dixissem). The Optative was formed by iſ-, i-, with the present stem (sim, duim) or the perfect (dixerim). (See details in §§ 168, 169.)

Each mood has two general classes or ranges of meaning. The uses of the Subjunctive may all be classed under the general ideas of *will* or *desire* and of action *vividly conceived*; and the uses of the Optative under the general ideas of *wish* and of action *vaguely conceived*.

It must not be supposed, however, that in any given construction either the subjunctive or the optative was deliberately used *because* it denoted conception or possibility. On the contrary, each construction has had its own line of development from more tangible and literal forms of thought to more vague and ideal; and by this process the mood used came to have in each case a special meaning, which was afterwards habitually associated with it in that construction. Similar developments have taken place in English. Thus, the expression *I would do this* has become equivalent to a mild command, while by analysis it is seen to be the apodosis of a present condition contrary to fact (§ 517): *if I were you*, etc. By further analysis, *I would do* is seen to have meant, originally, *I should have wished* (or *I did wish*) to do.

In Latin, the original Subjunctive and the Optative became confounded in meaning and in form, and were merged in the Subjunctive, at first in the present tense. Then new tense-forms of the subjunctive were formed,<sup>1</sup> and to these the original as well as the derived meanings of both moods became attached (see § 438). All the *independent* uses of the Latin subjunctive are thus to be accounted for.

The *dependent* uses of the subjunctive have arisen from the employment of some *independent* subjunctive construction in connection with a main statement. Most frequently the main statement is prefixed to a sentence containing a subjunctive, as a more complete expression of a complex idea (§ 268). Thus a question implying a general negative (quin rogem? *why should n't I ask?*) might have the general negative expressed in a prefixed statement (nūlla causa est, *there is no reason*); or *abeat*, *let him go away*, may be expanded into *sine abeat*. When such a combination comes into habitual use, the original meaning of the subjunctive partially or wholly disappears and a new meaning arises by implication. Thus, in *misit legatos qui dicerent*, *he sent ambassadors to say* (i.e. *who should say*), the original hortatory sense of the subjunctive is partially lost, and the mood becomes in part an expression of purpose. Similar processes may be seen in the growth of Apodosis. Thus, *tolle hanc opinionem, luctum sustuleris*, *remove this notion, you will have done away with grief* (i.e. *if you remove, etc.*).

<sup>1</sup> For the signification of the tense-endings, see §§ 168, 169.

The Infinitive is originally a verbal noun (§ 451), modifying a verb like other nouns: *volō vidēre*, lit. "I wish for-seeing": compare English "what went ye out for to see?" But in Latin it has been surprisingly developed, so as to have forms for tense, and some proper modal characteristics, and to be used as a substitute for finite moods.

The other noun and adjective forms of the verb have been developed in various ways, which are treated under their respective heads below.

The proper Verbal Constructions may be thus classified:—

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| I. Indicative: Direct Assertion or Question (§ 437). |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Exhortation or Command (§ 439).</li> <li>2. Concession (§ 440).</li> <li>3. Wish (§ 441).</li> <li>4. Question of Doubt etc. (§ 444).</li> <li>5. Possibility or Contingency (§ 446).</li> </ol> |
| II. Subjunctive:                                     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Independent Uses:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Conditions { Future (less vivid) (§ 516. b, c).<br/>Contrary to Fact (§ 517).</li> <li>2. Purpose (with <i>ut</i>, <i>nē</i>) (§ 531).</li> <li>3. Characteristic (Relative Clause) (§ 535).</li> <li>4. Result (with <i>ut</i>, <i>ut nōn</i>) (§ 537).</li> <li>5. Time (with <i>cum</i>) (§ 546).</li> <li>6. Intermediate (Indirect Discourse) (§ 592).</li> <li>7. Indirect Questions or Commands (§§ 574, 588).</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Dependent Uses:</li> </ol> |  |
| III. Imperative:                                     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Direct Commands (often Subjunctive) (§ 448).</li> <li>2. Statutes, Laws, and Wills (§ 449. 2).</li> <li>3. Prohibitions (early or poetic use) (§ 450. a).</li> </ol>   |  |
| IV. Infinitive:                                      | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Subject of <i>esse</i> and Impersonal Verbs (§§ 452, 454).</li> <li>b. Objective Constructions:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Complementary Infinitive (§ 456).</li> <li>2. Indirect Discourse (with Subject Accusative) (§ 580).</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Idiomatic Uses:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Purpose (poetic or Greek use) (§ 460).</li> <li>2. Exclamation (with Subject Accusative) (§ 462).</li> <li>3. Historical Infinitive (§ 463).</li> </ol> </li> </ol>                    |  |

## MOODS

### INDICATIVE MOOD

**437.** The Indicative is the mood of direct assertions or questions when there is no modification of the verbal idea except that of time.

*a.* The Indicative is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the Subjunctive:—

*longum est, it would be tedious* [if, etc.]; *satiū erat, it would have been better* [if, etc.]; *persequi possum, I might follow up* [in detail].

**NOTE.**—Substitutes for the Indicative are (1) the Historical Infinitive (§ 463), and (2) the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (§ 580).

For the Indicative in Conditions, see §§ 515, 516; for the Indicative in implied Commands, see § 449. b.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

**438.** The Subjunctive in general expresses the verbal idea with some modification<sup>1</sup> such as is expressed in English by auxiliaries, by the infinitive, or by the rare subjunctive (§ 157. *b*).

*a.* The Subjunctive is used *independently* to express —

1. An Exhortation or Command (*Hortatory Subjunctive*: § 439).
2. A Concession (*Concessive Subjunctive*: § 440).
3. A Wish (*Optative Subjunctive*: § 441).
4. A Question of Doubt etc. (*Deliberative Subjunctive*: § 444).
5. A Possibility or Contingency (*Potential Subjunctive*: § 446).

For the special idiomatic uses of the Subjunctive in Apodosis, see § 514.

*b.* The Subjunctive is used in *dependent* clauses to express —

1. Condition: future or contrary to fact (§§ 516. *b*, *c*, 517).
2. Purpose (*Final*, § 531).
3. Characteristic (§ 535).
4. Result (*Consecutive*, § 537).
5. Time (*Temporal*, § 546).
6. Indirect Question (§ 574).

*c.* The Subjunctive is also used with Conditional Particles of Comparison (§ 524), and in subordinate clauses in the Indirect Discourse (§ 580).

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

## Hortatory Subjunctive

**439.** The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an *exhortation* or a *command*. The negative is *nē*.

*hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus* (B. G. vii. 38), *let us kill these robbers*.

*caveant intemperantiam, meminerint verēcundiae* (Off. i. 122), *let them shun excess and cherish modesty*.

NOTE 1. — The hortatory subjunctive occurs rarely in the perfect (except in prohibitions: § 450): as, — *Epicūrus hōc viderit* (Acad. ii. 19), *let Epicurus look to this*.

NOTE 2. — The term *hortatory subjunctive* is sometimes restricted to the first person plural, the second and third persons being designated as the *jussive subjunctive*; but the constructions are substantially identical.

<sup>1</sup> These modifications are of various kinds, each of which has had its own special development (cf. § 436). The subjunctive in Latin has also many idiomatic uses (as in clauses of Result and Time) where the English does not modify the verbal idea at all, but expresses it directly. In such cases the Latin merely takes a different view of the action and has developed the construction differently from the English.

NOTE 3. — Once in Cicero and occasionally in the poets and later writers the negative with the hortatory subjunctive is *nōn*: *as*, — *ā lēgibus nōn recōdāmus* (Clu. 155), *let us not abandon the laws*.

*a.* The Second Person of the hortatory subjunctive is used only of an *indefinite subject*, except in prohibitions, in early Latin, and in poetry: —

*iniūriās fortūnae, quās ferre nequeās, dēfugiendō relinqūās* (Tusc. v. 118), *the wrongs of fortune, which you cannot bear, leave behind by flight*.

*exoriāre aliquis ultor* (Aen. iv. 625), *rise, some avenger*.

*istō bonō ūtāre dum adsit, cum absit nē requirās* (Cat. M. 33), *use this blessing while it is present; when it is wanting do not regret it*.

*doceās iter et sacra ostia pandās* (Aen. vi. 109), *show us the way and lay open the sacred portals*.

For Negative Commands (*prohibitions*), see § 450.

*b.* The Imperfect and Pluperfect of the hortatory subjunctive denote an *unfulfilled obligation* in past time: —

*morerētur, inqūēs* (Rab. Post. 29), *he should have died, you will say*.

*potius docēret* (Off. iii. 88), *he should rather have taught*.

*nē poposcissēs* (Att. ii. 1. 3), *you should not have asked*.

*saltem aliquid dē pondere dētrāxisset* (Fin. iv. 57), *at least he should have taken something from the weight*.

NOTE 1. — In this construction the Pluperfect usually differs from the Imperfect only in more clearly representing the time for action as *momentary* or as *past*.

NOTE 2. — This use of the subjunctive is carefully to be distinguished from the *potential* use (§ 446). The difference is indicated by the translation, *should* or *ought* (not *would* or *might*).

**440.** The Hortatory Subjunctive is used to express a *concession*.<sup>1</sup> The Present is used for present time, the Perfect for past. The negative is *nē*.

*sit fūr, sit sacrilegus: at est bonus imperātor* (Verr. v. 4), *grant he is a thief, a godless wretch: yet he is a good general*.

*fuerit aliis; tibi quandō esse coepit* (Verr. ii. 1. 37), *suppose he was [so] to others; when did he begin to be to you?*

*nēmō is umquam fuit: nē fuerit* (Or. 101), *there never was such a one [you will say]: granted (let there not have been)*.

*nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est* (Tusc. ii. 14), *granted that pain is not the greatest evil, at least it is an evil*.

NOTE. — The concessive subjunctive with *quamvis* and *licet* is originally hortatory (§ 527. *a, b*).

For other methods of expressing Concession, see § 527.

For the Hortatory Subjunctive denoting a Proviso, see § 528. *a*.

<sup>1</sup> Many scholars regard the concessive subjunctive as a development of the Optative Subjunctive in a wish.

## Optative Subjunctive

**441.** The Optative Subjunctive is used to express a Wish. The present tense denotes the wish as *possible*, the imperfect as *unaccomplished* in present time, the pluperfect as *unaccomplished* in past time. The negative is *nē*:—

*ita vivam* (Att. v. 15), *as true as I live, so may I live.*

*ne vivam si sciō* (id. iv. 18. 8), *I wish I may not live if I know.*

*dī tē perduint* (Deiot. 21), *the gods confound thee!*

*valeant, valeant civēs mei; sint incolumēs* (Mil. 93), *farewell, farewell to my fellow-citizens; may they be secure from harm.*

*dī facerent sine patre forem* (Ov. M. viii. 72), *would that the gods allowed me to be without a father (but they do not)!*

*a.* The perfect subjunctive in a wish is archaic:—

*dī faxint* (Fam. xiv. 3. 3), *may the gods grant.*

*quod dī ōmen āverterint* (Phil. xii. 14, in a religious formula), *and may the gods avert this omen.*

**442.** The Optative Subjunctive is often preceded by the particle *utinam*; so regularly in the imperfect and pluperfect:—

*falsus utinam vātēs sim* (Liv. xxi. 10. 10), *I wish I may be a false prophet.*

*utinam Clōdīus viveret* (Mil. 103), *would that Clodius were now alive.*

*utinam mē mortuum vidissēs* (Q. Fr. i. 3. 1), *would you had seen me dead.*

*utinam nē vērē scriberem* (Fam. v. 17. 3), *would that I were not writing the truth.*

NOTE.—*Utinam nōn* is occasionally used instead of *utinam nē*: as,—*utinam susceptus nōn essem* (Att. ix. 9. 3), *would that I had not been born.*

*a.* In poetry and old Latin *utī* or *ut* often introduces the optative subjunctive; and in poetry *sī* or *ō sī* with the subjunctive sometimes expresses a wish:—

*ut pereat positum rōbigine tēlum* (Hor. S. ii. 1. 43), *may the weapon unused perish with rust.*

*ō sī angulus ille accēdat* (id. ii. 6. 8), *O if that corner might only be added!*

*sī nunc sē nōbīs ille aureus rāmus ostendat* (Aen. vi. 187), *if now that golden branch would only show itself to us!*

NOTE 1.—The subjunctive with *utī* (*ut*) or *utinam* was originally deliberative, meaning *how may I*, etc. (§ 444). The subjunctive with *sī* or *ō sī* is a protasis (§ 512. a), the apodosis not being expressed.

NOTE 2.—The subjunctive of wish without a particle is seldom found in the imperfect or pluperfect except by sequence of tenses in Indirect Discourse (§ 585): as,—*ac venerāta Cērēs, ita culmō surget altō* (Hor. S. ii. 2. 124), *and Ceres worshipped [with libations] that so she might rise with tall stalk.* [In addressing the goddess directly the prayer would be: *ita surgās.*]

b. *Velim* and *vellem*, and their compounds, with a subjunctive or infinitive, are often equivalent to an optative subjunctive:—

*velim tibi persuādeās* (Fam. ix. 13. 2), *I should like to have you believe (I should wish that you would persuade yourself).*

*dē Menedēmō vellem vērum fuisset*, *dē rēginā velim vērum sit* (Att. xv. 4. 4),

*about Menedemus I wish it had been true; about the queen I wish it may be.*

*nōllem accidisset tempus* (Fam. iii. 10. 2), *I wish the time never had come.*

*mālem Cerberum metuerēs* (Tusc. i. 12), *I had rather have had you afraid of Cerberus (I should have preferred that you feared Cerberus).*

NOTE.—*Velim* etc., in this use, are either potential subjunctives, or apodoses with the protasis omitted (§ 447. 1. N.). The *thing wished* may be regarded as a substantive clause used as object of the verb of wishing (§ 565. N.<sup>1</sup>).

### Deliberative Subjunctive

443. The Subjunctive was used in sentences of interrogative form, at first when the speaker wished information in regard to the will or desire of the person addressed. The mood was therefore *hortatory* in origin. But such questions when addressed by the speaker to himself, as if asking his own advice, become *deliberative* or, not infrequently, merely *exclamatory*. In such cases the mood often approaches the meaning of the Potential (see § 445). In these uses the subjunctive is often called *Deliberative* or *Dubitative*.

444. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) *doubt*, *indignation*, or (2) an *impossibility* of the thing's being done. The negative is *nōn*.

*quid agam, iudicēs? quō mō vertam* (Verr. v. 2), *what am I to do, judges? whither shall I turn?*

*etiamne eam salūtem* (Pl. Rud. 1275), *shall I greet her?*

*quid hōc homine faciās? quod supplicium dignum libidini eius inveniās* (Verr. ii. 40), *what are you to do with this man? what fit penalty can you devise for his wantonness?*

*an ego nōn venīrem* (Phil. ii. 8), *what, should I not have come?*

*quid dicerem* (Att. vi. 8. 9), *what was I to say?*

*quis enim cōlāverit ignem* (Ov. H. xv. 7), *who could conceal the flame?*

NOTE.—The hortatory origin of some of these questions is obvious. Thus,—*quid faciāmus? = faciāmus* [aliquid], *quid? let us do—what?* (Compare the expanded form *quid vis faciāmus? what do you wish us to do?*) Once established, it was readily transferred to the past: *quid faciam? what am I to do? quid facerem? what was I to do?* Questions implying impossibility, however, cannot be distinguished from Apodosis (cf. § 517).

a. In many cases the question has become a mere exclamation, rejecting a suggested possibility:

*mihi umquam bonōrum praesidium defutūrum putārem* (Mil. 94), *could I think that the defence of good men would ever fail me!*

NOTE.—The indicative is sometimes used in deliberative questions: *as,—quid agō, what am I to do?*

### Potential Subjunctive

**445.** Of the two principal uses of the Subjunctive in independent sentences (cf. § 436), the second, or Potential Subjunctive,<sup>1</sup> is found in a variety of sentence-forms having as their common element the fact that the mood represents the action as merely *conceived* or *possible*, not as desired (*hortatory, optative*) or real (*indicative*). Some of these uses are very old and may go back to the Indo-European parent speech, but no satisfactory connection between the Potential and the Hortatory and Optative Subjunctive has been traced. There is no single English equivalent for the Potential Subjunctive; the mood must be rendered, according to circumstances, by the auxiliaries *would, should, may, might, can, could*.

**446.** The Potential Subjunctive is used to suggest an action as *possible* or *conceivable*. The negative is *nōn*.

In this use the Present and the Perfect refer without distinction to the immediate *future*; the Imperfect (occasionally the Perfect) to *past* time; the Pluperfect (which is rare) to what *might have* happened.

**447.** The Potential Subjunctive has the following uses:—

1. In cautious or modest assertions in the first person singular of expressions of *saying, thinking, or wishing* (present or perfect):—

*pāce tuā dixerim* (Mil. 103), *I would say by your leave.*

*haud sciam an* (Lael. 51), *I should incline to think.*

*tū velim sic existimēs* (Fam. xii. 6), *I should like you to think so.*

*certum affirmāre nōn ausim* (Liv. iii. 23), *I should not dare to assert as sure.*

NOTE.—*Vellem, nōlem, or māllem* expressing an unfulfilled wish in present time may be classed as independent potential subjunctive or as the apodosis of an unexpressed condition (§ 521): as—*vellem adesset M. Antōnius* (Phil. i. 16), *I could wish Antony were here.*

2. In the indefinite second person singular of verbs of *saying, thinking, and the like* (present or imperfect):—

*crēdās nōn dē puerō scriptum sed ā puerō* (Plin. Ep. iv. 7. 7), *you would think that it was written not about a boy but by a boy.*

*crēderēs victōs* (Liv. ii. 43. 9), *you would have thought them conquered.*

*reōs dicerēs* (id. ii. 35. 5), *you would have said they were culprits.*

*vidērēs susurrōs* (Hor. S. ii. 8. 77), *you might have seen them whispering* (lit. *whispers*).

*fretō assimillāre possis* (Ov. M. v. 6), *you might compare it to a sea.*

3. With other verbs, in all persons, when some word or phrase in the context implies that the action is expressed as merely possible or conceivable:—

<sup>1</sup> The name *Potential Subjunctive* is not precisely descriptive, but is fixed in grammatical usage.

nū ego contulerim iūcundō sānus amīcō (Hor. S. i. 5. 44), *when in my senses I should compare nothing with an interesting friend.*

fortūnam citius reperīās quam retineās (Pub. Syr. 168), *you may sooner find fortune than keep it.*

aliquis dicat (Ter. And. 640), *somebody may say.*

NOTE.—In this use the subjunctive may be regarded as the apodosis of an undeveloped protasis. When the conditional idea becomes clearer, it finds expression in a formal protasis, and a conditional sentence is developed.

**a. Forsitan, perhaps,** regularly takes the Potential Subjunctive except in later Latin and in poetry, where the Indicative is also common:—

forsitan quaerātis quī iste terror sit (Ros. Am. 5), *you may perhaps inquire what this alarm is.*

forsitan temerē fecerim (id. 81), *perhaps I have acted rashly.*

NOTE.—The subjunctive clause with *forsitan* (= *fors sit an*) was originally an Indirect Question: *it would be a chance whether, etc.*

**b. Fortasse, perhaps,** is regularly followed by the Indicative; sometimes, however, by the Subjunctive, but chiefly in later Latin:—

quaerēs fortasse (Fam. xv. 4. 13), *perhaps you will ask.*

NOTE.—Other expressions for *perhaps* are (1) *forsan* (chiefly poetical; construed with the indicative or the subjunctive, more commonly the indicative), *fors* (rare and poetical; construed with either the indicative or the subjunctive). *Forsit* (or *fors sit*) occurs once (Hor. S. i. 6. 49) and takes the subjunctive. *Fortasse* is sometimes followed by the infinitive with subject accusative in Plautus and Terence. *Fortassis* (rare; construed like *fortasse*) and *fortasse an* (very rare; construed with the subjunctive) are also found.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

**448. The Imperative is used in Commands and Entreaties:—**

cōsulite vōbīs, prōspicite patriae, cōservāte vōs (Cat. iv. 3), *have a care for yourselves, guard the country, preserve yourselves.*

dic, Mārce Tullī, sententiam, Marcus Tullius, *state your opinion.*

tū ipsum concute (Hor. S. i. 8. 35), *examine yourself.*

vive, valēque (id. ii. 5. 110), *farewell, bless you* (live and be well)!

miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis (Aen. ii. 144), *pity a soul bearing undeserved misfortune.*

**a. The third person of the imperative is antiquated or poetic:—**

ollis salūs populī suprēma lēx estō (Legg. iii. 8), *the safety of the people shall be their first law.*

iūsta imperia suntō, eisque civēs modestē pārentō (id. iii. 6), *let there be lawful authorities, and let the citizens strictly obey them.*

NOTE.—In prose the Hortatory Subjunctive is commonly used instead (§ 439).



**449.** The Future Imperative is used in commands, etc., where there is a distinct reference to *future time* : —

1. In connection with some adverb or other expression that indicates at what time in the future the action of the imperative *shall take place*. So especially with a future, a future perfect indicative, or (in poetry and early Latin) with a present imperative : —

*crās petitō, dabitur* (Pl. Merc. 769), *ask to-morrow [and] it shall be given*.  
*cum valētūdinē cōsulueris, tum cōsulitō nāvigātiōnē* (Fam. xvi. 4. 8), *when you have attended to your health, then look to your sailing*.  
*Phyllida mitte mihi, meus est nātālis, Iollā; cum faciam vitulā prō frūgibus, ipse venitō* (Ecl. iii. 76), *send Phyllis to me, it is my birthday, Iollas; when I [shall] sacrifice a heifer for the harvest, come yourself*.  
*dīc quibus in terris, etc., et Phyllida sōlus habētō* (id. iii. 107), *tell in what lands, etc., and have Phyllis for yourself*.

2. In general directions serving for all time, as Precepts, Statutes, and Wills : —

*is iūris civilis cūstōs estō* (Legg. iii. 8), *let him (the prætor) be the guardian of civil right*.

*Boreā flante, nē arātō, sēmen nē iacitō* (Plin. H. N. xviii. 334), *when the north wind blows, plough not nor sow your seed*.

*a.* The verbs *sciō*, *meminī*, and *habēō* (in the sense of *consider*) regularly use the Future Imperative instead of the Present : —

*filiolō mē auctum scitō* (Att. i. 2), *learn that I am blessed with a little boy*.

*sic habētō, mi Tirō* (Fam. xvi. 4. 4), *so understand it, my good Tiro*.

*dē pallā mementō, amābō* (Pl. Asin. 939), *remember, dear, about the gown*.

*b.* The Future Indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; and *quīn* (*why not?*) with the Present Indicative may have the force of a command : —

*sī quid acciderit novī, faciēs ut sciam* (Fam. xiv. 8), *you will let me know if anything new happens*.

*quīn accipis* (Ter. Haut. 832), *here, take it (why not take it?)*.

*c.* Instead of the simple Imperative, *cūrā ut, fac* (*fac ut*), or *velim*, followed by the subjunctive (§ 565), is often used, especially in colloquial language : —

*cūrā ut Rōmæ sis* (Att. i. 2), *take care to be at Rome*.

*fac ut valētūdinem cūrēs* (Fam. xiv. 17), *see that you take care of your health*.

*domi adsitis facite* (Ter. Eun. 506), *be at home, do*.

*eum mihi velim mittās* (Att. viii. 11), *I wish you would send it to me*.

For commands in Indirect Discourse, see § 588.

For the Imperative with the force of a Conditional Clause, see § 521. *b.*

## Prohibition (Negative Command)

**450.** Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by *nōī* with the Infinitive, (2) by *cavē* with the Present Subjunctive, or (3) by *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive: —<sup>1</sup>

(1) *nōī* putāre (Lig. 83), *do not suppose* (be unwilling to suppose).

*nōī* impudēns esse (Fam. xii. 30. 1), *don't be shameless*.

*nōī*te cōgere sociōs (Verr. ii. 1. 82), *do not compel the allies*.

(2) *cavē* putēs (Att. vii. 20), *don't suppose* (take care lest you suppose).

*cavē* ignōscās (Lig. 14), *do not pardon*.

*cavē* festinēs (Fam. xvi. 12. 6), *do not be in haste*.

(3) *nē* necesse habueris (Att. xvi. 2. 5), *do not regard it as necessary*.

*nē* sis admirātus (Fam. vii. 18. 8), *do not be surprised*.

*hōc* facitō; *hōc* *nē* fēceris (Div. ii. 127), *thou shalt do this, thou shalt not do that*.

*nē* Apellae quidem dixeris (Fam. vii. 25. 2), *do not tell Apella even*.

*nē* vōs quidem mortem timueritis (Tusc. i. 98), *nor must you fear death*.

All three of these constructions are well established in classic prose. The first, which is the most ceremonious, occurs oftenest; the third, though not discourteous, is usually less formal and more peremptory than the others.

NOTE 1.—Instead of *nōī* the poets sometimes use other imperatives of similar meaning (cf. § 457. a):—

*parce* plās scelerāre manūs (Aen. iii. 42), *forbear to defile your pious hands*.

*cētera mitte loquī* (Hor. Epod. 13. 7), *forbear to say the rest*.

*fuge* quaerere (Hor. Od. i. 9. 13), *do not inquire*.

NOTE 2.—*Cavē* *nē* is sometimes used in prohibitions; also *vidē* *nē* and (colloquially) *fac* *nē*: as,—*fac* *nē* quid aliud cūrēs (Fam. xvi. 11), *see that you attend to nothing else*.

NOTE 3.—The present subjunctive with *nē* and the perfect with *cavē* are found in old writers; *nē* with the present is common in poetry at all periods:—

*nē* expectētis (Pl. Ps. 1234), *do not wait*.

*nē* metuās (Mart. Ep. i. 70. 13), *do not fear*.

*cave* quicquam responderis (Pl. Am. 608), *do not make any reply*.

NOTE 4.—Other negatives sometimes take the place of *nē*:—

*nihil* ignōveris (Mur. 65), *grant no pardon* (pardon nothing).

*nec* mihi illud dixeris (Fin. i. 25), *and do not say this to me*.

NOTE 5.—The regular connective, *and do not*, is *nēve*.

**a.** The Present Imperative with *nē* is used in prohibitions by early writers and the poets:—

*nē* timē (Pl. Curc. 520), *don't be afraid*.

*nīmium* *nē* crēde colōri (Ecl. ii. 17), *trust not too much to complexion*.

*equō* *nē* crēdite (Aen. ii. 48), *trust not the horse*.

**b.** The Future Imperative with *nē* is used in prohibitions in laws and formal precepts (see § 449. 2).

<sup>1</sup> In prohibitions the subjunctive with *nē* is hortatory; that with *cavē* is an object clause (cf. §§ 450. n. 2, 565. n. 1).

## INFINITIVE MOOD

**451.** The Infinitive is properly a noun denoting the action of the verb abstractly. It differs, however, from other abstract nouns in the following points: (1) it often admits the distinction of tense; (2) it is modified by *adverbs*, not by *adjectives*; (3) it governs the same case as its verb; (4) it is limited to special constructions.

The Latin Infinitive is the dative or locative case of such a noun<sup>1</sup> and was originally used to denote Purpose; but it has in many constructions developed into a substitute for a finite verb. Hence the variety of its use.

In its use as a verb, the Infinitive may take a Subject Accusative (§ 397. e), originally the object of another verb on which the Infinitive depended. Thus *iubeō tē valēre* is literally *I command you for being well* (cf. substantive clauses, § 562. n.).

## Infinitive as Noun

**452.** The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with *est* and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative.<sup>2</sup>

## 1. As Subject:—

*dolēre malum est* (Fin. v. 84), *to suffer pain is an evil.*

*bellum est sua vitia nōsse* (Att. ii. 17), *it's a fine thing to know one's own faults.*

*praestat compōnere fluctūs* (Aen. i. 135), *it is better to calm the waves.*

## 2. In Apposition with the Subject:—

*proinde quasi iniūriam facere id dēnum esset imperiō ūti* (Sall. Cat. 12),  
*just as if this and this alone, to commit injustice, were to use power.*  
[Here *facere* is in apposition with *id*.]

## 3. As Predicate Nominative:—

*id est convenienter nātūrae vivere* (Fin. iv. 41), *that is to live in conformity with nature.* [Cf. *ūti* in the last example.]

NOTE 1.—An infinitive may be used as Direct Object in connection with a Predicate Accusative (§ 393), or as Appositive with such Direct Object:—

*istuc ipsum nōn esse cum fueris miserrimum putō* (Tusc. i. 12), *for I think this very thing most wretched, not to be when one has been.* [Here *istuc ipsum* belongs to the noun *nōn esse*.]

*miserārī, invidēre, gestire, laetārī, haec omnia morbōs Graeci appellant* (Id. iii. 7),  
*to feel pity, envy, desire, joy,—all these things the Greeks call diseases.*  
[Here the infinitives are in apposition with *haec*.]

<sup>1</sup> The ending *-i* (*amāre, monēre, regere, audire*) was apparently locative, the ending *-i* (*amārī, monērī, regī, audīrī*) apparently dative; but this difference of case had no significance for Latin syntax. The general Latin restriction of the *i*-infinitives to the passive was not a primitive distinction, but grew up in the course of time.

<sup>2</sup> In these constructions the abstract idea expressed by the infinitive is represented as *having some quality or belonging to some thing*.

NOTE 2. — An Appositive or Predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in any of these constructions is put in the Accusative, whether the infinitive has a subject expressed or not. Thus, — *nōn esse cupidum pecūnia est* (Par. 51), *to be free from desires* (not to be desirous) *is money in hand*. [No Subject Accusative.]

a. The infinitive as subject is not common except with *est* and similar verbs. But sometimes, especially in poetry, it is used as the subject of verbs which are apparently more active in meaning: —

*quōs omnis eadem cupere, eadem odiſſe, eadem metuere, in ūnum cōegit* (Iug. 31), *all of whom the fact of desiring, hating, and fearing the same things has united into one*.

*ingenuās didicisse fidēliter artis ēmolliſt mōrēs* (Ov. P. ii. 9. 48), *faithfully to have learned liberal arts softens the manners*.

*poſſe loqui eripitur* (Ov. M. ii. 483), *the power of speech is taken away*.

453. Rarely the Infinitive is used exactly like the Accusative of a noun: —

*beātē vivere alii in aliō, vōs in voluptatē pōnitis* (Fin. ii. 86), *a happy life different [philosophers] base on different things, you on pleasure*.

*quam multa . . . facimus cauſā amicōrum, precārī ab indignō, supplicāre, etc.* (Lael. 57), *how many things we do for our friends' sake, ask favors from an unworthy person, resort to entreaty, etc.*

*nihil explorātum habēās, nē amāre quidem aut amārī* (id. 97), *you have nothing assured, not even loving and being loved*.

NOTE. — Many complementary and other constructions approach a proper accusative use of the infinitive, but their development has been different from that of the examples above. Thus, — *avāritia . . . superbiam, crūdēlitatē, deōs neglegere, omnia vēnalia habēre ēdocuit* (Sall. Cat. 10), *avarice taught pride, cruelty, to neglect the gods, and to hold everything at a price*.

### Infinitive as Apparent Subject of Impersonals

454. The Infinitive is used as the apparent Subject with many impersonal verbs and expressions:

Such are *libet*, *licet*, *oportet*, *decet*, *placet*, *visum est*, *pudet*, *piget*, *neceſſe est*, *opus est*, etc.: —

*libet mihi cōſiderāre* (Quinct. 48), *it suits me to consider*.

*neceſſe eſt mori* (Tusc. ii. 2), *it is necessary to die*.

*quid attinet glōriōſē loqui niſi cōſtanter loquāre* (Fin. ii. 89), *what good does it do to talk boastfully unless you speak consistently?*

*neque mē vixiſſe paenitet* (id. 84), *I do not feel sorry to have lived*.

*gubernāre mē taedēbat* (Att. ii. 7. 4), *I was tired of being pilot*.

NOTE. — This use is a development of the Complementary Infinitive (§ 456); but the infinitives approach the subject construction and may be conveniently regarded as the subjects of the impersonals.

**455.** With impersonal verbs and expressions that take the Infinitive as an apparent subject, the personal subject of the action may be expressed —

1. By a Dative, depending on the verb or verbal phrase: —

rogant ut id sibi facere liceat (B. G. i. 7), *they ask that it be allowed them to do this.*

nōn lubet enim mihi dēplōrāre vītam (Cat. M. 84), *for it does not please me to lament my life.*

visum est mihi dē senectūte aliquid cōscribere (id. 1), *it seemed good to me to write something about old age.*

quid est tam secundum nātūrā quam senibus ēmori (id. 71), *what is so much in accordance with nature as for old men to die?*

extingui hominī suō tempore optābile est (id. 85), *for a man to die at the appointed time is desirable.*

2. By an Accusative expressed as the subject of the infinitive or the object of the impersonal: —

sī licet vivere eum quem Sex. Naevius nōn vult (Quinct. 94), *if it is allowed a man to live against the will of Sextus Naevius.*

nōne oportuit praescisse mē ante (Ter. And. 239), *ought I not to have known beforehand?*

brātōrem irāsci minimē decet (Tusc. iv. 54), *it is particularly unbecoming for an orator to lose his temper.*

puḍeret mē dicere (N. D. i. 109), *I should be ashamed to say.*

cōsilia ineunt quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitēre necesse est (B. G. iv. 5), *they form plans for which they must at once be sorry.*

NOTE. — Libet, placet, and visum est take the dative only; oportet, puḍet, piget, and generally decet, the accusative only; licet and necesse est take either case.

*a.* A predicate noun or adjective is commonly in the Accusative; but with licet regularly, and with other verbs occasionally, the Dative is used: —

expedit bonās esse vōbīs (Ter. Haut. 388), *it is for your advantage to be good.*  
licuit esse ōtiōsō Themistocli (Tusc. i. 33), *Themistocles might have been inactive* (it was allowed to Themistocles to be inactive).

mihi neglegenti esse nōn licet (Att. i. 17. 6), *I must not be negligent.* [But also neglegentem.]

cūr hīs esse liberōs nōn licet (Flacc. 71), *why is it not allowed these men to be free?*

nōn est omnibus stantibus necesse dicere (Marc. 33), *it is not necessary for all to speak standing.*

NOTE. — When the subject is not expressed, as being indefinite (*one, anybody*), a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accusative (cf. § 452. 3. n.<sup>2</sup>): *as, — vel pāce vel bellō clārum fieri licet* (Sall. Cat. 3), *one can become illustrious either in peace or in war.*

## Complementary Infinitive

456. Verbs which imply *another action of the same subject* to complete their meaning take the Infinitive without a subject accusative.

Such are verbs denoting *to be able, dare, undertake, remember, forget, be accustomed, begin, continue, cease, hesitate, learn, know how, fear, and the like* :—

*hōc quēd dicere* (Cat. M. 32), *this I can say.*

*mittō quærere* (Rosc. Am. 58), *I omit to ask.*

*vereor laudāre praesentem* (N. D. i. 58), *I fear to praise a man to his face.*

*orō ut mātūrēs venire* (Att. iv. 1), *I beg you will make haste to come.*

*obliviāci nōn possum quae volō* (Fin. ii. 104), *I cannot forget that which I wish.*

*dēsine id mē docēre* (Tusc. ii. 29), *cease to teach me that.*

*dicere solēbat*, *he used to say.*

*audeō dicere*, *I venture to say.*

*loqui posse coepi*, *I began to be able to speak.*

NOTE. — The peculiarity of the Complementary Infinitive construction is that no Subject Accusative is in general admissible or conceivable. But some infinitives usually regarded as *objects* can hardly be distinguished from this construction when they have no subject expressed. Thus *volō dicere* and *volō mē dicere* mean the same thing, *I wish to speak*, but the latter is object-infinitive, while the former is not apparently different in origin and construction from *quēd dicere* (complementary infinitive), and again *volō eum dicere*, *I wish him to speak*, is essentially different from either (cf. § 563. b).

457. Many verbs take either a Subjunctive Clause or a Complementary Infinitive, without difference of meaning.

Such are verbs signifying *willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort, and the like* (cf. § 563) :—

*dēcernere optābat* (Q. C. iii. 11. 1), *he was eager to decide.*

*optāvit ut tollerētur* (Off. iii. 94), *he was eager to be taken up.*

*oppugnāre contendit* (B. G. v. 21), *he strove to take by storm.*

*contendit ut caperet* (id. v. 8), *he strove to take.*

*bellum gerere cōstituit* (id. iv. 6), *he decided to carry on war.*

*cōstitueram ut manērem* (Att. xvi. 10. 1), *I had decided to remain.*

NOTE 1. — For the infinitive with subject accusative used with some of these verbs instead of a *complementary* infinitive, see § 563.

NOTE 2. — Some verbs of these classes never take the subjunctive, but are identical in meaning with others which do :—

*eōs quōs tūtārī dēbent dēserunt* (Off. i. 28), *they forsake those whom they ought to protect.*

*aveō pugnāre* (Att. ii. 18. 3), *I'm anxious to fight.*

*α.* In poetry and later writers many verbs may have the infinitive, after the analogy of verbs of more literal meaning that take it in prose:—

furit tē reperire (Hor. Od. i. 15. 27), *he rages to find thee*. [A forcible way of saying cupit (§§ 457, 563. b).]

saevit extinguere nōmen (Ov. M. i. 200), *he rages to blot out the name*.

fuge quaerere (Hor. Od. i. 9. 13), *forbear to ask* (cf. § 450. n. <sup>1</sup>).

parce piās scelerāre manūs (Aen. iii. 42), *forbear to defile your pious hands*.

**458.** A Predicate Noun or Adjective after a complementary infinitive takes the case of the subject of the main verb:—

fierique studēbam eius prūdentiā doctior (Lael. 1), *I was eager to become more wise through his wisdom*.

sciō quam soleās esse occupātus (Fam. xvi. 21. 7), *I know how busy you usually are* (are wont to be).

brevis esse labōrō, obscurus fiō (Hor. A. P. 25), *I struggle to be brief, I become obscure*.

#### Infinitive with Subject Accusative

**459.** The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used with verbs and other expressions of *knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse*, § 579):—

dicit montem ab hostibus tenēri (B. G. i. 22), *he says that the hill is held by the enemy*. [Direct: mōns ab hostibus tenētur.]

#### Infinitive of Purpose

**460.** In a few cases the Infinitive retains its original meaning of Purpose.

*α.* The infinitive is used in isolated passages instead of a subjunctive clause after **habeō, dō, ministrō**:—

tantum habeō pollicēri (Fam. i. 5 A. 3), *so much I have to promise*. [Here the more formal construction would be quod pollicear.]

ut Iovī bibere ministrāret (Tusc. i. 65), *to serve Jove with wine* (to drink).

meridiē bibere datō (Cato R. R. 89), *give* (to) *drink at noonday*.

*β.* **Parātus, suētus**, and their compounds, and a few other participles (used as adjectives), take the infinitive like the verbs from which they come:—

id quod parātī sunt facere (Quint. 8), *that which they are ready to do*.

adsuēfactī superārī (B. G. vi. 24), *used to being conquered*.

currū succēdere suētī (Aen. iii. 541), *used to being harnessed to the chariot*.

cōpiās bellāre cōsuētās (B. Afr. 73), *forces accustomed to fighting*.

NOTE.—In prose these words more commonly take the Gerund or Gerundive construction (§ 503 ff.) either in the genitive, the dative, or the accusative with *ad*:—  
*insuētus nāvigandī* (B. G. v. 6), *unused to making voyages*.  
*alendis liberis suētī* (Tac. Ann. xiv. 27), *accustomed to supporting children*.  
*corpora insuēta ad onera portanda* (B. C. i. 78), *bodies unused to carry burdens*.

c. The poets and early writers often use the infinitive to express purpose when there is no analogy with any prose construction:—

*filius intrō lit vidēre quid agat* (Ter. Hec. 345), *your son has gone in to see what he is doing*. [In prose: the supine *visum*.]

*nōn ferrō Libycōs populāre Penātis vēnimus* (Aen. i. 527), *we have not come to lay waste with the sword the Libyan homes*.

*lōricam dōnat habēre virō* (id. v. 262), *he gives the hero a breastplate to wear*. [In prose: *habendam*.]

NOTE.—So rarely in prose writers of the classic period.

For the Infinitive used instead of a Substantive Clause of Purpose, see § 457.

For *tempus est abire*, see § 504. N. 2.

### Peculiar Infinitives

461. Many Adjectives take the Infinitive in poetry, following a Greek idiom:—

*dūrus compōnere versūs* (Hor. S. i. 4. 8), *harsh in composing verse*.

*cantārī dignus* (Ecl. v. 54), *worthy to be sung*. [In prose: *qui cantētur*.]

*fortis trāctāre serpentis* (Hor. Od. i. 37. 26), *brave to handle serpents*.

*cantāre peritī* (Ecl. x. 32), *skilled in song*.

*facilēs aurem praeberē* (Prop. iii. 14. 15), *ready to lend an ear*.

*nescia vinci pectora* (Aen. xii. 527), *hearts not knowing how to yield*.

*tū vidēre aegrotī* (Plaut. Trin. 75), *sick of seeing you*.

a. Rarely in poetry the infinitive is used to express *result*:—

*fingit equum docilem magister ire viam quā mōnstret eques* (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 64), *the trainer makes the horse gentle so as to go in the road the rider points out*.

*hic levāre . . . pauperem labōribus vocātus audit* (Hor. Od. ii. 18. 38), *he, when called, hears, so as to relieve the poor man of his troubles*.

NOTE.—These poetic constructions were originally regular and belong to the Infinitive as a noun in the Dative or Locative case (§ 451). They had been supplanted, however, by other more formal constructions, and were afterwards restored in part through Greek influence.

b. The infinitive occasionally occurs as a pure noun limited by a demonstrative, a possessive, or some other adjective:—

*hōc nōn dolēre* (Fin. ii. 18), *this freedom from pain*. [Cf. *tōtum hōc beātū vivere* (Tusc. v. 33), *this whole matter of the happy life*.]

*nostrum vivere* (Pers. i. 9), *our life (to live)*.

*scire tuum* (id. i. 27), *your knowledge (to know)*.



• **Exclamatory Infinitive**

**462.** The Infinitive, with Subject Accusative,<sup>1</sup> may be used in Exclamations (cf. § 397. *d*):—

tē in tantās aerumnās propter mē incidisse (Fam. xiv. 1), *alas, that you should have fallen into such grief for me!*

mēne inceptō dēsistere victam (Aen. i. 37), *what! I beaten desist from my purpose?*

NOTE 1.—The interrogative particle *-ne* is often attached to the emphatic word (as in the second example).

NOTE 2.—The Present and the Perfect Infinitive are used in this construction with their ordinary distinction of time (§ 486).

*a.* A subjunctive clause, with or without *ut*, is often used elliptically in exclamatory questions. The question may be introduced by the interrogative *-ne*:—

quamquam quid loquor? tē ut ūlla rēs frangat (Cat. i. 22), *yet why do I speak? [the idea] that anything should bend you!*

egone ut tē interellem (Tusc. ii. 42), *what, I interrupt you?*

ego tibi irāscerem (Q. Fr. i. 3), *I angry with you?*

NOTE.—The Infinitive in exclamations usually refers to something actually occurring; the Subjunctive, to something contemplated.

**Historical Infinitive**

**463.** The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative:—

tum Catilīna pollicēri novās tabulās (Sall. Cat. 21), *then Catiline promised abolition of debts* (clean ledgers).

ego instāre ut mihi respondēret (Verr. ii. 188), *I kept urging him to answer me.*  
pars cedere, alii insequi; neque signa neque ordinēs observāre; ubi quemque periculum cēperat, ibi resistere ac prōpulsāre; arma, tēla, equi, viri, hostēs atque civēs permixti; nihil cōsiliō neque imperiō agi; fors omnia regere (Iug. 51), *a part give way, others press on; they hold neither to standards nor ranks; where danger overtook them, there each would stand and fight; arms, weapons, horses, men, foe and friend, mingled in confusion; nothing went by counsel or command; chance ruled all.*

NOTE.—This construction is not strictly *historical*, but rather *descriptive*, and is never used to state a mere historical fact. It is rarely found in subordinate clauses. Though occurring in most of the writers of all periods, it is most frequent in the historians Sallust, Livy, Tacitus. It does not occur in Suetonius.

<sup>1</sup> This construction is elliptical; that is, the thought is quoted in Indirect Discourse, though no verb of *saying* etc. is expressed or even, perhaps, implied (compare the French *dire que*). Passages like *hancine ego ad rem nātam miseram mē memorābō?* (Plaut. Rud. 188) point to the origin of the construction.

## TENSES

**464.** The number of possible Tenses is very great. For in each of the three times, Present, Past, and Future, an action may be represented as *going on, completed, or beginning*; as *habitual or isolated*; as *defined in time or indefinite (aoristic)*; as *determined* with reference to the time of the speaker, or as not itself so determined but as *relative* to some time which is determined; and the past and future times may be near or remote. Thus a scheme of thirty or more tenses might be devised.

But, in the development of forms, which always takes place gradually, no language finds occasion for more than a small part of these. The most obvious distinctions, according to our habits of thought, appear in the following scheme:—

1. Definite (fixing the time of the action)		2. Indefinite
INCOMPLETE	COMPLETE	NARRATIVE
Present: a. <i>I am writing.</i>	d. <i>I have written.</i>	g. <i>I write.</i>
Past: b. <i>I was writing.</i>	e. <i>I had written.</i>	h. <i>I wrote.</i>
Future: c. <i>I shall be writing.</i>	f. <i>I shall have written.</i>	i. <i>I shall write.</i>

Most languages disregard some of these distinctions, and some make other distinctions not here given. The Indo-European parent speech had a Present tense to express *a* and *g*, a Perfect to express *d*, an Aorist to express *h*, a Future to express *c* and *i*, and an Imperfect to express *b*. The Latin, however, confounded the Perfect and Aorist in a single form (the Perfect scripti), thus losing all distinction of form between *d* and *h*, and probably in a great degree the distinction of meaning. The nature of this confusion may be seen by comparing *dixi*, *dicāvi*, and *didici* (all Perfects derived from the same root, DIC), with *ῥέδεα*, Skr. *adikṣam*, *ῥέδεα*, Skr. *dideca*. Latin also developed two new forms, those for *e* (scripseram) and *f* (scripserō), and thus possessed six tenses, as seen in § 154. c.

The lines between these six tenses in Latin are not hard and fast, nor are they precisely the same that we draw in English. Thus in many verbs the form corresponding to *I have written* (*d*) is used for those corresponding to *I am writing* (*a*) and *I write* (*g*) in a slightly different sense, and the form corresponding to *I had written* (*e*) is used in like manner for that corresponding to *I was writing* (*b*). Again, the Latin often uses the form for *I shall have written* (*f*) instead of that for *I shall write* (*i*). Thus, *nōvi*, *I have learned*, is used for *I know*; *cōstitērat*, *he had taken his position*, for *he stood*; *cōgnōverō*, *I shall have learned*, for *I shall be aware*. In general a writer may take his own point of view.

## TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

## INCOMPLETE ACTION

## PRESENT TENSE

**465.** The Present Tense denotes an action or state (1) as *now taking place or existing*, and so (2) as *incomplete* in present time, or (3) as *indefinite*, referring to no particular time, but denoting a *general truth*:—

senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt, hic tamen vivit (Cat. i. 2), *the senate knows this, the consul sees it, yet this man lives.*

tibi concēdō meās sēdis (Div. i. 104), *I give you my seat* (an offer which may or may not be accepted).

expectō quid vells (Ter. And. 34), *I await your pleasure* (what you wish).

tū actiōnem instituis, ille aciem instruit (Mur. 22), *you arrange a case, he arrays an army.* [The present is here used of *regular employment*.]

minōra di neglegunt (N. D. iii. 86), *the gods disregard trifles.* [General truth.]

obsequium amicōs, vērītās odium parit (Ter. And. 68), *flattery gains friends, truth hatred.* [General truth.]

NOTE.—The present of a *general truth* is sometimes called the Gnomic Present.

a. The present is regularly used in quoting writers whose works are extant:—

Epicūrus vērō ea dicit (Tusc. ii. 17), *but Epicurus says such things.*

apud illum Ulixēs lāmentātur in volnere (id. ii. 49), *in him* (Sophocles) *Ulysses laments over his wound.*

Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete colloquentem facit (id. v. 115), *Homer brings in* (makes) *Polyphemus talking with his ram.*

#### Present with *iam diū* etc.

466. The Present with expressions of *duration of time* (especially *iam diū*, *iam dūdum*) denotes an action continuing in the present, but begun in the past (cf. § 471. b).

In this use the present is commonly to be rendered by the perfect in English:—

iam diū ignōrō quid agās (Fam. vii. 9), *for a long time I have not known what you were doing.*

tē iam dūdum hortor (Cat. i. 12), *I have long been urging you.*

patimur multōs iam annōs (Verr. v. 126), *we suffer now these many years.* [The Latin perfect would imply that *we no longer suffer*.]

anni sunt octō cum ista causa versātur (cf. Clu. 82), *it is now eight years that this case has been in hand.*

annum iam audis Cratippum (Off. i. 1), *for a year you have been a hearer of Cratippus.*

adhūc Plancius mē retinet (Fam. xiv. 1. 3), *so far Plancius has kept me here.*

NOTE 1.—The difference in the two idioms is that the English states the beginning and leaves the continuance to be inferred, while the Latin states the continuance and leaves the beginning to be inferred. Compare *he has long suffered* (and still suffers) with *he still suffers* (and has suffered long).

NOTE 2.—Similarly the Present Imperative with *iam dūdum* indicates that the action commanded *ought to have been done* or *was wished for* long ago (cf. the Perfect Imperative in Greek): as,—*iam dūdum sūmite poenās* (Aen. ii. 103), *exact the penalty long delayed.*

## Conative Present

**467.** The Present sometimes denotes an action *attempted* or *begun* in present time, but never completed at all (*Conative Present*, cf. § 471. c): —

iam iamque manū tenet (Aen. ii. 530), *and now, even now, he attempts to grasp him.*

dēnsōs fertur in hostīs (id. ii. 511), *he starts to rush into the thickest of the foe.*  
dēcernō quinquāgintā dierum supplicatiōnēs (Phil. xiv. 29), *I move for fifty days' thanksgiving.* [Cf. senātus dēcrēvit, *the senate ordained.*]

## Present for Future

**468.** The Present, especially in colloquial language and poetry, is often used for the Future: —

imusne sessum (De Or. iii. 17), *shall we take a seat?* (are we going to sit?)

hodiē uxōrem dūcis (Ter. And. 321), *are you to be married to-day?*

quod si fit, pereō funditus (id. 244), *if this happens, I am utterly undone.*

ecquid mē adiuvās (Clu. 71), *won't you give me a little help?*

in iūs vocō tē. nōn eō. nōn is (Pl. Asin. 480), *I summon you to the court.*  
*I won't go. You won't?*

NOTE.—Eō and its compounds are especially frequent in this use (cf. *where are you going to-morrow?* and the Greek εἰμι in a future sense). Verbs of *necessity*, *possibility*, *wish*, and the like (as possum, volō, etc.) also have reference to the future.

For other uses of the Present in a future sense, see under Conditions (§ 516. a. n.), *antequam* and *priusquam* (§ 551. c), *dum* (§ 553. n. 2), and § 444. a. n.

## Historical Present

**469.** The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect: —

affertur nūntius Syracūsās; curritur ad praetōrium; Cleomenēs in publicō esse nōn audent; inclūdīt sē domi (Verr. v. 92), *the news is brought to Syracuse; they run to headquarters; Cleomenes does not venture to be abroad; he shuts himself up at home.*

NOTE.—This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (*repraesentatiō*, § 585. b. n.).

For the Present Indicative with *dum*, *while*, see § 556.

**α.** The present may be used for the perfect in a summary enumeration of past events (*Annalistic Present*): —

Rōma interim crēscit Albae ruinīs; duplicātur civium numerus; Caelius additur urbi mōns (Liv. i. 30), *Rome meanwhile grows as a result of the fall of Alba: the number of citizens is doubled; the Caelian hill is added to the town.*

## IMPERFECT TENSE

**470.** The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as *continued* or *repeated* in past time:—

hunc audiēbant antea (Manil. 13), *they used to hear of him before.*

[Sōcratēs] ita cēnsēbat itaque disseruit (Tusc. i. 72), *Socrates thought so (habitually), and so he spoke (then).*

prūdēns esse putābātur (Lael. 6), *he was (generally) thought wise.* [The perfect would refer to some particular case, and not to a state of things.]

iamque rubescēbat Aurōra (Aen. iii. 521), *and now the dawn was blushing.*

ara vetus stābat (Ov. M. vi. 326), *an old altar stood there.*

NOTE.—The Imperfect is a *descriptive* tense and denotes an action conceived as *in progress* or a state of things as *actually observed*. Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus *rēx erat* and *rēx fuit* may often be used indifferently; but the former *describes* the condition while the latter only *states* it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English Preterite:—

Hædūi graviter ferēbant, neque lēgātōs ad Cæsarem mittere audēbant (B. G. v. 6), *the Hædūi were displeased, and did not dare to send envoys to Cæsar.*

[Here the Imperfects describe the state of things.] But,—

id tulit factum graviter Indūtiomārus (id. v. 4), *Indutiomarus was displeased at this action.* [Here the Perfect merely states the fact.]

aedificia vicōsque habēbant (id. iv. 4), *they had buildings and villages.*

**471.** The Imperfect represents a present tense transferred to past time. Hence all the meanings which the Present has derived from the *continuance of the action* belong also to the Imperfect in reference to past time.

*a.* The Imperfect is used in *descriptions*:—

erant omnīnō itinera duo . . . mōns altissimus impendēbat (B. G. i. 6), *there were in all two ways . . . a very high mountain overhung.*

*b.* With *iam diū*, *iam dūdum*, and other expressions of duration of time, the Imperfect denotes an action continuing in the past but begun at some previous time (cf. § 466).

In this construction the Imperfect is rendered by the English Pluperfect:—

iam dūdum flēbam (Ov. M. iii. 656), *I had been weeping for a long time.*

cōpiās quās diū comparābant (Fam. xi. 13. 5), *the forces which they had long been getting ready.*

*c.* The Imperfect sometimes denotes an action as begun (*Inceptive Imperfect*), or as attempted or only intended (*Conative Imperfect*; cf. § 467):—

in exsilium dīcībā<sup>m</sup> quem iam ingressum esse in bellum vidēbā<sup>m</sup> (Cat. ii. 14), *was I trying to send into exile one who I saw had already gone into war?*

hunc igitur diem sibi prōpōnēns Milō, cruentis manibus ad illa augusta centuriarum auspicia veniēbat (Mil. 43), *was Milo coming* (i.e. was it likely that he would come), etc.?

si licitum esset veniēbant (Verr. v. 129), *they were coming if it had been allowed* (they were on the point of coming, and would have done so if, etc.).

NOTE. — To this head may be referred the imperfect with *iam*, denoting the *beginning* of an action or state: as, — iamque arva tenēbant ultima (Aen. vi. 477), *and now they were just getting to the farthest fields*.

*d.* The Imperfect is sometimes used to express a surprise at the *present* discovery of a fact already existing: —

ō tū quoque aderās (Ter. Ph. 858), *oh, you are here too!*  
 ehem, tūn hic erās, mi Phaedria (Ter. Eun. 86), *what! you here, Phaedria?*  
 & miser! quantā labōrābās Charybdī (Hor. Od. i. 27. 19), *unhappy boy, what a whirlpool you are struggling in* [and I never knew it]!

*e.* The Imperfect is often used in dialogue by the comic poets where later writers would employ the Perfect: —

ad amicum Calliclem quōi rem aībat mandāsse hīc suam (Pl. Trin. 956), *to his friend Callicles, to whom, he said, he had intrusted his property*.  
 praesāgībat mī animus frūstrā mē ire quom exībam domō (Pl. Aul. 178), *my mind mistrusted when I went from home that I went in vain*.

NOTE. — So, in conversation the imperfect of verbs of saying (cf. *as I was a-saying*) is common in classic prose: —

at medicī quoque, ita enim dīcēbās, saepe falluntur (N. D. iii. 15), *but physicians also, — for that is what you were saying just now, — are often mistaken*.  
 haec mīhi ferē in mentem veniēbant (id. ii. 67, 168), *this is about what occurred to me, etc.* [In a straightforward narration this would be *venērunt*.]

*f.* The Imperfect with negative words often has the force of the English auxiliary *could* or *would*: —

itaque (Dāmoclēs) nec pulchrōs illōs ministrātōrēs aspiciēbat (Tusc. v. 62), *therefore he could not look upon those beautiful slaves*. [In this case *did* not would not express the idea of *continued prevention* of enjoyment by the overhanging sword.]

nec enim dum eram vōbiscum animum meum vidēbātis (Cat. M. 79), *for, you know, while I was with you, you could not see my soul*. [Here the Perfect would refer only to *one moment*.]

Lentulus satis erat fortis orātōr, sed cōgitandī nōn ferēbat labōrem (Brut. 268), *Lentulus was bold enough as an orator, but could not endure the exertion of thinking hard*.

For the Epistolary Imperfect, see § 479; for the Imperfect Indicative in apodosis *contrary to fact*, see § 517. *b*, *c*.

## FUTURE TENSE

**472.** The Future denotes an action or state that will occur hereafter.

*a.* The Future may have the force of an Imperative (§ 449. *b*).

*b.* The Future is often required in a subordinate clause in Latin where in English futurity is sufficiently expressed by the main clause:

cum aderit vidēbit, *when he is there he will see* (cf. § 547).

sānābimur si volēmus (Tusc. iii. 13), *we shall be healed if we wish* (cf. § 516. *a*).

NOTE. — But the Present is common in future protases (§ 516. *a. n.*).

## COMPLETED ACTION

## PERFECT TENSE

## Perfect Definite and Historical Perfect

**473.** The Perfect denotes an action either as *now completed* (*Perfect Definite*), or as *having taken place* at some undefined point of past time (*Historical* or *Aoristic Perfect*).

The Perfect Definite corresponds in general to the English Perfect with *have*; the Historical Perfect to the English Preterite (or Past):

(1) ut ego fēci, qui Graecās litterās senex didici (Cat. M. 26), *as I have done, who have learned Greek in my old age.*

diuturni silenti finem hodiernus diēs attulit (Marc. 1), *this day has put an end to my long-continued silence.*

(2) tantum bellum extrēmā hieme apparāvit, ineunte vĕre suscepit, mediā aestāte cōnfēcit (Manil. 35), *so great a war he made ready for at the end of winter, undertook in early spring, and finished by midsummer.*

NOTE. — The distinction between these two uses is represented by two forms in most other Indo-European languages, but was almost if not wholly lost to the minds of the Romans. It must be noticed, however, on account of the marked distinction in English and also because of certain differences in the sequence of tenses.

*a.* The Indefinite Present, denoting a *customary action* or a *general truth* (§ 465), often has the Perfect in a subordinate clause referring to time antecedent to that of the main clause: —

qui in compedibus corporis semper fuērunt, etiam cum solūti sunt tardius ingrediuntur (Tusc. i. 75), *they who have always been in the fetters of the body, even when released move more slowly.*

simul ac mihi collibitum est, praestō est imāgō (N. D. i. 108), *as soon as I have taken a fancy, the image is before my eyes.*

haec morte effugiuntur, etiam si nōn ēvēnērunt, tamen quia possunt ēvenīre (Tusc. i. 86), *these things are escaped by death even if they have not [yet] happened, because they still may happen.*

NOTE.—This use of the perfect is especially common in the protasis of General Conditions in present time (§ 518. b).

**474.** The Perfect is sometimes used emphatically to denote that a thing or condition of things that once existed no longer exists :

fuit ista quondam in hāc rē publicā virtūs (Cat. i. 3), *there was once such virtue in this commonwealth.*

habuit, nōn habet (Tusc. i. 87), *he had, he has no longer.*

filium habeo . . . immo habui ; nunc habeam necne incertumst (Ter. Haut. 93), *I have a son, no, I had one ; whether I have now or not is uncertain.*

fuius Trōes, fuit Ilium (Aen. ii. 325), *we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is no more.*

### Special Uses of the Perfect

**475.** The Perfect is sometimes used of a *general truth*, especially with negatives (*Gnomic Perfect*) : —

qui studet contingere mētā multa tulit fēcitque (Hor. A. P. 412), *he who aims to reach the goal, first bears and does many things.*

nōn aeris acervus et auri dēdūxit corpore febris (id. Ep. i. 2. 47), *the pile of brass and gold removes not fever from the frame.*

NOTE.—The gnomic perfect strictly refers to past time ; but its use implies that something which never *did* happen in any known case never *does* happen, and never *will* (cf. the English "*Faint heart never won fair lady*") ; or, without a negative, that what *has once* happened will *always* happen under similar circumstances.

**a.** The Perfect is often used in expressions containing or implying a *negation*, where in affirmation the Imperfect would be preferred : —

dicēbat melius quam scripsit Hortēsius (Or. 132), *Hortensius spoke better than he wrote.* [Here the negative is implied in the comparison : compare the use of *quisquam*, *ullus*, etc. (§§ 311, 312), and the French *ne* after comparatives and superlatives.]

**476.** The completed tenses of some verbs are equivalent to the incomplete tenses of verbs of kindred meaning.

Such are the preteritive verbs *ōdi*, *I hate* ; *memini*, *I remember* ; *nōvi*, *I know* ; *cōsuevi*, *I am accustomed*,<sup>1</sup> with others used preteritively, as *venerat* (= *aderat*, *he was at hand*, etc.), *cōstitērunt*, *they stand firm* (have taken their stand), and many inceptives (see § 263. 1) : —

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *dētestor*, *reminiscor*, *sciō*, *soleō*.



qui diēs aestūs maximōs efficere cōsuēvit (B. G. iv. 29), *which day generally makes the highest tides* (is accustomed to make).

cūtiūs splendor obsolēvit (Quinct. 59), *whose splendor is now all faded*.

NOTE.—Many other verbs are occasionally so used: as, —dum oculōs certāmen āverterat (Liv. xxxii. 24), *while the contest had turned their eyes* (kept them turned). [Here āverterat = tenēbat.]

### PLUPERFECT TENSE

**477.** The Pluperfect is used (1) to denote an action or state *completed* in past time; or (2) sometimes to denote an action in indefinite time, but prior to some past time referred to:—

(1) loci nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant (B. G. ii. 18), *this was the nature of the ground which our men had chosen for a camp*.

Viridovix summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēcerant (id. iii. 17), *Viridovix held the chief command of all those tribes which had revolted*.

(2) neque vērō cum aliquid mandāverat cōfectum putābat (Cat. iii. 16), *but when he had given a thing in charge he did not look on it as done*.

quae si quandō adepta est id quod ei fuerat concupitum, tum fert alacritātem (Tusc. iv. 15), *if it (desire) ever has gained what it had [previously] desired, then it produces joy*.

For the Epistolary Pluperfect, see § 479.

### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

**478.** The Future Perfect denotes an action as completed in the future:—

ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs (De Or. ii. 261), *as you sow (shall have sown), so shall you reap*.

carmina tum melius, cum vēnerit ipse, canēmus (Ecl. ix. 67), *then shall we sing our songs better, when he himself has come* (shall have come).

sī illius insidiae clārīōrēs hāc lūce fuerint, tum dēnique obsecrābō (Mil. 6), *when the plots of that man have been shown to be as clear as daylight, then, and not till then, shall I conjure you*.

ego certē meum officium praestiterō (B. G. iv. 25), *I at least shall have done my duty* (i.e. when the time comes to reckon up the matter, I shall be found to have done it, whatever the event).

NOTE.—Latin is far more exact than English in distinguishing between mere future action and action *completed* in the future. Hence the Future Perfect is much commoner in Latin than in English. It may even be used instead of the Future, from the fondness of the Romans for representing an action as completed:—

quid inventum sit paulō post viderō (Acad. ii. 76), *what has been found out I shall see presently*.

quī Antōnium oppresserit bellum taeterrimum cōfēcerit (Fam. x. 19), *whoever crushes* (shall have crushed) *Antony will finish* (will have finished) *a most loathsome war*.

## EPISTOLARY TENSES

**479.** In Letters, the Perfect Historical or the Imperfect may be used for the present, and the Pluperfect for any past tense, as if the letter were *dated* at the time it is supposed to be *received*:—

neque tamen, haec cum scribēbam, eram nescius quantis oneribus premerēre  
(Fam. v. 12. 2), *nor while I write this am I ignorant under what burdens  
you are weighed down.*

ad tuās omnis [epistulās] rescripseram pridīe (Att. ix. 10. 1), *I answered all  
your letters yesterday.*

cum quod scriberem ad tē nihil habērem, tamen hās dedi litterās (Att. ix. 16),  
*though I have nothing to write to you, still I write this letter.*

**NOTE.**—In this use these tenses are called the Epistolary Perfect, Imperfect, and Pluperfect. The epistolary tenses are not employed with any uniformity, but only when attention is particularly directed to the *time of writing* (so especially scribēbam, dabam, etc.).

## TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

**480.** The tenses of the Subjunctive in Independent Clauses denote time in relation to the time of the speaker.

The Present always refers to *future* (or *indefinite*) *time*, the Imperfect to either *past* or *present*, the Perfect to either *future* or *past*, the Pluperfect always to *past*.

**481.** The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses were habitually used in certain fixed connections with the tenses of the main verb.

These connections were determined by the time of the main verb and the time of the dependent verb together. They are known, collectively, as the *Sequence of Tenses*.

**NOTE.**—The so-called Sequence of Tenses is not a mechanical law. Each tense of the subjunctive in dependent clauses (as in independent) originally denoted its own time in relation to the time of the speaker, though less definitely than the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Gradually, however, as the complex sentence was more strongly felt as a unit, certain types in which the tenses of the dependent clause seemed to accord with those of the main clause were almost unconsciously regarded as regular, and others, in which there was no such agreement, as exceptional. Thus a pretty definite system of correspondences grew up, which is codified in the rules for the Sequence of Tenses. These, however, are by no means rigid. They do not apply with equal stringency to all dependent constructions, and they were frequently disregarded, not only when their strict observance would have obscured the sense, but for the sake of emphasis and variety, or merely from carelessness.

## Sequence of Tenses

**482.** The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses follow special rules for the Sequence of Tenses.

With reference to these rules all tenses when used in *independent* clauses are divided into two classes,—*Primary* and *Secondary*.

1. **PRIMARY.** — The *Primary Tenses* include all forms that express *present* or *future* time. These are the Present, Future, and Future Perfect Indicative, the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Present and Future Imperative.

2. **SECONDARY.** — The *Secondary Tenses* include all forms that refer to *past* time. These are the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Historical Infinitive.

**NOTE.** — To these may be added certain forms less commonly used in independent clauses:—(1) *Primary*: Present Infinitive in Exclamations; (2) *Secondary*: Perfect Infinitive in Exclamations (see §§ 462, 485. a. n.).

The Perfect Definite is sometimes treated as primary (see § 485. a).

For the Historical Present, see § 485. e; for the Imperfect Subjunctive in Apodosis, see § 485. h.

**483.** The following is the general rule for the Sequence of Tenses:—<sup>1</sup>

In complex sentences a *Primary* tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect in the dependent clause, and a *Secondary* tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect:—

## PRIMARY TENSES

rogō,	<i>I ask, am asking</i>	} <i>quid faciās, what you are doing.</i> <i>quid fēceris, what you did, were doing,</i> <i>have done, have been doing.</i>
rogābō,	<i>I shall ask</i>	
rogāvī (sometimes),	<i>I have asked</i>	
rogāverō,	<i>I shall have asked</i>	} <i>quid factūrus sis, what you will do.</i>  <i>ut nōs moneat, to warn us.</i> <i>ut nōs moneās, to warn us.</i> <i>quasi oblītus sit, as if he had forgotten.</i>
scribīt,	<i>he writes</i>	
scribet,	<i>he will write</i>	
scribe (scribitō),	<i>write</i>	
scribit,	<i>he writes</i>	

<sup>1</sup> The term is sometimes extended to certain relations between the tenses of subordinate verbs in the indicative and those of the main verb. These relations do not differ in principle from those which we are considering; but for convenience the term *Sequence of Tenses* is in this book restricted to subjunctives, in accordance with the usual practice.

## SECONDARY TENSES

rogābam,	<i>I asked, was asking</i>	} <i>quid facerēs, what you were doing.</i> <i>quid fēcissēs, what you had done, had been doing.</i> <i>quid factūrus essēs, what you would do.</i> <i>ut nōs monerēt, to warn us.</i> <i>quasi oblītus esset, as if he had forgotten.</i>
rogāvī,	<i>I asked, have asked</i>	
rogāveram,	<i>I had asked</i>	
scripsit,	<i>he wrote</i>	
scripsit,	<i>he wrote</i>	

484. In applying the rule for the Sequence of Tenses, observe—

(1) Whether the main verb is (a) primary or (b) secondary.

(2) Whether the dependent verb is to denote completed action (i.e. past with reference to the main verb) or incomplete action (i.e. present or future with reference to the main verb). Then—

a. If the leading verb is *primary*, the dependent verb must be in the *Present* if it denotes *incomplete action*, in the *Perfect* if it denotes *completed action*.

b. If the leading verb is *secondary*, the dependent verb must be in the *Imperfect* if it denotes *incomplete action*, in the *Pluperfect* if it denotes *completed action*:—

(1) *He writes* [primary] *to warn* [incomplete action] *us*, scribit ut nōs moneat.

*I ask* [primary] *what you were doing* [now past], rogō quid fēcēris.

(2) *He wrote* [secondary] *to warn* [incomplete] *us*, scripsit ut nōs monerēt.

*I asked* [secondary] *what you were doing* [incomplete], rogāvī quid facerēs.

c. Notice that the Future Perfect denotes action completed (at the time referred to), and hence is represented in the Subjunctive by the Perfect or Pluperfect:—

*He shows that if they come* (shall have come), *many will perish*, dēmonstrat, si vēnerint, multōs interitūrōs.

*He showed that if they should come* (should have come), *many would perish*, dēmonstrāvit, si vēnissent, multōs interitūrōs.

485. In the Sequence of Tenses the following special points are to be noted:—

a. The Perfect Indicative is ordinarily a secondary tense, but allows the primary sequence when the present time is clearly in the writer's mind:—

ut satis esset praesidi prōvisum est (Cat. ii. 26), *provision has been made that there should be ample guard*. [Secondary sequence.]

addūxī hominem in quō satisfacere exteris nātiōnibus possētis (Verr. i. 2), *I have brought a man in whose person you can make satisfaction to foreign nations*. [Secondary sequence.]

est enim res iam in eum locum adducta, ut quamquam multum intersit inter eorum causas qui dimicant, tamen inter victorias non multum interfuturum putem (Fam. v. 21. 3), *for affairs have been brought to such a pass that, though there is a great difference between the causes of those who are fighting, still I do not think there will be much difference between their victories.* [Primary sequence.]

ea adhibita doctrina est quae vel vitiōssimam naturam excolere possit (Q. Fr. i. 1. 7), *such instruction has been given as can train even the faultiest nature.* [Primary sequence.]

NOTE. — The Perfect Infinitive in exclamations follows the same rule: —

quemquamne fuisse tam sceleratum qui hoc fingeret (Phil. xiv. 14), *was any one so abandoned as to imagine this?* [Secondary.]

adeo rem redisse patrem ut extimescam (Ter. Ph. 153), *to think that things have come to such a pass that I should dread my father!* [Primary.]

**b.** After a primary tense the Perfect Subjunctive is regularly used to denote *any past action*. Thus the Perfect Subjunctive may represent —

**1. A Perfect Definite: —**

non dubito quin omnes tui scripserint (Fam. v. 8), *I do not doubt that all your friends have written.* [Direct statement: scripserunt.]

qua re non ignoro quid accidat in ultimis terris, cum audierim in Italia querellas civium (Q. Fr. i. 1. 33), *therefore I know well what happens at the ends of the earth, when I have heard in Italy the complaints of citizens.* [Direct statement: audiui.]

**2. A Perfect Historical: —**

me autem hic laudat quod rettulerim, non quod patefecerim (Att. xii. 21), *me he praises because I brought the matter [before the senate], not because I brought it to light.* [Direct statement: rettulit.]

**3. An Imperfect: —**

si forte ceciderunt, tum intellegitur quam fuerint inopes amicorum (Lael. 53), *if perchance they fall (have fallen), then one can see how poor they were in friends.* [Direct question: quam inopes erant?]

qui status rerum fuerit cum has litteras dedi, scire poteris ex C. Titio Strabone (Fam. xii. 6), *what the condition of affairs was when I wrote this letter, you can learn from Strabo.* [Direct question: qui status erat?]

quam civitati carus fuerit maerore funeris indicatum est (Lael. 11), *how dear he was to the state has been shown by the grief at his funeral.* [Direct question: quam carus erat?]

ex epistulis intellegi licet quam frequens fuerit Platonis auditor (Or. 15), *it may be understood from his letters how constant a hearer he was of Plato.* [Direct question: quam frequens erat?]

NOTE. — Thus the Perfect Subjunctive may represent, not only a Perfect Definite or a Perfect Historical of a direct statement or question, but an Imperfect as well. This comes from the want of any special tense of the subjunctive for continued past action after a primary tense. Thus, *miror quid fecerit* may mean (1) *I wonder what he has done*, (2) *I wonder what he did* (hist. perf.), or (3) *I wonder what he was doing*.

c. In clauses of Result, the Perfect Subjunctive is regularly (the Present rarely) used after secondary tenses: —

*Hortēnsius ardēbat dicendi cupiditāte sic ut in nūllō umquam flagrantius studium viderim* (Brut. 302), *Hortensius was so hot with desire of speaking that I have never seen a more burning ardor in any man.*

[*Siciliam Verrēs*] *per triennium ita vexāvit ac perdidit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nūllō modō possit* (Verr. i. 12), *for three years Verres so racked and ruined Sicily that she can in no way be restored to her former state.* [Here the Present describes a state of things actually existing.]

*videor esse cōsecūtus ut nōn possit Dolābella in Italiam pervenire* (Fam. xii. 14. 2), *I seem to have brought it about that Dolabella cannot come into Italy.*

NOTE 1. — This construction emphasizes the result; the regular sequence of tenses would subordinate it.

NOTE 2. — There is a special fondness for the Perfect Subjunctive to represent a Perfect Indicative: —

*Thorius erat ita nōn superstitiōsus ut illa plūrima in suā patriā et sacrificia et fāna contemneret; ita nōn timidus ad mortem ut in aciē sit ob rem publicam interfectus* (Fin. ii. 63), *Thorius was so little superstitious that he despised [contemnebat] the many sacrifices and shrines in his country; so little timorous about death that he was killed [interfectus est] in battle, in defence of the state.*

d. A general truth after a past tense follows the sequence of tenses: *ex his quae tribuisset, sibi quam mutābilis esset reputābat* (Q. C. iii. 8. 20), *from what she (Fortune) had bestowed on him, he reflected how inconstant she is.* [Direct: *mutābilis est.*]

*ibi quantam vim ad stimulandōs animōs ira habēret apparuit* (Liv. xxxiii. 37), *here it appeared what power anger has to goad the mind.* [Direct: *habet.*]

NOTE. — In English the original tense is more commonly kept.

e. The Historical Present (§ 469) is sometimes felt as a *primary*, sometimes as a *secondary* tense, and accordingly it takes either the primary or the secondary sequence: —

*rogat ut cūret quod dixisset* (Quinct. 18), *he asks him to attend to the thing he had spoken of.* [Both primary and secondary sequence.]

NOTE. — After the historical present, the subjunctive with *cum* temporal must follow the secondary sequence: —

*quō cum vēnisset cōgnōscit* (B. C. i. 34), *when he had come there he learns.*

*cum esset pūgnātum hōrīs quinque, nostrique gravius premerentur, impetum in cohortis faciunt* (id. i. 46), *when they had fought for five hours, and our men were pretty hard pressed, they make an attack on the cohorts.*

f. The Historical Infinitive regularly takes the secondary sequence: —

*interim cotidie Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent polliciti, flāgitāre* (B. G. i. 16), *meanwhile Caesar demanded of the Hædui every day the grain which they had promised.*

**g.** The Imperfect and Pluperfect in conditions contrary to fact (§ 517) and in the Deliberative Subjunctive (§ 444) are not affected by the sequence of tenses:—

quia tāle sit, ut vel si ignorārent id hominēs vel si obmutuissent (Fin. ii. 49),  
because it is such that even if men WERE ignorant of it, or HAD BEEN silent about it.

quaerō ā tē cūr C. Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem (Vat. 5), I ask you why I was not to defend Caius Cornelius? [Direct: cūr nōn dēfenderem?]

**h.** The Imperfect Subjunctive in present conditions contrary to fact (§ 517) is regularly followed by the secondary sequence:—

si alii cōsulēs essent, ad tē potissimum, Paule, mitterem, ut eōs mihi quam amīcissimōs redderēs (Fam. xv. 13. 3), if there were other consuls, I should send to you, Paulus, in preference to all, that you might make them as friendly to me as possible.

si sōlōs eōs dicerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem exciperēs (Tusc. i. 9), if you were to call only those wretched who must die, you would except no one.

**i.** The Present is sometimes followed by a secondary sequence, seemingly because the writer is thinking of past time:—

sed si rēs cōget, est quiddam tertium, quod neque Seliciō nec mihi displicēbat: ut neque iacere rem paterēmur, etc. (Fam. i. 5 A. 3), but if the case shall demand, there is a third [course] which neither Selicius nor myself disapproved, that we should not allow, etc. [Here Cicero is led by the time of displicēbat.]

sed tamen ut scīrēs, haec tibi scribō (Fam. xiii. 47), but yet that you may know, I write thus. [As if he had used the epistolary imperfect scribēbam (§ 479).]

cūius praecepti tanta vis est ut ea nōn hominī cuiquam sed Delphicō deō tribuerētur (Legg. i. 58), such is the force of this precept, that it was ascribed not to any man, but to the Delphic god. [The precept was an old one.]

**j.** When a clause depends upon one already dependent, its sequence may be secondary if the verb of that clause expresses past time, even if the main verb is in a primary tense:—

sed tamen quā rē acciderit ut ex meis superiōribus litteris id suspicārē nesciō (Fam. ii. 16), but yet how it happened that you suspected this from my previous letter, I don't know.

tantum profēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecis nē verbōrum quidem cōpiā vincerēmur (N. D. i. 8), we seem to have advanced so far that even in abundance of words we ARE not surpassed by the Greeks.

NOTE.—So regularly after a Perfect Infinitive which depends on a primary tense (§ 585, a).

## TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

**486.** Except in Indirect Discourse, only the Present and Perfect Infinitives are used.\*

The Present represents the action of the verb as in progress without distinct reference to time, the Perfect as completed.

For the Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse see § 584.

*a.* With past tenses of verbs of *necessity, propriety, and possibility* (as *dēbui, oportuit, potui*), the Present Infinitive is often used in Latin where the English idiom prefers the Perfect Infinitive:—

numne, si Coriolānus habuit amīcōs, *ferre* contrā patriam arma illi cum Coriolānō *dēbuērunt* (Lael. 36), *if Coriolanus had friends, ought they to have borne arms with him against their fatherland?*

pecūnia, quam his oportuit civitātibus prō frūmentō *dari* (Verr. iii. 174), *money which ought to have been paid to these states for grain.*

cōsul esse qui *potui*, nisi eum vitæ cursum tenuissem ā pueritiā (Rep. i. 10), *how could I have become consul had I not from boyhood followed that course of life?*

*b.* With verbs of *necessity, propriety, and possibility*, the Perfect Infinitive may be used to emphasize the idea of completed action:—

tametsi statim vicisse *dēbeō* (Rosc. Am. 73), *although I ought to win my case at once* (to be regarded as having won it).

bellum quod possumus ante hiemem *perfēcisse* (Liv. xxxvii. 19. 5), *a war which we can have completed before winter.*

nīl ego, si peccem, possum *nescisse* (Ov. H. xvi. 47), *if I should go wrong, I cannot have done it in ignorance* (am not able not to have known).

NOTE.—With the past tenses of these verbs the perfect infinitive is apparently due to attraction:—

quod iam pridem factum esse oportuit (Cat. i. 5), *(a thing) which ought to have been done long ago.*

haec facta ab illō oportēbat (Ter. Haut. 536), *this ought to have been done by him.*  
tum decuit metuīsse (Aen. x. 94), *then was the time to fear* (then you should have feared).

*c.* In archaic Latin and in legal formulas the Perfect Active Infinitive is often used with *nōlō* or *volō* in prohibitions:—

Chaldaeum nēquem cōsuluīsse velit (Cato R. R. v. 4), *let him not venture to have consulted a soothsayer.*

nōlītō dēvellīsse (Pl. Poen. 872), *do not have them plucked.*

nēquis humāsse velit Āiācem (Hor. S. ii. 3. 187), *let no one venture to have buried Ajax.*

NEIQVIS EORVM BACANAL HABVISE VELET (S. C. de Bac. 1), *let no one of them venture to have had a place for Bacchanalian worship.*



**d.** With verbs of *wishing*<sup>1</sup> the Perfect Passive Infinitive (commonly without *esse*) is often used emphatically instead of the Present: domesticā cūrā tē levātum volō (Q. Fr. iii. 9. 3), *I wish you relieved of private care.*

illōs monitōs volō (Cat. ii. 27), *I wish them thoroughly warned.*

quī illam [patriam] extinctam cupit (Fin. iv. 66), *who is eager for her utter destruction.*

illud tē esse admonitum volō (Cael. 8), *I wish you to be well advised of this.*

quī sē ab omnibus dēsertōs potius quam abs tē dēfēnsōs esse mālunt (Caecil. 21), *who prefer to be deserted by all rather than to be defended by you.*

NOTE. — The participle in this case is rather in predicate agreement (with or without *esse*) than used to form a strict perfect infinitive, though the full form can hardly be distinguished from that construction.

**e.** In late Latin, and in poetry (often for metrical convenience), rarely in good prose, the Perfect Active Infinitive is used emphatically instead of the Present, and even after other verbs than those of *wishing*: —

nēmō eōrum est quī nōn perisse tē cupiat (Verr. ii. 149), *there is no one of them who is not eager for your death.*

haud equidem premendō alium mē extulisse velim (Liv. xxii. 59. 10), *I would not by crushing another exalt myself.*

sunt quī nōlunt tetigisse (Hor. S. i. 2. 28), *there are those who would not touch.* commississe cavet (Hor. A. P. 168), *he is cautious of doing.*

nunc quem tetigisse timērent, anguis erās (Ov. M. viii. 733), *again you became a serpent which they dreaded to touch.*

frātrēsque tendentēs opācō Pēlion imposuisse Olympō (Hor. Od. iii. 4. 51), *and the brothers striving to set Pelion on dark Olympus.*

**f.** After verbs of *feeling* the Perfect Infinitive is used, especially by the poets, to denote a completed action.

So also with *satis est*, *satis habeo*, *melius est*, *contentus sum*, and in a few other cases where the distinction of time is important: —

nōn paenitēbat intercapēdinem scribendī fēcisse (Fam. xvi. 21), *I was not sorry to have made a respite of writing.*

pudet mē nōn praestitisse (id. xiv. 3), *I am ashamed not to have shown.*

sunt quōs pulverem Olympicum collēgisse iuvat (Hor. Od. i. 1. 3), *some delight to have stirred up the dust at Olympia.*

quiescere erit melius (Liv. iii. 48), *it will be better to have kept quiet.*

ac si quis amet scripsisse (Hor. S. i. 10. 60), *than if one should choose to have written.*

id solum dixisse satis habeo (Vell. ii. 124), *I am content to have said only this.*

<sup>1</sup> Volō, and less frequently nōlō, mālō, and cupiō.

## NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS OF THE VERB

**487.** The several Noun and Adjective forms associated with the verb are employed as follows:—<sup>1</sup>

- |                 |  |   |   |
|-----------------|--|---|---|
| I. Participles: | { a. Present and Perfect:<br>{ b. Future<br>{ c. Gerundive | 1. Attributive (§ 494).<br>2. Simple Predicate (§ 495).<br>3. Periphrastic Perfect (passive) (§ 495. n.).<br>4. Predicate of Circumstance (§ 496).<br>5. Descriptive (Indirect Discourse) (§ 497 d).<br>1. Periphrastic with <i>esse</i> (§ 498. a).<br>2. Periphrastic with <i>fui</i> (= Pluperfect Subjunctive) (§ 498. b).<br>1. As Descriptive Adjective (§ 500. 1).<br>2. Periphrastic with <i>esse</i> (§ 500. 2).<br>3. Of Purpose with certain verbs (§ 500. 4). |   |
|                 |  | II. Gerund or Gerundive:  | 1. Genitive as Subjective or Objective Genitive (§ 504).<br>2. Dative, with Adjectives (of Fitness), Nouns, Verbs (§ 505).<br>3. Accusative, with certain Prepositions (§ 506).<br>4. Ablative, of Means, Comparison, or with Prepositions (§ 507). |
|                 |  | III. Supine:  | 1. Accusative Supine (in -um), with Verbs of Motion (§ 509).<br>2. Ablative Supine (in -ū), chiefly with Adjectives (§ 510).  |

## PARTICIPLES

**488.** The Participle expresses the action of the verb in the form of an Adjective, but has a partial distinction of tense and may govern a case.

NOTE.—Thus the participle combines all the functions of an adjective with some of the functions of a verb. As an Adjective, it limits substantives and agrees with them in gender, number, and case (§ 286). As a Verb, it has distinctions of time (§ 489) and often takes an object.

## Distinctions of Tense in Participles

**489.** Participles denote time as *present*, *past*, or *future* with respect to the time of the verb in their clause.

Thus the Present Participle represents the action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb, the Perfect as *completed*, and the Future as *still to take place*.

**490.** The Present Participle has several of the special uses of the Present Indicative. Thus it may denote —

1. An action *continued* in the present but *begun* in the past (§ 466):  
*quaerenti mihi iam diū certa res nulla veniebat in mentem* (Fam. iv. 18),  
*though I had long sought, no certain thing came to my mind.*

<sup>1</sup> For the Syntax of the Infinitive, see §§ 451 ff., 486.

## 2. Attempted action (§ 467):—

C. Flāminiō restitit agrum Picentem dividenti (Cat. M. 11), *he resisted Flāminius when attempting to divide the Picene territory.*

## 3. Rarely (in poetry and later Latin) futurity or purpose, with a verb of motion:—

Eurypyllum scitāntem ōrācula mittimus (Aen. ii. 114), *we send Eurypylos to consult the oracle.* [Cf. § 468.]

## 491. The Perfect Participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a Present.

Such are, regularly, *ratus, solitus, veritus*; commonly, *arbitrātus, fisus, ausus, secūtus*, and occasionally others, especially in later writers:—

*rem incrēdibilem ratī* (Sall. Cat. 48), *thinking the thing incredible.*

*Insidiās veritus* (B. G. ii. 11), *fearing an ambush.*

*cohortātus milites docuit* (B. C. iii. 80), *encouraging the men, he showed.*

*irātus dixisti* (Mur. 62), *you spoke in a passion.*

*ad pugnam congressi* (Liv. iv. 10), *meeting in fight.*

## 492. The Latin has no Present Participle in the passive.

The place of such a form is supplied usually by a clause with *dum* or *cum*:—

*obiēre dum calciantur matūtino duo Caesarēs* (Plin. N. H. vii. 181), *two Caesars died while having their shoes put on in the morning.*

*mēque ista delectant cum Latine dicuntur* (Acad. i. 18), *those things please me when they are spoken in Latin.*

NOTE.—These constructions are often used when a participle might be employed:—*dic, hospes, Spartae nos te hic vidisse iacentis, dum sanctis patriae legibus obsequimur* (Tusc. i. 101), *tell it, stranger, at Sparta, that you saw us lying here obedient to our country's sacred laws.* [Here *dum obsequimur* is a translation of the Greek present participle *πειθόμενοι*.]

*dum [Ulixēs] sibi, dum sociis reditum parat* (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 21), *Ulysses, while securing the return of himself and his companions.* [In Greek: *ἀπρόμενος*.]

## 493. The Latin has no Perfect Participle in the active voice. The deficiency is supplied —

## 1. In deponents by the perfect passive form with its regular active meaning:—

*nam singulas [navis] nostri consecrati expugnaverunt* (B. G. iii. 15), *for our men, having overtaken them one by one, captured them by boarding.*

NOTE.—The perfect participle of several deponent verbs may be either active or passive in meaning (§ 190. b).

2. In other verbs, either by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute (§ 420. N.) or by a temporal clause (especially with *cum* or *postquam*): —

itaque convocātis centuriōnibus milites certiōres facit (B. G. iii. 5), *and so, having called the centurions together, he informs the soldiers* (the centurions having been called together).

cum vēnisset animadvertit collem (id. vii. 44), *having come* (when he had come), *he noticed a hill.*

postquam id animum advertit cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit (B. G. i. 24), *having observed this* (after he had observed this) *Cæsar led his troops to the nearest hill.*

### Uses of Participles

494. The Present and Perfect Participles are sometimes used as attributives, nearly like adjectives: —

aeger et flagrans animus (Tac. Ann. iii. 54), *his sick and passionate mind.*

cum antiquissimam sententiam tum comprobātam (Div. i. 11), *a view at once most ancient and well approved.*

signa numquam ferē mentientia (id. i. 15), *signs hardly ever deceitful.*

auspiciis utuntur coactis (id. i. 27), *they use forced auspices.*

a. Participles often become complete adjectives, and may be compared, or used as nouns: —

quō mulieri esset res cautior (Caec. 11), *that the matter might be more secure for the woman.*

in illis artibus praestantissimus (De Or. i. 217), *preëminent in those arts.*

sibi indulgentēs et corpori dēservientēs (Legg. i. 39), *the self-indulgent, and slaves to the body* (indulging themselves and serving the body).

rectē facta paria esse debent (Par. 22), *right deeds* (things rightly done) *ought to be like in value* (see § 321. b).

male parta male dilabuntur (Phil. ii. 65), *ill got, ill spent* (things ill acquired are ill spent).

cōsuētūdō valentis (De Or. ii. 186), *the habit of a man in health.*

495. Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by *esse* or a copulative verb (see § 283): —

Gallia est divisa (B. G. i. 1), *Gaul is divided.*

locus qui nunc saeptus est (Liv. i. 8), *the place which is now enclosed.*

vidētis ut senectūs sit operōsa et semper agēs aliquid et mōliēs (Cat. M. 26), *you see how busy old age is, always aiming and trying at something.*

nēmō adhūc convenire mē voluit cui fuerim occupātus (id. 32), *nobody hitherto has [ever] wished to converse with me, to whom I have been "engaged."*

NOTE.—From this predicate use arise the compound tenses of the passive, — the participle of *completed action* with the incomplete tenses of *esse* developing the idea of past time: as, *interfectus est*, *he was* (or *has been*) *killed*, lit. *he is having-been-killed* (i.e. already slain).

The perfect participle used with *fuī* etc. was perhaps originally an intensified expression in the popular language for the perfect, pluperfect, etc.

At times these forms indicate a state of affairs no longer existing: —

*cōtem quoque eōdem locō sitam fuisse memorant* (Liv. i. 36. 5), *they say that a whetstone was* (once) *deposited in this same place*. [At the time of writing it was no longer there.]

*arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, humi inventa sunt* (Div. i. 74), *the arms which had been fastened on the walls were found upon the ground*.

But more frequently they are not to be distinguished from the forms with *sum* etc.

The construction is found occasionally at all periods, but is most common in Livy and later writers.

496. The Present and Perfect Participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be more natural.

In this use the participles express *time*, *cause*, *occasion*, *condition*, *concession*, *characteristic* (or *description*), *manner*, *means*, *attendant circumstances*: —

*volventēs hostilia cadāvera amicum reperiēbant* (Sall. Cat. 61), *while rolling over the corpses of the enemy they found a friend*. [Time.]

*paululum commorātus, signa canere iubet* (id. 59), *after delaying a little while, he orders them to give the signal*. [Time.]

*longius prōsequi veritus, ad Cicerōnem pervēnit* (B. G. v. 52), *because he feared to follow further, he came to Cicero*. [Cause.]

*qui sciret laxās dare iussus habēnās* (Aen. i. 63), *who might know how to give them loose rein when bidden*. [Occasion.]

*damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat* (B. G. i. 4), *if condemned, punishment must overtake him*. [Condition.]

*salūtem inspērantibus reddidisti* (Marc. 21), *you have restored a safety for which we did not hope* (to [us] not hoping). [Concession.]

*Dardanius caput ecce puer dētēctus* (Aen. x. 133), *the Trojan boy with his head uncovered*. [Description.]

*nec trepidēs in ūsum poscentis aevi pauca* (Hor. Od. ii. 11. 5), *be not anxious for the needs of age that demands little*. [Characteristic.]

*incitāti fugā montis altissimōs petēbant* (B. C. iii. 93), *in headlong flight they made for the highest mountains*. [Manner.]

*militēs sublevāti alii ab aliis magnam partem itineris cōficerent* (id. i. 68), *the soldiers, helped up by each other, accomplished a considerable part of the route*. [Means.]

*hōc laudāns, Pompēius idem iūrāvit* (id. iii. 87), *approving this, Pompey took the same oath*. [Attendant Circumstance.]

*aut sedēns aut ambulāns disputābam* (Tusc. i. 7), *I conducted the discussion either sitting or walking*. [Attendant Circumstance.]

NOTE 1. — These uses are especially frequent in the Ablative Absolute (§ 420).

NOTE 2. — A coördinate clause is sometimes compressed into a perfect participle: — *instructōs ordinēs in locum aequum dēdūcit* (Sall. Cat. 59), *he draws up the lines, and leads them to level ground.*

*ut hōs trāductōs necāret* (B. G. v. 6), *that he might carry them over and put them to death.*

NOTE 3. — A participle with a negative often expresses the same idea which in English is given by *without* and a verbal noun: as, — *miserum est nihil prōficiētem angī* (N. D. iii. 14), *it is wretched to vex oneself without effecting anything.*

NOTE 4. — *Acceptum* and *expēsum* as predicates with *ferre* and *referre* are book-keeping terms: as, — *quās pecūniās ferēbat eis expēnsās* (Verr. ii. 170), *what sums he charged to them.*

497. A noun and a passive participle are often so united that the participle and not the noun contains the main idea: — <sup>1</sup>

*ante conditam condendamve urbem* (Liv. Pref.), *before the city was built or building.*

*illi libertātem imminūtām civium Rōmānōrum nōn tulērunt; vōs ēreptam vitam neglegētis* (Manil. 11), *they did not endure the infringement of the citizens' liberty; will you disregard the destruction of their lives?*

*post nātōs hominēs* (Brut. 224), *since the creation of man.*

*iam ā conditā urbe* (Phil. iii. 9), *even from the founding of the city.*

a. The perfect participle with a noun in agreement, or in the neuter as an abstract noun, is used in the ablative with *opus*, *need* (cf. § 411. a): —

*opus factō est viaticō* (Pl. Trin. 887), *there is need of laying in provision.*

*mātūrātō opus est* (Liv. viii. 13. 17), *there is need of haste.*

b. The perfect participle with *habēō* (rarely with other verbs) has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the *continued effect* of the action of the verb: — <sup>2</sup>

*fidem quam habent spectatam iam et diū cōgnitam* (Caecil. 11), *my fidelity, which they have proved and long known.*

*cohortis in acie lxxx cōstitūtās habēbat* (B. C. iii. 89), *he had eighty cohorts stationed in line of battle.*

*nefariōs ducēs captōs iam et comprehēnsōs tenētis* (Cat. iii. 16), *you have now captured the infamous leaders and hold them in custody.*

c. A verb of *effecting* or the like may be used in combination with the perfect participle of a transitive verb to express the action of that verb more forcibly: —

<sup>1</sup> Compare the participle in indirect discourse in Greek (Goodwin's Greek Grammar, § 1588); and the English " 'T was at the royal feast for Persia won " (Dryden), i.e. *for the conquest of Persia.*

<sup>2</sup> The perfect with *have*, in modern languages of Latin stock, has grown out of this use of *habēō*.

praefectōs suos multī missōs fecerunt (Verr. iii. 134), *many discharged their officers* (made dismissed).

hic transactum reddet omne (Pl. Capt. 345), *he will get it all done* (restore it finished).

ademptum tibi iam faxō omnem metum (Ter. Haut. 341), *I will relieve you of all fear* (make it taken away).

illam tibi incensam dabō (Ter. Ph. 974), *I will make her angry with you*.

NOTE.—Similarly volō (with its compounds) and cupiō, with a perfect participle without esse (cf. § 486. d).

d. After verbs denoting an *action of the senses* the present participle in agreement with the object is nearly equivalent to the infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 580), but expresses the action more vividly:

ut eum nēmō umquam in equō sedentem viderit (Verr. v. 27), *so that no one ever saw him sitting on a horse*. [Cf. Tusc. iii. 31.]

NOTE.—The same construction is used after faciō, inducō, and the like, with the name of an author as subject: as, —Xenophōn facit Sōcratem disputantem (N. D. i. 31), *Xenophon represents Socrates disputing*.

### Future Participle (Active)

498. The Future Participle (except futūrus and ventūrus) is rarely used in simple agreement with a noun, except by poets and later writers.

a. The future participle is chiefly used with the forms of esse (often omitted in the infinitive) in the Active Periphrastic Conjugation (see § 195):—

morere, Diagorā, nōn enim in caelum adscēnsūrus es (Tusc. i. 111), *die, Diagoras, for you are not likely to rise to heaven*.

spērat adulēscēns diū sē victūrum (Cat. M. 68), *the young man hopes to live long* (that he shall live long).

neque petitūrus umquam cōsulātum vidērētur (Off. iii. 79), *and did not seem likely ever to be a candidate for the consulship*.

b. With the past tenses of esse in the indicative, the future participle is often equivalent to the pluperfect subjunctive (§ 517. d). For futūrum fuisse, see § 589. b.

499. By later writers and the poets the Future Participle is often used in simple agreement with a substantive to express—

1. Likelihood or certainty:—

rem ausus plūs fāmae habitūram (Liv. ii. 10), *having dared a thing which would have more repute*.

## 2. Purpose, intention, or readiness :—

egreditur castris Rōmānus vāllum invāsūrus (Liv. iii. 60. 8), *the Roman comes out of the camp with the intention of attacking the rampart.*

dispersōs per agrōs militēs equitibus invāsūris (id. xxxi. 36), *while the horse were ready to attack the soldiers scattered through the fields.*

sī peritūrus abis (Aen. ii. 675), *if you are going away to perish.*

## 3. Apodosis :—

dedit mihi quantum maximum potuit, datūrus amplius sī potuisset (Plin. Ep. iii. 21. 6), *he gave me as much as he could, ready to give me more if he had been able.* [Here datūrus is equivalent to dedisset.]

## Gerundive (Future Passive Participle)

NOTE. — The participle in -dus, commonly called the Gerundive, has two distinct uses :—

(1) Its predicate and attribute use as Participle or Adjective (§ 500).

(2) Its use with the meaning of the Gerund (§ 503). This may be called its *gerundive* use.

**500.** The Gerundive when used as a Participle or an Adjective is always passive, denoting *necessity, obligation, or propriety.*

In this use of the Gerundive the following points are to be observed :—

1. The gerundive is sometimes used, like the present and perfect participles, in simple agreement with a noun :—

fortem et cōservandum virum (Mil. 104), *a brave man, and worthy to be preserved.*

gravis iniūria facta est et nōn ferenda (Flacc. 84), *a grave and intolerable wrong has been done.*

2. The most frequent use of the gerundive is with the forms of *esse* in the Second (or *passive*) Periphrastic Conjugation (see § 196) :—

nōn agītanda rēs erit (Verr. v. 179), *will not the thing have to be agitated?*

3. The neuter gerundive of both transitive and intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the second periphrastic conjugation.

With verbs that take the dative or ablative, an object may be expressed in the appropriate case; with transitive verbs, an object in the accusative is sometimes found :—

temporē serviendum est (Fam. ix. 7. 2), *one must obey the time.*

lēgibus pārendum est, *the laws must be obeyed.*

utendum exercitātiōnibus modicis (Cat. M. 36), *we must use moderate exercise.*

agitandum est vigiliās (Pl. Trin. 869), *I have got to stand guard.*

via quam nobis ingrediendum sit (Cat. M. 6), *the way we have to enter.*



4. After verbs signifying to *give, deliver, agree for, have, receive, undertake, demand*,<sup>1</sup> a gerundive in agreement with the object is used to express purpose: —

redēptor qui columnam illam condūxerat faciendam (Div. ii. 47), *the contractor who had undertaken to make that column*. [The regular construction with this class of verbs.]

aedem Castoris habuit tuendam (Verr. ii. 1. 150), *he had the temple of Castor to take care of*.

nāvis atque onera adservanda cūrābat (id. v. 146), *he took care that the ships and cargoes should be kept*.

### GERUND

501. The Gerund is the neuter of the Gerundive, used substantively in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative.

502. The Gerund expresses an action of the verb in the form of a verbal noun.

As a *noun* the gerund is itself governed by other words; as a *verb* it may take an object in the proper case: —

ars bene disserendi et vera ac falsa diiudicandi (De Or. ii. 157), *the art of discoursing well, and distinguishing the true and the false*.

NOTE. — The Nominative of the gerund is supplied by the Infinitive. Thus in the example above, the verbal nouns *discoursing* and *distinguishing*, if used in the nominative, would be expressed by the infinitives *disserere* and *diiudicare*.

The Gerund is the neuter of the gerundive used impersonally, but retaining the verbal idea sufficiently to govern an object. It may therefore be regarded as a noun (cf. *mātūrātō opus est*, § 497. a) with a verbal force (cf. *istanc tāctiō*, p. 240, footnote).

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

503. When the Gerund would have an object in the Accusative, the Gerundive<sup>2</sup> is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have had: —

parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda (B. G. i. 5), *readier to undergo all dangers*. [Here *subeunda* agrees with *pericula*, which is itself governed by *ad*. The (inadmissible) construction with the gerund would be *ad subeundum pericula*; *ad* governing the gerund, and the gerund governing the accusative *pericula*.] For details, see §§ 504-507.

<sup>1</sup> Such verbs are *accipiō, adnōtō, attribuiō, condūcō, cūrō, dēnōtō, dēposcō, dō, dīvidō, dōnō, ēdicō, ēdoceō, ferō, habēō, locō, mandō, obiciō, permittō, petō, pōnō, praebeō, prōpōnō, relinqūō, rogō, suscipiō, trādō, voveō*.

<sup>2</sup> The gerundive construction is probably the original one.

NOTE 1.—In this use the gerund and the gerundive are translated in the same way, but have really a different construction. The gerundive is a *passive* participle, and agrees with its noun, though in translation we change the voice, just as we may translate *vigiliae agitandae sunt* (*guard must be kept*) by *I must stand guard*.

NOTE 2.—In the gerundive construction the verbs *utor, fruor, etc.*, are treated like transitive verbs governing the accusative, as they do in early Latin (§ 410. a. n. 1): as, —*ad perfrendās voluptātēs* (Off. i. 25), *for enjoying pleasures*.

a. The following examples illustrate the parallel constructions of Gerund and Gerundive:—

GEN. cōsiliū { urbem capiendī  
urbis capiendae } *a design of taking the city.*

DAT. dat operam { agrōs colendō  
agri colendīs } *he attends to tilling the fields.*

ACC. veniunt ad { mihi pārendum  
pācem petendam } *they come { to obey me.  
to seek peace.*

ABL. terit tempus { scribendō epistulās  
scribendis epistulis } *he spends time in writing letters.*

NOTE 1.—The gerund with a direct object is practically limited to the Genitive and the Ablative (without a preposition); even in these cases the gerundive is commoner.

NOTE 2.—The gerund or gerundive is often found coördinated with nominal constructions, and sometimes even in apposition with a noun:—

(1) *in forō, in cūriā, in amicōrum periculīs prōpulsandīs* (Phil. vii. 7), *in the forum, in the senate-house, in defending my friends in jeopardy.*

(2) *ad rēs diversissimās, pārendum atque imperandum* (Liv. xxi. 4), *for the most widely different things, obeying and commanding.*

### Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive

504. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as *subjective* or *objective* genitive:—

*vivendi finis est optimus* (Cat. M. 72), *it is the best end of living.* [Subjective.]

*neque cōsiliū habendi neque arma capiendī spatiō datō* (B. G. iv. 14), *time being given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms.* [Objective.]

*nōn tam commutandārum quam evvertendārum rērum cupidōs* (Off. ii. 3), *desirous not so much of changing as of destroying the state.* [Objective.]

NOTE 1.—In these uses the gerund and the gerundive are about equally common.

NOTE 2.—In a few phrases the Infinitive is used with nouns which ordinarily have the genitive of the gerund or gerundive: as, —*tempus est abire*, *it is time to go.*

a. The genitive of the gerund sometimes takes a direct object, especially a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used substantively:—

*nūlla causa iūsta cuiquam esse potest contrā patriam arma capiendī* (Phil. ii. 58), *no one can have a just cause for taking up arms against his country.*

*artem vērā ac falsā diiudicandi* (De Or. ii. 157), *the art of distinguishing true from false.*

**NOTE 1.** — The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used (especially in later Latin) as a predicate genitive. When so used it often expresses purpose: —

*quae postquam gloriōsa modo neque bellī patrāndi cōgnōvit* (Iug. 88), *when he perceived that these were only brilliant deeds and not likely to end the war.*  
*Aegyptum proficiscitur cōgnōscendae antiquitātis* (Tac. Ann. ii. 59), *he sets out for Egypt to study old times.*

**b.** The genitive of the gerund or gerundive with *causā* or *gratiā* expresses purpose (§ 533. *b*): —

*pābulandī aut frūmentandī causā prōgressi* (B. C. i. 48), *having advanced for the purpose of collecting fodder or supplies.*  
*vitandae suspicionis causā* (Cat. i. 19), *in order to avoid suspicion.*  
*simulandī grātiā* (Iug. 37), *in order to deceive.*  
*exercendae memoriāe grātiā* (Cat. M. 38), *for the sake of training the memory.*

**c.** The genitive of the gerund is occasionally limited by a noun or pronoun (especially a personal pronoun in the plural) in the objective genitive instead of taking a direct object: —

*rēciendī trium iudicū potestās* (Verr. ii. 77), *the power of challenging three jurors* (of the rejecting of three jurors).  
*sui colligendī facultās* (B. G. iii. 6), *the opportunity to recover themselves.*

### Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive

**505.** The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used in a few expressions after verbs: —<sup>1</sup>

*diem praestitit operi faciendō* (Verr. ii. 1. 148), *he appointed a day for doing the work.*  
*praeesse agrō colendō* (Rosc. Am. 50), *to take charge of cultivating the land.*  
*esse solvendō*, *to be able to pay* (to be for paying).

**NOTE.** — The dative of the gerund with a direct object is never found in classic Latin, but occurs twice in Plautus.

**a.** The dative of the gerund and gerundive is used after adjectives,<sup>2</sup> especially those which denote *fitness* or *adaptability*: —

*genus armōrum aptum tegendis corporibus* (Liv. xxxii. 10), *a sort of armor suited to the defence of the body.*  
*relīqua tempora dēmetendis fructibus et perciplendis accommodāta sunt* (Cat. M. 70), *the other seasons are fitted to reap and gather in the harvest.*  
*perferendis militum mādātis idōneus* (Tac. Ann. i. 23), *suitable for carrying out the instructions of the soldiers.*

**NOTE.** — This construction is very common in Livy and later writers, infrequent in classical prose.

<sup>1</sup> Such are *praeesse*, *operam dare*, *diem dicere*, *locum capere*.

<sup>2</sup> Such are *accommodātus*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, *bonus*, *habilis*, *idōneus*, *pār*, *utilis*, *inutilis*. But the accusative with *ad* is common with most of these (cf. § 385. *a*).

**b.** The dative of the gerund and gerundive is used in certain legal phrases after nouns meaning *officers, offices, elections*, etc., to indicate the function or scope of the office etc.:—

*comitia cōsulibus rogandis* (Div. i. 33), *elections for nominating consuls*.

*triumvir colōniis dēdūcundis* (Iug. 42), *a triumvir for planting colonies*.

*triumviri rei pūblicae cōstituendae* (title of the Triumvirate), *triumvirs (a commission of three) for settling the government*.

### Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive

**506.** The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition *ad*, to denote Purpose (cf. § 533):—

*mē vocās ad scribendum* (Or. 34), *you summon me to write*.

*vivis nōn ad dēpōnendam sed ad cōfirmandam audāciam* (Cat. i. 4), *you live not to put off but to confirm your daring*.

*nactus aditūs ad ea cōnanda* (B. C. i. 31), *having found means to undertake these things*.

NOTE 1.—Other prepositions appear in this construction; *inter* and *ob* a few times, *circā*, *in*, *ante*, and a few others very rarely: *as, inter agendum* (Ecl. ix. 24), *while driving*.

NOTE 2.—The Accusative of the gerund with a preposition never takes a direct object in classic Latin.

### Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive

**507.** The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used (1) to express *manner*,<sup>1</sup> *means, cause*, etc.; (2) after Comparatives; and (3) after the propositions *ab, dē, ex, in*, and (rarely) *prō*:—

(1) *multa pollicendō persuādet* (Iug. 46), *he persuades by large promises*.

*Latīnē loquendō cuivīs pār* (Brut. 128), *equal to any man in speaking Latin*.  
*his ipsīs legendis* (Cat. M. 21), *by reading these very things*.

*obscuram atque humilem concientiō ad sē multitudinem* (Liv. i. 8), *calling to them a mean and obscure multitude*.

(2) *nūllum officium referendā grātiā magis necessariū est* (Off. i. 47), *no duty is more important than repaying favors*.

(3) *in rē gerendā versārī* (Cat. M. 17), *to be employed in conducting affairs*.

NOTE 1.—The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is also very rarely used with verbs and adjectives: *as, —nec continuandō abstinit magistratū* (Liv. ix. 34), *he did not desist from continuing his magistracy*.

NOTE 2.—The ablative of the gerund rarely takes a direct object in classic prose.

<sup>1</sup> In this use the ablative of the gerund is, in later writers nearly, and in mediæval writers entirely, equivalent to a present participle: *as, —cum unā diērum fLENDō sēdisset, quidam miles generōsus iuxta eam equitandō vēnit* (Gesta Romanorum, 66 [58]), *as one day she sat weeping, a certain knight came riding by* (compare § 507, fourth example). Hence come the Italian and Spanish forms of the present participle (as *mandando, esperando*), the true participial form becoming an adjective in those languages.

## SUPINE

**508.** The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§ 94. b), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses. (1) The form in *-um* is the Accusative of the *end of motion* (§ 428. i). (2) The form in *-ū* is usually Dative of *purpose* (§ 382), but the Ablative was early confused with it.

**509.** The Supine in *-um* is used after verbs of *motion* to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case: —

quid est, Imusne sessum? etsi admonitum vēnimus tē, nōn flāgitātum (De Or. iii. 17), *how now, shall we be seated? though we have come to remind, not to entreat you.*

nūptum dare (collocāre), *to give in marriage.*

vēnerunt questum iniūriās (Liv. iii. 25), *they came to complain of wrongs.*

NOTE 1. — The supine in *-um* is especially common with *eō*, and with the passive infinitive *iri* forms the future infinitive passive: —

fuēre civēs qui rem publicam perditum irent (Sall. Cat. 36), *there were citizens who went about to ruin the republic.*

sī sciret sē trucidātum iri (Div. ii. 22), *if he (Pompey) had known that he was going to be murdered.* [Rare except in Cicero. For the more usual way of expressing the future passive infinitive, see § 569. 3. a.]

NOTE 2. — The supine in *-um* is occasionally used when *motion* is merely implied.

**510.** The Supine in *-ū*<sup>1</sup> is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns *fās*, *nefās*, and *opus*, to denote an action *in reference to which* the quality is asserted: —

rem nōn modo visū foedam, sed etiam audītū (Phil. ii. 63), *a thing not only shocking to see, but even to hear of.*

quaerunt quid optimum factū sit (Verr. ii. 1. 68), *they ask what is best to do.*

sī hōc fās est dictū (Tusc. v. 38), *if this is lawful to say.*

vidētis nefās esse dictū miseram fuisse tālem senectūtem (Cat. M. 13), *you see it is a sin to say that such an old age was wretched.*

NOTE 1. — The supine in *-ū* is thus in appearance an Ablative of Specification (§ 418).

NOTE 2. — The supine in *-ū* is found especially with such adjectives as indicate an effect on the senses or the feelings, and those which denote *ease*, *difficulty*, and the like. But with *facilis*, *difficilis*, and *iucundus*, ad with the gerund is more common: —

nec visū facilis nec dictū adfābilis ulli (Aen. iii. 621), *he is not pleasant for any man to look at or address.*

difficilis ad distinguendum similitūdō (De Or. ii. 212), *a likeness difficult to distinguish.*

NOTE 3. — With all these adjectives the poets often use the Infinitive in the same sense: as, — *facilēs aures praebere* (Prop. ii. 21. 15), *indulgent to lend an ear.*

NOTE 4. — The supine in *-ū* with a verb is extremely rare: as, — *puDET dictū* (Tac. Agr. 32), *it is a shame to tell.* [On the analogy of *puDendum dictū*.]

<sup>1</sup> The only common supines in *-ū* are *audītū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *inventū*, *memorātū*, *nātū*, *visū*. In classic use this supine is found in comparatively few verbs. It is never followed by an object-case.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**511.** The Conditional Sentence differs from other complex sentences in this, that the form of the main clause (APODOSIS) is determined in some degree by the nature of the subordinate clause (PROTASIS) upon the truth of which the whole statement depends. Like all complex sentences, however, the Conditional Sentence has arisen from the use of two independent sentence-forms to express the parts of a thought which was too complicated to be fully expressed by a simple sentence. But because the thoughts thus expressed are in reality closely related, as parts of a single whole, the sentences which represent them are also felt to be mutually dependent, even though the relation is not expressed by any connecting word. Thus, *Speak the word: my servant shall be healed* is a simpler and an earlier form of expression than *If thou speak the word, etc.*

The Conditional Particles were originally pronouns without conditional meaning: thus, *si*, *if*, is a weak demonstrative of the same origin as *sic*, *so* (*si-ce* like *hi-ce*, see § 215. 5), and had originally the meaning of *in that way*, or *in some way*. Its relative sense (*if*) seems to have come from its use with *sic* to make a pair of correlatives: thus . . . *thus* (see § 512. b).

In its origin the Conditional Sentence assumed one of two forms. The condition was from the first felt to be a condition, not a fact or a command; but, as no special sentence-form for a condition was in use, it employed for its expression either a statement of fact (with the Indicative) or a form of mild command (the Subjunctive). From the former have come all the uses of the Indicative in protasis; from the latter all the uses of the Subjunctive in protasis. The Apodosis has either (1) the Indicative, expressing the conclusion as a fact, and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, expressing it originally as future — and hence more or less doubtful — or (2) the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive expressing it as *futūrum in praeteritō*,<sup>1</sup> and so unfulfilled in the present or past. Thus, — *ridēs, maiōre cachinnō concutitur, you laugh, he shakes with more boisterous laughter*, is the original form for the Indicative in protasis and apodosis; *si ridēs* originally means merely *you laugh in some way or other*, and so, later, *if you laugh*. So *rogēs Aristōnem, neget, ask Aristo, he would say no*, is the original form of the subjunctive in protasis and apodosis; *si rogēs* would mean *ask in some way or other*. In *si rogāres, negāret*, the Imperfect *rogāres* transfers the command of *rogēs* to past time,<sup>2</sup> with the meaning *suppose you had asked*, and *si* would have the same meaning as before; while *negāret* transfers the future idea of *neget* to past time, and means *he was going to deny*. Now the stating of this supposition at all gives rise to the implication that it is *untrue in point of fact*, — because, if it were true, there would ordinarily be no need to state it as a supposition: for it would then be a simple fact, and as such would be put in the indicative.<sup>3</sup> Such a condition or conclusion

<sup>1</sup> The *futūrum in praeteritō* is a tense future relatively to a time absolutely past. It denotes a future act transferred to the point of view of past time, and hence is naturally expressed by a past tense of the Subjunctive: thus *dixisset, he would have said* = *dictūrus fuit, he was about to say* [but did not]. As that which looks towards the future from some point in the past has a natural limit in present time, such a tense (the imperfect subjunctive) came naturally to be used to express a present condition purely ideal, that is to say, contrary to fact.

<sup>2</sup> Compare *potius diceret, he should rather have said* (§ 439. b).

<sup>3</sup> There are, however, some cases in which this implication does not arise: as, — *decēns centēna dediēsē, nil erat in loculis* (Hor. S. i. 3. 15), *if you'd given him a million, there was nothing in his coffers*.

(originally past, meaning *suppose you had asked* [yesterday], *he was going to deny*) came to express an unfulfilled condition in the present: *suppose* (or *if*) *you were now asking, he would* [now] *deny*—just as in English *ought*, which originally meant *owed*,<sup>1</sup> has come to express a present obligation.

For the classification of Conditional Sentences, see § 513.

## PROTASIS AND APODOSIS

**512.** A complete Conditional Sentence consists of two clauses, the Protasis and the Apodosis.

The clause containing the *condition* is called the PROTASIS; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the APODOSIS:—

*sī qui exire volunt* [PROTASIS], *cōnīvēre possum* [APODOSIS] (Cat. ii. 27), *if any wish to depart, I can keep my eyes shut.*

*sī est in exiliō* [PROTASIS], *quid amplius postulātis* [APODOSIS] (Lig. 13), *if he is in exile, what more do you ask?*

It should be carefully noted that the Apodosis is the *main* clause and the Protasis the *dependent* clause.

*a.* The Protasis is regularly introduced by the conditional particle *sī*, *if*, or one of its compounds.

NOTE.—These compounds are *sīn*, *nisi*, *etiam sī*, *etsī*, *tametsī*, *tamenetsī* (see Conditional and Concessive Particles, p. 138). An Indefinite Relative, or any relative or concessive word, may also serve to introduce a conditional clause: see Conditional Relative Clauses (§§ 519, 542); Concessive Clauses (§ 527).

*b.* The Apodosis is often introduced by some correlative word or phrase: *as*, *ita*, *tum* (rarely *sic*), or *eā condiōne* etc.:—

*ita enim senectūs honesta est*, *sī sē ipsa dēfendit* (Cat. M. 38), *on this condition is old age honorable, if it defends itself.*

*sī quidem mē amāret*, *tum istuc prōdesset* (Ter. Eun. 446), *if he loved me, then this would be profitable.*

*sic scribēs aliquid*, *sī vacābis* (Att. xii. 38. 2), *if you are (shall be) at leisure, then you will write something.*

*c.* The Apodosis is the principal clause of the conditional sentence, but may at the same time be subordinate to some other clause, and so appear in the form of a Participle, an Infinitive, or a Phrase:—

*sepultūrā quoque prohibētūri*, *nī rēx humāri iussisset* (Q. C. viii. 2. 12), *intending also to deprive him of burial, unless the king had ordered him to be interred.*

<sup>1</sup> "There was a certain lender which ought him five hundred pieces."—*Tyndale's New Testament.*

quod si praeterea nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum [esse] (B. G. i. 40. 14), *but if no one else should follow, he would go with the tenth legion alone.*

si quōs adversum proelium commovēret, hōs reperire posse (id. 40. 8), *if the loss of a battle alarmed any, they might find, etc.*

NOTE. — When the Apodosis itself is in Indirect Discourse, or in any other dependent construction, the verb of the Protasis is regularly in the Subjunctive (as in the above examples, see § 589).

## CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

**513.** Conditions are either (1) Particular or (2) General.

1. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time.

2. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

**514.** The principal or typical forms of Conditional Sentences may be exhibited as follows: —

### PARTICULAR CONDITIONS

**A. SIMPLE CONDITIONS** (nothing implied as to fulfilment)

#### 1. Present Time

Present Indicative in both clauses: —

si adest, bene est, *if he is [now] here, it is well.*

#### 2. Past Time

Imperfect or Perfect Indicative in both clauses: —

si aderat, bene erat, *if he was [then] here, it was well.*

si adfuit, bene fuit, *if he has been [was] here, it has been [was] well.*

**B. FUTURE CONDITIONS** (as yet unfulfilled)

#### 1. More Vivid

**a.** Future Indicative in both clauses: —

si aderit, bene erit, *if he is (shall be) here, it will be well.*

**b.** Future Perfect Indicative in protasis, Future Indicative in apodosis: —

si adfuverit, bene erit, *if he is (shall have been) here, it will [then] be well.*



## 2. Less Vivid

*a.* Present Subjunctive in both clauses:—

*sī adsit, bene sit, if he should be (or were to be) here, it would be well.*

*b.* Perfect Subjunctive in protasis, Present Subjunctive in apodosis:—

*sī adfuisset, bene sit, if he should be (should have been) here, it would [then] be well.*

## C. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

## 1. Present Time

Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses:—

*sī adesset, bene esset, if he were [now] here, it would be well (but he is not here).*

## 2. Past Time

Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses:—

*sī adfuisset, bene fuisset, if he had [then] been here, it would have been well (but he was not here).*

NOTE.—The use of tenses in Protasis is very loose in English. Thus *if he is alive now* is a PRESENT condition, to be expressed in Latin by the Present Indicative; *if he is alive next year* is a FUTURE condition, expressed in Latin by the Future Indicative. Again, *if he were here now* is a PRESENT condition contrary to fact, and would be expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive; *if he were to see me thus* is a FUTURE condition less vivid, to be expressed by the Present Subjunctive; and so too, *if you advised him, he would attend* may be future less vivid.<sup>1</sup>

## D. GENERAL CONDITIONS

General Conditions do not usually differ in form from Particular Conditions (*A*, *B*, and *C*), but are sometimes distinguished in the cases following:—

## 1. Present General Condition (Indefinite Time)

*a.* Present Subjunctive second person singular (Indefinite Subject) in protasis, Present Indicative in apodosis:—

*sī hōc dicās, crēditur, if any one [ever] says this, it is [always] believed.*

*b.* Perfect Indicative in protasis, Present Indicative in apodosis:

*sī quid dixit, crēditur, if he [ever] says anything, it is [always] believed.*

<sup>1</sup> In most English verbs the Preterite (or Past) Subjunctive is identical in form with the Preterite Indicative. Thus in such a sentence as *if he loved his father, he would not say this*, the verb *loved* is really a Preterite Subjunctive, though this does not appear from the inflection. In the verb *to be*, however, the Subjunctive *were* has been preserved and differs in form from the indicative *was*.

## 2. Past General Condition (Repeated Action in Past Time)

a. Pluperfect Indicative in protasis, Imperfect Indicative in apodosis: —

*sī quid dixerat, crēdebātur, if he [ever] said anything, it was [always] believed.*

b. Imperfect Subjunctive in protasis, Imperfect Indicative in apodosis: —

*sī quid diceret, crēdebātur, if he [ever] said anything, it was [always] believed (= whatever he said was always believed).<sup>1</sup>*

## PARTICULAR CONDITIONS

### Simple Present and Past Conditions — Nothing Implied

515. In the statement of Present and Past conditions *whose falsity is NOT implied*, the Present and Past tenses of the Indicative are used in both Protasis and Apodosis: —

*sī tū exercitusque valētis, bene est (Fam. v. 2), if you and the army are well, it is well. [Present Condition.]*

*haec igitur, sī Rōmae es; sīn abes, aut etiam sī ades, haec negōtia sīc sē habent (Att. v. 18), this, then, if you are at Rome; but if you are away — or even if you are there — these matters are as follows. [Present Condition.]*

*sī Caesarem probātis, in mē offenditis (B. C. ii. 32. 10), if you favor Caesar, you find fault with me. [Present Condition.]*

*sī qui magnis ingeniis in eō genere exstitērunt, nōn satis Graecōrum glōriae respondērunt (Tusc. i. 3), if any have shown themselves of great genius in that department, they have failed to compete with the glory of the Greeks. [Past General Condition, not distinguished in form from Particular.]*

*accēpi Rōmā sine epistulā tuā fasciculum litterārum in quō, sī modo valuisti et Rōmae fuisti, Philotimī dūcō esse culpam nōn tuam (Att. v. 17), I have received from Rome a bundle of letters without any from you, which, provided you have been well and at Rome, I take to be the fault of Philotimus, not yours. [Mixed: Past condition and Present conclusion.]*

*quās litterās, sī Rōmae es, vidēbis putēsne reddendās (id. v. 18), as to this letter, if you are at Rome, you will see whether in your opinion it ought to be delivered. [Mixed: Present and Future.]*

*sī nēmō impetrāvit, adroganter rogō (Lig. 30), if no one has succeeded in obtaining it, my request is presumptuous. [Past and Present.]*

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the Greek forms corresponding to the various types of conditions: —

A. 1. *el πρᾶσσει τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει.*

2. *el ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς εἶχεν.*

B. 1. *ἐὰν πρᾶσση τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔξει.*

2. *el πρᾶσσοι τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔχοι.*

C. 1. *el ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν εἶχεν.*

2. *el ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔσχεν.*

D. 1. *ἐὰν τις κλέπτῃ, κολάζεται.*

2. *el τις κλέπτοι, ἐκολάζετο.*

*α.* In these conditions the apodosis need not always be in the Indicative, but may assume any form, according to the sense:—

*sī placet . . . videāmus* (Cat. M. 15), *if you please, let us see.* [Hortatory Subjunctive, § 439.]

*sī nōdum satis cernitis, recordāmini* (Mil. 61), *if you do not yet see clearly, recollect.* [Imperative.]

*sī quid habēs certius, velim scire* (Att. iv. 10), *if you have any trustworthy information, I should like to know it.* [Subjunctive of Modesty, § 447. 1.]

NOTE.—Although the *form* of these conditions does not imply anything as to the truth of the supposition, the sense or the context may of course have some such implication:—

*nōlite, sī in nostrō omnium flētū nūllam lacrimam asperistis* Milōnis, *hōc minus eī parcere* (Mil. 92), *do not, if amid the weeping of us all you have seen no tear [in the eyes] of Milo, spare him the less for that.*

*petimus ā vōbis, iūdicēs, sī qua divīna in tantīs ingenīs commendātiō dēbet esse, ut eum in vestram accipiātis fidem* (Arch. 31), *we ask you, judges, if there ought to be anything in such genius to recommend it to us as by a recommendation of the gods, that you receive him under your protection.*

In these two passages, the protasis really expresses *cause*: but the cause is put by the speaker in the form of a non-committal condition. His hearers are to draw the inference for themselves. In this way the desired impression is made on their minds more effectively than if an outspoken causal clause had been used.

### Future Conditions

**516.** Future Conditions may be *more vivid* or *less vivid*.

1. In a more vivid future condition the protasis makes a distinct supposition of a future case, the apodosis expressing what *will be* the logical result.

2. In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what *would be* the result in the case supposed.

*α.* In the *more vivid* future condition the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis:—

*sānābimur, sī volēmus* (Tusc. iii. 13), *we shall be healed if we wish.*

*quod sī legere aut audire volētis, . . . reperietis* (Cat. M. 20), *if you will [shall wish to] read or hear, you will find.*

NOTE.—In English the protasis is usually expressed by the Present Indicative, rarely by the Future with *SHALL*. Often in Latin the Present Indicative is found in the protasis of a condition of this kind (cf. § 468):—

*sī vincimus, omniā nobīs tūta erunt; sin metū cesserimus, eadem illa advorsa fient* (Sall. Cat. 58), *if we conquer, all things will be safe for us; but if we yield through fear, those same things will become hostile.*

*sī pereō, hominum manibus periisse invābit* (Aen. iii. 606), *if I perish, it will be pleasant to have perished at the hands of men.*

**b.** In the *less vivid* future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis:—

haec si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat (Cat. i. 19), *if your country should thus speak with you, ought she not to prevail?*

quod si quis deus mihi largiatur, . . . valde recusem (Cat. M. 83), *but if some god were to grant me this, I should stoutly refuse.*

NOTE.—The Present Subjunctive sometimes stands in protasis with the Future (or the Present) Indicative in apodosis from a change in the point of view:—<sup>1</sup>

si diligenter attendamus, intellegemus (Inv. ii. 44), *if we attend (should attend) carefully, we shall understand.*

nisi hoc dicat, "iure feci," non habet defensionem (id. i. 18), *unless he should say this, "I acted justifiably," he has no defence.*

**c.** If the conditional act is regarded as *completed* before that of the apodosis begins, the Future Perfect is substituted for the Future Indicative in protasis, and the Perfect Subjunctive for the Present Subjunctive:—

sin cum potuerō non vnerō, tum erit inimicus (Att. ix. 2 A. 2), *but if I do not come when I can, he will be unfriendly.*

si a coronā relictus sim, non queam dicere (Brut. 192), *if I should be deserted by the circle of listeners, I should not be able to speak.*

NOTE.—The Future Perfect is often used in the apodosis of a future condition: as, —vehementer mihi gratum feceris, si hunc adulescentem humanitate tuā comprehenderis (Fam. xiii. 15), *you will do (will have done) me a great favor, if you receive this young man with your usual courtesy.*

**d.** Any form denoting or implying future time may stand in the apodosis of a future condition. So the Imperative, the participles in -ds and -rus, and verbs of *necessity, possibility*, and the like:—

alius finis constituendus est, si prius quid maximē reprehendere Scipio solitus sit dixerō (Lael. 59), *another limit must be set, if I first state what Scipio was wont most to find fault with.*

si me praecēperit fatum, vōs mandāsse mementō (Q. C. ix. 6. 26), *if fate cuts me off too soon, do you remember that I ordered this.*

nisi oculis videritis insidiās Milōni a Clōdio factās, nec deprecātūri sumus nec postulātūri (Mil. 6), *unless you see with your own eyes the plots laid against Milo by Clodius, I shall neither beg nor demand, etc.*

non possum istum accusāre, si cupiam (Verr. iv. 87), *I cannot accuse him, if I should (so) desire.*

<sup>1</sup> It often depends entirely upon the view of the writer at the moment, and not upon the nature of the condition, whether it shall be stated vividly or not; as in the proverbial "If the sky falls, we shall catch larks" the impossible condition is ironically put in the vivid form, to illustrate the absurdity of some other supposed condition stated by some one else.

*e.* Rarely the Perfect Indicative is used in apodosis with a Present or even a Future (or Future Perfect) in protasis, to represent the conclusion rhetorically as *already accomplished*:—

*sī hōc bene fixum in animō est, vicistis* (Liv. *xxi.* 44), *if this is well fixed in your minds, you have conquered.* [For you will have conquered.]

*sī eundem [animum] habueritis, vicimus* (id. *xxi.* 48), *if you shall have kept the same spirit, we have conquered.*

*f.* A future condition is frequently thrown back into past time, without implying that it is contrary to fact (§ 517). In such cases the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used:—

*nōn poterat, nisi dēcertāre vellet* (B. C. *iii.* 44), *he was not able, unless he wished to fight.*

*tumulus appāruit, . . . sī lūce palam irētur hostis praeventūrus erat* (Liv. *xxii.* 24), *a hill appeared . . . if they should go openly by daylight, the enemy would prevent.* [The first two appear like Indirect Discourse, but are not. An observer describing the situation in the first example as *present* would say *nōn potest nisi velit* (see *d*), and no indirect discourse would be thought of.]

*Caesar sī peteret, . . . nōn quicquam prōficeret* (Hor. S. i. 3. 4), *if even Caesar were to ask, he would gain nothing.* [Here the construction is not contrary to fact, but is simply *sī petat*, *nōn prōficiat*, thrown into past time.]

### Conditions Contrary to Fact

**517.** In the statement of a supposition *impliedly false*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both protasis and apodosis.<sup>1</sup> The Imperfect refers to *present time*, the Pluperfect to *past*:—

*sī viveret, verba eius audirētis* (Rosc. Com. 42), *if he were living, you would hear his words.* [Present.]

*nisi tū āmisissēs, numquam recēpissēm* (Cat. M. 11), *unless you had lost it, I should not have recovered it.* [Past.]

*sī meum cōsiliū valuissēt, tū hodiē egērēs, rēs pūblica nōn tot ducēs āmisissēt* (Phil. ii. 37), *if my judgment had prevailed [as it did not], you would this day be a beggar, and the republic would not have lost so many leaders.* [Mixed Present and Past.]

<sup>1</sup> The implication of falsity, in this construction, is not inherent in the subjunctive; but comes from *the transfer of a future condition to past time*. Thus the time for the happening of the condition has, at the moment of writing, already passed; so that, if the condition remains a *condition*, it must be contrary to fact. So *past* forms of the indicative implying a future frequently take the place of the subjunctive in apodosis in this construction (see *c*, *d*, below, and § 511).

**a.** In conditions contrary to fact the Imperfect often refers to *past time*, both in protasis and apodosis, especially when a *repeated or continued action* is denoted, or when the condition *if true would still exist* :

si nihil litteris adiuvarentur, numquam se ad eorum studium contulissent (Arch. 16), *if they had not been helped at all by literature, they never would have given their attention to the study of it.* [Without the condition, adiuvabantur.]

hic si mentis esset suae, ausus esset educere exercitum (Pison. 50), *if he were of sane mind, would he have dared to lead out the army?* [Here esset denotes a continued state, past as well as present.]

non concidissent, nisi illud receptaculum classibus nostris pateret (Verr. ii. 8), [the power of Carthage] *would not have fallen, unless that station had been [constantly] open to our fleets.* [Without the condition, patēbat.]

**b.** In the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact the past tenses of the Indicative may be used to express what was *intended*, or *likely*, or *already begun*. In this use, the Imperfect Indicative corresponds in time to the Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative to the Pluperfect Subjunctive : —

si licitum esset, matrēs veniebant (Verr. v. 129), *the mothers were coming if it had been allowed.*

in amplexū filiae ruēbat, nisi lictores obstitissent (Tac. Ann. xvi. 32), *he was about rushing into his daughter's arms, unless the lictors had opposed.*

iam tūta tenēbam, nī gēns crudēlis ferrō invāsisset (Aen. vi. 358), *I was just reaching a place of safety, had not the fierce people attacked me.*

NOTE 1. — Here the apodosis may be regarded as elliptical. Thus, — matrēs veniebant (et venissent), *the matrons were coming* (and would have kept on) *if*, etc.

NOTE 2. — With *pæne* (and sometimes *prope*), *almost*, the Perfect Indicative is used in the apodosis of a past condition contrary to fact: as, — pōns iter pæne hostibus dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisset (Liv. ii. 10), *the bridge had almost given a passage to the foe, if it had not been for one hero.*

**c.** Verbs and other expressions denoting *necessity*, *propriety*, *possibility*, *duty*, when used in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact, may be put in the Imperfect or Perfect Indicative.

Such are *oportet*, *decet*, *dēbeō*, *possum*, *necesse est*, *opus est*, and the Second Periphrastic Conjugation : —<sup>1</sup>

non potuit fieri sapiēns, nisi nātus esset (Fin. ii. 103), *he could not have become a sage, if he had not been born.*

si privātus esset hōc tempore, tamen is erat diligendus (Manil. 50), *if he were at this time a private citizen, yet he ought to be appointed.*

<sup>1</sup> Observe that all these expressions contain the idea of futurity (cf. p. 328, footnote). Thus, *decet mē [hodiē] ire crās*, means *it is proper for me [to-day] to go to-morrow*; and, *decēbat mē [heri] ire hodiē*, *it was proper for me [yesterday] to go to-day*, usually with the implication that *I have not gone as I was bound to do*.

quod esse caput dēbēbat, si probārī posset (Fin. iv. 23), *what ought to be the main point, if it could be proved.*

si ita putāssset, certē optābilis Milo nī fuit (Mil. 31), *if he had thought so, surely it would have been preferable for Milo.*

NOTE 1. — In Present conditions the Imperfect Subjunctive (*oportēret, possem, etc.*) is the rule, the Indicative being rare; in Past conditions both the Subjunctive (usually Pluperfect) and the Indicative (usually Perfect) are common.

For *pār erat, melius fuit*, and the like, followed by the infinitive, see § 521. n.

NOTE 2. — The Indicative construction is carried still further in poetry: *as, — si nōn alium iactāret odōrem, laurus erat* (Georg. ii. 133), *it were a laurel, but for giving out a different odor.*

d. The participle in *-ūrus* with *eram* or *fui* may take the place of an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact: —

quid enim futūrum fuit [= fuisset], si . . . (Liv. ii. 1), *what would have happened if, etc.*

relictūri agrōs erant, nisi ad eōs Metellus litterās misisset (Verr. iii. 121), *they would have abandoned their fields, if Metellus had not sent them a letter.*

neque ambigitur quid . . . id factūrus fuerit, si . . . (Liv. ii. 1), *nor is there any question that he would have done it, if, etc.* [Direct: *fēcisset.*]

adeō parāta sēditiō fuit ut Othōnem raptūri fuerint, nī incerta noctis timuissent (Tac. H. i. 26), *so far advanced was the conspiracy that they would have seized upon Otho, had they not feared the hazards of the night.* [In a main clause: *rapiuissent, nī timuissent.*]

e. The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used in poetry in the protasis and apodosis of conditions contrary to fact: —

nī comes admoneat, inruat (Aen. vi. 293), *had not his companion warned him, he would have rushed on.* [Cf. *tū si hīc sis, aliter sentiās* (Ter. And. 310), *if you were in my place, you would think differently.*]

NOTE 1. — This is probably a remnant of an old construction (see next note).

NOTE 2. — In old Latin the Present Subjunctive (as well as the Imperfect) is used in present conditions contrary to fact and the Imperfect (more rarely the Pluperfect) in past conditions of the same kind. Thus it appears that the Imperfect Subjunctive, like the Imperfect Indicative, once denoted past time, even in conditional sentences. Gradually, however, in conditional sentences, the Present Subjunctive was restricted to the less vivid future and the Imperfect (in the main) to the present contrary to fact, while the Pluperfect was used in past conditions of this nature. The old construction, however, seems to have been retained as an archaism in poetry.

f. In Plautus and Terence *absque mē* (*tē*, etc.) is sometimes used to introduce conditions contrary to fact: —

*absque tē esset, hodiē nusquam viverem* (Pl. Men. 1022), *if it were not for you, I should not be alive to-day.*

*absque eō esset, rectē ego mihi vidissem* (Ter. Ph. 188), *if it had not been for him, I should have looked out for myself.*

## GENERAL CONDITIONS

518. General Conditions (§ 513. 2) have usually the same forms as Particular Conditions. But they are sometimes distinguished in the following cases:—

*a.* The Subjunctive is often used in the *second person singular*, to denote the act of an indefinite subject (*you = any one*). Here the Present Indicative of a *general truth* may stand in the apodosis:—

*vita hūmāna prope uti ferrum est: si exerceās, conteritur; si nōn exerceās, tamen rōbigō interficit* (Cato de M.), *human life is very like iron: if you use it, it wears away; if you don't use it, rust still destroys it.*

*virtūtem necessariō glōria, etiamsi tū id nōn agās, cōsequitur* (Tusc. i. 91), *glory necessarily follows virtue, even if that is not one's aim.*

*si prohibita impūne trāscenderis, neque metus ultrā neque pudor est* (Tac. Ann. iii. 54), *if you once overstep the bounds with impunity, there is no fear or shame any more.*

*b.* In a general condition in present time, the protasis often takes the Perfect Indicative, and the apodosis the Present Indicative. For past time, the Pluperfect is used in the protasis, and the Imperfect in the apodosis:—

*si quos aliquā parte membrōrum inūtilis nōtāverunt, necārī iubent* (Q. C. ix. 1. 25), *if they [ever] mark any infirm in any part of their limbs, they [always] order them to be put to death.* [Present.]

*si ā persequendō hostīs dēterrere nequiverant, ab tergō circumveniēbant* (Iug. 50), *if [ever] they were unable to prevent the enemy from pursuing, they [always] surrounded them in the rear.* [Past.]

*c.* In later writers (rarely in Cicero and Cæsar), the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in protasis, with the Imperfect Indicative in apodosis, to state a *repeated* or *customary* action in past time (*Iterative Subjunctive*):—

*si quis ā dominō prehenderetur, concursū militum ēripiēbatur* (B. C. iii. 110), *if any (runaway) was arrested by his master, he was (always) rescued by a mob of soldiers.*

*accusātōrēs, si facultās incideret, poenīs addiciēbantur* (Tac. Ann. vi. 30), *the accusers, whenever opportunity offered, were visited with punishment.*

*si quis collēgam appellāset, ab eō ita discēdebāt ut paenitēret nōn priōris dēcrētō stetit* (Liv. iii. 36. 8), *if any one appealed to a colleague, he [always] came off in such case that he repented not having submitted to the decree of the former decemvir.* [Cf. Sōcratēs, quam sē cumque in partem dedisset, omnium fuit facile princeps (De Or. iii. 60), *in whatever direction Socrates turned himself, he was (always) easily the foremost (if in any, etc.).*]



## Conditional Relative Clauses

**519.** A clause introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb may express a condition and take any of the constructions of Protasis<sup>1</sup> (§ 514):—

*quī enim vitis modum adpōnit, is partem suscipit vitiōrum* (Tusc. iv. 42), *he who [only] sets a limit to faults, takes up the side of the faults.* [= *sī quis adpōnit.* Present, nothing implied.]

*quī mentiri solet, pēierāre cōsuēvit* (Rosc. Com. 46), *whoever is in the habit of lying, is accustomed to swear falsely.* [= *sī quis solet.* Present, nothing implied.]

*quicquid potuit, potuit ipsa per sē* (Leg. Agr. i. 20), *whatever power she had, she had by herself.* [= *sī quid potuit.* Past, nothing implied.]

*quod quī faciet, nōn aegritūdine solum vacābit, sed, etc.* (Tusc. iv. 38), *and he who does (shall do) this, will be free not only, etc.* [= *sī quis faciet.* Future, more vivid.]

*quisquis hūc vēnerit, vāpulābit* (Pl. Am. 309), *whoever comes here shall get a thrashing.* [= *sī quis vēnerit.* Future, more vivid.]

*quō volēs, sequar* (Clu. 71), *whithersoever you wish (shall wish), I will follow.* [= *sī quō volēs.* Future, more vivid.]

*philosophia, cui quī pāreat, omne tempus aetātissime molestiā possit dēgere* (Cat. M. 2), *philosophy, which if any one should obey, he would be able to spend his whole life without vexation.* [= *sī quis pāreat.* Future, less vivid.]

*quaecumque vōs causa hūc attulisset, laetārer* (De Or. ii. 15), *I should be glad, whatever cause had brought you here* (i.e. if any other, as well as the one which did). [= *sī . . . attulisset.* Contrary to fact.]

The relative in this construction is always indefinite in *meaning*, and very often in *form*.

**520.** The special constructions of General Conditions are sometimes found in Conditional Relative Clauses:—

1. The Second Person Singular of the Subjunctive in the protasis with the Indicative of a *general truth* in the apodosis (§ 518. a):—

*bonus tantum modo sēgnior fit ubi negligās, at malus improbiōr* (Iug. 31. 28), *a good man merely becomes less diligent when you don't watch him, but a bad man becomes more shameless.* [Present General Condition.]

2. The Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative in the protasis and the Present or Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis (§ 518. b):—

*cum hūc vēnī, hōc ipsum nihil agere mē dēlectat* (De Or. ii. 24), *whenever I come here, this very doing nothing delights me* (whenever I have come, etc.). [Present General Condition.]

<sup>1</sup> As in the Greek *ὅς, ὅταν, ὅταν*, etc.; and in statutes in English, where the phrases *if any person shall* and *whoever shall* are used indifferently.

*cum rosam viderat, tum incipere vēr arbitrabātur* (Verr. v. 27), *whenever he saw (had seen) a rose, then he thought spring was beginning.* [Past General Condition.]

3. In later writers (rarely in Cicero and Cæsar) the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the protasis and the Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis (§ 518. c):—

*ubi imbēcillitās māteriae postulāre vidēretur, pilae interpōnuntur* (B. C. ii. 16), *wherever the weakness of the timber seemed to require, piles were put between.* [Past General Condition: *interpōnuntur* = *interpōnēbantur*.]  
*quōcumque sē intulisset, victōriam sēcum trahēbat* (Liv. vi. 8), *wherever he advanced, he carried victory with him.* [Past General Condition.]

### Condition Disguised

521. In many sentences properly conditional, the Protasis is not expressed by a conditional clause, but is stated in some other form of words or implied in the nature of the thought.

*a.* The condition may be implied in a Clause, or in a Participle, Noun, Adverb, or some other word or phrase:—

*facile mē paterer — illō ipsō iudice quaerente — prō Sex. Rōsciō dicere* (Rosc. Am. 85), *I should readily allow myself to speak for Roscius if that very judge were conducting the trial.* [Present contrary to fact: *sī quaereret, paterer*.]

*nōn mihi, nisi admonitō, vēnisset in mentem* (De Or. ii. 180), *it would not have come into my mind unless [I had been] reminded.* [Past contrary to fact: *nisi admonitus essem*.]

*nūlla alia gēns tantā mōle clādis nōn obruta esset* (Liv. xxii. 54), *there is no other people that would not have been crushed by such a weight of disaster.* [Past contrary to fact: *sī alia fuisset*.]

*nēmō umquam sine māgnā spē immortālītātis sē prō patriā offerret ad mortem* (Tusc. i. 32), *no one, without great hope of immortality, would ever expose himself to death for his country.* [Present contrary to fact: *nisi māgnam spem habēret*.]

*quid hunc paucōrum annōrum accessiō iuvāre potuisset* (Lael. 11), *what good could the addition of a few years have done him (if they had been added)?* [Past contrary to fact: *sī accessissent*.]

*quid igitur mihi ferārum laniātus oberit nihil sentienti* (Tusc. i. 104), *what harm will the mangling by wild beasts do me if I don't feel anything (feeling nothing)?* [Future more vivid: *sī nihil sentiam*.]

*incitāta semel prōclivi lābuntur sustinērique nūllō modō possunt* (Id. iv. 42), *if once given a push, they slide down rapidly and can in no way be checked.* [Present General: *sī incitāta sunt*.]

NOTE.—In several phrases denoting *necessity, propriety*, or the like, the Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect Indicative of *esse* is used in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact, the protasis being implied in a subject infinitive (cf. 517. c):—

quantō melius fuerat prōmissum nōn esse servātum (Off. iii. 94), *how much better would it have been if the promise had not been kept!* [prōmissum . . . servātum = sī prōmissum nōn esset servātum.]

morī praeclārum fuit (Att. viii. 2. 2), *it would have been honorable to die.*

sed erat aequius Triārium aliquid dē dissēnsiōne nostrā iūdicāre (Fin. ii. 119), *but it would be more equitable if Triarius passed judgment on our dispute.* [Triārium iūdicāre = sī Triārius iūdicāret.]

satis fuit āmittere milītēs (Inv. ii. 73), *it would have been better to lose the soldiers.* [āmittere = sī āmisisset.]

**b.** The condition may be contained in a wish (*Optative Subjunctive*), or expressed as an exhortation or command (*Hortatory Subjunctive* or *Imperative*):—

utinam quidem fuisset! molestus nobis nōn esset (Fam. xii. 3), *I wish I had been [chief]: he would not now be troubling us* (i.e. if I had been). [Optative Subjunctive.]

nātūram expellās furcā, tamen usque recurret (Hor. Ep. i. 10. 24), *drive out nature with a pitchfork, still she will ever return.* [Hortatory.]

rogēs enim Aristōnem, neget (Fin. iv. 69), *for ask Aristo, he would deny.*

manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria (Cat. M. 22), *old men keep their mental powers, only let them keep their zeal and diligence* (§ 528. N.). [Hortatory.]

tolle hanc opiniōnem, lūctum sustuleris (Tusc. i. 30), *remove this notion, and you will have done away with grief.* [Imperative.]

NOTE.—The so-called *Concessive Subjunctive* with *ut* and *nē* often has the force of protasis (§ 527. a. N.): as,—*ut enim ratiōnem Platō nullam adferret, ipsā auctōritāte mē frangeret* (Tusc. i. 49), *even if Plato gave no reasons, [still] he would overpower me by his mere authority.*

**c.** Rarely the condition takes the form of an *independent clause*:

ridēs: mājore cachinnō concutitur (Iuv. iii. 100), *you laugh; he shakes with louder laughter* (= if you laugh, he shakes).

commovē: sentiēs (Tusc. iv. 54), *stir him up, [and] you'll find*, etc.

dē paupertate agitur: multi patientēs pauperēs commemorantur (id. iii. 57), *we speak of poverty; many patient poor are mentioned.*

For Conditional Relative Clauses, see §§ 519, 520.

### Condition Omitted

**522.** The Protasis is often wholly omitted, but may be inferred from the course of the argument:—

poterat Sextilius impūne negāre: quis enim redargueret (Fin. ii. 55), *Sextilius might have denied with impunity; for who would prove him wrong (if he had denied)?*

*a.* In expressions signifying *necessity, propriety*, and the like, the Indicative may be used in the apodosis of implied conditions, either future or contrary to fact: —

quod contrā decuit ab illō meum [corpus cremārī] (Cat. M. 84), *whereas on the other hand mine ought to have been burnt by him.*

nam nōs decēbat domum lūgēre ubi esset aliquis in lūcem ēditus (Tusc. i. 115), *for it were fitting for us to mourn the house where a man has been born (but we do not).*

quantō melius fuerat (Off. iii. 94), *how much better it would have been.*

illud erat aptius, æquum cuique concēdere (Fin. iv. 2), *it would be more fitting to yield each one his rights.*

ipsum enim expectāre māgnū fuit (Phil. ii. 103), *would it have been a great matter to wait for the man himself?*

longum est ea dicere, sed . . . (Sest. 12), *it would be tedious to tell, etc. [Future.]*

NOTE 1. — In this construction, the Imperfect Indicative refers to *present time*; the Pluperfect to simple *past time*, like the Perfect. Thus oportēbat means *it ought to be [now]*, but *is not*; oportuerat means *it ought to have been, but was not*.

NOTE 2. — In many cases it is impossible to say whether a protasis was present to the mind of the speaker or not (see third example above).

### Complex Conditions

**523.** Either the Protasis or the Apodosis may be a complex idea in which the main statement is made with expressed or implied qualifications. In such cases the true logical relation of the parts is sometimes disguised: —

sī quis hōrum dixisset . . . sī verbum dē rē publicā fēcisset . . . multa plūra dixisse quam dixisset putārētur (Rosc. Am. 2), *if any of these had spoken, in case he had said a word about politics he would be thought to have said much more than he did say.* [Here the apodosis of dixisset is the whole of the following statement (sī . . . putārētur), which is itself conditioned by a protasis of its own: sī verbum, etc.].

quod sī in hōc mundō fieri sine deō nōn potest, nē in sphaerā quidem eōsdem mōtūs sine divinō ingenio potuisset imitārī (Tusc. i. 63), *now if that cannot be done in this universe without divine agency, no more could [Archimedes] in his orrery have imitated the same revolutions without divine genius.* [Here sī potest (a protasis with nothing implied) has for its apodosis the whole clause which follows, but potuisset has a contrary-to-fact protasis of its own implied in sine . . . ingenio.]

peream male sī nōn optimum erat (Hor. S. ii. 1. 6), *confound me (may I perish wretchedly) if it would n't be better.* [Here peream is apodosis to the rest of the sentence, while the true protasis to optimum erat, contrary to fact, is omitted.]

### Clauses of Comparison (Conclusion Omitted)

**524.** Conditional Clauses of Comparison take the Subjunctive, usually in the Present or Perfect unless the sequence of tenses requires the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Such clauses are introduced by the comparative particles *tamquam*, *tamquam si*, *quasi*, *ac si*, *ut si*, *velut si* (later *velut*), poetic *ceu* (all meaning *as if*), and by *quam si* (*than if*):—

*tamquam clausa sit Asia* (Fam. xii. 9), *as if Asia were closed*.

*tamquam si claudus sim* (Pl. Asin. 427), *just as if I were lame*.

*ita hōs* [honōrēs] *petunt*, *quasi honestē vixerint* (Iug. 85), *they seek them (offices) just as if they had lived honorably*.

*quasi vēdō nōn specēs visa iūdicentur* (Acad. ii. 58), *as if forsooth visible things were not judged by their appearance*.

*similiter facis ac si mē rogēs* (N. D. iii. 8), *you do exactly as if you asked me*.

*crūdēlītātē horrērent velut si cōram adesset* (B. G. i. 32), *they dreaded his cruelty (they said), as if he were present in person*.

*hic ingentem pūgnam cernimus ceu cētera nusquam bella forent* (Aen. ii. 438), *here we saw a great battle, as if there were no fighting elsewhere*. [But sometimes with the indicative in poetry, as *id. v. 88*.]

*magis ā mē abesse vidēbāre quam si domi essēs* (Att. vi. 5), *you seemed to be absent from me more than if you were at home*.

**NOTE 1.**—These subjunctive clauses are really future conditions with apodosis implied in the particle itself. Thus in *tamquam si claudus sim* the protasis is introduced by *si*, and the apodosis implied in *tamquam*.

**NOTE 2.**—The English idiom would lead us to expect the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (contrary to fact) with these particles; but the point of view is different in the two languages. Thus the second example above is translated *just as if I were lame*,—as if it were a present condition contrary to fact; but it really means *just as [it would be] if I should [at some future time] be lame*, and so is a less vivid future condition requiring the Present Subjunctive. Similarly *quasi honestē vixerint*, *as if they had lived honorably*, is really *as [they would do in the future] if they should have lived honorably* and so requires the Perfect Subjunctive (§ 516. c).

**a.** Even after a primary tense, the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive (*contrary to fact*) is often used in conditional clauses of comparison:—

*aequē ā tē petō ac si mea negōtia essent* (Fam. xiii. 43), *I entreat you as much as if it were my own business*.

*ēius negōtium sic velim suscipiās ut si esset rēs mea* (*id. vii. 20. 1*), *I would have you undertake his business as though it were my affair*.

**NOTE.**—The practice differs with the different particles. Thus in Cicero a clause with *tamquam* or *quasi* almost always observes the sequence of tenses, but with *quam si* the Imperfect or Pluperfect is the rule.

Use of *sī* and its Compounds

525. The uses of some of the more common Conditional Particles may be stated as follows : —

*a.* *Sī* is used for *affirmative*, *nisi* (*nī*) and *sī nōn* for *negative* conditions.

1. With *nisi* (generally *unless*) the apodosis is stated as *universally* true *except* in the single case supposed, in which case it is (impliedly) *not* true : —

*nisi* Conōn adest, maereō, *unless Conon is here, I mourn* (i.e. I am always in a state of grief except in the single case of Conon's presence, in which case I am not).

2. With *sī nōn* (*if not*) the apodosis is only stated as true in the (negative) case supposed, but as to other cases no statement is made : —

*sī* Conōn nōn adest, maereō, *if Conon is not here, I mourn* (i.e. I mourn in the single case of Conon's absence, nothing being said as to other cases in which I may or may not mourn).

NOTE. — It often makes no difference in which of these forms the condition is stated.

3. Sometimes *nisi sī*, *except if, unless*, occurs : —

nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longiōrēs epistulās scribere, *nisi sī* quis ad mē plūra scripsit (Fam. xiv. 2), . . . *except in case one writes more to me.*

NOTE. — *Nī* is an old form surviving in a few conventional phrases and reappearing in poets and later writers.

*b.* *Nisi vērō* and *nisi forte* regularly introduce an objection or exception *ironically*, and take the Indicative : —

*nisi vērō* L. Caesar crūdēlior visus est (Cat. iv. 13), *unless indeed Lucius Caesar seemed too cruel.*

*nisi forte* volumus Epicūrēōrum opiniōnem sequi (Fat. 37), *unless, to be sure, we choose to follow the notion of the Epicureans.*

NOTE. — This is the regular way of introducing a *reductio ad absurdum* in Latin. *Nisi* alone is sometimes used in this sense: as, — *nisi* ūnum hōc faciam ut in puteō cēnam coquant (Pl. Aul. 365), *unless I do this one thing, [make them] cook dinner in the well.*

*c.* *Sive* (*seu*) . . . *sive* (*seu*), *whether . . . or*, introduce a condition in the form of an *alternative*. They may be used with any form of condition, or with different forms in the two members. Often also they are used without a verb : —

nam illō locō libentissimē soleō ūtī, *sive* quid mēcum ipse cōgitō, *sive* quid scribō aut legō (Legg. ii. 1), *for I enjoy myself most in that place, whether I am thinking by myself, or am either writing or reading.*

NOTE. — *Sive . . . seu* and *seu . . . sive* are late or poetic.

**d.** *Sin, but if*, often introduces a supposition contrary to one that precedes:—

*accūsātor illum dēfēdet si poterit; sin minus poterit, negābit* (Inv. ii. 88),  
*the accuser will defend him if he can; but if he cannot, he will deny.*

**e.** *Nisi* is often used loosely by the comic poets in the sense of *only* when a negative (usually *nesciō*) is expressed, or easily understood, in the main clause:—

*nesciō: nisi mē dixisse nēminī certō sciō* (Ter. Ph. 952), *I don't know: only I am sure that I have n't told anybody.*

### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

**526.** The concessive idea is rather vague and general, and takes a variety of forms, each of which has its distinct history. Sometimes concession is expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive in a sentence grammatically independent (§ 440), but it is more frequently and more precisely expressed by a dependent clause introduced by a concessive particle. The concessive force lies chiefly in the Conjunctions (which are indefinite or conditional in origin), and is often made clearer by an adversative particle (*tamen, certē*) in the main clause. As the Subjunctive may be used in independent clauses to express a concession, it is also employed in concessive clauses, and somewhat more frequently than the indicative.

**527.** The Particles of Concession (meaning *although, granting that*) are *quamvis, ut, licet, etsi, tametsi, etiam si, quamquam, and cum*.

Some of these take the Subjunctive, others the Indicative, according to the nature of the clause which each introduces.

**a.** *Quamvis* and *ut* take the Subjunctive:—

*quamvis ipsi Infāntēs sint, tamen . . .* (Or. 76), *however incapable of speaking they themselves may be, yet, etc.*

*quamvis scelerātī illi fuissent* (De Or. i. 230), *however guilty they might have been.*

*quamvis cōmis in amicis tuendis fuerit* (Fin. ii. 80), *amiable as he may have been in keeping his friends.*

*ut nēminem alium rogāset* (Mil. 46), *even if he had asked no other.*

*ut enim nōn efficiās quod vis, tamen mors ut malum nōn sit efficiēs* (Tusc. i. 16), *for even if you do not accomplish what you wish, still you will prove that death is not an evil.*

*ut ratiōnem Platō nullam adferret* (id. i. 49), *though Plato adduced no reasons.*

NOTE.—*Quamvis* means literally *as much as you will*. Thus in the first example above, *let them be as incapable as you will, still, etc.* The subjunctive with *quamvis* is hortatory, like that with *nē* (§ 440); that with *ut* (*ut nōn*) is of uncertain origin.

**b.** *Licet, although*, takes the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:—

*licet omnēs mihi terrōrēs periculāque impendeant* (Rosc. Am. 31), *though all terrors and perils should menace me.*

**NOTE.** — *Licet* is properly a verb in the present tense, meaning *it is granted*. Hence the subjunctive is by the sequence of tenses limited to the Present and Perfect. The concessive clause with *licet* is hortatory in origin, but may be regarded as a substantive clause serving as the subject of the impersonal verb (§ 565. n.<sup>1</sup>).

**c. Etsi, etiam si, tametsi, even if,** take the same constructions as *si* (see § 514): —

*etsi* abest mātūritās, tamen nōn est inūtile (Fam. vi. 18. 4), *though ripeness of age is wanting, yet it is not useless*, etc.

*etsi* numquam dubium fuit, tamen perspicio (id. v. 19), *although it has never been doubtful, yet I perceive*, etc.

*etsi* statueram (id. v. 5), *though I had determined*.

*etsi* nihil aliud abstulissetis, tamen contentōs vōs esse oportebat (Sull. 90), *even if you had taken away nothing else, you ought to have been satisfied*.

*etiam si* quod scribās nōn habēbis, scribitō tamen (Fam. xvi. 26), *even if you [shall] have nothing to write, still write*.

*sed ea tametsi* vōs parvi pendebātis (Sall. Cat. 52. 9), *but although you regarded those things as of small account*.

**NOTE 1.** — *Tametsi* with the subjunctive is very rare.

**NOTE 2.** — *A protasis* with *si* often has a concessive force: *as, — ego, si essent inimicitiae mihi cum C. Caesare, tamen hoc tempore rei publicae cōsulare . . . debērem* (Prov. Cons. 47), *as for me, even if I had private quarrels with Cæsar, it would still be my duty to serve the best interests of the state at this crisis*.

**d. Quamquam, although,** introduces an *admitted fact* and takes the Indicative: —

*omnibus — quamquam* ruit ipse suis clādibus — pestem dēnūtiat (Phil. xiv. 8), *though he is breaking down under his disasters, still he threatens all with destruction*.

**NOTE.** — *Quamquam* more commonly means *and yet*, introducing a *new proposition* in the indicative: *as, — quamquam* haec quidem iam tolerabilia vidēbantur, *etsi*, etc. (Mil. 76), *and yet these, in truth, seemed now bearable, though, etc.*

**e. The poets and later writers frequently use quamvis and quamquam** like *etsi*, connecting them with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to the nature of the condition: —

*quamquam* movērētur (Liv. xxxvi. 84), *although he was moved*.

*Pollio* amat nostram, *quamvis* est rústica, *mūsam* (Ecl. iii. 84), *Pollio loves my muse, though she is rustic*.

*quamvis* pervēnerās (Liv. ii. 40), *though you had come*.

**f. Ut, as,** with the Indicative, may be equivalent to a concession: *vērū* ut errāre potuisti, sic dēcipi tē nōn potuisse quis nōn videt (Fam. x. 20. 2), *suppose you could have been mistaken, who does not see that you cannot have been deceived in this way?*

For *cum* concessive, see § 549; for *quī* concessive, see § 535. e. For concession expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive (negative *nō*), see § 440.



## CLAUSES OF PROVISIO

**528.** *Dum, modo, dummodo, and tantum ut*, introducing a *Provisio*, take the Subjunctive. The negative with these particles is *nē*:

*oderint dum metuant* (Off. i. 97), *let them hate, if only they fear.*

*valētūdō modo bona sit* (Brut. 64), *provided the health be good.*

*dummodo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit* (Cat. i. 10), *provided only the wall (of the city) is between us.*

*tantum ut sciant* (Att. xvi. 11. 1), *provided only they know.*

*modo nē sit ex pecudum genere* (Off. i. 105), *provided [in pleasure] he be not of the herd of cattle.*

*id faciat saepe, dum nē lassus fiat* (Cato R. R. v. 4), *let him do this often, provided he does not get tired.*

*dummodo ea (severitās) nē variētur* (Q. Fr. i. 1. 20), *provided only it (strictness) be not allowed to swerve.*

*tantum nē noceat* (Ov. M. ix. 21), *only let it do no harm.*

NOTE.—The Subjunctive with *modo* is hortatory or optative; that with *dum* and *dummodo*, a development from the use of the Subjunctive with *dum* in temporal clauses, § 553 (compare the colloquial *so long as my health is good, I don't care*).

*a.* The Hortatory Subjunctive without a particle sometimes expresses a *provisio*:—

*sint Maecēnātēs, nōn deerunt Marōnēs* (Mart. viii. 56. 5), *so there be Mæcenases, Virgils will not be lacking.*

*b.* The Subjunctive with *ut* (negative *nē*) is sometimes used to denote a *provisio*, usually with *ita* in the main clause:—

*probāta condiciō est, sed ita ut ille praesidia dēdiceret* (Att. vii. 14. 1), *the terms were approved, but only on condition that he should withdraw the garrisons.*

NOTE.—This is a development of the construction of Characteristic or Result. For a clause of Characteristic expressing *Provisio*, see § 535. *d.*

## CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (FINAL CLAUSES)

**529.** The Subjunctive in the clause of Purpose is *hortatory* in origin, coming through a kind of indirect discourse construction (for which see § 592). Thus, *misit lēgātōs qui dicerent* means *he sent ambassadors who should say*, i.e. *who were directed to say*; in the direct orders the verb would be *dicite*, which would become *dicant* in the Indirect Discourse of narrative (§ 588) or *dicerent* in the past (cf. hortatory subjunctive in past tenses, § 439. *b.*). The Subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* is, in general, similar in origin.

**530.** A clause expressing *purpose* is called a Final Clause.

**531.** Final Clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut* (*utī*), negative *nē* (*ut nē*), or by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb:—

1. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with *ut* (*utī*) or *nē* (*ut nē*), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause:—

*ab arātrō abdūxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset* (Fin. ii. 12), *they brought Cincinnatus from the plough that he might be dictator.*

*ut sint auxiliō suis, subsistunt* (B. C. i. 80), *they halt in order to support (be an aid to) their own men.*

*nē militēs oppidum inrumperent, portās obstruit* (id. i. 27), *he barricaded the gates, in order that the soldiers might not break into the town.*

*scālās parārī iubet, nē quam facultātem dimittat* (id. i. 28), *he orders scaling-ladders to be got ready, in order not to let slip any opportunity.*

*ut nē sit impūne* (Mil. 31), *that it be not with impunity.*

NOTE 1.— Sometimes the conjunction has a correlative (*idēō, idcirco, eō cōnsiliō*, etc.) in the main clause (cf. § 561. a):—

*lēgum idcirco servī sumus, ut liberī sīmus* (Clu. 146), *for this reason we are subject to the laws, that we may be free.*

*cōpiās trānsdūxit eō cōnsiliō, ut castellum expūgnāret* (cf. B. G. ii. 9), *he led the troops across with this design—to storm the fort.*

NOTE 2.— *Ut nōn* sometimes occurs in clauses of purpose when *nōn* belongs to some particular word: as, — *ut plūra nōn dicam* (Manil. 44), *to avoid unnecessary talk.*

2. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun *quī* or a relative adverb (*ubi, unde, quō*, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause:—

*mittitur L. Dēcidius Saxa quī locī nātūram perspiciat* (B. C. i. 66), *Lucius Decidius Saxa is sent to examine the ground (who should examine, etc.). scribēbat orātiōnēs quās alii dicerent* (Brut. 206), *he wrote speeches for other men to deliver.*

*eō extinctō fore unde discerem nēmīnem* (Cat. M. 12), *that when he was dead there would be nobody from whom (whence) I could learn.*

*huic nē ubi cōsisteret quidem contrā tē locum reliquistī* (Quinct. 73), *you have left him no ground even to make a stand against you.*

*habēbam quō cōfugerem* (Fam. iv. 6. 2), *I had [a retreat] whither I might flee.*

NOTE.— In this construction *quī* = *ut* is (etc.), *ubi* = *ut ibi*, and so on (§ 537. 2).

*a.* The ablative *quō* (= *ut eō*) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative:—

*comprimere eōrum audāciam, quō facilius cēterōrum animī frangerentur* (Fam. xv. 4. 10), *to repress their audacity, that the spirit of the others might be broken more easily (by which the more easily).*

*libertāte ūsus est, quō impūnius dicāx esset* (Quinct. 11), *he took advantage of liberty, that he might bluster with more impunity.*

NOTE.— Occasionally *quō* introduces a final clause that does not contain a comparative: as, — *L. Sulla exercitum, quō sibi fidum faceret, lūxuriōsē habuerat* (Sall. Cat. 11), *Lucius Sulla had treated the army luxuriously, in order to make it devoted to him.*

For *quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*) after verbs of *hindering*, see § 558. b.

**532.** The principal clause, on which a final clause depends, is often to be supplied from the context:—

ac nē longum sit . . . iussimus (Cat. iii. 10), *and, not to be tedious, we ordered, etc.* [Strictly, *in order not to be tedious, I say we ordered.*]

sed ut ad Dionysium redeamus (Tusc. v. 63), *but to return to Dionysius.*

sed ut eodem revertar, causa haec fuit timōris (Fam. vi. 7. 3), *but, to return to the same point, this was the cause of fear.*

satis incōsiderātī fuit, nē dicam audācis (Phil. xiii. 12), *it was the act of one rash enough, not to say daring.*

**NOTE 1.**—By a similar ellipsis the Subjunctive is used with nēdum (sometimes nē), *still less, not to mention that*:—

nēdum salvi esse possimus (Clu. 95), *much less could we be safe.*

nēdum isti nōn statim conquiritūri sint aliquid sceleris et flagitī (Leg. Agr. ii. 97), *far more will they hunt up at once some sort of crime and scandal.*

nēdum in mari et viā sit facile (Fam. xvi. 8), *still less is it easy at sea and on a journey.*

quippe secundae rēs sapientium animōs fatigant; nē illi corruptis mōribus victōriae temperārent (Sall. Cat. 11), *for prosperity overmasters the soul even of the wise; much less did they with their corrupt morals put any check on victory.*

**NOTE 2.**—With nēdum the verb itself is often omitted: as,—aptius hūmānitātī tuae quam tōta Peloponnēsus, nēdum Patrae (Fam. vii. 28. 1), *fitter for your refinement than all Peloponnesus, to say nothing of Patrae.*

For Substantive Clauses involving purpose, see §§ 563–566.

**533.** The Purpose of an action is expressed in Latin in various ways; but never (except in idiomatic expressions and rarely in poetry) by the simple Infinitive as in English (§ 460).

The sentence, *they came to seek peace*, may be rendered—

(1) vēnērunt ut pācem peterent. [Final clause with ut (§ 531. 1).]

(2) vēnērunt quī pācem peterent. [Final clause with Relative (§ 531. 2).]

(3) [vēnērunt ad petendum pācem.] Not found with transitive verbs (§ 506, n. 2), but cf. ad pārendum senātui. [Gerund with ad (§ 506).]

(4) vēnērunt ad petendam pācem. [Gerundive with ad (§ 506).]

(5) vēnērunt pācem petendī causā (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerund with causā (§ 504. b).]

(6) vēnērunt pācis petendae causā (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerundive with causā (§ 504. b).]

(7) vēnērunt pācem petitūri. [Future participle (§ 499. 2); in later writers.]

(8) vēnērunt pācem petitum. [Supine in -um (§ 509).]

These forms are not used indifferently, but—

*α.* The usual way of expressing purpose is by ut (negative nē), unless the purpose is *closely connected with some one word*, in which case a relative is more common:—

*légātōs ad Dumnorigem mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent* (B. G. i. 9), *they send envoys to Dumnorix, in order through his intercession to obtain* (this favor) *from the Sequani.*

*militēs mīsit ut eōs qui fūgerant persequerentur* (id. v. 10), *he sent the soldiers to follow up those who had fled.*

*Cūriō praemittit equitēs qui primum impetum sustineant* (B. C. ii. 26), *Curio sends forward cavalry to withstand the first attack.*

**b.** The Gerund and Gerundive constructions of purpose are usually limited to short expressions, where the literal translation, though not the English idiom, is nevertheless not harsh or strange.

**c.** The Supine is used to express purpose only with verbs of *motion*, and in a few idiomatic expressions (§ 509).

**d.** The Future Participle used to express purpose is a late construction of inferior authority (§ 499. 2).

For the poetical Infinitive of Purpose, see § 460. c. For the Present Participle in a sense approaching that of purpose, see § 490. 3.

### CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

**534.** The relative clause of Characteristic with the Subjunctive is a development peculiar to Latin. A relative clause in the Indicative merely states something as a fact which is true of the antecedent; a characteristic clause (in the Subjunctive) defines the antecedent as a person or thing of *such a character* that the statement made is true of him or it and of all others belonging to the same class. Thus, — *nōn potest exercitum continēre imperātor qui sē ipse nōn continet* (indicative) means simply, *that commander who does not* (as a fact) *restrain himself cannot restrain his army*; whereas *nōn potest exercitum continēre imperātor qui sē ipse nōn contineat* (subjunctive) would mean, *that commander who is not such a man as to restrain himself, etc., that is, who is not characterized by self-restraint.*

This construction has its origin in the *potential* use of the subjunctive (§ 445). Thus, in the example just given, *qui sē ipse nōn contineat* would mean literally, *who would not restrain himself* (in any supposable case), and this potential idea passes over easily into that of *general quality or characteristic*. The characterizing force is most easily felt when the antecedent is indefinite or general. But this usage is extended in Latin to cases which differ but slightly from statements of fact, as in some of the examples below.

The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic. Thus, *nōn sum ita hebes ut haec dicam* means literally, *I am not dull in the manner (degree) in which I should say this*, hence, *I am not so dull as to say this*. Since, then, the characteristic often appears in the form of a *supposed result*, the construction readily passes over into Pure Result, with no idea of characteristic; as, — *tantus in cūriā clāmor factus est ut populus concurreret* (Verr. ii. 47), *such an outcry was made in the senate-house that the people hurried together.*

**535.** A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a *characteristic* of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise *undefined*: —

neque enim tū is es qui nesciās (Fam. v. 12. 6), *for you are not such a one as not to know.* [Here is is equivalent to *such*, and is defined only by the relative clause that follows.]

multa dicunt quae vix intellegam (Fin. iv. 2), *they say many things which (such as) I hardly understand.*

pāci quae nihil habitūra sit insidiarum semper est cōsulendum (Off. i. 35), *we must always aim at a peace which shall have no plots.*

**a.** A Relative Clause of Characteristic is used after general expressions of *existence* or *non-existence*, including questions which imply a negative.

So especially with **sunt qui**, *there are [some] who*; **quis est qui**, *who is there who?* —

sunt qui discessum animi ā corpore putent esse mortem (Tusc. i. 18), *there are some who think that the departure of soul from body constitutes death.*

erant qui cēserent (B. C. ii. 30), *there were some who were of the opinion, etc.*

erant qui Helvidium miserārentur (Tac. Ann. xvi. 29), *there were some who pitied Helvidius.* [Cf. **est cum** (N. 2, below).]

quis est qui id nōn maximis efferat laudibus (Lael. 24), *who is there that does not extol it with the highest praise?*

nihil videō quod timeam (Fam. ix. 16. 3), *I see nothing to fear.*

nihil est quod adventum nostrum extimēscās (Fam. ix. 26. 4), *there is no reason why you should dread my coming.*

unde agger comportārī posset nihil erat reliquum (B. C. ii. 15), *there was nothing left from which an embankment could be got together.*

NOTE 1. — After general negatives like **nēmō est qui**, the Subjunctive is regular; after general affirmatives like **sunt qui**, it is the prevailing construction, but the Indicative sometimes occurs; after **multi** (nōn nulli, quidam) **sunt qui**, and similar expressions in which the antecedent is partially defined, the choice of mood depends on the shade of meaning which the writer wishes to express: —

sunt bēstiae quaedam in quibus inest aliquid simile virtūtis (Fin. v. 38), *there are certain animals in which there is something like virtue.*

But, — **inventi multi sunt qui vitam prōfundere prō patriā parātī essent** (Off. i. 84), *many were found of such a character as to be ready to give their lives for their country.*

NOTE 2. — Characteristic clauses with **sunt qui** etc. are sometimes called Relative Clauses with an Indefinite Antecedent, but are to be carefully distinguished from the Indefinite Relative in *protasis* (§ 520).

NOTE 3. — The phrases **est cum**, **fuit cum**, etc. are used like **est qui**, **sunt qui**: **as**, — **ac fuit cum mihi quoque initium requiēscendī fore iūstum arbitrārē** (De Or. i. 1), *and there was a time when I thought a beginning of rest would be justifiable on my part.*

**b.** A Relative Clause of Characteristic may follow **ūnus** and **sōlus**:

nīl admirārī prope rēs est ūna sōlaque quae possit facere et servāre beātum (Hor. Ep. i. 6. 1), *to wonder at nothing is almost the sole and only thing that can make and keep one happy.*

sōlus es cūius in victōriā ceciderit nēmō nisi armātus (Deiot. 34), *you are the only man in whose victory no one has fallen unless armed.*

c. A clause of Result or Characteristic with *quam ut*, *quam qui* (rarely with *quam* alone), may be used after comparatives :—

*Canachi signa rigidiora sunt quam ut imitentur veritatem* (Brut. 70), *the statues of Canachus are too stiff to represent nature* (stiffer than that they should).

*maiores arbores caedebant quam quas ferre miles posset* (Liv. xxxiii. 5), *they cut trees too large for a soldier to carry* (larger than what a soldier could carry).

NOTE.—This construction corresponds in sense to the English *too . . . to*.

d. A relative clause of characteristic may express restriction or proviso (cf. § 528. b) :—

*quod sciam, so far as I know* (lit. as to what I know).

*Catonis orationes, quas quidem invenerim* (Brut. 65), *the speeches of Cato, at least such as I have discovered*.

*servus est nemo, qui modo tolerabili condicione sit servitutis* (Cat. iv. 16), *there is not a slave, at least in any tolerable condition of slavery*.

e. A Relative Clause of Characteristic may express cause or concession :—

*peccasse mihi videor qui a te discesserim* (Fam. xvi. 1), *I seem to myself to have done wrong because I have left you*. [Causal.]

*virum simplicem qui nos nihil cilet* (Or. 230), *O guileless man, who hides nothing from us!* [Causal.]

*egomet qui sero Graecas litteras attigissem, tamen complures Athenis dies sum commoratus* (De Or. i. 82), *I myself, though I began Greek literature late, yet, etc.* (lit. [a man] who, etc.). [Concessive.]

NOTE 1.—In this use the relative is equivalent to *cum* is etc. It is often preceded by *ut*, *utpote*, or *quippe* :—

*nec consul, ut qui id ipsum quaesisset, moram certamini fecit* (Liv. xlii. 7), *nor did the consul delay the fight, since he had sought that very thing* (as [being one] who had sought, etc.).

*Lucius, frater eius, utpote qui peregre depugnaret, familiam ducit* (Phil. v. 30), *Lucius, his brother, leads his household, inasmuch as he is a man who has fought it out abroad*.

*convivia cum patre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem nisi perraro veniret* (Rosc. Am. 52), *he did not go to dinner parties with his father, since he did not even come to town except very rarely*.

NOTE 2.—The Relative of Cause or Concession is merely a variety of the Characteristic construction. The quality expressed by the Subjunctive is connected with the action of the main verb either as *cause on account of which* (SINCE) or as *hindrance in spite of which* (ALTHOUGH).

f. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, *idoneus* take a subjunctive clause with a relative (rarely *ut*). The negative is *non* :—

*digna in quibus elaborarent* (Tusc. i. 1), (things) *worth spending their toil on* (worthy on which they should, etc.).

*digna res est ubi tu nervos intendas tuos* (Ter. Eun. 312), *the affair is worthy of your stretching your sinews* (worthy wherein you should, etc.).

idōneus qui impetret (Manil. 57), *fit to obtain*.

indigni ut redimerēmur (Liv. xxii. 59. 17), *unworthy to be ransomed*.

NOTE 1. — This construction is sometimes explained as a relative clause of purpose, but it is more closely related to characteristic.

NOTE 2. — With dignus etc., the poets often use the Infinitive: —

fōns rivō dare nōmen idōneus (Hor. Ep. i. 16. 12), *a source fit to give a name to a stream*.

aetās mollis et apta regi (Ov. A. A. i. 10), *a time of life soft and easy to be guided*.

vivere dignus erās (Ov. M. x. 633), *you were worthy to live*.

### CLAUSES OF RESULT (CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES)

**536.** The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in § 534).

**537.** Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut*, so *that* (negative, *ut nōn*), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb.

1. Pure Clauses of Result, with *ut* or *ut nōn*, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause: —

tanta vis probitātis est ut eam in hoste diligāmus (Lael. 29), *so great is the power of goodness that we love it even in an enemy*.

pūgnātūr āriter ad novissimum agmen, adeō ut paene terga convertant (B. C. i. 80), *there is sharp fighting in the rear, so (to such a degree) that they almost take flight*.

multa rūmor adfingēbat, ut paene bellum cōfectum vidērētur (id. i. 53), *rumor added many false reports, so that the war seemed almost ended*.

2. Relative Clauses of Result are introduced by the relative pronoun *quī* or a relative adverb (*ubi*, *unde*, *quō*, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

The Relative in this construction is equivalent to *ut* with the corresponding demonstrative: — *quī* = *ut* is (etc.), *ubi* = *ut ibi*, and so on:

nam est innocentia affectiō tālis animi quae noceat nēmīni (Tusc. iii. 16), *for innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one*.

sunt aliae causae quae plānē efficiant (Top. 59), *there are other causes such as to bring to pass*.

nūlla est celeritās quae possit cum animi celeritāte contendere (Tusc. i. 43), *there is no swiftness which can compare with the swiftness of the mind*.

quis nāvīgāvit quī nōn sē mortis periculō committeret (Manil. 31), *who went to sea who did not incur the peril of death?*

NOTE 1. — Since the relative clause of Result is a development from the relative clause of Characteristic (§ 534), no sharp line can be drawn between the two constructions. In doubtful cases, it is better to attempt no distinction or to describe the clause as one of Characteristic.

NOTE 2. — Clauses of Result are often introduced by such correlative words as *tam*, *tālis*, *tantus*, *ita*, *sic*, *adeō*, *ūsq̄ue eō*, which belong to the main clause.

**a.** A Negative Result is introduced by *ut nōn*, *ut nēmō*, *quī nōn*, etc., not by *nē* :—

*multis gravibusque vulneribus confectus ut iam sē sustinere nōn posset* (B. G.

ii. 25), *used up with many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand.*

*tantā vī in Pompēi equitēs impetum fecerunt ut eōrum nēmō cōsisteret* (B. C. iii. 93), *they attacked Pompey's cavalry with such vigor that not one of them stood his ground.*

*nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere* (Cat. M. 24), *nobody is so old as not to think that he can live a year.*

NOTE.—When the result implies *an effect intended* (not a simple purpose), *ut nē* or *nē* is sometimes used as being less positive than *ut nōn* :—[librum] *ita corrigās nē mihi noceat* (Caecina, Fam. vi. 7. 6), *correct the book so that it may not hurt me.*

**b.** Frequently a clause of result or characteristic is used in a *restrictive* sense, and so amounts to a Proviso (cf. § 535. d) :—

*hōc ita est ūtile ut nē plānē inlūdāmur ab accūsātōribus* (Rosc. Am. 55), *this is so far useful that we are not utterly mocked by the accusers* (i.e. useful only on this condition, that, etc.).

*nihil autem est molestum quod nōn dēsiderēs* (Cat. M. 47), *but nothing is troublesome which (= provided that) you do not miss.*

**c.** The clause of result is sometimes expressed in English by the Infinitive with *TO* or *so AS TO* or an equivalent :—

*tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem*, *I was too far away to see* (so far that I did not see; cf. § 535. c).

NOTE.—Result is never expressed by the Infinitive in Latin except by the poets in a few passages (§ 461. a).

**538.** The constructions of Purpose and Result are precisely alike in the *affirmative* (except sometimes in *tense sequence*, § 485. c); but, in the *negative*, Purpose takes *nē*, Result *ut nōn* etc. :—

*cūstōditus est nē effugeret*, *he was guarded in order that he MIGHT not escape.*

*cūstōditus est ut nōn effugeret*, *he was guarded so that he DID not escape.*

So in negative Purpose clauses *nē quis*, *nē quid*, *nē ūllus*, *nē quō*, *nē quandō*, *nēcubi*, etc. are almost always used; in negative Result clauses, *ut nēmō*, *ut nihil*, *ut nūllus*, etc. :—

(1) *cernere nē quis eōs*, *neu quis contingere posset* (Aen. i. 413), *that no one might see them, no one touch them.* [Purpose.]

*nē quandō liberis prōscriptōrum bona patria reddantur* (Rosc. Am. 145), *lest at some time the patrimony of the proscribed should be restored to their children.*

*ipse nē quō inciderem*, *reverti Formiās* (Att. viii. 3. 7), *that I might not come upon him anywhere, I returned to Formiæ.*



dispositis exploratoribus necubi Romani copias traducerent (B. G. vii. 35), *having stationed scouts here and there in order that the Romans might not lead their troops across anywhere.*

(2) multi ita sunt imbecilli senes ut nullum officii munus exsequi possint (Cat. M. 85), *many old men are so feeble that they cannot perform any duty to society.* [Result.]

qui summum bonum sic instituit ut nihil habeat cum virtute coniunctum (Off. i. 5), *who has so settled the highest good that it has nothing in common with virtue.*

For clauses of Result or Characteristic with *quin*, see § 559. For Substantive Clauses of Result, see §§ 567-571.

### CAUSAL CLAUSES

**539.** Causal Clauses take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their construction; the idea of *cause* being contained, not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument (by implication), in an antecedent of causal meaning (like *propterea*), or in the connecting particles.

*Quod* is in origin the relative pronoun (stem *quo-*) used adverbially in the accusative neuter (cf. § 214. *d*) and gradually sinking to the position of a colorless relative conjunction (cf. English *that* and see § 222). Its use as a *causal particle* is an early special development. *Quia* is perhaps an accusative plural neuter of the relative stem *qui-*, and seems to have developed its causal sense more distinctly than *quod*, and at an earlier period. It is used (very rarely) as an interrogative, *why?* (so in classical Latin with *nam* only), and may, like *quandō*, have developed from an interrogative to a relative particle.

*Quoniam* (for *quom iam*) is also of relative origin (*quom* being a case-form of the pronominal stem *quo-*). It occurs in old Latin in the sense of *when* (cf. *quom*, *cum*), from which the causal meaning is derived (cf. *cum* causal). The Subjunctive with *quod* and *quia* depends on the principle of Informal Indirect Discourse (§ 592).

*Quandō* is probably the interrogative *quam* (*how?*) compounded with a form of the pronominal stem *do-* (cf. *dum*, *dō-nec*). It originally denoted *time* (first interrogatively, then as a relative), and thus came to signify *cause*. Unlike *quod* and *quia*, it is not used to state a reason in informal indirect discourse and therefore is never followed by the Subjunctive.

**540.** The Causal Particles *quod* and *quia* take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the *writer* or *speaker*; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of *another*:—

#### 1. Indicative:—

*cum tibi agam grātiās quod mē vivere cōēgistī* (Att. iii. 3), *when I may thank you that you have forced me to live.*

*cūr igitur pācem nōlō? quia turpis est* (Phil. vii. 9), *why then do I not wish for peace? Because it is disgraceful.*

*ita fit ut adsint propterea quod officium sequuntur, taceant autem quia periculum vitant* (Rosc. Am. 1), *so it happens that they attend because they follow duty, but are silent because they seek to avoid danger.*

## 2. Subjunctive:—

mihi grātulābāre quod audissēs mē meam pristinam dignitātem obtinēre (Fam. iv. 14. 1), *you congratulated me because [as you said] you had heard that I had regained my former dignity.*

noctū ambulābat Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset (Tusc. iv. 44), *Themistocles used to walk about at night because [as he said] he could not sleep.*

mea māter irāta est quia nōn redierim (Pl. Cist. 101), *my mother is angry because I did n't return.*

NOTE 1. — Quod introduces either a *fact* or a *statement*, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Quia regularly introduces a *fact*; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. Quoniam, *inasmuch as, since, when now, now that*, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative.

NOTE 2. — Under this head what the speaker himself thought under other circumstances may have the Subjunctive (§ 592. 3. n.): as, — ego laeta visa sum quia soror vēnisset (Pl. Mil. 387), *I seemed (in my dream) glad because my sister had come.*

So with quod even a verb of *saying* may be in the Subjunctive: as, — rediit quod sē oblitum nesciō quid diceret (Off. i. 40), *he returned because he said he had forgotten something.*

NOTE 3. — Nōn quod, nōn quia, nōn quō, introducing a reason *expressly to deny it*, take the Subjunctive; but the Indicative sometimes occurs when the statement is *in itself* true, though not the *true reason*. In the negative, nōn quā (with the Subjunctive) may be used in nearly the same sense as nōn quod nōn. After a comparative, quam quō or quam quod is used:—

pugilēs ingemēscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia profundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur (Tusc. ii. 56), *boxers groan, not because they are in pain, but because by giving vent to the voice the whole body is put in a state of tension.*

nōn quia rēctor ad Alpīs via esset, sed crēdēns (Liv. xxi. 31. 2), *not because the route to the Alps was more direct, but believing, etc.*

nōn quā pari virtūte et voluntāte aliī fuerint, sed tantam causam nōn habuerunt (Phil. vii. 6), *not that there were not others of equal courage and good-will, but they had not so strong a reason.*

haec amōre magis impulsus scribenda ad tē putāvi, quam quō tē arbitrārer monitis et praeceptis egēre (Fam. x. 3. 4), *this I thought I ought to write to you, rather from the impulse of (prompted by) affection than because I thought that you needed advice and suggestion.*

α. Quoniam and quandō, *since*, introduce a reason given on the authority of the writer or speaker, and take the Indicative:—

locus est ā mē, quoniam ita Murēna voluit, retrāctandus (Mur. 54), *I must review the point, since Murena has so wished.*

quandō ita vis, dī bene vortant (Pl. Trin. 573), *since you so wish, may the gods bless the undertaking.*

quandō ad mājōra nātī sumus (Fin. v. 21), *since we are born for greater things.*

NOTE. — The Subjunctive with quoniam is unclassical. Quandō, *since*, in the causal sense, is mostly archaic or late. Quandō, *when*, is used as interrogative, relative, and indefinite: as, — quandō? hodiē, *when? to-day*; sī quandō, *if ever*.

**b.** Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō* take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see § 580).

**c.** A Relative, when used to express *cause*, regularly takes the Subjunctive (see § 535. *e*).

**d.** *Cum* causal takes the Subjunctive (see § 549).

For Substantive Clauses with *quod*, see § 572.

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES

**541.** Temporal Clauses are introduced by particles which are almost all of relative origin. They are construed like other relative clauses, except where they have developed into special idiomatic constructions.<sup>1</sup>

For list of Temporal Particles, see p. 138.

Temporal Clauses may be classified as follows:—

- I. Conditional Relative Clauses: *ubi*, *ut*, *cum*, *quandō*, in Protasis (§ 542).
- II. Clauses with *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. (Indicative), (§ 543).
- III. Clauses with *cum* { 1. *Cum* temporal (§§ 545-548).  
2. *Cum* causal or concessive (§ 549).
- IV. Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam* (Indicative or Subjunctive) (§ 551).
- V. Clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad* (Indicative or Subjunctive) (§§ 552-556).

### Conditional Relative Clauses

**542.** The particles *ubi*, *ut*, *cum*, *quandō*, either alone or compounded with *-cumque*, may be used as Indefinite Relatives (in the sense of *whenever*), and have the constructions of Protasis (cf. § 514):—

*cum id malum negās esse, capior* (Tusc. ii. 29), *whenever you* (the individual disputant) *deny it to be an evil, I am misled.* [Present general condition.]

*quod profectō cum mē nūlla vīs cōgeret, facere nōn audērem* (Phil. v. 51), *which I would surely not venture to do, as long as no force compelled me.* [Present, contrary to fact: cf. § 517.]

*cum videās eōs dolōre nōn frangī, dēbeās existimāre*, etc. (Tusc. ii. 66), *when you see that those are not broken by pain, you ought to infer*, etc. [Present general condition: cf. § 518. *a*.]

*cum rosam viderat, tum incipere vēr arbitrābātur* (Verr. v. 27), *whenever he saw a rose he thought spring had begun.* [Past general condition: cf. § 518. *b*.]

*id ubi dixisset, hastam in finis eōrum ēmittēbat* (Liv. i. 32. 13), *when he had said this, he would cast the spear into their territories.* [Past General Condition, repeated action: see § 518. *c*.]

<sup>1</sup> With all temporal particles the Subjunctive is often found depending on some other principle of construction. (See Intermediate Clauses, § 531.)

Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, *ubi*, etc.

543. The particles *postquam* (*posteaquam*), *ubi*, *ut* (*ut primum*, *ut semel*), *simul atque* (*simul ac*, or *simul alone*), take the Indicative (usually in the *perfect* or the *historical present*):—

*militēs postquam victōriam adepti sunt, nihil reliqui victis fēcere* (Sall. Cat. 11), *when the soldiers had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished.*

*posteaquam forum attigisti, nihil fecisti nisi, etc.* (Fam. xv. 16. 3), *since you came to the forum, you have done nothing except, etc.*

*ubi omnis idem sentire intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit* (B. G. iii. 23), *when he understood that all agreed (thought the same thing), he appointed the next day for the battle.*

*Catilina, ubi eōs convēnisse videt, secēdit* (Sall. Cat. 20), *when Catiline sees that they have come together, he retires.*

*Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit, acis excessit* (B. C. iii. 94), *when Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the field.*

*ut semel ē Piraeō eloquentia ēvecta est* (Brut. 51), *as soon as eloquence had set sail from the Piræus.*

*nostrī simul in aridō cōstitērunt, in hostis impetum fēcērunt* (B. G. iv. 26), *our men, as soon as they had taken a position on dry ground, made an attack on the enemy.*

*simul atque intrōductus est, rem cōfēcit* (Clu. 40), *as soon as he was brought in, he did the job.*

*a.* These particles less commonly take the Imperfect or Pluperfect Indicative. The Imperfect denotes a past state of things; the Pluperfect, an action completed in past time:—

*postquam strūcti utrimque stābant, ducēs in medium prōcēdunt* (Liv. i. 23), *when they stood in array on both sides, the generals advance into the midst.*

*P. Africānus posteaquam bis cōsul et cēnsor fuerat* (Caecil. 69), *when Africanus had been (i.e. had the dignity of having been) twice consul and censor.*

*postquam id difficilius visum est, neque facultās perficiendī dabātur, ad Pompēium trāsiērunt* (B. C. iii. 60), *when this seemed too hard, and no means of effecting it were given, they passed over to Pompey.*

*post diem quintum quam iterum barbari male pūgnāverant [= victi sunt], lēgātī ā Bocchō veniunt* (Iug. 102), *the fifth day after the barbarians were beaten the second time, envoys come from Bocchus.*

*haec iuventūtem, ubi familiārēs opēs dēfēceraut, ad facinora incendēbant* (Sall. Cat. 18), *when their inherited resources had given out, etc.*

*ubi pericula virtūte prōpulerant* (id. 6), *when they had dispelled the dangers by their valor.*

For the use of *ubi*, *ut*, either alone or compounded with *-cumque*, as Indefinite Relatives, see § 542.

USES OF *CUM*

**544.** The conjunction *cum* (quom) is a case-form of the relative pronoun *qui*. It inherits from *qui* its subordinating force, and in general shares its constructions. But it was early specialized to a temporal meaning (cf. *tum*, *dum*), and its range of usage was therefore less wide than that of *qui*; it could not, for example, introduce clauses of purpose or of result.

With the Indicative, besides the simple expression of definite time (corresponding to simple relative clauses with the Indicative), it has a few special uses,—conditional, explicative, *cum inversum*—all easily derived from the temporal use.

With the Subjunctive, *cum* had a development parallel to that of the *qui*-clause of Characteristic,—a development not less extensive and equally peculiar to Latin. From *defining* the time the *cum*-clause passed over to the *description* of the time by means of its attendant circumstances of cause or concession (cf. *since*, *while*).

In particular, *cum* with the Subjunctive was used in narrative (hence the past tenses, Imperfect and Pluperfect) as a descriptive clause of time. As, however, the present participle in Latin is restricted in its use and the perfect active participle is almost wholly lacking, the historical or narrative *cum*-clause came into extensive use to supply the deficiency. In classical writers the narrative *cum*-clause (with the Subjunctive) has pushed back the defining clause (with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Indicative) into comparative infrequency, and is itself freely used where the descriptive or characterizing force is scarcely perceptible (cf. the *qui*-clause of Characteristic, § 534).

*Cum* Temporal

**545.** A temporal clause with *cum*, *when*, and some past tense of the Indicative *dates* or *defines the time* at which the action of the main verb occurred:—

*eō* [lituō] *regiōnēs dirēxit tum cum urbem condidit* (Div. i. 30), *he traced with it the quarters [of the sky] at the time he founded the city.*

*cum occiditur* *Sex. Rōscius, ibidem fuērunt servi* (Rosc. Am. 120), *when Roscius was slain, the slaves were on the spot.* [*occiditur* is historical present.]

*quem quidem cum ex urbe pellēbam, hōc prōvidēbam animō* (Cat. iii. 16), *when I was trying to force him (conative imperfect) from the city, I looked forward to this.*

*fulgentis gladiōs hostium vidēbant Decii cum in aciem eōrum irruēbant* (Tusc. ii. 59), *the Decii saw the flashing swords of the enemy when they rushed upon their line.*

*tum cum in Asiā rēs magnās permulti amiserant* (Manil. 19), *at that time, when many had lost great fortunes in Asia.*

NOTE 1.—This is the regular use with all tenses in early Latin, and at all times with the Perfect and the Historical Present (as with *postquam* etc.). With the Imperfect and Pluperfect the Indicative use is (in classical Latin) much less common than the Subjunctive use defined below (§ 546).

NOTE 2.—This construction must not be confused with that of *cum*, *whenever*, in General Conditions (§ 542).

a. When the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are *absolutely identical*, *cum* takes the Indicative in the same tense as that of the main verb:—

maximā sum laetitīā adfectus cum audīvī cōsulem tē factum esse (Fam. xv. 7), *I was very much pleased when I heard that you had been elected consul.*

546. A temporal clause with *cum* and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive *describes the circumstances* that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb:—

cum essem otiosus in Tusculanō, accēpi tuās litterās (Fam. ix. 18. 1), *when I was taking my ease in my house at Tusculum, I received your letter.*

cum servillī bellō premerētur (Manil. 30), *when she (Italy) was under the load of the Servile War.*

cum id nūtiātum esset, mātūrat (B. G. i. 7), *when this had been reported, he made (makes) haste.*

cum ad Cybistra quinque diēs essem morātus, rēgem Ariobarzānem insidiis liberāvī (Fam. xv. 4. 6), *after remaining at Cybistra for five days, I freed King Ariobarzanes from plots.*

is cum ad mē Lāodicēam vēnisset mēcumque ego eum vellem, repente percussus est atrocissimis litteris (id. ix. 25. 3), *when he had come to me at Laodicea and I wished him to remain with me, he was suddenly, etc.*

NOTE 1.—This construction is very common in narrative, and *cum* in this use is often called *narrative cum*.

NOTE 2.—*Cum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Indicative does not (like *cum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive) *describe the time by its circumstances*; it *defines the time* of the main verb by denoting a coëxistent state of things (Imperfect Indicative) or a result attained when the action of the main verb took place (Pluperfect). Thus the construction is precisely that of *postquam* etc. (§ 543. a).

NOTE 3.—The distinction between the uses defined in §§ 545, 546, may be illustrated by the following examples: (1) *He had a fever when he was in Spain* (Shakspeare). Here the *when*-clause *defines the time* when Cæsar had the fever,—namely, in the year of his Spanish campaign (B.C. 49). In Latin we should use *cum* with the Imperfect Indicative. (2) *Columbus discovered America when he was seeking a new route to India*; here the *when*-clause does not define or date the time of the discovery; it merely *describes the circumstances* under which America was discovered,—namely, in the course of a voyage undertaken for another purpose. In Latin we should use the Imperfect Subjunctive.

NOTE 4.—The distinction explained in Note 3 is unknown to early Latin. In Plautus *quom* always has the Indicative unless the Subjunctive is required for some other reason.

a. When the principal action is expressed in the form of a temporal clause with *cum*, and the definition of the time becomes the main clause, *cum* takes the Indicative.

Here the logical relations of the two clauses are inverted; hence *cum* is in this use called *cum inversum*:—

diēs nōdum decem intercesserant, cum ille alter filius Infāns necātur (Clu. 28), *ten days had not yet passed, when the other infant son was killed.* [Instead of *when ten days had not yet passed*, etc.]  
 iamque lūx appārebat cum prōcēdit ad militēs (Q. C. vii. 8. 3), *and day was already dawning when he appears before the soldiers.*  
 hōc facere noctū apparābat, cum mātres familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrerunt (B. G. vii. 26), *they were preparing to do this by night, when the women suddenly ran out into the streets.*

**547.** Present time with *cum* temporal is denoted by the Present Indicative; future time, by the Future or Future Perfect Indicative:—

incidunt tempora, cum ea, quae maximē videntur digna esse iustō homine, fiunt contrāria (Off. i. 31), *times occur when those things which seem especially worthy of the upright man, become the opposite.*  
 nōn dubitābō dare operam ut tē videam, cum id satis commodē facere poterō (Fam. xiii. 1), *I shall not hesitate to take pains to see you, when I can do it conveniently.*  
 longum illud tempus cum nōn erō (Att. xii. 18), *that long time when I shall be no more.*  
 cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs (Fam. v. 7. 3), *when you come (shall have come), you will find out.*

**548.** *Cum*, *whenever*, takes the construction of a relative clause in a general condition (see § 542).

For present time, either the Present or the Perfect Indicative is used; for past time, regularly the Pluperfect Indicative.

For *est cum* etc., see § 535. a. n. 3.

### *Cum* Causal or Concessive

**549.** *Cum* *causal* or *concessive* takes the Subjunctive:—

id difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus (B. C. iii. 86), *this is not difficult since we are so strong in cavalry.* [Causal.]  
 cum solitūdō insidiarum et metūs plēna sit, ratiō ipsa monet amicitias comparāre (Fin. i. 66), *since solitude is full of treachery and fear, reason itself prompts us to contract friendships.* [Causal.]  
 cum primī ordinēs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant (B. G. vii. 62), *though the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted vigorously.* [Concessive.]  
 brevī spatiō legiōnēs numerō hominum explēverat, cum initio nōn amplius duobus milibus habuisset (Sall. Cat. 56), *in a short time he had filled out the legions with their complement of men, though at the start he had not had more than two thousand.* [Concessive.]

**Cum** causal may usually be translated by *since*; **cum** concessive by *although* or *while*; either, occasionally, by *when*.

NOTE 1.—**Cum** in these uses is often emphasized by *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, *praesertim*: as, —nec reprehendō: quippe cum ipse istam reprehensionem nōn fūgerim (Att. x. 3A), *I find no fault; since I myself did not escape that blame*.

NOTE 2.—These causal and concessive uses of **cum** are of relative origin and are parallel to *quī* causal and concessive (§535. e). The attendant circumstances are regarded as the *cause* of the action, or as tending to *hinder* it.

NOTE 3.—In early Latin **cum** (quom) causal and concessive usually takes the Indicative: as, —quom tua rēs distrahitur, utinam videam (Pl. Trin. 617), *since your property is being torn in pieces, O that I may see*, etc.

**a.** **Cum** with the Indicative frequently introduces an explanatory statement, and is sometimes equivalent to *quod*, *on the ground that*:—

**cum** tacent, clāmant (Cat. i. 21), *when they are silent, they cry out* (i.e. their silence is an emphatic expression of their sentiments).

grātulor tibi cum tantum valēs apud Dolābellam (Fam. ix. 14. 8), *I congratulate you that you are so strong with Dolabella*.

NOTE.—This is merely a special use of **cum** temporal expressing coincident time (§545. a).

**b.** **Cum** . . . **tum**, signifying *both . . . and*, usually takes the Indicative; but when **cum** approaches the sense of *while* or *though*, the Subjunctive is used (§549):—

**cum** multa nōn probō, tum illud in primis (Fin. i. 18), *while there are many things I do not approve, there is this in chief*. [Indicative.]

**cum** difficile est, tum nē aequum quidem (Lael. 26), *not only is it difficult but even unjust*.

**cum** rēs tōta facta sit pueriliter, tum nē efficit quidem quod vult (Fin. i. 19), *while the whole thing is childishly got up, he does not even make his point* (accomplish what he wishes). [Subjunctive; approaching **cum** causal.]

### *Antequam and Priusquam*

**550.** **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, introduce Clauses of Time which resemble those with **cum** temporal in their constructions. **Priusquam** consists of two parts (often written separately and sometimes separated by other words), the comparative adverb **prius**, *sooner* (*before*), which really modifies the main verb, and the relative particle **quam**, *than*, which introduces the subordinate clause. The latter is therefore a relative clause, and takes the Indicative or the Subjunctive (like other relative clauses) according to the sense intended. The Subjunctive with **priusquam** is related to that of purpose (§529) and is sometimes called the Anticipatory or Prospective Subjunctive. **Antequam**, like **priusquam**, consists of two words, the first of which is the adverb **ante**, *before*, modifying the main verb. Its constructions are the same as those of **priusquam**, but the latter is commoner in classic prose.

**551.** **Antequam** and **priusquam** take sometimes the Indicative, sometimes the Subjunctive.



**a.** With *antequam* or *priusquam* the Perfect Indicative *states a fact in past time*:—

*antequam tuās lēgi litterās, hominem ire cupiēbam* (Att. ii. 7. 2), *before I read your letter, I wished the man to go.*

*neque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dedit adulescēns* (Liv. xxxix. 10), *and she did not let the young man go till he pledged his faith.*

*neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt* (B. G. i. 53), *nor did they stop running until they reached the river.*

NOTE.—The Perfect Indicative in this construction is regular when the main clause is negative and the main verb is in an historical tense. The Imperfect Indicative is rare; the Pluperfect Indicative, very rare. The Perfect Subjunctive is rare and ante-classical, except in Indirect Discourse.

**b.** With *antequam* or *priusquam* the Imperfect Subjunctive is common when the subordinate verb implies *purpose* or *expectancy* in past time, or when the action that it denotes *did not take place*:—

*ante pūgnāri coeptum est quam satis instruerētur aciēs* (Liv. xxii. 4. 7), *the fight was begun before the line could be properly formed.*

*priusquam tū suum sibi vēderēs, ipse possēdit* (Phil. ii. 96), *before you could sell him his own property, he took possession of it himself.*

*priusquam tēlum abici posset aut nostri propius accēderent, omnis Vārī aciēs terga vertit* (B. C. ii. 34), *before a weapon could be thrown or our men approached nearer, the whole line about Varus took flight.*

NOTE 1.—The Pluperfect Subjunctive is rare, except in Indirect Discourse by sequence of tenses for the Future Perfect Indicative (§ 484. c): *as, — antequam hominēs nefārī dē meō adventū audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perrexī* (Planc. 98), *before those evil men could learn of my coming, I arrived in Macedonia.*

NOTE 2.—After an historical present the Present Subjunctive is used instead of the Imperfect: *as, — neque ab eō prius Domitiānī militēs discēdunt quam in cōspectum Caesaris dēdūcātur* (B. C. i. 22), *and the soldiers of Domitius did (do) not leave him until he was (is) conducted into Cæsar's presence.* So, rarely, the Perfect Subjunctive (*as* B. G. iii. 18).

**c.** *Antequam* and *priusquam*, when referring to future time, take the Present or Future Perfect Indicative; rarely the Present Subjunctive:

*priusquam dē cēteris rēbus respondeō, dē amicitia pauca dicam* (Phil. ii. 3), *before I reply to the rest, I will say a little about friendship.*

*nōn defatigābor antequam illōrum ancipites viās percēperō* (De Or. iii. 145), *I shall not weary till I have traced out their doubtful ways.*

*antequam veniat litterās mittet* (Leg. Agr. ii. 53), *before he comes, he will send a letter.*

NOTE 1.—The Future Indicative is very rare.

NOTE 2.—In a few cases the Subjunctive of *present general condition* is found with *antequam* and *priusquam* (cf. § 518. a): *as, — in omnibus negotiis priusquam aggrediāre, adhibenda est praeparatiō diligēns* (Off. i. 73), *in all undertakings, before you proceed to action, careful preparation must be used.*

*Dum, Dōnec, and Quoad*

**552.** As an adverb meaning *for a time, awhile*, *dum* is found in old Latin, chiefly as an enclitic (cf. *vixdum, nōdum*). Its use as a conjunction comes either through correlation (cf. *cum . . . tum, si . . . sic*) or through substitution for a conjunction, as in the English *the moment I saw it, I understood*. *Quoad* is a compound of the relative *quō*, *up to which point*, with *ad*. The origin and early history of *dōnec* are unknown.

**553.** *Dum* and *quoad, until*, take the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive in temporal clauses implying *intention* or *expectancy*:—

*exspectās fortasse dum dicat* (Tusc. ii. 17), *you are waiting perhaps for him to say* (until he say). [*Dum* is especially common after *exspectō*.]

*dum reliquae nāvēs convenirent, ad hōrām nōnam exspectāvit* (B. G. iv. 23), *he waited till the ninth hour for the rest of the ships to join him*.

*comitia dilāta [sunt] dum lēx ferrētur* (Att. iv. 17. 3), *the election was postponed until a law should be passed*.

*an id exspectāmus, quoad nē vestigium quidem Asiae civitātum atque urbium relinquātur* (Phil. xi. 25), *shall we wait for this until not a trace is left of the states and cities of Asia?*

*Epaminōndās exercēbātur plūrimum luctandō ad eum finem quoad stāns completi posset atque contendere* (Nep. Epam. 2), *Epaminondas trained himself in wrestling so far as to be able* (until he should be able) *to grapple standing and fight* (in that way).

NOTE 1.—*Dōnec* is similarly used in poetry and later Latin: as,—*et dūxit longē dōnec curvāta cōfrent inter sē capita* (Aen. xi. 860), *and drew it* (the bow) *until the curved tips touched each other*.

NOTE 2.—*Dum, until*, may be used with the Present or Future Perfect Indicative to state a future fact when there is no idea of intention or expectancy; but this construction is rare in classic prose. The Future is also found in early Latin. *Dōnec, until*, is similarly used, in poetry and early Latin, with the Present and Future Perfect Indicative, rarely with the Future:—

*ego in Arcādō opperior dum ista cōgnōscō* (Att. x. 3), *I am waiting in the villa at Arcæ until I find this out*. [This is really *dum, while*.]

*mihī ūsque cūrae erit quid agās, dum quid ēgeris scierō* (Fam. xii. 19. 3), *I shall always feel anxious as to what you are doing, until I actually know* (shall have known) *what you have done*.

*dēlicta māīōrum luēs dōnec templa refēceris* (Hor. Od. iii. 6. 1), *you shall suffer for the sins of your ancestors until you rebuild the temples*.

*ter centum rēgnābitur annōs, dōnec geminam partū dabit Ilia prōlem* (Aen. i. 272), *sway shall be held for thrice a hundred years, until Ilia shall give birth to twin offspring*.

**554.** *Dōnec* and *quoad, until*, with the Perfect Indicative denote an *actual fact* in past time:—

*dōnec rediit silentium fuit* (Liv. xxiii. 31. 9), *there was silence until he returned*. *ūsque eō timui dōnec ad rēciendōs iūdicēs vēnimus* (Verr. ii. 1. 17), *I was anxious until the moment when we came to challenge the jurors*.

*Rōmae fuērunt quoad L. Metellus in prōvinciam profectus est* (id. ii. 62), *they remained at Rome until Lucius Metellus set out for the province*.

NOTE.—*Dum, until*, with the Perfect Indicative is rare: as, — *mānsit in conditione usque ad eum finem dum iudicēs reiecti sunt* (Verr. i. 16), *he remained true to the agreement until the jurors were challenged.*

**555. *Dum, dōnec, and quoad, as long as*, take the Indicative:—**

*dum anima est, spēs esse dicitur* (Att. ix. 10. 3), *as long as there is life, there is said to be hope.*

*dum praesidia ūlla fuērunt*, in Sullae praesidiis fuit (Rosc. Am. 126), *so long as there were any garrisons, he was in the garrisons of Sulla.*

*dum longius ā munitiōne aberant Galli, plūs multitūdine telōrum prōficiēbant* (B. G. vii. 82), *so long as the Gauls were at a distance from the fortifications, they had the advantage because of their missiles.*

*dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persarūm vigui rēge beātior* (Hor. Od. iii. 9. 1), *as long as I enjoyed thy favor, I flourished happier than the king of the Persians.*

*quoad potuit fortissimē restitit* (B. G. iv. 12), *he resisted bravely as long as he could.*

NOTE 1.—*Dōnec* in this use is confined to poetry and later writers.

NOTE 2.—*Quam diū, as long as*, takes the Indicative only: as, — *sē oppidō tam diū tenuit quam diū in prōvinciā Parthi fuērunt* (Fam. xii. 19. 2), *he kept himself within the town as long as the Parthians were in the province.*

**556. *Dum, while*, regularly takes the Present Indicative to denote continued action in past time.**

In translating, the English Imperfect must generally be used:—

*dum haec geruntur, Caesari nūtiātum est* (B. G. i. 46), *while this was going on, a message was brought to Caesar.*

*haec dum aguntur, intereā Cleomenēs iam ad Elōri litus pervēnerat* (Verr. v. 91), *while this was going on, Cleomenes meanwhile had come down to the coast at Elorum.*

*hōc dum nārrat, forte audiui* (Ter. Haut. 272), *I happened to hear this while she was telling it.*

NOTE.—This construction is a special use of the Historical Present (§ 469).

*a.* A past tense with *dum* (usually *so long as*) makes the time emphatic by contrast; but a few irregular cases of *dum* with a past tense occur where no contrast is intended:

*nec enim dum eram vōbiscum, animum meum vidēbātis* (Cat. M. 79), *for while I was with you, you could not see my soul.* [Here the time when he was alive is contrasted with that after his death.]

*coōrta est pūgna, pār dum cōstābant ordinēs* (Liv. xxii. 47), *a conflict began, well matched as long as the ranks stood firm.*

But,—*dum oculos hostium certāmen āverterat* (id. xxxii. 24), *while the struggle kept the eyes of the enemy turned away.*

*dum ūnum adscendere gradum cōnātus est, vēnit in periculum* (Mur. 55), *while he attempted to climb one step [in rank] he fell into danger.*

NOTE. — In later writers, *dum* sometimes takes the Subjunctive when the classical usage would require the Indicative, and *dōnec*, *until*, is freely used in this manner (especially by Tacitus):—

*dum* ea in Samniō gererentur, in Etruriā interim bellum ingēns concitū (Liv. x. 18), *while this was being done in Samnium, meanwhile a great war was stirred up in Etruria.*

illa quidem *dum* tē fugeret, hydrum nōn vidit (Georg. iv. 457), *while she was fleeing from you she did not see the serpent.*

*dum* per vicōs dēportārētur, condormiēbat (Suet. Aug. 78), *while he was being carried through the streets he used to fall dead asleep.*

Rhēnus servat nōmen et violentiam cursūs (quā Germāniam praevehitur) dōnec Oceanō misceātur (Tac. Ann. ii. 6), *the Rhine keeps its name and rapid course (where it borders Germany) until it mingles with the ocean.*

temporibusque Augusti dicendis nōn dēfuēre decōra ingenia dōnec gliscente adūlātiōne dēterrērentur (id. i. 1), *for describing the times of Augustus there was no lack of talent until it was frightened away by the increasing servility of the age.*

For *dum*, provided that, see § 528.

### CLAUSES WITH QUIN AND QUOMINUS

557. The original meaning of *quin* is *how not? why not?* (*quī-nē*), and when used with the Indicative or (rarely) with the Subjunctive it regularly implies a general negative. Thus, *quin ego hōc rogem? why should n't I ask this?* implies that there is no reason for not asking. The implied negative was then expressed in a main clause, like *nūlla causa est* or *feri nōn potest*. Hence come the various dependent constructions introduced by *quin*.

*Quominus* is really a phrase (*quō minus*), and the dependent constructions which it introduces have their origin in the relative clause of purpose with *quō* and a comparative (see § 531. a).

558. A subjunctive clause with *quin* is used after verbs and other expressions of *hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying*, and the like, when these are *negatived*, either expressly or by implication:—

nōn hūmāna ūlla neque dīvina obstant *quin* sociōs amīcōs trahant excindant (Sall. Ep. Mith. 17), *no human or divine laws prevent them from taking captive and exterminating their friendly allies.*

ut nē Suessionēs quidem dēterrēre potuerint *quin* cum his cōsentiērent (B. G. ii. 3), *that they were unable to hinder even the Suessiones from making common cause with them.*

nōn posse milītēs continēri *quin* in urbem inrumperent (B. C. ii. 12), *that the soldiers could not be restrained from bursting into the city.*

nōn recūsāt *quin* iūdicēs (Deiot. 43), *he does not object to your judging.*

neque recūsāre *quin* armīs contendat (B. G. iv. 7), *and that they did not refuse to fight.*

praeterire nōn potui *quin* scriberem ad tē (Caesar ap. Cic. Att. ix. 6 A), *I could not neglect to write to you.*

*Trēveri* tōtius hiemis nūllum tempus intermisērunt quā lēgātōs mitterent (B. G. v. 55), *the Treveri let no part of the winter pass without sending ambassadors.* [Cf. B. G. v. 53; B. C. i. 78.]

nōn cunctandum existimāvit quā pugnā dēcertāret (B. G. iii. 23), *he thought he ought not to delay risking a decisive battle.*

paulum āfuit quā Vārum interficeret (B. C. ii. 35), *he just missed killing Varus* (it lacked little but that he should kill).

neque multum āfuit quā castris expellerentur (id. ii. 35), *they came near being driven out of the camp.*

facere nōn possum quā cotīdiē ad tē mittam (Att. xii. 27. 2), *I cannot help sending to you every day.*

fieri nūllō modō poterat quā Cleomenī parcerētur (Verr. v. 104), *it was out of the question that Cleomenes should not be spared.*

ut effici nōn possit quā eōs dēderim (Phil. xi. 36), *so that nothing can prevent my hating them.*

**a.** Quā is especially common with nōn dubitō, *I do not doubt*, nōn est dubium, *there is no doubt*, and similar expressions:—

nōn dubitābat quā ei crēderēmus (Att. vi. 2. 3), *he did not doubt that we believed him.*

illud cavē dubitēs quā ego omnia faciam (Fam. v. 20. 6), *do not doubt that I will do all.*

quis Ignorat quā tria Graecōrum genera sint (Flacc. 64), *who is ignorant that there are three races of Greeks?*

nōn erat dubium quā Helvētī plūrimum possent (cf. B. G. i. 3), *there was no doubt that the Helvetians were most powerful.*

neque Caesarem fefellit quā ab iis cohortibus initium victōriæ orīrētur (B. C. iii. 94), *and it did not escape Caesar's notice that the beginning of the victory came from those cohorts.*

**NOTE 1.**—Dubitō without a negative is regularly followed by an Indirect Question; so sometimes nōn dubitō and the like:—

nōn nūllī dubitant an per Sardiniam veniat (Fam. ix. 7), *some doubt whether he is coming through Sardinia.*

dubitāte, āi potestis, ā quō sit Sex. Rōscius occisus (Rosc. Am. 78), *doubt, if you can, by whom Sextus Roscius was murdered.*

dubitābam tū hās ipsās litterās essēne acceptūrus (Att. xv. 9), *I doubt whether you will receive this very letter.* [Epistolary Imperfect (§ 479).]

quālis sit futūrus, nē vōs quidem dubitātis (B. C. ii. 32), *and what it (the outcome) will be, you yourselves do not doubt.*

nōn dubitō quid sentiant (Fam. xv. 9), *I do not doubt what they think.*

dubium illi nōn erat quid futūrum esset (id. viii. 8. 1), *it was not doubtful to him what was going to happen.*

**NOTE 2.**—Nōn dubitō in the sense of *I do not hesitate* commonly takes the Infinitive, but sometimes quā with the Subjunctive:—

nec dubitāre illum appellāre sapientem (Lael. 1), *and not to hesitate to call him a sage.*

dubitandum nōn existimāvit quā proficiscerētur (B. G. ii. 2), *he did not think he ought to hesitate to set out.*

quid dubitās ūti temporis opportunitāte (B. C. ii. 34), *why do you hesitate to take advantage of the favorable moment?* [A question implying a negative.]

**b.** Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* often take the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*), especially when the verb is not negatived : —

*plūra nē dicam tuae mē lacrimae impediunt* (Planc. 104), *your tears prevent me from speaking further.*

*nec aetās impedit quōminus agrī colendi studia teneāmus* (Cat. M. 60), *nor does age prevent us from retaining an interest in tilling the soil.*

*nihil impedit quōminus id facere possimus* (Fin. i. 33), *nothing hinders us from being able to do that.*

*obstitisti nē trānsire cōpiae possent* (Verr. v. 5), *you opposed the passage of the troops* (opposed lest the troops should cross).

**NOTE.** — Some verbs of *hindering* may take the Infinitive : —

*nihil obest dicere* (Fam. ix. 13. 4), *there is nothing to prevent my saying it.*

*prohibet accēdere* (Caec. 46), *prevents him from approaching.*

**559.** A clause of Result or Characteristic may be introduced by *quin* after a general negative, where *quin* is equivalent to *quī* (*quae*, *quod*) *nōn* : —

**1. Clauses of Result : —**

*nēmō est tam fortis quin [= quī nōn] rei novitāte perturbētur* (B. G. vi. 39), *no one is so brave as not to be disturbed by the unexpected occurrence.*

*nēmō erat adeō tardus quin putāret* (B. C. i. 69), *no one was so slothful as not to think, etc.*

*quis est tam dēmēns quin sentiat* (Balb. 43), *who is so senseless as not to think, etc.?*

*nīl tam difficilē quin quaerendō investigārī possiet* (Ter. Haut. 675), *nothing's so hard but search will find it out* (Herrick).

**2. Clauses of Characteristic : —**

*nēmō nostrum est quin [= quī nōn] sciat* (Rosc. Am. 55), *there is no one of us who does not know.*

*nēmō fuit militum quin vulnerārētur* (B. C. iii. 53), *there was not one of the soldiers who was not wounded.*

*ecquis fuit quin lacrimāret* (Verr. v. 121), *was there any one who did not shed tears?*

*quis est quin intellegat* (Fin. v. 64), *who is there who does not understand?*

*hōrum nihil est quin [= quod nōn] intreat* (N. D. iii. 30), *there is none of these (elements) which does not perish.*

*nihil est illōrum quin [= quod nōn] ego illi dixerim* (Pl. Bac. 1012), *there is nothing of this that I have not told him.*

**NOTE.** — *Quin* sometimes introduces a pure clause of result with the sense of *ut nōn* : as, — *numquam tam male est Siculis quin aliquid facētē et commodē dicant* (Verr. iv. 96), *things are never so bad with the Sicilians but that they have something pleasant or witty to say.*

For *quin* in independent constructions, see § 449. *b.*

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

**560.** A clause which is used as a noun may be called a Substantive Clause, as certain relative clauses are sometimes called adjective clauses. But in practice the term is restricted to clauses which represent a nominative or an accusative case, the clauses which stand for an ablative being sometimes called adverbial clauses.

Even with this limitation the term is not quite precise (see p. 367, footnote 1). The fact is rather that the clause and the leading verb are mutually complementary; each reinforces the other. The simplest and probably the earliest form of such sentences is to be found in the paratactic use (see § 268) of two verbs like *volō abeās, dicāmus cēnsēs, adeam optimum est*. From such verbs the usage spread by analogy to other verbs (see lists on pp. 363, 367, footnotes), and the complementary relation of the clause to the verb came to resemble the complementary force of the accusative, especially the accusative of cognate meaning (§ 390).

**561.** A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause.

*a.* A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive, or as a Predicate Nominative or Accusative.

NOTE 1. — Many ideas which in English take the form of an abstract noun may be rendered by a substantive clause in Latin. Thus, *he demanded an investigation* may be *postulābat ut quaeștiō habērētur*. The common English expression *for* with the infinitive also corresponds to a Latin substantive clause: *as, — it remains for me to speak of the piratic war, reliquum est ut dē bellō dicam pirātiō*.

NOTE 2. — When a Substantive Clause is used as subject, the verb to which it is subject is called *impersonal*, and the sign of the construction in English is commonly the so-called *expletive* *it*.

**562.** Substantive Clauses are classified as follows : —

1. Subjunctive Clauses { *a.* Of purpose (*command, wish, fear*) (§§ 563, 564).  
(*ut, nē, ut nōn, etc.*). { *b.* Of result (*happen, effect, etc.*) (§ 568).
2. Indicative Clauses with *quod*: Fact, Specification, Feeling (§ 572).
3. Indirect Questions: Subjunctive, introduced by an Interrogative Word (§§ 573-576).
4. Infinitive Clauses { *a.* With verbs of *ordering, wishing, etc.* (§ 568).  
                                  { *b.* Indirect Discourse (§ 579 ff.).

NOTE. — The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is not strictly a clause, but in Latin it has undergone so extensive a development that it may be so classed. The uses of the Infinitive Clause are of two kinds: (1) in constructions in which it replaces a subjunctive clause with *ut* etc.; (2) in the Indirect Discourse. The first class will be discussed in connection with the appropriate subjunctive constructions (§ 563); for Indirect Discourse, see § 579 ff.

## Substantive Clauses of Purpose

**563.** Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action *directed toward the future*.

Such are, verbs meaning to *admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish*: —<sup>1</sup>

monet ut omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet (B. G. i. 20), *he warns him to avoid all suspicion.*

hortātur eōs nē animō dēficiant (B. C. i. 19), *he urges them not to lose heart.*  
tē rogō atque orō ut eum iuvēs (Fam. xiii. 66), *I beg and pray you to aid him.*

his uti conquirerent imperāvit (B. G. i. 28), *he ordered them to search.*

persuādet Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret (id. i. 3), *he persuades Casticus to usurp royal power.*

suis imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum rēicerent (id. i. 46), *he ordered his men not to throw back any weapon at all.*

NOTE. — With any verb of these classes the poets may use the Infinitive instead of an object clause: —

hortāmur fārī (Aen. ii. 74), *we urge [him] to speak.*

nē quaere docērī (id. vi. 614), *seek not to be told.*

temptat praevertēre (id. i. 721), *she attempts to turn, etc.*

For the Subjunctive without ut with verbs of *commanding*, see § 565. a.

a. *Iubeō, order, and vetō, forbid*, take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: —

Labiēnum iugum montis ascendere iubet (B. G. i. 21), *he orders Labienus to ascend the ridge of the hill.*

Hiberōs ad sē addicī iussit (id. ii. 5), *he ordered the children to be brought to him.*  
ab opere lēgātōs discēdere vetuerat (id. ii. 20), *he had forbidden the lieutenants to leave the work.*

vetuēre [bona] reddī (Liv. ii. 5), *they forbade the return of the goods (that the goods be returned).*

NOTE. — Some other verbs of *commanding* etc. occasionally take the Infinitive: —

pontem imperant fierī (B. C. i. 61), *they order a bridge to be built.*

rēs monet cavēre (Sall. Cat. 52. 3), *the occasion warns us to be on our guard.*

b. Verbs of *wishing* take either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive.

With *volō (nōlō, mālō)* and *cupiō* the Infinitive is commoner, and the subject of the infinitive is rarely expressed when it would be the same as that of the main verb.

With other verbs of *wishing* the Subjunctive is commoner when the subject changes, the Infinitive when it remains the same.

1. Subject of dependent verb same as that of the verb of *wishing*: —

augur fierī volui (Fam. xv. 4. 13), *I wished to be made augur.*

cupiō vigiliam meam tibi trādere (id. xi. 24), *I am eager to hand over my watch to you.*

<sup>1</sup> Such verbs or verbal phrases are *id agō, ad id veniō, caveō (nō), censeō, cōgō, concēdō, cōstituō, cūrō, dēcernō, dēdicō, flāgitō, hortor, imperō, instō, mandō, metuō (nō), moneō, negōtium dō, operam dō, orō, persuādeō, petō, postulō, praecipiō, precor, prōnūntiō, quaerō, rogō, sciscō, timeō (nō), vereor (nō), videō, volō.*



iudicem mē esse, nōn doctōrem volō (Or. 117), *I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.*

mē Caesaris militem dīci voluī (B. C. ii. 32. 13), *I wished to be called a soldier of Cæsar.*

cupiō mē esse clēmētem (Cat. i. 4), *I desire to be merciful.* [But regularly, cupiō esse clēmēns (see § 457).]

omnis hominēs, qui sēsē student præstāre ceteris animālibus (Sall. Cat. 1), *all men who wish to excel other living creatures.*

2. Subject of dependent verb different from that of the verb of *wishing* :

volō tē scire (Fam. ix. 24. 1), *I wish you to know.*

vim volumus exstinguī (Sest. 92), *we wish violence to be put down.*

tē tuā frui virtūte cupimus (Brut. 331), *we wish you to reap the fruits of your virtue.*

cupiō ut impetret (Pl. Capt. 102), *I wish he may get it.*

numquam optābō ut audiātis (Cat. ii. 15), *I will never desire that you shall hear.*

For volō and its compounds with the Subjunctive without ut, see § 565.

c. Verbs of *permitting* take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive. Patior takes regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; so often sinō : —

permisit ut faceret (De Or. ii. 386), *permitted him to make.*

concedō tibi ut ea prætereās (Rosc. Am. 54), *I allow you to pass by these matters.*

tabernacula statui passus nōn est (B. C. i. 81), *he did not allow tents to be pitched.*

vīnum importārī nōn sinunt (B. G. iv. 2), *they do not allow wine to be imported.*

d. Verbs of *determining, decreeing, resolving, bargaining*, take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive : —

cōstituerant ut L. Bēstia quererētur (Sall. Cat. 43), *they had determined that Lucius Bestia should complain.*

proeliō supersedēre statuit (B. G. ii. 8), *he determined to refuse battle.*

dē bonis rēgis quæ reddi cōsuerant (Liv. ii. 5), *about the king's goods, which they had decreed should be restored.*

dēcernit uti cōsulēs dilēctum habeant (Sall. Cat. 34), *decrees that the consuls shall hold a levy.*

ēdictō nē quis iniussū pugnāret (Liv. v. 19), *having commanded that none should fight without orders.*

NOTE 1. — Different verbs of these classes with the same meaning vary in their construction (see the Lexicon). For verbs of *bargaining* etc. with the Gerundive, see § 500. 4.

NOTE 2. — Verbs of *decreeing* and *voting* often take the Infinitive of the Second Periphrastic conjugation : — Rēgulus captivōs reddendōs [esse] nōn cōsult (Off. i. 39), *Regulus voted that the captives should not be returned.* [He said, in giving his formal opinion : captivi nōn reddendi sunt.]

*e.* Verbs of *caution* and *effort* take the Subjunctive with *ut*. But *cōnor*, *try*, commonly takes the Complementary Infinitive:—

*cūrā ut quam primum intellegam* (Fam. xiii. 10. 4), *let me know as soon as possible* (take care that I may understand).

*dant operam ut habeant* (Sall. Cat. 41), *they take pains to have* (give their attention that, etc.).

*impellere uti Caesar nōminārētur* (id. 49), *to induce them to name Cæsar* (that Cæsar should be named).

*cōnātus est Caesar reficere pontis* (B. C. i. 50), *Cæsar tried to rebuild the bridges*.

NOTE 1.—*Cōnor* *sī* also occurs (as B. G. i. 8); cf. *miror sī* etc., § 572. b. n.

NOTE 2.—*Ut nē* occurs occasionally with verbs of *caution* and *effort* (cf. § 531):—*cūrā et providē ut nēquid ei dēsit* (Att. xi. 3. 3), *take care and see that he lacks nothing*. For the Subjunctive with *quā* and *quōminus* with verbs of *hindering* etc., see § 558.

**564.** Verbs of *fearing* take the Subjunctive, with *nē* affirmative and *nē nōn* or *ut* negative.

In this use *nē* is commonly to be translated by *that*, *ut* and *nē nōn* by *that not*:—

*timeō nē Verrēs fēcerit* (Verr. v. 3), *I fear that Verres has done*, etc.

*nē animum offenderet verēbātur* (B. G. i. 19), *he feared that he should hurt the feelings*, etc.

*nē exhērēdārētur veritus est* (Rosc. Am. 58), *he feared that he should be disinherited*.

*ōrātor metuō nē languēscat senectūte* (Cat. M. 28), *I fear the orator grows feeble from old age*.

*vereor ut tibi possim concēdere* (De Or. i. 35), *I fear that I cannot grant you*.

*haud sānē periculum est nē nōn mortem optandam putet* (Tusc. v. 118), *there is no danger that he will not think death desirable*.

NOTE.—The subjunctive in *nē*-clauses after a verb of fearing is optative in origin. To an independent *nē*-sentence, as *nē accidat*, *may it not happen*, a verb may be prefixed (cf. § 560), making a complex sentence. Thus, *vidē nē accidat*; *ōrō nē accidat*; *cavet nē accidat*; when the prefixed verb is one of fearing, *timeō nē accidat* becomes *let it not happen*, but *I fear that it may*. The origin of the *ut*-clause is similar.

**565.** *Volō* and its compounds, the impersonals *licet* and *oportet*, and the imperatives *dic* and *fac* often take the Subjunctive without *ut*:—

*volō amēs* (Att. ii. 10), *I wish you to love*.

*quam vellem mē invitāssēs* (Fam. x. 28. 1), *how I wish you had invited me!*

*māllem Cerberum metuerēs* (Tusc. i. 12), *I had rather you feared Cerberus*.

*sint enim oportet* (id. i. 12), *for they must exist*.

*querāmur licet* (Caec. 41), *we are allowed to complain*.

*fac diligās* (Att. iii. 13. 2), *do love!* [A periphrasis for the imperative *dilige*, love (cf. § 449. c).]

*dic exeat*, *tell him to go out*.

NOTE 1. — In such cases there is no ellipsis of *ut*. The expressions are idiomatic remnants of an older construction in which the subjunctives were *hortatory* or *optative* and thus really independent of the verb of *wishing* etc. In the classical period, however, they were doubtless felt as subordinate. Compare the use of *cavē* and the subjunctive (without *nē*) in Prohibitions (§ 450), which appears to follow the analogy of *fac*.

NOTE 2. — *Licet* may take (1) the Subjunctive, usually without *ut*; (2) the simple Infinitive; (3) the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; (4) the Dative and the Infinitive (see § 455. 1). Thus, *I may go* is *licet eam*, *licet ire*, *licet mē ire*, or *licet mihi ire*.

For *licet* in concessive clauses, see § 527. *b*.

NOTE 3. — *Oportet* may take (1) the Subjunctive without *ut*; (2) the simple Infinitive; (3) the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. Thus *I must go* is *oportet eam*, *oportet ire*, or *oportet mē ire*.

*a*. Verbs of *commanding* and the like often take the subjunctive without *ut*: —

*huic mandat Rēmōs adeat* (B. G. iii. 11), *he orders him to visit the Remi*.

*rogat finem faciat* (id. i. 20), *he asks him to cease*.

*Mnēsthea vocat, classem aptent socii* (Aen. iv. 289), *he calls Mnēstheus [and orders that] his comrades shall make ready the fleet*.

NOTE. — The subjunctive in this construction is the hortatory subjunctive used to express a command in Indirect Discourse (§ 588).

### Substantive Clauses of Purpose with Passive Verbs

566. A Substantive Clause used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when the verb is put in the passive (*Impersonal Construction*): —

*Caesar ut cōgnōsceret postulātum est* (B. C. i. 87), *Cæsar was requested to make an investigation* (it was requested that Cæsar should make an investigation).

*sī erat Hēracliō ab senātū mandātum ut emeret* (Verr. iii. 88), *if Hēraclius had been instructed by the senate to buy*.

*sī persuāsum erat Cluviō ut mentirētur* (Rosc. Com. 51), *if Cluvius had been persuaded to lie*.

*putō concēdi nobis oportēre ut Graecō verbō ūtāmur* (Fin. iii. 15), *I think we must be allowed to use a Greek word*.

*nē quid eis noceātur ā Caesare cavētur* (B. C. i. 86), *Cæsar takes care that no harm shall be done them* (care is taken by Cæsar lest, etc.).

*a*. With verbs of *admonishing*, the personal object becomes the subject and the object clause is retained: —

*admoniti sumus ut cavēremus* (Att. viii. 11 D. 3), *we were warned to be careful*.  
*cum monērētur ut cautior esset* (Div. i. 51), *when he was advised to be more cautious*.

*monēri visus est nē id faceret* (id. 56), *he seemed to be warned not to do it*.

**b.** Some verbs that take an infinitive instead of a subjunctive are used impersonally in the passive, and the infinitive becomes the subject of the sentence:—

loqui nōn concēditur (B. G. vi. 20), *it is not allowed to speak.*

**c.** With iubeō, vetō, and cōgō, the *subject accusative* of the infinitive becomes the *subject nominative* of the main verb, and the infinitive is retained as complementary (*Personal Construction*):—

adesse iubentur postridiē (Verr. ii. 41), *they are ordered to be present on the following day.*

ire in exilium iussus est (Cat. ii. 12), *he was ordered to go into exile.*

Simōnidēs vetitus est nāvigāre (Div. ii. 134), *Simonides was forbidden to sail.*

Mandubii exire cōguntur (B. G. vii. 78), *the Mandubii are compelled to go out.*

### Substantive Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)

**567.** Clauses of Result may be used substantively, (1) as the object of faciō etc. (§ 568); (2) as the subject of these same verbs in the passive, as well as of other verbs and verbal phrases (§ 569); (3) in apposition with another substantive, or as predicate nominative etc. (see §§ 570, 571).<sup>1</sup>

**568.** Substantive Clauses of Result with ut (negative ut nōn) are used as the object of verbs denoting the *accomplishment of an effort*.<sup>2</sup>

Such are especially faciō and its compounds (efficiō, cōficiō, etc.):—

efficiam ut intellegātis (Clu. 7), *I will make you understand* (lit. effect that you, etc.). [So, faciam ut intellegātis (id. 9).]

commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat (B. G. ii. 5), *made it possible that supplies could be brought.*

perfeci ut ē rēgnō ille discēderet (Fam. xv. 4. 6), *I brought about his departure from the kingdom.*

quae libertās ut laetior esset rēgis superbia fēcerat (Liv. ii. 1), *the arrogance of the king had made this liberty more welcome.*

ēvincunt instandō ut litterae darentur (id. ii. 4), *by insisting they gain their point, — that letters should be sent.* [Here ēvincunt = efficiunt.]

<sup>1</sup> In all these cases the clause is not strictly subject or object. The main verb originally conveyed a meaning sufficient in itself, and the result clause was merely complementary. This is seen by the frequent use of ita and the like with the main verb (ita accidit ut, etc.). In like manner purpose clauses are only apparently subject or object of the verb with which they are connected.

<sup>2</sup> Verbs and phrases taking an ut-clause of result as subject or object are accēdit, accidit, additur, altera est rēs, committō, cōsequor, contingit, efficiō, ēvenit, faciō, fit, fieri potest, fore, impetrō, integrum est, mōs est, mūnus est, necesse est, prope est, rēctum est, relinquitur, reliquum est, restat, tantū est, tantum abest, and a few others.

**NOTE 1.** — The expressions *facere ut*, *committere ut*, with the subjunctive, often form a periphrasis for the simple verb: as, — *invitus fēci ut Flāminium ē senātū ēicerem* (Cat. M. 42), *it was with reluctance that I expelled Flaminius from the senate.*

**569.** Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the subject of the following: —

1. Of passive verbs denoting the *accomplishment of an effort*: —  
*impetrātum est ut in senātū recitārentur* (litterae) (B. C. i. 1), *they succeeded in having the letter read in the senate* (it was brought about that, etc.).  
*ita efficitur ut omne corpus mortāle sit* (N. D. iii. 30), *it therefore is made out that every body is mortal.*

2. Of Impersonals meaning *it happens, it remains, it follows, it is necessary, it is added*, and the like (§ 568, footnote): —

*accidit ut esset lūna plēna* (B. G. iv. 29), *it happened to be full moon* (it happened that it was, etc.). [Here *ut esset* is subject of *accidit*.]  
*reliquum est ut officiis certāmus inter nōs* (Fam. vii. 31), *it remains for us to vie with each other in courtesies.*  
*restat ut hōc dubitēmus* (Rosc. Am. 88), *it is left for us to doubt this.*  
*sequitur ut doceam* (N. D. ii. 81), *the next thing is to show* (it follows, etc.).

**NOTE 1.** — The infinitive sometimes occurs: as, — *nec enim acciderat mihi opus esse* (Fam. vi. 11. 1), *for it had not happened to be necessary to me.*

**NOTE 2.** — *Necesse est* often takes the subjunctive without *ut*: as, — *conciliis necesse est* (Rosc. Am. 87), *you must grant.*

3. Of *est* in the sense of *it is the fact that*, etc. (mostly poetic): —  
*est ut virō vir lātius ōrdinet arbusta* (Hor. Od. iii. 1. 9), *it is the fact that one man plants his vineyards in wider rows than another.*

**α.** Fore (or futūrum esse) *ut* with a clause of result as subject is often used instead of the Future Infinitive active or passive; so necessarily in verbs which have no supine stem: —

*spērō fore ut contingat id nōbīs* (Tusc. i. 82), *I hope that will be our happy lot.*  
*cūm vidērem fore ut nōn possem* (Cat. ii. 4), *when I saw that I should not be able.*

**570.** A substantive clause of result may be in apposition with another substantive (especially a neuter pronoun): —

*illud etiam restiterat, ut tē in iūs ēdicerent* (Quinct. 33), *this too remained — for them to drag you into court.*

**571.** A substantive clause of result may serve as predicate nominative after *mōs est* and similar expressions: —

*est mōs hominum, ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere* (Brut. 84), *it is the way of men to be unwilling for one man to excel in several things.*

**a.** A result clause, with or without *ut*, frequently follows *quam* after a comparative (but see § 583. c):—

Canachi signa rigidiōra sunt quam ut imitentur vērītātem (Brut. 70), *the statues of Canachus are too stiff to represent nature* (stiffer than that they should).

peressus est omnia potius quam indicāret (Tusc. ii. 52), *he endured all rather than betray*, etc. [Regularly without *ut* except in Livy.]

**b.** The phrase *tantum abest*, *it is so far* [from being the case], regularly takes two clauses of result with *ut*: one is *substantive*, the subject of *abest*; the other is *adverbial*, correlative with *tantum*:—

tantum abest ut nostra mirēmur, ut ūsque eō difficilēs ac mōrōsi simus, ut nōbis nōn satia faciat ipse Dēmōsthēnēs (Or. 104), *so far from admiring my own works, I am difficult and captious to that degree that not Demosthenes himself satisfies me*. [Here the first *ut*-clause is the subject of *abest* (§ 569. 2); the second, a result clause after *tantum* (§ 537); and the third, after *ūsque eō*.]

**c.** Rarely, a *thought* or an *idea* is considered as a result, and is expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* instead of the accusative and infinitive (§ 580). In this case a demonstrative usually precedes:

praeclārum illud est, ut eōs . . . amēmus (Tusc. iii. 73), *this is a noble thing, that we should love*, etc.

vērī simile nōn est ut ille antepōneret (Verr. iv. 11), *it is not likely that he preferred*.

For Relative Clauses with *quā* after verbs of *hindering* etc., see § 558.

### Indicative with *Quod*

**572.** A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consists of *quod* (in the sense of *that*, *the fact that*) with the Indicative.

The clause in the Indicative with *quod* is used when the statement is regarded as a fact:—

alterum est vitium, quod quidam nimis māgnū studium cōferunt (Off. i. 19), *it is another fault that some bestow too much zeal*, etc. [Here *ut cōferant* could be used, meaning *that some should bestow*; or the accusative and infinitive, meaning *to bestow* (abstractly); *quod* makes it a fact that men do bestow, etc.]

inter inanimū et animal hōc maximē interest, quod animal agit aliquid (Acad. ii. 37), *this is the chief difference between an inanimate object and an animal, that an animal aims at something*.

quod rediit nōbis mirābile vidētur (Off. iii. 111), *that he (Regulus) returned seems wonderful to us*.

accidit perincommodē quod eum nusquam vidisti (Att. i. 17. 2), *it happened very unluckily that you nowhere saw him*.

opportūnissima rēs accidit quod Germāni vēnērunt (B. G. iv. 13), *a very fortunate thing happened, (namely) that the Germans came.*

praetereō quod eam sibi domum sēdemque dēlēgit (Clu. 188), *I pass over the fact that she chose that house and home for herself.*

mittō quod possessa per vim (Flacc. 79), *I disregard the fact that they were seized by violence.*

NOTE. — Like other substantive clauses, the clause with *quod* may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject.

*a.* A substantive clause with *quod* sometimes appears as an *accusative of specification*, corresponding to the English *whereas* or *as to the fact that*: —

quod mihi dē nostrō statū grātulāris, minimē mirāmur tē tuis praeclāris operibus laetārī (Fam. i. 7. 7), *as to your congratulating me on our condition, we are not at all surprised that you are pleased with your own noble works.*

quod dē domō scribis, ego, etc. (Fam. xiv. 2. 3), *as to what you write of the house, I, etc.*

*b.* Verbs of *feeling* and the *expression of feeling* take either *quod* (*quia*) or the accusative and infinitive (Indirect Discourse): —

quod scribis . . . gaudeō (Q. Fr. iii. 1. 9), *I am glad that you write.*

faciō libenter quod eam nōn possum praeterire (Legg. i. 63), *I am glad that I cannot pass it by.*

quae perfecta esse vehementer laetor (Rosc. Am. 136), *I greatly rejoice that this is finished.*

quī quia nōn habuit ā mē turmās equitum fortasse suscēnset (Att. vi. 3. 5), *who perhaps feels angry that he did not receive squadrons of cavalry from me.*

molestū tuli tē senātū grātiās nōn ēgisse (Fam. x. 27. 1), *I was displeased that you did not return thanks to the senate.*

NOTE. — *Miror* and similar expressions are sometimes followed by a clause with *si*.<sup>1</sup> This is apparently substantive, but really protasis (cf. § 563. e. n.<sup>1</sup>). Thus, — *miror si quemquam amicum habere potuit* (Lael. 54), *I wonder if he could ever have a friend.* [Originally, *If this is so, I wonder at it.*]

### Indirect Questions

**573.** An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt.

In grammatical form, *exclamatory* sentences are not distinguished from *interrogative* (see the third example below).

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the Greek *θαυμάζω* etc.

**574. An Indirect Question takes its verb in the Subjunctive :**

quid ipse sentiam expōnam (Div. i. 10), *I will explain what I think.* [Direct: quid sentiō ?]

id possetne fieri cōsultuit (id. i. 82), *he consulted whether it could be done.* [Direct: potestne ?]

quam sis audāx omnēs intellegere potuerunt (Rosc. Am. 87), *all could understand how bold you are.* [Direct: quam es audāx ?]

doleam necne doleam nihil interest (Tusc. ii. 29), *it is of no account whether I suffer or not.* [Double question.]

quaesivi ā Catilinā in conventū apud M. Laecam fuisset necne (Cat. ii. 13), *I asked Catiline whether he had been at the meeting at Marcus Læca's or not.* [Double question.]

rogat mē quid sentiam, *he asks me what I think.* [Cf. rogat mē sententiam, *he asks me my opinion.*]

hōc dubium est, uter nostrum sit inverēcundior (Acad. ii. 126), *this is doubtful, which of us two is the less modest.*

incertū quātenus Volerō exercēret victōriam (Liv. ii. 55), *uncertain how far Voloero would push victory.* [As if dubitantes quātenus, etc.]

NOTE. — An Indirect Question may be the subject of a verb (as in the fourth example), the direct object (as in the first), the secondary object (as in the sixth), an appositive (as in the seventh).

**575. The Sequence of Tenses in Indirect Question is illustrated by the following examples : —**

dīcō quid faciam, *I tell you what I am doing.*

dīcō quid factūrus sim, *I tell you what I will (shall) do.*

dīcō quid fēcerim, *I tell you what I did (have done, was doing).*

dīxi quid facerem, *I told you what I was doing.*

dīxi quid fēcissem, *I told you what I had done (had been doing).*

dīxi quid factūrus essem, *I told you what I would (should) do (was going to do).*

dīxi quid factūrus fuisset, *I told you what I would (should) have done.*

**a. Indirect Questions referring to future time take the subjunctive of the First Periphrastic Conjugation : —**

prōspiciō quī concursūs futūri sint (Caecil. 42), *I foresee what throngs there will be.* [Direct: quī erunt ?]

quid sit futūrum crās, fuge quaerere (Hor. Od. i. 9. 13), *forbear to ask what will be on the morrow.* [Direct: quid erit or futūrum est ?]

posthāc nōn scribam ad tē quid factūrus sim, sed quid fēcerim (Att. x. 18), *hereafter I shall not write to you what I am going to do, but what I have done.* [Direct: quid faciēs (or factūrus eris) ? quid fēcisti ?]

NOTE. — This Periphrastic Future avoids the ambiguity which would be caused by using the Present Subjunctive to refer to future time in such clauses.

**b. The Deliberative Subjunctive (§ 444) remains unchanged in an Indirect Question, except sometimes in tense : —**



quō mē vertam nesciō (Clu. 4), *I do not know which way to turn.* [Direct: quō mē vertam?]

neque satis cōstābat quid agerent (B. G. iii. 14), *and it was not very clear what they were to do.* [Direct: quid agāmus?]

nec quisquam satis certum habet, quid aut spēret aut timeat (Liv. xxii. 7. 10), *nor is any one well assured what he shall hope or fear.* [Here the future participle with *sit* could not be used.]

incertō quid peterent aut vitārent (id. xxviii. 36. 12), *since it was doubtful (ablative absolute) what they should seek or shun.*

**c.** Indirect Questions often take the Indicative in early Latin and in poetry: —

vineam quō in agrō cōnseri oportet sic observātō (Cato R. R. 6. 4), *in what soil a vineyard should be set you must observe thus.*

**d.** Nesciō quis, when used in an indefinite sense (*somebody or other*), is not followed by the Subjunctive.

So also nesciō quō (*unde*, etc.), and the following idiomatic phrases which are practically adverbs: —

mirum (nimium) quam, *marvellously* (marvellous how).

mirum quantum, *tremendously* (marvellous how much).

immāne quantum, *monstrously* (monstrous how much).

sānē quam, *immensely*.

valdē quam, *enormously*.

Examples are: —

qui istam nesciō quam indolentiam māgnopere laudant (Tusc. iii. 12), *who greatly extol that freedom from pain, whatever it is.*

mirum quantum prōfuit (Liv. ii. 1), *it helped prodigiously.*

ita fātō nesciō quō contigisse arbitror (Fam. xv. 13), *I think it happened so by some fatality or other.*

nam suōs valdē quam paucōs habet (id. xi. 13 A. 3), *for he has uncommonly few of his own.*

sānē quam sum gāvīsus (id. xi. 13 A. 4), *I was immensely glad.*

immāne quantum discrepat (Hor. Od. i. 27. 5), *is monstrously at variance.*

**576.** In colloquial usage and in poetry the subject of an Indirect Question is often attracted into the main clause as object (*Accusative of Anticipation*): —

nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit (Fam. viii. 10. 3), *you know how slow Mārcellus is.* [For nōstī quam tardus sit Mārcellus. Cf. "I know thee who thou art."]

Cf. potestne igitur eārum rērum, quā rē futūrae sint, ūlla esse praesēnsiō (Div. ii. 15), *can there be, then, any foreknowledge as to those things, why they will occur?* [A similar use of the Objective Genitive.]

NOTE. — In some cases the Object of Anticipation becomes the Subject by a change of voice, and an apparent mixture of relative and interrogative constructions is the result: —

quidam saepe in parvā pecūniā perspiciuntur quam sint levēs (Lael. 63), *it is often seen, in a trifling matter of money, how unprincipled some people are* (some people are often seen through, how unprincipled they are).

quem ad modum Pompēium oppugnārent ā mē indicātī sunt (Leg. Agr. i. 5), *it has been shown by me in what way they attacked Pompey* (they have been shown by me, how they attacked).

a. An indirect question is occasionally introduced by *sī* in the sense of *whether* (like *if* in English, cf. § 572. b. N.): —

circumfunduntur hostēs sī quem aditum reperire possent (B. G. vi. 37), *the enemy pour round [to see] if they can find entrance.*

visam sī domi est (Ter. Haut. 170), *I will go see if he is at home.*

NOTE. — This is strictly a Protasis, but usually no Apodosis is thought of, and the clause is virtually an Indirect Question.

For the Potential Subjunctive with *forsitan* (originally an Indirect Question), see § 447. a.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

577. The use of the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (*ōrātiō obliqua*) is a comparatively late form of speech, developed in the Latin and Greek only, and perhaps separately in each of them. It is wholly wanting in Sanskrit, but some forms like it have grown up in English and German.

The essential character of Indirect Discourse is, that the language of some other person than the writer or speaker is compressed into a kind of Substantive Clause, the verb of the main clause becoming Infinitive, while modifying clauses, as well as all hortatory forms of speech, take the Subjunctive. The *person* of the verb necessarily conforms to the new relation of persons.

The construction of Indirect Discourse, however, is not limited to reports of the language of some person other than the speaker; it may be used to express what any one — whether the speaker or some one else — *says, thinks, or perceives*, whenever that which is *said, thought, or perceived* is capable of being expressed in the form of a complete sentence. For anything that can be *said* etc. can also be *reported* indirectly as well as directly.

The use of the Infinitive in the main clause undoubtedly comes from its use as a *case-form* to complete or modify the action expressed by the verb of *saying* and its object together. This object in time came to be regarded as, and in fact to all intents became, the subject of the infinitive. A transition state is found in Sanskrit, which, though it has no indirect discourse proper, yet allows an indirect predication after verbs of saying and the like by means of a predicative apposition, in such expressions as "The maids told the king [that] his daughter [was] bereft of her senses."

The simple form of indirect statement with the accusative and infinitive was afterwards amplified by introducing dependent or modifying clauses; and in Latin it became a common construction, and could be used to report whole speeches etc., which in other languages would have the direct form. (Compare the style of reporting speeches in English, where only the person and tense are changed.)

The Subjunctive in the subordinate clauses of Indirect Discourse has no significance except to make more distinct the fact that these clauses are subordinate; consequently no direct connection has been traced between them and the uses of the mood in simple

sentences. It is probable that the subjunctive in indirect questions (§ 574), in informal indirect discourse (§ 592), and in clauses of the integral part (§ 593) represents the earliest steps of a movement by which the subjunctive became in some degree a mood of subordination.

The Subjunctive standing for hortatory forms of speech in Indirect Discourse is simply the usual hortatory subjunctive, with only a change of person and tense (if necessary), as in the reporter's style.

**578.** A Direct Quotation gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*).

An Indirect Quotation adapts the words of the speaker or writer to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*).

NOTE.—The term Indirect Discourse (*ōrātiō oblīqua*) is used in two senses. In the wider sense it includes all clauses—of whatever kind—which express the words or thought of any person *indirectly*, that is, in a form different from that in which the person said the words or conceived the thought. In the narrower sense the term Indirect Discourse is restricted to those cases in which some *complete proposition* is cited in the form of an Indirect Quotation, which may be extended to a narrative or an address of any length, as in the speeches reported by Cæsar and Livy. In this book the term is used in the restricted sense.

## FORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**579.** Verbs and other expressions of *knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving*,<sup>1</sup> govern the Indirect Discourse.

NOTE.—*Inquam, said I* (etc.) takes the Direct Discourse except in poetry.

### Declaratory Sentences in Indirect Discourse

**580.** In Indirect Discourse the *main clause* of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All *subordinate clauses* take the Subjunctive:—

*sciō mē paene incredibilem rem pollicērī* (B. C. iii. 86), *I know that I am promising an almost incredible thing.* [Direct: *polliceor*.]

*nōn arbitror tē ita sentire* (Fam. x. 26. 2), *I do not suppose that you feel thus.* [Direct: *sentis*.]

*spērō mē liberātum [esse] dē metū* (Tusc. ii. 67), *I trust I have been freed from fear.* [Direct: *liberātus sum*.]

<sup>1</sup> Such are: (1) *knowing*, *sciō*, *cōgnoscō*, *comperitūm habeo*, etc.; (2) *thinking*, *putō*, *existimō*, *arbitror*, etc.; (3) *telling*, *dicō*, *nūntiō*, *referō*, *polliceor*, *prōmittō*, *certiōrem faciō*, etc.; (4) *perceiving*, *sentio*, *comperiō*, *videō*, *audiō*, etc. So in general any word that denotes thought or mental and visual perception or their expression may govern the Indirect Discourse.

[dicit] esse nōn nullōs quōrum auctōritās plūrimū valeat (B. G. i. 17), *he says there are some, whose influence most prevails.* [Direct: sunt nōn nulli . . . valet.]

nisi iūrāset, scelus sē factūrum [esse] arbitrābātur (Verr. ii. 1. 123), *he thought he should incur guilt, unless he should take the oath.* [Direct: nisi iūrāverō, faciam.]

**a.** The verb of *saying* etc. is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in the general drift of the sentence:—

cōsulis alterius nōmen invisum civitāti fuit: nimium Tarquiniōs rēgnō aduēsse; initium ā Priscō factum; rēgnasse dein Ser. Tullium, etc. (Liv. ii. 2), *the name of the other consul was hateful to the state; the Tarquins (they thought) had become too much accustomed to royal power, etc.* [Here invisum implies a thought, and this thought is added in the form of Indirect Discourse.]

ōrantēs ut urbibus saltem — iam enim agrōs dēplōrātōs esse — opem senātus ferret (id. xli. 6), *praying that the senate would at least bring aid to the cities—for the fields [they said] were already given up as lost.*

**b.** The verb *negō*, *deny*, is commonly used in preference to *dīcō* with a negative:—

[Stōicī] negant quidquam [esse] bonum nisi quod honestum sit (Fin. ii. 68), *the Stoics assert that nothing is good but what is right.*

**c.** Verbs of *promising*, *hoping*, *expecting*, *threatening*, *swearing*, and the like, regularly take the construction of Indirect Discourse, contrary to the English idiom:—

minātur sēs abire (Pl. Asin. 604), *he threatens to go away.* [Direct: abeō, *I am going away.*]

spērant sē maximum fructum esse captūrōs (Lael. 79), *they hope to gain the utmost advantage.* [Direct: capiēmus.]

spērat sē absolūtum iri (Sull. 21), *he hopes that he shall be acquitted.* [Direct: absolvar.]

quem inimicissimum futūrum esse prōmittō ac spondeō (Mur. 90), *who I promise and warrant will be the bitterest of enemies.* [Direct: erit.]

dolor fortitudinem sē dēbilitātūrum minātur (Tusc. v. 76), *pain threatens to wear down fortitude.* [Direct: dēbilitābō.]

cōfidō mē quod velim facile ā tē impetrātūrum (Fam. xi. 16. 1), *I trust I shall easily obtain from you what I wish.* [Direct: quod volō, impetrābō.]

NOTE.—These verbs, however, often take a simple Complementary Infinitive (§ 456) So regularly in early Latin (except spērō):—<sup>1</sup>

pollicentur obsidēs dare (B. G. iv. 21), *they promise to give hostages.*

prōmisi dōlium vinī dare (Pl. Cist. 542), *I promised to give a jar of wine.*

<sup>1</sup> Compare the Greek aorist infinitive after similar verbs.

*d.* Some verbs and expressions may be used either as verbs of *saying*, or as verbs of *commanding*, *effecting*, and the like. These take as their object either an Infinitive with subject accusative or a Substantive clause of Purpose or Result, according to the sense.

1. Infinitive with Subject Accusative (Indirect Discourse):—

laudem sapientiae statuō esse maximam (Fam. v. 18), *I hold that the glory of wisdom is the greatest.* [Indirect Discourse.]

rēs ipsa monēbat tempus esse (Att. x. 8. 1), *the thing itself warned that it was time.* [Cf. monēre ut, *warn to do something.*]

fac mihi esse persuāsum (N. D. i. 75), *suppose that I am persuaded of that.* [Cf. facere ut, *bring it about that.*]

hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interire animās (B. G. vi. 14), *they wish to convince that souls do not perish.*

2. Subjunctive (Substantive Clause of Purpose or Result):—

statuunt ut decem milia hominum mittantur (B. G. vii. 21), *they resolve that 10,000 men shall be sent.* [Purpose clause (cf. § 563).]

huic persuādet uti ad hostis trāseat (id. iii. 18), *he persuades him to pass over to the enemy.*

Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent (B. C. iii. 92), *Pompey had instructed his men beforehand to await Caesar's attack.*

dēnūtiāvit ut essent animō parātī (id. iii. 86), *he bade them be alert and steadfast (ready in spirit).*

NOTE. — The infinitive with subject accusative in this construction is Indirect Discourse, and is to be distinguished from the simple infinitive sometimes found with these verbs instead of a subjunctive clause (§ 563. *d*).

**581.** The Subject Accusative of the Infinitive is regularly expressed in Indirect Discourse, even if it is wanting in the direct:

ōrātor sum, *I am an orator*; dicit sē esse ōrātōrem, *he says he is an orator.*

NOTE 1. — But the subject is often omitted if easily understood:—

ignoscere imprudentiae dixit (B. G. iv. 27), *he said he pardoned their rashness.*

eadem ab aliis quaerit: reperit esse vērā (id. i. 18), *he inquires about these same things from others; he finds that they are true.*

NOTE 2. — After a relative, or quam (*than*), if the verb would be the same as that of the main clause, it is usually omitted, and its subject is attracted into the accusative:—

tē suspicor eisdem rēbus quibus mē ipsum commovērī (Cat. M. 1), *I suspect that you are disturbed by the same things as I.*

cōfido tamen haec quoque tibi nōn minus grāta quam ipsōs librōs futūra (Plin. Ep. iii. 5. 20), *I trust that these facts too will be no less pleasing to you than the books themselves.*

NOTE 3. — In poetry, by a Greek idiom, a Predicate Noun or Adjective in the indirect discourse sometimes agrees with the subject of the main verb:—

vir bonus et sapiēns ait esse parātus (Hor. Ep. i. 7. 22), *a good and wise man says he is prepared, etc.* [In prose: ait sē esse parātum.]

sēnsit mediōs dēlāpsus in hostis (Aen. ii. 377), *he found himself fallen among the foe.* [In prose: sē esse dēlāpsum.]

**582.** When the verb of *saying* etc. is *passive*, the construction may be either Personal or Impersonal. But the Personal construction is more common and is regularly used in the tenses of incomplete action: —

*beātō vixisse videor* (Lael. 15), *I seem to have lived happily.*

*Epaminōndās fidibus praeclārē cecinisse dicitur* (Tusc. i. 4), *Epaminondas is said to have played excellently on the lyre.*

*multī idem factūrī esse dicuntur* (Fam. xvi. 12. 4), *many are said to be about to do the same thing.* [Active: *dicunt multōs factūrōs (esse).*]

*primī trāduntur arte quādam verba vīxisse* (Or. 40), *they first are related to have joined words with a certain skill.*

*Bibulus audiēbatur esse in Syriā* (Att. v. 18), *it was heard that Bibulus was in Syria* (Bibulus was heard, etc.). [Direct: *Bibulus est.*]

*cēterae Illyrici legiōēs secūtūrae spērābantur* (Tac. H. ii. 74), *the rest of the legions of Illyricum were expected to follow.*

*vidēmur enim quiētūri fuisse, nisi essēmus lacessiti* (De Or. ii. 280), *it seems that we should have kept quiet, if we had not been molested* (we seem, etc.).

[Direct: *quiēssēmus . . . nisi essēmus lacessiti.*]

NOTE. — The poets and later writers extend the personal use of the passive to verbs which are not properly *verba sentiendi* etc.: as, — *colligor dominae placuisse* (Ov. Am. ii. 6. 61), *it is gathered [from this memorial] that I pleased my mistress.*

**a.** In the compound tenses of verbs of *saying* etc., the impersonal construction is more common, and with the gerundive is regular: —

*trādītum est etiam Homērum caecum fuisse* (Tusc. v. 114), *it is a tradition, too, that Homer was blind.*

*ubi tyrannus est, ibi nōn vitiosam, sed dicendum est plānē nullam esse rem publicam* (Rep. iii. 43), *where there is a tyrant, it must be said, not that the commonwealth is evil, but that it does not exist at all.*

NOTE. — An indirect narrative begun in the personal construction may be continued with the Infinitive and Accusative (as De Or. ii. 299; Liv. v. 41. 9).

### Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

**583.** A Subordinate Clause *merely explanatory*, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative: —

*quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrārī* (Cat. iii. 21), *who can deny that all these things we see are ruled by the power of the gods?*

*cōlius ingenio putābat ea quae gesserat posse celebrārī* (Arch. 20), *by whose genius he thought that those deeds which he had done could be celebrated.* [Here the fact expressed by *quae gesserat*, though not explanatory, is felt to be true without regard to the quotation: *quae gessisset* would mean, *what Marius claimed to have done.*]

NOTE.—Such a clause in the indicative is not regarded as a part of the Indirect Discourse; but it often depends merely upon the feeling of the writer whether he shall use the Indicative or the Subjunctive (cf. §§ 591–593).

*a.* A subordinate clause in Indirect Discourse occasionally takes the Indicative when the *fact* is emphasized:—

factum eius hostis periculum . . . cum, Cimbris et Teutonibus . . . pulsus, non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur (B. G. i. 40), *that a trial of this enemy had been made when, on the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the army seemed to have deserved no less credit than the commander himself.*

*b.* Clauses introduced by a relative which is equivalent to a demonstrative with a conjunction are not properly subordinate, and hence take the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (see § 308. *f*):—

Marcellus requisitasse dicitur Archimēdem illum, quem cum audisset interfectum permolestē tulisse (Verr. iv. 131), *Marcellus is said to have sought for Archimedes, and when he heard that he was slain, to have been greatly distressed.* [quem = et eum.]

censent finem quemque nostrum mundi esse partem, ex quō [= et ex eō] illud naturā consequi (Fin. iii. 64), *they say that each one of us is a part of the universe, from which this naturally follows.*

NOTE.—Really subordinate clauses occasionally take the accusative and infinitive: as,—quem ad modum si non dēdatur obres pro rupto foedus se habiturum, sic deditam inviolatam ad suos remissurum (Liv. ii. 13), [he says] *as in case the hostage is not given up he shall consider the treaty as broken, so if given up he will return her unharmed to her friends.*

*c.* The infinitive construction is regularly continued after a comparative with *quam*:—

addit se prius occisum iri ab eō quam me violatum iri (Att. ii. 20. 2), *he adds that he himself will be killed by him, before I shall be injured.*

nonne affirmavi quidvis me potius peressurum quam ex Italiā exiturum (Fam. ii. 16. 3), *did I not assert that I would endure anything rather than leave Italy?*

NOTE.—The subjunctive with or without *ut* also occurs with *quam* (see § 535. *c*).

### Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse

584. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive<sup>1</sup> is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is *present*, *past*, or *future* with reference to the verb of *saying* etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced:—

<sup>1</sup> For various ways of expressing the Future Infinitive, see § 164. 3. *c*.

*cadō, I am falling.*

*dicit sē cadere, he says he is falling.*

*dixit sē cadere, he said he was falling.*

*cadēbam, I was falling; cecidī, I fell, have fallen;*

*cecidēram, I had fallen.*

*dicit sē cecidisse, he says he was falling, fell, has fallen, had fallen.*

*dixit sē cecidisse, he said he fell, had fallen.*

*cadam, I shall fall.*

*dicit sē cāsūrum [esse], he says he shall fall.*

*dixit sē cāsūrum [esse], he said he should fall.*

*cecidērō, I shall have fallen.*

*dicit fore ut ceciderit [rare], he says he shall have fallen.*

*dixit fore ut cecidisset [rare], he said he should have fallen.*

**a.** All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct.

NOTE. — Continued or repeated action in past time is sometimes expressed by the Present Infinitive, which in such cases stands for the Imperfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse and is often called the *Imperfect Infinitive*.

This is the regular construction after *memini* when referring to a matter of actual experience or observation: as, — *tē memini haec dicere, I remember your saying this* (that you said this). [Direct: *dixisti* or *dicēbas*.]

**b.** The present infinitive *posse* often has a future sense: —

*totius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant* (B. G. i. 3), *they hope that they shall be able to get possession of all Gaul.*

### Tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse

**585.** The tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse follow the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 482). They depend for their sequence on the verb of *saying* etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced.

Thus in the sentence, *dixit sē Rōmam itūrum ut cōsulem vidēret, he said he should go to Rome in order that he might see the consul*, *vidēret* follows the sequence of *dixit* without regard to the Future Infinitive, *itūrum [esse]*, on which it directly depends.

NOTE. — This rule applies to the subjunctive in subordinate clauses, to that which stands for the imperative etc. (see examples, § 588), and to that in questions (§ 586).

**a.** A subjunctive depending on a Perfect Infinitive is often in the Imperfect or Pluperfect, even if the verb of *saying* etc. is in a primary tense (cf. § 485. *j*); so regularly when these tenses would have been used in Direct Discourse: —



*Tarquinius dixisse ferunt tum exulantem sē intellēxisse quōs fidēs amīcōs habuisset* (Lael. 53), *they tell us that Tarquin said that then in his exile he had found out what faithful friends he had had.* [Here the main verb of saying, *ferunt*, is *primary*, but the time is carried back by *dixisse* and *intellēxisse*, and the sequence then becomes secondary.]

*tantum prōfēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecis nē verbōrum quidem cōpiā vincerēmur* (N. D. i. 8), *we seem to have advanced so far that even in abundance of words we are not surpassed by the Greeks.*

NOTE 1. — The proper sequence may be seen, in each case, by turning the Perfect Infinitive into that tense of the Indicative which it represents. Thus, if it stands for an *imperfect* or an *historical perfect*, the sequence will be secondary; if it stands for a *perfect definite*, the sequence may be either primary or secondary (§ 485. a).

NOTE 2. — The so-called imperfect infinitive after *meminī* (§ 584. a. n.) takes the secondary sequence: as, — *ad mē adīre quōsdam meminī, quī dicerent* (Fam. iii. 10. 6), *I remember that some persons visited me, to tell me, etc.*

**b.** The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are often used in dependent clauses of the Indirect Discourse even when the verb of *saying* etc. is in a secondary tense: —

*dicēbant . . . totidem Nervīōs (pollicēri) qui longissimē absint* (B. G. ii. 4), *they said that the Nervii, who live farthest off, promised as many.*

NOTE. — This construction comes from the tendency of language to refer all time in narration to the time of the speaker (*repraesentātiō*). In the course of a long passage in the Indirect Discourse the tenses of the subjunctive often vary, sometimes following the sequence, and sometimes affected by *repraesentātiō*. Examples may be seen in B. G. i. 13, vii. 20, etc.

Certain constructions are never affected by *repraesentātiō*. Such are the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive with *cum* temporal, *antequam*, and *priusquam*.

### Questions in Indirect Discourse

**586.** A Question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

A *real question*, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive; a *rhetorical question*, asked for effect and implying its own answer, is put in the Infinitive: —

*quid sibi vellet? cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniret* (B. G. i. 44), *what did he want? why did he come into his territories?* [Real question. Direct: *quid vis? cūr venis?*]

*num recentium iniūriarum memoriam [sē] dēponere posse* (id. i. 14), *could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?* [Rhetorical Question. Direct: *num possum?*]

*quem signum datūrum fugientibus? quem ausūrum Alexandrō succedere* (Q. C. iii. 5. 7), *who will give the signal on the retreat? who will dare succeed Alexander?* [Rhetorical. Direct: *quis dabit . . . audēbit.*]

NOTE 1. — No sharp line can be drawn between the Subjunctive and the Infinitive in questions in the Indirect Discourse. Whether the question is to be regarded as rhetorical or real often depends merely on the writer's point of view: —

*utrum partem regni petiturum esse, an totum erepturum* (Liv. xlv. 19. 15), *will you ask part of the regal power* (he said), *or seize the whole?*

*quid tandem praetori faciendum fuisse* (id. xxxi. 48), *what, pray, ought a praetor to have done?*

*quid repente factum [esse] cur, etc.* (id. xxxiv. 54), *what had suddenly happened, that, etc.?*

NOTE 2. — Questions coming immediately after a verb of asking are treated as Indirect Questions and take the Subjunctive (see § 574). This is true even when the verb of asking serves also to introduce a passage in the Indirect Discourse. The question may be either real or rhetorical. See *quaesivit*, etc. (Liv. xxxvii. 15).

For the use of tenses, see § 585.

587. A Deliberative Subjunctive (§ 444) in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect: —

*cur aliquos ex suis amitteret* (B. C. i. 72), *why* (thought he) *should he lose some of his men?* [Direct: *cur amittam?*]

### Commands in Indirect Discourse

588. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse: —

*reminisceretur veteris incommodi* (B. G. i. 13), *remember* (said he) *the ancient disaster.* [Direct: *reminiscere.*]

*finem faciat* (id. i. 20), *let him make an end.* [Direct: *fac.*]

*ferrent opem, adjuvarent* (Liv. ii. 6), *let them bring aid, let them help.*

a. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well.

NOTE 1. — Though these subjunctives stand for independent clauses of the direct discourse, they follow the rule for the sequence of tenses, being in fact dependent on the verb of saying etc. (cf. §§ 483, 535).

NOTE 2. — A Prohibition in the Indirect Discourse is regularly expressed by *nē* with the present or imperfect subjunctive, even when *nōli* with the infinitive would be used in the Direct: as, — *nē perturbarentur* (B. G. vii. 29), *do not* (he said) *be troubled.* [Direct: *nōlite perturbārī.* But sometimes *nōllet* is found in Indirect Discourse.]

### Conditions in Indirect Discourse

589. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: —

1. The Protasis, being a *subordinate clause*, is always in the Subjunctive.

2. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive.

*a.* The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of *less vivid* future conditions (§ 516. *b*) becomes the Future Infinitive like the Future Indicative in the apodosis of *more vivid* future conditions.

Thus there is no distinction between more and less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse.

Examples of Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse are —

1. Simple Present Condition (§ 515): —

(dixit) si ipse populū Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri (B. G. i. 36), *he said that if he did not dictate to the Roman people how they should use their rights, he ought not to be interfered with by the Roman people in the exercise of his rights.* [Direct: si nōn praescribō . . . nōn oportet.]

praedicāvit . . . si pāce ūti velint, iniquum esse, etc. (id. i. 44), *he asserted that if they wished to enjoy peace, it was unfair, etc.* [Direct: si volunt . . . est. Present tense kept by *repraesentātiō* (§ 585. *b. n.*).]

2. Simple Past Condition (§ 515): —

nōn dicam nē illud quidem, si maximē in culpā fuerit Apollōnius, tamen in hominem honestissimae civitātis honestissimum tam graviter animadverti, causā indictā, nōn oportuisse (Verr. v. 20), *I will not say this either, that, even if Apollonius was very greatly in fault, still an honorable man from an honorable state ought not to have been punished so severely without having his case heard.* [Direct: si fuit . . . nōn oportuit.]

3. Future Conditions (§ 516): —

(dixit) quod si praeterea nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum (B. G. i. 40), *but if nobody else should follow, still he would go with the tenth legion alone.* [Direct: si sequitur . . . ibō. Present tense by *repraesentātiō* (§ 585. *b. n.*).]

Haeduls sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque eis . . . bellum illātūrum, si in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent: si id nōn fēcissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī afutūrum (id. i. 36), *he said that he would not give up the hostages to the Haedui, but would not make war upon them if they observed the agreement which had been made, and paid tribute yearly; but that, if they should not do this, the name of brothers to the Roman people would be far from aiding them.* [Direct: reddam . . . inferam . . . si manēbunt . . . pendent: si nōn fēcērint . . . aberit.]

id Datamēs ut audivit, sēnsit, si in turbam exisset ab homine tam necessariō sē relictum, futūrum [esse] ut cēteri cōnsilium sequantur (Nep. Dat. 6), *when Datames heard this, he saw that, if it should get abroad that he had been abandoned by a man so closely connected with him, everybody else would follow his example.* [Direct: si exierit . . . sequentur.]

(putāvērunt) nisi mē civitate expulissent, obtinēre sē nōn posse licentiam cupiditātum suarum (Att. x. 4), *they thought that unless they drove me out of the state, they could not have free play for their desires.* [Direct: nisi (Cicerōnem) expulerimus, obtinēre nōn poterimus.]

b. In changing a Condition *contrary to fact* (§ 517) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice:—

1. The Protasis always remains *unchanged in tense*.
2. The Apodosis, if *active*, takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in -ūrus with *fuisse*.
3. If the verb of the Apodosis is *passive* or has no supine stem, the periphrasis *futūrum fuisse ut* (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used.
4. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes a Perfect Infinitive.

Examples are:—

nec sē superstitem filiae futūrum fuisse, nisi spem ulciscendae mortis eius in auxiliō commilitōnum habuisset (Liv. iii. 50. 7), *and that he should not now be a survivor, etc., unless he had had hope, etc.* [Direct: nōn superstes essem, nisi habuissem.]

illud Asia cōgitet, nullam ā sē neque bellī externī neque discordiārum domesticarum calamitatem āfuturam fuisse, si hōc imperiō nōn tenērētur (Q. Fr. i. 1. 34), *let Asia (personified) think of this, that no disaster, etc., would not be hers, if she were not held by this government.* [Direct: abesset, si nōn tenērer.]

quid inimicitiarum creditis [mē] exceptūrum fuisse, si Insontis lacessissem (Q. C. vi. 10. 18), *what enmities do you think I should have incurred, if I had wantonly assailed the innocent?* [excēpissēm . . . si lacessissem.]

invitūm sē dicere, nec dictūrum fuisse, nī cāritās rei publicae vinceret (Liv. ii. 2), *that he spoke unwillingly and should not have spoken, did not love for the state prevail.* [Direct: nec dixissem . . . nī vinceret.]

nisi eō tempore quidam nūntiī dē Caesaris victoriā . . . essent allāti, existimābant plērique futūrum fuisse uti [oppidum] āmitterētur (B. C. iii. 101), *most people thought that unless at that time reports of Caesar's victory had been brought, the town would have been lost.* [Direct: nisi essent allāti . . . āmissum esset.]

quōrum si aetās potuisset esse longinquior, futūrum fuisse ut omnibus perfectis artibus hominum vita erudirētur (Tusc. iii. 69), *if life could have been longer, human existence would have been embellished by every art in its perfection.* [Direct: si potuisset . . . erudita esset.]

at plērique existimant, si ācrius insequi voluisset, bellum eō diē potuisse finire (B. C. iii. 51), *but most people think that, if he had chosen to follow up the pursuit more vigorously, he could have ended the war on that day.* [Direct: si voluisset . . . potuit.]

Caesar respondit . . . si alicūius iniūriae sibi cōsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre (B. G. i. 14), *Caesar replied that if [the Roman people] had been aware of any wrong act, it would not have been hard for them to take precautions.* [Direct: si fuisset, nōn difficile fuit (§ 517. c).]

NOTE 1. — In Indirect Discourse Present Conditions contrary to fact are not distinguished in the *apodosis* from Past Conditions contrary to fact, but the *protasis* may keep them distinct.

NOTE 2. — The periphrasis *futūrum fuisse* ut is sometimes used from choice when there is no necessity for resorting to it, but not in Cæsar or Cicero.

NOTE 3. — Very rarely the Future Infinitive is used in the Indirect Discourse to express the Apodosis of a Present Condition contrary to fact. Only four or five examples of this use occur in classic authors: as, — Titurius clamābat si Cæsar adesset neque Carnutēs, etc., neque Eburonēs tantā cum contemptiōne nostra ad castra ventūrōs esse (B. G. v. 29), *Titurius cried out that if Cæsar were present, neither would the Carnutes, etc., nor would the Eburones be coming to our camp with such contempt.* [Direct: si adesset . . . venirent.]

590. The following example illustrates some of the foregoing principles in a connected address: —

#### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Si pacem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Cæsar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bellō persequi perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni, et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei qui flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnō opere virtūti tribueret, aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur. Quā rē nē committeret, ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitatē populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet. — B. G. i. 13.

#### DIRECT DISCOURSE

Si pacem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū cōstitueris atque esse volueris: sin bellō persequi perseverābis, reminiscere [inquit] et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni, et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum ei qui flūmen trānsierant suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut tuae magnō opere virtūti tribueris, aut nōs dēspexeris: nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contendāmus, aut insidiis nitāmur. Quā rē nōli committere, ut hic locus ubi cōstitimus ex calamitatē populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat, aut memoriam prōdat.

### INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES

591. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive —

1. When it expresses the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer (*Informal Indirect Discourse*), or
2. When it is an integral part of a Subjunctive clause or equivalent Infinitive (*Attraction*).<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See note on Indirect Discourse (§ 577).

### Informal Indirect Discourse

**592.** A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker:—

1. When the clause depends upon another containing a *wish*, a *command*, or a *question*, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse:—

animal sentit quid sit quod deceat (Off. i. 14), *an animal feels what it is that is fit.*

huic imperat quās possit adeat civitatēs (B. G. iv. 21), *he orders him to visit what states he can.*

hunc sibi ex animō scrūpulum, qui sē diēs noctisque stimulat ac pungit, ut ēvellātis postulat (Rosc. Am. 6), *he begs you to pluck from his heart this doubt that goads and stings him day and night.* [Here the relative clause is not a part of the Purpose expressed in *ēvellātis*, but is an assertion made by the subject of *postulat*.]

2. When the main clause of a quotation is merged in the verb of *saying*, or some modifier of it:—

si quid de his rebus dicere vellet, feci potestatem (Cat. iii. 11), *if he wished to say anything about these matters, I gave him a chance.*

tulit de caede quae in Appiā viā facta esset (Mil. 15), *he passed a law concerning the murder which (in the language of the bill) took place in the Appian Way.*

nisi restituisset statuās, vehementer minātur (Verr. ii. 162), *he threatens them violently unless they should restore the statues.* [Here the main clause, "that he will inflict punishment," is contained in *minātur*.]

his auxilium suum pollicitus si ab Suebis premerentur (B. G. iv. 19), *he promised them his aid if they should be molested by the Suevi.* [= *pollicitus se auxilium lātūrum, etc.*]

prohibitiō tollendi, nisi pactus esset, vim adhibebat pactioni (Verr. iii. 37), *the forbidding to take away unless he came to terms gave force to the bargain.*

3. When a *reason* or an *explanatory fact* is introduced by a relative or by *quod* (rarely *quia*) (see § 540):—

Paetus omnis librōs quōs frater suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1. 12), *Paetus presented to me all the books which (he said) his brother had left.*

NOTE.—Under this head even what the speaker himself thought under other circumstances may have the Subjunctive. So also with *quod* even the verb of *saying* may be in the Subjunctive (§ 540. n. 2). Here belong also *nōn quia*, *nōn quod*, introducing a reason *expressly to deny it*. (See § 540. n. 2.)

### Subjunctive of Integral Part (Attraction)

**593.** A clause depending upon a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause: —<sup>1</sup>

imperat, dum rēs iudicētur, hominem adservent: cum iudicāta sit, ad sē ut addūcant (Verr. iii. 55), *he orders them, till the affair should be decided, to keep the man; when it is judged, to bring him to him.*

etenim quis tam dissolutō animō est, quī haec cum videat, tacēre ac negligere possit (Rosc. Am. 32), *for who is so reckless of spirit that, when he sees these things, he can keep silent and pass them by?*

mōs est Athēnis laudārī in cōtiōne eōs quī sint in proeliis interfecti (Or. 161), *it is the custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.* [Here laudārī is equivalent to ut laudentur.]

*a.* But a dependent clause may be closely connected grammatically with a Subjunctive or Infinitive clause, and still take the Indicative, if it is not regarded as a necessary logical part of that clause: —

quōdam modō postulat ut, quem ad modum est, sic etiam appellētur, tyrannus (Att. x. 4. 2), *in a manner he demands that as he is, so he may be called, a tyrant.*

nātūra fert ut eis faveāmus quī eadem pericula quibus nōs perfūcti sumus ingrediuntur (Mur. 4), *nature prompts us to feel friendly towards those who are entering on the same dangers which we have passed through.*

nē hostēs, quod tantum multitudine peterant, suōs circumvenire possent (B. G. ii. 8), *lest the enemy, because they were so strong in numbers, should be able to surround his men.*

si mea in tē essent officia solum tanta quanta magis ā tē ipsō praedicārī quam ā mē ponderārī solent, verēcundius ā tē . . . peterem (Fam. ii. 6), *if my good services to you were only so great as they are wont rather to be called by you than to be estimated by me, I should, etc.*

NOTE 1. — The use of the Indicative in such clauses sometimes serves to emphasize the fact, as true independently of the statement contained in the subjunctive or infinitive clause. But in many cases no such distinction is perceptible.

NOTE 2. — It is often difficult to distinguish between Informal Indirect Discourse and the Integral Part. Thus in imperāvit ut ea fierent quae opus essent, essent may stand for sunt, and then will be Indirect Discourse, being a part of the thought, but not a part of the order; or it may stand for erunt, and then will be Integral Part, being a part of the order itself. The difficulty of making the distinction in such cases is evidence of the close relationship between these two constructions.

<sup>1</sup> The subjunctive in this use is of the same nature as the subjunctive in the main clause. A dependent clause in a clause of purpose is really a part of the purpose, as is seen from the use of *should* and other auxiliaries in English. In a result clause this is less clear, but the result construction is a branch of the characteristic (§ 534), to which category the dependent clause in this case evidently belongs when it takes the subjunctive.

## 594. IMPORTANT RULES OF SYNTAX

1. A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in Case (§ 282).
2. Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in Gender, Number, and Case (§ 286).
3. Superlatives (more rarely Comparatives) denoting order and succession — also *medius*, (*cēterus*), *reliquus* — usually designate not *what object*, but *what part of it*, is meant (§ 293).
4. The Personal Pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in *-um* being used *partitively*, and that in *-i* oftenest *objectively* (§ 295. *b*).
5. The Reflexive Pronoun (*sē*), and usually the corresponding possessive (*suus*), are used in the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause (§ 299).
6. To express Possession and similar ideas the Possessive Pronouns must be used, not the genitive of the personal or reflexive pronouns (§ 302. *a*).
7. A Possessive Pronoun or an Adjective implying possession may take an appositive in the genitive case agreeing in gender, number, and case with an implied noun or pronoun (§ 302. *e*).
8. A Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends on its construction in the clause in which it stands (§ 305).
9. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person (§ 316).
10. Adverbs are used to modify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs (§ 321).
11. A Question of *simple fact*, requiring the answer *yes* or *no*, is formed by adding the enclitic *-ne* to the emphatic word (§ 332).
12. When the enclitic *-ne* is added to a negative word, — as in *nōnne*, — an *affirmative* answer is expected. The particle *num* suggests a *negative* answer (§ 332. *b*).
13. The Subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative (§ 339).
14. The Vocative is the case of direct address (§ 340).
15. A noun used to limit or define another, and *not* meaning the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive (§ 342).
16. The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs (§ 343).



17. The genitive may denote the Substance or Material of which a thing consists (§ 344).
18. The genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective (§ 345).
19. Words denoting a *part* are followed by the Genitive of the *whole* to which the part belongs (*Partitive Genitive*, § 346).
20. Nouns of *action*, *agency*, and *feeling* govern the Genitive of the object (*Objective Genitive*, § 348).
21. Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fulness*, *power*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites; participles in *-ns* when used as adjectives; and verbals in *-āx*, govern the Genitive (§ 349. *a, b, c*).
22. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object (§ 350).
23. Verbs of *reminding* take with the Accusative of the person a Genitive of the thing (§ 351).
24. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take the Genitive of the *charge* or *penalty* (§ 352).
25. The Dative is used of the object *indirectly affected* by an action (*Indirect Object*, § 361).
26. Many verbs signifying to *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their contraries; also, to *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, and *spare*, take the Dative (§ 367).
27. Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and some with *circum*, admit the Dative of the indirect object (§ 370).
28. The Dative is used with *esse* and similar words to denote Possession (§ 373).
29. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests (§ 374).
30. The Dative often depends, not on any *particular word*, but on the *general meaning* of the sentence (*Dative of Reference*, § 376).
31. Many verbs of *taking away* and the like take the Dative (especially of a *person*) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 381).
32. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected (§ 382).
33. The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few adverbs) of *fitness*, *nearness*, *likeness*, *service*, *inclination*, and their opposites (§ 384).

34. The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative (§ 387).
35. An intransitive verb often takes the Accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner (*Cognate Accusative*, § 390).
36. Verbs of *naming*, *choosing*, *appointing*, *making*, *esteeming*, *showing*, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object (§ 393).
37. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take (in addition to the direct object) a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition (§ 394).
38. Some verbs of *asking* and *teaching* may take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing (§ 396).
39. The subject of an Infinitive is in the Accusative (§ 397. e).
40. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative (§§ 424. c, 425).
41. Words signifying *separation* or *privation* are followed by the Ablative (*Ablative of Separation*, § 400).
42. The Ablative, usually with a preposition, is used to denote the *source* from which anything is derived or the *material* of which it consists (§ 403).
43. The Ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express *cause* (§ 404).
44. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab* (§ 405).
45. The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative signifying *than* (§ 406).
46. The Comparative may be followed by *quam*, *than*. When *quam* is used, the two things compared are put in the same case (§ 407).
47. The Ablative is used to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action (§ 409).
48. The deponents, *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative (§ 410).
49. *Opus* and *ūsus*, signifying *need*, are followed by the Ablative (§ 411).
50. The *manner* of an action is denoted by the Ablative, usually with *cum* unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun (§ 412).

51. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the Ablative, regularly with *cum* (§ 413).
52. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the Ablative is used to denote the *degree of difference* (§ 414).
53. The *quality* of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive Modifier (§ 415).
54. The *price* of a thing is put in the Ablative (§ 416).
55. The Ablative of Specification denotes that *in respect to which* anything is or is done (§ 418).
56. The adjectives *dignus* and *indignus* take the Ablative (§ 418. b).
57. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action (*Ablative Absolute*, § 419).

An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the ablative absolute construction (§ 419. a).

58. Time *when*, or *within which*, is denoted by the Ablative; time *how long* by the Accusative (§ 423).
59. Relations of Place are expressed as follows:—
  1. The *place from which*, by the Ablative with *ab, dē, ex*.
  2. The *place to which* (or *end of motion*), by the Accusative with *ad* or *in*.
  3. The *place where*, by the Ablative with *in* (*Locative Ablative*). (§ 426.)
60. With names of *towns* and *small islands*, and with *domus* and *rūs*, the relations of place are expressed as follows:—
  1. The *place from which*, by the Ablative without a preposition.
  2. The *place to which*, by the Accusative without a preposition.
  3. The *place where*, by the Locative. (§ 427.)
61. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an *exhortation*, a *command*, or a *concession* (§§ 439, 440).
62. The Optative Subjunctive is used to express a *wish*. The present tense denotes the wish as *possible*, the imperfect as *unaccomplished* in present time, the pluperfect as *unaccomplished* in past time (§ 441).
63. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) *doubt*, *indignation*, or (2) an *impossibility* of the thing's being done (*Deliberative Subjunctive*, § 444).

64. The Potential Subjunctive is used to suggest an action as *possible* or *conceivable* (§ 446).
65. The Imperative is used in *commands* and *entreaties* (§ 448).
66. Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by *nōli* with the Infinitive, (2) by *cavē* with the Present Subjunctive, (3) by *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive (§ 450).
67. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with *est* and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative (§ 452).
68. Verbs which imply *another action of the same subject* to complete their meaning take the Infinitive without a subject accusative (*Complementary Infinitive*, § 456).
69. The Infinitive, with subject accusative, is used with verbs and other expressions of *knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse*, see § 459).
70. The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative (*Historical Infinitive*, § 463).
71. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. In complex sentences, a *primary* tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive in the dependent clause; a *secondary* tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect (§ 483).
72. Participles denote time as *present, past, or future* with respect to the time of the verb in their clause (§ 489).
73. The Gerund and the Gerundive are used, in the oblique cases, in many of the constructions of nouns (§§ 501-507).
74. The Supine in *-um* is used after verbs of *motion* to express Purpose (§ 509).
75. The Supine in *-ū* is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns *fās, nefās, and opus*, to denote Specification (§ 510).
76. *Dum, modo, dummodo, and tantum ut*, introducing a Proviso, take the Subjunctive (§ 528).
77. Final clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut (utī)*, negative *nē (ut nē)*, or by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb (§ 531).
78. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a *characteristic* of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise *undefined* (§ 535).
79. *Dignus, indignus, aptus, and idōneus*, take a Subjunctive clause with a relative (rarely with *ut*) (§ 535. *f*).

80. Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut, so that* (negative, *ut nōn*), or by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb (§ 537).
81. The Causal Particles *quod, quia, and quoniam* take the Indicative when the reason is given on the authority of the *writer* or *speaker*; the Subjunctive when the reason is given on the authority of *another* (§ 540).
82. The particles *postquam (posteaquam), ubi, ut (ut primum, ut semel), simul atque (simul ac, or simul alone)* take the Indicative (usually in the *perfect* or the *historical present*) (§ 543).
83. A Temporal clause with *cum, when*, and some past tense of the Indicative *dates* or *defines the time* at which the action of the main verb occurred (§ 545).
84. A Temporal clause with *cum* and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive *describes the circumstances* that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb (§ 546).
85. *Cum* Causal or Concessive takes the Subjunctive (§ 549).

For other concessive particles, see § 527.

86. In Indirect Discourse the *main clause* of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All *subordinate clauses* take the Subjunctive (§ 580).
87. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is *present, past, or future* with reference to the verb of *saying* etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced (§ 584).
88. In Indirect Discourse a *real question* is generally put in the Subjunctive; a *rhetorical question* in the Infinitive (§ 586).
89. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse (§ 588).
90. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker (*Informal Indirect Discourse*, § 592).
91. A clause depending on a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an *integral part* of that clause (*Attraction*, § 593).

For Prepositions and their cases, see §§ 220, 221.

For Conditional Sentences, see § 512 ff. (Scheme in § 514.)

For ways of expressing Purpose, see § 533.

## ORDER OF WORDS

**595.** Latin differs from English in having more freedom in the arrangement of words for the purpose of showing the relative importance of the ideas in a sentence.

**596.** As in other languages, the Subject tends to stand first, the Predicate last. Thus, —

*Pausānias Lacedaemonius māgnus homō sed varius in omni genere vitae fuit* (Nep. Paus. 1), *Pausanias the Lacedaemonian was a great man, but inconsistent in the whole course of his life.*

NOTE. — This happens because, from the speaker's ordinary point of view, the subject of his discourse is the most important thing in it, as singled out from all other things to be spoken of.

*a.* There is in Latin, however, a special tendency to place the verb itself *last of all*, after all its modifiers. But many writers purposely avoid the monotony of this arrangement by putting the verb last but one, followed by some single word of the predicate.

**597.** In *connected discourse* the word most prominent in the speaker's mind comes first, and so on in order of prominence.

This relative prominence corresponds to that indicated in English by a graduated stress of voice (usually called *emphasis*).

*a.* The difference in *emphasis* expressed by difference in order of words is illustrated in the following passages : —

apud Xenophōntem autem moriēns Cȳrus māior haec dicit (Cat. M. 79), IN XENOPHON too, on his death-bed *Cyrus, the elder utters these words.*

Cȳrus quidem haec moriēns; nōs, si placet, nostra videāmus (id. 82), CYRUS, to be sure, utters these words on his death-bed; let us, if you please, consider our own case.

Cȳrus quidem apud Xenophōntem eō sermōne, quem moriēns habuit (id. 80), CYRUS, to be sure, in Xenophon, in that speech which he uttered on his death-bed.

NOTE. — This stress or emphasis, however, in English does not necessarily show any violent contrast to the rest of the words in the sentence, but is infinitely varied, constantly increasing and diminishing, and often so subtle as to be unnoticed except in careful study. So, as a general rule, the precedence of words in a Latin sentence is not mechanical, but corresponds to the prominence which a good speaker would mark by skilfully managed stress of voice. A Latin *written* sentence, therefore, has all the clearness and expression which could be given to a *spoken* discourse by the best actor in English. Some exceptions to the rule will be treated later.

The first chapter of Cæsar's Gallic War, if rendered so as to bring out as far as possible the shades of emphasis, would run thus : —

GAUL,<sup>1</sup> *in the widest sense*, is divided<sup>2</sup> into three parts,<sup>3</sup> which are inhabited<sup>4</sup> (as follows): one<sup>5</sup> by the Belgians, another<sup>6</sup> by the Aquitani, the third by a people called in *their own*<sup>7</sup> language Celts, in *ours* Gauls. THESE<sup>8</sup> in their language,<sup>9</sup> institutions, and laws are *all* of them<sup>10</sup> different. The GAULS<sup>11</sup> (proper) are separated<sup>12</sup> from the Aquitani by the river *Garonne*, from the Belgians by the *Marne and Seine*. Of THESE<sup>13</sup> (TRIBES) the bravest of all<sup>14</sup> are the *Belgians*, for the reason that they live farthest<sup>15</sup> away

Gallia est omnis divisa in partibus, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallios ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate

<sup>1</sup> GAUL: emphatic as the *subject of discourse*, as with a title or the like.

<sup>2</sup> Divided: opposed to the false conception (implied in the use of *omnis*) that the country called Gallia by the Romans is one. This appears more clearly from the fact that Caesar later speaks of the *Galli* in a narrower sense as distinct from the other two tribes, who with them inhabit *Gallia* in the wider sense.

<sup>3</sup> *Parts*: continuing the emphasis begun in *divisa*. Not *three* parts as opposed to any other number, but into *parts* at all.

<sup>4</sup> *Inhabited*: emphatic as the next subject, "*The inhabitants of these parts are, etc.*"

<sup>5</sup> One: given more prominence than it otherwise would have on account of its close connection with *quarum*.

<sup>6</sup> Another, etc.: opposed to *one*.

<sup>7</sup> *Their own, ours*: strongly opposed to each other.

<sup>8</sup> THESE (tribes): the main subject of discourse again, collecting under one head the names previously mentioned.

<sup>9</sup> Language, etc.: these are the most prominent ideas, as giving the striking points which distinguish the tribes. The emphasis becomes natural in English if we say "*these have a different language, different institutions, different laws.*"

<sup>10</sup> All of them: the emphasis on *all* marks the distributive character of the adjective, as if it were "*every one has its own, etc.*"

<sup>11</sup> GAULS: emphatic as referring to the Gauls proper in distinction from the other tribes.

<sup>12</sup> Separated: though this word contains an indispensable idea in the connection, yet it has a subordinate position. It is not emphatic in Latin, as is seen from the fact that it cannot be made emphatic in English. The sense is: The *Gauls* lie between the *Aquitani* on the one side, and the *Belgians* on the other.

<sup>13</sup> Of THESE: the subject of discourse.

<sup>14</sup> All: emphasizing the superlative idea in "*bravest*"; they, as Gauls, are assumed to be warlike, but the most so of *all* of them are the *Belgians*.

<sup>15</sup> Farthest away: one might expect *absent* (are away) to have a more emphatic place, but it is dwarfed in importance by the predominance of the main idea, the *effeminating influences* from which the Belgians are said to be free. It is not that they live *farthest off* that is insisted on, but that the *civilization of the Province* etc., which would *soften* them, comes less in their way. It is to be noticed also that *absent* has already been anticipated by the construction of *cultu* and still more by *longissimis*, so that when it comes it amounts only to a formal part of the sentence. Thus,—"because the *civilization* etc. of the Province (which would soften them) is *farthest* from them."

from the CIVILIZATION and REFINEMENT of the Province, and because they are LEAST<sup>1</sup> of all of them subject to the visits of traders,<sup>2</sup> and to the (consequent) importation of such things as<sup>3</sup> tend to soften<sup>4</sup> their warlike spirit; and are also nearest<sup>5</sup> to the Germans, who live across the Rhine,<sup>6</sup> and with whom they are incessantly<sup>7</sup> at war. For the same reason the HELVETIANS, as well, are superior to all the other Gauls in valor, because they are engaged in almost daily battles with the Germans, either defending their own boundaries from them, or themselves making war on those of the Germans. Of ALL THIS country, one part—the one which, as has been said, the Gauls (proper) occupy—BEGINS at the river Rhone. Its boundaries are the river Garonne, the ocean, and the confines of the Belgians. It even REACHES on the side of the Sequani and Helvetians the river Rhine. Its general direction is towards the north. The BELGIANS begin at the extreme limits of Gaul; they reach (on this side) as far as the lower part of the Rhine. They spread to the northward and eastward.

AQUITANIA extends from the Garonne to the Pyrenees, and that part of the ocean that lies towards Spain. It runs off westward and northward.

b. The more important word is never placed last for emphasis. The apparent cases of this usage (when the emphasis is not misconceived) are cases where a word is added as an afterthought, either real or affected, and so has its position not in the sentence to which it is appended, but, as it were, in a new one.

<sup>1</sup> LEAST: made emphatic here by a common Latin order, the *chiasmus* (§ 598. f).

<sup>2</sup> Traders: the fourth member of the *chiasmus*, opposed to cultū and hūmānitātē.

<sup>3</sup> Such things as: the importance of the nature of the importations overshadows the fact that they are imported, which fact is anticipated in traders.

<sup>4</sup> Soften: cf. what is said in note 15, p. 394. They are brave because they have less to soften them, their native barbarity being taken for granted.

<sup>5</sup> Nearest: the same idiomatic prominence as in note 1 above, but varied by a special usage combining *chiasmus* and *anaphora* (§ 598. f).

<sup>6</sup> Across the Rhine: i.e. and so are perfect savages.

<sup>7</sup> Incessantly: the continuance of the warfare becomes the all-important idea, as if it were "and not a day passes in which they are not at war with them."

prōvinciæ longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercatōrēs saepe commēant atque ea quæ ad effeminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximique sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte præcēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum finis pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētīis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgæ ab extrēmīs Galliæ finibus oriuntur: pertinent ad Inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeos montis et eam partem Ōceanī quæ est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.



## 598. The main rules for the Order of Words are as follows : —

*a.* In any phrase the determining and most significant word comes first : —

### 1. Adjective and Noun : —

*omnis* hominēs decet, EVERY *man* ought (opposed to some who do not).

*Lūcius Catillina* nobili genere nātus fuit, *magnā* vi et animi et corporis, sed *ingeniō* malō prāvōque (Sall. Cat. 5), *Lucius Catiline* was born of a NOBLE family, with GREAT force of mind and body, but with a NATURE that was evil and depraved. [Here the adjectives in the first part are the emphatic and important words, no antithesis between the nouns being as yet thought of; but in the second branch the noun is meant to be opposed to those before mentioned, and immediately takes the prominent place, as is seen by the natural English emphasis, thus making a *chiasmus*.<sup>1</sup>]

### 2. Word with modifying case : —

*quid* magis *Epaminōdam*, *Thēbānōrum* imperātōrem, quam *victōriæ* *Thēbānōrum* cōsulere decuit (Inv. i. 69), what should *Epaminondas*, commander of the THEBANS, have aimed at more than the VICTORY of the Thebans?

*lacrimā* nihil citius arēscit (id. i. 109), nothing dries quicker than a TEAR.

*nēmō* ferē laudis cupidus (De Or. i. 14), hardly any one desirous of GLORY (cf. Manil. 7, *avidī* laudis, EAGER for glory).

*b.* Numeral adjectives, adjectives of quantity, demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns and adverbs, tend to precede the word or words to which they belong : —

*cum* aliqua perturbātiōne (Off. i. 137), with SOME disturbance.

*hōc* unō praestāmus (De Or. i. 32), in THIS one thing we excel.

*cēterae* ferē artēs, the OTHER arts.

NOTE. — This happens because such words are usually emphatic; but often the words connected with them are more so, and in such cases the pronouns etc. yield the emphatic place : —

*causa* aliqua (De Or. i. 250), some CASE.

*stilus* ille tuus (id. i. 257), that well-known STYLE of yours (in an antithesis; see passage). [This is idiomatic in this sense and position.]

*Rōmam* quae apportāta sunt (Verr. iv. 121), what were carried to ROME (in contrast to what remained at Syracuse).

*c.* When *sum* is used as the Substantive verb (§ 284. *b*), it regularly stands first, or at any rate before its subject : —

*est* viri magni pūnīre sōtis (Off. i. 82), it is the duty of a great man to punish the guilty.

<sup>1</sup> So called from the Greek letter X (*chi*), on account of the criss-cross arrangement of the words. Thus,  $\xi \times_a^b$  (see *f* below).

**d.** The verb may come first, or have a prominent position, either (1) because the *idea* in it is emphatic; or (2) because the *predication of the whole statement* is emphatic; or (3) the *tense* only may be emphatic:—

(1) *dicēbat idem Cotta* (Off. ii. 59), *Cotta used to say the same thing* (opposed to others' *boasting*).

*idem fēcit adulēscēns M. Antōnius* (id. ii. 49), *the same thing was done by Mark Antony in his youth*. [Opposed to *dixi* just before.]

*facis amicē* (Lael. 9), *you act kindly*. [Cf. *amicē facis*, *you are very kind* (you act *KINDLY*).]

(2) *prōpēnsior benignitās esse dēbēbit in calamitōsīs nisi forte erunt digni calamitatē* (Off. ii. 62), *liberality ought to be readier toward the unfortunate unless perchance they really deserve their misfortune*.

*praesertim cum scribat* (Panaetius) (id. iii. 8), *especially when he does say* (in his books). [Opposed to something omitted by him.]

(3) *fuimus Trōes, fuit Ilium* (Aen. ii. 325), *we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is now no more*.

*loquor autem de communibus amicitijs* (Off. iii. 45), *but I am speaking now of common friendships*.

**e.** Often the connection of two emphatic phrases is brought about by giving the precedence to the most prominent part of each and leaving the less prominent parts to follow in inconspicuous places:—

*plūrēs solent esse causae* (Off. i. 28), *there are usually several reasons*.

*quōs amissimū civīs, eōs Mārtis vīs perculit* (Marc. 17), *what fellow-citizens we have lost, have been stricken down by the violence of war*.

*maximās tibi omnēs grātiās agimus* (id. 33), *we all render you the warmest thanks*.

*haec res unius est propria Caesaris* (id. 11), *this exploit belongs to Caesar alone*.

*obiurgationēs etiam nōn numquam incidunt necessariāe* (Off. i. 136), *occasions for rebuke also sometimes occur which are unavoidable*.

**f.** Antithesis between two pairs of ideas is indicated by placing the pairs either (1) in the same order (*anaphora*) or (2) in exactly the opposite order (*chiasmus*):—

(1) *rērum cōpia verbōrum cōplam gignit* (De Or. iii. 125), *abundance of matter produces copiousness of expression*.

(2) *lēgēs supplicio improbōs afficiunt, dēfendunt ac tuentur bonōs* (Legg. ii. 13), *the laws visit punishments upon the wicked, but the good they defend and protect*.

**NOTE.**—Chiasmus is very common in Latin, and often seems in fact the more inartificial construction. In an artless narrative one might hear, "The women were all drowned, they saved the men."

*nōn igitur utilitatem amicitia sed utilitās amicitiam cōsecūta est* (Lael. 51), *it is not then that friendship has followed upon advantage, but advantage upon friendship*. [Here the chiasmus is only grammatical, the ideas being in the parallel order.] (See also p. 395: *longissimē, minimē, proximē*.)

**g.** A modifier of a phrase or some part of it is often embodied within the phrase (cf. *a*):—

dē commūnī hominū memoriā (Tusc. i. 59), *in regard to the universal memory of man.*

**h.** A favorite order with the poets is the *interlocked*, by which the attribute of one pair comes between the parts of the other (*synchysis*):—

et superiectō pavidae natūrunt aequore dammae (Hor. Od. i. 2. 11).

NOTE.—This is often joined with chiasmus: as,—arma nōndum expiātis ūncta crūribus (id. ii. 1. 5).

**i.** Frequently unimportant words follow in the train of more emphatic ones with which they are grammatically connected, and so acquire a prominence out of proportion to their importance:—

dictitābat sē hortulōs aliquōs emere velle (Off. iii. 58), *he gave out that he wanted to buy some gardens.* [Here aliquōs is less emphatic than emere, but precedes it on account of the emphasis on hortulōs.]

**j.** The copula is generally felt to be of so little importance that it may come in anywhere where it sounds well; but usually under cover of more emphatic words:—

cōsul ego quaeſivī, cum vōs mihi essētis in cōsiliō (Rep. iii. 28), *as consul I held an investigation in which you attended me in council.*  
falsum est id tōtum (id. ii. 28), *that is all false.*

**k.** Many expressions have acquired an invariable order:—

rēs pūblica; populus Rōmānus; honōris causā; pāce tantī virī.

NOTE.—These had, no doubt, originally an emphasis which required such an arrangement, but in the course of time have changed their shade of meaning. Thus, senātus populusque Rōmānus originally stated with emphasis the official bodies, but became fixed so as to be the only permissible form of expression.

**l.** The Romans had a fondness for emphasizing *persons*, so that a name or a pronoun often stands in an emphatic place:—

[dixit] vñāllis quidem sē hortōs nōn habēre (Off. iii. 58), [said] *that he did n't have any gardens for sale, to be sure.*

**m.** Kindred words often come together (*figūra etymologica*):—

ita sēnsim sine sēnsū aetās senēscit (Cat. M. 38), *thus gradually, without being perceived, man's life grows old.*

### Special Rules

**599.** The following are special rules of arrangement:—

**a.** The negative precedes the word it especially affects; but if it belongs to no one word in particular, it generally precedes the verb; if it is especially emphatic, it begins the sentence. (See example, 598. *f. n.*)

**b.** Itaque regularly comes first in its sentence or clause; enim, autem, vērō, quoque, never first, but usually second, sometimes third if the second word is emphatic; quidem never first, but after the emphatic word; igitur usually second; nē . . . quidem include the emphatic word or words.

**c.** Inquam, inquit, are always used parenthetically, following one or more words. So often crēdō, opīnor, and in poetry sometimes precor.

**d.** (1) Prepositions (except tenus and versus) regularly precede their nouns; (2) but a monosyllabic preposition is often placed between a noun and its adjective or limiting genitive:—

quem ad modum; quam ob rem; magnō cum metū; omnibus cum cōpīs;  
nullā in rē (cf. § 598. i).

**e.** In the arrangement of clauses, the Relative clause more often comes first in Latin, and usually contains the antecedent noun:—

quōs amisimus civis, eōs Mārtis vis perculit (Marc. 17), *those citizens whom we have lost*, etc.

**f.** Personal or demonstrative pronouns tend to stand together in the sentence:—

cum vōs mihi essētis in cōsiliō (Rep. iii. 28), *when you attended me in counsel*.

### Structure of the Period

**600.** Latin, unlike modern languages, expresses the relation of words to each other by *inflection* rather than by *position*. Hence its structure not only admits of great variety in the arrangement of words, but is especially favorable to that form of sentence which is called a Period. In a period, the sense is expressed by the sentence as a whole, and is held in suspense till the delivery of the last word.

An English sentence does not often exhibit this form of structure. It was imitated, sometimes with great skill and beauty, by many of the earlier writers of English prose; but its effect is better seen in poetry, as in the following passage:—

High on a throne of royal state, which far  
Outshone the wealth of Ormus and of Ind,  
Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand  
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,  
Satan exalted sat. — *Paradise Lost*, li. 1-5.

But in argument or narrative, the best English writers more commonly give short clear sentences, each distinct from the rest, and saying one thing by itself. In Latin, on the contrary, the story or argument is viewed as a whole; and the logical relation among all its parts is carefully indicated.

**601.** In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed:—

**a.** In general the main subject or object is put in the main clause, not in a subordinate one:—

Hannibal cum recēnsuisset auxilia Gādēs profectus est (Liv. xxi. 21), *when Hannibal had reviewed the auxiliaries, he set out for Cadiz*.

**Volsci exiguam spem in armis, aliā undique abscissā, cum tentassent, prae-ter cētera adversa, locō quoque iniquō ad pūnam congressi, iniquiōre ad fugam, cum ab omni parte caederentur, ad precēs ā certāmine versi dēditō imperātōre trāditisque armis, sub iugum missi, cum singulis vestimentis, ignōminiae clādisque plēni dīmittuntur** (Liv. iv. 10). [Here the main fact is *the return of the Volscians*. But the striking circumstances of the surrender etc., which in English would be detailed in a number of brief independent sentences, are put into the several subordinate clauses within the main clause so that the passage gives a complete picture in one sentence.]

**b.** Clauses are usually arranged in the order of prominence in the mind of the speaker; so, usually, *cause* before *result*; *purpose*, *manner*, and the like, before the *act*.

**c.** In coördinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (*asyndeton*). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words.

**d.** A change of subject, when required, is marked by the introduction of a pronoun, if the new subject has already been mentioned. But such change is often purposely avoided by a change in structure, — the less important being merged in the more important by the aid of participles or of subordinate phrases: —

quem ut barbari incendium effūgisse vidērunt, tēlis ēminus missis interfecerunt (Nep. Alc. 10), *when the barbarians saw that he had escaped, THEY threw darts at HIM at long range and killed HIM*.

celeriter cōfectō negōtiō, in hiberna legiōnēs redūxit (B. G. vi. 8), *the matter was soon finished, AND he led the legions, etc.*

**e.** So the repetition of a noun, or the substitution of a pronoun for it, is avoided unless a different case is required: —

dolōrem si nōn potuerō frangere occultābō (Phil. xii. 21), *if I cannot conquer the pain, I will hide it*. [Cf. *if I cannot conquer I will hide the pain*.]

**f.** The Romans were careful to close a period with an agreeable succession of long and short syllables. Thus, —

quod scis nihil prōdest, quod nescis multum obest (Or. 166), *what you know is of no use, what you do not know does great harm*.

**NOTE.** — In rhetorical writing, particularly in oratory, the Romans, influenced by their study of the Greek orators, gave more attention to this matter than in other forms of composition. Quintilian (ix. 4. 72) lays down the general rule that a clause should not open with the beginning of a verse or close with the end of one.

# PROSODY

## QUANTITY

**602.** The poetry of the Indo-European people seems originally to have been somewhat like our own, depending on accent for its metre and disregarding the natural quantity of syllables. The Greeks, however, developed a form of poetry which, like music, pays close attention to the natural quantity of syllables; and the Romans borrowed their metrical forms in classical times from the Greeks. Hence Latin poetry does not depend, like ours, upon accent and rhyme; but is measured, like musical strains, by the length of syllables. Especially does it differ from our verse in not regarding the prose accent of the words, but substituting for that an entirely different system of metrical accent or *ictus* (see § 611. a). This depends upon the character of the measure used, falling at regular intervals of time on a long syllable or its equivalent. Each syllable is counted as either long or short in Quantity; and a long syllable is generally reckoned equal in length to two short ones (for exceptions, see § 608. c-e).

The quantity of radical (or stem) syllables—as of short *a* in *pāter* or of long *a* in *māter*—can be learned only by observation and practice, unless determined by the general rules of quantity. Most of these rules are only arbitrary formulas devised to assist the memory; the syllables being long or short *because the ancients pronounced them so*. The actual practice of the Romans in regard to the quantity of syllables is ascertained chiefly from the usage of the poets; but the ancient grammarians give some assistance, and in some inscriptions long vowels are distinguished in various ways,—by the apex, for instance, or by doubling (§ 10. e. n.).

Since Roman poets borrow very largely from the poetry and mythology of the Greeks, numerous Greek words, especially proper names, make an important part of Latin poetry. These words are generally employed in accordance with the Greek, and not the Latin, laws of quantity. Where these laws vary in any important point, the variations will be noticed in the rules below.

## GENERAL RULES

**603.** The following are General Rules of Quantity (cf. §§ 9–11):

### Quantity of Vowels

**a. Vowels.** A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: *as, via, trāhō*.

*Exceptions.*—1. In the genitive form *-ius*, *i* is long: *as, ūtrius, nūllius*. It is, however, sometimes short in verse (§ 113. c).

2. In the genitive and dative singular of the fifth declension, *e* is long between two vowels: *as, diēi*; otherwise usually short, as in *fidēi, rēi, spēi*.

**NOTE.**—It was once long in these also: *as, plēnū<sup>8</sup> fidēi* (Ennius, at the end of a hexameter). *A* is also long before *i* in the old genitive of the first declension: *as, aulāi*.

3. In the conjugation of *fiō*, *i* is long except when followed by *er*. Thus, *fiō, fiēbam, fiām*, but *fiēri, fierem*; so also *fit* (§ 606. a. 3).

4. In many Greek words the vowel in Latin represents a long vowel or diphthong, and retains its original long quantity: *as, Trōes (Τρώες), Thalia (Θαλία), hērōas (ἥρωας), āēr (ἄēr)*.

NOTE.—But many Greek words are more or less Latinized in this respect: as, *Acadēmīa*, *chorēa*, *Malēa*, *platēa*.

5. In *dīus*, in *ēheu* usually, and sometimes in *Dīāna* and *ōhe*, the first vowel is long.

**b. Diphthongs.** A Diphthong is long: as, *fōēdus*, *cūi*,<sup>1</sup> *āula*.

Exception.—The preposition *prae* in compounds is generally shortened before a vowel: as, *prae-ustis* (Aen. vii. 524), *prae-eunte* (id. v. 186).

NOTE.—U following q, s, or g, does not make a diphthong with a following vowel (see § 5. N. 2). For *ā-iō*, *mā-ior*, *pē-ior*, etc., see § 11. *d* and *n*.

**c. Contraction.** A vowel formed by contraction (*crasis*) is long: as, *nīl*, from *nihil*; *cōgō* for *†co-agō*; *mālō* for *mā-volō*.

NOTE.—Two vowels of different syllables may be run together without full contraction (*synizēsis*, § 642): as, *dēinde* (for *deinde*), *mēōs* (for *meōs*); and often two syllables are united by *Synæresis* (§ 642) without contraction: as when *pāriētibus* is pronounced *pariētibus*.

**d.** A vowel before *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, is long: as, *īnstō*, *īnfāns*, *signum*.

### Quantity of Syllables

**e.** A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: as, *cā-rus*, *ō-men*, *foe-dus*.

**f. Position.** A syllable is long by *position* if its vowel, though short, is followed by two consonants or a double consonant: as, *adventus*, *cortex*.

But if the two consonants are a mute followed by *l* or *r* the syllable may be either long or short (*common*); as, *alacris* or *alācris*; *patris* or *pātris*.

Vowels should be pronounced long or short in accordance with their natural quantity without regard to the length of the syllable by position.

NOTE 1.—The rules of Position do not, in general, apply to final vowels before a word beginning with two consonants.

NOTE 2.—A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by consonant *i* (except in *biugis*, *quadriugis*): see § 11. *d*.

NOTE 3.—Compounds of *iaciō*, though written with one *i*, commonly retain the long vowel of the prepositions with which they are compounded, as if before a consonant, and, if the vowel of the preposition is short, the first syllable is long by position on the principle of § 11. *e*.

*obici* *hosti* (at the end of a hexameter, Aen. iv. 549).

*īnīcīt* *et saltū* (at the beginning of a hexameter, Aen. ix. 552).

*prōice* *tēla manū* (at the beginning of a hexameter, Aen. vi. 836).

Later poets sometimes shorten the preposition in trisyllabic forms, and prepositions ending in a vowel are sometimes contracted as if the verb began with a vowel:

(1) *cūr* *an* *nōs* *ōb* *īcīs* (Claud. iv C. H. 264).

(2) *reīcē* *cā* *pellās* (Ecl. iii. 96, at end).

NOTE 4.—The *y* or *w* sound resulting from *synæresis* (§ 642) has the effect of a consonant in making position: as, *abietis* (*abyetis*), *fluviorum* (*fluvyōrum*). Conversely, when the semivowel becomes a vowel, position is lost: as, *silvæ*, for *silvæe*.

<sup>1</sup> Rarely dissyllabic *cūi* (as Mart. i. 104. 22).

## FINAL SYLLABLES

**604.** The Quantity of Final Syllables is as follows: —

*a.* Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long: *as, mē, tū, hī, nē.*

1. The attached particles *-nē, -quē, -vē, -cē, -ptē, and rē- (rēd-)* are short; *sē- (sēd-)* and *dī-* are long. Thus, *sēcēdit, sēditō, exercitumquē rēddicit, dīmittō.* But *re-* is often long in *rēligiō (relligiō), rētuli (rettuli), rēpuli (reppuli).*

*b.* Nouns and adjectives of one syllable are long: *as, sōl, ōs (ōria), bōs, pār, vās (vāsia), vēr, vīs.*

*Exceptions.* — *cōr, fēl, lāc, mēl, ōs (ossia), vās (vādis), vīr, tūt, quōt.*

*c.* Most monosyllabic Particles are short: *as, ān, īn, cīs, nēc.* But *crās, cūr, ēn, nōn, quīn, sīn* — with adverbs in *c:* *as, hīc, hūc, sīc* — are long.

*d.* Final *a* in words declined by cases is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension; in all other words final *a* is long. Thus, *eā stellā (nominative), cum eā stellā (ablative); frūstrā, vocā (imperative), postea, trīgintā.*

*Exceptions.* — *ēiā, itā, quā, putā (suppose);* and, in late use, *trīgintā* etc.

*e.* Final *e* is short: *as* in *nūbē, dūcītē, saepē.*

*Exceptions.* — Final *e* is long — 1. In adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declension, with others of like form: *as, altē, longē, miserē, apertē, saepissimē.* So *ferē, fermē.*

But it is short in *benē, malē; infernē, supernē.*

2. In nouns of the fifth declension: *as, fidē (also famē), faciē, hodiē, quārē (quā rē).*

3. In Greek neuters plural of the second declension: *as, cētē;* and in some other Greek words: *Phoebē, Circē, Andromachē,* etc.

4. In the imperative singular of the second conjugation: *as, vidē.*

But sometimes *cavē, habē, tacē, valē, vidē* (cf. § 629. b. 1).

*f.* Final *i* is long: *as* in *turri, fili, audi.*

*Exceptions.* — Final *i* is common in *mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi;* and short in *nisi, quasi, sicuti, cui* (when making two syllables), and in Greek vocatives: *as, Alexi.*

*g.* Final *o* is common: but long in datives and ablatives; also in nouns of the third declension. It is almost invariably long in verbs before the time of Ovid.

*Exceptions.* — *citō, modō (dummodō), immō, profectō, egō, duō, cedō* (the imperative); so sometimes *octō, illic,* etc., particularly in later writers.

*h.* Final *u* is long. Final *y* is short.

*i.* Final *as, es, os,* are long; final *is, us, ys,* are short: *as, nefās, rūpēs, servūs (accusative), honōs; hostis, amicūs, Tethys.*



*Exceptions.* — 1. *as* is short in Greek plural accusatives: *as*, *lampadās*; and in *anās*.

2. *es* is short in the nominative of nouns of the third declension (lingual) having a short vowel in the stem<sup>1</sup>: *as*, *mīlēs* (-itis), *obsēs* (-idis), — except *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, *pēs*; in the present of *esse* (*ēs*, *adēs*); in the preposition *penēs*, and in the plural of Greek nouns: *as*, *hērōēs*, *lampadēs*.

3. *os* is short in *compōs*, *impōs*; in the Greek nominative ending: *as*, *barbitōs*; in the old nominative of the second declension: *as*, *servōs* (later *servus*).

4. *is* in plural cases is long: *as* in *bonīs*, *nōbīs*, *vōbīs*, *omnis* (accusative plural).

5. *is* is long in the verb forms *fiē*, *sīs*, *vis* (with *quīvis* etc.), *velis*, *mālis*, *nōlis*, *edīs*; in the second person singular of the present indicative active in the fourth conjugation: *as*, *audīs*; and sometimes in the forms in *-eris* (future perfect indicative or perfect subjunctive).

6. *us* is long in the genitive singular and nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension; and in nouns of the third declension having *ū* (long) in the stem: *as*, *virtūs* (-ūtis), *incūs* (-ūdis). But *pecūs*, -ūdis.

*j.* Of other final syllables, those ending in a single consonant are short. Thus, *amāt*, *amātūr*; *dōnēc*, *fāc*, *prociū*, *iubār*.

*Exceptions.* — *hic* (also *hīc*); *allēc*; the ablatives *illēc*, etc.; certain adverbs in *-c*: *as*, *illic*, *istūc*; *liēn*, and some Greek nouns: *as*, *āēr*, *aethēr*, *crātēr*.

### Perfects and Perfect Participles

**605.** Perfects and Perfect Participles of two syllables have the first syllable long: *as*, *iūvī*, *iūtum* (*iūvō*), *vidī*, *visum* (*videō*); *fūgī* (*fūgiō*); *vēnī* (*vēniō*).

*Exceptions.* — *bībī*, *dēdī*, *fidī*, *scīdī*, *stētī*, *stītī*, *tūlī*; *cītum*, *dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *quītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, *stātum*. In some compounds of *stō*, *stātum* is found (long), *as* *praestātum*.

*α.* In reduplicated perfects the vowel of the reduplication is short; the vowel of the following syllable is, also, usually short: *as*, *cēcīdī* (*cādō*), *dīdīcī* (*discō*), *pūpūgī* (*pungō*), *cūcūrī* (*currō*), *tētēndī* (*tendō*), *mōmōrdī* (*mordeō*). But *cēcīdī* from *caedō*, *pepēdī* from *pēdō*.

### Derivatives

**606.** Rules for the Quantity of Derivatives are: —

*α.* Forms from the same stem have the same quantity: *as*, *āmō*, *āmāvistī*; *gēnus*, *gēneris*.

*Exceptions.* — 1. *bōs*, *lār*, *mās*, *pār*, *pēs*, *sāl*, — also *arbōs*, — have a long vowel in the nominative, though the stem-vowel is short (cf. genitive *bōvis* etc.).

<sup>1</sup> The quantity of the stem-vowel may be seen in the genitive singular.

2. Nouns in -or, genitive -ōris, have the vowel shortened before the final r: as, *honōr*. (But this shortening is comparatively late, so that in early Latin these nominatives are often found long.)

3. Verb-forms with vowel originally long regularly shorten it before final m, r, or t: as, *amēm*, *amēr*, *dicerēt*, *amēt* (compare *amēmus*), *dicerēt*, *audīt*, *fit*.

NOTE. — The final syllable in t of the perfect was long in old Latin, but is short in the classic period.

4. A few long stem-syllables are shortened: as, *ācer*, *ācerbus*. So *dē-iērō* and *pē-iērō*, weakened from *iūrō*.

b. Forms from the same root often show inherited variations of vowel quantity (see § 17): as, *dicō* (cf. *maledīcus*); *dūcō* (*dūx*, *dūcis*); *fidō* (*perfidus*); *vōx*, *vōcis* (*vōcō*); *lēx*, *lēgis* (*lēgō*).

c. Compounds retain the quantity of the words which compose them: as, *oc-cidō* (*cādō*), *oc-cidō* (*caedō*), *in-īquus* (*aequus*).

NOTE. — Greek words compounded with *πρὸ* have o short: as, *prōphēta*, *prōlēgus*. Some Latin compounds of *prō* have o short: as, *prōfisciscor*, *prōfiteor*. Compounds with *ne* vary: as, *nēfās*, *nēgō*, *nēqueō*, *nēquam*.

## RHYTHM

607. The essence of Rhythm in poetry is the regular recurrence of syllables pronounced with more stress than those intervening. To produce this effect in its perfection, precisely equal times should occur between the recurrences of the stress. But, in the application of rhythm to words, the exactness of these intervals is sacrificed somewhat to the necessary length of the words; and, on the other hand, the words are forced somewhat in their pronunciation, to produce more nearly the proper intervals of time. In different languages these adaptations take place in different degrees; one language disregarding more the intervals of time, another the pronunciation of the words.

The Greek language early developed a very strict rhythmical form of poetry, in which the intervals of time were all-important. The earliest Latin, on the other hand, — as in the Saturnian and Fescennine verse, — was not so restricted. But the purely metrical forms were afterwards adopted from the Greek, and supplanted the native forms of verse. Thus the Latin poetry with which we have to do follows for the most part Greek rules, which require the formal division of words (like music) into measures of equal times, technically called Feet. The strict rhythm was doubtless more closely followed in poetry that was *sung* than in that which was *declaimed* or *intoned*. In neither language, however, is the time perfectly preserved, even in single measures; and there are some cases in which the regularity of the time between the ictuses is disturbed.

The Greeks and Romans distinguished syllables of two kinds in regard to the time required for their pronunciation, a *long* syllable having twice the metrical value of a *short* one. But it must not be supposed that all long syllables were of equal length, or even that in a given passage each long had just twice the length of the contiguous shorts. The ratio was only approximate at best, though necessarily more exact in singing than in recitation. Nor are longs and shorts the only forms of syllables that are found. In some cases a long syllable was protracted, so as to have the time of three or even of four shorts, and often one long or two shorts were pronounced in less than their proper time, though they were perhaps distinguishable in time from one

short (see § 608. c, d). Sometimes a syllable naturally short seems to have been slightly prolonged, so as to represent a long, though in most (not all) cases the apparent irregularity can be otherwise explained. In a few cases, also, a pause takes the place of one or more syllables to fill out the required length of the measure. This could, of course, take place only at the end of a word: hence the importance of *Cæsura* and *Diæresis* in prosody (§ 611. b, c).

### Measures

**608.** Rhythm consists of the division of musical sound into equal intervals of time called Measures or Feet.

The most natural division of musical time is into measures consisting of either two or three equal parts. But the ancients also distinguished measures of five equal parts.

NOTE. — The divisions of *musical* time are marked by a stress of voice on one or the other part of the measure. This stress is called the *Ictus* (*beat*), or *metrical accent* (see § 611. a).

a. The unit of length in Prosody is *one short syllable*. This is called a *Mora*. It is represented by the sign  $\cup$ , or in musical notation by the eighth note or *quaver* (♫).

b. A long syllable is regularly equal to two moræ, and is represented by the sign  $\text{—}$ , or by the quarter note or *crotchet* (♫).

c. A long syllable may be *protracted*, so as to occupy the time of three or four moræ. Such a syllable, if equal to three moræ, is represented by the sign  $\text{—}$  (or dotted quarter ♫•); if equal to four, by  $\text{—}$  (or the half note or *minim*, ♫).

d. A long syllable may be *contracted*, so as to take practically the time of a short one. Such a syllable is sometimes represented by the sign  $>$ .

e. A short syllable may be contracted so as to occupy less than one mora.

f. A pause sometimes occurs at the end of a verse or a series of verses, to fill up the time. A pause of one mora in a measure is indicated by the sign  $\wedge$ ; one of two moræ by the sign  $\overline{\wedge}$ .




g. One or more syllables are sometimes placed before the proper beginning of the measure. Such syllables are called an *Anacrûsis* or *prelude*.<sup>1</sup>

The *anacrusis* is regularly equal to the unaccented part of the measure.




<sup>1</sup> The same thing occurs in modern poetry, and in modern music any unaccented syllables at the beginning are treated as an *anacrusis*, i.e. they make an incomplete measure before the first bar. This was not the case in ancient music. The ancients seem to have treated any unaccented syllable at the beginning as belonging to the following accented ones, so as to make with them a foot or measure. Thus it would seem that there was an original form of Indo-European poetry which was iambic in its structure, or which, at least, accented the second syllable rather than the first.

609. The feet most frequently employed in Latin verse, together with their musical notation, are the following:—




**a. TRIPLE OR UNEQUAL MEASURES ( $\frac{3}{4}$ )<sup>1</sup>**

1. Trochee ( $\text{— } \cup$  = ): as, *rēgīs*.
2. Iambus ( $\cup \text{—}$  = ): as, *dūcēs*.
3. Tribrach<sup>2</sup> ( $\cup \cup \cup$  = ): as, *hōmīnīs*.





**b. DOUBLE OR EQUAL MEASURES ( $\frac{2}{4}$ )**

1. Dactyl ( $\text{— } \cup \cup$  = ): as, *cōnsūlīs*.
2. Anapæst ( $\cup \cup \text{—}$  = ): as, *mōnūōs*.
3. Spondee ( $\text{— } \text{—}$  = ): as, *rēgēs*.

**c. SIX-TIMED MEASURES ( $\frac{3}{2}$ )**

1. Ionic *ā māiōre* ( $\text{— } \text{— } \cup \cup$  = ): as, *cōnfēcērūt*.
2. Ionic *ā minōre* ( $\cup \cup \text{— } \text{—}$  = ): as, *rētūlissent*.
3. Choriambus ( $\text{— } \cup \cup \text{—}$  = ): as, *contūlērant*.

**d. QUINARY OR HEMIOLIC<sup>3</sup> MEASURES ( $\frac{5}{4}$ )**

1. Cretic ( $\text{— } \cup \text{—}$  = ): as, *cōnsūlēs*.
2. Pæon *prīmus* ( $\text{— } \cup \cup \cup$  = ): as, *cōnsūlībūs*.
3. Pæon *quārtus* ( $\cup \cup \cup \text{—}$  = ): as, *itnēri*.
4. Bacchius ( $\cup \text{— } \text{—}$  = ): as, *āmicōs*.

<sup>1</sup> Called *diplosic*, the two parts (Thesis and Arsis) being in the ratio of 2 to 1.

<sup>2</sup> Not found as a fundamental foot, but only as the resolution of a Trochee or Iambus.

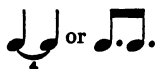

<sup>3</sup> Called *hemiotic*, the two parts being in the ratio of 1 to 1½, or of 2 to 3.

NOTE.—Several compound feet are mentioned by the grammarians, viz. *Pyrrhic* (∪ ∪); *Amphibrach* (∪ — ∪); *Antibacchius* (— — ∪); *Proceleusmatic* (∪ ∪ ∪ ∪); the *Molossus* (— — —); the 2d and 3d *Pæon*, having a long syllable in the 2d or 3d place, with three short ones; 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th *Epitritus*, having a short syllable in the 1st, 2d, 3d, or 4th place, with three long ones.

### Irrational Feet

e. Feet with these apparent quantities do not always occupy equal time, but may be contracted or prolonged to suit the series in which they occur. They are then called *irrational*, because the thesis and arsis do not have their normal ratio.<sup>1</sup> Such are:—

Irrational Spendee:

(in place of a Trochee)  $\angle >$  }  or   
 (in place of an Iambus)  $> \angle$  }

Cyclic Dactyl (in place of a Trochee):

$\angle \cup$  or  $\cup \angle$  =  or 

Cyclic Anapæst (in place of an Iambus):

$\cup \angle$  or  $\cup \cup \angle$  =  or 

The apparent dactyl  $> \cup \cup$ , as a substitute for an iambus, and the apparent anapæst  $\cup \cup >$ , as a substitute for a trochee, occur frequently in the dramatic writers.

NOTE.—Narrative poetry was written for rhythmical recitation, or chant, with instrumental accompaniment; and Lyrical poetry for rhythmical melody, or singing. It must be borne in mind that in ancient music—which in this differs widely from modern—the rhythm of the melody was identical with the rhythm of the text. The lyric poetry was to be sung; the poet was musician and composer, as well as author. To this day a poet is said conventionally to “sing.”

Thus a correct understanding of the rhythmical structure of the verse gives us the *time*, though not the *tune*, to which it was actually sung. The exact time, however, as indicated by the succession of long and short syllables, was varied according to certain laws of so-called “Rhythmic,” as will be explained below. In reading ancient verse it is necessary to bear in mind not only the variations in the relative length of syllables, but the occasional pause necessary to fill out the measure; and to remember that the rhythmical accent is the only one of importance, though the words should be distinguished carefully, and the sense preserved. Poetry should not be *scanned*, but read metrically.

<sup>1</sup> It seems probable that both thesis and arsis of an irrational foot were affected by the necessity of preserving the rhythmical time of the foot.

### Substitution

**610.** In many cases measures of the same time may be substituted for each other, a long syllable taking the place of two short ones, or two short syllables the place of a long one.

In the former case the measure is said to be *contracted*; in the latter, to be *resolved*:—

*a.* A Spondee (— —) may take the place of a Dactyl (— ∪ ∪) or an Anapæst (∪ ∪ —); and a Tribrach (∪ ∪ ∪) may take the place of a Trochee (— ∪) or an Iambus (∪ —). The optional substitution of one long syllable for two short ones is represented by the sign ∪∪.

*b.* When a long syllable having the Ictus (§ 611. *a*) is resolved, the ictus properly belongs to both the resulting short syllables; but for convenience the mark of accent is placed on the first:—

núnc ex|pérlar | sítnē ā|cétō | tíbī cōr | ácrē in | péctō|rē. — Pl. Bac. 405.

└ > | ∪ ∪ > | └ ∪ | └ > | ∪ ∪ ∪ | └ > | └ ∪ | └ ∪ ∪

### The Musical Accent

**611.** That part of the measure which receives the *stress of voice* (the musical accent) is called the Thesis; the unaccented part is called the Arsis.<sup>1</sup>

*a.* The stress of voice laid upon the Thesis is called the Ictus (*beat*). It is marked thus: └ ∪ ∪.

*b.* The ending of a word within a measure is called Cæsura. When this coincides with a rhetorical pause, it is called *the* Cæsura of the verse, and is of main importance as affecting the melody or rhythm.

*c.* The coincidence of the end of a word with that of a measure is called Diæresis.

<sup>1</sup> The Thesis signifies properly the *putting down* (*thesis*, from *τίθημι*, *put*, *place*) of the foot in beating time, in the march or dance ("downward beat"), and the Arsis the *raising* (*arsis*, from *ἀείρω*, *raise*) of the foot ("upward beat"). By the Latin grammarians these terms were made to mean, respectively, the ending and the beginning of a measure. By a misunderstanding which has prevailed till recently, since the time of Bentley, their true signification has been reversed. They will here be used in accordance with their ancient meaning, as has now become more common. This metrical accent, recurring at regular intervals of time, is what constitutes the essence of the rhythm of poetry as distinguished from prose, and should be constantly kept in mind. The error mentioned arose from applying to trochaic and dactylic verse a definition which was true only of iambic or anapæstic.

## VERSIFICATION

## THE VERSE

**612.** A single line of poetry — that is, a series of feet set in a recognized order — is called a Verse.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE. — Most of the common verses originally consisted of two series (*hemistichs*), but the joint between them is often obscured. It is marked in Iambic and Trochaic Tetrameter by the *Diæresis*, in Dactylic Hexameter by the *Cæsura*.

**a.** A verse lacking a syllable at the end is called Catalectic, that is, having a pause to fill the measure; when the end syllable is not lacking, the verse is called Acatalectic, and has no such pause.

**b.** A final syllable, regularly short, is sometimes lengthened before a pause:<sup>2</sup> it is then said to be long by *Diastole*: —

nostrōr<sup>um</sup> obruimur, — oriturque miserrima caedēs. — Aen. ii. 411.

**c.** The last syllable of any verse may be indifferently long or short (*syllaba anceps*).

## Scansion and Elision

**d.** To divide the verse into its appropriate measures, according to the rules of quantity and versification, is called *scanning* or *scansion* (*scānsiō*, a *climbing* or advance by steps, from *scandō*).

NOTE. — In *reading* verse rhythmically, care should be taken to preserve the measure or time of the syllables, but at the same time not to destroy or confuse the words themselves, as is often done in *scanning*.

**e.** In scanning, a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word (unless an interjection) is partially suppressed when the next word begins with a vowel or with *h*. This is called Elision (*bruising*).<sup>3</sup>

In reading it is usual entirely to suppress elided syllables. Strictly, however, they should be sounded lightly.

<sup>1</sup> The word Verse (*versus*) signifies a *turning back*, i.e. to begin again in like manner, as opposed to Prose (*prorsus* or *prōversus*), which means *straight ahead*.

<sup>2</sup> This usage is comparatively rare, most cases where it appears to be found being caused by the retention of an originally long quantity.

<sup>3</sup> The practice of Elision is followed in Italian and French poetry, and is sometimes adopted in English, particularly in the older poets: —

T' inveigle and invite th' unwary sense. — *Comus* 538.

In early Latin poetry a final syllable ending in *s* often loses this letter even before a consonant (cf. § 15. 7): —

seniō cōfectu<sup>s</sup> quiescit. — *Enn.* (Cat. M. 14).

**NOTE.**—Elision is sometimes called by the Greek name *Synalœpha* (*smearing*). Rarely a syllable is elided at the end of a verse when the next verse begins with a vowel: this is called *Synapheia* (*binding*).

*f.* A final *m*, with the preceding vowel, is suppressed in like manner when the next word begins with a vowel or *h*: this is called *Ecthlipsis* (*squeezing out*):—

mōnstr<sup>um</sup> horrend<sup>um</sup>, inform<sup>e</sup>, ingēns, cui lūmen adēsumptum.

—Aen. iii. 658.

**NOTE 1.**—Final *m* has a feeble nasal sound, so that its partial suppression before the initial vowel of the following word was easy.

**NOTE 2.**—The monosyllables *dō*, *dem*, *spē*, *spem*, *sim*, *stō*, *stem*, *qui* (plural), and monosyllabic interjections are never elided; nor is an iambic word elided in dactylic verse. Elision is often evaded by skilful collocation of words.

*g.* Elision is sometimes omitted when a word ending in a vowel has a special emphasis, or is succeeded by a pause. This omission is called *Hiatus* (*gaping*).

**NOTE.**—The final vowel is sometimes shortened in such cases.

### FORMS OF VERSE

**613.** A verse receives its name from its dominant or fundamental foot: as, *Dactylic*, *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapæstic*; and from the number of measures (single or double) which it contains: as, *Hexameter*, *Tetrameter*, *Trimeter*, *Dimeter*.

**NOTE.**—Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapæstic verses are measured not by single feet, but by pairs (*dipodia*), so that six iambs make a *Trimeter*.

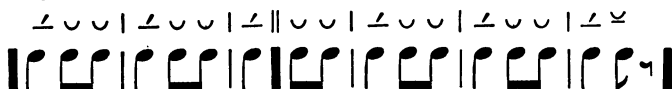
**614.** A Stanza, or Strophe, consists of a definite number of verses ranged in a fixed order.

Many stanzas are named after some eminent poet: as, *Sapphic* (from Sappho), *Alcaic* (from Alcæus), *Archilochian* (from Archilochus), *Horatian* (from Horace), and so on.

### DACTYLIC VERSE

#### Dactylic Hexameter

**615.** The Dactylic Hexameter, or *Heroic Verse*, consists theologically of six dactyls. It may be represented thus:—





**NOTE.**—The last foot is usually said to be a spondee, but is in reality a trochee standing for a dactyl, since the final syllable is not measured.

*a.* For any foot, except the fifth, a spondee may be substituted.

*b.* Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth foot; the verse is then called *spondaic* and usually ends with a word of four syllables.

Thus in *Ecl.* iv. 49 the verse ends with *incrémentum*.

*c.* The hexameter has regularly one *principal cæsura*—sometimes two—almost always accompanied by a pause in the sense.

1. The principal cæsura is usually *after the thesis* (less commonly *in the arsis*) of the third foot, dividing the verse into two parts in sense and rhythm. See examples in *d.*

2. It may also be *after the thesis* (less commonly *in the arsis*) of the fourth foot. In this case there is often another cæsura in the second foot, so that the verse is divided into three parts:—

pártē fē'rōx || ār|dēnsquē ōcū|līs || et | sībīlā | cōllā. — *Aen.* v. 277.

**NOTE.**—Often the only indication of the *principal* among a number of cæsuras is the break in the sense.

A cæsura occurring after the first syllable of a foot is called *masculine*. A cæsura occurring after the second syllable of a foot is called *feminine* (as in the fifth foot of the third and fourth verses in *d.*). A cæsura may also be found in any foot of the verse, but a proper *cæsural pause* could hardly occur in the first or sixth.

When the fourth foot ends a word, the break (properly a *dīrēsis*) is sometimes improperly called *bucolic cæsura*, from its frequency in pastoral poetry.

*d.* The first seven verses of the *Æneid*, divided according to the foregoing rules, will appear as follows. The principal cæsura in each verse is marked by double lines:—

Armā vī|rumquē cā|nō || Trō|īae qui | prīmūš āb | ōrīs  
 Ītāl|am fā|tō prōfū|gus || Lā|viniāquē | vēnīt  
 Itōrā, | mult<sup>um</sup> il|le et ter|rīs || iac|tātūs ēt | altō  
 vī sūpē|rum || sae|vāe mēmō|rem Itū|nōnīs ōb | Irām;  
 multā quō|quē et bel|lō pas|sus || dum | condērēt | urbēm,  
 Infr|etquē dē|ōs Lātī|ō, || gēnūs | undē Lā|tīnum,  
 Albā|niquē pā|trēs, || at|quē altae | moenā | Rōmāe.

1. The *feminine cæsura* is seen in the following:—

Dīs gēnī|tī pōtū|ērē: || tē|nent mēdī|<sup>a</sup> omnī| silvae. — *Aen.* vi. 131.

**NOTE.**—The Hexameter is thus illustrated in English verse:—

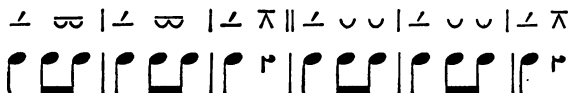
Over the sea, past Crete, on the Syrian shore to the southward,  
 Dwells in the well-tilled lowland a dark-haired Æthiop people,  
 Skilful with needle and loom, and the arts of the dyer and carver,  
 Skilful, but feeble of heart; for they know not the lords of Olympus,  
 Lovers of men; neither broad-browed Zeus, nor Pallas Athénē,  
 Teacher of wisdom to heroes, bestower of might in the battle;  
 Share not the cunning of Hermes, nor list to the songs of Apollo,  
 Fearing the stars of the sky, and the roll of the blue salt water.

—Kingsley's *Andromeda*.

## Elegiac Stanza

**616.** The Elegiac Stanza consists of two verses, — a Hexameter followed by a Pentameter.<sup>1</sup>

The Pentameter verse is the same as the Hexameter, except that it omits the last half of the third foot and of the sixth foot: —



*a.* The Pentameter verse is therefore to be scanned as *two half-verses*, the second of which always consists of two dactyls followed by a single syllable.

*b.* The Pentameter has no regular Cæsura; but the first half-verse must always end with a word (*diæresis*, § 611. c), which is followed by a pause to complete the measure.<sup>2</sup>

*c.* The following verses will illustrate the forms of the Elegiac Stanza: —

cum sūbīt | illī|us || trīs|tissimā | noctīs ī|māgō  
 quā mīhī | suprē|mum ˘ || tempūs īn | urbē fū|it, ˘  
 cum rēpē|tō noc|tem || quā | tot mīhī | cārā rē|līquī,  
 lābītūr | ex ōcū|lis ˘ || nunc quōquē | guttā mē|ls. ˘  
 iam prōpē | lūx ādē|rat || quā | mē dis|cēdērē | Caesar  
 finībūs | extrē|mae ˘ || iussērāt | Ausōnī|ae. ˘

— Ov. Trist. i. 3.

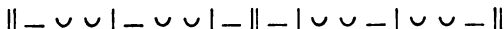
NOTE. — The Elegiac Stanza differs widely in character from hexameter verse (of which it is a mere modification) by its division into Distichs, each of which must have its own sense complete. It is employed in a great variety of compositions, — epistolary, amatory, and mournful, — and was especially a favorite of the poet Ovid. It has been illustrated in English verse, imitated from the German: —

In the Hex|ameter | rises || the | fountain's | silvery | column;  
 In the Pen|tameter | aye || falling in | melody | back.

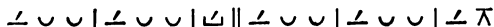
## Other Dactylic Verses

**617.** Other dactylic verses or half-verses are occasionally used by the lyric poets.

<sup>1</sup> Called *pentameter* by the old grammarians, who divided it, formally, into five feet (two dactyls or spondees, a spondee, and two anapaests), as follows: —



<sup>2</sup> The time of this pause, however, may be filled by the *protraction* of the preceding syllable: —



**a.** The Dactylic Tetrameter alternates with the hexameter, forming the *Alcmanian Strophe*, as follows:—

ō for|tēs pē|iōrāquē | passi  
mēcum | saepē vl|rī, || nunc | vīnō | pellītē | cūrās;  
crās in|gēns itē|rābīmūs | aequōr.

— Hor. Od. i. 7 (so 28; Ep. 12).

**b.** The Dactylic Penthemim (five half-feet) consists of half a pentameter verse. It is used in combination with the Hexameter to form the *First Archilochian Strophe*:—

diffū|gērē nī|vēs, || rēdē|unt iam | grāmīnā | campis,  
arbōrī|busquē cō|mae;  
mūtāt | terrā vl|cēs || et | dēcres|centiā | ripās  
flūmīnā | praetērē|unt. — Hor. Od. iv. 7.

For the Fourth Archilochian Strophe (Archilochian heptameter, alternating with iambic trimeter catalectic), see § 626. 11.

## IAMBIC VERSE

### Iambic Trimeter

**618.** The Iambic Trimeter is the ordinary verse of dramatic dialogue. It consists of three measures, each containing a double iambus (*iambic dipody*). The cæsure is usually in the third foot.

⋈ ∩ ∩ | ⋈ || ∩ ∩ ∩ | ⋈ ∩ ∩ ∩

NOTE. — The sign ⋈ ∩ denotes possible substitution of an irrational spondee (> ∩) for an iambus (∩ ∩).

**a.** The Iambic Trimeter is often used in lyric poetry (1) as an independent system, or (2) alternating with the Dimeter to form the *Iambic Strophe*, as follows:—

(1) iam iam effīcā|ci || dō mănūs | sciētīāē  
supplēx ēt ō|rō || régnā pēr | Prōsērpīnāē,  
pēr ēt Diā|nae || nōn mōvén|dā nūmīnā,  
pēr ātquē lib|rōs || cārminūm | vālētīūm  
dēfixā caē|lō || dēvōcā|rē sīdērā,  
Cānfīdā, pār|cē || vōcībūs | tandēm sārīs,  
cītūmquē rét|rō || rétrō sōl|vē tūrbīnēm. — Hor. Epod. 17.

The last two lines may be thus translated, to show the movement in English:—

Oh! stay, Canidia, stay thy rites of sorcery,  
Thy charm unbinding backward let thy swift wheel fly!

(2) *bēātūs* |l|ē || *quī* p̄cūl | *nēgōtīa*,  
 ut p̄scā gēns | mortālīum,  
*pāternā* rŭ|rā || *bībūs* ex|ercēt sūs,  
*sōlūtūs* ōm|ni fēnōrē;  
*nēquē* ex|cītā|tur || *clāssicō* | mīlēs trūcf,  
*nēquē* hōrrēt f|rātūm mārē. — Hor. Epod. 2.

**b.** In the stricter form of Iambic Trimeter an irrational spondee ( $> \angle$ ) or its equivalent (a cyclic anapaest  $\cup \cup$  or an apparent dactyl  $> \cup \cup$ , § 609. e) may be regularly substituted for the first iambus of any dipody. A tribrach ( $\cup \cup \cup$ ) may stand for an iambus anywhere except in the last place. In the comic poets any of these forms or the proceleusmatic ( $\cup \cup \cup$ ) may be substituted in any foot except the last: —<sup>1</sup>

ō lūcīs āl|mē rēctōr || ét | caelī dēctūs!  
*quī* alternā cūr|rū spātīā || flām|mīfēr<sup>3</sup> āmblēns,  
*illūstrē* lae|tīs || exsērīs | terrīs cāpūt.

— Sen. Herc. Fur. 592-94.

*quid* quaerīs? ān|nōs || sēxāgīn|tā nātūs ēs.

— Ter. Haut. 62.

*hōmō* s<sup>um</sup>: hūmā|nī || nī ā m<sup>3</sup> āl|lēnūm pūtō.  
*vel* mē mōnē|r<sup>e</sup> hōc || vėl p̄cōn|tārī pūtā.

— id. 77, 78.

**c.** The Choliambic (*lame Iambic*) substitutes a trochee for the last iambus: —

||  $\angle \cup \angle$  |  $\angle$  ||  $\angle \cup \angle$  |  $\cup \angle \angle \cup$  ||  
*aequ<sup>3</sup>* ēst *bēā*tūs || āc pōē|mā cūm scribīt:  
*tam* gāudēt īn | sē, || tāmquē sē īp|sē mīrātūr.

— Catull. xxiii. 15, 16.

**NOTE.** — The verse may also be regarded as trochaic with anacrusis: as, —

$\angle$  :  $\angle \cup \angle \angle$  |  $\angle \cup \angle \cup$  |  $\angle \angle \cup$

**d.** The Iambic Trimeter Catalectic is represented as follows: —

||  $\angle \cup \angle$  |  $\angle$  ||  $\angle \cup \angle$  |  $\angle \angle$  ||

It is used in combination with other measures (see § 626. 11), and is shown in the following: —

*Vulcānūs* ār|dēns || ūrīt ōf|ficiānās. — Hor. Od. i. 4.

or in English: —

On purple peaks a deeper shade descending. — Scott.

<sup>1</sup> The greater freedom of substitution in the comedy is due to the fact that the verse is regarded as made up of separate feet rather than of dipodies.

## Other Iambic Measures

619. Other forms of Iambic verse are the following:—

*a.* The Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic (*Septēnārius*). This consists of seven and a half iambic feet, with diæresis after the fourth and with the same substitutions as in Iambic Trimeter:—

*n<sup>am</sup> idcirco arcés|sor, nūptiās || quod m<sup>i</sup> adpārā|rī sēnsit.*  
*quibus quidē quam faci|lē pōtūerāt || quiesci s<sup>i</sup> hīc | quiesset!*  
 —Ter. And. 690, 691.

The metrical scheme of these two verses may be represented as follows:—

|| > ˘ > ˘ | > ˘ ˘ ˘ || > ˘ ˘ ˘ | > ˘ ˘ ˘ ||  
 || ˘ ˘ ˘ > ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ || ˘ ˘ > ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ||

Its movement is like the following:—

In good king Charles's golden days, when loyalty no harm meant.  
 —Vicar of Bray.

*b.* The Iambic Tetrameter Acatalectic (*Octōnārius*). This consists of eight full iambic feet with the same substitutions as in Iambic Trimeter. Like the Septenarius it is used in lively dialogue:—

*dicāt eam dārē | nōs Phōrmīō|nī || nūptum nē | suscēnsēt;*  
*et māgis ess<sup>e</sup> ||<sup>um</sup> Idōnēum, || qu<sup>i</sup> ipsi sit fāmī||lārīōr.*  
 —Ter. Ph. 720, 721.

The metrical scheme of these two verses may be represented as follows:—

|| > ˘ ˘ > ˘ ˘ | > ˘ ˘ ˘ | > || ˘ > ˘ | > ˘ ˘ ˘ ||  
 || > ˘ ˘ > ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ || > ˘ > ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ||

*c.* The Iambic Dimeter. This may be either acatalectic or catalectic.

1. The Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic consists of four iambic feet. It is used in combination with some longer verse (see § 618. *a*).

2. The Iambic Dimeter Catalectic consists of three and a half iambic feet. It is used only in choruses:—

*quōnām crūen|tā Maénās,*  
*praecēps āmō|rē saevō,*  
*rāpītūr quōd īm|pōtēntī*  
*fācinūs pārāt | fūrōrē? — Sen. Med. 850–853.*

NOTE. — Owing to the fact that in modern music each measure begins with a downward beat, some scholars regard all these forms of Iambic verse as Trochaic verse with anacrusis (§ 618. *c. n.*).

## TROCHAIC VERSE

**620.** The most common form of Trochaic verse is the Tetrameter Catalectic (*Septēnārius*), consisting of four dipodies, the last of which lacks a syllable. There is regularly diæresis after the fourth foot:—

|| ∟ ∪ ∟ > | ∟ ∪ ∟ > || ∟ ∪ ∟ > | ∟ ∪ ∟ ^ ||

In musical notation:—

$\frac{6}{8}$  

ad t<sup>h</sup> advēnīō, spēm, sālūtē, || cōnsiliū<sup>m</sup>, auxiliū<sup>m</sup> expētēns.

—Ter. And. 319.

In English verse:—

Tell me nót in moúrnfú núbērs || lífe ís búť an émpťy dréam.

—Longfellow.

*a.* In the stricter form of the *Septenarius* substitutions are allowed only in the even feet, but in comedy the tribrach ∪ ∪ ∪, or an irrational spondee ∟ >, cyclic dactyl ∟ ∪ ∪, or apparent anapæst ∪ ∪ >, may be substituted for any of the first six feet; a tribrach for the seventh:—

íťídē<sup>m</sup> hābēt pētā<sup>m</sup> sū<sup>m</sup> ac vestítum: || tám cōnsímílist | átquē ēgō.  
stīrā, pēs, stā<sup>m</sup> tūrā, tōnsūs, || ōcūllī, nāsūm, | vél lābrā,  
mālae, méntum, | bár<sup>m</sup> bā, cōllus; || tótus! quíd ver<sup>m</sup> bīs ōpúst?  
sī tergūm cīcātrīcōsum, || nīhīl hōc sīmílist | sīmíllūs.

—Pl. Am. 443-446.

The metrical scheme of these four verses is as follows:—

	∪ ∪ ∪ ∟ ∪	∟ > ∟ >		∟ > ∪ ∪ >	∟ ∪ ∟ ^	
	∟ ∪ ∟ ∪	∟ ∪ ∟ ∪		∪ ∪ > ∟ >	∟ ∪ ∟ ^	
	∟ > ∟ >	∟ ∪ ∟ >		∟ > ∟ >	∟ ∪ ∟ ^	
	∟ > ∟ ∪	∟ > ∟ >		∟ > ∪ ∪ >	∪ ∪ ∪ ∟ ^	

*b.* The Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic (*Octōnārius*), consisting of four complete dipodies, occurs in the lyrical parts of comedy.

Substitutions as in the *Septenarius* are allowed except in the last foot.

*c.* Some other forms of trochaic verse are found in the lyric poets, in combination with other feet, either as whole lines or parts of lines:—

nōn ēbúr nē<sup>m</sup> quē aúrēūm. [Dimeter Catalectic.]

mēā rēn<sup>m</sup> dēt ín dōmó | lācūnār. [Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.]

—Hor. Od. ii. 18.

## MIXED MEASURES

**621.** Different measures may be combined in the same verse in two different ways. Either (1) a series of one kind is simply joined to a series of another kind (compare the changes of rhythm not uncommon in modern music); or (2) single feet of other measures are combined with the prevailing measures, in which case these odd feet are adapted by changing their quantity so that they become *irrational* (see § 609. e).

When enough measures of one kind occur to form a series, we may suppose a change of rhythm; when they are isolated, we must suppose adaptation. Of the indefinite number of possible combinations but few are found in Latin poetry.

**622.** The following verses, combining different rhythmical series, are found in Latin lyrical poetry:—

1. Greater Archilochian (Dactylic Tetrameter; Trochaic Tripody):—

|| ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ || ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ||

sólviṭtūr | ácris h|éms grā|tá vícē || véris | ét Fā|vónl. — Hor. Od. l. 4.

NOTE.—It is possible that the dactyls were cyclic; but the change of measure seems more probable.

2. Verse consisting of Dactylic Trimeter catalectic (*Dactylic Penthemim*); Iambic Dimeter:—

|| ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ || ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ||

scrífbērē | vérsicū|lōs || āmōrē pér|culsúm grāfī. — Hor. Epod. 11. 2.

## LOGAEDIC VERSE

**623.** Trochaic verses, containing in regular prescribed positions irrational measures or irrational feet (cf. § 609. e), are called Logaedic. The principal logaedic forms are—

1. Logaedic Tetrapody (*four feet*): GLYCONIC.
2. Logaedic Tripody (*three feet*): PHERECRATIC (often treated as a syncopated Tetrapody Catalectic).
3. Logaedic Dipody (*two feet*): this may be regarded as a *short Pherecratic*.

NOTE.—This mixture of irrational measures gives an effect approaching that of prose: hence the name Logaedic (λόγος, δειδή). These measures originated in the Greek lyric poetry, and were adopted by the Romans. All the Roman lyric metres not belonging to the regular iambic, trochaic, dactylic, or Ionic systems, were constructed on the basis of the three forms given above: viz., Logaedic systems consisting respectively of four, three, and two feet. The so-called Logaedic *Pentapody* consists of five feet, but is to be regarded as composed of two of the others.

**624.** Each logacædic form contains a single dactyl,<sup>1</sup> which may be either in the first, second, or third place. The verse may be catalectic or acatalectic:—

*Glyconic**Pherecratic*

- i. || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ( ∪ ) ||      || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ( ∪ ) ||  
 ii. || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ( ∪ ) ||      || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ( ∪ ) || or  
 || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ( ∪ ) ||  
 iii. || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ( ∪ ) ||      || — ∪ ∪ | — ( ∪ ) ||

**NOTE.**—The shorter Pherecratic (*dipody*) (— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪), if catalectic, appears to be a simple Choriambus (— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪); and, in general, the effect of the logacædic forms is Choriambic. In fact, they were so regarded by the later Greek and Latin metricians, and these metres have obtained the general name of Choriambic. But they are not true choriambic, though they may very likely have been felt to be such by the composer, who imitated the forms without much thought of their origin. They may be read (scanned), therefore, on that principle. But it is better to read them as *logacædic* measures; and that course is followed here.

**625.** The verses constructed upon the several Logacædic forms or models are the following:—

1. Glyconic (*Second Glyconic*, catalectic):—

|| — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — || ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ (or ♪ ♪) |

Rómae | prínclps | úrb|úm.

In English:—

Fórms more réal than líving mán.—*Shelley*.

**NOTE.**—In this and most of the succeeding forms the foot preceding the dactyl is always irrational in Horace, consisting of an irrational spondee (— >).

2. Aristophanic (*First Pherecratic*):—

|| — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ || ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ |

témpĕrāt | órā | frén|s.—Hor. Od. i. 8.

**NOTE.**—It is very likely that this was made equal in time to the preceding by protracting the last two syllables:—

|| — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ || ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ |

<sup>1</sup> Different Greek poets adopted fixed types in regard to the place of the dactyls, and so a large number of verses arose, each following a strict law, which were imitated by the Romans as distinct metres.



3. Adonic (*First Pherecratic*, shortened):—

|| — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ||

Térrüft | úrbém. — Hor.

Or perhaps:—

|| — ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪ ∪ || — ∪ ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ||

4. Pherecratic (*Second Pherecratic*):—

|| — ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪ ∪ || — ∪ ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ||

crás dónábérís haédó. — Hor.

Often scanned as follows:—

— ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪

5. Lesser Asclepiadic (*Second Pherecratic* with syncope and *First Pherecratic* catalectic):—

|| — ∪ > | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ||

Maécénás átvávís édtís régíbús. — Hor.

6. Greater Asclepiadic (the same as 5, with a syncopated *Logædic Dipody* interposed):—

|| — ∪ > | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ||

tú nē quacsiérís — scírē nēfás — quém mīhī, quém tībī. — Hor.

7. Lesser Sapphic (*Logædic Pentapody*, with dactyl in the third place):—

|| — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ > | — ∪ || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ||

intēgér vítaé scélérísquē púrús. — Hor.

Or in English:—

Brilliant hópes, all wóven in górgéous tíssues. — Longfellow.

8. Greater Sapphic (*Third Glyconic*; *First Pherecratic*):—

|| — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ > | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ||

té déós óró Sýbárin || cúr prōpērás ámándó. — Hor.

9. Lesser Alcaic (*Logædic Tetrapody*, two irrational dactyls, two trochees):—

|| — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ||

vírg'nībús pūrísquē cántó. — Hor.

10. Greater Alcaic (*Logædic Pentapody*, catalectic, with anacrusis, and dactyl in the third place, — compare *Lesser Sapphic*): —

|| > : ˘ ˘ | ˘ > || ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ||  
iust<sup>um</sup> ét ténácem || prǒpǒsítí virúm. — Hor.

NOTE. — Only the above logædic forms are employed by Horace.

11. Phalæcean (*Logædic Pentapody*, with dactyl in the second place): —

|| ˘ > | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ||  
quaénam té mǎlǎ méns, mǐséli Rǎuidí,  
ágit praécipit<sup>em</sup> ín mǐsés iámbós? — Catull. xl.

In English: —

Górgeous flowerets ín the súnlight shíning. — *Longfellow*.

12. Glyconic Pherecratic (*Second Glyconic* with syncope, and *Second Pherecratic*): —

|| ˘ > | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ || ˘ > | ˘ ˘ | ˘ | ˘ ˘ ||  
ó Cǒlóniǎ quae cǔpis || póntě lúďěřě lóngó. — Catull. xvii.

## METRES OF HORACE

626. The Odes of Horace include nineteen varieties of stanza. These are: —

1. Alcaic, consisting of two Greater Alcaics (10), one Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis, and one Lesser Alcaic (9)<sup>1</sup>: —

iust<sup>um</sup> ét tenácem || prǒposití virúm  
nǒn cívi<sup>um</sup> árdor || práva iubéntiúm,  
nǒn vǔltus íntantís tyránni  
ménťe quatít solidǎ, nequ<sup>e</sup> Aúster. — Od. iii. 8.

(Found in Od. i. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; iii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; iv. 4, 9, 14, 15.)

NOTE. — The Alcaic Strophe is named after the Greek poet Alcæus of Lesbos, and was a special favorite with Horace, of whose Odes thirty-seven are in this form. It is sometimes called the *Horatian Stanza*.

2. Sapphic (*minor*), consisting of three Lesser Sapphics (7) and one Adonic (3): —

iám satís terrís || nivis áťque dífræ  
grándinis mǐsít || pater ét rubénťe  
déterǎ sacrás || iaculátus árcis  
térruit úrbem. — Od. i. 2.

(Found in Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11; Carm. Saec.)

<sup>1</sup> The figures refer to the foregoing list (§ 625).

NOTE.—The Sapphic Stanza is named after the poetess Sappho of Lesbos, and was a great favorite with the ancients. It is used by Horace in twenty-five Odes—more frequently than any other except the Alcaic.

3. Sapphic (*major*), consisting of one Aristophanic (2) and one Greater Sapphic (8):—

Lýdia dñc, per ómnfs  
té deós óró, Sybarín || cúr properás amándó. —Od. i. 8.

4. Asclepiadean I (*minor*), consisting of Lesser Asclepiadics (5):—

éxēgí monumént<sup>um</sup> || aére perénniús  
régálque sitú || pýramid<sup>um</sup> áltiús. —Od. iii. 30.  
(Found in Od. i. 1; iii. 30; iv. 8.)

5. Asclepiadean II, consisting of one Glyconic (1) and one Lesser Asclepiadic (5):—

návis quæ tibi créditúm  
débēs Vērgiliúm, || fñibus Átticís  
réddās incolumém, precór,  
ét servēs animæ || dñmidíum meæ. —Od. i. 3.  
(Found in Od. i. 3, 13, 19, 36; iii. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; iv. i, 3.)

6. Asclepiadean III, consisting of three Lesser Asclepiadics (5) and one Glyconic (1):—

quís dēsfderió || sñt pudor aút modús  
tám cárí capítis? || præcipe lúgubrís  
cántús, Mēlpomené, || cúí liquidám patér  
vócem cúm cithará dedíft. —Od. i. 24.  
(Found in Od. i. 6, 15, 24, 33; ii. 12; iii. 10, 16; iv. 5, 12.)

7. Asclepiadean IV, consisting of two Lesser Asclepiadics (5), one Pherecratic (4), and one Glyconic (1):—

ó fōns Bándusiaé || spléndidiór vitró,  
dúlcí dñgne meró, || nōn sine flóribús,  
crás dōnāberis hædó  
cúí frōns túrgida cōrnibús. —Od. iii. 13.  
(Found in Od. i. 5, 14, 21, 23; iii. 7, 13; iv. 13.)

8. Asclepiadean V (*major*), consisting of Greater Asclepiadics (6):—

tú nē quæsierís, || scñre nefás! || quém mihi, quém tíbí  
fñem dñ dederínt, || Letíconoé, || néc Babylóniós  
téntáris numerós. —Od. i. 11.  
(Found in Od. i. 11, 18; iv. 10.)

9. Alcmanian, consisting of Dactylic Hexameter (§ 615) alternating with Tetrameter (§ 617. a). (Od. i. 7, 28; Epod. 12.)

10. Archilochian I, consisting of a Dactylic Hexameter alternating with a Dactylic Penthemim (see § 617. *b*). (Od. iv. 7.)

11. Archilochian IV, consisting of a Greater Archilochian (*heptameter*, § 622. 1), followed by Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (§ 618. *d*). The stanza consists of two pairs of verses:—

solvitur ácris hiems grátá vice || Véris ét Favóni,  
trahúntque siccás || máchinaé carínás;  
áo neque iám stabulís gaudét pecus, || aut arátor igni,  
nec práta cánis || álbicánt pruínis. — Od. i. 4.

12. Iambic Trimeter alone (see § 618). (Epod. 17.)

13. Iambic Strophe (see § 618. *a*). (Epod. 1–10.)

14. Dactylic Hexameter alternating with Iambic Dimeter:—

nóx erat, ét caeló || fulgébat lúna serénó  
intér minóra sídera,  
cúm tū, mágnórúm || nūmén laesúra deórúm,  
in vérba iúrábás meá. — Epod. 15. (So in Epod. 14.)

15. Dactylic Hexameter with Iambic Trimeter (§ 618):—

áltera iám teritúr || bellís civílibus aétás,  
suís et ípsa Róma || víribús ruít. — Epod. 16.

16. Verse of Four Lesser Ionics (§ 609. *c*. 2):—

miserár<sup>um</sup> est | nequ<sup>e</sup> amóri | dare lúdum | neque dulci  
mala vínó | laver<sup>e</sup> aut ex|animári | metuentis. — Od. iii. 12.

17. Iambic Trimeter (§ 618); Dactylic Penthemim (§ 617. *b*); Iambic Dimeter:—

Pettí, nihíl mē || sícut ántéá iuvát  
scríbere vérsiculós || amóre pérculsúm graví. — Epod. 11.

18. Dactylic Hexameter; Iambic Dimeter; Dactylic Penthemim (§ 617. *b*):

hórrida témpetás || caelúm contráxit, et ímbrés  
nivésque déddúcúnt Iovém; || núnc mare, núnc silváe . . .  
— Epod. 13.

19. Trochaic Dimeter, Iambic Trimeter, each catalectic (see § 620. *c*).

## INDEX TO THE METRES OF HORACE

### LIB. I

1. Maecénas atavis: 4.
2. Iam satis terris: 2.
3. Sic tē diva: 5.
4. Solvitur ácris hiems: 11.
5. Quis multā: 7.
6. Scribēris Variō: 6.
7. Laudābunt alii: 9.

8. Lŷdia dic: 3.
9. Vidēs ut altā: 1.
10. Mercuri fácunde nepōs: 2.
11. Tū nē quaesieris: 8.
12. Quem virum: 2.
13. Cum tū Lŷdia: 5.
14. Ō nāvis: 7.

15. Pāstor cum traheret: 6.
16. Ō mātē pulchrā: 1.
17. Vēlōx amoenum: 1.
18. Nullam Vāre: 8.
19. Māter saeva: 5.
20. Vile pōtābis: 2.
21. Diānam tenerae: 7.
22. Integer vitae: 2.
23. Vitās inulēō: 7.
24. Quis dēfideriō: 6.
25. Parcius iūctās: 2.
26. Mūsīs amicus: 1.

27. Nātis in ūsum: 1.
28. Tē maris: 9.
29. Icci beātis: 1.
30. Ō Venus: 2.
31. Quid dēdicātum: 1.
32. Poscimur: 2.
33. Albī nē doleās: 6.
34. Parcus deōrum: 1.
35. Ō diva: 1.
36. Et tūre: 5.
37. Nunc est bibendum: 1.
38. Persicōs ōdi: 2.

## LIB. II

1. Mōtum ex Metellō: 1.
2. Nullus argentō: 2.
3. Aequam mementō: 1.
4. Nē sit ancillae: 2.
5. Nōndum subāctā: 1.
6. Septimi Gādēs: 2.
7. Ō saepe mēcum: 1.
8. Ūlla sī iūris: 2.
9. Nōn semper imbrēs: 1.
10. Rēctius vivēs: 2.

11. Quid bellicōsus: 1.
12. Nōlis longa: 6.
13. Ille et nefastō: 1.
14. Eheu fugācēs: 1.
15. Iam pauca: 1.
16. Ōtium dīvōs: 2.
17. Cūr mē querellis: 1.
18. Nōn ebur: 19.
19. Bacchum in remōtis: 1.
20. Nōn ūsitātā: 1.

## LIB. III

1. Ōdī profānum: 1.
2. Angustam amicē: 1.
3. Iūstum et tenācem: 1.
4. Dēscende caelō: 1.
5. Caelō tonantem: 1.
6. Dēlicta māiōrum: 1.
7. Quid fies: 7.
8. Mārtis caelebs: 2.
9. Dōnec grātus: 5.
10. Extrēmum Tanain: 6.
11. Mercuri nam tē: 2.
12. Miserarum est: 16.
13. Ō fōns Bandusiae: 7.
14. Herculis ritū: 2.
15. Uxor pauperis: 5.

16. Inclūsam Danaēn: 6.
17. Aeli vetustō: 1.
18. Faune nymphārum: 2.
19. Quantum distet: 5.
20. Nōn vidēs: 2.
21. Ō nāta mēcum: 1.
22. Montium cūstōs: 2.
23. Caelō supinās: 1.
24. Intāctās opulentior: 5.
25. Quō mē Bacche: 5.
26. Vixi puellis: 1.
27. Impiōs parrae: 2.
28. Fēstō quid: 5.
29. Tyrrhēna rēgum: 1.
30. Exēgi monumentum: 4.

## LIB. IV

1. Intermissa Venus: 5.
2. Pindarum quisquis: 2.
3. Quem tū Melpomenē: 5.
4. Quālem ministrum: 1.
5. Divis orte bonis: 6.
6. Dive quem prolēs: 2.
7. Diffūgere nivēs: 10.
8. Dōnārem paterās: 4.

9. Nē forte crēdās: 1.
  10. Ō crūdēlis adhūc: 8.
  11. Est mihi nōnum: 2.
  12. Iam vēris comitēs: 6.
  13. Audivēre Lycē: 7.
  14. Quae cūra patrum: 1.
  15. Phoebus volentem: 1.
- Carmen Saeculāre: 2.*

## EPODES

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Ibis Liburnis: 13.      | 10. Mala soluta: 13.       |
| 2. Beatus ille: 13.        | 11. Peti nihil: 17.        |
| 3. Parentis olim: 13.      | 12. Quid tibi vis: 9.      |
| 4. Lupis et agnis: 13.     | 13. Horrida tempestas: 18. |
| 5. At o deorum: 13.        | 14. Mollis inertia: 14.    |
| 6. Quid immerentis: 13.    | 15. Nox erat: 14.          |
| 7. Quod quod scelesti: 13. | 16. Altera iam: 15.        |
| 8. Rogare longo: 13.       | 17. Iam iam efficaci: 12.  |
| 9. Quando repostum: 13.    |                            |

627. Other lyric poets use other combinations of the above mentioned verses:—

a. *Glyconics* with one *Pherecratic* (both imperfect):—

Dfā|nae sūmūs | in fidē  
pūel|lae et pūē|r<sup>s</sup> intēgrī:  
Dfā|nām, pūē|r<sup>s</sup> intēgrī  
pūel|laequē cā|nā|mūs. — Catull. xxxiv.

b. *Sapphics*, in a series of single lines, closing with an *Adonic*:—

Ān mā|gīs dī|rī trēmū|érē | Mānēs  
Hércū|<sup>em</sup>? ét vī|sūm cānīs | infē|rōrūm  
fūgīt | ābrup|tīs trēpī|dūs cā|tēnīs?  
fāllī|mūr: lae|tē vēnīt | éccē | vūltū,  
quēm tū|līt Poe|ās; hūmē|rīsquē | tēlā  
gēstāt | ét nō|tās pōpū|līs phā|retrās  
Hércūlīs | hérēs. — Sen. Herc. Oct. 1600-1606.

c. *Sapphics* followed by *Glyconics*, of indefinite number (id. Herc. Fur. 830-874, 875-894).

## MISCELLANEOUS

628. Other measures occur in various styles of poetry.

a. Anapaestic (§ 609. b. 2) verses of various lengths are found in dramatic poetry. The spondee, dactyl, or proceleusmatic may be substituted for the anapaest:—

hic hōmōst | omni<sup>um</sup> hōmī|num praē|cipūōs  
vōlūptā|tībūs gaū|dīsque án|tēpōtēns.  
Itā cōm|mōdā quae | cūp<sup>o</sup> ē|vēnītūt,  
quōd āgō | sūbīt, ād|sēcūē | sēquītūr:  
Itā gaū|dium sūp|pēdītāt. — Pl. Trin. 1115-1119.

b. Bacchiac (§ 609. d. 4) verses (five-timed) occur in the dramatic poets, — very rarely in Terence, more commonly in Plautus, — either in verses of two feet (Dimeter) or of four (Tetrameter). They are treated very freely, as are

all measures in early Latin. The long syllables may be resolved, or the *molossus* (three longs) substituted :—

multās rēs | sīmt<sup>a</sup> in | mēo cor|dē vōrsō,  
mult<sup>um</sup> in cō|gītāndō | dōlōr<sup>em</sup> in|dīpīscōr.  
ēgōmēt mē | cōg<sup>o</sup> ēt mā|cēr<sup>o</sup> ēt dē|fātīgō;  
māgīster | mīh<sup>i</sup> ēxer|cītōr ān|mūs nūnc est.

— Pl. Trin. 223-226.

c. Cretic measures (§ 609. d. 1) occur in the same manner as the Bacchiac, with the same substitutions. The last foot is usually incomplete :—

āmōr āmī|cūs mīhī | nē fūās | ūmquām.  
hīs ēgō | d<sup>e</sup> ārtībus | grātīam | fācīō.  
nīl ēg<sup>o</sup> is|tōs mōror | faēcēōs | mōrés. — id. 267, 293, 297.

d. Saturnian Verse. In early Latin is found a rude form of verse, not borrowed from the Greek like the others, but as to the precise nature of which scholars are not agreed.<sup>1</sup>

1. According to one view the verse is based on quantity, is composed of six feet, and is divided into two parts by a cæsure before the fourth thesis. Each thesis may consist of a long syllable or of two short ones, each arsis of a short syllable, a long syllable, or two short syllables; but the arsis, except at the beginning of the verse and before the cæsure, is often entirely suppressed, though rarely more than once in the same verse :—

dābunt mālūm Mētēllī || Naēviō pōētae.

2. According to another theory the Saturnian is made up, without regard to quantity, of alternating accented and unaccented syllables; but for any unaccented syllable two may be substituted, and regularly are so substituted in the second foot of the verse :—

dābunt mālūm Metēllī || Naēviō pōētae.

### EARLY PROSODY

629. The prosody of the earlier poets differs in several respects from that of the later.<sup>2</sup>

a. At the end of words *a*, being only feebly sounded, does not make position with a following consonant; it sometimes disappeared altogether. This usage continued in all poets till Cicero's time (§ 15. 7).

<sup>1</sup> The two principal theories only are given. There are numerous variations, particularly of the second theory here stated.

<sup>2</sup> Before the Latin language was used in literature, it had become much changed by the loss of final consonants and the shortening of final syllables under the influence of accent. In many cases this change was still in progress in the time of the early poets. This tendency was arrested by the study of grammar and by literature, but shows itself again in the Romance languages.

**b.** A long syllable immediately preceded or followed by the ictus may be shortened (*iambic shortening*):—

1. In a word of two syllables of which the first is short (this effect remained in a few words like *putā, cavē, valē, vidē, egō, modō, duō*<sup>1</sup>):—

*ābī* (Ter. Ph. 59); *bōnī* (id. 516); *hōmō suāvis* (id. 411).

2. If it is either a monosyllable or the first syllable of a word which is preceded by a short monosyllable:—

*sēd hās tabellās* (Pl. Pers. 195); *quīd hīc nunc* (id. Epid. 157); *pēr inplūvium* (Ter. Ph. 707); *ēgō ōstēderem* (id. 793).

3. When preceded by a short initial syllable in a word of more than three syllables:—

*vēnūstātis* (Ter. Hec. 848); *sēnēctūtem* (id. Ph. 434); *Syrācūsās* (Pl. Merc. 37); *āmicītia* (id. Ps. 1263).

**c.** In a few isolated words position is often disregarded.<sup>2</sup> Such are *ille, immo, inde, iste, ōmnis, nēpe, quippe, unde*.

**d.** The original long quantity of some final syllables is retained.

1. The ending *-or* is retained long in nouns with long stem-vowel (original *r*-stems or original *a*-stems):—

*mōdo quom dīct<sup>a</sup> in m<sup>e</sup> īngerēbās ōdium nōn uxōr erām* (Pl. Asin. 927).  
*īta m<sup>i</sup> in pēctor<sup>e</sup> atque cōrde facit amōr incēdiūm* (id. Merc. 500).  
*atque quāntō nōx fuīstī lōngiōr hāc prōxumā* (id. Am. 548).

2. The termination *-es* (*-itis*) is sometimes retained long, as in *mīlēs, superstēs*.

3. All verb-endings in *-r, -s,* and *-t* may be retained long where the vowel is elsewhere long in inflection:—

*rēgrediōr audīsse mē* (Pl. Capt. 1023); *atque ut quī fueris et quī nunc* (id. 248); *mē nōmināt haec* (id. Epid. iv. 1. 8); *faciāt ut sēmp<sup>r</sup>* (id. Poen. ii. 42); *Infuscābāt, amābō* (cretics, id. Cist. i. 21); *quī amēt* (id. Merc. 1021); *ut fit in bellō cāpītur ālter filiūs* (id. Capt. 25); *tibi sīt ad mē revīsās* (id. Truc. ii. 4. 79).

**e.** *Hiatus* (§ 612. *g*) is allowed somewhat freely, especially at a pause in the sense, or when there is a change of speaker.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *ambō* (also a dual, p. 59, footnote), in which the *ō* is retained because of the length of the first syllable.

<sup>2</sup> Scholars are not yet agreed upon the principle or the extent of this irregularity.

<sup>3</sup> The extent of this license is still a question among scholars; but in the present state of texts it must sometimes be allowed.



## MISCELLANEOUS

## Reckoning of Time

**630.** The Roman Year was designated, in earlier times, by the names of the Consuls; but was afterwards reckoned from the building of the City (*ab urbe conditâ, annō urbis conditæ*), the date of which was assigned by Varro to a period corresponding with B.C. 753. In order, therefore, to reduce Roman dates to those of the Christian era, *the year of the city is to be subtracted from 754*: e.g. A.U.C. 691 (the year of Cicero's consulship) corresponds to B.C. 63.

Before Cæsar's reform of the Calendar (B.C. 46), the Roman year consisted of 355 days: March, May, Quintilis (July), and October having each 31 days, February having 28, and each of the remainder 29. As this calendar year was too short for the solar year, the Romans, in alternate years, at the discretion of the *pontifices*, inserted a month of varying length (*mēnsis intercalāris*) after February 23, and omitted the rest of February. The "Julian year," by Cæsar's reformed Calendar, had 365 days, divided into months as at present. Every fourth year the 24th of February (vi. Kal. Mārt.) was counted twice, giving 29 days to that month: hence the year was called *bissextilis*. The month Quintilis received the name *Iūlius* (July), in honor of Julius Cæsar; and Sextilis was called *Augustus* (August), in honor of his successor. The Julian year (see below) remained unchanged till the adoption of the Gregorian Calendar (A.D. 1582), which omits leap-year three times in every four hundred years.

**631.** Dates, according to the Roman Calendar, are reckoned as follows:—

*a.* The first day of the month was called *Kalendæ* (*Calends*).

NOTE.—*Kalendæ* is derived from *calāre, to call*,—the Calends being the day on which the pontiffs publicly announced the New Moon in the *Comitia Calāta*. This they did, originally, from actual observation.

*b.* On the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, but the thirteenth of the other months, were the *Idūs* (*Ides*), the day of Full Moon.

*c.* On the seventh day of March, May, July, and October, but the fifth of the other months, were the *Nōnæ* (*Nones* or *ninths*).

*d.* From the three points thus determined, the days of the month were reckoned *backwards* as so many days before the *Nones*, the *Ides*, or the *Calends*. The point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning, the second day being three days before, etc. This gives the following rule for determining the date:—

If the given date be Calends, add *two* to the number of days in the month preceding, — if Nones or Ides, add *one* to that of the day on which they fall, — and from the number thus ascertained subtract the given date. Thus,—

viii. Kal. Feb.  $(31 + 2 - 8) = \text{Jan. } 25.$

iv. Nōn. Mār.  $(7 + 1 - 4) = \text{Mar. } 4.$

iv. Id. Sept.  $(13 + 1 - 4) = \text{Sept. } 10.$

NOTE.—The name of the month appears as an adjective in agreement with *Kalendar*, *Nōnæ*, *Idūs*.

For peculiar constructions in dates, see § 424. *g*.

*e*. The days of the Roman month by the Julian Calendar, as thus ascertained, are given in the following table:—

<i>January</i>	<i>February</i>	<i>March</i>	<i>April</i>
1. KAL. IAN.	KAL. FEB.	KAL. MARTIÆ	KAL. APRILÆS
2. IV. Nōn. IAN.	IV. Nōn. Feb.	VI. Nōn. Mārt.	IV. Nōn. Apr.
3. III. " "	III. " "	V. " "	III. " "
4. prid. " "	prid. " "	IV. " "	prid. " "
5. Nōn. IAN.	Nōn. FEB.	III. " "	Nōn. APRILÆS
6. VIII. Id. IAN.	VIII. Id. Feb.	prid. " "	VIII. Id. Apr.
7. VII. " "	VII. " "	Nōn. MARTIÆ	VII. " "
8. VI. " "	VI. " "	VIII. Id. Mārt.	VI. " "
9. V. " "	V. " "	VII. " "	V. " "
10. IV. " "	IV. " "	VI. " "	IV. " "
11. III. " "	III. " "	V. " "	III. " "
12. prid. " "	prid. " "	IV. " "	prid. " "
13. Idūs IAN.	Idūs FEB.	III. " "	Idūs APRILÆS.
14. XIX. Kal. Feb.	XVI. Kal. Mārtiās	prid. " "	XVIII. Kal. Māiās.
15. XVIII. " "	XV. " "	Idūs MARTIÆ	XVII. " "
16. XVII. " "	XIV. " "	XVII. Kal. Aprilis.	XVI. " "
17. XVI. " "	XIII. " "	XVI. " "	XV. " "
18. XV. " "	XII. " "	XV. " "	XIV. " "
19. XIV. " "	XI. " "	XIV. " "	XIII. " "
20. XIII. " "	X. " "	XIII. " "	XII. " "
21. XII. " "	IX. " "	XII. " "	XI. " "
22. XI. " "	VIII. " "	XI. " "	X. " "
23. X. " "	VII. " "	X. " "	IX. " "
24. IX. " "	VI. " "	IX. " "	VIII. " "
25. VIII. " "	V. " "	VIII. " "	VII. " "
26. VII. " "	IV. " "	VII. " "	VI. " "
27. VI. " "	III. " "	VI. " "	V. " "
28. V. " "	prid. " "	V. " "	IV. " "
29. IV. " "	[prid. Kal. Mārt. in	IV. " "	III. " "
30. III. " "	leap-year, the VI.	III. " "	prid. " "
31. prid. " "	Kal. (24th) being	prid. " "	(So June, Sept.,
(So Aug., Dec.)	counted twice.]	(So May, July, Oct.)	Nov.)

NOTE.—Observe that a date before the Julian Reform (B.C. 46) is to be found not by the above table, but by taking the earlier reckoning of the number of days in the month.

### Measures of Value, etc.

632. The money of the Romans was in early times wholly of copper. The unit was the *as*, which was nominally a pound in weight, but actually somewhat less. It was divided into twelve *uncia* (*ounces*).

In the third century B.C. the *as* was gradually reduced to one-half of its original value. In the same century silver coins were introduced, — the *dēnārius* and the *sēstertius*. The *denarius* = 10 *asses*; the *sestertius* =  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*.

633. The *Sestertius* was probably introduced at a time when the *as* had been so far reduced that the value of the new coin ( $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*) was equivalent to the original value of the *as*. Hence, the *Sestertius* (usually abbreviated to *HS* or *HS*) came to be used as the unit of value, and *nummus*, *coin*, often means simply *sēstertius*. As the reduction of the standard went on, the *sestertius* became equivalent to 4 *asses*. Gold was introduced later, the *aureus* being equal to 100 *sesterces*. The approximate value of these coins is seen in the following table: —

$2\frac{1}{2}$ <i>asses</i> = 1 <i>sēstertius</i> or <i>nummus</i> , value nearly 5 cents ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ d.).	
10 <i>asses</i> or 4 <i>sēstertii</i> = 1 <i>dēnārius</i> . “ “ 20 “ (10 d.).	
1000 <i>sēstertii</i> = 1 <i>sēstertium</i> . . . “ “ \$50.00 (£10).	

NOTE. — The word *sēstertius* is a shortened form of *sēmis-tertius*, the third one, a half. The abbreviation *HS* or *HS* = *duo et sēmis*, two and a half.

634. The *sēstertium* (probably originally the genitive plural of *sēstertius* depending on *mille*) was a sum of money, not a coin; the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun: thus, *tria sēstertia* = \$150.00.

When *sēstertium* is combined with a numeral adverb, *centēna milia*, *hundreds of thousands*, is to be understood: thus *decīens sēstertium* (*decīens HS*) = *decīens centēna milia sēstertium* = \$50,000. *Sēstertium* in this combination may also be inflected: *decīens sēstertii*, *sēstertiō*, etc.

In the statement of large sums *sēstertium* is often omitted as well as *centēna milia*: thus *sexāgiēns* (*Rosc. Am.* 2) signifies, *sexāgiēns* [*centēna milia sēstertium*] = 6,000,000 *sesterces* = \$300,000 (nearly).

635. In the statement of sums of money in Roman numerals, a line above the number indicates thousands; lines above and at the sides also, hundred-thousands. Thus *HS DC* = 600 *sēstertii*; *HS DC* = 600,000 *sēstertii*, or 600 *sēstertia*; *HS DC* = 60,000,000 *sēstertii*, or 60,000 *sēstertia*.

636. The Roman Measures of Length are the following: —

12 inches (*unciae*) = 1 Roman Foot (*pēs*: 11.65 English inches).

$1\frac{1}{2}$  Feet = 1 Cubit (*cubitum*). —  $2\frac{1}{2}$  Feet = 1 Step (*gradus*).

5 Feet = 1 Pace (*passus*). — 1000 Paces (*mille passuum*) = 1 Mile.

The Roman mile was equal to 4850 English feet.

The *iūgerum*, or unit of measure of land, was an area of 240 (Roman) feet long and 120 broad; a little less than  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an English acre.

**637. The Measures of Weight are —**

12 *unciae* (*ounces*) = one pound (*libra*, about  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. *avoirdupois*).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are —

$\frac{1}{12}$ , <i>uncia</i> .	$\frac{5}{12}$ , <i>quīncunx</i> .	$\frac{1}{4}$ , <i>dōdrāns</i> .
$\frac{1}{6}$ , <i>sextāns</i> .	$\frac{1}{2}$ , <i>sēmis</i> .	$\frac{1}{3}$ , <i>dextāns</i> .
$\frac{1}{4}$ , <i>quadrāns</i> .	$\frac{1}{12}$ , <i>septunx</i> .	$\frac{1}{12}$ , <i>deunx</i> .
$\frac{1}{3}$ , <i>triēns</i> .	$\frac{1}{3}$ , <i>bēs</i> or <i>bēssis</i> .	$\frac{1}{2}$ , <i>as</i> .

The Talent (*talentum*) was a Greek weight (*τάλαντον*) = 60 *librae*.

**638. The Measures of Capacity are —**

12 *cyathī* = 1 *sextārius* (nearly a pint).

16 *sextārii* = 1 *modius* (peck).

6 *sextārii* = 1 *congius* (3 quarts, liquid measure).

8 *congiū* = 1 *amphora* (6 gallons).

## GLOSSARY

## OF TERMS USED IN GRAMMAR, RHETORIC, AND PROSODY

**639.** Many of these terms are pedantic names given by early grammarians to forms of speech used naturally by writers who were not conscious that they were using figures at all—as, indeed, they were not. Thus when one says, “It gave me no little pleasure,” he is unconsciously using *litotes*; when he says, “John went up the street, James down,” *antithesis*; when he says, “High as the sky,” *hyperbole*. Many were given under a mistaken notion of the nature of the usage referred to. Thus *mēa* and *tēa* (§ 143. a. n.) were supposed to owe their *d* to *paragoge*, *stūpsī* its *p* to *epenthesis*. Such a sentence as “See my coat, how well it fits!” was supposed to be an irregularity to be accounted for by *prolepsis*.

Many of these, however, are convenient designations for phenomena which often occur; and most of them have an historic interest, of one kind or another.

**640. Grammatical Terms**

*Anacoluthon*: a change of construction in the same sentence, leaving the first part broken or unfinished.

*Anastrophe*: inversion of the usual order of words.

*Apodosis*: the conclusion of a conditional sentence (see *Protasis*).

*Archaism*: an adoption of old or obsolete forms.

*Asyndeton*: omission of conjunctions (§ 823. b).

*Barbarism*: adoption of foreign or unauthorized forms.

*Brachylogy*: brevity of expression.

*Crisis*: contraction of two vowels into one (§ 15. 3).

*Ellipsis*: omission of a word or words necessary to complete the sense.

*Enallage*: substitution of one word or form for another.

*Epenthesis*: insertion of a letter or syllable.

*Hellenism*: use of Greek forms or constructions.

*Hendiadys* (ἐν δὲ δύοῖν): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun.

*Hypallage*: interchange of constructions.

*Hysteron proteron*: a reversing of the natural order of ideas.

This term was applied to cases where the natural sequence of events is violated in language because the later event is of more importance than the earlier and so comes first to the mind. This was supposed to be an artificial embellishment in Greek, and so was imitated in Latin. It is still found in artless narrative; cf. “Bred and Born in a Brier Bush” (Uncle Remus).

*Metathesis*: transposition of letters in a word.

*Paragoge*: addition of a letter or letters to the end of a word.

*Parenthesis*: insertion of a phrase interrupting the construction.

**Periphrasis:** a roundabout way of expression (*circumlocution*).

**Pleonasm:** the use of needless words.

**Polysyndeton:** the use of an unnecessary number of copulative conjunctions.

**Prolepsis:** the use of a word in the clause preceding the one where it would naturally appear (*anticipation*).

**Protasis:** a clause introduced by a conditional expression (*if, when, whoever*), leading to a conclusion called the *Apodosis* (§ 512).

**Syncope:** omission of a letter or syllable from the middle of a word.

**Synesis** (*cōstructiō ad sēsum*): agreement of words according to the sense, and not the grammatical form (§ 280. a).

**Tmesis:** the separation of the two parts of a compound word by other words (*cutting*).

This term came from the earlier separation of prepositions (originally adverbs) from the verbs with which they were afterwards joined; so in *per ecastor scitus puer, a very fine boy, egad!* As this was supposed to be intentional, it was ignorantly imitated in Latin; as in *cere- comminuit -brum* (Ennius).

**Zeugma:** the use of a verb or an adjective with two different words, to only one of which it strictly applies (*yoking*).

## 641. Rhetorical Figures

**Allegory:** a narrative in which abstract ideas figure as circumstances, events, or persons, in order to enforce some moral truth.

**Alliteration:** the use of several words that begin with the same sound.

**Analogy:** argument from resemblances.

**Anaphora:** the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses (§ 598. f).

**Antithesis:** opposition, or contrast of parts (for emphasis: § 598. f).

**Antonomasia:** use of a proper for a common noun, or the reverse:—

sint *Maecēnātēs*, nōn deerunt, *Flacce, Marōnēs*, so *there be patrons* (like *Mæcenās*), *poets* (like *Virgil*) *will not be lacking*, *Flaccus* (Mart. viii. 56. 5).

*illa furia et pestis*, *that fury and plague* (i.e. *Clodius*); *Homēromastix*, *scourge of Homer* (i.e. *Zoilus*).

**Aposiopesis:** an abrupt pause for rhetorical effect.

**Catachresis:** a harsh metaphor (*abūsiō*, misuse of words).

**Chiasmus:** a reversing of the order of words in corresponding pairs of phrases (§ 598. f).

**Climax:** a gradual increase of emphasis, or enlargement of meaning.

**Euphemism:** the mild expression of a painful or repulsive idea:—

sī quid ei acciderit, *if anything happens to him* (i.e. if he dies).

**Euphony:** the choice of words for their agreeable sound.

**Hyperbaton:** violation of the usual order of words.

*Hyperbole*: exaggeration for rhetorical effect.

*Irony*: the use of words which naturally convey a sense contrary to what is meant.

*Litotes*: the affirming of a thing by denying its contrary (§ 326. c).

*Metaphor*: the figurative use of words, indicating an object by some resemblance.

*Metonymy*: the use of the name of one thing to indicate some kindred thing.

*Onomatopœia*: a fitting of sound to sense in the use of words.

*Ozymoron*: the use of contradictory words in the same phrase:—

*Insāniēns sapientia, foolish wisdom.*

*Paronomasia*: the use of words of like sound.

*Prosopopœia*: personification.

*Simile*: a figurative comparison (usually introduced by *like*, or *as*).

*Synchysis*: the interlocked order (§ 598. h).

*Synecdoche*: the use of the name of a part for the whole, or the reverse.

## 642. Terms of Prosody

*Acatalectic*: complete, as a verse or a series of feet (§ 612. a).

*Anaclassis*: breaking up of rhythm by substituting different measures.

*Anacrusis*: the unaccented syllable or syllables preceding a verse (§ 608. g).

*Antistrophe*: a series of verses corresponding to one which has gone before (cf. *strophe*).

*Arsis*: the unaccented part of a foot (§ 611).

*Basis*: a single foot preceding the regular movement of a verse.

*Cæsura*: the ending of a word within a metrical foot (§ 611. b).

*Catalectic*: see *Catalexis*.

*Catalexis*: loss of a final syllable (or syllables) making the series *catalectic* (incomplete, § 612. a).

*Contraction*: the use of one long syllable for two short (§ 610).

*Correption*: shortening of a long syllable, for metrical reasons.

*Diæresis*: the coincidence of the end of a foot with the end of a word within the verse (§ 611. c).

*Dialysis*: the use of *i* (consonant) and *v* as vowels (*silūa* = *silva*, § 603. f. n. 4).

*Diastole*: the lengthening of a short syllable by emphasis (§ 612. b).

*Dimeter*: consisting of two like measures.

*Dipody*: consisting of two like feet.

*Distich*: a system or series of two verses.

*Eothlipsis*: the suppression of a final syllable in -m before a word beginning with a vowel (§ 612. f).

*Elision*: the cutting off of a final before a following initial vowel (§ 612. e).

*Heptameter*: consisting of seven feet.

*Hexameter*: consisting of six measures.

*Hexapody*: consisting of six feet.

*Hiatus*: the meeting of two vowels without contraction or elision (§ 612. g).

*Ictus*: the metrical accent (§ 611. a).

*Irrational*: not conforming strictly to the unit of time (§ 609. e).

*Logædic*: varying in rhythm, making the effect resemble prose (§ 623).

*Monometer*: consisting of a single measure.

*Mora*: the unit of time, equal to one short syllable (§ 608. a).

*Pentameter*: consisting of five measures.

*Pentapody*: consisting of five feet.

*Penthemimeris*: consisting of five half-feet.

*Protraction*: extension of a syllable beyond its normal length (608. c).

*Resolution*: the use of two short syllables for one long (§ 610).

*Strophe*: a series of verses making a recognized metrical whole (*stanza*), which may be indefinitely repeated.

*Synæresis*: i. (vowel) and u becoming consonants before a vowel (§ 603. c. N., f. N.<sup>4</sup>).

*Synalæpha*: the same as elision (§ 612. e. N.).

*Synapheia*: elision between two verses (§ 612. e. N.).

*Syncope*: loss of a short vowel.

*Synizesis*: the running together of two vowels without full contraction (§ 603. c. N.).

*Systole*: shortening of a syllable regularly long.

*Tetrameter*: consisting of four measures.

*Tetrapody*: consisting of four feet.

*Tetrastich*: a system of four verses.

*Thesis*: the accented part of a foot (§ 611).

*Trimeter*: consisting of three measures.

*Tripody*: consisting of three feet.

*Tristich*: a system of three verses.



# INDEX OF VERBS

Regular verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are given only in special cases. Compounds are usually omitted when they are conjugated like the simple verbs. The figures after the verbs indicate the conjugation. References are to sections. For classified lists of important verbs see § 209 (First Conjugation), § 210 (Second Conjugation), § 211 (Third Conjugation), § 212 (Fourth Conjugation), §§ 190, 191 (Deponents), § 192 (Semi-Deponents).

- ab-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, 209. *a. n.*  
 ab-eō, see eō.  
 ab-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [iaciō].  
 ab-igō, 3, -ēgī, -actum [agō].  
 ab-nuō, 3, -nuī, —.  
 ab-oleō, 2, -ēvī, -itum.  
 ab-olēscō, 3, -ēvī, — [aboleō].  
 ab-ripīō, 3, -ripuī, -reptum [rapiō].  
 abs-condō, 3, -dī (-didī), -ditum [condō].  
 ab-sisto, 3, -stitī, —.  
 ab-sum, abesse, āfui, (āfutūrus).  
 ac-cendō, 3, -cendī, -cēsum.  
 accersō, see accersō.  
 ac-cidit (impers.), 207, 208. *c.*  
 ac-cidō, 3, -cidī, — [cadō].  
 ac-cidō, 3, -cidi, -cisum [caedō]. -  
 ac-ciō, 4, reg. [ciō].  
 ac-cipīō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capīō].  
 ac-colo, 3, -uī, —.  
 ac-crēdō, see crēdō.  
 ac-cumbō, 3, -cubui, -itum.  
 ac-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
 ac-ēscō, 3, -acuī, — [co-].  
 ac-quirō, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum [quaerō].  
 acuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum, 174, 176. *d.*  
 ad-do, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. *a. n.*  
 ad-eō, see eō.  
 ad-hibeō, 2, -uī, -itum [habeō].  
 ad-igō, 3, -ēgī, -actum [agō].  
 ad-imō, 3, -ēmi, -ēptum [emō].  
 ad-ipiscor, -i, -eptus.  
 ad-nuō, 3, -nuī, —.  
 ad-oleō, 2, -uī, —.  
 ad-olēscō, 3, -ēvī, -ultum.  
 ad-sentior, -iri, -sēnsus.  
 ad-sideō, 2, -sedī, -sessum [sedeō].  
 ad-sidō, 3, -sedī, —.  
 ad-spergō, 3, -spersi, -spersum [spargō].  
 ad-stō, 1, -stiti, —.  
 ad-sum, -esse, -fui, (-futūrus).  
 af-fāri, affātus, 206. *c.*  
 af-ferō, -ferre, attuli, allātum.  
 af-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō].  
 af-fligō, 3, -xi, -ctum.  
 ag-gredior, -i, -gressus [gradior].  
 āgnōscō, 3, -ōvi, āgnitum [nōscō].  
 agō, 3, -ēgī, -actum. [For regular comps., see ab-igō; for others, see cōgō, circum-per-].  
 āiō, defect., 206. *a.*  
 albeō, 2, -ui, —.  
 alēscō, 3, -ui, -alitum.  
 algeō, 2, -alsi, —.  
 algēscō, 3, -alsi, —.  
 al-legō, 3, -ēgī, -ectum.  
 al-liciō, 3, -lexi, —.  
 alō, 3, -alui, -altum [alitum].  
 amb-igō, 3, —, — [agō].  
 ambio, -ire, -iī (-ivi), -itum (ambibat), 203. *d.*  
 amiciō, 4, amixi (-cui), amictum.  
 amō, 180, 184; amārim, amāsse, amāsem, 181. *a*; amāssis, 183. *5.*  
 angō, 3, -ānxi, —.  
 ante-cellō, 3, —, —.  
 ante-stō, 1, -steti, —.  
 anti-stō, 1, -steti, —.  
 aperiō, 4, aperui, apertum.  
 apiscor, -i, aptus [ad-ipiscor].  
 ap-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum.  
 ap-petō, 3, -petivi (-iī), -itum.  
 ap-primō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [premō].  
 arceō, 2, -ui, — [co-erceō].  
 arcessō (accersō), 3, -i-vi, arcessitum.  
 ārdeō, 2, ārsi, (ārsurus).  
 ārdēscō, 3, ārsi, —.  
 āreō, 2, —, —.  
 ārēscō, 3, -āruī, —.  
 arguō, 3, -ui, -ūtum.  
 ar-rigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [regō].  
 ar-ripīō, 3, -ui, -reptum [rapiō].  
 a-scendō, 3, -di, -scēsum [scandō].  
 a-spergō, see ad-spergō.  
 a-spiciō, 3, -exi, -ectum [-spiciō].  
 at-tendō, 3, -di, -tum.  
 at-tineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum [teneō].

at-tingō, 3, -tigi-, -tactum [tangō].

at-tollō, 3, —, — [tollō].

audeō, audēre, ausus, 192 (ausim, 183. 3; sōdes, 13. n.).

audio, 4, audivī, auditum, 187 (contracted forms, 181. b).

au-ferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum.

augeō, 2, auxi, auctum.

ausim, see audeō.

avē (havē), avēte, avētō, 206. g.

aveō, 2, —, —.

balbūtiō, 4, —, —.

bātuō, 3, -uī, —.

bibō, 3, bibi, (pōtum).

bulliō, 4, reg. (bullō, -āre) [ē-bullis].

cadō, 3, cecidī, cāsum [ac-, con-, oc-cidō], 178. b.

caecutiō, 4, —, —.

caedō, 3, cecidi, caesum [ac-, oc-cidō, etc.].

cale-faciō, like faciō, 266. a.

cale-factō, 1, —, —, 266. a.

caleō, 2, -uī, (calitūrus).

calēscō, 3, -uī, —.

calleō, 2, -uī, —.

calveō, 2, —, —.

candēō, 2, -uī, —.

candēscō, 3, -canduī, —.

cāneō, 2, -uī, —.

cānēscō, 3, cānuī, —.

canō, 3, cecini, — [con-cinō].

cantillō, 1, reg., 263. 3.

capessō, 3, capessivī, —, 263. 2. b (incipissō, 3, —, —).

capio, 3, cēpi, captum [ac-cipio etc.; also ante-capio], 188.

careō, 2, -uī, (-itūrus).

carpō, 3, -psi, -ptum, 177. b [dē-cerpō].

caveō, 2, cāvī, cautum.

cavillor, -āri, -ātus, 263. 3.

cedo (imperative), ceditte (cette), 206. g.

cēdō, 3, cessi, cessum.

-cellō (only in comp., see per-cellō, ex-cellō, ante-cellō, prae-cellō).

-cendō, 3, -cendi, -cēsum (only in comp., as in-cendō).

cēnsēō, 2, -uī, cēnsūm.

cernō, 3, crēvī, -crētum.

ciōō (-ciō), ciēre (-ciere), civī, cītum (-cītum) [ac-ciō, con-, ex-ciō].

cingo, 3, cinxī, cinctum.

-ciō, see ciōō.

circum-dō, -dāre, -dedī, -dātum, 209. a. n.

circum-sistō, 3, -steti (-steti), —.

circum-spicio, 3, -exi, -ectum.

circum-stō, 1, -stiti (-steti), —.

clangō, 3, —, —.

clārēscō, 3, clārui, —.

claudēō, 2, —, —, see claudō (imp).

claudō (imp), 3, —, —.

claudō (close), 3, clausi, clausum [ex-clūdō].

clueō, 2, —, —.

co-emō, 3, -ēmi, -ēptum.

coepi, -isse, coeptūrus, 205.

co-erceō, 2, -ui, -itum [arceō].

cō-gnōscō, 3, -gnōvi, -gnitum [nōscō].

cōgō, 3, cōegi, cōactum, 15. 3 [agō].

col-lidō, 3, -lisi, lisum [laedō].

col-ligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum.

col-lūcēō, 2, —, — [lūcēō].

colō, 3, colui, cultum [ex-, ac-, in-].

combūro, 3, -ussi, -ustum [ūrō].

com-edō, 3 (ēsse), -ēdi, -ēsūm (-ēstum).

com-miniscor, -i, -mentus.

cōmō, 3, cōmpsi, cōptum.

com-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsūm.

com-percō, 3, -persi, — [parcō].

comperio, 4, -peri, compertum.

comperior, -iri, compertus, 191. n.

com-pēscō, 3, -cui, —.

com-pingō, 3, -pēgi, -pāctum [pangō].

com-pleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.

com-primō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [premō].

com-pungō, 3, -pūxi, -pūctum [pungō].

con-cidō, 3, -cidi, — [cadō].

con-cidō, 3, -cidi, -cīsum [caedō].

con-cinō, 3, -ui, — [canō].

con-cipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capio].

con-ciō (-cieō), 4 (2), -civi, -cītum (-cītum).

con-clūdō, 3, -clūsi, -clūsūm [claudō].

con-cupiscō, 3, -cupivi, -cupitum.

con-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.

con-cutiō, 3, -cussi, -cussum [quatiō].

con-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. a. n.

cō-nectō, 3, -nexui, -nexum, 16.

cōn-ferciō, 4, —, -fertum [farciō].

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, collātum.

cōn-ficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum [faciō].

cōn-fit, defect., 204. c.

cōn-fiteor, -ēri, -fessus [fateor].

cōn-fringō, 3, -frēgi, -frāctum [frangō].

con-gruō, 3, -ui, — [-gruō].

con-iciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum, 6. d [iaciō].

cō-nitor, -i, -nisus (-nixus), 16.

cō-niveō, 2, -nivi (-nixi), —, 16.

con-quirō, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum [quaerō].

cōn-sistō, 3, -stiti, —.

cōn-spergō, 3, -spersi, -spersum [spargō].

cōn-spicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum, 174.

cōn-stituō, 3, -ui, -stitūm [statuō].

cōn-stō, 1, -stiti (-stātūrus) (cōstat, 207).

cōn-suē-faciō, like faciō, 266. a.

cōn-suēscō, 3, -ēvi, -ētum (cōnsuērat, 181. a).

cōn-sulō, 3, -ui, -sultum.

cōn-tendō, 3, -tendi, -tentum.

con-ticēscō, 3, -ticui, —.

con-tineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum [teneō].

con-tingō, 3, -tigi-, -tactum [tangō] (con-tingit, impers., 208. c).

- con-tundō, 3, -tudi, -tūsum [tundō].  
 coquō, 3, coxi, coctum.  
 cor-rigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum [regō].  
 cor-ripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum [rapio].  
 cor-ruō, 3, -ui, — [ruō].  
 crebrēscō, 3, -crēbrui, — [in-, per-].  
 crēdō, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. a. n. [-dō].  
 crepō, 1, -ui (-crepāvi), -crepitum.  
 crēscō, 3, crēvi, crētum, 176. b. 1.  
 crōclō, 4, —, —.  
 crūdēscō, 3, -crūdī, — [re-].  
 cubō, 1, -ui (cubāvi), -cubitum.  
 cūdō, 3, -cūdi, -cūsum [in-cūdō].  
 -cumbō [cub] (see ac-cumbō; compounds with dē-, ob-, pro-, re-, and sub-, lack the p.p.).  
 cupiō, 3, cupivī, cupitum, 174.  
 -cupiscō, 3, see con-cupiscō.  
 currō, 3, cucurri, cursum [in-currō].
- dēbeō, 2, -ui, -itum, 15. 3.  
 dē-cerpō, 3, -cerpsi, -cerptum [carpō].  
 decet (impers.), decēre, decuit, 208. c.  
 dē-cipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capio].  
 dē-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
 dē-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum [dō], 209. a. n.  
 dē-fendō, 3, -di, -fēnsūm, 178. b. n. 1.  
 dē-fetiscor, -i, -fessus.  
 dē-fit, defect., 204. c.  
 dēgō, 3, —, — [agō].  
 dēlectat (impers.), 208. c.  
 dēleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.  
 dē-libuō, 3, -libui, -libūtum.  
 dē-ligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [legō].  
 dēmō, 3, dēmpsi, dēmpitum.  
 dē-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum.  
 dē-primō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [premō].  
 depō, 3, -sui, -stum.  
 dē-scendō, 3, -di, -scēnsūm [scandō].  
 dē-siliō, 4, -silui (-siliī), [-sultum] [salio].  
 dē-sinō, 3, -sui (-sivi), -situm [sinō].  
 dē-sipio, 3, —, — [sapiō].  
 dē-sistō, 3, -stiti, -stitum [sistō].  
 dē-spiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum.  
 dē-spondeō, 2, -di, -spōnsūm [spondeō].  
 dē-struō, 3, -strūxi, -strūctum.  
 dē-sum, -esse, -fui, (-futūrus) [sum].  
 dē-tendō, 3, [-dī], -sum.  
 dē-tineō, 3, -ui, -tentum [teneō].  
 dē-vertor, -i, —.  
 dicō, 3, dixi, dictum, p. 87, footnote 4 (dixi, 181. b. n. 2; dic, 182).  
 dif-ferō, -ferre, distuli, dilātum [ferō].  
 dif-fiteor, -ēri, — [fateor].  
 di-gnoscō, 3, -gnōvi, — [noscō].  
 di-ligō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum [legō].  
 di-luō, 3, -lui, -lūtum [luō].  
 di-micō, 1, -āvi, -ātum.  
 di-noscō, see di-gnoscō.  
 dir-ibeō, 2, —, -itum [habeō].  
 dir-imō, 3, -ēmi, -ēmpitum [emō].
- dī-ripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum [rapio].  
 di-ruō, 3, -rui, -ritum [ruō].  
 discō [dici], 3, didici, —. [So compounds.]  
 dis-crepō, 1, -ui or -āvi, —.  
 dis-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
 dis-icō, 3, dis-icēi, -lectum [iacio].  
 dis-pandō, 3, —, -pānsūm (-pessum) [pandō].  
 dis-sideō, 2, -sēdi, — [sedeō].  
 dis-silio, 4, -ui, —.  
 dis-tendō, 3, -di, -tum.  
 di-stinguō, 3, -stīnxi, -stinctum.  
 di-stō, 1, —, —.  
 ditēscō, 3, —, —.  
 di-vidō, 3, -visi, -visum.  
 dō [DA] (give), dāre, dedi, dātum, 174, 176. e, 202, 209. a. n. (duim, perduim, 183. 2).  
 -dō [DHA] (put), 3, -didi, -ditum (only in comp., see ab-dō, crēdō, vēndō), 209. a. n.  
 doceō, 2, -ui, doctum.  
 doleō, 2, -ui, (-itūrus).  
 -dolēscō, 3, -dolui, — [con-].  
 domō, 1, -ui, -itum.  
 -dormiscō, 3, -dormivi, — [con-].  
 dūcō, 3, dūxi, ductum (duc, 182).  
 dūlcēscō, 3, —, —.  
 durēscō, 3, dūruī, —.
- ē-bulliō, 4, ēbulliī, —.  
 ēdō (eat), 3, edere (esse), ēdi, ēsum, 201.  
 ē-dō (put forth), 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. a. n.  
 ef-ferō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum.  
 ef-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [facio].  
 egeō, 2, -ui, —.  
 ē-icō, 3, -iēcī, -iectum [iacio].  
 ē-licō, 3, -ui, -citum.  
 ē-ligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [legō].  
 ē-micō, 1, -micui, -micātum.  
 ē-mineō, 2, -ui, — [-mineō].  
 emō, 3, ēmi, ēmpitum, 15. 11 [ad-, dir-imō, co-emō].  
 ē-neō, 1, -ui (-āvi), -nectum (-ātum) [neō].  
 ēns, see sum.  
 eō, ire, ii (ivī), itum, 203 (itum est, 203. a; iri, id.; itur, impers., 208. d; ad-eō, adeor, in-eō, 203. a; ambiō, 203. d; prōd-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, 203. e). See vēneō.  
 ē-rigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctum.  
 escit, escunt (see sum), 170. b. n.  
 ēsuriō, 4, —, ēsuritūrus, 283. 4.  
 ē-vādō, 3, -vāsi, -vāsūm (ēvāsti, 181. b. n. 2).  
 ē-vanēscō, 3, ēvanui, —.  
 ē-venit (impers.), 207, 208. c.  
 ē-vilēscō, 3, -vilui, —.  
 ex-cello, 3, -cellui, -celsum.  
 ex-ciō (-cieō), 4 (2), -ivi (-ii), -itum (-itum).  
 ex-cipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capio].  
 ex-clūdō, 3, -clūsi, -clūsūm [claudō].  
 ex-colō, 3, -ui, -cultum [colō].  
 ex-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.

ex-erceō, 2, -cui, -ctum [arceō].  
 ex-imō, 3, -ēmi, -ēptum [emō].  
 ex-olēscō, 3, -olēvi, -olētum.  
 ex-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum.  
 ex-pergiscor, 3, -perrēctus.  
 ex-perior, 4, -pertus.  
 ex-pleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.  
 ex-plīcō, 1, (*unfold*), -ui, -itum; (*explain*),  
 -āvi, -ātum.  
 ex-plōdō, 3, -si, -sum [plaudō].  
 ex-pungō, 3, -pūxi, -pūctum.  
 ex-(s)illō, 3, -ui (-iī), — [salīō].  
 ex-sistō, 3, -stiti, -stitum.  
 ex-stinguō, 3, -stinxi, -stinctum.  
 ex-stō, 1, —, (-stātūrus).  
 ex-tendō, 3, -dī, -tum (-sum).  
 exuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum.

facecō, 3, facecivī (facecī), facecītum,  
 263. 2. b.

faciō, 3, fēcī, factum, 204 (*fac*, 182; *faxō*,  
 -im, 183. 3; cōn-ficiō and other comps.  
 in -ficiō, 204. a; bene-faciō etc., 204. b;  
 con-suē-faciō, cale-faciō, cale-factō, 266.  
 a).

-factō, 1 (in compounds), 266. a.  
 fallō, 3, fefelli, falsum, 177. c, 178. b. n. 4.  
 fariō, 4, farsī, fartum [re-ferciō].  
 fateor, -ēri, fassus [cōn-fiteor].  
 fatiscō, 3, —, —.

faveō, 2, fāvi, fautum.  
 -fendō, 3, -fendi, -fēsum, see dēfendō.  
 feriō, 4, —, —.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, 176. d. n. 1, 200  
 (fer, 182) [af-, au-, cōn-, dif-, ef-, in-,  
 of-, re-, suī-ferō].

fervēō, 2, fervi (ferbui), —; also, fervō, 3.  
 fervescō, 3, -fervi (-ferbui), —.  
 fidō, fidere, fīsus, 192 [cōn-fidō].

figō, 3, fixi, fixum.  
 findō [FID], 3, fidī, fissum, 176. c. 2,  
 177. c. n.

figō [FIG], 3, finxi, ictum, 177. b. n.  
 fiō, fieri, factus, 204 (see faciō) [fit, im-  
 pers., 208. c; cōnfit, dēfit, infit, effieri,  
 interfieri, interfati, superfiat, 204. c).

flectō, 3, flexi, flexum.  
 fleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum, 176. e (flēstis, 181. a).  
 -figō, only in comp., see af-figō.

fioreō, 2, -ui, —.  
 florēscō, 3, florui, —.  
 fluō, 3, flūxi, fluxum, 261. n.  
 fodiō, 3, fōdi, fossum.

[for], fāri, fātus, 179. a, 206. c (af-fāri, prō-  
 fātus, prae-, inter-fātur, etc., 206. c).

fore, forem, etc., see sum.  
 foveō, 2, fōvi, fōtum.  
 frangō [FRAG], 3, frēgi, frāctum, 176. b. 1  
 [per-fringō].

fremō, 3, fremui, —.  
 frendō, 3, —, frēssum (fressum).

fricō, 1, -ui, frictum (fricātum).  
 frigeō, 2, —, —.  
 frigesco, 3, -frixi, — [per-, re-].  
 frīgō, 3, frixi, frictum.  
 frondeō, 2, —, —.  
 fruor, -i, fructus.  
 fuam, -ās, etc. (see sum), 170. b. n.  
 fugiō, 3, fugi, fugitūrus).  
 fulciō, 4, fulsi, fultum.  
 fulgeō, 2, -si, —.  
 fulgō, 3, —, —.  
 fulgurat (impers.), 208. a.  
 fundō [FUD], 3, fūdī, fūsum, 176. b. 1.  
 fungor, -i, fūctus.  
 furō, 3, —, —.  
 fūvimus, fūvisset (see sum), 170. b. n.

ganniō, 4, —, —.  
 gaudeō, gaudere, gāvisus, 192.  
 -gemiscō, 3, -gemui, —.  
 gemō, 3, gemui, —.  
 gerō, 3, gessi, gestum.  
 gestiō, 4, -ivi, —, 262. a.  
 gignō [GEN], 3, genui, genitum, 176. c. 1.  
 gliscō, 3, —, —.  
 glūbō, 3, —, —.  
 gradior, -i, gressus [ag-gredior].  
 grandinat (impers.), 208. a.  
 -gruō, 3, see con-, in-gruō.

habeō, 2, -ui, -itum [in-hibeō; dēbeō;  
 dir-ibeō].

haereō, 2, haesi, haesum.  
 haerescō, 3, —, —.  
 hauriō, 4, hausi, haustum (hausūrus).  
 have, see avē.

hebeō, 2, —, —.  
 hebescō, 3, —, —.  
 hinniō, 4, —, —.  
 hirriō, 4, —, —.  
 hīscō, 3, —, — [de-hīscō].  
 horreo, 2, horruī, —.  
 horrēscō, 3, -horruī, —.

īcō, 3, icī, ictum.  
 ignōscō, 3, -nōvi, -nōtum [nōscō].  
 il-licio, 3, -lexi, -lectum [licio].  
 il-lidō, 3, -lisi, -lisum [laedō].  
 imbuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum.  
 im-mineō, 2, —, — [mineō].  
 im-pellō, 3, -puli, -pulsum [pellō].  
 im-petrō, 1, reg. (-āssere, 183. 5).  
 im-pingō, 3, -pēgi, -pāctum [pangō].  
 im-pleō, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.  
 im-plīcō, 1, -āvi (-ui), -ātum (-itum).  
 in-cendō, 3, -dī, -sum.  
 in-cessō, 3, incessivī, —.  
 in-cidō, 3, -cīdi, (-cāsūrus) [cadō].  
 in-cidō, 3, -cīdi, -cisum [caedō].  
 in-cipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capio].  
 in-clūdō, 3, -si, -sum [claudō].

in-colō, 3, -colui, — [colō].  
 in-crepō, 1, -ui (-āvi), -itum.  
 in-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
 in-cutiō, 3, -cussi, -cussum.  
 ind-igēō, 2, -ui, — [egeō].  
 ind-ipiscor, 3, -eptus [apiscor].  
 in-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. a. n.  
 indulgēō, 2, indulsi, indultum.  
 induō, 3, -ui, -ūtum.  
 ineptiō, 4, —, —.  
 in-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, illātum.  
 in-fit, see fiō.  
 in-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior].  
 in-gruō, 3, -ui, — [-gruō].  
 in-hibeō, 2, -ui, -itum [habeō].  
 in-olēscō, 3, -olēvi, —.  
 inquam, defect., 206. b.  
 in-quirō, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum [quaerō].  
 in-sideō, 2, -sēdi, -sēssum [sedeō].  
 in-sidō, 3, -sēdi, -sēssum.  
 in-siliō, 3, -ui, [-sultum] [saliō].  
 in-sistō, 3, -stiti, —.  
 in-spiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum.  
 in-stituō, 3, -ui, -ūtum [statuō].  
 in-stō, 1, -stiti, (-stāturus).  
 intel-legō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum.  
 inter-dō, -dāre, -dedi, -datum, 209. a. n.  
 inter-est, -esse, -fuit (impers.), 208. b.  
 inter-fatur, see for.  
 inter-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō].  
 inter-stō, 1, -steti, —, 209. a. n.  
 in-tueor, -ēri, -tuitus [tueor].  
 irāscor, -i, irātus.  
 ir-ruō, 3, -rui, — [ruō].

laceō, 2, -ui, —.  
 iaciō, 3, iēcī, iactum [ab-iaciō, etc.; dis-iaciō, porr-iaciō].  
 iubeō, 2, iussi, iussum (iussō, 183. 3).  
 iudicō, 1, reg. (-āssit, 183. 5).  
 iungō, 3, iūnxi, iūnctum.  
 iuvenēscō, 3, —, —.  
 iuvō (ad-), 1, iūvi, iūtum (-āturus).

labāscō, 3, —, —.  
 lābor, -i, lāpsus.  
 lacessō, 3, lacessivi, lacessitum, 263. b.  
 laedō, 3, laesi, laesum [il-lidō].  
 lambō, 3, —, —.  
 langueō, 2, languī, —.  
 languēscō, 3, languī, —.  
 lateō, 2, -ui, —.  
 latēscō, 3, -litui, — [dē-litēscō].  
 lavō, 3, lāvi, lautum (lōtum) (also reg. of 1st conj.).  
 legō, 3, lēgi, lēctum [for compounds see 211. e, footnote, also dē-ligō, di-ligō, intel-legō, negligō].  
 levō, 1, reg. (-āssō, 183. 5).  
 libet (lubet), -ēre, -uit, 208. c (libitum est; libēns).

liceō, 2, licui, —.  
 licet, -ēre, licuit, (-itūrum), 207, 208. c (licitum est, licēns).  
 -licio, 3 [for lacio, only in comp.; see al-licio, ē-licio, pel-licio].  
 linō [Li], 3, lēvi (livi), litum.  
 linguō [Lic], 3, -liqui, -lictum.  
 liqueō, 2, liqui (licui), —.  
 liquēscō, 3, -licui, —.  
 liquor, -i, —.  
 liveō, 2, —, —.  
 loquor, -i, locūtus, 261. n.  
 lūceō, 2, lūxi, —.  
 lūcēscō (-iscō), 3, -lūxi, — [il-].  
 lūdō, 3, lūsi, lūsum.  
 lūgēō, 2, lūxi, —.  
 luō, 3, luī, -lūtum [dē-luō, solvō].

madeō, 2, madui, —.  
 madēscō, 3, madui, —.  
 maereō, 2, —, —.  
 mālō, mālle, mālui, —, 199 (māvolō, māvelim, māvellem, id. n.).  
 mandō, 3, mandī, mānsum.  
 maneō, 2, mānsi, mānsum [per-maneō].  
 mānsuēscō, see -suēscō.  
 marcēscō, 3, -marcui, — [ē-].  
 mātūrēscō, 3, mātūriui, —.  
 medeor, -ēri, —.  
 meminī, defect., 205.  
 mereō or mereor, merēre or -ēri, meritus, 190. g.  
 mergō, 3, mersi, mersum.  
 mētiōr, -iri, mēnsus.  
 metō, 3, messui, -messum.  
 metuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum.  
 micō, 1, micui, —.  
 -mineō, 2, -ui, — [ē-, im-, prō-mineō].  
 -miniscor, -i, -mentus [com-, re-].  
 minuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum.  
 miror, mirāri, mirātus.  
 misceō, 2, -cui, mixtum (mistum).  
 misereor, -ēri, miseritus (misertus), 206. b. n.  
 miseret, impers., 208. b.  
 mitēscō, 3, —, —.  
 mittō, 3, misi, missum, 176. d. n. 2.  
 mōlior, -iri, -itus.  
 molō, 3, molui, molitum.  
 moneō, 2, -ui, -itum, 185.  
 mordeō, 2, momordi, morsum.  
 morior, -i (-iri), mortuus (moritūrus).  
 moveō, 2, mōvi, mōtum (commōrat, 181. a).  
 mulceō, 2, mulsī, mulsum.  
 mulgēō, 2, -si, mulsum.  
 muttō, 4, -ivi, —.

nanciscor, -i, nactus (nānetus).  
 nāscor, -i, nātus.  
 necō, 1, -āvi (-ui), -ātum, 209, footnote 2 [ē-necō].

necō [nēc], 3, nexī (nexuī), nexum.  
neglēgō, 3, neglēxi, -lēctum, 211. e, foot-note 2.  
neō, 2, nēvi, —.  
nequeō, defect., 206. d.  
nigrēscō, 3, nigrui, —.  
nīgit, 3, nīxit (impers.), 208. a.  
niteō, 2, —, —.  
nitēscō, 3, nitui, —.  
nitor, -i, nīsus (nīxus).  
-niveō, 2, -nivī (-nīxi), —.  
nō, 1, nāvi, —, 179. a.  
noceō, 2, nocui, —.  
nōlē, nōlle, nōlui, —, 199 (nevīs, nēvolt, id. n.).  
nōscō [gno], 3, nōvi, nōtum [āg-, cōg-, dī(g)-, īg-nōscō], 205. b. n. 2 (nōsse, 181. a).  
nōtēscō, 3, -uī, —.  
nūbō, 3, nūpsi, nūptum.  
-nuō, 3, -nuī, — [ab-, ad-nuō].  
  
ob-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, 209. a. n.  
ob-liviscor, -i, oblitus.  
ob-mūtēscō, 3, -mūtui, —.  
ob-sideō, 2, -sēdi, -sessum [sideō].  
ob-sidō, 3, —, —.  
ob-sistō, 3, -stiti, -stitum.  
ob-solēscō, 3, -ēvi, -ētum.  
ob-stō, 1, -stiti, (-stātūrus).  
ob-tineō, 2, -uī, -tentum [teneō].  
ob-tingit (impers.), 208. c.  
ob-tundō, 3, -tudi, -tūsum (-tūsum).  
ob-venit (impers.), 208. c.  
oc-callēscō, 3, -callui, —.  
oc-cidō, 3, -cidi, -cāsum [cadō].  
oc-cidō, 3, -cidi, -cīsum [caedō].  
oc-cinō, 3, -cinui, — [canō].  
oc-cipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum.  
occulō, 3, ocului, occultum.  
oc-curro, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
ōdi, ōdisse, ōsūrus (perōsus), 205.  
of-ferō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum.  
-oleō (grow) [see ab-, ad-].  
oleō (smell), 2, olui, —.  
operiō, 4, operui, opertum.  
oportet, -ēre, -uit (impers.), 208. c.  
op-pangō, 3, -pēgi, -pāctum [pangō].  
opperior, -iri, oppertus.  
op-primō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [premō].  
ōrdior, -iri, ōrsus.  
orior (3d), -iri, ortus (oritūrus) (so comps.), 174, 191.  
os-tendō, 3, -tendi, -tentum.  
ovāre, ovātus, defect., 206. f.  
  
paciscor, -i, pactus.  
paenitet (impers.), -ēre, -uit, 208. b (-tūrus, -tendus, id. n.).  
palleō, 2, pallui, —.  
pallēscō, 3, pallui, —.  
pandō, 3, pandi, pāsum (passum) [dis-].

pangō [PAG], 3, pepigi (-pēgi), pāctum [im-pingo; op-pangō].  
parcō, 3, peperci (parsi), (parsūrus).  
pareō, 2, -ui, paritum (late).  
pariō, 3, peperī, partum (paritūrus) [com-, re-periō].  
partior, -iri, -itus, 190.  
parturiō, 4, —, —.  
pascō, 3, pāvi, pāstum.  
pateō, 2, patui, —.  
patior, -i, passus [per-petior].  
paveō, 2, pāvi, —.  
pavēscō, 3, -pāvi, — [ex-].  
pectō, 3, pexi, pexum.  
pel-licio, 3, -lexi, -lectum [-licio].  
pellō, 3, pepuli, pulsum, 176. d. n. 2, 178. b. n. 4 [ap-pellō, com-pellō, etc.].  
pendeō, 2, pependi, -pēsum.  
pendō, 3, pependi, pēsum.  
per-agō, 3, -ēgi, -āctum.  
per-cello, 3, -culi, -culsum.  
per-ciō, see ciō; p.p. -cītus.  
per-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
per-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. a. n.  
per-ficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum [faciō].  
per-fringō, 3, -frēgi, -frāctum [frangō].  
pergō, 3, perrexī, perrectum.  
per-legō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [legō].  
per-ōsus, see ōdi.  
per-petior, -i, -pessus.  
per-quirō, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum [quaerō].  
per-spiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum.  
per-stō, 1, -stiti, —.  
per-tineō, 2, -uī, — [teneō].  
per-tundō, 3, -tudi, -tūsum.  
pessum-dō, like dō, 209. a. n., 428. i.  
petessō (petissō), 3, —, —, 263. 2. b.  
petō, 3, petivi (-ii), petitum, 177. f.  
piget (impers.), -ēre, piguit, 208. b (pigitum est, id. n.).  
pingō [PIG], 3, pinxi, pictum.  
pīnō, 3, -si, pins- (pinstum, pistum).  
piśō, 3, piśivi (-ii), pistum (see pīnō).  
placeō, 2, -uī, -itum (placet, impers., 208. c.).  
plangō, 3, plānxi, plāntum.  
plaudō, 3, plausi, plausum [ex-plōdō, etc.; ap-plaudō].  
plectō, 3, plexi, plexum, 174, 176. b. 1.  
-plector, -i, -plexus.  
-pleō, 2, -plēvi, -plētum (only in comps., as com-pleō).  
plicō, 1, -plicui (-plicāvi), -plicitum (-pli-cātum).  
pluit, 3, pluit (plāvit), 174, 208. a (plauunt, id. n.).  
polleō, 2, —, —.  
polluō, 3, -ui, -ūtum [luō].  
ponō, 3, posui, positum.  
por-riciō, 3, —, -rectum [laciō].  
por-rigō (porgō), 3, -rēxi, -rēctum.

pōscō, 3, popōsci, — (so comps.).  
 possideō, 2, -sēdi, -sessum [sedeō].  
 possidō, 3, -sēdi, -sessum.  
 possum, posse, potui, —, 198. *b* (potis sum,  
 pote sum, possiem, poterint, potisist,  
 potestur, possitur, id., footnote).  
 potior, -iri, potitus.  
 pōtō, 1, -avi, -atum (pōtum).  
 praebeō, 2, -ui, -itum [habeō].  
 prae-cellō, 3, —, — [-cellō].  
 prae-cinō, 3, -cinui, — [canō].  
 prae-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
 prae-fatur, 206. *c*.  
 prae-legō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [legō].  
 prae-sagiō, 4, -iui, —.  
 prae-sens, 170. *b* (see sum).  
 prae-sideō, 2, -sēdi, — [sedeō].  
 prae-stō, 1, -stiti, -stitum (-stātum) (prae-  
 stat, impers., 208. *c*).  
 prae-sum, -esse, -fui, (-futūrus).  
 prandeō, 2, prandi, pransum.  
 prehendō (prēndō), 3, -di, prehensum  
 (prēsum).  
 premō, 3, pressi, pressum [re-primō].  
 prēndō, see prehēndō.  
 prō-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
 prōd-eō, 4, -ii, -itum, 203. *c*.  
 prōd-igō, 3, -ēgi, -actum [agō].  
 prō-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. *a. n.*  
 prō-fatus, 206. *c*.  
 prō-ficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum.  
 pro-ficiscor, -i, profectus.  
 prō-fiteor, -ēri, -fessus.  
 prō-mineō, -ēre, -ui, —.  
 prōmō, 3, -mpsi, -mptum, 15. 3.  
 prō-siliō, 3, -ui (-ivi), — [saliō].  
 prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui (-futūrus), 198.  
*a*.  
 prō-tendō, 3, -di, -tentus (-sus).  
 psallō, 3, -i, —.  
 pūbescō, 3, pūbui, —.  
 pudet (impers.), pudēre, puduit or pudi-  
 tum est, 208. *b* (pudendus, id. *n.*).  
 puerascō, 3, —, —.  
 pungō [pug], 3, pupugi, pūctum [com-].  
 pūtescō, 3, pūtui, —.  
 quaerō, 3, quaesivī, quaesitum [re-quirō]  
 (cf. quaesō).  
 quaesō, 3, defect., 206. *e* (cf. quaerō).  
 quassō, 1, reg., 263. 2.  
 quatō, 3, -cussi, quassum [con-cutiō].  
 queō, quire, quivī, quitus, 206. *d* (quitur,  
 etc., id. *n.*); cf. nequeō.  
 queror, -i, questus.  
 quiēscō, 3, quiēvi, quiētum.  
 rabō (rabiō), 3, —, —.  
 rādō, 3, rāsi, rāsum.  
 rapiō, 3, rapui, raptum (ērēpsēmus, 181. *b*.  
*n.*² [ab-ripiō etc.].

re-cidō, 3, recēdī, (recāsūrus) [cadō].  
 re-cidō, 3, -cidi, -cisum [caedō].  
 re-cipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [capio] (recēpsō,  
 183. 3).  
 re-clūdō, 3, -si, -sum.  
 red-dō, 3, reddidī, redditum, 209. *a. n.*  
 red-igō, 3, -ēgi, -actum [agō].  
 red-imō, 3, -ēmi, -ēptum.  
 re-fellō, 3, -felli, — [fallō].  
 re-ferciō, 4, -fersi, -fertum [farcio].  
 re-ferō, -ferre, rettuli, relatum [ferō].  
 rē-fert, -ferre, -tulit (impers.), 208. *c*.  
 re-ficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum.  
 regō, 3, rēxi, rēctum [ar-rigō etc.; pergō,  
 surgō].  
 re-linquō, 3, -liqui, -lictum [linquō].  
 re-miniscor, -i, —.  
 renideō, 2, —, —.  
 reor, rēri, ratus.  
 re-pellō, 3, repuli (repuli), repulsum.  
 reperio, 4, repperi, repertum.  
 rēpō, 3, rēpsi, —.  
 re-primō, 3, -pressi, -pressum [premo].  
 re-quirō, 3, -sivi, -situm [quaerō].  
 re-sideō, 2, -sēdi, —.  
 re-siliō, 4, -ui (-ii), —.  
 re-sipiscō, 3, -sipivi, — [sapiō].  
 re-sistō, 3, -stiti, —.  
 re-spergō, 3, -si, -sum [spargō].  
 re-spondeo, 2, -di, -sponsum [spondeō].  
 re-stat (impers.), 208. *c*.  
 re-stō, 1, -stiti, —, 209. *a. n.*  
 re-tendō, 3, -di, -tum (-sum).  
 re-tineō, 2, -tinui, -tentum [teneō].  
 re-tundō, 3, rettudi, retūsum (-tūsum).  
 re-vertor, -i, reversus, 191 (reverti, -eram,  
 id. *n.*).  
 rīdeō, 2, rīsi, -rīsum.  
 rigēō, 2, rigui, —.  
 rigescō, 3, rigui, —.  
 ringor, 3, rictus.  
 rōdō, 3, rōsi, rōsum.  
 rubeō, 2, —, —.  
 rubescō, 3, rubui, —.  
 rudō, 3, rudivī, —.  
 rumpō [rur], 3, rīpi, ruptum.  
 ruō, 3, rui, rutum (ruitūrus), 176. *e* [di-  
 cor-].  
 saepio, 4, saepsi, saeptum.  
 sāgiō, 4, see prae-sagiō.  
 salio, 4, salui (salii), [saltum] [dē-silio].  
 salvē, salvēre, 206. *g*.  
 sancio [sac], 4, sānxi, sānctum, 177. *b. n.*  
 sānēscō, 3, -sānuī, — [con-].  
 sapiō, 3, sapīi, —.  
 sarcio, 4, sarsi, sartum.  
 satis-dō, -dāre, -dedi, -dātum, 209. *a. n.*  
 scabō, 3, scābi, —.  
 scalpō, 3, scalpsi, scalptum.  
 scandō, 3, -scendi, -scēsum [a-scendō, etc.].

scateō (scatō), -ēre or -ēre, —, —.  
 scatūriō, 4, —, —.  
 scin' (= scisne), 13. n. (see sciō).  
 scindō [scid], 3, scidi, scissum, 177. c. n.  
 sciō, 4, -ivī, scitum (scin', 13. n.).  
 sciscō, 3, scivī, scitum.  
 scribō, 3, scripsi, scriptum, 178. b. n. 1.  
 sculpō, 3, sculpsi, sculptum.  
 scē-cernō, 3, -crēvi, -crētum.  
 sedē, 1, -ui, sectum (also secātūrus).  
 sedeō, 2, sedī, sessum [ad-, pos-sideō,  
 etc.; super-sedeō].  
 sē-ligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctum [lēgō].  
 senēscō, 3, -senui, —.  
 sentiō, 4, sēnsi, sēnsuum.  
 sepeliō, 4, sepelivi, sepultum.  
 sequor, -i, secutus, 190.  
 serō (entwine), 3, serui, sertum.  
 serō (sow), 3, sēvi, satum.  
 serpō, 3, serpsi, —.  
 sidō, 3, sidi (-sedī), -sessum.  
 sileō, 2, -ui, —.  
 singultio, 4, -ivī, —.  
 sinō, 3, sivi, situm (sirīs, etc., 181. b. n. 1).  
 sistō [sta], 3, stiti, statum.  
 sitiō, 4, -ivī, —.  
 sōdēs (= sī audēs), 13. n.  
 soleō, solēre, solitus, 192.  
 solvō, 3, solvi, solūtum, 177. e, 261. n.  
 sonō, 1, -ui, -itum (-ātūrus).  
 sorbeō, 2, sorbui (rarely sorpsi), —.  
 spargō, 3, sparsi, sparsum [ad-spergō].  
 spernō, 3, sprēvi, sprētum, 177. a. n.  
 -spiciō, 3, -spexi, -spectum.  
 splendeō, 2, -ui, —.  
 spondeō, 2, spopondī, spōnsum [re-].  
 spuō, 3, -spui, —.  
 squaleō, 2, —, —.  
 statuō, 3, -ui, -ūtum, 176. d [con-stituō].  
 sternō, 3, strāvī, strātum, 177. a. n.  
 sternuō, 3, sternui, —.  
 stertō, 3, -stertui, —.  
 -stinguō, 3, -stinxi, -stinctum (in comp.,  
 as ex-).  
 stō, stāre, steti, -statum (-stit-), 209. a,  
 and n.  
 strepō, 3, strepui, —.  
 strideō, 2, stridi, —.  
 stridō, 3, stridi, —.  
 stringō, 3, strinxī, strictum.  
 struō, 3, struxī, strūctum.  
 studeō, 2, -ui, —.  
 stupeō, 2, stupui, —.  
 stupēscō, 3, -stupui, —.  
 suādeō, 2, suāsi, suāsum.  
 sub-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. a. n.  
 sub-igō, 3, -ēgi, -āctum [agō].  
 suc-cidō, 3, -cidi, — [cadō].  
 suc-cidō, 3, -cidi, -cisum [caedō].  
 suc-currō, 3, -curri, -cursum.  
 suēscō, 3, suēvi, suētum.

suf-ferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum.  
 suf-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō].  
 suf-fodiō, 3, -fodi, -fossus.  
 sug-gerō, 3, -gessi, -gestum.  
 sugō, 3, sūxi, sūctum.  
 sūltis (= sī vultis), 13. n.  
 sum, esse, fui, (futūrus), 170; fui (forem,  
 fore, 170. a; fōns, -sēns, ēns, id. b;  
 fūvimus, fūvisset, siem, fuam, fuās,  
 escit, escunt, id. b. n.; homōst, etc.,  
 13. n.).  
 sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūmptum, 15. 11.  
 suō, 3, sui, sūtum.  
 super-dō, -dāre, -dedī, -dātum, 209. a. n.  
 super-fit, defect., 204. c.  
 super-fluō, 3, —, — [fluō].  
 super-stō, 1, -steti, —.  
 super-sum, see sum (superest, impers.,  
 208. c).  
 surdēscō, 3, surdūi, —.  
 surgō (sur-rigō), 3, surrexi, surrectum.  
 sur-ripiō, 3, -ui (surpui), -reptum [rapiō].  
 tābeō, 2, -ui, —.  
 tābēscō, 3, tābui, —.  
 taedet (impers.), -ēre, taeduit, pertaesum  
 est, 208. b.  
 tangō [TAG], 3, tetigī, tāctum, 176. c. 2  
 [con-tingō].  
 tegō, 3, tēxi, tēctum, 186.  
 temnō, 3, -tempsi, -temptum, 176. b. 1.  
 tendō [TEN], 3, tetendi, tentum.  
 teneō, 2, tenui, -tentum [con-tineō, etc.].  
 tepēscō, 3, tepui, —.  
 tergeō, 2, tersi, tersum.  
 tergō, 3, tersi, tersum.  
 terō, 3, trivi, tritum.  
 texō, 3, texui, textum.  
 timeō, 2, -ui, —.  
 -timēscō, 3, -timui, —.  
 tingō (tinguō), 3, tinxi, tinctum, 178. b. n. 2.  
 tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, 211. f. n.  
 [at-tollō].  
 tondeō, 2, -totondi (-tondi), tōnsum, 177. c.  
 tonō, 1, -ui, -tonitum (-tonātum).  
 torpeō, 2, —, —.  
 torqueō, 2, torsi, tortum.  
 torreō, 2, torrui, tostum.  
 trā-dō, 3, -didi, -ditum, 209. a. n.  
 trahō, 3, trāxi, trāctum (trāxe, 181. b. n. 2).  
 trāns-currō, 3, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum.  
 tremō, 3, tremui, —.  
 tribuō, 3, tribui, tribūtum.  
 trūdō, 3, trūsi, trūsium.  
 tueor, -ēri, tuitus (tūtus, adj.).  
 tumeō, 2, —, —.  
 tumēscō, 3, -tumui, — [in-].  
 tundō [RUD], 3, tutudi, tūsum (-tūsum)  
 [ob-tundo].  
 turgeō, 2, tursi, —.  
 tussio, 4, —, —.



- ulciscor, -ī, ultus.  
 ungō (-uō), 3, ūnxi, ūnctum.  
 urgeō, 2, ursi, —.  
 ūrō, 3, ussi, ustum (so comps., cf. also combūrō).  
 ūtor, -ī, ūsus.  
  
 vacat (impers.), 208. c.  
 vādō, 3, -vāsi, -vāsum.  
 vāgiō, 4, -iī, —.  
 valeō, 2, -uī, (-itūrus).  
 valēscō, 3, -ui, —.  
 vānēscō, 3, -vānuī, — [ē-].  
 vehō, 3, vēxi, vectum.  
 vellō (vollō), 3, velli (-vulsi), vulsum.  
 vēndō, 3, -didī, -ditum, 428. i.  
 vēneō (be sold), 4, -iī, -itum, 428. i.  
 veniō (come), 4, vēni, ventum, 19, 174.  
 vēnum-dō, -dāre, -dedī, -dātum, 209. a. n., 428. i.  
 vereor, -ērī, -itus, 190.  
 vergō, 3, —, —.  
 verrō (vorrō), 3, -verrī, versum.  
  
 vertō (vortō), 3, vertī, versum, 178. b. n. <sup>1</sup>  
 (vertor, mid., 156. a. n.).  
 vescor, -ī, —.  
 vesperāscit (impers.), 208. a, 263. 1.  
 veterāscō, 3, veterāvi, —.  
 vetō, 1, -uī, -itum.  
 videō, 2, vidī, visum.  
 videor (seem), -ērī, visus (vidētur, impers., 208. c).  
 vieō, 2, [viēvi], -ētum.  
 vigeō, 2, -uī, —.  
 vin' (= visne, see volō).  
 vinciō, 4, vinxi, vinctum.  
 vincō [vic], 3, vici, victum.  
 vireō, 2, -uī, —.  
 visō [vid], 3, visi, —, 263. 4. n.  
 viviscō, 3, -vixi, —, [re-].  
 vivō, 3, vixi, victum (vixet, 181. b. n. <sup>2</sup>).  
 volō, velle, volui, 199 (sūltis, 13. n., 199. n.; vin', 13. n.).  
 volvō, 3, volvi, volūtum.  
 vomō, 3, vomui, —.  
 voveō, 2, vōvi, vōtum.

# INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS

NOTE. — The numerical references are to sections, with a few exceptions in which the page (p.) is referred to. The letters and some numerals refer to subsections. The letter *N.* signifies Note; *ftn.*, footnote. *Abl.* = ablative; *acc.* = accusative; *adj.* = adjective; *adv.* = adverb or adverbial; *apod.* = apodosis; *app.* = appositive or apposition; *cf.* = compare; *comp.* = compound or composition; *compar.* = comparative or comparison; *conj.* = conjugation or conjunction; *constr.* = construction; *dat.* = dative; *gen.* = genitive; *gend.* = gender; *imv.* = imperative; *ind. disc.* = indirect discourse; *loc.* = locative; *nom.* = nominative; *prep.* = preposition; *subj.* = subject; *subjv.* = subjunctive; *vb.* = verb; *w.* = with. (Other abbreviations present no difficulty.)

**A**, quantity of final, 604. *d.*  
**ā**, *acc.* of Greek nouns in, 81. 2; as *nom.* ending, decl. III, *gend.*, 84–87.

**ā**, in decl. I, 37; stem-vowel of conj. I, 171, 174, 179. *a*, 259; in subjunctive, 179; preps. in **-ā**, *adv.* use of, 433. 4.

**ā**, primary suffix, 234. I. 1.

**ā** (*ab*, *abs*), use, 220. *b*, 221. 1, 429. *b*; compounded with *vbs.*, 267. *a*; *w.* *abl.* of agent, 405; *w.* place from which, 426. 1; *w.* names of towns, 428. *a*; expressing position, 429. *b*; as *adv.* expressing distance, *w.* *abl.* of degree of difference, 433. 3; in *comps.*, *w.* *dat.*, 381; in *comps.*, *w.* *abl.*, 402; *w.* *abl.* of gerund, 507.

**ā** parte, 398, 429. *b*.

**ab** and **au** in *auferō*, 200. *a*. *N.*

Abbreviations of pronomens, 108. *c*.

Ability, verbs of, *constr.*, 456; in *apod.*, 517. *c*.

**ABLATIVE**, defined, 35. *e*; in **-ābus**, 43. *e*; in **-ā**, 43. *N.* 1, 49. *e*, 80. *ftn.*, 92. *f*; of *i*-stems, decl. III, 74. *e*; rules of form, 76; nouns having *abl.* in **-ī**, 76. *a*, *b*; of decl. IV, in **-abus**, 92. *c*; *abl.* used as supine, 94. *b*; of *adjs.*, decl. III, 121. *a*. 1–4; preps. followed by, 220. *b*; adverbial forms of, 214. *e*, *cf.* 215. 4.

**ABLATIVE**, *Syntax*, 398–420; classification and meaning, 398, 399. Separation, 400; *w.* *vbs.* of freedom, 401; *w.* *comps.*, 402; *w.* *adjs.* of freedom etc., 402. *a*. Source and material, 403; *w.* participles, *id.* *a*; *w.* *constāre* etc., *id.* *b*; *w.* *facere*, *id.* *c*; *w.* nouns, *id.* *d*. Cause, 404; *causā*, *grātiā*, *id.* *c*. Agent, 405; means for agent, 405. *b*. *N.* 1. Comparison, 406; *opiniōne*, *spē*, etc., *id.* *a*; *w.*

*alius*, 407. *d*; *w.* *advs.*, *id.* *e*. Means, 409; *w.* *dōnō* etc., 364; *w.* *ūtor*, *frūr*, etc., 410; *w.* *opus* and *ūsus*, 411. Manner, 412. Accompaniment, 413. Degree of difference, 414; *quō* . . . *cō*, 414. *a*. Quality, 415; price, 416; charge or penalty, 353. 1. Specification, 418; *w.* *dignus* etc., *id.* *b*. *Abl.* Absolute, 419; adverbial use, *id.* *c*; replacing subord. clauses, 420; supplying place of *perfl.* act. part., 493. 2. Place, 422, 426. 3; *w.* *vbs.* and *frētus*, 431 and *a*. *Abl.* of time, 423; of time *w.* *quam*, 434. *N.*; of place from which, 426. 1; names of towns, *domus*, *rūs*, 427. 1; *ex urbe Rōmā*, 428. *b*. Locative *abl.*, 426. 3; way by which, 429. *a*; *w.* transitive compounds, 395. *N.* 1; time within which, 424. *c*; duration of time, *id.* *b*. *Abl.* *w.* preps., 220. *b*, 221, 430, 435; *w.* *ex* for part. *gen.*, 346. *c*; *w.* *prō* (*in defence of*), 379. *N.*; *w.* *palam* etc., 432. *c*; *abl.* of gerund, 507; equiv. to *pres. part.*, *id.* *ftn.*

**Ablaut**, 17; in decl. II, 45. *c*.  
**Abounding**, words of, *w.* *abl.*, 409. *a*; *w.* *gen.*, 356.

**Absence**, *vbs.* of, *w.* *abl.*, 401.

**Absolute case**, see *Abl.* Absolute.

**Absolute use of vb.**, 273. 2. *N.* 2, 387. *N.*

**absque mē** etc., in *Pl.* and *Ter.*, 517. *f*.

**Abstract nouns**, *gend.*, 32; in *plur.*, 100. *c*; endings, 238; *w.* *neut. adj.*, 287. 4. *a*, 289; abstract quality denoted by *neut. adj.*, 289. *a*.

**absum**, *constr.*, 373. *b*.

**-ābus**, in *dat.* and *abl. plur.*, decl. I, 43. *e*.

**ac**, see *atque*.

**ac si**, *w.* *subjv.*, 524.

**Acatalectic verse**, 612. *a*.

accēdit ut, 569. 2.

Accent, rules of, 12; effect in modifying vowels, p. 27. ftn. 1; in decl. II, 49. b; in comps. of faciō, 204. b; musical, 611.

acceptum, 496. n. 4.

accidit, synopsis, 207; constr., 569. 2.

accidō, constr., 364.

accommodātus, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. a.

Accompaniment, abl. of, 413.

Accomplishment, vbs. of, w. subjv., 568.

ACCUSATIVE, defined, 35. d; in -m and -s, 38. c; in -im, decl. III, 75. a, b; in -is (plur.), 77; in -a, 81. 2; acc. of decl. IV, used as supine, 94. b; neut. acc. used as adv., 214. d, cf. 215. 1; fem. used as adv., id. 2.

ACCUSATIVE, *Syntax*, 386-397 (see 338); w. vbs. of remembering, 350 and a, c, d; and gen. w. vbs. of reminding, 351; w. impersonals, 354. b, 388. c, 455. 2; w. ad with interest and refert, 355. b; w. dat., 362; w. compounds of ad, ante, ob, 370. b; vbs. varying between acc. of end of motion and dat., 363; w. ad for dat., 385. a; after propiore etc., 432. a; direct object, 274, 387; w. iuvō etc., 367. a; acc. or dat. w. vbs., 367. b, c; acc. w. vbs. of feeling and taste, 388. a, 390. a; w. comps. of circum and trans, 388. b; cognate acc., 390; adverbial use of, 390. c, d and n. 4, 397. a; two accusatives, 391; pred. acc., 392-3; secondary object, 394-5; acc. w. pass. of vbs. of asking etc., 396. b. n.; synecdochical acc. (of specification), 397. b; in exclamations, id. d; duration and extent, 423, 425; end of motion, 426. 2; names of towns, domus, rūs, 427. 2; Rōmam ad urbem, 428. b; acc. w. ante diem, 424. g; w. preps., 220. a, c; w. ad or in to denote penalty, 353. 2. n.; w. pridē, propius, etc., 342. a; acc. of gerund, 506; of anticipation, 576; subj. of inf., 397. e, 452, 455. 2, 459; as pred. after inf., 455. a; subj. in ind. disc., 579, 581.

Accusing and acquitting, vbs. of, constr., 352.

acer, decl., 115; compar., 125.

-ācus, adj. ending, 247.

aciēs, decl., 98. a.

acquiescō, w. abl., 431.

Actions, names of, 237; nouns of action w. gen., 348.

Active voice, 154. a, 156; change to pass., 275.

Acts, nouns denoting, 239.

-acus (-ācus), adj. ending, 249.

acus, gen., 90. Etc.

ad, use, 220. a, 221. 2; in comp., 16, 267. a; w. acc. to denote penalty, 353. 2. n.;

in comps., w. dat., 370, 381; in comps., w. acc., 370. b; w. acc. with adjs., 385. a; end of motion, 426. 2, cf. 363; w. names of towns, 428. a; w. names of countries, 428. c; meaning near, 428. d; in expressions of time, 424. e; following its noun, 435; w. gerund, 506.

additur, constr., 568.

adeō (verb), constr., 370. b.

adeō ut, 537. 2. n. 2.

-adēs, patronymic ending, 244.

adiuvō, w. acc., 367. a.

Adjective pronouns, see Pronouns.

ADJECTIVES. Definition, 20. b; formed like nouns, 109; ā- and o-stems, 110-112. Declension, 110-122; decl. I and II, 110-113; decl. III, 114-121; decl. III, three terminations, 115; one termination, 117, 118; variable, indeclinable, defective, 122. Comparison, 123-131; decl. of comparative, 120. Numeral adjs., 132-137; derivative adjs., 242-255.

ADJECTIVES, *Syntax*. Masc. adjs., 122. d; adjs. of com. gen., id.; as advs., 214. d, e (cf. 218), 290; adj. as app., 282. b; as nouns, 288, 289; nouns used as adjs., 321. c; advs. used as adjs., 321. d; participles used as adjs., 494. Agreement of adjs., 286, 287; attribute and predicate, 287; use of neut. adjs., 289. Adjs. w. adverbial force, 290. Two comparatives w. quam, 292. Adj. pronouns, 296-298. Gen. of adjs. of decl. III instead of nom., 343. c. n. 1. Adjs. w. part. gen., 346. 2; w. dat., 363; w. acc., 388. d. n. 2; w. inf., 461; w. supine in -ū, 510. Position of adjs., 598. a, b. Adjective phrase, 277.

admodum, use, 291. c. n. 1.

admoneō, constr., 351.

Admonishing, vbs. of, constr., 563.

Adonic verse, 625. 3.

adspergō, constr., 364.

adūlor, constr., 367. b.

Adverbial acc., 390. b, c, d, and n. 2, 397. a.

Adverbial conjunctions, 20. g. n.

Adverbial phrases, 216, 277.

ADVERBS, defined, 20. e; formed from adjs., 214 and c, d, e, 218; case-forms or phrases, 218; comparison of advs., 218; numeral advs., 158. Classification of advs., 217; correlative forms of advs. of place, 217. n.

ADVERBS, *Syntax*, 321. Advs. used as adjs., 321. d; adjs. w. adverbial force, 290; adverbial abl. abs., 419. c. Special uses, 322, 326. Advs. w. nouns, 321. c. n.; correlative advs. used as conjs., 323. f, g; part. gen. w. advs., 346. a. 4; dat. w. advs., 384; compar. of adv. followed by quam, 406; adv. as protasis, 521. a.

Adversative conjunctions, 223. *a. 2*, 224.

*I. b.*  
adversus, 219; *w. acc.*, 220. *a*; as adv., 433. 2.

*ae*, diphthong, 2; sound of, 6. *n. 8*, 8.

aedēs, sing. and plur., 107. *a.*

aeger, decl., 112. *a.*

aemulor, constr., 367. *b.*

Aeneadēs, decl., 44.

Aenēās, decl., 44.

aequālis, decl., 76. *a. 2*; constr. *w. gen.*, 385. *c* and *l.*

aequē ac, 384. *n. 2*.

aequō (abl.), *w. compar.*, 406. *a.*

aequor, decl., 64.

āēr, use of plur., 100. *b.*

aes, use of plur., 100. *b.*

aetās, decl., 72.

aethēr, decl., 81.

Affecting, acc. of, 386.

affinis, decl., 76. *b. 2*; constr. *w. gen.*, 385. *c* and *l.*

Affirmative, expressed by two negatives, 326; *nōne* expecting affirm. answer, 332. *b*; ways of saying *yes*, 336 and *a.*

Agency, nouns of, 236; rel. clause equivalent to, 308. *c.*

Agent, dat. of, *w. gerundives*, 374; *w. perf. parts.*, 375; abl. of, 405; agent regarded as means, *id. b*; animal as agent, *id. n. 2*.

ager, decl., 47.

aggressor, constr., 370. *b.*

Agnōmen, 108. *a. n.*

agō, forms of, omitted, 319. *a.*

Agreeing, verbs of, *w. gerundive*, 500. *4.*

Agreement, 280; of nouns, 281; in app., 282; in predicate, 283; of adjs., 286; of demonstrative pronouns, 296; of possessive pronouns, 302; of relatives, 306, 306; of verbs, 316, 317.

-ai for -ae, decl. *I*, 43. *a*; 603. *a. 2. n.*

-āia, nouns in, decl., 43. *e. n. 2*.

aiō, pronounced ai-ō, 6. *c.*

-aius, names in, decl., 49. *f*; -aius in Prosody, 603. *f. n. 2*.

-ai, ending, 254. 7; nouns in, 68. *ftn. 1*.

-ai and -ar, neuters in (decl. *III*), 65. *b*, 76. *a. 3*.

alacer, decl., 115. *a*; compar., 131. *b*.

albus, not compared, 131. *d*.

Alcaic verse, 625. 9, 10.

Alcmanian strophe, 617. *a.*

-āle, noun ending, 254. 7; list of nouns in, 68. *ftn. 2*.

aliēnus, for possessive gen. of *alius*, 113. *d*, 343. *a.*

aliquis (-quī), decl., 151. *e*; meaning, 310, 311.

aliquot, indeclinable, 122. *b*.

-ālis, -āris, adj. endings, 248.

*alius*, decl., 113; gen., *id. c*, cf. 343; compounds, 113. *e*; *alius w. abl.*, *ac*, *nisi*, *quam*, 407. *d*.

*alius . . . alius*, 315. *a.*

Alphabet, 1; vowels and diphthongs, 1, 2; consonants, 3, 4; early forms of letters, 1. *a* and *n.*, 6. *a, b*.

alter, decl., 113. *b*; gen and comps., *id. c, e*; use, 315; reciprocal use, 145. *c* 315. *a.*

alter . . . alter, 315. *a.*

altera est res ut, 568. *ftn. 2*.

alteruter, decl., 113. *e*; use, 315.

Although, how expressed, 527, 535. *e.*

alvos (alvus), *gend.*, 48. *Exc.*

am-, see amb-

-am, adv. ending, 215. 2.

amb- (am-, an-), inseparable prefix, 267. *b.*

ambāgēs, decl., 78. 1.

ambō, decl., p. 59. *ftn.*; *ō* in, p. 427. *ftn. 1*.

āmēns, decl., 121. *a. 3*.

amplius, without *quam*, 407. *c.*

amussim, acc., 75. *a. 3*, 103. *b. 4*.

an-, see amb-

an, anne, annōn, in double questions, 335.

Anacrusis, 608. *g.*

Anapest, 609. *b. 2*; anapestic verse, 613, 628. *a.*

Anaphora, 598. *f.*

anceps, decl., 121. *a. 3*.

Anchisēs, decl., 44.

Andromachē, decl., 44.

-āneus, adj. ending, 247.

animal, decl., 69.

Animals, *gend.* of names of, 32, 34 and *n.*: regarded as means or agent, 405. *b. n. 2*.

animī (loc.), *w. adjs.*, 358; *w. vbs.*, *id.*

annālis, decl., 76. *a. 2*.

Annalistic present, 469. *a.*

Answers, forms of, 336, 337.

ant-, ent-, stem-endings, 83. *e.*

ante, 220. *a*; uses, 221. 3; compounded *w. vbs.*, 267. *a*; in compounds, *w. dat.*, 370, *w. acc.*, *id. b*; adverbial use of, 433. 1; followed by *quam*, 434.

ante diem, 424. *g.*

Antecedent, its use *w. relative*, 305-307; undefined, constr., 535. See Indefinite antecedent.

antecēdō, constr., 370. *b.*

anteō, constr., 370. *b.*

antegredior, constr., 370. *b.*

Antepenult, defined, 12. *ftn.*

antequam, 550, 551; in ind. disc., 585. *b. n.*

Antibacchius, 609. *d. n.*

Anticipation, acc. of, 576; becomes nom., *id. n.*

Antithesis, 598. *f.*

anus, *gend.*, 90. *Exc.*

-ānus, adjs. in, 249.

- Aorist (= hist. perf.), 161. 2, 473.  
 apage, 206. g.  
 apertus, compar. of, 124. a.  
 Apex, 10. n.  
 apis, decl., 78. 2.  
 Apodosis, defined, 512; introduced by correl., id. b; may be subord., id. c; forms of, 514, 515 ff.; potential subjv., 447. 3. n.; subjv. of modesty, 447. 1; vbs. of necessity etc., 522. a; complex apod., 523; apod. omitted, 524; apod. in ind. disc., 589. 2. See Conditional Sentences.  
 Appointing, vbs. of, constr., 393.  
 Apposition, see Appositive.  
 Appositive, defined, 282; agreement of, 281, 282. c; w. loc., id. d; gen. as app. to possessive, 302. e; gen. used for app., 343. d; so dat., 373. a; rel. clause equivalent to app., 308. c; acc. as app. to a clause, 397. f; app. instead of voc., 340. a; app. in connection with inf., 452 and n. 2.  
 aptus ad, 385. a; aptus w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. a. ftn. 2; aptus qui, 535. f.  
 apud, 220. a; use, 221. 4; in quoting, 428. d. n. 2.  
 aquâlis, decl., 76. a. 2.  
 -ar, nom. ending, decl. III, 68. a, 65. b, 76. a. 2; 68. ftn. 1; gend., 87.  
 arbor (-s), decl., 62. n. 2.  
 arceō, constr., 364. n. 2.  
 Archilochian verse, 622.  
 arctus, gend., 48. *Exc.*  
 ārdeō, w. abl., 404. a.  
 -āria, suffix, 254. 2.  
 -āris, adj. ending, 248.  
 Aristophanic verse, 625. 2.  
 -ārium, noun ending, 254. 3.  
 -ārius, adj. ending, 250. a; noun ending, 254. 1.  
 Arrangement of words, 595-601.  
 Arsīs and thesis, 611 and ftn.  
 Arts, names of, decl. I, 44.  
 artus, decl., 92. c.  
 as, value of, 632; gen. of, 417. a.  
 -ās, in acc. plur. of Greek nouns, 81. 5.  
 -ās, old gen. ending, 43. b; Greek nom. ending, 83. e; patronymic, 244; gend. of nouns in, 86. b; -ās, -ātia, see āt-; adjs. in -ās, 249.  
 Asclepiadic verse, 625. 5, 6.  
 Asking, vbs. of, w. two acc., 396; w. abl., 396. a; w. subjunctive clause, 563.  
 Aspirates, 4 and ftn. 2.  
 Assertions, direct, in indic., 157. a.  
 Assimilation of consonants, 15. 6, 10; in prefixes, 16.  
 -āssē, -āssere, in fut. perf., 183. 5.  
 ast, 324. d.  
 -aster, as noun ending, 254. 11.  
 Asyndeton, 323. b, 601. c.  
 At, meaning *near*, 428. d.  
 at, use, 324. d; a; enim, id.; at vērō, 324. k  
 āt-, patrilial stem-ending, 71. 5; decl., 78. 3, 121. a. 4.  
 āter, decl., 112. a; not compared, 131. d and n.  
 Athematic verbs, 174. 2.  
 Athōs, decl., 52.  
 Atlās, decl., 82, 83. e.  
 atque (ac), use, 324. b, c; after adjs. of likeness, 384. n. 2; after alius, 407. d.  
 atqui, use, 324. d.  
 atrōx, decl., 117. a.  
 Attraction of case of relative, 306. a; of case of antecedent, id. n.; of subject in ind. disc., 581. n. 2.  
 Attraction, subjunctive of, 591. 2, 593.  
 Attributive adjective defined, 285. 1; number, 286. a; takes gend. of nearest noun, 287. 1.  
 -ātus, adj. ending, 246.  
 audācter, compar., 218.  
 aula, decl., 44.  
 aureus, not compared, 131. d.  
 ausus as pres. part., 491.  
 aut, use, 324. e, 335. d. n.  
 autem, use, 324. d, j, 599. b.  
 Author w. apud, 428. d. n. 2.  
 Authority in Prosody, 602.  
 avis, decl., 76. b. 1.  
 -āx, verbal adj. ending, 251; adjs. in, w. gen., 349. c.  
 baccar, decl., 76. a. 3.  
 Bacchiac verse, 628. b.  
 Bacchius, 609. d.  
 Bāiae, decl., 43. e. n. 2.  
 -bam, tense-ending, 168. b.  
 Bargaining, vbs. of, constr., 563; gerundive, 500. 4; clause, 563. d.  
 Base, 27.  
 basis, decl., 82.  
 Beginning, vbs. of, constr., 456.  
 Believing, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.  
 bellī, loc. use of, 427. a.  
 bellum, decl., 46.  
 bellus, compar., 131. a.  
 Belonging, adjs. of, w. gen., 385. c.  
 bene, comparison, 218; in phrase compounds, 12. a. *Exc.* 1, 266. b; compounds of, constr., 368. 2.  
 Benefiting, vbs. of, constr., 367.  
 -ber, names of months in, decl., 115. a.  
 bicolor, decl., 122. a.  
 bicorpor, 119. n.  
 -bilis, verbal adj. ending, 252.  
 Birds, gend. of names of, 32.  
 Birth or origin, nouns of, derivation, 244; participles of, w. abl., 403. a.  
 -bō, tense-ending, 168. c.

- Bōi**, decl., 49. *f*.  
**bonus**, decl., 110; compar., 129; w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. *a*. ftn.  
**bōe**, decl., 79 and *b*.  
**bri-**, stems ending in, 66; adjs. in, 115. *a*.  
**-brum**, suffix, 240.  
**-bulum**, suffix, 240.  
**-bundus**, verbals in, 253. *b*; w. acc., 388. *d*.  
*N*.<sup>2</sup>.  
**būris**, decl., 75. *a*. 1.  
**Buying**, vbs. of, constr. with, 417. *c*.  
**C** for *g*, in early use and as abbreviation, 1. *a* and *N*.; for *qu*, 6. *a*, *b*; quantity of final syllables ending in, 604. *j*.  
**caedēs**, decl., 78. 2.  
**caelēs**, decl., 121. *a*. 4.  
**caelum**, w. masc. plur., 106. *b*.  
**Caere**, decl., 76. *b*. *N*.<sup>2</sup>.  
**caesius**, compar., 131. *a*.  
**Cæsura**, 611. *b*; masc. and fem., 615. *c*. *N*.; bucolic cæsura, id.  
**Calendar**, Roman, 631.  
**Calends**, 631. *a*.  
**calx**, decl., 103. *g*. 2.  
**campester**, decl., 115. *a*.  
**Can**, how expressed in Lat., 157. *b*.  
**canālis**, decl., 76. *b*. 2.  
**canis**, decl. and stem, 62. *N*.<sup>2</sup>, 76. *b*. *N*.<sup>2</sup>, 78. 1.  
**CAP**, root, 56. *a*.  
**Capacity**, measures of, 638.  
**capitis**, genitive, w. verbs of accusing, 352. *a*.  
**caput**, decl., 59.  
**Capys**, decl., 82.  
**carbasus**, gen., 48. *Exc.*; plur., 106. *b*.  
**Cardinal numbers**, 132; inflection of, 134. *a-c*; use of *et* with, 135. *a*, *b*; replaced by distributives, 137. *b*, *d*; w. *ex* or partitive genitive, 346. *c*.  
**cārē**, compar., 218.  
**carō**, decl., 79.  
**cārus**, compar., 124.  
**Case-constructions**, 338.  
**Case-endings**, 27. *a*; final vowels in, 38. *g*; table, 39.  
**Case-forms**, words defective in, 103.  
**Cases**, defined, 35; position of modifying case, 598. 2; agreement in, 281; origin and meaning of, 338; case of rel. pron., 305, 306. *a*; same case after *as* before certain conj., 323. *a*. Construction of Cases, 338-435; Genitive, 342-359; Dative, 360-380; Accusative, 386-397; Vocative, 340; Ablative, 398-420; time and place, 423-431; cases w. preps., 220, 426. ftn.  
**cassem**, decl., 103. *f*. 3.  
**castrum**, castra, 107.  
**Catalectic verse**, 612. *a*.  
**causā**, w. gen., 359. *b*, 404. *c*; w. gen. of gerund, 504. *b*.  
**Causal clauses**, 539, 540; w. indic. or subjv., quod, quia, 540; w. indic., quoniam, quāndō, 540. *a*; w. qui, 535. *e*; w. cum, 540. *d*; nōn quia, nōn quod, etc., in the denial of a reason, 540. *N*.<sup>2</sup>; causal clause replaced by part., 496; by abl. abs., 420. 2.  
**Causal conjunctions**, 223. *a*. 3, *b*. 7, 224. II. *f*; particles, 539, 540.  
**Cause**, abl. of, 404.  
**Cause**, advs. of, 217. *c*.  
**Caution and effort**, verbs of, constr., 563. *e*.  
**cavē**, in prohibitions, 450 (2) and *N*.<sup>2</sup>; nē omitted after, 565. *N*.<sup>1</sup>.  
**caveō**, constr., 563.  
**-ce**, enclitic, 146. *N*.<sup>1</sup> and *a*. *N*.<sup>1</sup>.  
**Ceasing**, verbs of, w. complem. inf., 456.  
**cēdō**, constr., 368. *N*.<sup>2</sup>.  
**celeber**, decl., 115. *a*.  
**celer**, forms, 115. *a*. *N*.<sup>2</sup>.  
**cēlō**, w. acc., 396. *c*.  
**Celtibēr**, decl., 50. *c*.  
**cēnsēō**, constr., 563 and *d*.  
**certē**, certō, use, 322. *c*; in answers, 336. *a*.  
**cētrē**, Greek plur., 48. *a*. *N*.  
**cētra**, 111. *b*; adverbial use, 390. *d*. *N*.<sup>2</sup>; -us, use, 293; -i, use, 315.  
**ceu**, use, 524.  
**-ceus**, adj. ending, 247.  
**Characteristic clauses** of, 534, 535; proviso, 535. *d*; cause or concession, id. *e*; of result or characteristic, 559.  
**Characteristic**, expr. by participle, 496.  
**Characteristic vowel**, 37.  
**Charge and penalty**, gen. of, 352.  
**Chiasmus**, 598. *f* and *N*.  
**Choliambic trimeter**, 618. *c*.  
**Choosing**, vbs. of, w. two accs., 393.  
**Choriambic verse**, 624. *N*.  
**Choriambus**, 609. *c*.  
**ci** and *ti*, interchange of, 6. *N*.<sup>1</sup>.  
**-cinium**, noun ending, 241. *c*.  
**-ciō**, diminutive ending, 243. *a*.  
**cip-**, stems in, decl. III, 56. *a*.  
**circā**, circum, circiter, use, 220. *a*, 221. 5-7; as advs., 433. 2.  
**circā**, w. gerund, 506. *N*.<sup>1</sup>.  
**circum**, compounds w. vbs., 267. *a*; dat. w. such comps., 370; acc., 388. *b*.  
**circumdō**, constr., 364.  
**Circumstances of action**, 419, 420. 5; participle implying, 496.  
**cis**, citorior, 130. *a*.  
**Cities**, gen. of names of, 32 and *a*. See Locative.  
**citrā**, after its noun, 435.  
**clādēs**, decl., 78. 2.  
**clam**, constr., 432. *d*.

- Classes, names of, *gend. of*, 30. *a. n. s.*; used in plur., 101. 3.
- Clauses, defined, kinds of, 278, 279; replaced by *abl. abs.*, 420; used as nouns, 343. *c.*; dependent, syntax of, 519-593; conditional *rel.*, 279. *c.*, 519; final, 279. *d.*, 529-533; consecutive, 536, 537; causal, 539, 540; temporal, 543-556; substantive, 562-588; infinitive clauses, 452, 562. *n.*; substantive clauses of purpose, 563; of result, 567, 568; *indic. w. quod*, 572; indirect questions, 573-575; *ind. disc.*, 578-593.
- clāvis*, decl., 76. *b. 1.*
- Close syllables, 7. *n. 2.*
- coepti*, 205.
- Cognate acc., 214. *d. n.*, 390.
- Cognōmen*, 108.
- Collective noun with *sing.* or *plur. vb.*, 317. *d.*
- colus*, *gend.*, 90; decl., 105. *a.*
- com-* (*con-*), compounded w. *vbs.*, 16, 267. *a.*; such may take *dat.*, 370.
- Combinations of words, 13.
- comētās*, decl., 44.
- comitium*, *comitia*, 107.
- Command, see *Imperative*; in hortatory subjv., 439.
- Commanding, *vbs. of*, *w. dat.*, 367; *w. inf.*, 563. *a.*; *w. subjv.*, 563 (cf. 580. *a.*).
- Commands, expressed by *imv.*, 448; for condition, 521. *b.*; in *ind. disc.*, 588; in *informal ind. disc.*, 592. 1.
- commissor*, *w. acc.*, 354. *a. n.*
- committō ut*, 568 and *n. 1.*
- Common gender, 34; *adjs. of*, 122. *d.*
- Common syllables, 11. *c.*, 603. *f.*
- commonefaciō*, *-fiō*, constr., 351.
- commoneō*, constr., 351.
- communis*, *w. gen.*, 385. *c.*
- commūtō*, constr., 417. *b.*
- Comparative conjunctions, 223. *b. 2.*, 224. II. *b.*; in conditions, 524.
- Comparative suffix, 124. *ftn.*; of *advs.*, 214. *b. n.*
- Comparatives, decl., 120; stem, *id. b.*; neut. *sing. of compar. adj. used as adv.*, 218; meaning of, 291; two comparatives, 292; *compar. and positive w. quam*, *id. a. n.*; *abl. w. compar.*, 406; *quam w. compar.*, 407. *a.*; *compar. w. quam (ut)*, *quam qui*, 535. *c.*, 571. *a.*
- Comparison, conjunctions of, 323. *a.*
- Comparison, particles of, *tamquam*, *quasi*, etc., constr., 524.
- Comparison of *adjs.*, 123 ff.; irregular, 129; defective, 130, 131; *w. magis* and *maximē*, 128; of *advs.*, 218; prepositions implying, *w. quam*, 407. *e. n.*, 434.
- Complementary infinitive, 456; has no subject, *id. n.*; *pred. noun or adj. after*, 458; *inf. partly subject, partly complementary*, 454; by analogy, 457. *a.*
- compleō*, constr., 356, 409. *n.*
- Completed action, tenses of, 160. *b.*; how formed, 179. *f.*, *g.*; use of, 473 ff.
- Complex conditional sentences, 523.
- Complex sentence, 278. *b.*
- complūrēs*, *complūria*, 120. *c.*
- compos*, decl., 121. *a. 4.*, *b. 1.*
- Composition, all word-formation a process of, 227; comp. to express relations of words, 338, 386. See *Comp. words*.
- Compound sentence, defined, 278. 2.
- Compound stems, imaginary, 255. *a.*
- Compound suffixes, 233. 2, 235.
- Compound verbs, 267; comps. of *faciō*, 204. *a.*, *b.*
- Compound words, assimilation in, 15. 6, 16; defined, 264; how formed, 265-267. 2.
- Compounds of *preps.*, *w. dat.*, 370; of *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, 381; *w. acc.*, 388. *b.*, 396; quantity of, 606. *c.*
- con-*, see *com-*.
- Conative present, 467; imperfect, 471. *c.*
- concedō*, constr., 563 and *c.*
- Concession, hortatory subjv. of, 440 (cf. 526); particles of, 527; *quamvis*, *ut*, 527. *a.*; *licet*, *id. b.*; *etsi* etc., *id. c.*; *cum*, 549; *quamquam*, 527. *d.*, *e.*; *quamvis*, *w. indicative*, 527. *e.*; *vbs. of*, *w. ut*, 527. *f.*; *abl. abs. for concessive clause*, 420. 3; concession implied in *part.*, 496; *qui concessive*, 535. *e.*
- Concessive clauses, see *Concession*.
- Concessive conjunctions, 223. *b. 3.*, 224, II. *c.*; particles, use of, 527.
- Conclusion, see *Apodosis*.
- Concords, the four, 280.
- concor*, decl., 119, 121. *a. 3.*
- Condemning, *vbs. of*, constr., 352.
- Conditional clauses, defined, 279. *c.*
- Conditional conjunctions, 223. *b. 1.*, 224. II. *a.*, 525.
- Conditional Particles, 524, 525.
- Conditional sentences, defined, 279. *c.*; development, 511; *protasis* and *apodosis*, 512; classification, 514; Present and Past, nothing implied, 515; Future conditions, 516; fut. more vivid, *id. 2. a.*; fut. less vivid, *id. 2. b.*; perf. *indic. in fut. cond.*, *id. e.*; Contrary to fact, 517; *indic. in contrary to fact condition*, *id. b.*, cf. *c.* and notes; in old Latin, *id. e. n. 2.*; General condition, 518; condition disguised, 521; as *part. etc.*, *id. a.*; as exhortation or command, *id. b.*; *protasis omitted*, 522; Potential Subjv., 446; Subjv. of Modesty, 447. 1; *vbs. of necessity* etc., 522. *a.*; complex conditions, 523; clauses of Comparison (conclusion omitted), 524; Concessive

- clauses, 527; Proviso, 528; use of *si* and its comps., 525; conditional relative clauses, 519; temporal, 542, 551. *c. n.* 2; conditional sentences in ind. disc., 589.
- cōfido*, constr., 431 and *n.* 1.
- Conjugation, defined, 22. Conjugation of verbs, 171-193; how distinguished, 171; regular forms of, 173; mixed forms, *id.*; parallel forms, 189; stem-vowels of conjugations, 171-178; stems of the four conjugations; how modified, 179; paradigms of the four regular conjugations, 184-212.
- Conjunctions, defined, 20. *g.*; classes of, 223; list of, 224. *Syntax*, 323. *a.*; 324. *a-k*, 539, 540. notes; correlative use, 323. *g.*; conjs. repeated, *id. e.*; omitted, *id. b.*; used together, 324. *k.*
- Conjunctive adverbs, 20. *g. n.*
- Conjunctive phrases, 224.
- Connectives, relatives used as, 308. *f.*
- cōnor*, *w. inf.*, 563. *e.*; *cōnor si*, *id. n.* 1.
- Consecutive clauses, defined, 279. *e.*; uses, 536-538; clauses of result or characteristic, 559.
- Consecutive conjunctions, 223. *b.* 5, 224. II. *e.*
- cōnsequor ut*, 568.
- cōnsistere*, *w. abl.*, 403. *b.* *ftn.* 2, 431.
- Consonant stems of nouns, decl. III, 56-64; cons.\* stems of adjs., 117; case-forms, 121; of verbs, 259. *a.* 3.
- Consonant suffixes (primary), 234. II.
- Consonants, classification, 3; changes, 14-19; insertion, 15. 11; transposition, 177. *a. n.*; dissimilation, 15. 6; assimilation, *id.* 16; pronunciation, 8 and *n.*, 11. *b. n.*
- cōnsors*, decl., 121. *a.* 3.
- cōnstāre*, *w. abl.*, 403. *b.*
- cōnstitutō*, constr., 563. *d.*
- Cōnstructiō ad sēsum*, see *Synesis*.
- Constructions of cases, 338-435 (see under *Abl. etc.*).
- cōnsuēvi*, use, 476.
- cōnsul*, decl., 62.
- cōnsulāris*, decl., 76. *a.* 2.
- cōnsulō*, *w. dat. or acc.*, 367. *c.*
- Contention, words of, constr., 368. *a.*, 413. *b.*
- contentus, *w. abl.*, 431. *a.*; *w. perf. inf.*, 486. *f.*
- continēri*, *w. abl.*, 403. *b.* *ftn.*
- contingit ut, 568.
- Continued action, tenses of, 160, 161.
- Continuing, vbs. of, *w. complementary inf.*, 456.
- contrā, use, 220. *a.*, 221. 8, 321. *d.*; as adv., 433. 4; position, 435.
- Contracted forms, *vin'*, *scin'*, 13. *n.*; gen. in *-i*, *dat.* and *abl.* in *-is*, 49. *a.*, *b.*
- Contracting, vbs. of, *w. gerundive*, 500. 4.
- Contraction of vowels, 15. 3; quantity, 10. *c.*; in prosody, 603. *c.*; of syllables, 608. *d.*
- Contrary to fact conditions, 517; in ind. disc., 589. *b.*
- conveniō*, *w. acc.*, 370. *b.*
- Coördinate conjunctions, 223. *a.*, 224. *a-d*; coörd. clauses, 278. *a.*; coörd. words without conj., 323. *b.*; *w. conj.*, *id. c.*
- Copula, 272, 283; position of, 598. *f.*
- Copulative conjunctions, 223. *a.* 1, 224. I. *a.*; constr. after, 323; omission of, 323. *b.*
- Copulative verbs, 272, 283.
- cor*, decl., 59, 60. *b.*, 103. *g.* 2.
- corpus*, decl., 64.
- Correlatives, 152, 323. *g.*; rendered by *the . . . the*, 414. *a.*; advs. of place, 217. *a.*; conjs., 323. *f.*, *g.*
- cōs*, decl., 103. *g.* 2.
- Countries, names of, *gend.*, 32; as end of motion, and place from which, 428. *c.*
- Crāsis*, 603. *c.*
- crēber*, decl., 112. *a.*
- crēdibili*, *w. comparative*, 406. *a.*
- crēdō*, position of, 599. *c.*
- Cretic foot, 609. *d.*; verse, 628. *c.*
- Crime or charge, *gen. of*, 352.
- crum*, noun ending, 240.
- crux*, decl., 103. *g.* 2.
- cucumis*, decl., 75. *a.*
- cūiās*, *cūiās*, 145. *b.*, 151. *h.*
- cuicui modī*, 151. *b. n.*
- cūius modī*, 345. *a.*
- culum*, noun suffix, 240.
- culus*, *dim. ending*, 243.
- cum*, *quom (conj.)*, form, 544; meaning, 544 ff.; *cum . . . tum*, 323. *g.*, 549. *b.*; sequence, 485. *e. n.*; *w. clause for part.*, 492, 493. 2; temporal, 545-548; causal or concess., 549; in ind. disc., 585. *b. n.*; *cum (whenever)*, 545. *n.* 2, 548.
- cum (prep.)*, 220. *b.*; in comp., see *com-*; joined as enclitic with pronouns, 143. *f.*, 150. *d.*; use of, 221. 9; *w. plur. adj.*, 286. *a. n.*; *w. plur. verb.*, 317. *n.*; *w. abl. of manner*, 412; *w. abl. of accompaniment*, 413; *w. words of contention*, 413. *b.*; *w. words of exchange*, 417. *b. n.*
- cumque*, added to relatives, 151. *a.* and *n.*; temporal particles *w.*, 542.
- cundus*, verbal adj. ending, 253 and *b.*
- cupiō*, constr., 563. *b.*
- cūrō*, constr., 563; *cūrā (imv.)*, use, 449. *c.*
- cus*, suffix, 232. *n.*, 249.
- Customary action, 470, 518. *c.*
- D** changed to *s*, 15. 5; -*d*, old *abl. ending*, decl. I, 43. *n.* 1; decl. II, 49. *e.*; decl. III,



- p. 34. ftn.; decl. IV, 92. *f*; mēd, tēd, 143. a. n.; sēd, 144. b. n.<sup>2</sup>; -ē in advs. originally -ēd, 214. a. n.; -d as neut. pron. ending, 113. b; loss of -d, 398.
- Dactyl, 609. b; cyclic, id. e.
- Dactylic verse, 613; hexameter, 615; elegiac stanza, 616; other forms, 617.
- dam, adverbial ending, 215. 6.
- damnās, indecl. adj., 122. b.
- daps, defect., 103. h. 2.
- Daring, vbs. of, w. compl. inf., 456.
- Dates, how expressed, 424. *g*, 631.
- DATIVE defined, 35. c; in -āi, decl. I, 43. a; in -ābus, decl. I, id. e; in -is for -iis, decl. II, 49. *f*; in -ubus, decl. IV, 92. c; in -i (of ūnus etc.), 113.
- DATIVE, *Syntax*, 360-385. Indirect object, 361; w. transitives, 362; w. vbs. implying motion, 363; use of dōnō etc., 364; in pass., 365; w. intransitives, 366; w. phrases, id. a; like gen., id. b; w. intransitives, verbs meaning *favor* etc., 367; similar vbs. w. acc. id. a; vbs. having dat. or acc., id. b, c; w. verbal nouns, id. d; w. libet and licet, 368. 1; w. comps. of satis, bene, male, id. 2; poetic use, id. a; intrans. vbs. w. acc. and dat., 369; w. comps. of preps. ad, ante, etc., 370; w. passive used impersonally, 372. Of Possession, 373; w. nōmen est, id. a; w. dēsum and absum, id. b. Of the Agent, 374, 375. Of Reference, 376, 377; of the person judging, 378; used idiomatically, 379; ethical dat., 380. Of Separation, 381. Of Purpose, 382; w. adjs. and advs., 383; w. adjs. of fitness etc., 384, 385; gen. or dat. w. similis, 385. c. 2. With words of contention (poetic), 413. b. n. Of End of Motion, 428. h; w. infin., 455. 1; dat. of gerund, 505. a.
- Dativus commōdi aut incommodi, 376.
- dē, use, 220. b, 221. 10; in comp. w. vbs., 267. a; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 381; in comp. w. vbs., w. abl., 402; w. abl. instead of part. gen., 346. c; w. vbs. of reminding, 351. n.; w. abl. to denote the crime, 353. 2; w. place from which, 426. 1; position of dē, 435; dē w. abl. of gerund, 507.
- dea, decl., 43. e.
- dēbeō, in apod., 517. c.
- dēbui, w. pres. inf., 486. a; w. perf. inf., id. b.
- dēcernō, constr., 563. d and n.<sup>2</sup>.
- deceat, w. acc., 388. c; w. dat., id. n.<sup>3</sup>; in apod., 517. c.
- Declarative sentence, 269. a; how expressed in ind. disc., 580.
- Declension defined, 22; characteristics of, 37; general rules for, 38; terminations, 39. Of Nouns, I, 40-44; II, 45-52; III, 53-87; IV, 88-94; V, 95-98; decl. V compared with I, 98. c. Of Adjs., decl. I-II, 109-113; decl. III, 114-122; of comparatives, 120; of participles, 109, 117. b.
- Decreeing, vbs. of, 563. d.
- dēdi, quantity of penult, 605. *Exc.*
- Defective adjectives, 111. b, 122. c.
- Defective comparison, 130.
- Defective nouns, 99-103; of decl. IV, 94. c; of decl. V, 98. a.
- Defective verbs, 205-206.
- dēficiō, constr., 367. a.
- Definite perfect, 161. 1, 473; sequence of, 485. a.
- dēfit, 204. c.
- dēgener, 119. n., 121. a. 3.
- Degree, adverbs of, 217. c.
- Degree of difference, abl. of, 414; distance expressed by, 425. b.
- Degrees of Comparison, 123.
- dēinde, dēnique, in enumerations, 322. d. n.
- dēlectat, constr., 388. c.
- dēlectō, w. acc., 367. a.
- dēlector, w. abl., 431.
- Deliberative subjunctive, 443, 444; in indir. questions, 575. b; in ind. disc., 587.
- dēlicium, -ia, -iae, 106. b.
- Delivering, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.
- Dēlos, decl., 52.
- delphin, decl., 83. a.
- dem, adverbial ending, 215. 6.
- Demanding, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.
- Demonstrative adverbs, as correlatives, 323. *g*; equivalent to demonstr. pron. w. prep., 321. a. Position, 598. b.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 146; decl., id.; formation, id. n.<sup>1</sup>. *Syntax*, 296-298; of 1st person, 297. a; of 2d pers., id. c; of 3d pers., id. b; supply place of pers. prons. of 3d pers., 295. c; in relative clause, 308. d. n. Position, 598. b.
- dēnārius, value of, 632.
- Denominative verbs, 258-262.
- Dependent clauses, subjv. used in, 438. b.
- Deponent verbs defined, 156. b; how conjugated, 190; paradigms, id.; participles, id. a; fut. inf., id. c; used reflexively, id. e; in passive sense, id. *f*; list of irregular deponent verbs, 191; defective deponents, id. a; semi-deponents, 192.
- Depriving, constr. w. vbs. of, 401.
- Derivation of words, 227-267.
- Derivative forms of nouns, 236-241; of adjs., 242-255; of vbs., 258-263.
- Derivative verbs, defined, 257.
- Derivatives, quantity of, 606.
- dēs, nouns in, 244.
- Description, imperf. used in, 471. a.
- Description implied in part., 496.

**Descriptive abl.**, see **Abl. of quality**.

† *dēses*, decl., 121. *a*. 4.

**Desiderative verbs** (in *-uriō*), 263. 4.

**Desire**, *adjs.* of, *w. gen.*, 349. *a*.

*dēspērō*, constr., 367. *b*.

**dēterior**, *compar.* of, 130. *a*.

**Determinative compounds**, 265. 2.

**Determining**, *vbs.* of, *constr.*, 563. *d*.

**deus**, decl., 49. *g*.

**dexter**, decl., 111. *a*; *compar.*, 129.

*dī-*, see *dis-*.

**Diæresis**, 611. *c*.

**Diastole**, 612. *b*.

**dīc**, imperative, 182.

*diciōnis*, defect., 103. *e*.

*dīcō*, forms of, omitted, 319. *a*.

*dīctō*, *w. comp.*, 406. *a*.

*-dīcus*, *adjs.* in, *compar.* of, 127.

**Dīdō**, decl., 82.

**diem dicere**, *w. dat.* of *gerund* etc., 505.

**dīsa**, decl., 96; *gender*, 97. *a*; *gen. form*

*dīi*, 98. *n*.

**Difference**, *abl.* of *degree* of, 414.

**difficilia**, *compar.*, 126; *constr.*, 510. *n*. 2.

**dīgnor**, *w. abl.*, 418. *b*. *n*. 1.

**dīgnus**, *w. abl.*, 418. *b*; *w. relative clause*, 535. *f*.

**Dimeter**, *iambic verse*, 619. *c*.

**Diminutive endings**, *w. nouns and adjectives*, 243; *verbs*, 263. 3.

**dīn-**, *stem-ending*, 61. 2.

**Diphthongs**, 2; *sound* of, 8; *quantity*, 10. *b*, 603. *b*.

**Diptotes**, 103. *c*.

**Direct object**, 274, 387.

**Direct question**, *defined*, 330. 1.

**Direct quotation**, 578. *n*.

**Direct reflexive**, 300. *b*.

**dis-** (*dī-*), *inseparable prefix*, 267. *b*.

**Disjunctive conjunctions**, 224. *i*. *a*; *case* of *noun* after, 323.

**Dissimilation**, 15. 6.

**Assimilis**, *comp.*, 126.

**Distance**, *acc.* or *abl.*, 425. *b*; *of time*, 424. *f*.

**Distributive numerals**, 136; *use*, 137.

**Distributive pronouns**, 313

*dīū*, *compar.*, 218. *a*.

**dīves**, decl., 119, 121. *b*.

**dīvum** (*dīvom*), *for dēorum*, 49. *g*. *n*.

**-dō**, *adverbial ending*, 215. 6.

**-dō**, *nouns* in, *from st. dīn-*, 61. 2; *gend.*, 86.

**dō**, *conj.*, 202; *w. inf.*, 460. *a*.

**doceō**, *constr.*, 396 and *c*. *n*. 2.

**domi**, *locative*, 427. 3.

**domum**, 427. 2; *domō*, *id.* 1.

**domus**, *gend.*, 90. *Exc.*; *decl.*, 93; *double stem* of, *id.*; *locative form*, 93. *n*. 1.

**dōnec**, *w. ind.* or *subjv.*, 553 *n*. 1, 2, 554,

555.

**dōnō**, *double constr.* of, 364.

**dōs**, decl., 71. 6.

**Double consonants**, 4, 11. *b*.

**Double questions**, 334; *answers* to, 337.

**Doubting**, *vbs.* of, *constr.*, 558.

**Dual forms**, p. 59. *ftn*.

**Dubitative subjv.**, see **Deliberative**.

**dubitō an**, 331. *n*.; *nōn dubitō quā*, 558. *a*;

*nōn dubitō*, *w. inf.*, *id.* *n*. 2; *without neg.*, *id.* *n*. 1.

**dūc**, imperative, 182.

**dum**, *derivation*, 215. 6; *w. past*, *id.* *a*;

*w. clause* for *pres.* and *perf. part.*, 492,

493. 2; *introducing a proviso*, 528; *as adv.*, 552; *until*, *w. pres.* or *impf. subjv.*

*denoting intention* or *expectancy*, 553;

*w. pres.* or *fut. perf. indic.* to *state future fact*, *id.* *n*. 2; *w. perf. indic.*,

554. *n*.; *as long as*, *w. indic.*, 555 (cf.

556. *a*); *while*, *w. pres. indic.*, 550; *w.*

*past indic.*, *id.* *a*.

**dummodo**, 528.

**duo**, decl., 134. *b*.

**dupli**, *w. vbs.* of *condemning*, 352. *a*.

**Duration**, *acc.* of, 423; *abl.* of, 424. *b*.

**-dus**, *participle* in, see **Gerundive**.

**Duty**, *vbs.* of, *in apod.*, 517. *c*.

**dux**, decl., 57.

**ē**, variant of *ē* as *stem-vowel* of *decl. II*,

45. *c* and *n*.; *in voc.*, *id.*; *abl.* of *neuters*

*in, decl. III*, 76. *a*. 3; *gend.* of *neuters*

*in, decl. III*, 87; *abl.* in, *of adjs.* of *two*

*and three terminations*, 116. *n*.; 117, 121.

*a*; *stem-vowel*, *conj. III*, 171, 174. 1, 179.

*c*; *final*, *quantity* of, 604. *e*.

**ē**, *for ae* (*oe*), 6. *n*. 3; *in Greek voc.*, 81. 3;

*in stem* of *decl. V*, 98; *in gen.* of *decl. V*,

98. *d*. *n*.; *in dat.*, *id.*; *in stem* of *conj.*

*II*, 171, 179. *b*; *-ē* as *adv. ending*, 214. *a*, *c*.

**ē** (*preposition*), see **ex**.

**eae**, *old dat. fem.* of *is*, 146. *n*. 3.

**Early forms** of *alphabet*, 1. *a* and *n*. 6.

*a*, *b*; *of prosody*, 629.

**ecce** (*eccum* etc.), 146. *a*. *n*. 2.

**ecquis**, decl., 151. *f*; *use*, 310. *a*.

**Ecthlipsis**, 612. *f*.

**ēdicō**, *constr.*, 563. *d*.

**edō** (*eat*), *conj.*, 201.

**Effecting**, *vbs.* of, *w. perf. part.*, 497. *c*; *w.*

*ut-clause*, 580. *d*.

**efficiō** *ut*, 568.

**effieri**, 204. *c*.

**effigiēs**, decl., 98. *a*.

**Effort**, *vbs.* of, *w. ut-clause*, 563. *e*.

**egēs**, decl., 118.

**ego**, *constr.*, 356 and *n*.

**ego**, decl., 143.

**ei**, *diphthong*, 2; *sound* of, 8.

**-eis** *for -is* in *plur.* of *decl. I*, 43. *e*. *n*. 3.

**-eis**, *patronymic*, 244.

- sius*, adj. ending, 249; in prosody, 11. *d*, 603. *f*. *n*.<sup>2</sup>
- sius*, names in, decl., 49. *f*.
- siusmodi*, 146. *b*, 345. *a*.
- Electra*, decl., 44.
- Elegiac stanza*, 616.
- elis*, adj. ending, 248.
- Elision*, 612. *e*.
- Ellipsis*, 640.
- ellum* etc., 146. *a*. *n*.<sup>2</sup>
- ellus*, diminutive ending, 243.
- ēluviēs*, decl., 98. *a*.
- em*, combined w. prons. (*ellum* etc.), 146. *a*. *n*.<sup>2</sup>
- Emphasis**, 597.
- en-* (*on-*, *ēn-*, *ōn-*), primary suffix, 234. II. 13.
- Enclitics**, accent, 12. *a*; quantity, 604. *a*. 1; cum, 143. *f*, 150. *b*, *d*; -*met*, -*te*, -*pte*, 143. *d* and *n*; -*pse*, 146. *n*.<sup>7</sup>, <sup>8</sup>; -*ce*, id. *a*. *n*.<sup>1</sup>; -*que*, see under that word.
- End of motion**, acc. of, 426. 2; w. vbs. that also take dat., 363; dat. of, 428. *h*; two or more places as end of motion, 428. *j*.
- Endings**, signification of, 235-263; endings of verb, 165. 2, 166. See **Personal endings**, and **Terminations**.
- English method of pronunciation**, 8. *n*.
- English words cognate with Lat.**, 18, 19.
- enim*, use, 324. *h*; position, 324. *j*, 599. *b*.
- enimus* (or -*esimus*), numeral adj. ending, 133. *n*.<sup>1</sup>
- ensis*, gentile ending, 249.
- Enumeration**, *primum...deinde*, 322. *d*. *n*.
- enus*, adj. ending, 249.
- Envy**, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.
- eō*, used w. supine in -*um*, 428. *i*, 509. *n*.<sup>1</sup>.
- eō*, used w. *quō*, 414. *a*; w. compar., id.; approaching abl. of cause, id. *n*.
- eō cōsiliō ut*, 531. 1. *n*.<sup>1</sup>.
- Epicene nouns**, 34. *n*.
- Epistolary sentences**, 479.
- epitōmē*, decl., 44.
- epulum*, plur. -*ae*, 106. *b*.
- equester*, decl., 115. *a*.
- equidem*, 322. *f*. *n*.
- er-* for *es-*, primary suffix, 234. II. 17.
- er-*, stem-ending, 63. *Exc*. 2.
- er*, nom. ending, decl. II, 45-47; decl. III, 61. 4, 65. *a*; gen., 85; -*er*, adjs. in, 111, 112, 115; compar. of these, 125.
- ergā*, w. acc. after adjs., 385. *b*.
- ergō*, use, 324. *i*; w. gen., 359. *b*.
- erim*, -*erō*, as tense-ending, 169. *c*, *d*.
- ernus*, adj. ending, 250.
- ero-*, noun stems in, decl. II, 50; *ēro-*, adj. stems in, 111. *a*. *n*.
- es*, root of *esse*, 15. 4; 170. *b*. *n*.
- es-* (*os-*), primary suffix, 234. II. 17.
- ēs*, in nom. plur. of Greek nouns, 81. 4; gen. of nouns in, 85.
- ēs*, gen. of Greek nouns in, decl. II, 52. *a*, gen. ending, decl. V, 98. *n*.
- ēs*, list of nouns in, p. 30. ftn. 2; gen., 86; formation, 238. *a*.
- esse*, conj., 170; forms of, in other languages, id. *b*. *n*; compounds of, 198; case after, 284; dat. of poss. w., 373; future part. w. (first periph. conj.), 498. *a*, *b*; position of forms of, 598. *c*, *j*.
- est*, united with other words, 13. *n*; *est qui* etc., 535. *a*; *est cum*, 535. *a*. *n*.<sup>2</sup>; *est ut*, 569. 3.
- Esteeming**, vbs. of, constr., 393.
- ester* (-*estris*), adj. ending, 250; a noun-ending, 254. 11.
- ēstur*, *ēsestur*, pass. forms of *edō*, 201. *a*.
- et*, use, 324. *a*; *et...et*, 323. *e*; *et* repeated or omitted, 323. *c*.
- et*, -*que*, or *atque* translated *but*, 324. *d*. *n*.
- etenim*, use, 324. *h*, *k*.
- Ethical dative**, 380.
- etiam*, use, 322. *a*; in answers, 336. *a*. 1.
- etiam si*, concessive, 527. *c*.
- etsi*, use, 527. *c*.
- ētum*, noun ending, 254. 8.
- eus*, Greek names in, 52. *e*; -*eus*, patronymic ending, 244; adj. ending, 247, 249, 254. 10.
- ēvenit ut*, 568. ftn. 2.
- ex* (*ē*), 220. *b*; use, 221. 11; in compounds, 267. *a*, 402; abl. w., instead of part. gen., 346. *c*; in vbs. w. dat., 381; w. prons. etc., 403. *a*. *n*.<sup>1</sup>; to express place from which, 426. 1; expressing position, 429. *b*; after its noun, 435; w. abl. of gerund, 507.
- excellō*, w. dat., 368. 3.
- Exchanging**, vbs. of, 417. *b*.
- Exclamation**, form of, 333. *n*; nom. in, 339. *a*; acc. in, 397. *d*; w. infin., 462.
- Exclamatory questions**, 462. *a*.
- Exclamatory sentences**, 269. *c*; nom. in, 339. *a*; gen. in, 359. *a*; acc. in, 397. *d*.
- Existence** general expressions of, 535. *a*.
- exlēx*, defect., 122. *c*.
- Expecting**, hoping, etc., vbs. of, w. ind. disc., 580. *c*; w. complem. inf., id. *n*.
- expēsum*, 496. *n*.<sup>4</sup>.
- exsiliō*, w. abl., 404. *a*.
- expēsā*, defect., 122. *c*.
- exsultō*, w. abl., 404. *a*.
- exteri*, use, 130. *b*.
- exterior*, 130. *b*.
- extrēmus*, form, 130. *a*. ftn. 2.
- exuō*, constr., 364.
- F**, original sound of, 1. *b*. *n*.
- faber*, decl., 112. *a*.
- fac*, inv., 182, 204; *fac* (*ut*), w. subjv. 449. *c*; *fac nē*, in prohibition, 450. *n*.<sup>2</sup>.
- faciēs*, decl., 98. *a*.

- facilis*, compar., 126; w. supine, 510. n.<sup>2</sup>.  
*faciō*, accent of comps. of, 12. a. *Exc.*;  
 forms of, omitted, 319. a; w. abl., 403.  
 c; w. names of authors, 497. d. n.;  
*facere ut*, 568. n.<sup>1</sup>.  
*Factitive* acc., 386; verbs, 273. n.<sup>1</sup>.  
*-factō*, in compounds, 266. a.  
*faenebris*, decl., 115. n.<sup>1</sup>.  
*fax*, decl., 103. g. 2.  
*fallit*, w. acc., 388. c.  
*falsus*, compar., 131. a.  
*famē*, abl. of, 76. b. n.<sup>1</sup>, 98. d.  
*familiāris*, decl., 76. b. 2.  
*familiās*, in *pater familiās* etc., 43. b.  
*fās*, indecl., 103. a; w. supine in *-ā*, 510.  
*fax*, decl., 101. n.<sup>1</sup>, 103. f. 4.  
*Favor*, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.  
*fax*, decl., 103. g. 2.  
*Fearing*, vbs. of, w. inf., 456; w. *nē*, *nē*  
*nōn*, ut, 564.  
*febris*, decl., 75. b, 76. b. 1.  
*Feeling*, nouns of, w. gen., 348; imper-  
 sonal vbs. of, 208. b, 354. b; animi w.  
 vbs. and adjs. of, 358; gen. w. vbs.  
 of, 354; acc. w. vbs. of, 388. a; quod-  
 clause w. vbs. of, 572. b.  
*Feet in Prosody*, 608-610.  
*fēlix*, compar., 124.  
*Feminine*, rule for gend., 32.  
*femur*, decl., 105. g.  
*-fer*, comps. of, 50; decl., 111. a.  
*fer*, imperative, 182.  
*ferō*, conj., 200; *acceptum* (*expēsum*) *ferre*,  
 496. n.<sup>4</sup>; comps. of, 200. a.  
*ferre*, *ferrem*, for *ferre* etc., p. 110. ftn. 3.  
*Festivals*, plural names of, 101. 2; in *-alia*,  
 254. 7.  
*-ficus*, adjs. in, comparison of, 127. a.  
*fidēs*, decl., 96.  
*fidō* (*cōfidō*), semi-deponent, 192; w. dat.,  
 367; w. abl., 431.  
*fidus*, compar., 131. a.  
*fieri*, constr. w. abl., 403. c.  
*Fifth Declension*, 95-97.  
*Figūra etymologica*, 598. m.  
*filia*, decl., 43. e; *filius*, voc., 49. c.  
*Filling*, words of, w. abl., 409. a; w. gen.,  
 id. n.  
*Final Clauses*, defined, 279. d; constr. of,  
 530-532; as subst. clauses, 563.  
*Final conjunctions*, 223. b. 6, 224. II. e.  
*Final syllables*, rules of quantity, 604;  
 vowels, id. a-h.  
*finis*, decl., 76. b.  
*Finite verb*, defined, 154. n.; subj. of,  
 339.  
*fiō*, conj., 204; in compounds, id. b; de-  
 fective compounds of, id. c; quantity  
 of i in, 603. a. 3.  
*First Conjugation*, prin. parts, 173; pres.  
 stem, how formed, 176. a; formation,  
 179. a, 259; paradigms, 184; vbs. of,  
 209; vbs. of, how formed, 259.  
*First Declension*, 40-42.  
*fisus*, as pres. part., 491.  
*fit ut*, 568. ftn. 2, 569. 2.  
*Fitness*, adjs. of, w. dat., 384, 385. a.  
*flāgitō*, constr., 563.  
*floci*, gen. of value, 417. a.  
*For*, when expressed by *prō*, 379. n.  
*forās*, 103. c. 4, 215. 3.  
*fore*, 170. a; perf. part. *-w.*, 164. c. n.; *fore*  
*ut*, 569. a.  
*forem*, 170. a.  
*forēs*, plur. only, 101. 4, 103. c. 4.  
*Forgetting*, vbs. of, 350; w. inf., 456.  
*foris* (locative), 103. c. 4, 215. 4, 427. a.  
*Formation of words*, 227-267.  
*Forms of the verb*, 180 ff.  
*fors*, *forte*, 103. c. 1.  
*forsan*, 447. b. n.  
*forsitan* (*fors sit an*), 216. n.; w. subjv.,  
 447. a.  
*fortasse*, 447. b.  
*Fourth Conjugation*, prin. parts, 173;  
 pres. stem, how formed, 176. a, 179. d;  
 paradigm, 187; list of vbs., 212; vbs.,  
 how formed, 262.  
*Fourth Declension*, 88-94.  
*Fractional expressions*, 135. e, 637.  
*fraus*, decl., 71. 6.  
*Freedom*, adjs. of, w. abl., 402. a; vbs.  
 of, 401.  
*French*, derivations through, 19. n.<sup>2</sup>.  
*Frequentative verbs*, 263. 2.  
*frētus*, w. abl., 431. a.  
*Fricatives*, 4. 5.  
*frūgi*, defect. noun, 103. f. 1; as adj., 122.  
 b; compar., 129; constr., 382. 1. n.<sup>2</sup>.  
*fruor*, *fungor*, w. abl., 410; w. acc., id. a.  
 n.<sup>1</sup>; gerundive, 503. n.<sup>2</sup>.  
*fugit*, w. acc., 388. c.  
*fui*, derivation of, 170. b. n.  
*Fulness*, adjs. of, 349. a.  
*fūnebris*, decl., 115. n.<sup>1</sup>.  
*fungor*, see *fruor*.  
*Future conditions*, 516; in ind. disc.,  
 589. a.  
*Future tense*, use, 472; of inf. pass.,  
 how formed, 203. a; of imv., 449; ind.  
 for imv., id. b; in indirect questions,  
 575.  
*Future Infinitive*, how formed, 164. 3.  
 b, c, 193. n.; expressed with *fore* or  
*futūrum esse*, 569. a; (rarely) in con-  
 trary to fact conditions in ind. disc.,  
 589. b. n.<sup>2</sup>.  
*Future Participle*, use, 158. b, 489, 498,  
 517. d; fut. pass. part., 500.  
*Future Perfect tense*, suffix of, 169. c;  
 use of, 478; represented in subjv., 484.  
 c; in conditions, 516. c.

futūrum esse ut, see fore ut; futūrum fuisse ut, 589. *b.* 3 and *N.* 2.

*Futūrum in praeteritō*, 511. *ftn.* 1.

*G* (the character), 1. *a* and *N.*

Games, plur. names of, 101. 2.

gaudeō, conj., 192; *w. abl.*, 431; *w. quod* or ind. disc., 572. *b.*

Gems, *gend.* of, 32 and *b.*, 48. *Exc.*

Gender, kinds of, 30; general rules for, 31-34; common, epicene, 34; change of *gend.*, p. 18. *ftn.*; nouns, decl. I, *gend.*, 42; decl. II, 48; nouns, decl. III, *gend.* according to endings, 84-87; of nouns, decl. IV, 90, 91; decl. V, 97; *Syntax*: agreement in *gend.*, 280; of appositives, 282. *c.*; of adjs., 286; adjs. *w.* nouns of different genders, 287 (cf. 289. *c.*); of rel., 306. *b.*

General conditions, defined, 513. 2; constr. of, 518; relatives in, 520.

General truths after past tense (in sequence of tenses), 485. *d.*; in pres., 465; in general condition, 518. *a.*

GENITIVE, defined, 35. *b.*; terminations of, 37; plur. in -um, 38. *f.*; *gen.* in -āi and -ās, decl. I, 43. *a.*, *b.*; in -i for -ii, decl. II, 49. *b.*; in -i of proper nouns of decl. III, 52. *a.*; *gen. plur.* in -um (-om), for -ūrum, 49. *d.*; -um for -ium, decl. III, 78; -s for -is, 81. 1; *gen. plur.* in -um, 92. *b.*; in -i or -ē for -ēi, decl. V, 98. *N.*; *gen. plur.* wanting, 103. *g.* 2; of adjs. in -us, 113; *gen. plur.* in -ium or -um, 121. *b.*

GENITIVE, *Syntax*, 342-356; general use, 342. Subjective *gen.*, 343. *N.* 1. Possessive *gen.*, 343; in app. *w. poss. pron.*, 302. *e.*; compared *w. dat.*, 373. *N.*; *gen.* in predicate, 343. *b.*, *c.*; *gen.* of adj. for neut. nom., 343. *c.* *N.* 1; *gen.* of substance or material, 344; for app., 343. *d.*; *gen.* of quality, 345. Partitive, 346. Objective, 347. *ft.*; *w. adjs.*, 349, 385. *c.*; *w. vbs.* of memory, 350; charge and penalty, 352; of feeling, 354; *w. impers.*, miseret etc., 354. *b.*; *w. refert* and interest, 355; of plenty and want, 356; of exclamation, 359. *a.*; *w. potior*, 357. *a.*; *w. other vbs.*, id. *b.*; *w. ego* and *indigeō*, 356. *N.*; *gen.* for *abl.*, id.; *gen.* replaced by *dat.*, 366. *b.*; of value, 417; *gen.* of gerundive, 504.

genius, *voc.* of, 49. *c.*

*Gēns*, or family, names, 108.

Gentile adjectives, 244.

gentilis, 76. *a.* 2.

genū, decl., 89; *gend.*, 91.

genus, decl., 64.

-ger, compounds of, 50; decl., 111. *a.*

Gerund, form, 155. *b.*; meaning, 159. *a.*; gerundive used instead, 503. *Syntax*,

502-507; *gen.* of, 504; *w. direct obj.*, id. *a.*; *pred. use, purpose*, id. *a.* *N.* 1; *w. obj.* *gen.*, id. *c.*; *dat.* of, 505; in law phrases etc., id. *b.*; *acc.* of, 506 and *N.* 1; *abl.* of, 507; *gerund* coordinated *w. nominal constr.* and in app., 503. *a.* *N.* 2; *w. direct obj.*, 503. *a.* *N.* 1.

Gerundive, meaning and form, 155. *a* and *ftn.* 3, 158. *d.*; in -endus or -undus, p. 89. *ftn.* 1; of dep. *vb.*, 190. *d.*; use as part. or adj., 500; of *ātor*, id. 3; to denote purpose after certain *vbs.*, id. 4; used for *gerund*, 503. Gerundive constructions in cases, *gen.*, 504; *dat.*, 505; *acc.*, 506; *abl.*, 507. Impersonal *w. esse*, *w. acc.*, 500. 3.

gibber, decl., 111. *a.*

gin-, stem-ending, 61. 2.

Giving, *vbs.* of, *w. gerundive*, 500. 4.

glaber, decl., 112. *a.*

glaciēs, decl., 98. *a.*

glūs, decl., 71. 6.

glōriar, *w. abl.*, 431.

Glyconic verse, 623. 1, 624, 625. 1, 12.

Gnomic perfect, 475.

-gō, nouns in, from stem *gin-*, 61. 2; *gend.*, 86.

gracilis, decl., 122. *a.*; compar. 126.

Grammar, how developed, 268.

Grammatical gender, 30. *b.*

grātiā, *w. gen.*, 359. *b.*, 404. *c.*; *w. gen.* of *gerund*, 533.

grātificor, *w. dat.*, 368. 3.

grātulor, *w. dat.*, id.

Greek accusative (*synecdochical*), 397. *b.*

Greek forms compared *w. Latin*, pp. 13, 14, 19, 26, 55, 58, 76, 80, 83, 126, 142, 143, 150, 153.

Greek nouns, decl. I, 44; decl. II, 52; decl. III, 81, 82, 83.

Greek proper names, quantity of, 603. 4.

Groups of words, conjunctions *w.*, 323. *c.*

grūs, decl., 79. *a.*

Guilt, adjs. of, *w. gen.*, 349. *a.*

H (breathing), 4; omitted in spelling, 6. *d.* *N.* 2; in prosody, 603. *a.*, 612. *e.*

habēō, *w. infinitive*, 460. *a.*; *w. perfect participle*, 497. *b.*; future imperative habētō in sense of *consider*, 449. *a.*

habilis, *w. dat.* of *gerund* etc., 506. *a.* *ftn.* hāctenus, 221. 26. *N.* 1.

Hadria, *gen.*, 42. *Exc.*

haec for hae, 146. *N.* 2.

haereō, *w. abl.*, 368. 3. *N.*

Happening, *vbs.* of, constr., 569. 2.

Have, *perf.* *w.*, origin, 497. *b.* *ftn.*

havē (avē), defective verb, 206. *g.*

Having, *vbs.* of, *w. gerund.*, 500. 4.

hebes, decl., 86. *a.*; compar., 124.

Help, *vbs.* of, *w. dat.*, 367.

Hemillic measures, 609. *d.*

Heroic verse, 615.

hērōs, decl., 82.

Hesitation, clauses of, w. quā, 558, 559; vbs. of, constr., 456.

Heteroclitē nouns, 105; adjs., 122. *a.*

Heterogeneous nouns, 106.

Hexameter verse, 615.

Hiatus, 612. *g.*

Hibēr, decl., 50. *c.*

hibus, 146. *n. 2.*

hic, 146. *n. 1.*; decl., 146; use, 297. *a, e, f*; quantity, 604. *f, Exc.*

Hidden quantity, 11. *f* and *n.*

hiemps (for hiems), 15. 11.

hilaris (-us), 122. *a.*

Himself (ipse, sē), 298. *c. n. 2.*

Hindering, vbs. of, with nē or quōminus, or inf., 558. *b* and *n.*

Hindrance, vbs. of, w. quōminus, 558. *b*; w. negatives, followed by quā, 558, 559.

Historical infinitive, 463; takes secondary sequence, 485. *f.*

Historical perfect, 161. 2, 473.

Historical present, 469; followed by primary or secondary tenses, 485. *e.*

hodiē, loc. form, 98. *b*, 215. 5.

honor (-ōs), decl., 62. *n. 2.*

Hoping, verbs of, with ind. disc., 580. *c*; w. compl. inf., id. *n.*

Horace, metres of, 626.

horōn, decl., 83. *d.*

Hortatory subjunctive, 439; in concession, 440; in proviso, 528; in obligation, 439. *b*; w. force of protasis, 521. *b.*

hortor, constr., 563.

hospes, decl., 121. *a. 4.*

hospita (fem. of hospes), 121. *e.*

hūiusmodi, 146. *b.*

humī, 49. *a*; locative use of, 427. *a.*

humilis, compar., 126.

Hundreds, how declined, 134. *c.*

Hypotaxis, 268.

**I**, as vowel and as cons., 1, 10; *i* as transient sound between cons. *i* and a preceding vowel, 6. *c* (cf. 11. *e*).

**i**, primary suffix, 234. 1. 2.

**i**, for ē in conj. II, 179. *b. 2*; for ē in conj. III, id. *c. 1*; lost in vbs. in -iō of conj. III, id. *e*; inserted in vb. stem, 176. *b. 2.*

-i in Greek voc., 82.

**-i**, (*single*) in gen. of nouns in -ius (-ium), 49. *b*; in gen. of nouns in -ēs, 52. *a*; in abl. of decl. III, 76; in loc. of decl. III, p. 34. *ftn. 1*; in gen., decl. IV, 92. *a*; in gen., dat., decl. V, 98. *d. n.*; in dat. of ānus etc., 113; in pres. pass. inf., p. 286. *ftn. 1*; in perfect, 163. *ftn. 3.*

**i**-stems, decl. III, 66-78; confused, 73; signs of, 74; in adj., 117; cases retaining -i, cf. 74, 76, 114, 116. *n.*; *i*-stems in vbs., 179. *d.*

**-ia**, ending of abstract nouns, 241.

**-ia**, nom. and acc. plur. decl. III, 74. *b*; of adjs., 116, 117.

**-ia** for -iēs, decl. V, 98. *c.*

iaciō, comps. of, 6. *d*, 603. *f. n. 2.*

iam, derivation, 215. 6; use, 322. *b*; w. impf., 471. *c. n.*

Iambic verse, 613; trimeter, 618; other forms, 619.

Iambus, 609. *a. 2.*

iamdū, w. pres., 466; w. impf., 471. *b.*

iamdūdum, w. pres., 466; w. impf. 471. *b*; w. imperative, 466. *n. 2.*

-ībam for -ībam, conj. IV, 183. 1.

-ībō for -iam, 183. 1.

ībus, 146. *n. 2.*

-īcius, 247.

Ictus, 608. *n.*, 611. *a.*

-icus, 249.

id-, stem-ending, 83. *b.*

id genus, 397. *a.*

id quod, 307. *d.*

id temporis, 346. 3, 397. *a.*

idcirco, as correl., 324. *i*; w. final clause, 531. 1. *n. 1.*

idem, decl., 146; derivation, 146. *n. 2*; w. dat., 384. *n. 1*; w. atque or rel., id. *n. 2*; used emphatically, 298. *a*; equiv. to adv., id. *b.*

Ides (13th or 15th of month), how reckoned, 631. *b.*

-idēs (-idēs), in patronymics, 244.

idōneus, compar., 128; w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. *a. ftn. 2.*

idōneus quī, 535. *f.*

-idus, verbal adj. ending, 251.

Idūs, decl. IV, gender, 90. *Exc.* (See Ides.)

-ie, in voc. of adjs. in -ius, 110. *a.*

iecur, decl., forms from different stems, 79. *c*, 105. *g.*

iēns (part. of eō), decl., 119.

-ier in inf. pass., 183. 4.

-iēs, noun ending, 241; in decl. V = -ia, decl. I, 98. *c.*

igitur, meaning, 324. *i*; position, id. *f.*

ignis, decl., 76. *b. 1.*

-ī (or -ī), in gen., decl. II, 49. *b* and *ftn.*; of adjs., 110. *a.*

īi, iis, for ī, is, from is, 146.

-īle, noun ending, 254. 6.

-ilis, -ibilis, verbal adj. ending, 252.

-ilis, nominal adj. ending, 248.

Illative conjunctions, 223. *a. 4*, 224. 1. *d.*

ille, forms, 146. *n. 4*, <sup>6</sup>; decl., 146; use, 297. *b, e*; combined w. -ce, 146. *a. n. 1.*

illic, decl., 146. *a.*

-illō, vbs. ending in, 263. 3.

- illus*, diminutive ending, 243.  
*illāstris*, decl., 115. n.<sup>1</sup>.  
 -im, acc. ending, decl. III, 73-76.  
 -im, in pres. subjv., 183. 2.  
*imber*, decl., 66, 67, 76. b.  
*immāne quantum*, 575. d.  
*immō*, how used, 329.  
 Imperative mood, 154. b; how used, 157. c; terminations, 163. b, 179. e; *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*, 182; some vbs. used chiefly in, 206. g; w. *iam dūdum*, 466. n.<sup>2</sup>; in commands, 448; 3d pers., 448. a; forms in ind. disc., 588; fut., 449 and a; various periphrases for *imv.*, 449, c; imperative as protasis, 521. b.  
 Imperative Sentence, 269. d.  
 Imperfect tense, defined, 160. a, 471; use, 470; in descriptions, id. a; w. *iam diū* etc., id. b; inceptive and conative, id. c; w. *iam*, id. n.; of surprise, id. d; in dialogue, id. e; = *could*, etc., id. f; epistolary, 479 and n.; represented by perf. subjv., 485. b. 3; imperf. subjv., sequence, id. g, h, 584. a and n.  
*imperō*, constr., 563.  
 Impersonal construction of pass. w. infin. clause, 566. b, 582 and a.  
 Impersonal verbs, synopsis of, 207; classified, 208; passive of intransitives, id. d, 372; impersonals, *miseret* etc., w. gen., 354. b; *libet*, *licet*, w. dat., 368. 1; acc. w. *decet* etc., 388. c.  
*impertiō*, constr., 364.  
*impetrō*, constr., 563, 568. ftn. 2.  
*impetus*, defect., 103. d.  
*impleō*, constr., 409. a. n.  
*implicō*, constr., 364.  
*impōnō*, constr., 430.  
*imus*, 130. a. n.<sup>2</sup>.  
 in-, neg. prefix, 267. d. 1.  
 in-, stem-ending, 61. 2; in-, 83. a.  
 in, prep., use, 220. c, 221. 12; comp. w. vbs., 267. a; in, w. acc. or abl., 259. e (cf. 430); w. acc., penalty, 353. 2. n.; vbs. comp. with, w. dat., 370; in w. acc., w. adjs., 385. b; in citations, 428. d. n.<sup>2</sup>; place where, 426. 3; in idioms of time, 424. e; w. abl. of gerund, 507.  
 Inceptive or Inchoative verbs, 263. 1.  
 Inclination, adjs. of, constr., 384, 385. b.  
*inclutus*, compar., 131. a.  
 Incomplete action, tenses of. See Continued action.  
 Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 33; list of, 103. a; adjectives, 122. b.  
 Indefinite antecedent, relative with, w. subjv., 535. a and n.<sup>2</sup>.  
 Indefinite pronouns, decl., 148-151. *Syntax*, 309-315; indefinite relative may introduce conditional clause, 512. n., 519.  
 Indefinite subject omitted, 318. b; use of 2d person for, 439. a; in general conditions, 518. a; *licet clārum fieri*, 455. n.  
 Indefinite value, 417 and a.  
 Indicative mood, 154. b; how used, 157. a, 437; for Eng. subjv., id. a; in apod. of conditions contrary to fact, 517. b, c, 522. a; in causal clauses, 540; in clause with *quod*, 572; in deliberative questions, 444. a. n.  
*indigeō*, w. gen., 356. n.  
*indignus*, w. abl., 418. b; w. *quī* and subjv., 535. f.  
 INDIRECT DISCOURSE, origin etc., 577; list of verbs that take ind. disc., 579, ftn.; direct and indir. quotation, 578. Moods in ind. disc., 580; verb of saying implied, id. a. Subj. acc., 580. Subord. clause when explanatory, 583; clauses w. rel. which is equivalent to demonstr., id. b. Tenses of inf. in ind. disc., 584; tenses of subjv., 585; subjv. depending on perf. inf., id. a; pres. and perf. after secondary tense (*repraesentatio*), id. b. Conditional sentences in ind. disc., 589; questions, 586; deliberative subjv., 587; commands, 588; prohibition, id. n.<sup>2</sup>. Informal ind. disc., 591. 1, 592.  
 Indirect object, 274, 361, 362, 366, 367.  
 Indirect Questions, defined, 330, 331; *Syntax*, 331. n., 332. b. n., 573-575; fut. tense in, 575. a; deliberative subjv. in, id. b; indic. in (early Lat.), id. c; num. in, 332. b. n.  
 Indirect quotation, 578.  
 Indirect reflexive, 300. 2 and b.  
 Indo-European, 14, 18, 19.  
*indūcō*, w. names of authors, 497. d. n.  
*indūcō*, double constr. of, 364.  
*ineō*, constr., 370. b.  
*ineptus*, constr., 505. a. ftn.  
*inermis* or -us, 122. a.  
*infera*, defect., 111. b, cf. p. 56. ftn. 2; compar., 130. b.  
*inferi*, meaning in plur., 130. b.  
 Inferior, comparison, 130. b.  
 Infinitive Clauses, as subj. or obj., 452; w. pass. vbs., 582 and a. See also Indirect Discourse. Cf. also 459.  
 INFINITIVE MOOD, 154. b and ftn.; tenses of, 164. 3. b, 486; how used, 157. d; pass. in -ier, 183. 4; fut. inf. of deponents, 190. c; subject in acc., 397. e.  
 INFINITIVE MOOD, *Syntax*, 451-463; used as subject, 452; complementary inf., 456; vbs. having subjv. or inf., 457 (cf. 563); inf. for obj. clause, 563. n.; w. subject acc., 459; case of predicate noun, 581 and n.\*; inf. of purpose, 460; w. adjs., in poetry, 461; of result, id. a;

- as pure noun, id. *b*; in exclamations, 462 (sequence, 482. *n*). Historical inf., 463. Tenses of inf., 486; perf. instead of pres., id. *d*, *e*; fore ut etc., for fut. inf., 569. *a*. Inf. in ind. disc., 579; tenses, 584.
- Infinitive** used as noun, gender, 33; w. gen., 343. *c*. (See also Infinitive Mood, *Syntax*.)
- Infitiās**, defect., 103. *b*; 6; use, 428. *i*.
- Infection**, defined, 21; terminations of, id. *b*; how modified, 28; of decl. and conj., 22.
- Influence**, vbs. of, w. ut-clause, 563.
- Informal Indirect Discourse**, 591, 592.
- Infra**, use, 220. *a*, 221. 13.
- ingens**, decl., 121. *a*; 3; compar., 131. *b*.
- iniriā**, as abl. of manner, 412. *b*.
- iniussū**, defect., 94. *c*.
- inops**, decl., 121. *a*; 3, *b*. 1.
- inquam**, inquit, 206. *b*; position of, 599. *c*.
- Inseparable particles**, 267. *b*.
- Insertion of consonants** (*p* in *sūmpsi*), 15. 11, 639.
- insidias**, dat. w., 367. *d*.
- Inspergō**, constr., 364.
- Instar**, indecl., 103. *a*; w. gen., 359. *b*.
- Instō**, constr., 563.
- Instrument**, abl. of, 409.
- Instrumental case**, 35. *n*. (cf. 338, 398); as adv., 215. 4; source of several abl. constructions, 408.
- insulam**, ad, 428. *a*.
- integer**, decl., 112. *a*.
- Integral part**, subjv. of, 591, 593.
- integram est ut**, 568.
- Intensive pronoun**, 146. *n*. 7, 8, 298. *c-f*.
- Intensive vbs.**, 263. 2 and *b*.
- inter**, use, 220. *a*, 221. 14; in comp., 267. *a*; vbs. comp. w., 370; position, 435; *inter se* (reciprocal), 145. *c*, 301. *f*; *inter sicāriōs*, 353. 2; *inter*, w. gerund, 506 and *n*. 1.
- interclūdō**, constr., 364 and *n*. 2.
- interclōs**, constr., 364. *n*. 1.
- interest**, constr., 355; w. ad, id. *b*; how to express degree of interest, id. *n*. 2.
- interior**, compar., 130. *a*.
- Interjections**, defined, 20; list, 226; w. dat., 379. *a*.
- Interlocked order of words**, 598. *h*.
- Intermediate clauses**, *Syntax* of, 591-593.
- Interrogative advs.**, use, 333; position, 598. *b*.
- Interrogative particles**, list of, 217. *d*; use, 331-333.
- Interrogative pronouns**, 148-151; use, 333; position, 598. *b*.
- Interrogative sentences**, 269. *b*; forms of, 330-336.
- intrā** (interior), 130. *a*; derivation, 215. 4.
- Intransitive verbs**, 273. 2, 274. *n*.; used impersonally in pass., 208. *d*; dat. w., 366 *ff*.; used transitively, w. acc. and dat., 369 (cf. 388. *a*. *n*.); w. cognate acc., 390; having passive sense, w. ab, 405. *a*.
- inus**, adj. ending, 249.
- inūtilis**, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. *a*.
- invictus**, compar., 131. *a*.
- invitus**, compar., 131. *a*.
- iō**, noun ending, 238. *b*; gend., 86.
- iō**, vbs. in, conj. III, 176. *b*. 2; forms of, 179. *c*, *e*; paradigm, 188; conj. IV, 179. *d*; derivation, 262.
- locus**, plur. in -i or -a, 106. *b*.
- Ionic measure**, 609. *c*; verse, 626. 16.
- ip**, stem-ending, 58. *a*.
- ipse**, formation, 146. *n*. 7, 8; decl., 146; use, 298. *c*; used instead of reflexive, 300. *b*.
- iri**, in fut. inf. pass., 203. *a*.
- Ironical statement** not different in form from question, 332. *a*. *n*.
- Irrational measures**, 609. *e*, 623. *n*.
- is**, -iss-, -is-, dropped in perf., 181. *b*. *n*. 2.
- is**, decl., 146; use, 152, 297. *d*, *e*; used emphatically, 298. *a*; used instead of reflexive, 300. *b*.
- is**, nom. ending, gend., 86; -is, patronymic, 244.
- is**, for -iis in decl. I, 43. *e*. *n*. 2; nom. and acc. plur., decl. III, 77 (cf. 73); of adjs., 117, 121. *c*; Greek nom. ending, 83. *b*.
- is**, nouns in, see it-.
- Islands**, names of, loc. use, 427. 3, 428. *e*; from which, 427. 1; to which, id. 2.
- isse**, -issem, vb. ending, see 181. *b*.
- issō**, vbs. ending in, 263. *b*.
- iste**, shortened to *ste*, 146. *n*. 5; decl., 146; use, 297. *c*.
- istic**, decl., 146. *a*.
- It**, as sign of Impersonals, 207. *ftn*.
- it-asstem**-ending, 58. *b*; decl., 78, 121. *a*. 4.
- ita**, correl. with ut, 323. *g*; in answers, 336. *a*; *ita ut*, 537. 2. *n*. 2.
- itaque**, accent, 12. *a*; compared with *ergō*, 324. *i*; used with *ergō*, id. *k*; position of, 599. *b*.
- iter**, stem of, 79. *c*.
- Iterative subjunctive**, 518. *c*.
- Iterative verbs** (-tō, -itō, -sō), 263. 2.
- itō**, vbs. in, 263. 2.
- itus**, adj. ending, 246.
- iubar**, decl., 76. *a*. 3.
- iubeō**, w. acc., 367. *a*; w. inf., 563. *a*; in pass., 566. *c*.
- iucundus**, constr., 510. *n*. 2.
- iūgerum**, defect. 103. *d*. 3; decl., 105. *b*;
- measure**, 636.
- ium**, gen. plur., decl. III, 74. *a*; of adjs. 114. *a*, 117, 121. *b*.
- ium**, noun ending, 241. *b*.
- iungō**, w. abl. or dat., 368. 3. *n*. 413. *n*.



**Iuppiter**, stem and decl., 79 and *b*; plural, 100. *a*; derivation, 266. *c*.  
**-ius**, adjs. in, gen., voc. of, 110. *a*; formation of adjs. in, 247, 252. *n*.  
**iūs** (*broth*), decl., 103. *g*. 1.  
**-ius**, gen. sing. ending, 113; quantity, id. *c*, 603. *a*. *Etc.* 1.  
**iussū**, defect., 94. *c*, 103. *b*. 5.  
**iustō**, w. compar., 406. *a*.  
**iuvat**, w. acc., 388. *c*.  
**iuvenis**, decl., 62. *n*. 3, 78. 1; masc. adj., 122. *d*; compar., 131. *c*.  
**iuvō**, w. acc., 367. *a*.  
**iūxtā**, position, 435.  
**-iv-**, in perf., 211. *d*.  
**-ivus**, verbal adj. ending, 251. *n*.

**J** (the character), 5 *n*. 1; Eng. sound, id.  
**Julian Calendar**, 630, 631. *e*.

**K**, supplanted by **C**, 1. *a*. *n*.  
**kalendae**, 631. *a*.  
**Kindred forms**, Latin and English, 18, 19.  
**Kindred signification**, acc. of, 390.  
**Knowing**, vbs. of, w. acc. and inf., 459.  
**Knowledge**, adjs. of, w. gen., 349. *a*.  
**ko** (*kā*-), primary suffix, 234. II. 12.

**L**, nouns in -*l*, gend., 87; adj. stems in -*l*, 117. *a*.  
**Labials**, 4. 2; stems, decl. III, 56 and *a*.  
**labrō**, w. abl., 404. *a*.  
**lacus**, decl., 89; dat. and abl. plur. in -*ubus*, 92. *c*.  
**laedō**, w. acc., 367. *a*.  
**laetor**, laetus, w. abl., 431.  
**lampas**, decl., 82.  
**lateō**, w. acc., 396. *c*.  
**latet**, w. acc., 388. *c*. *n*. 1.  
**lātifundium**, 265. 2.  
**lātus**, part., derivation, 200. ftn. 2.  
**Learning**, vbs. of, w. inf., 456.  
**Length**, expressed by gen., 345. *b*.  
**-lēns**, -lentus, adj. endings, 245.  
**lēō**, decl., 62.  
**Letters**, classification of, 1-5.  
**levis**, decl., 116; compar., 124.  
**leviter**, compar., 218.  
**līber**, adj., decl., 50, 111. *a*.  
**Līber**, decl., 50.  
**līberi**, noun, 50, 101. 3.  
**libet**, impers., 208. *c*. *n*; w. dat., 368. 1.  
**licet**, impers., synopsis, 207; use, 208. *c*. *n*; w. dat., 368. 1; w. predicate dat., 455. 1; w. subjv., meaning *although*, 527. *b*; licet eam, licet mē ire, licet mihi ire, 565 and *n*. 2.  
**Likeness**, adjs. of, w. dat., 384; w. gen., 385. *c*.  
**Limiting word**, meaning of, 276. *b*.  
**Linguals**, 4. 3; stems in, decl. III, 58. *a*.

**linter**, decl., 66.  
**Liquida**, 3, 4; stems in, decl. III, 61-64.  
**-lis**, adjs. in, compar., 126.  
**Litotes**, 326. *c*.  
**-lium**, noun ending, 241. *c*.  
**ll-**, as stem ending, 62. *n*. 1.  
**lō** (*lā*-), primary suffix, 234. II. 10.  
**Locative abl.**, 426. 3; idiomatic use, 429. 3; adverbial forms, 215. 5.  
**LOCATIVE**, defined, 35. *a*, p. 34. ftn. (cf. 360); in abl., 398, 421; of decl. I, 43. *c*; decl. II, 49. *a*; decl. III, 80; decl. IV (*domi*), 93. *n*. 1; decl. V, 98. *b*; as adv., 215. 5; w. abl. in apposition, 282. *d*; relative adv. used to refer to, 308. *g*; animi, 358; loc. used to express *where*, 426. 3; forms (*domi* etc.), 427. *a*.  
**locō**, abl. without prep., 429. 1.  
**locō**, vb., constr., 430.  
**locum capere**, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505.  
**locus**, plur. -*i* or -*a*, 106. *b*.  
**Logaedic Verse**, 623-625.  
**Long and Short**, see **Quantity**.  
**longius**, without quam, 407. *c*.  
**lūdicr**, decl., 112. *a*.  
**lūēs**, defect., 103. *d*. 1.  
**lūx**, decl., 103. *g*. 2.  
**M**, final, elision of, 612. *d*. *n*. *f*; inserted in verb root, 176. *c*. 2.  
**-m**, sign of acc., 338; omitted in inscriptions, 46. *n*. 1.  
**macer**, decl., 112. *a*.  
**macte virtūte**, use and constr., 340. *c* and *n*.  
**magis**, as sign of compar., 128; compa. of, w. quam, 434.  
**māgnī**, gen. of value, 417.  
**māgnus**, comparison, 129.  
**māiestātis**, w. words of accusing etc., 352. *a*.  
**Main clause**, defined, 278. *b*.  
**māior nātū**, 131. *c*.  
**māiōres**, signification of, 101. 3 (cf. 102. 2), 291. *c*. *n*. 2.  
**Making**, vbs. of, constr., 393.  
**male**, compar., 218; compounds of, w. dat., 368. 2.  
**mālō**, conj., 199.  
**malus**, compar., 129.  
**mandō**, constr., 563.  
**māne**, defect. noun, 76. *n*. 1, 103. *b*. 5.  
**maneb**, w. abl., 431.  
**Manner**, advs. of, 217. *c*; abl. of, 412 and *b*; hard to distinguish from abl. of specification, 418. *a*. *n*; manner implied in participle, 496.  
**mānuētus**, 266. *c*.  
**manus**, decl., 89; gen., 90. *Etc.*  
**mare**, decl., 76. *a*. 3, 78.  
**mari**, loc., 427. *a*.

- mās*, decl., 71. 6.  
 Masculine, rule for gender, 81.  
 Masculine adjs., 122. *d.*  
 Masculine *cæsura*, 615. *c. n.*  
 Material, adjectives denoting, 247; gen. of, 344; abl. of, 403 and *b, c, d.*  
*maximē*, as sign of superl., 128.  
 May, how expressed in Latin, 157. *b.*  
*mē dius fidiūs*, 397. *d. n. 2.*  
 Means, nouns denoting, 239; abl. of, 408, 409; participle implying means, 496.  
 Measure, gen. of, 345. *b* (cf. 425. *a*).  
 Measures in Prosody, 608-610; names of, 609; contracted or resolved, 610.  
 Measures of value, 632-635; of length, 636; of weight, 637; of capacity, 638.  
*medeor*, *w. dat. or acc.*, 367. *b.*  
*mediocritas*, decl., 115. *a. n. 1.*  
 Meditative verbs, 263. 2. *b.*  
*medius* (*middle part of*), 293.  
*melior*, decl., 120.  
*melius est*, *w. infin.* 486. *f.*  
*memini*, conj., 205; in pres. sense, *id. b.*, 476; imperative of, 449. *a*; *memini w. acc. or gen.*, 350. *a, b*; *w. pres. inf.*, 584. *a* and *n.*  
*memor*, decl., 121. *a. 3.*  
 Memory, adjs. of, constr., 349. *a*; *vbs. of, constr.*, 350.  
*men-*, primary suffix, 234. II. 14.  
*-men, -mentum*, noun endings, 239.  
*mēnsis*, decl., 78. 2.  
*meridiēs*, *gend.*, 97.  
*-met* (enclitic), 143. *d.*  
 Metathesis, 640 (cf. 177. *a. n.*).  
 Metre, see Prosody.  
*metuō*, *w. dat. or acc.*, 367. *c*; *w. subjv.*, 564.  
*meus*, *voc. mī*, 110. *a. n.*; syntax of, 302. *a*, 343. *a.*  
 Middle voice, 397. *c*, 410. *n.*  
 Mile, 636.  
*miles*, decl., 57.  
 Military expressions, *dat. in*, 382. 2; *abl. of means instead of agent*, 405. *b. n. 1*; *abl. of accomp. without cum*, 413. *a.*  
*millitiae* (locative), 427. *a.*  
*mille* (*milia*), decl. and constr., 134. *d.*  
*-mini*, as personal ending, p. 76. *ftn. 1.*  
*minimē*, *compar.*, 218. *a*; *use*, 291. *c. n. 2*; *w. neg. force*, 392. *a*; *in answer (no)*, 336. *a. 2.*  
*ministrō*, *w. infin.*, 460. *a.*  
*minor nātū*, 131. *c.*  
*minōris*, *gen. of value*, 417 and *c.*  
*minōrēs*, *signification*, 291. *c. n. 3.*  
*-minus, -minus*, verbal adjective endings, 253. *c.*  
*minus*, *compar.*, 218. *a*; *use*, 291. *c. n. 2*; *w. si and quō = not*, 329. *a*; *constr. without quam*, 407. *c.*  
*miror si*, 572. *b. n.*  
*mirum quam* (*quantum*), *w. indicative*, 575. *d.*  
*mis, tis*, 143. *a. n.*  
*misceō*, *w. abl. or dat.*, 368. 3. *n.*, 413. *a. n.*  
*miser*, decl., 111; *compar.*, 125.  
*miserē*, *compar.*, 218.  
*misereror*, *w. gen.*, 354. *a.*  
*miserescō*, *w. gen.*, 354. *a.*  
*miseret*, 208. *b*; *w. gen. and acc.*, 354. *b*; *other constr.*, *id. n.*  
*miseror*, *w. acc.*, 354. *a. n.*  
 Mixed *i*-stems, 70-72.  
*-minus*, see *-minus*.  
*mo-* (*mā-*), primary suffix, 234. II. 7.  
 Modesty, subjunctive of, 447. 1.  
 Modification of subj. or pred., 276.  
 Modifiers, position of, 596-599; of negative, 599. *n.*  
*modo* (*modo nō*) with subjv. of *proviso*, 528.  
*modo . . . modo*, 323. *f.*  
*modō* as *abl. of manner*, 412. *b.*  
*molāris*, decl., 76. *a. 2.*  
*monēō*, conj., 185; *constr.*, 351, 390. *d. n. 1.*  
*-mōnium, -mōnia*, noun endings, 239.  
 Monoptotes, 103. *b.*  
 Monosyllables, quantity, 604. *a-c.*  
 Months, *gend. of names of*, 31 and *n.*; *decl. of names of in -ber*, 115. *a*; *names of*, 630; *divisions of in Roman Calendar*, 631.  
 Moods, names and uses of, 154, 157; *note on origin and nature of*, 436; *syntax of*, 264-275, 437-463.  
 Moods in temporal clauses, how distinguished, 545, 546 and notes.  
 Mora, in Prosody, 608. *a.*  
*mōrigerus*, decl., 111. *a. n.*  
*mōs est ut*, 568.  
 Mother, name of, *w. prep.*, 403. *a. n. 1.*  
 Motion, how expressed, 363, 381. *a*, 402; *indicated by compounds*, 388. *b*; *implied*, 428. *f. n.*  
 Motion, end of, see End of Motion.  
 Motive, how expressed, 404. *b.*  
 Mountains, names of, *gend.*, 31 and *b.*  
*Mulciber*, decl., 50. *c.*  
*muliebris*, decl., 115. *a. n. 1.*  
*multā nocte*, 293. *n.*  
 Multiplication by distributives, 137. *c.*  
 Multiplicatives, 139.  
*multum* (*-ō*), *compar.*, 218. *a.*  
*multus*, *compar.*, 129.  
*mūnus*, decl., 105. *g*; *mūnus est ut*, 568.  
*mūs*, decl., 71. 6.  
*mūsica* (*-ē*), decl., 44.  
 Musical accent, 611.  
*mūtāre*, *constr.*, 417. *b.*  
 Mutes, 4; *mute stems*, decl. III, 56-64.  
*mýthos*, decl., 52.

- N**, 4; as final letter of stem (*leñ-*), 61. 1; preceding stem vowel of vb., 176. b. 1; inserted in verb root (*tangō*), 176. c. 2, 177. b. n.
- nāis**, decl., 82.
- nam** (enclitic), in questions, 333. a.
- nam**, *namque*, use, 324. h, k.
- Names of men and women**, 108.
- Naming**, vbs. of, w. two accs., 393.
- Nasals**, 4, 6; inserted in verb root, 176. c. 2.
- nātālis**, decl., 76. b. 2.
- nātū** (*māior*, *minor*), 131. c.
- nātus** etc., w. abl. of source, 403. a.
- nāvis**, decl., 76. b. 1.
- nd**, **-nt**, vowel short before, 10. e.
- ndus**, verbal adj. ending, 263. a; *gerundive* in, 158. d.
- ne** (enclitic), use in questions, 332. a-c; w. force of *nōne*, 332. c; orig. meaning, id. n. 1; in double questions, 335; in exclamatory questions, 462. a; quantity, 604. a. 1.
- nē**, neg. of hortatory subjv., 439; in prohibitions, 450. 3; in concessions, 527. a; w. subjv. of proviso, 528. b; in final clauses, 531; = *nēdum*, 532. n. 1; in substantive clauses, w. vbs. of hindering, 558. b; of fearing, 564; omitted after *cavē*, 565. n. 1.
- nē nōn**, w. vbs. of fearing, 564.
- nē . . . quidem**, use, 322. f; after *nōn*, 327. 1; after *nōn modo*, 217. e; position of, 599. b.
- Nearness**, adjs. of, w. dat., 384; w. gen., 385. c.
- nec enim**, 324. h.
- necesse**, indecl., 103. n. 1; *necesse est* ut, 568, 569. 2. n. 2.
- Necessity**, vbs. of, w. perf. pass. inf., 486. d; in apod., 517. c, 522. a; w. ut-clause, 569. 2.
- nece** in double questions, 335 and n.
- nēdum**, 532. n. 1, 2.
- nefās**, indecl., 103. a; w. supine in -ā, 510.
- Negation**, perfect preferred in, 475. a.
- Negative answers**, 332. b, 336 and a. 2.
- Negative particles**, list of, 217. e; use of, 325; two negatives, 326; neg. form different from English, 328; neg. condition, 525. a; neg. proviso, 528; neg. purpose, 531; neg. result, 538, 568; position of, 599. a.
- negō**, better than *dicō* . . . *nōn*, 328, 580. b.
- negōtium dō ut**, 563. ftn. 2.
- nēmō**, use of, 314; gen. and abl. sing. replaced by *nūllus* and *nūllō*, 314. a; *nēmō nōn*, 326. b; *nēmō est quī*, 535. a. n. 1.
- neque** (*nec*), *and not*, 328. a; *neque enim*, use, 324. h; *neque* after a neg., 327. 2, 3.
- nēquam**, indecl., 122. b; compar. of, 129.
- nequeō**, conj., 206. d.
- nēquis**, decl., 310. a.
- nesciō an**, 576. d.
- nesciō quis**, as indefinite without subjv., 576. d.
- neus**, adj. ending, 247.
- Neuter acc.** as adv., 214. d, cf. b. n.
- Neuter adjs.**, special uses of, 289.
- Neuter gender**, general rule for, 33; cases alike in, 38. b; endings of decl. III, 87.
- Neuter pron.** as cognate acc., 390. c.
- Neuter verbs**, see *Intransitive Verbs*.
- nēve**, connective in prohibitions, 450. n. 5.
- nex**, decl., 103. g. 2.
- ni-**, primary suffix, 234. II. 5.
- nī**, *nisi*, 512. n; use of, 525. a.
- nia**, **-nium**, noun endings, 241. c.
- niger**, decl., 112; distinct from *āter*, 131. d. n.
- nihil**, indecl., 103. a; contr. to *nīl*, 603. c.
- nihilī**, gen. of value, 417. a.
- nihilī** and **nihilō**, 103. a. n. 2.
- nimirum quam**, as indefinite without subjv., 575. d.
- ningit**, 208. a.
- nisi** and **si nōn**, 525. a; *nisi si*, id. 3; *nisi vērō* (*forte*), id. b.
- nitor**, w. abl., 431.
- nix** (stem and decl.), 79. d; plur., 100. b.
- No**, in answers, how expressed, 336. a. 2.
- no-** (*nā-*), primary suffix, 234. II. 4.
- no-**, verb suffix, 176. b. 1.
- nōī**, in prohibitions, 450. (1) and n. 1.
- nōīō**, conj., 199; part. w. dat. of the person judging, 378. n; w. perf. act. inf. in prohibitions, 486. c; w. perf. pass. inf. (or part.), id. d and n.
- Nōmen**, denoting gens, 108.
- nōmen**, decl., 64.
- nōmen est**, w. pred. nom. or dat., 373. a; w. gen., id. n.
- Nominal adjs.**, 243-254.
- NOMINATIVE** defined, 35. a; nom. suffix, 338; neut. plur. nom. and acc. alike, 38. b; in decl. II, 45. a; in decl. III, 56, 58, 61, 66, 79; of neuters, i-stems, 68. a; in u-stems, decl. IV, 88; in e-stems, decl. V, 95.
- NOMINATIVE**, *Syntax* (see 338): in predicate, 283, 284; verb-agreement with, 316; as subject, 339; in exclamations, 339. a (cf. 397. d); used for vocative, 340. a; w. opus in predicate, 411. b; nom. of gerund supplied by inf., 502. n.
- nōn**, derivation, 215. 1; compounds of, 326. a, b; in answers, 336. a. 2.
- nōn dubitō quin**, 558. a; *nōn dubitō w. inf.*, id. n. 2; w. indir. quest., id. n. 1.
- nōn modo**, after a negative, 327. 1.
- nōn modo . . . nē . . . quidem**, 217. e.
- nōn nēmō**, *nōn nūllus*, etc., 326. a.
- nōn quia** (*quod*, *quō*, *quin*) etc., 540. n. 2.

- nōn satis*, 291. c. n. <sup>2</sup>.  
*Nonēs* (*nōnae*), 631. c.  
*nōnne*, in questions, 332. b.  
*nōs*, decl., 143; for *ego*, 143. a.  
*nostr*, for poss. gen., 302. a.  
*nostrī*, as objective gen., 143. c, 295. b.  
*nostrum*, as partitive gen., 143. b, 295. b; as objective gen., 295. b. n. <sup>1</sup>.  
 Noun and adj. forms of vb., 166.  
 Noun stem, treated as root, 176. d.  
 Nouns defined, 20. a; indecl., gen., 33; decl. of, 37-95; derivative forms of, 235-241; used as adjectives, 321. c; rule of agreement, 281; w. part. gen., 346. a. 1; w. obj. gen., 348; governing acc., 388. d. n. <sup>2</sup>; noun as protasis, 521. a.  
 Nouns of agency, 235; formation, 236.  
*novendecim*, 133. n. <sup>2</sup>.  
*nox*, decl., 72.  
*ns*, *nf*, *gn*, quantity of preceding vowel, 10. d, 603. d.  
*-ns*, as adjective ending, 118; participles in, decl., 119, 121. b. 2; w. gen., 349. b; w. acc., id. n. <sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>.  
*nt-* (*ont-*, *ent-*), primary suffix, 234. II. 18.  
*nt-*, stems in, decl., 121. a. 4.  
*nt-*, primary suffix, 234. II. 6.  
*nūbēs*, decl., 72.  
*nūbō*, w. dat., 368. 3.  
*nūllus*, decl., 113; use, 314. a; cf. *nēmō*.  
*num*, force of, 332. b; in indirect questions, id. n.  
 Number, 35; nouns, defect. in, 99, 100, 101, 103. f, g; variable in, 107; peculiar uses, 101. n. <sup>1</sup>, 317. d. n. <sup>2</sup>; number in vbs., 154. e; agreement in, 280; w. appositives, 282. a; w. adjs., 286 and b; w. vbs., 316, 317. d.  
 Numeral advs., 138.  
 Numerals, 132-139; cardinals and ordinals, 132, 133; distributives, 136; advs., 138; others, 139. Position of numeral adjs., 598. b.  
*numquis*, 149. b, 310. a.  
*nunc*, compared w. *iam*, 322. b.  
*nunc* . . . *nunc*, 323. f.  
*nurus*, gen., 90.  
*-nus*, adj. ending, 280.  
 O for u after u or v, 6. a, b; in decl. II, 46. n. <sup>1</sup>.  
*o-* (*ā-*), primary suffix, 234. I. 1.  
*-ō* in nom., 61. 1; gen., 86; in fem. abl. of Greek adjs., 111. b. n.  
*-ō*, *-ōnis*, noun ending, 236. c, 255.  
*ō sī*, w. subjv. of wish, 442. a and n. <sup>1</sup>.  
*o-* stems, decl. II, 45; in adjs., 111-113; vbs. from *o-* stems, 259. 2.  
*ob*, use, 220. a, 221. 15; in comp., 267. a; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 370; to express cause, 404. b; w. gerund, 506 and n. <sup>1</sup>.  
*obed*, constr., 370. b.  
 Obeying, vbs. of, 367; w. acc., id. a.  
 Object cases, 274. a.  
 Object clauses, infin., 452; subjv., 561-568.  
 Object defined, 274; becomes subj. of pass., 275, 387. b; acc. of direct w. dat. of indir. obj., 362; secondary obj., 394; obj. of anticipation, 576.  
 Objective case expressed in Latin by gen., dat., acc., or abl., 274. a.  
 Objective compounds, 265. 3.  
 Objective genitive, *meī* etc., 143. c; defined, 348. n.; w. nouns, 348; w. adjs., 349.  
 Obligation, unfulfilled, hortatory subjv., 439. b.  
 Oblique cases, 35. g; origin of names of, 338.  
*oblīviscor*, w. acc. or gen., 350. a, b.  
*obvius* (*obviam*), derivation, 216 and n.; *obviam* as apparent adj., 321. d; w. dat., 370. c.  
 Occasion, expressed by participle, 496.  
*ōclor*, compar., 130.  
*octōdecim*, 133. n. <sup>2</sup>.  
*ōdī*, conj., 205; w. meaning of present, 476.  
*-oe*, for *-i* in nom. plur., decl. II, 52. d.  
*offendō*, constr., 370. b.  
*-ōius*, names in, 49. f.  
 Old forms of pronouns: *mīa*, *tis*, 143. a. n.; *mēd*, *tēd*, id.  
*ollus* (*ille*), 146. n. <sup>4</sup>.  
*-olus*, diminutive ending, 243.  
 Omission, of possessive, 302. c; of antecedent, 307. c.  
*omnēs*; *nōs omnēs* (instead of *omnēs nostrum*), 346. e.  
*ōn-*, stem-ending, 83. c.  
*-ōn*, Greek ending, decl. II, 52.  
*ōn-*, stem-ending, 61. 1, 234. II. 13.  
*-ōn*, gen. plur., decl. II, 52. c.  
*-ōn*, nom. ending, 83. c, d.  
*ont-*, nom. *-ōn*, 83. d.  
 Open syllables, 7. n. <sup>2</sup>.  
*operā*, w. gen., 405. b.  
*operam dō*, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505; w. subjv., 563.  
 Operations of nature, 208. a.  
*opiniōne*, w. compar., 406. a.  
*opīnor*, position of, 599. c.  
*oportet*, 208. c; w. acc., 388. c; in apod., 517. c; imperfect refers to present, plupf. to past, 522. a. n. <sup>1</sup>; w. subjv. or inf., 585 and n. <sup>2</sup>.  
*oportuit*, w. pres. inf., 486. a; w. perf. inf., id. b.  
*oppidum*, ad, 428. b.  
*oppugnō*, w. acc., 370. b.  
*ops*, defect., 103. f. 1.  
 Optative, derivation, and comparison w. subjv., 436.

Optative forms in the vb., 168. *e. n.* 2, 169. *d.*  
 Optative subjv. (*wish*), 441; w. *utinam* etc., 442; *velim* etc. w. subjv., equiv. to, *id. b.*  
*optimatēs*, 71. 5, 101. 3.  
*opus*, indecl., 103. *a*; *opus* and *ūsus*, w. abl., 411; as pred. nom., *id. b*; w. participle, 497. *a*; w. supine in -*ū*, 510.  
*or*, stem-ending, decl. III, 63. *Exc.* 2.  
*-or*, noun ending, 238. *a.*  
*-or* or *-ōs*, nom. ending, 62. *n.* 2; *gend.*, 85.  
*Oratio obliqua*, see Indirect Discourse.  
 Order of words, 595-601.  
 Ordinal Numbers, 132-135; decl., 134. *e*; use of et with, 135. *a. b.*  
*orō*, constr., 563.  
*Orpheus*, decl., 52. *e.*  
*os*, stem of comparatives, 120. *b.*  
*-os* for *-us*, in nom. sing., decl. II, 46. *n.* 1; as Greek ending, 52; as gen. ending in Greek nouns, decl. III, 81. 1.  
*os*, *ossis*, stem, 79.  
*-ōs*, nom. ending, 62. *n.* 2; *gend.*, 85.  
*ōs*, *ōris*, decl., 103. *g.* 2.  
*-ōsus*, *-lēns*, *-lentus*, adj. endings, 245.  
*ovāt* (defective), 206. *f.*  
*ovis*, decl., 76. *b.* 1.

*P*, parasitic after *m* (*sūmpsi*), 15. 11.  
*pacō*, as abl. of manner, 412. *b.*  
*paene*, in apod., 517. *b.* *n.* 2.  
*paenitet*, 208. *b*; constr., 354. *b. c.*  
*Paeon*, 609. *d.*  
*palam*, as apparent adj., 321. *d*; w. abl., 432. *c.*  
*Palatalis*, 4.  
*palūster*, decl., 115. *a.*  
*Panthūs*, vocative of, 52. *b.*  
*pār*, decl., 119, 121. *a.* 3; w. gen., 385. *c*; w. dat. of gerund etc., 505. *ftn.* 2.  
 Parallel verb forms, 189.  
*Parataxis*, 268.  
*parātus*, w. infin., 460. *b.*  
 Pardonng, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.  
 Parisyllabic nouns of decl. III, 65. *a.*  
*pariter*, use, 384. *n.* 2.  
*parte*, locative use, without prep., 429. 1.  
*partem*, adverbial use, 397. *a.*  
*particeps*, decl., 121. *a.* 4, *b.*  
 PARTICIPLES, defined, 20. *b. n.* 1; comparison of, 124. *a*; number of, 155. *a*; how used, 153.  
 PARTICIPLES, *Syntax*, 498-500; agreement, 286 and *n.*; clause equivalent to part., 308. *c*; parts in -*ns*, used as adjs., w. gen., 349. *b*; parts in abl. absolute, 419; meaning and form, 498; tenses, 489-493; present in special use, 490; pres. pass. part., how supplied, 492; perf. act., how supplied, 493; parts. of

deponent vbs., 190. *a. b.*, 491, 493; adjective use, 494; as nouns, *id. a*; predicate use, 495, 496; w. *opus*, 497. *a*; perf. w. *habeo*, *id. b*; present w. *faciō*, *id. c*; future part., 498; w. past tenses of *esse*, 498. *b*; poetic and late use, 499; gerundive, use as part. or adj., 500; part. as protasis, 521. *a.*  
 Particles defined, 23; forms and classification, 213; note on formation, 215, 216; interrogative, 217. *d*; negative, *id. e*, 325; in comps., 267. *Syntax*, 321-336; use of interrogative particles, 332. *a-c*; conditional particles, 512. *a* and *n.*, 525; particles of comparison, 524.  
 Particular conditions defined, 513.  
*partior*, conj., 190.  
 Partitive apposition, 282. *a.*  
 Partitive genitive, 346; *nostrum* etc., 143. *b*; neut. adjs. with, 346. 3 and *n.* 1.  
 Partitive numerals, 139. *c.*  
 Parts of Speech, 20.  
*partus*, decl., 92. *c.*  
*parum*, compar., 218. *a*; meaning, 291. *c. n.* 2.  
*parvi*, gen. of value, 417.  
*parvus*, compar., 129.  
 Passive voice, 154. *a*; origin, 163. *ftn.* 2, 208. *d. n.*; signification, 156; reflexive meaning, *id. a*; deponents, 156. *b*; completed tenses, how formed, 179. *g*; passive used impersonally, 203. *a*, 208. *d*, 372 (cf. 566, 582. *a*).  
*pater familiās*, decl., 43. *b.*  
*patiēns*, compar., 124. *a.*  
*pator*, constr., 563. *c.*  
 Patrials in -*ās*, decl., 71. 5, 121. *a.* 4.  
 Patronymics (-*ades*, *-ides*, *-eus*, etc.), 244.  
*pauper*, decl., 121. *a.* 4.  
*pāx*, decl., 103. *g.* 2.  
*pecū*, *gend.*, 91; decl., 105. *f.*  
*pecūniā*, gen., w. vbs. of accusing, 352. *a* and *n.*  
*pedester*, decl., 115. *a.*  
*pelagus* (plur. *pelagē*), *gend.* of, 48. *a.*  
*pelvis*, decl., 76. *b.* 1.  
 Penalty, gen. of, 352 and *n.*; abl. of, 353. 2.  
*Penātēs*, decl., 71. 5 (cf. 101. 3).  
 penes, following noun, 435.  
 Pentameter verse, 616.  
 Penult, defined, 12.  
*penus*, *gend.*, 90. *Exc.* 2.  
*per*, prep., 220. *a*; use, 221. 16; w. acc. of agent, 405. *b.* Adverbial prefix, w. adjs., 267. *d.* 1 (cf. 291. *c. n.* 1); w. vbs., 267. *d. n.*  
 Perceiving, vbs. of, constr., 459.  
*perendi* (loc.), 98. *b*, 215. 5.  
 Perfect participle, two uses, 158. *c.* 1, 2; of deponents, 190. *b*; used as noun,

- retains adv., 321. *b*; dat. of agent *w.*, 375; abl. *w.* opus and usus, 411. *a*, 497. *a*.
- PERFECT TENSE** distinguished from imperf., 161, 471; perf. def. and perf. hist., 161, 473; personal endings, 163. *a*, 169. *a*; origin of *i* and *sin*, 163. *ftn.* 3; stem, how formed, 177, 179; perf. subjv., suffixes of, 169. *d*; of conj. I, 179. *a*, 2; contracted perf., 181. *a*, *b*; perf. subjv. in *-sim*, 183. 3; irreg. forms of conj. I, 209. *a*; of conj. II, 210. *c*; various, of conj. III, 211; of conj. IV, 212.
- PERFECT TENSE, Syntax.** Perf. Ind., use, 473; in general conditions, id. *a*, 518. *b*; gnomic perf., 475; in fut. conditions, 516. *e*. Perf. Subjv., hortatory, 439 and *n.*<sup>1</sup>; optative, 441. *a*; potential, 446; in prohibitions, 450 (3); in fut. conditions, 516. *c*. Perf. Inf., in exclamations, 462 and *n.*<sup>2</sup>; *w.* *dēbeō* etc., 486. *b*; *w.* *nōlō* or *volō* in prohibition, id. *c*; pass. *w.* *volō* etc., id. *d*; instead of the pres. inf., id. *e*; *w.* vbs. of feeling etc., id. *f*; in ind. disc., 584. *a* and *n.* Sequence of Tenses, perf. ind., 485. *a*; perf. subjv., id. *b*, *c*, 585. *a*.
- Periclēas**, decl., 82.
- Period**, 600, 601.
- Periphrastic conjugations**, 158. *b*. *n.*, *d*. *n.*; paradigms, 195, 196; periphrastic forms in conjugation, 193; use in contrary to fact apodosis, 517. *d*; in ind. questions, 575. *a*.
- Permission**, vbs. of, constr., 563. *c*.
- permutō**, *w.* abl., 417. *b*.
- pernox**, decl., 122. *c*.
- perpes**, decl., 121. *a*, 3.
- Person**, 154. *d*; agreement, 280; of vbs., 316 and *a*; *w.* different persons, 317. *a*; order of the three persons, id.
- Personal constr. of passive w. infinitive**, 582.
- Personal endings**, 163 and *ftn.* 1.
- Personal pronouns**, 142, 143, 294, 295; reduplicated forms, 143. *e*; *Syntax*, 295; omitted, id. *a*, 318. *a*; gen. plur., 295. *b*; 3d pers., id. *c*; position of personal and demonstrative, 599. *f*.
- persuadeō**, constr., 563.
- Persuading**, vbs. of, *w.* dat., 367.
- pertaesum est**, 354. *b*.
- pēs**, comps. of, decl., 121. *b*, 1.
- Pet names**, *gend.*, 30. *a*. *n.*<sup>2</sup>.
- petō w. ab**, 306. *a*; *w.* subjv., 563.
- ph** only in Greek words, 4. 1. *ftn.* 2; sound of, 8.
- Phalæcian verse**, 625. 11.
- Pherecratic verse**, 623. 2, 624, 625. 2, 4, 12.
- Phonetic variations**, 14-19; phonetic decay, id., vowels, 15, 17; consonants, 15. 4-17.
- Phrase**, defined, 277.
- Phrases**, neut., 33; phrases and clauses grown into advs., 216; adverbial phrases, 277; phrases limited by gen., 343. *c*; phrase or clause in abl. abs., 419. *b*.
- Physical qualities**, abl., 415. *a*.
- piger**, decl., 112. *a*.
- piget**, constr., 354. *b*.
- Pity**, vbs. of, constr., 354. *a*.
- pius**, compar., 128. *n.*, 131. *a*.
- pix**, decl., 103. *g*, 2.
- Place**, advs. of, 217. *a*; relations of, require prep., 381. *a*, 426; place of birth, abl., 403. *a*. *n.*<sup>2</sup>; place where, 426. 3, 427. 3; place to or from which, 426. 1, 2; prep., when omitted, 426. *ftn.*, 427. 1, 2. *a*, 429. *a*; locative case, 427. 3. *a*, 428. *k*.
- Placing**, vbs. of, constr., 430.
- Plants**, *gend.* of names of, 32 and *b*; decl. of plant names in *-us*, 105. *a*.
- plaudō**, *w.* dat., 368. 3.
- Plantus**, *abscque mē* etc., 517. *f*; use of *quom w.* indic., 546. *n.*<sup>4</sup>, 549. *n.*<sup>2</sup>; prosodial forms, 620. *a*, 628. *b*, 629.
- Pleasing**, vbs. of, constr., 367.
- plēbēs**, decl., 98. *d*.
- Plenty**, vbs. of, constr., 356, 409. *a*.
- plēnus**, constr., 409. *n*.
- plex**, numeral adjs. in, 139.
- pluit** (impers.), 208. *a*; used personally, id. *n*.
- Pluperfect Indicative**, suffixes of, 169. *b*; use of, 477; epistolary, 479; pluperf. indic. in conditions cont. to fact, 517. *b*; in general conditions, 518. *b*. Pluperf. Subjv., suffixes of, 169. *e*; hortatory, 439. *b*; optative, 441; potential, 446; in conditions, 517 (sequence, 485. *g*).
- Plural**, wanting in decl. V, 98. *a*; used in sense different from sing., 100. *a-c*, 107; plur. alone used, 101. *n.*<sup>1</sup>; plur. acc. used as advs., 215. 3; neut. plur. of adjs., 289. *b*.
- Plurālia tantum**, 101.
- plūris**, *gend.* of value, 417 and *c*.
- plūs**, decl., 120 and *c*; compar., 129; without *quam*, 407. *c*.
- poēma**, decl., 60. *a*.
- poenitet**, see *paenitet*.
- pondō**, defect., 103. *b*, 5.
- pōnō**, *w.* abl., 430.
- por-**, prefix, 267. *b*.
- porticus**, *gend.*, 90. *Exc*.
- portus**, decl., 92. *c*.
- Position**, expressed by *ab*, *ex*, 429. *b*.
- Position in Prosody**, 11. *b*, 603. *f*; does not affect final vowel, 603. *f*. *n.*<sup>1</sup>.
- posse**, as fut. inf., 584. *b*.
- Possession**, how expressed, 302. *a*; dat. of, 373; compared *w.* *gend.*, id. *n*.

- Possessive compounds, 265. *a*.  
 Possessive genitive, 343 and *a-c*; dat. of reference used instead, 377.  
 Possessive pronouns, 145; agreement, 302; instead of gen., id. *a*; special meanings, id. *b*; omission, id. *c*; used substantively, id. *d*; w. gen. in app., id. *e*; used for gen., 343. *a*; for obj. gen., 348. *a*.  
 Possibility, vbs. of, in apodosis, 517. *c*.  
 possum, in apodosis, 517. *c*.  
 post, adverbial use of, 433. 1; with quam, 434.  
 post, vbs. comp. w., with dat., 370.  
 postera, defect., 111. *b*; compar., 130. *b*; posterī, id.  
 posterior, 130. *b*.  
 Postpositive conjunctions, 324. *j*.  
 postquam (posteaquam), in temporal clauses, 543.  
 postremō, in enumerations, 322. *d*. *n*.  
 postulāre, w. gen., 359. *b*; w. acc., 432. *a*; w. quam, 434.  
 postulō ab, 396. *a*; postulō ut, 563.  
 Potential mood, how expressed in Latin, 157. *b*.  
 Potential subjunctive, 445-447.  
 potior (adj.), compar., 130.  
 potior (verb), w. gen., 357. *a*, 410. *a*; w. abl., 410; w. acc., id. *n*. 1; gerundive, 503. *n*. 2.  
 potis, pote, 122. *b*.  
 potius, compar., 218. *a*.  
 potui, w. pres. infin., 486. *a*.  
 Practice, vbs. of, 263. *b*.  
 prae, 220. *b*; use, 221. 17; in comp., 291. *c*. *n*. 1; in comps., w. dat., 370; in compar., w. quam, 434; quantity of, in comps., 603. *b*. *Exc.*  
 praecedō, constr., 370.  
 praecēps, decl., 119, 121. *a*. 3.  
 praecipio, constr., 563.  
 Praenomen, 108; abbreviations, id. *c*.  
 praepes, decl., 121. *b*. 1.  
 praestōlor, constr., 367. *b*.  
 praesum, w. dat. of gerund etc., 505.  
 praeter, use, 220. *a*, 221. 18.  
 praeterit, w. acc., 388. *c*.  
 precī, defect., 103. *f*. 2.  
 precor, constr., 563.  
 Predicate, defined, 270; modified, 276; pred. noun or adj., 272, 283; case, 284; pred. noun referring to two or more sing. nouns, id. *a*; adjective, 285. 2, 286. *a*; agreement in, 287. 1-3; in rel. clause, 306; pred. adj. in neut. plur., 287. 4. *a*; pred. adj. in relative clause, 307. *f*; pred. gen., 343. *b*, *c*; pred. acc., 392, 393; adj. as pred. acc., id. *n*.; pred. acc. becomes pred. nom. in the pass., id. *a*; predicate use of participles, 496.  
 Predicate noun or adj. after inf., 452. *n*. 2, 455. *a* and *n*., 458. 581. *n*. 2.  
 Prepositions, assimilation of, 16; defined, 20. *f*; derivation of, 219; list of preps. w. acc., 220. *a*; w. abl., id. *b*; w. either, id. *c*; idiomatic uses, 221; comp. w. vbs. and adjs., 267. *a*, *c*; noun w. prep., instead of obj. gen., 348. *c*; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 370, 381; acc. in comp., 396; w. abl. of separation, 401; prep. omitted in relations of place, 427. 1, 2, 429 and *a*; use of, 220, 221, 429. *b*, 430, 432-435; preps. following the noun, 436; usual position of, 599. *d*. (See 338.)  
 Present participle, decl., 119; use, 158. *a*.  
 Present stem, how formed, 168, 174; from root, 176.  
 Present subjunctive in -im, 183. 2.  
 Present tense, w. iam diū etc., 466; conative, 467; for fut., 468; historical, 469; annalistic, id. *a*; w. dum, 556; in quotations, 465. *a*; sequence, 483, 485. *e*, *i*; pres. inf. w. potui etc., 486. *a*; participle, 489, 490, 492, 494, 496. Pres. inf. in ind. disc. referring to past time, 584. *a* and *n*.  
 Preteritive verbs, 205. *n*. 2, 476.  
 Preventing, vbs. of, constr., 364. *n*. 2.  
 Price, abl. or gen., 416.  
 pridē, form, 98. *b*; w. gen., 359. *b*; w. acc., 432. *a*; w. quam, 434.  
 Primary suffixes, defined, 233.  
 Primary tenses, 482. 1, 483.  
 primipilāris, decl., 76. *a*. 2.  
 Primitive verbs, 256.  
 primō, primum, meanings, 322. *d* and *n*.  
 primōris, defect., 122. *c*.  
 primus, form, 130. *ftn*. 2.  
 princeps, decl., 121. *a*. 4.  
 Principal parts of verb, 172, 173.  
 prior, compar., 130. *a*.  
 prius, w. quam, 434; priusquam in temporal clause, 550, 551; in ind. disc., 585. *b*. *n*.  
 Privation expressed by abl., 400.  
 prō, 220. *b*; use, 221. 19; in comps., w. dat., 370; to express for, 379. *n*.  
 probō, w. dat., 368, 375. *b*. *n*.  
 Proceleusmatic, 609. *n*.  
 procērus, decl., 111. *a*. *n*.  
 procul, w. abl., 432. *c*.  
 prohibet, constr. of, 364. *n*. 2.  
 Prohibitions, 450; in ind. disc., 588. *n*. 2.  
 Promising etc., vbs. of, 580. *c*.  
 Pronominal roots, 223, 232; as primary suffixes, id.  
 PRONOUNS defined, 20. *c*; decl. of, 140-151; personal, 142, 143; reflexive, 144; gen., how used, 143. *c*, 302. *a*; demonstrative, 146; relative, 147; interrog. and indef., 148-151; pron. contained in verb ending, 163. *ftn*. 1, 271. *a*.

**PRONOUNS**, *Syntax*, 294-315; Personal, 295; Demonstrative, 296-298; idem, 298. *a*, *b*; ipse, id. *c-f*; Reflexive, 299; Possessive, 302; Relative, 303-308; Indefinite, 309-314. Prons. w. part. gen., 346. *a*. 1. Relative in protasis, 519. Position of prons., 598. *e*, *i*.  
**Pronunciation**, Roman method, 8; English method, 8. *n*.  
*prōnūtiō*, constr., 563.  
*prope*, compar., 130; use, 220. *a*; in apod., 517. *b*. *n*.<sup>2</sup>.  
*prope est ut*, 568.  
**Proper names**, 108; plur., 99. 1, 101. 1.  
**Proper nouns**, 20. *a*.  
*properus*, decl., 111. *a*. *n*.  
*propinquus*, w. gen., 385. *c*.  
*propior* (*propius*), compar., 130. *a*; constr., 432. *a* and *n*.  
**Proportional numerals**, 139. *a*.  
**Propriety**, vbs. of, in apod., 517. *c*, 522. *a*.  
*proprius*, w. gen., 385. *c*.  
*propter*, use, 220. *a*, 221. 20; position, 435; denoting  *motive*, 404. *b*.  
**PROSODY**, 602; rules and definitions, 603-606; early peculiarities, 629.  
*prosper(-us)*, decl., 111. *a*.  
*prospiciō*, w. dat. or acc., 367. *c*.  
**Protasis** (see Conditional Sentences), 512 ff.; loose use of tenses in Eng., 514. *C*. *n*.; relative in prot., 519; temporal particles in, 542; *antequam*, *prīusquam*, in, 551. *c*. *n*.<sup>2</sup>; prot. in ind. disc., 589. 1.  
**Protecting**, vbs. of, constr., 364. *n*.<sup>2</sup>.  
**Protraction** of long syllables, 608. *c*.  
*providēō*, w. dat. or acc., 367. *c*.  
**Proviso**, subjv. used in, 528. *a* and *b*; introduced by *modo* etc., 528; hortatory subjv. expressing, id. *a*; subjv. w. *ut* (or *nē*), id. *b*; characteristic clause expressing, 536. *d*.  
*proximē*, constr., 432. *a*.  
*proximus*, constr., 432. *a*.  
*-pte*, *-pte* (enclitic), 143. *d*. *n*., 145. *a*, 146. *n*.<sup>1</sup>, *e*.  
*pūbēs*, decl., 105. *e*, 121. *d*.  
*puet*, 208. *b*; constr., 354. *b*, *c*, and *n*.  
*puer*, decl. 47 (cf. 50. *a*).  
*pulcher*, decl., 112. *a*.  
**Punishment**, abl. of, 353. 1.  
*puppis*, decl., 75. *b*, 76. *b*. 1.  
**Purpose**, dat. of, 382; infin. of, 460; expressed by gerundive after certain vbs., 500. 4; by gerund or gerundive as predicate gen., 504. *a*. *n*.<sup>1</sup>; ways of expressing, 533. Clauses of, 279. *d*; defined and classified, 529 ff.; use of *quō* in, 531. *a*; main clause omitted, 532; *nēdum*, id., *n*.<sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>. Substantive clauses of, used after certain vbs., 563; of wishing, id. *b*; of permitting, id. *c*; of

determining, id. *d*; of caution etc., id. *e*; of fearing, 564.  
**Purpose** or end, dat. of, 382.  
*puter*, decl., 115. *a*.  
*quā . . . quā*, 323. *f*.  
*quadrupēs*, decl., 121. *b*. 1.  
*quae res* (or *id quod*), 307. *d*.  
*quaerō*, constr. (*ex ordē*), 396. *a*; w. subjv., 563.  
*quaesō*, conj., 206. *e*.  
*quālis*, 151. *i*.  
**Qualities** (abstract), *gend.*, 32.  
**Qualities** of an object compared, 292.  
**Quality**, adjs. of, 251; *gend.* of, 345, 415. *a*; to denote indef. value, 417 and *a*; *abl.* of, 415 (cf. 345. *n*.).  
**quam**, derivation of, 215. 2; with superlative, 291. *c*; w. compar. and positive or w. two positives, 292. *a*. *n*.; correlative w. *tam*, 323. *g*; w. compar., 407. *a*, *e*; after *alius*, id. *a*; w. compar. of advs., 434; w. *ante*, post, id.; w. subjv. after compar., 535. *c*; followed by result clause, 571. *a*; in indirect questions, 575. *d*; in ind. disc., 581. *n*.<sup>2</sup>, 583. *c*.  
*quam diū*, 555. *n*.<sup>2</sup>.  
*quam ob causam*, 398.  
*quam quī*, *quam ut*, w. subjv., 535. *c*.  
*quam sī*, 524.  
*quamquam*, use, 527. *d*; introducing a proposition = *and yet*, id. *n*.; w. subjv., id. *e*.  
*quamvis*, use, 527. *a*; subjv. or ind. w., 440. *n*., 527. *a*, *e*.  
*quandō* (interrog.), derivation and meaning, 215. 6, 539; causal (*since*), 540. *a* and *n*.; indef., id.; temporal, 542.  
**quantī**, *gend.* of price, 417.  
**Quantity**, *gend.* of adjs. of, denoting price, 417.  
**Quantity** in Prosody, marks of, 10. *e*; nature of, 602; general rules of, 9-11, 603; final syllables, 604; perf. and perf. parts., 605; derivatives, 606.  
*quantō*, w. *tantō*, 414. *a*.  
**quantum** (with *mīrum*), in indirect questions, 576. *d*.  
*quantus*, 151. *i*.  
*quasi*, with primary tenses, 524. *n*.<sup>2</sup>.  
*quasēō* (intensive), 263. 2.  
*-que* (enclitic), added to indefinites, 151. *g*; as conj., use, 323. *c*. 3, 324. *a*; quantity, 604. *a*. 1.  
*quēō* (defective), 206. *d*.  
*quēs*, old nom. plur., 150. *c*.  
**Questions**, direct, in indic., 157. *a*, 330-335; indirect, 330. 2, 331. *n*.; double questions, 334; question and answer, 336; result clause in exclam. questions,



462. *a*; mood in indir. question, 574; in ind. disc., 586; in informal ind. disc., 592. 1.
- quī* (adverbial), 150. *b*.
- quī* (relative), decl., 147; (interrog. and indef.), 148 and *b*; in compounds, 151; *quī* = *ut* is, w. subjv., 531. 2. *n.*, 537. 2;
- quī* causal and concessive, 535. *e*.
- quia*, derivation etc., 539; use, 540. *n.* 1; causal, id.; w. vbs. of feeling, 572. *b*; in intermediate clauses, 592. *g*.
- quicum*, 150. *b*.
- quicumque*, decl., 151. *a*.
- quid*, in exclamations, 397. *d.* *n.* 1.
- quidam*, decl., 151. *c*; meaning of, 310; w. *ex*, 346. *c*.
- quidem*, use, 322. *e*; w. *is* or *idem*, 298. *a*; position of, 599. *b*.
- quilibet*, decl., 151. *c*; use, 312.
- quīn*, w. indic. equiv. to command, 449. *b*; in result clause (= *quī nōn*), 558, 559; w. vbs. of hindering, 558; *nōn dubitō quīn*, 558. *a*.
- Quinary or hemiolic measures, 609. *d*.
- quinquātrūs*, gender, 90; plural only, 101. 2.
- quippe*, w. relative clause, 535. *e.* *n.* 1; w. *cum*, 549. *n.* 1.
- Quiritēs*, 101. 3.
- quis*, decl., 148, 149; distinguished from *quī* in use, id. *b* and *n.*; compounds of (*aliquis* etc.), 151. *d-f*, 310 and *b*; *quis w. ei*, num. *nē*, 310. *a*; indef. use of, 310.
- quis est quī*, 535. *a*.
- quīs*, dat. or abl. plur., 150. *c*.
- quisnam*, 148. *e*.
- quispiam*, 151. *d*; use of, 310 and *b*.
- quisquam*, decl., 151. *d*; use, 311, 312.
- quisque*, form and decl., 151. *g*; use in general assertions, 313; in dependent clause, id. *a*; w. superlative, id. *b*; w. plur. vb., 317. *e*.
- quisquis*, decl., 151. *b*.
- quīsvis*, decl., 151. *c*; use, 312.
- quo-*, stems in, 46. *n.* 2.
- quō*, approaching abl. of cause, 414. *a.* *n.*
- quō* in final clauses (= *ut eō*) w. subjv., 531. *a*; *nōn quō*, 540. *n.* 3.
- quō . . . eō*, 414. *a*; to denote deg. of difference, id.
- quoad* (intention etc.), 553; (fact), 554; (*as long as*), 555.
- quod* for *id quod*, 307. *d.* *n.*
- quod* (conj.), 540. *n.* 1; mood with, 540; in ind. disc., id. *b*; subst. clause with, 572; as acc. of specification, id. *a*; w. vbs. of feeling, id. *b*; *quod* in intermediate clauses, 592. 3 and *n.*
- quod sciam* (proviso), 535. *d*.
- quod si*, use, 324. *d*, 397. *a*.
- quom* (see *cum*), 6. *b*, 539. *n*.
- quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*), w. vbs. of hindering, 558. *b*.
- quoniam*, origin, 539; meaning and use, 540. 1. *n.* 1 and *a*.
- quoque*, use, 322. *a*; position, 599. *b*.
- quot*, indeclinable, 122. *b*; correl., 152.
- Quotation, forms of, w. *apud* and *in*, 428. *d.* *n.* 2; direct and indir., 578.
- quotus quisque*, 313. *b.* *n.* 2.
- qu-* (cu-), 6. *b*.
- quum* (conj.), 6. *b* (see *cum*).
- R* substituted for *s* between two vowels, 15. 4 and *n.*; *r-* in adj. stems, 117. *a*; *rr-* in noun stems, 62. *n.* 1.
- rādix*, decl., 57.
- rāstrum*, plur. in *-a* and *-i*, 108. *b*.
- rationē*, as abl. of manner, 412. *b*.
- ratus*, as pres. part., 491.
- rāvis*, decl., 75. *a.* 2.
- re-* or *red-* (prefix), 267. *b*.
- reāpe*, 146. *n.* 1.
- Receiving, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.
- Reciprocal (*each other*), how expressed, 145. *c*, 301. *f*.
- recorder*, w. acc., 350. *d*; w. gen., id. *n.*; w. *dē*, id. *n*.
- rectum est ut*, 568.
- red-*, see *re-*.
- Reduplication, 177. *c*, 231. *c*; list of vbs., 211. *b*; lost in *fidi* etc., id. *f*. *ftn.* 3; rule for quantity, 605. *a*.
- Reference, object of, 349.
- Reference, pronouns of, 297. *f*; commonly omitted, id. *n*; dative of, 376; gen. of specification, 349. *d*.
- rēfert*, w. gen. or possessive adj., 355 and *a*; other constr., id. *b*.
- Reflexive pronouns, 144; Syntax of, 298. *c.* *n.* 2, 299-301; of 1st and 2d persons, 299. *a*.
- Reflexive verbs (deponent or passive), 190. *e*, 208. *d.* *n.*; use of passive, 156. *a*; w. object acc., 397. *c*.
- Refusing, vbs. of, w. *quōminus*, 558. *b*.
- Regular verbs, 171-189.
- Relationship, nouns of, 244.
- Relative adverbs, used correlatively, 152; demon. for rel., 308. *b*; used to connect independent sentences, id. *f*; referring to loc., id. *g*; = pronoun w. prep., 321. *a*; used in relative clauses of purpose, 531. 2; result, 537. 2.
- Relative clauses, defined, 279. *a*; w. rel. advs., 308. *i*; conditional, 519; final, 531, 533; characteristic, 535; consecutive, 537; causal, 540. *c*; temporal, 541, 542; rel. clauses in ind. disc., 591; position of rel. clause, 599. *e*.
- Relative pronouns, decl., 147; forms, how distinguished from interrogative and

indef., 148. *b* and *n.*; comps. of, 151, 310 and *a*, *b*. *Syntax*, 303-308; rules of agreement, 305, 306; *w.* two antecedents, 305. *a*; rel. in agreement *w.* app. etc., 306; use of the antecedent, 307; special uses of rel., 308; never omitted in Lat., id. *a*; relatives as connectives, id. *f*; pers. of vb. agreeing *w.*, 316. *a*; abl. of rel. after compar., 407. *a*. *n.* <sup>2</sup>; position, 599. *e*.  
 relinquatur ut, 568.  
 reliquum est ut, 568.  
 reliquus, use, 293; reliqui, use, 315.  
 -rem, verb ending, 168. *f*.  
 Remembering, vbs. of, *w.* acc. or gen., 350; *w.* inf., 456.  
 Reminding, vbs. of, constr., 351.  
 reminiscor, *w.* acc. or gen., 350. *c*.  
 Removing, vbs. of, *w.* abl., 401.  
 Repeated action as general condition, 518. *c*.  
 repetundarum, 352. *a*.  
 Representatio, 469. *n.*; in ind. disc., 585. *b* and *n*.  
 requies, decl., 98. *d*, 106. *e*.  
 rēs, decl., 96.  
 Resisting, vbs. of, constr., 367, 558.  
 Resolution of syllables in Prosody, 610.  
 Resolving, vbs. of, constr. (subjv. or inf.), 563. *d*.  
 restat, *w.* ut, 569. 2.  
 restis, decl., 75. *b*.  
 Restriction in subjunctive clause, 535. *d*.  
 Result, clauses of, 279. *e*, 534; sequence of tenses in, 485. *c*; inf. of, 461. *a*. Subjunctive *w.* relatives or ut, 537; negative result *w.* ut nōn etc., id. *a*, 538; result clause equivalent to proviso, 537. *b*; *w.* quin, 558; *w.* quominus, id. *b*.  
 Subst. clauses of result after faciō etc., 568; as subject, 569; in app. *w.* noun, 570; as pred. nom., 571; after quam, id. *a*; tantum abest ut, id. *b*; thought as result, id. *c*.  
 Result, nouns denoting, 239.  
 rēte, decl., 76. *a*. 3.  
 rēx, decl., 57.  
 Rhetorical questions in ind. disc., 586.  
 Rhotacism, 15. 4.  
 Rhythm, development of, 607; nature of, 608.  
 Rhythmical reading, 612. *d*. *n*.  
 ri-, adj. stems in, 115. *a*.  
 ritū, abl. of manner, 412. *b*.  
 rivālis, decl., 76. *b*. 2.  
 Rivers, gender of names of, 31. 1 and *a*.  
 ro- (rā-), primary suffix, 234. II. 9.  
 ro-stems, decl. II, 45. *b*; adj. stems, 111, 112.  
 rogō, constr. of, 396 and *b*. *n.*, *c*. *n.* <sup>2</sup>; *w.* subjv., 563.

Roman method of pronunciation, 8.  
 Root, defined, 25, 228; consciousness of roots lost in Lat., 25. *n.*; of vbs., 117. 1; noun stem treated as root, 176. *d*; roots ending in vowel, id. *e*; root used as stem, id. *d*. *n.* <sup>1</sup> and *e*, 231.  
 rōs, decl., 103. *g*. 2.  
 rr-, as stem ending, 62. *n*. 1.  
 rt-, stems in, decl., 121. *a*. 4.  
 ruber, decl., 112. *a*.  
 rūri, locative, 80, 427. 3.  
 rūs, decl., 103. *g*. 1; constr., 427. 1, 2, 3.  
 S changed to *r*, 15. 4 and *n.*, 62. *n*. <sup>2</sup>; substituted for *d* or *t*, 15. 5; *s*- as stem ending, 79. *e*; of adjs., 119. *n.*; of comps., 120. *b*; of perf. stem, 177. *b*; list of vbs. of conj. III, *w.* perf. in *s*, 211. *a*; *s* suppressed in verb forms, 181. *b*. *n*. <sup>2</sup>; in early Lat., 629. *a*.  
 -s as sign of nom., 45, 46, 56, 95, 117. *a*, 338; -s omitted in inscriptions, 46. *n*. <sup>1</sup>; -s, noun ending, decl. III, gen., 86.  
 sacer, decl., 112. *a*; comp., 131. *a*.  
 saepe, compar., 218. *a*.  
 sāl, decl., 103. *g*. 2.  
 Salamis, decl., 83. *a*.  
 salūber, decl., 115. *a*.  
 salutem, 397. *d*. *n*. <sup>2</sup>.  
 salvē, defect., 206. *g*.  
 sānē quam, 575. *d*.  
 Sanskrit forms, see 25. ftn. 2, 170. *b*. *n*.  
 sapiens, decl., 76. *b*. 2.  
 Sapphic verse, 625. 7, 8.  
 satiās, decl., 98. *d*.  
 satis, compar., 218. *a*; compounds of, *w.* dat., 368. 2; nōn satis, 291. *c*. *n*. <sup>2</sup>; satis est (satis habēō), *w.* perf. infin., 486. *f*.  
 satur, genitive of, 50. *b*; decl., 111. *a*; compar., 131. *b*.  
 Saturnian verse, 628. *d*.  
 Saying, vbs. of, constr., 459; in passive, 582.  
 sc preceding stem-vowel of verb, 176. *b*. 1. *a*.  
 scaber, decl., 112. *a*.  
 Scanning, 612. *d*, 609. *e*. *n*.  
 scilicet, derivation, 216. *n*.  
 scin, contracted form for sciens, 13. *n*.  
 sciō, imperative of, 449. *a*.  
 Scipiadēs, 44. *b*. *n*.  
 sciscō, constr., 563.  
 scitō, scitōte, imv. forms, 182. *a*, 449. *a*.  
 -scō (inceptive), vbs. ending in, 283. 1.  
 sē- or sēd-, inseparable prefix, 267. *b*.  
 sē, reflexive, decl., 144. *b*; use, 299-301; inter sē, 145. *c*.  
 Second Conjugation, prin. parts, 173; pres. stem, how formed, 176. *a*; formation of, 179. *b*; paradigm, 185; vbs. of, 210; from noun stems, 260.

Second Declension, nouns, 45-47; accent of gen. and voc. of nouns in -ius, 12. *Etc.* 2.

Secondary object, 394.

Secondary suffixes, defined, 232.

Secondary tenses, 482. 2; rule for use of, 483; perf. def. more commonly secondary, 485. a; perf. subjv. in clauses of result used after, id. c; hist. pres., id. e; imperf. and pluperf. subjv., id. g, h; present used as if secondary, by *synesis*, id. i.

secundum, prep., 220. a; use, 221. 21.

secundus, derivation, 132. ftn.

secūria, decl., 75. b, 76. a. 1.

secus (adv.), compar., 218. a.

secus, indecl. noun, 103. a; use, 397. a.

secūsus (as pres. part.), 491.

sed-, see sē-

sed compared with verum etc., 324. d.

sēdēs, decl., 78. 1.

sedile, decl., 69.

Selling, vbs. of, 417. c.

sēmentis, decl., 75. b, 76. b. 1.

Semi-deponents, 192.

sēminaci, defect., 122. c.

Semi-vowels, i and v (u), 5.

senāti, senātuus, forms of gen. in decl.

IV, 92. a, e.

senex, decl., 79 and c; adj. masc., 122. d; comparison, 131. c.

Sentence, development, 268; defined, 269; simple or compound, 278; incomplete, 318, 319.

Separation, dat. of, after comps. of ab, dē, ex, and a few of ad, 381; abl. of, 400; gen. for abl., 356. n., 357. b. 3.

Sequence of tenses, 482-485; in ind. disc., 585; in conditional sentences in ind. disc., 589. b.

sequester, decl., 105. b.

sequitur, w. ut, 569. 2.

sequor, conj., 190.

sēra nocte, 293. n.

seriēs, decl., 98. a.

Service, adjs. of, w. dat., 384.

Service, dat. of, 382. n. 1.

Serving, vbs. of, w. dat., 367.

servus (servos), decl., 46.

sēstertium, sēstertius, 632-634; how written in cipher, 635.

seu (sive), 324. f, 525. c.

Sharing, adjs. of, w. gen., 349. a.

Should (auxiliary), how expressed in Lat., 157. b. ftn. 2.

Showing, vbs. of, w. two accs., 398.

si, 511; w. subjv. of wish, 442. a and n. 1;

si and its compounds, use, 512. a. n., 525; si nōn distinguished from nisi, id. 1; mirror si, 572. b. n.; si = whether, 576. a.

Sibilants, 4.

sic, correl., w. ut, 323. g, 537. 2. n. 2; w. si, 512. b.

siem (sim), 170. b. n.

Significant endings, 235-253.

Signs of mood and tense, 169. ftn.

silentiō, without preposition, 412. b.

-silis, adj. ending, 252.

silvester, decl., 115. a.

-sim, old form of perf. subjv., 183. 3.

similis, comparison, 126; w. gen. and dat., 385. c. 2.

similiter, use, 384. n. 2.

Simois, decl., 82.

Simple sentences, 278. 1.

simul, simul atque (ac), 543.

simul . . . simul, 323. f.

simul w. abl., 432. c.

sin, 512. a. n.

Singular, nouns defect. in, 103. f.

Singulāria tantum, 99.

sinister, decl., 112. a.

sinō, constr., 563. c.

-siō, noun ending, 238. b.

-sis, dropped in perf., 181. b. n. 2.

sitis, decl., 87 (cf. 75. a. 2).

sive (seu) . . . sive, use, 324. f, 525. c.

Smell, vbs. of, w. acc., 390. a.

-sō, old form of fut. perfect, 183. 3.

-sō, vbs. in, 263. 2.

socrus, gencl., 90. *Etc.*

sōdēs (si audēs), 13. n., 192. a.

sōl, decl., 103. g. 2.

solē, semi-dep., 192.

solitō, w. compar., 406. a.

solitus, as pres. part., 491.

sōlus, decl., 113; w. relative clause of characteristic, 535. b.

Sonants, 3.

sōns, as participle of esse, 170. b.

-sor, see -tor.

Sōracte, decl., 76. b. n. 2.

sordem, defect., 103. f. 3.

-sōria, noun ending, 254. 4; -sōrium, noun ending, 254. 5; -sōrius, adj. ending, 250. a.

Sōpita, fem. adj. form, 121. e.

Sounds, see Pronunciation.

Source, expressed by abl., 403.

Space, extent of, expressed by acc., 425.

Sparing, vbs. of, with dat., 367.

spē, w. compar., 406. a.

Special verb forms, 181, 182.

species, decl., 98. a.

Specification, gen. of, w. adjs., 349. d; acc. of, 397. b and n.; abl. of, 418.

specus, gencl., 90. *Etc.*

Spelling, variations of, 6.

spēs, 98. a and ftn.

Spirants, 4.

Spondaic verse, 615. b.

- Spondees, 609. *b. 3.*  
 spontis, -e, defect., 103. *c. 2.*  
 Stanza or Strophe, 614.  
 statũ, w. vbs. of placing, 430; w. inf. or subjv., 563. *d.*  
 Statutes, fut. inv. in, 449. *2.*  
 ste for iste etc., 146. *n. 5.*  
 stella, decl., 41.  
 Stem building, 25. *n.*  
 Stems, defined, 24; classified, 229; how formed from root, 26, 230-232; how found in nouns, 37. *a;* *ā*-stems, decl. I, 40; adjs., 110; *o*-stems, decl. II, 45; adjs. 110; in decl. III, mute stems, 56-60; liquid and nasal stems, 61-64; *i*-stems, 65-69; mixed *i*-stems, 70-72; *u*-stems, decl. IV, 88, 89; in *tu*-, 94; of vb., 165. 1; present, perfect, and supine, 164. Pres. stem, how formed, 175, 176; perf. stem, 177; supine stem, 178. Tenses arranged by stems, synopsis, 180.  
 stũ, w. abl., 431.  
 strigilis, decl., 76. *b. 1.*  
 strix, decl., 71. *6.*  
 Structure of Latin sentences, 600, 601.  
 struẽs, decl., 78. *2.*  
 studeo, w. dat., 368. *3.*  
 suadeo, w. dat., 367.  
 sub-, in comp., w. adjs., 267. *d. 1.*, 291. *c. n. 2;* w. vbs., 267. *a* and *d. n.*  
 sub, use, 220. *c.*, 221. 22; in comps., w. dat., 370; of time, 424. *e.*  
 subeo, w. acc., 370. *b.*  
 Subject, 268; defined, 270; how expressed, 271 and *a;* modified, 276; vb. agrees w., 316; two or more subjs., 317; subj. omitted, 318; accusative, 459; in ind. disc., 580; position of subject, 596.  
 Subject clauses (inf.), 452. 1; (subjv.), 566., 567, 569, 571. *b.*  
 Subjective gen., defined, 343. *n. 1;* use, 343.  
 Subjunctive mood, 154. *b;* how used and translated, 157. *b. ftn. 2;* tenses how used, 162; vowel of pres. subjv., 179. *a. 1, b. 1, c. 1, d.* Classification of uses, 438; hortatory subjv., 439, 440; optative subjv., 441, 442; deliberative, 443, 444; potential subjv., 445, 446; subjv. of modesty, 447. 1; tenses of subjv., 480-485; dependent clauses, 481; subjv. in ind. disc., 580; in informal ind. disc., 592; of integral part, 593.  
 suboles, decl., 78. *2.*  
 Subordinate clauses, defined, 278. *b;* use, 519-593; in ind. disc., 579-593.  
 Subordinate conj., 223. *b.*, 224. II. *a-f.*  
 Substance, gen. of, 344; abl. of, 403.  
 Substantive clauses, 560-572; nature and classes of, 560 (cf. 561, 562); clauses of purpose, 563-566; of result, 567-571; indic. w. quod, 572; indirect questions, 573-576; adj. w. subst. clauses, 289. *d;* inf. clauses, 452.  
 Substantive use of adjs., 288; of possessive prons., 302. *d.*  
 Substantive verb (esse), 272, 284. *b.*  
 subter, use, 220. *c.*, 221. 23.  
 suetus, w. inf., 460. *b.*  
 Suffixes, 232; primary, list of, 233, 234; significant, 235-255.  
 sui, decl., 144. *b;* use, 299, 300; w. gen. of gerund, 504. *c.*  
 sum, conj., 170; as copula, 284; as substantive verb, id. *b;* omitted, 319. *b;* w. dat. of possession, 373; position, 598. *c, f.*  
 summus, form, 130. *a. ftn. 2;* (*top of*), 293.  
 sunt qui, 535. *a.*  
 suovetaurilia, 265. 1.  
 supellẽx, decl., 79. *c.*  
 super, use, 220. *c.*, 221. 24; in comps., 267. *a;* in comps., w. dat., 370.  
 supra, defect., 111. *b* (cf. 130. *a. n. 2;* comp., 130. *b;* superi, id.  
 superior, compar., 130. *b.*  
 Superlative, suffix, 124. *ftn. 1;* in -rimus, 125; of adjs. in -lis, 126; w. maxime, 128; takes gen. of partitive, 286. *b. n.;* of eminence, 291. *b;* w. quam, vel, or unus, id. *c;* denoting order, succession, 293; w. quisque, 313. *b.*  
 superstes, decl., 121. *a. 4.*  
 Supine, noun of decl. IV, 94. *b.*, 159. *b;* stem, 164. 3; formation, 178, 179. *a-d* (cf. 164. *ftn. 1;* irregular forms of, conj. I, 209; conj. II, 210; allied with forms in -tor, 236. *a. n. 1;* Supine in -um, use of, 509; in -ũ, 510; as abl. of specification, 510. *n. 1.*  
 supplex, decl., 121. *b. 1.*  
 supplico, w. dat., 368. *3.*  
 suprà, use, 220. *a.*, 221. 25.  
 -sũra, noun ending, 238. *b.*  
 Surds, 3.  
 -suriũ, vbs. in, 263. 4.  
 -sus, phonetic form of -tus, 94; noun ending, 238. *b.*  
 sũs, decl., 79 and *a.*  
 suus, use, 299.  
 Swearing, vbs. of, constr., 388. *d.*, 580. *c.*  
 Syllables, rules for division of, 7; open etc., id. *n. 2;* long and short, 603. *e, f* and notes.  
 Synæresis, 603. *c. n., f. n. 4.*, 642.  
 Synalopha, 612. *e. n., 642.*  
 Synchysis, 598. *h.*, 641.  
 Syncope, 640.  
 Synecdoche, defined, 641.  
 Synecdochical acc., 397. *b.*

Synesis, 280. *a*; in gen. and number, 286. *b*; in sequence of tenses, 485. *i*.

Synizesis, 603. *c. n.*, 642.

Synopsis of tenses (*amō*), 180; of impersonal vbs., 207.

Syntactic compounds, 267.

SYNTAX, 268-601; historical development of, 268. Important rules of Syntax, 594.

*T* changed to *s*, 15. 5, 178; *t* preceding stem-vowel of vb., 176. *b. i*; *t* (*s*)-, supine stem-ending, 178, 179. *a. 2, b. 2, c. 2, d.*

*taedet*, impersonal, 208. *b*; constr., 354. *b, c* and *n*.

*taeter*, decl., 112. *a*.

Taking away, vbs., of, 381.

Talent, value of, 637.

*tālis*, 151. *i, 152.*

*tālis ut* etc., 537. *n. 2.*

*tam*, correl. w. *quam*, 323. *g*; correl. w. *ut*, 537. *n. 2.*

*tamen*, as correl., 527. *c*; position of, 324. *j.*

*tametsi*, concessive use, 527. *c* and *n. 1.*

*tamquam*, in conditional clauses, 524; w. primary tenses, *id. n. 1.*

*tandem*, in questions, 333. *a* and *n*.

*tanti*, gen. of value, 417 and *c*; *tanti est ut*, 568.

*tantō* following *quantō*, 414. *a*.

*tantum*, w. subj. of proviso, 528.

*tantum abest ut*, 571. *b*.

*tantus*, 151. *i, 152*; *tantus ut*, 537. *n. 2.*

*-tās, -tia*, noun endings, 241.

*Taste*, vbs. of, w. acc., 390. *a*.

*-te* (enclitic), 143. *d* and *n*.

Teaching, vbs. of (two accs.), 396.

*tegō*, conj., 186.

Telling, vbs. of, constr., 459.

Temporal clauses, defined, 279. *b, 541-556*; as protasis, 542; w. *postquam* etc., 543; w. *cum*, 544-549; w. *antequam* and *priusquam*, 550, 551; w. *dum, donec, quoad*, 552-556; replaced by *abl. abs.*, 420.

Temporal numerals, 139. *b*; conjunctions, 224. *II. d.*

*tempus est abire*, 504. *n. 2.*

Tendency, adjs. denoting, 251.

*tener*, decl., 111. *a*.

TENSES, 154. *c*; of passive voice, 156; of participles, 158; classification, meaning, and use, 160-162; of the ind., 160, 161; of the subjv., 162; endings, 166; of completed action, formation of, 179. *f, g*; synopsis of, 180.

TENSES, *Syntax*, 464-486; classified, 464; of ind., 465-479; Present tense, 465-469; Imperfect, 470, 471; Future, 472; of Completed action, 473-478; Epistolary

tenses, 479; of subjv., 480, 481; sequence of, 482-485; tenses of the inf., 486; tense emphatic, 598. *d. (3)*; tenses of inf. in ind. disc., 584; tenses of subjv. in ind. disc., 585; affected by *representatio*, *id. b* and *n*; in condition in ind. disc., 589. Notes on origin of syntax, 436, 464.

tensus, constr., w. gen., 359. *b*; w. abl., 221. 26; position, 435, 599. *d*.

ter- (*tor-, tār-, tōr-, tr-*), primary suffix, 234. *II. 15.*

-ter, adv. ending, 214. *b, c*.

Terence, *absque mē* etc., 517. *f*; prosodial forms, 628. *b, 629.*

teres, decl., 121. *a, 3*; compar., 131. *b*.

-terior, ending, p. 56. *ftn. 2.*

Terminations of inflection, meaning of, 21. *b*; terminations of nouns, 39; of verbs, 166. (See Endings.)

-ternus, as adj. ending, 250.

*terrā marique*, 427. *a*.

terrester, decl., 115. *a*.

-ternus, ending, p. 56. *ftn. 2.*

Tetrameter, iambic, 619. *a*.

Than, how expressed, 406.

That of, not expressed in Lat., 297. *f. n*.

The, as correlative, 414. *a* and *ftn.*

Thematic verbs, 174. *1.*

Thematic vowel  $\frac{1}{2}$ , 174. 2. 1.

Thesis and Arsia, 611.

Thinking, vbs. of, constr. w. acc. and inf., 459.

Third conj., of vbs., prin. parts, 173; pres. stem, how formed, 176; formation, *id.*, 179. *c*; paradigm, 186; in -iō, paradigm, 188; list of vbs., w. principal parts, 211; derivation of vbs. in -uō, 261.

Third declension, of nouns, 53-87; mute stems, 56-60; liquid stems, 61-64; i-stems, 65-78; pure i-stems, 66-69; mixed i-stems, 70-78; peculiar forms, 79; loc., 80; Greek nouns, 81-83; rules of gen., 84-87.

Though, see *Although*.

Thought, considered as result, 571. *c*.

Threatening, vbs. of, 367, 580. *c*.

ti-, primary suffix, 234. *II. 2.*

-tia (-tīa), noun ending, 241.

-ticus, adj. ending, 247.

*tigris*, decl., 82.

-tilis, adj. ending, 252.

-tim, advs. in, 75. *a. 3, 215. 2.*

Time (see Temporal Clauses), 465 *ff.*, 481, 545, 546.

Time, *abl. abs.* to denote, 419, 420. 1; time when, 423; duration of time, 424. *b*; time during or within which, w. ordinal, *id. c*; distance of time, *id. f*; corresponding to Eng. *place*, *id. d*.

Time, advs. of, 217. *b*.

Time, mode of reckoning, 630.

timeō, w. dat. or acc., 367. c; w. subjv., 564.  
 -timus, adj. ending, 130. a. ftn. 2, 250.  
 -tiō, noun ending, 233. 2, 238. b.  
 -tiō (-siō), -tūra, -tūs (-tūtis), noun endings, 238. b.  
 -tium, noun ending, 241. b. n.  
 -tivus, verbal adj. ending, 251.  
 to- (tā-), primary suffix, 234. II. 1.  
 -tō, -itō, intensive or iterative vbs. in, 263. 2.  
 Too . . . to, 535. c. n.  
 -tor (-sor), -trix, nouns of agency in, 236. a; used as adjs., 321. c.  
 -tōria, noun ending, 254. 4.  
 -tōrium, noun ending, 233. 2, 254. 5.  
 -tōrius, adj. ending, 233. 2; as noun ending, 250. a.  
 tot, indeclinable, 122. b; correl., 152.  
 totidem, indeclinable, 122. b.  
 tōtus, decl., 113; nouns w., in abl. without prep. (*place where*), 429. 2.  
 Towns, names of, gend., 32 and a, 48. *Exc.*; names of towns in -e, decl., 76. n. 2; locative of, 427. 3; as place from which, id. 1; as place to which, id. 2.  
 tr-, stems in (*pater etc.*), 61. 4.  
 trāciō, constr., 395. n. 1, 2; trālectus lra, id. n. 2.  
 trāns, 220. a; use, 221. 27; comps. of, w. acc., 388. b; w. two accs., 395.  
 Transitive verbs, 273. 1, 274; absolute use, 273. n. 2; how translated, 274. b; w. dat., 362.  
 Transposition of vowels, 177. a. n.  
 Trees, names of, gend., 32.  
 trēs, decl., 134. b.  
 tri-, stem-ending of nouns, 66; of adjs., 115. a.  
 Tribe, abl. of, 403. a. n. 2.  
 Tribach, 609. a. 3.  
 tribūlis, decl., 76. a. 2.  
 tribus, gend., 90. *Exc.*; decl., 92. c.  
 tridēns, decl., 76. b. 2.  
 Trimeter, Iambic, 618.  
 Triptotes, 103. d.  
 trirēmīs, decl., 76. b. 2.  
 -tris, adj. ending, 250.  
 triumphō, w. abl., 404. a.  
 -trix, see -tor.  
 tro-, primary suffix, 234. 16.  
 -trō, advs. in, 215. 4.  
 Trochaic verse, 613, 620.  
 Trochee, 609. a. 1; irrational, id. e, 623 and n.  
 -trum, noun ending, 240.  
 Trusting, vbs. of, constr., 367.  
 tu-, primary suffix, 234. II. 3.  
 -tū, -sū, supine endings, 159. b.  
 tū, decl., 143 (see tūte, tūtimet).  
 -tūdō, -tūs, noun endings, 241.

tull (tettull), 200; derivation, id. ftn. 2; quantity, 605. *Exc.*  
 -tum, -sum, supine endings, 159. b.  
 tum, tunc, meaning, 217. b; correl. w. cum, 323. g.  
 tum . . . tum, 323. f.  
 -tūra, -tūs, noun ending, 238. b.  
 -turō, desiderative vbs. in, 263. 4.  
 -turnus, adj. ending, 250.  
 -turris, decl., 67 (cf. 75. b).  
 -tus, adj. ending, 246; noun ending, 94, 241.  
 -tus, adv. ending, 215. 6.  
 tussis, decl., 75. a. 2.  
 tūte, 143. d; tūtimet, id.  
 Two accusatives, 391.  
 Two datives, 382. 1.  
 U (v), as consonant, 5; after g, q, s, id. n. 2; not to follow u or v, 6. a, b; u for e in conj. III, 179. c. 1.  
 u-, primary suffix, 234. I. 3.  
 u-stems, of nouns, decl. III, 79 and a; decl. IV, 88; of vbs., 174, 176. d, 259. 3.  
 ūber, decl., 119.  
 ubi, derivation, 215. 5; in temporal clauses, 542, 543.  
 -abus, in dat. and abl. plur., decl. IV, 92. c.  
 -uis (-uos), in gen., decl. IV, 92. e.  
 -ūlis, adj. ending, 248.  
 ūllus, decl., 113; use, 311, 312.  
 ulterior, compar., 130. a.  
 ultrā, 220. a; use, 221. 28; following noun, 435.  
 -ulus, diminutive ending, 243; verbal adj. ending, 251.  
 -um for -ārum, 43. d; for -ōrum, 49. d;  
 -um in gen. plur. of personal prons., 295. b; -um for -ium, decl. III, 78; in gen. plur. of adjs., 121. b; for -uum, decl. IV, 92. b.  
 Undertaking, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 500. 4.  
 ūnt-, stem-ending, 83. e.  
 ūnus, decl., 113; meaning, 134. a; w. superl., 291. c.  
 ūnus qui, w. subjv., 535. b.  
 ūnus quisque, decl., 151. g; use, 313.  
 uo-, suffix, see vo-.  
 -uō, vbs. in, 261.  
 -uos, see -uis.  
 -ur, nouns in, 87.  
 urbs, decl., 72; use in relations of place, 428. b.  
 Urging, vbs. of, with ut, 563.  
 -uriō, desiderative vbs. in, 263. 4.  
 -urnus, adj. ending, 250.  
 -ūrus, fut. part. in, 158. b, 498; w. fui, 498. b, 517. d; in ind. questions, 575. a;  
 -ūrus fuisse, in ind. disc., 589. b. 3.  
 -us, nom. ending, in decl. II, 46; -us for -er in Greek nouns, decl. II, 52. b; -us, nom.

- ending in decl. III, 63. *Exc.* 2; *gend.*, 87; *decl.* IV, 88; *gend.*, 90; *neut.* ending, 238. *a.*
- ās, Greek nom. ending, 83. *e.*
- Use, *adjs.* of, *constr.*, 385. *a.*
- ūaque, *w.* acc., 432. *b.*
- ūsus (*need*), *w.* abl., 411.
- ut (*uti*), correlative *w.* ita, sic, 523. *g*; to denote concession, 440, 527. *a*; *ut* (*as*) *w.* ind. equiv. to concession, 527. *f*; *w.* optative subjv., 442. *a*; used elliptically in exclamations, 462. *a*; in clauses of purpose, 531; *ut* nē, id., 563. *e. n.* 2; *ut* nōn, 531. 1. *n.* 2; of result, 537; *ut* nōn etc., 538; *ut* temporal, 542, 543; *vbs.* foll. by clauses *w.* *ut*, 563, 568; omission after certain *vbs.*, 565 and notes, 569. 2. *n.* 2; *w.* *vbs.* of fearing, 564 and *n.*
- ut*, *utpote*, quippe, *w.* relative clause, 535. *e. n.* 1; *w.* *com.*, 549. *n.* 1.
- ut* primum, 543.
- ut* semel, 543.
- ut* si, *constr.*, 524.
- ūter, decl., 66.
- uterque, form and decl., 151. *g*; use, 313; *constr.* in agreement and as partitive, 346. *d.*
- ūtīlis, *w.* dat. of gerund etc., 505. *a.*
- utinam, *w.* subjv. of wish, 442.
- ūtor etc., *w.* abl., 410; *w.* acc., id. *a. n.* 1; gerundive use of, 500. 3, 503. *n.* 2.
- utpote quī, 535. *e. n.* 1.
- utrum . . . an, 335 and *d.*
- ūtus, *adj.* ending, 246.
- uus, verbal *adj.* ending, 251.
- ▼ (*u*), 1. *b.* 5 and *n.* 1; suffix of perf., 177. *a*, 179. *a.* 2, *b.* 2, *d*; suppressed in perf., 181; list of *vbs.* in conj. III *w.* *v* in perf., 211. *c*; *v* often om. in perf. of *eō* and its comps., 203. *b.*
- vafer, decl., 112. *a*; compar., 131. *a.*
- valdē, use, 291. *c. n.* 1; valdē quam, 575. *d.*
- Value, gen. of indefinite, 417.
- Value, measures of, 632-638.
- vannus, *gend.*, 48. *Exc.*
- vāpulū, neutral passive, 192. *b.*
- Variable nouns, 104-106 (*cf.* 98. *c*, *d*); *adjs.*, 122. *a.*
- Variations, see Phonetic Variations.
- Variations of spelling, 6.
- vās, decl., 103. *g.* 2.
- vās, decl., 79. *e*, 105. *b.*
- vātēs, decl., 78. 1.
- ve, vel, use, 324. *e*, 335. *d. n.*
- vel (see -ve), *w.* superl., 291. *c.*
- Velars, p. 2. *ftn.* 3.
- velim, vellem, subjv. of modesty, 447. 1. *n.*
- velim, vellem, *w.* subjv. (=opt.), 442. *b.* (=imv.), 449. *c.*
- velut, velut si, 524.
- vēneō (vēnum eō), 192. *b.*, 428. *i.*
- vēnerat = aderat, 476.
- Verba sentiendi et declarandi, 397. *e*; 459, 579; passive use of, 582; in poets and later writers, id. *n.*
- Verbal *adjs.*, 251-253; in -āx, *w.* gen., 349. *c.*
- Verbal nouns *w.* dat., 367. *d.*
- Verbal nouns and *adjs.* *w.* reflexive, 301. *d.*
- Verbal roots, 228. 1.
- VERBS, defined, 20. *d*; inflection, 153, 154; noun and *adj.* forms of, 155; signification of forms, 156-162; personal endings, 163; the three stems, 164; forms of the vb., 164-166 (notes on origin and hist. of vb. forms, 164. *ftn.*, 168, 169); table of endings, 166; influence of imitation, 169. *ftn.*; regular *vbs.*, 171-189; the four conjugations, 171-173; prin. parts of, 172; mixed *vbs.*, 173. *a*; deponents, 190, 191; semi-deponents, 192; periphrastic forms, 193-196; irregular *vbs.*, 197-204; defective, 205, 206; impersonal, 207, 208. Classified lists of *vbs.*, 209-212. Derivation of *vbs.*, 256-263; comp. *vbs.*, 267; vowels in comp. *vbs.*, id. *a. n.* 2. Index of *vbs.*, pp. 437 ff.
- VERBS, *Syntax*. Subject implied in ending, 271. *a*; rules of agreement, 316-319; vb. omitted, 319; rules of syntax, 437-593. Cases *w.* *vbs.*, see under Accusative etc. Position of vb., 596, 598. *d.*, *j.* (See under the names of the Moods etc.)
- vereor, *w.* gen., 357. *b.* 1; *w.* subjv., 564.
- veritus, as pres. part., 491.
- vērō, 324. *d.*, *j*; in answers, 336. *a.* 1; position of, 599. *b.*
- Verse, 612.
- Versification, 612-629; forms of verse, 613.
- versus, position of, 599. *d.*
- vertō, *constr.*, 417. *b.*
- verū, *gend.*, 91.
- vērūm or vēro, use, 324. *d.*, *j.*
- vescor, *w.* abl., 410; *w.* acc., id. *a. n.* 1; gerundive, 500. 3, 503. *n.* 2.
- vesper, decl., 50. *b.*
- vesperī (loc.), 50. *b.*, 427. *a.*
- vester, decl., 112. *a.*, 145.
- vestrī as obj. gen., 143. *c.*, 295. *b.*
- vestrum as part. gen., 143. *b.*, 295. *b.* (*cf.* *n.* 2).
- vetō, *w.* acc. and inf., 563. *a.*
- vetus, decl., 119, 121. *d*; compar., 125.
- viā, abl. of manner, 412. *b.*
- vicem, adverbial use of, 397. *a.*
- vicinus, *w.* gen., 385. *c.*
- viciis, decl., 103. *a.* 1.

**vidēticet**, derivation, 216.

**videō** ut, 563.

**videor**, w. dat., 375. *b*.

**vin'** (*vine*), 13. *n*.

**vir**, decl., 47, 50. *b*.

**virgō**, decl., 62.

**virus**, gender of, 48. *a*.

**vis**, stem, 71. 6; decl., 79.

**viscera**, 101. *n*. 1.

**visō**, 263. 4. *n*.

**vo-** (*vā*-), primary suffix, 234. II. 8.

**vōcālis**, decl., 76. *b*. 2.

**VOCATIVE**, defined, 35. *f*; form, 38. *a*; in *-i* of nouns in *-ius*, decl. II, 49. *c*; of Greek nouns, id. *c*. *n*.; of adjs. in *-ius*, 110. *a*. *Syntax*, 340.

**Voices**, 154. *a*, 156; middle voice, id. *a*. *n*, 163. *ftn*. 2, 190. *e*.

**volō** and comps., conj., 199; part. of, w. dat. of the person judging, 378. *n*.; w. inf., 456 and *n*.; w. perf. act. inf. in prohibitions, 486. *c*; w. perf. part., 486. *d* and *n*, 497. *c*. *n*.; w. subjv. or inf., 563. *b*.

**volucer**, decl., 115. *a*.

**volucris**, decl., 78.

**-volus**, adj. in, comp., 127.

**vōs**, 143 and *a*.

**voster** etc., see *vester*.

**vōti damnātus**, 352. *a*.

**Vowel changes**, 15. 1-3; vowel variations, 17.

**Vowel roots of verbs**, 179. *a-c*.

**Vowel stems of verbs**, 259-262.

**Vowel suffixes (primary)**, 234. I.

**Vowels**, 1; pronunciation, 8; long and short, 10; contraction, 15. 3; quantity of final vowels in case-endings, 38. *g*; vowel modified in noun stems, decl. III, 58. *a*; lengthened in root, 177. *d*,

231. *b*; list of vbs. w. vowel lengthening in perf., conj. III, 211. *e*.  
**vulgus** (*volgus*), *gend.*, 48. *a*.  
**-vus**, verbal adj. ending, 251.

**W**, not in Latin alphabet, 1; sound of, 1. *b*. *n*.

**Want**, words of, w. abl., 401; w. *gen.*, 356.

**Way by which** (abl.), 429. *a*.

**Weight**, measures of, 637.

**Whole**, *gen.* of, 346; numbers expressing the whole, id. *e*.

**Wills**, fut. *imv.* in, 449. 2.

**Winds**, gender of names of, 31.

**Wish**, expressed by subjv., 441; as a condition, 521. *b*; wish in informal ind. disc., 592. 1.

**Wishing**, vbs. of, w. inf., 486. *d* (cf. 457); w. subst. clause of purpose, 563. *b*; w. acc. and inf., id.

**Without**, w. verbal noun, 496. *n*. 3.

**Women**, names of, 108. *b* and *ftn*.

**Words and Forms**, 1-267.

**Words**, formation of, 227-267; arrangement of, 595-601.

**Would** (*Eng. auxiliary*), how expressed in Lat., 157. *b*.

**X**, nom. ending, 56; *gend.*, 86; *x* from *s*, in vbs., 211. *a*.

**Y**, of Greek origin, 1. *n*. 1.

**Year**, 630; months of, 630, 631; date, 424. *g*.

**-y%**, suffix, 174.

**Yes**, in Latin, 336.

**yo-** (*yā*-), primary suffix, 234. II. 11.

**-ys**, nom. ending, 82; quantity, 604. *i*.

**Z**, of Greek origin, 1. *a*. *n*.



# LATIN AUTHORS AND THEIR WORKS CITED IN THIS BOOK

NOTE.—In the citations the names Cæsar, Cicero, Sallust (with *Jugurtha*), and Virgil are not generally given. Thus, "B. G." refers to Cæsar's *Bellum Gallicum*; "Fam." to Cicero's letters *ad Familiares*; "Ing." to Sallust's *Jugurtha*; "Aen." to Virgil's *Æneid*, etc.

- Ap., Apuleius (A.D. 125-7):  
Met., *Metamorphoses*.  
—, B. Afr., *Bellum Africanum*.  
Cæsar (B.C. 100-44):  
B. C., *Bellum Civile*.  
B. G., *Bellum Gallicum*.  
Cato (B.C. 234-149):  
de M., *de Moribus*.  
R. R., *de Re Rustica*.  
Catull., Catullus (B.C. 87-54).  
Cic., Cicero (B.C. 106-43):  
Acad., *Academica*.  
Ad Her., [*ad Herennium*].  
Arch., *pro Archia*.  
Att., *ad Atticum*.  
Balb., *pro Balbo*.  
Brut., *Brutus de Claris Oratoribus*.  
Caec., *pro Caecina*.  
Caecil., *Divinatio in Caecilium*.  
Cael., *pro M. Caelio*.  
Cat., *in Catilinam*.  
Cat. M., *Cato Maior (de Senectute)*.  
Clu., *pro Cluentio*.  
Delot., *pro Delotaro*.  
De Or., *de Oratore*.  
Div., *de Divinatione*.  
Dom., *pro Domo Sua*.  
Fam., *ad Familiares*.  
Fat., *de Fato*.  
Fin., *de Finibus*.  
Flacc., *pro Flacco*.  
Font., *pro M. Fontejo*.  
Har. Resp., *de Haruspici-um Responsis*.  
Inv., *de Inventionis Rhetorica*.  
Cic. Lael., *Laelius (de Amicitia)*.  
Leg. Agr., *de Lege Agraria*.  
Legg., *de Legibus*.  
Lig., *pro Ligario*.  
Manil., *pro Lege Manilia*.  
Marc., *pro Marcello*.  
Mil., *pro Milone*.  
Mur., *pro Murena*.  
N. D., *de Natura Deorum*.  
Off., *de Officiis*.  
Or., *Orator*.  
Par., *Paradoxa*.  
Part. Or., *de Partitione Oratoria*.  
Phil., *Philippicae*.  
Planc., *pro Plancio*.  
Pison., *in Pisonem*.  
Prov. Cons., *de Provinciis Consularibus*.  
Q. Fr., *ad Q. Fratrem*.  
Quinct., *pro Quinctio*.  
Rabir., *pro Rabirio*.  
Rab. Post., *pro Rabirio Postumo*.  
Rep., *de Re Publica*.  
Rosc. Am., *pro Roscio Amerino*.  
Rosc. Com., *pro Roscio Comoedo*.  
Scaur., *pro Scauro*.  
Sest., *pro Sestio*.  
Sull., *pro Sulla*.  
Tim., *Tymaeus (de Universo)*.  
Top., *Topica*.  
Tull., *pro Tullio*.  
Tusc., *Tusculanae Disputationes*.  
Vat., *in Vatinius*.  
Cic. Verr., *in Verrem*.  
Claud., Claudianus (abt. A.D. 400):  
iv C. H., *de Quarto Consulatu Honorii*.  
Enn., Ennius (B.C. 239-169).  
Gell., A. Gellius (d. A.D. 175).  
Hirtius (d. B.C. 43):  
? B. Al., *Bellum Alexandrinum*.  
Hor., Horace (B.C. 65-8):  
A. P., *de Arte Poetica*.  
C. S., *Carmen Saeculare*.  
Ep., *Epistulae*.  
Epod., *Epodes*.  
Od., *Odes*.  
S. Satires.  
Iust., Justinus (abt. A.D. 150).  
Iuv., Juvenal (abt. A.D. 60-140).  
Liv., Livy (B.C. 59-A.D. 17).  
Lucr., Lucretius (B.C. 96-55).  
Mart., Martial (A.D. 43-? 104):  
Ep., *Epigrams*.  
Nep., Nepos (B.C. 99-24):  
Ages., *Agessilaus*.  
Alc., *Alcibiades*.  
Att., *Atticus*.  
Dat., *Datames*.  
Dion., *Dion*.  
Epam., *Epaminondas*.  
Eum., *Eumenes*.  
Hann., *Hannibal*.  
Milt., *Miltiades*.  
Paus., *Pausanias*.  
Them., *Themistocles*.  
Timoth., *Timotheus*.

- Ov., Ovid (B.C. 43-A.D. 17):  
 A. A., *Ars Amatoria*.  
 F., *Fasti*.  
 H., *Heroides*.  
 M., *Metamorphoses*.  
 Pont., *Epistulae ex Ponto*.  
 Trist., *Tristia*.
- Pers., Persius (A.D. 34-62):  
 Sat., *Satires*.
- Phaed., Phaedrus (abt. A.D. 40).
- Pl., Plautus (B.C. 254-184):  
 Am., *Amphitruo*.  
 Asin., *Asinaria*.  
 Aul., *Aulularia*.  
 Bac., *Bacchides*.  
 Capt., *Captivi*.  
 Cist., *Cistellaria*.  
 Curc., *Curculio*.  
 Epid., *Epidicus*.  
 Men., *Menaechni*.  
 Merc., *Mercator*.  
 Mil., *Miles Gloriosus*.  
 Most., *Mostellaria*.  
 Pers., *Persa*.  
 Poen., *Poenulus*.  
 Ps., *Pseudolus*.  
 Rud., *Rudens*.  
 Stich., *Stichus*.  
 Trin., *Trinummus*.  
 Truc., *Truculentus*.
- Plin., Pliny, senior (A.D. 23-79):  
 H. N., *Historia Naturalis*.
- Plin., Pliny, junior (A.D. 62-113):  
 Ep., *Epistles*.
- Prop., Propertius (B.C. 49-15).
- Pub. Syr., Publilius Syrus (abt. B.C. 44).
- Q. C., Q. Curtius (abt. A.D. 50).
- Quint., Quintilian (abt. A.D. 35-95).
- Sall., Sallust (B.C. 86-34):  
 Cat., *Catilina*.  
 Ep. Mith., *Epistula Mithridatis*.  
 Ing., *Iugurtha*.
- , S. C. de Bac., *Senatus Consultum de Bacchanalibus* (B.C. 186).
- Sen., Seneca (B.C. 4-A.D. 65):  
 Dial., *Dialogues*.  
 Ep., *Epistles*.  
 Herc. Fur., *Hercules Furens*.  
 Herc. Oet., *Hercules Oetaeus*.  
 Med., *Medea*.
- Sen. Q. N., *Quaestiones Naturales*.
- Sil., Silius Italicus (abt. A.D. 25-101).
- Suet., Suetonius (abt. A.D. 75-160):  
 Aug., *Augustus*.  
 Dom., *Domitianus*.  
 Galb., *Galba*.
- Tac., Tacitus (abt. A.D. 55-120):  
 Agr., *Agricola*.  
 Ann., *Annales*.  
 H., *Historiae*.
- Ter., Terence (d. B.C. 159):  
 Ad., *Adelphi*.  
 And., *Andria*.  
 Eun., *Eunuchus*.  
 Haut., *Hautontimorumenos*.  
 Hec., *Hecyra*.  
 Ph., *Phormio*.
- Val., Valerius Maximus (abt. A.D. 26).
- Varr., Varro (B.C. 116-27):  
 R. R., *de Re Rustica*.
- Vell., Velleius Paterculus (abt. B.C. 19-A.D. 31).
- Verg., Virgil (B.C. 70-19):  
 Aen., *Aeneid*.  
 Ecl., *Ecdogues*.  
 Georg., *Georgics*.



# ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMAR

## PARALLEL REFERENCES

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
1	1	22	25
1. <i>a</i>	2	23	26
2-4	3-5	24	28
5 (p. 4)	10	25	20
6	1. <i>a</i> and <i>n</i> .	25. <i>e</i>	20. <i>b</i> . <i>n</i> . 1
7	6. <i>a</i> , <i>b</i>	25. <i>f-i</i>	20. <i>e-h</i>
8-11	14-19	26	22
10. <i>b</i>	15. 2	27	23
11. <i>a</i> . 1	15. 4	28	29
11. <i>a</i> . 2	15. 5	28. <i>a</i>	30
11. <i>c</i>	15. 11	28. <i>b</i> . <i>n</i> .	30. <i>a</i> and <i>n</i> . 3
11. <i>e</i>	15. 6	29. 1	31
11. <i>e</i> . 3 and <i>n</i> .	16	29. 2	32
12	6	29. <i>a</i>	31. <i>a</i> , <i>b</i> , <i>n</i> .
12. <i>a-c</i>	6. <i>n</i> . 1-3	29. <i>b</i>	32. <i>a</i> , <i>b</i>
13	13	29. <i>c</i>	33
13. <i>b</i> , <i>c</i>	13. <i>n</i> .	30	34
14	7	30. <i>a</i>	—
14. <i>b</i>	7. <i>n</i> . 1	30. <i>b</i>	34. <i>n</i> .
14. <i>c</i>	7. <i>b</i>	31	35
14. <i>d</i>	—	31. <i>h</i> . <i>n</i> .	27. <i>a</i> .
14. <i>e</i>	7. <i>n</i> . 2	32. <i>ftn</i> . 1	36
15	18	32	37
15 (p. 10)	19 and <i>n</i> . 1	33	38
16	8	34	39
16. <i>n</i> . 4	11. <i>b</i> . <i>n</i> .	35	40-42
17. <i>a-c</i>	—	36	43
17. <i>n</i> .	8. <i>n</i> .	36. <i>f</i>	43. <i>n</i> . 1
18	9-11	37	44
18. <i>a-c</i>	10. <i>a-c</i>	37. <i>a</i> , <i>b</i>	44. <i>b</i> , <i>a</i>
18. <i>d</i>	11. <i>b</i>	38	45-47
18. <i>e</i>	11. <i>c</i>	39	48
18. <i>f</i>	10. <i>e</i>	39. <i>a</i>	48. <i>Exc.</i>
19. <i>a</i> , <i>b</i>	12	39. <i>b</i>	48. <i>a</i> .
19. <i>c</i>	12. <i>a</i>	40	49
19. <i>d</i> . 1-3	12. <i>a</i> . <i>Exc.</i>	40. <i>d</i>	49. <i>c</i> and <i>n</i> .
20	21	40. <i>e-g</i>	49. <i>d</i> , <i>g</i> , <i>e</i>
21	24	41	50

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
41. <i>d, e</i>	50. <i>c</i>	70. <i>b</i>	—
42	51	70. <i>c</i>	92. <i>b</i>
43	52	70. <i>d</i>	92. <i>c</i>
3d decl.	53-55	70. <i>e</i>	92. <i>d</i>
44-50	56-64	70. <i>f</i>	93
44	56, 58	70. <i>g</i>	93. n. 1
45	56. <i>a</i>	70. <i>h</i>	92. <i>f</i>
46	57, 59	71	94
47	57. <i>a</i>	71. <i>a</i>	94. <i>b</i>
47. <i>a</i>	70	71. <i>b</i>	94. <i>c</i>
47. <i>b</i>	60. <i>a</i>	72	95, 96
47. <i>c</i>	62. n. 3	73	97 and <i>a</i>
48	61, 62. n. 1, 2, 63	74. <i>a</i>	98. n.
48. <i>a</i>	61. 1	74. <i>b</i>	98. <i>c</i>
48. <i>b</i>	61. 2, 3, 63. 1	74. <i>c</i>	98. <i>b</i>
48. <i>c</i>	61. 4	74. <i>d</i>	98. <i>a</i>
48. <i>d</i>	62. n. 2, 63. 2	74. ftn.	98. <i>d</i>
48. <i>e</i>	62. n. 2	75	99, 100
49, 50	62-64	76	101, 102
51-54	65-73	76. 1	101. 1, 2
51. <i>b</i>	66	76. 2, 3	101, 3, 4
51. <i>c</i>	68	76. <i>a-c</i>	102. 1-3
52	67, 69	77	103
53. <i>a, b</i>	65. 1. <i>a</i>	77. 1-4	103. <i>a-d</i>
53. <i>c</i>	65. 1. <i>b</i>	77. 2. <i>a-f</i>	103. <i>b</i> 1-6
54	70-72	77. 3. <i>a-e</i>	103. <i>c</i>
54. 1, 2	71. 1-4, 6	77. 4. <i>a-c</i>	103. <i>d</i> 1-3
54. 3	71. 5	77. 5. <i>a-d</i>	103. <i>f</i> 1-4
54. ftn. 2	73	77. 6. <i>a-c</i>	103. <i>g</i> 1-3
55	74	77. 7. <i>a-c</i>	103. <i>h</i> 1, 2
56	75	78	104
57	76	78. 1	105
57. <i>c-e</i>	76. n. 1-3	78. 1. <i>e</i>	105. <i>e, f</i>
58	77	78. 1. <i>f</i>	105. <i>g</i>
59	78	78. 2	106
60, 61	79	79	107
62	80	79. <i>b</i>	817. <i>d</i> n. 2
62. <i>a</i>	p. 34. ftn.	79. <i>c</i>	101. n. 1
62. n.	80. ftn.	79. <i>d</i>	101. n. 2
63, 64	81-83	80 and <i>a</i>	108
63. <i>a-e</i>	83. <i>a-e</i>	80. <i>b-d</i>	108. <i>a-c</i>
63. <i>f</i>	81	P. 47, top	109
63. <i>g-i</i>	82	81	110
64	82	82	111, 112
65	84-87	82. <i>a</i>	111. <i>a</i> n.
66, 67	—	82. <i>b</i>	111. <i>a</i>
68	88, 89	82. <i>c</i>	112. <i>a</i>
68. n.	—	82. <i>d</i>	111. <i>b</i>
69	90	83	113
69. <i>b</i>	91	83. ftn. 2	113. <i>b</i>
70	92	83. <i>a</i>	113. <i>a</i>
70. <i>a</i>	92. <i>a, c</i>	83. <i>b</i>	113. <i>c-e</i>

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
84	114-116	98	140-145
84. <i>a</i>	115. <i>a</i>	98. <i>a</i>	142
84. <i>a. n.</i>	115. <i>a. n. 1</i>	98. <i>b</i>	143. <i>a</i>
84. <i>b</i>	116. <i>n.</i>	98. <i>c</i>	143. <i>a. n.</i>
84. <i>c</i>	115. <i>n. 2</i>	98. 2	144
85	117-119	98. 3	145
85. <i>b</i>	119	99. <i>a</i>	302. <i>a</i>
85. <i>c</i>	121. <i>e</i>	99. <i>b, c</i>	143. <i>b, c</i>
86	120	99. <i>d</i>	145. <i>c</i>
86. <i>a</i>	120. <i>b</i>	99. <i>e</i>	143. <i>f</i>
86. <i>b</i>	120. <i>c</i>	99. <i>f</i>	143. <i>d</i> and <i>n.</i>
87	121	100, 101	146
87. <i>b</i>	121. <i>a. 4</i>	100. <i>ftn.</i>	146. <i>n. 1</i>
87. <i>c, d</i>	121. <i>b, c</i>	100. <i>a</i>	146. <i>n. 4, 6</i>
87. <i>e</i>	121. <i>d</i>	100. <i>b</i>	146. <i>n. 5</i>
87. <i>f</i>	122. <i>a-c</i>	100. <i>c</i>	146. <i>n. 7-9</i>
88	122	P. 87, top	146. <i>a</i>
88. <i>a</i>	288, 289	101. <i>a</i>	146. <i>n. 2</i>
88. <i>b</i>	122. <i>d</i>	101. <i>b</i>	146. <i>n. 6</i>
88. <i>c</i>	321. <i>c</i>	101. <i>c</i>	146. <i>n. 3</i>
88. <i>d</i>	214. <i>d, e</i>	101. <i>d</i>	146. <i>a. n. 2</i>
89	123, 124	P. 87. <i>ftn.</i>	146. <i>a. n. 1</i>
89. <i>a</i>	125 and <i>a</i>	102	297, 298
89. <i>b</i>	126	102. <i>e</i>	298. <i>c</i>
89. <i>c</i>	127	102. <i>e. n.</i>	298. <i>c. n. 2</i>
89. <i>d</i>	128	102. <i>f</i>	297. <i>e</i>
89. <i>e</i>	124. <i>a</i>	103	147
89. <i>f</i>	243	104	148-150
90	129	104. <i>n.</i>	150
91	130, 131	104. <i>b-e</i>	150. <i>a-d</i>
91. <i>c</i>	131. <i>c</i>	104. <i>f</i>	544
91. <i>d. 1</i>	130. <i>a</i>	105	151
91. <i>d. 2</i>	131. <i>a</i>	105. <i>d</i>	149, 151. <i>e, f, 310. a</i>
91. <i>d. 3</i>	131. <i>b</i>	105. <i>d. n.</i>	310. <i>b</i>
91. <i>d. n.</i>	131. <i>d</i>	105. <i>e</i>	151. <i>g</i>
92	218 and <i>a</i>	105. <i>e, quotus</i>	
93. <i>a, b</i>	291. <i>a-c</i>	<i>quisque</i>	313. <i>b. n. 2</i>
93. <i>c</i>	313. <i>b</i>	105. <i>f, g</i>	151. <i>h, i</i>
93. <i>d-g</i>	291. <i>c. n. 1-3</i>	105. <i>h</i>	311
94	132-134	105. <i>i</i>	148. <i>c, 151. f</i>
94. <i>n.</i>	133. <i>n. 1</i>	106	152
94. <i>a</i>	134. <i>a</i>	106. <i>b</i>	308. <i>h</i>
94. <i>b, c</i>	134. <i>b</i> and <i>n.</i>	106. <i>c</i>	414. <i>a</i>
94. <i>c. 2d par.</i>	133. <i>n. 2</i>	107	323. <i>g</i>
94. <i>d-f</i>	134. <i>c-e</i>	108	154
95	136, 137	109	155
95. <i>a-d</i>	137. <i>a-d</i>	110	154. <i>c</i>
96	138	110. <i>a</i>	480, 484. <i>c, 575. a</i>
96. <i>n.</i>	138. <i>a</i>	110. <i>b</i>	164. <i>3. a</i>
97	139	110. <i>c</i>	154. <i>c</i>
97. <i>d</i>	135. <i>e</i>	110. <i>d</i>	164. <i>3. b, c</i> and <i>n.</i>
97. <i>e</i>	139. <i>d</i>	111	156

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
112	157	130	209
112. <i>b. n.</i>	157. <i>b. ftn.</i>	2d conj.	185
113	158	131	210
113. <i>b. 2</i>	499. 2	3d conj.	186
113. <i>e-g</i>	494, 495	Verbs in <i>-iō</i>	188
114	159	132	211
115	160-162	132. <i>f. n.</i>	211. <i>ftn. 3</i>
115. <i>a. 1</i>	472. <i>b</i>	4th conj.	187
115. <i>a. 2</i>	466, 467. <i>b</i>	133	212
115. <i>b</i>	471	134	189
115. <i>c</i>	161	135	190
115. <i>d</i>	162	135. <i>h</i>	191
116	163	135. <i>i</i>	191. <i>a</i>
117	165	136	192
117. <i>n. 2</i>	p. 81. <i>ftn.</i>	137	197
118	166	137. <i>a</i>	198
118. <i>n.</i>	p. 76. <i>ftn.</i>	137. <i>n.</i>	p. 109. <i>ftn.</i>
119, 120	170	138	199
119. <i>a</i>	170. <i>b</i>	139	200
119. <i>b</i>	170. <i>b. n.</i>	139. <i>ftn.</i>	200. <i>ftn. 2</i>
119. <i>b. n.</i>	170. <i>a</i>	140	201
120. <i>n.</i>	170. <i>n.</i>	141	203
121	164	141. <i>c</i>	203. <i>d</i>
121. <i>a-c</i>	164. 1-8	141. <i>d</i>	203. <i>e</i>
122	171-173	142	204
122. <i>a</i>	171	143	205
122. <i>b</i>	172	143. <i>n.</i>	205. <i>b, n. 2</i>
122. <i>c</i>	173	144	206
122. <i>d</i>	173. <i>a</i>	144. <i>d-f</i>	206. <i>e-g</i>
122. <i>n.</i>	174	144. <i>g</i>	206. <i>d</i>
123	175, 176	145	207
123. <i>a</i>	176. <i>a</i>	146	208
123. <i>b</i>	174. 1	146. <i>d. ftn.</i>	208. <i>d. n.</i>
123. <i>c</i>	176. <i>c</i>	147	193
123. <i>d</i>	176. <i>d</i>	147. <i>c. 1</i>	203. <i>a</i>
123. <i>e</i>	176. <i>d. n. 1</i>	147. <i>c. 2</i>	170. <i>a</i>
123. <i>f</i>	176. <i>e</i>	147. <i>c. 3</i>	569. <i>a.</i>
124	177	P. 119. Note. 1. <i>b</i>	168. <i>b</i>
125	178	P. 119. Note. 1. <i>c</i>	168. <i>c, d</i>
125. <i>n. 1</i>	178. <i>n. 2</i>	P. 120. Note. 1. <i>d</i>	168. <i>e</i>
125. <i>n. 2</i>	178. <i>n. 3</i>	P. 120. Note. 1. <i>e</i>	168. <i>f</i>
126	179	P. 120. Note. 1. <i>f</i>	p. 286. <i>ftn. 1</i>
127	180	P. 120. Note. 2	169
128	181	P. 121. Note. 3	p. 77. <i>ftn. 1</i>
128. <i>a. 1</i>	181. <i>a</i>	P. 122, top	213
128. <i>a. 2</i>	181. <i>b</i>	148	214
128. <i>b</i>	181. <i>b. n. 2</i>	148. <i>n.</i>	215, 216
128. <i>c</i>	182	148. <i>n. a-γ</i>	215. 1-6
128. <i>d</i>	182. <i>a</i>	148. <i>n. θ</i>	216. <i>a</i> and <i>n.</i>
128. <i>e</i>	183	149	217
1st conj.	184	150	326
129	198-196	151	322

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
151. <i>d</i>	322. <i>d</i> and <i>n</i> .	164. <i>h</i>	250. <i>a</i>
151. <i>e</i>	322. <i>e, f</i>	164. <i>i</i>	254
P. 127. <i>ftn.</i>	219	164. <i>k</i>	245
152	220	164. <i>l</i>	251
153	221. 1-28	164. <i>m</i>	252
154	223	164. <i>n</i>	253. <i>c</i>
154. <i>n. 1</i>	222	164. <i>o</i>	253. <i>a</i>
154. <i>n. 2</i>	224	164. <i>p</i>	253. <i>b</i>
155	224	164. <i>q, r</i>	255 and <i>a</i>
156	324. <i>b</i>	165	256
156. <i>a</i>	324. <i>a, b</i>	165. 2	257
156. <i>a. 3d par.</i>	328. <i>a</i>	166	258
156. <i>a. 4th par.</i>	324. <i>c</i>	166. <i>a. 1</i>	259. 1
156. <i>b</i>	324. <i>d</i>	166. <i>b</i>	260
156. <i>c</i>	324. <i>e-g</i>	166. <i>c</i>	261
156. <i>d, e</i>	324. <i>h, i</i>	166. <i>d</i>	262. <i>a, b</i>
156. <i>f</i>	540. <i>n. 1-3</i>	167	263
156. <i>g</i>	539, 540. <i>a. n.</i>	167. <i>a</i>	263. 1
156. <i>h. 1</i>	323. <i>g</i>	167. <i>b</i> and <i>n.</i>	263. 2 and <i>a</i>
156. <i>h. 2</i>	323. <i>e</i>	167. <i>c</i>	263. 2. <i>b</i>
156. <i>i</i>	527. <i>c, d</i>	167. <i>d, e</i>	263. 3, 4
156. <i>k</i>	324. <i>j</i>	168	264
Interjections	225, 226	168. <i>a-c</i>	265. 1-3
P. 140. <i>Note</i>	227	168. <i>d</i>	265. <i>a</i>
157	228	169	266
157. <i>n.</i>	229. <i>n.</i>	170	267
158	230, 231	170. <i>a. n.</i>	267. <i>n. 2</i>
158. 1. <i>a, b</i>	231. <i>a, b</i>	170. <i>c</i>	267. <i>d. 1, 2</i>
158. 1. <i>c</i>	231. <i>c</i>	170. <i>d</i>	267. <i>c</i>
159	232	P. 163	268
160	233	171	269
160. <i>a, b</i>	233. 1, 2	172	270
160. <i>c</i>	234	172. <i>n.</i>	272
160. <i>c. 2. a-e</i>	234. II. 1-18	172. <i>n. 2d par.</i>	284. <i>b</i>
161	235	173. 1	339
162	236	173. 2	397. <i>e</i>
163	237	174	271
163. 1. <i>a</i>	238. <i>a</i>	174. 2	271. <i>a</i>
163. <i>c</i>	239	175	273
163. <i>d</i>	240 and <i>a</i>	175. <i>a</i>	273. 2
163. <i>d. n.</i>	240. <i>n.</i>	175. <i>b</i>	273. 1
163. 2	241. 1, 2 and <i>a</i>	176	283
163. <i>f, g</i>	241. <i>b, c</i>	176. <i>b</i>	284
164	242	177	274
164. <i>a</i>	243	177. <i>a</i>	275
164. <i>a. R.</i>	243. <i>a</i>	177. <i>b</i>	274. <i>a</i>
164. <i>b</i>	244	177. <i>c</i>	274. <i>b</i>
164. <i>c</i>	249	178	276
164. <i>d</i>	248	179	277
164. <i>e</i>	250	180	278. 1, 2
164. <i>f</i>	246	180. <i>c-e</i>	279. <i>a-e</i>
164. <i>g</i>	247	180. <i>f</i>	308. <i>f</i>



OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
181, 182	280	197. <i>f</i>	306. <i>b. n.</i>
183	281	P. 186. Note	303
184	282	P. 186, bottom	304
184. <i>b</i>	282. <i>c</i>	198	305 and <i>n.</i>
184. <i>c</i>	282. <i>d</i>	199	306
184. <i>d, e</i>	302. <i>e</i>	200	307
185	283, 284	200. <i>d</i>	307. <i>f</i>
186. <i>a, b</i>	285. 1, 2	200. <i>e</i>	307. <i>d</i>
186. <i>b. 2, 3</i>	285. <i>n.</i>	201. <i>a, b, c</i>	308. <i>a, c, d</i>
186. <i>c</i>	282. <i>b, c</i>	201. <i>d</i>	307. <i>e</i>
186. <i>d</i>	286. <i>a</i>	201. <i>e-h</i>	308. <i>f-i</i>
187	287	202	309
187. <i>a</i>	287. 1, 2	202. <i>a</i>	310
187. <i>b</i>	287. 3	202. <i>b</i>	311
187. <i>b. n.</i>	287. 4	202. <i>c</i>	312
187. <i>c</i>	287. 4. <i>a</i>	202. <i>d</i>	313
187. <i>d, e</i>	286. <i>b, n.</i>	202. <i>e</i>	313. <i>a</i>
188. <i>a-c</i>	288. <i>a-c</i>	202. <i>f</i>	314
188. <i>R.</i>	288. <i>n.</i>	<i>nullus</i>	314. <i>a</i>
188. <i>d, e</i>	321. <i>c, d</i>	203	315. <i>a</i>
189	289	203. <i>a</i>	315
190	343. <i>a</i>	203. <i>c. n.</i>	315. <i>n.</i>
190. <i>a</i>	302. <i>d</i>	204	316
191	290	205	317
192	292	205. <i>c</i> and 1	317. <i>d</i>
192. <i>b</i>	292. <i>a. n.</i>	205. <i>c. 2</i>	317. <i>e</i>
193	293	205. <i>d</i>	317. <i>c</i>
P. 178. Note	294	206	318
194	295	206. <i>c</i>	319
194. <i>b. n.</i>	295. <i>b. n. 2</i>	206. <i>c. 1</i>	319. <i>a</i>
195	296 and 2	206. <i>c. 2</i>	319. <i>b</i>
195. 2	296. 1	207	321
195. <i>a</i>	297. <i>f</i>	207. <i>n. 2, 3</i>	320
195. <i>b</i>	297. <i>b. n.</i>	207. <i>b</i>	432. <i>a</i>
195. <i>c</i>	298. <i>a</i>	207. <i>c</i>	321. <i>b</i>
195. <i>d</i>	296. <i>a</i>	207. <i>d</i>	321. <i>c. n.</i>
195. <i>e, f</i>	298. <i>b, c</i>	208	323
195. <i>f. R.</i>	298. <i>c. n. 1</i>	208. <i>b. 1-3</i>	323. <i>c. 1-3</i>
195. <i>g</i>	298. <i>d. 1</i>	208. <i>c</i>	323. <i>d</i>
195. <i>h, i</i>	298. <i>d. 2, 3</i>	208. <i>d</i>	323. <i>f</i>
195. <i>k</i>	298. <i>e</i>	208. <i>e</i>	323. <i>k</i>
195. <i>l</i>	298. <i>f</i>	209	325
196	299	209. <i>a</i>	326, 327
196. <i>a</i>	300	209. <i>b</i>	328
196. <i>a. 2. n.</i>	300. <i>b</i>	209. <i>c</i>	326. <i>c</i>
196. <i>b</i>	301. <i>a</i>	209. <i>d</i>	329
196. <i>c</i>	301. <i>b</i>	209. <i>e</i>	329. <i>a</i>
196. <i>d-f</i>	301. <i>d-f</i>	210	330, 331
196. <i>g</i>	301. <i>c</i>	210. <i>a</i>	332
196. <i>h</i>	299. <i>a</i>	210. <i>b-d</i>	332. <i>a-c</i>
196. <i>i</i>	300. <i>b</i>	210. <i>d. R.</i>	332. <i>c. n. 2</i>
197	302	210. <i>e</i>	333

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
210. e. R.	333. N.	225. e	365
210. f	333. a	226	366
210. f. R.	331. N., 332. b. N.	227	367
211	334, 335	227. N. 2	367. a. N. 2
211. R.	335. N.	227. c. N.	367. a. N. 1
212	336	227. e	368
212. b	337	227. f	369
212. b. R.	335. d. N.	228	370
P. 205. Note	338	228. N. 1	370. a
P. 206. Note	341	228. a, b	370. b, c
213	342	228. c	371
213. 1, 2 and N.	343. N. 1, 348. N.	229	381
214 and a. 1	343	229. c	368. a
214. a. 2	343. a	230	372
214. b	343. N. 2	231	373
214. c	343. b	231. R.	373. N.
214. c. R.	343. b. N.	231. a	373. b
214. d	343. c	231. b, c	373. a
214. d. R.	343. c. N. 1	232	374
214. d. N.	343. c. N. 2	232. N.	374. a and N. 1
214. e	344	232. a	375
214. f	343. d	232. b, c	375. a, b
214. g	359. b	233	382
215	345	233. a	382. 1 and N. 1
216	346	233. b	382. 2
216. R.	346. N. 2	234	383
P. 211, top	347	234. a	384
217	348	234. b-d	385. a-c
218	349	234. e	432. a
218. b	349. c	235	376
218. c	349. d	235. a	377
218. c. R.	358	235. b	378. 1, 2
219	350	235. c	378. 2. N.
219. b	350. d	235. d	379
219. c	351	235. e	379. a
220	352	236	380
220. b	353	236. R.	379. N.
220. b. 3	353. 2. N.	P. 235. Note	386
220. b. N.	352. N.	237	387
221	354	237. a	387. b
221. d	354. c. N.	237. b, d-f	388. a-d and N. 1
222	355	237. c	390. a
223	356	237. g	500. 3
223. a	357	237. h	389
223. c	358	238	390
223. d	359	238. a, b	390. b-d
223. e	359. b	238. c	388. d
P. 218. Note	360	238. c. N.	390. d. N. 1
224	361	239	391
225	362	239. 1	392
225. b, c	363, 369	239. 1. a, N. 1	393. N.
225. d	364	239. a. N. 2	393. a

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
239. R.	395. N. 3	249. b	410. a. N. 1
239. 2	394	249. b. N.	410. a. N. 2
239. 2. b	395 and R.	250	414
239. c	396	250. R. and N.	414. a and N.
239. c. N. 1, 2	396. a, b	250. a	414. b
239. c. R.	396. b. N.	251	415
239. d	396. c	252	416
240. a	390. c, d and N. 2	252. a	417
240. b	397. a	252. b-d	417. a-c
240. c, d	397. b, d	253	418
240. c. N.	397. c	253. N.	418. a and N.
240. e	423, 425	253. a	510. N. 1
240. f, g	397. e, f	P. 260. Note	421
241	340	254	426. 3
241. c	339. a	254. a	429. 3
241. d	340. c	254. b. 1	431
242	399	254. b. 2	431. a
242. N.	398	254. b. 2. R.	431. a. N. 1
243	400	255	419
243. a	401	255. d	420
243. b	402	256	423
243. d	402. a	256. a, b	424. a, b
243. e	411	257	425
243. e. N.	411. a	258	426. 1, 2
243. e. R.	411. b	258. 2. N. 1	428. h
243. f	356	258. 2. N. 2	428. c
243. f. R.	356. N.	258. a	427. 1
244	403	258. a. N. 1	428. a
244. a. R.	403. a. N. 1	258. a. N. 2	428. f
244. b	403. a. N. 2, 3	258. a. N. 3	428. g
244. c-e	403. b-d	258. b	427. 2
245	404	258. b. N. 1	428. k
245. a. 1 and N. 2	418. b	258. b. N. 2	428. a
245. a. 2	404. a	258. b. N. 3	428. b
246	405	258. b. N. 5	428. g
246. R.	405. N. 2	258. b. R.	428. i
246. b. N.	405. b. N. 2	258. c. 1	426. 3
247	406	258. c. 2	427. 3
247. a, c-e	407 and a, c-e	258. c. 2. R.	428. e
247. a. R.	407. a. N. 3	258. c. N. 1	428. d and N. 1
247. b	406. a	258. d	427. a
P. 253. Note	408	258. e	428. k
248	412	258. f. 1-3	429. 1-4
248. N.	412. a	258. g	429. a
248. R.	412. b and N.	259	424
248. a	413	259. a	424. d
248. a. N.	413. a	259. b	424. e
248. a. R.	413. N.	259. c	424. c
248. c. 1	409	259. d	424. f
248. c. 2	409. a	259. e	424. g
248. c. 2. R.	409. a. N.	259. g	428. j. N.
249	410	259. h	428. j

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
260	220	271. c	458
260. a	430	271. c. n.	455. 2. a
260. b	429. b	272	459
260. c	221. 24	272. R.	561. a
260. d	221. 23	272. a. 1	455
260. e	221. 26	272. a. 2	455. a
261	432	272. b	581. n. 3
261. a. n.	432. b	273	460
261. b	432. c	273. c	457. a
261. c	432. d	273. d	461
261. d	433	273. e	460. c
262 and n. 1	434	273. g	461. a
263. n.	435	273. h	461. b
P. 274. Note	436	274	462
264	437	275	463
264. a	465 ff.	P. 291. Note	464
264. b	437. a	276	465
265	438	276. a	466
266 and R.	439	276. b	467
266. b	450. (3) and n. 3	276. c	468
266. c	440	276. d	469
266. d	528. a	276. e	556
266. e	439. b	276. e. n.	556. a
266. e. R.	439. b. n. 2	276. f	465. a
266. e. n.	439. b. n. 1	277	470
267	441	277. R.	471
267. b	442	277. a-g	471. a-f
267. b. n. 1	442. a and n. 1	278	472
267. c	442. b	279	473
268	444	279. a	474
268. R.	444. n.	279. b	473. a
269	448	279. c	475
269. n.	450. a, b	279. d	475. a
269. a	450	279. e	476
269. a. 2. n.	450. n. 1	279. R.	476. n.
269. a. 3. n.	450. n. 4	280	477
269. b. n.	450. n. 3	281	478
269. c	448. a	281. R.	478.
269. d. 1, 3	449. 1, 2	282	479
269. e-g	449. a-c	283	480
269. h	588	284	481
269. i	521. n.	285	482
P. 283. Note	451	286	483
270	452	286. n.	483. ftn.
270. a. 1, 2	452. a	286. R., (a), (b)	484, a-c
270. b	454	287	485
270. b. n. 1	454. n.	287. c. R.	485. c. n. 1
270. c	453	287. f-i	485. g-j
271	456	288. c and a	486 and a
271. a	457	288. d, R.	486. b, d, e
271. a. n. 1	563. b. 1	288. e	486. f
271. b	563. a	288. f	569. a

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
P. 306, mid.	487	308. <i>b</i> and <i>r</i> .	517. <i>b</i>
289	488	309	518
290	489	309. <i>b</i>	518. <i>c</i>
290. <i>a</i>	490	309. <i>c</i>	518. <i>b</i>
290. <i>b</i>	491	310	521
290. <i>c</i>	492	311	522
290. <i>d</i>	493	311. <i>a</i>	445, 446
291	494	311. <i>a</i> . N. 1	447. 2
291. <i>b</i>	495	311. <i>a</i> . N. 2	448
291. <i>b</i> . <i>R</i> .	495. N.	311. <i>a</i> . N. 3	447. <i>a</i>
292	496	311. <i>a</i> . <i>R</i> .	447. 3. N.
292. <i>R</i> .	496. N. 1, 2	311. <i>b</i>	447. 1
292. N. 1, 2	496. N. 3, 4	311. <i>c</i>	522. <i>a</i>
292. <i>a</i>	497	311. <i>R</i> .	522. N. 1
292. <i>b-c</i>	497. <i>a-d</i>	311. <i>c</i> . N.	522. N. 2
292. <i>b</i> . N.	411. <i>a</i> . N. 2	311. <i>d</i>	523
293	498	312	524
293. <i>b</i>	499	312. <i>R</i> ., N.	524. N. 2, 1
293. <i>c</i>	498. <i>b</i>	313	526, 527
294	500	313. <i>d</i>	549
294. <i>a-d</i>	500. 1-4	313. <i>d</i> . N.	549. N. 3
295	502	313. <i>e</i>	527. <i>d</i>
295. <i>R</i> .	502. N.	313. <i>f</i>	527. <i>d</i> . N.
296	503	313. <i>g</i>	527. <i>e</i>
296. <i>R</i> .	503. N. 2	313. <i>h</i>	535. <i>e</i>
297	501, 502	313. <i>i</i>	440
298	504	314	528
298. N.	504. N. 2	314. <i>b</i>	528. <i>a</i>
298. <i>R</i> .	504. <i>a</i> . N. 1	315	525
298. <i>a</i>	504. <i>c</i>	315. <i>a</i> . 1	525. <i>a</i>
298. <i>b</i>	504. N. 1	315. <i>a</i> . 2	525. <i>a</i> . 3. N.
298. <i>c</i>	504. <i>b</i>	315. <i>d</i>	525. <i>e</i>
299	505. <i>a</i>	316	519
299. <i>a</i>	505	316. <i>a</i>	520
300	506 and N. 1	317	529, 530
300. N.	506. N. 2	317. 2d par.	531
301	507	317. 3	563
301. <i>R</i> .	503. <i>a</i> . N. 2	317. <i>a</i>	531. 1. N. 1
302. headn.	508	317. <i>b</i>	531. <i>a</i>
302	509	317. <i>b</i> . N. 1	558. <i>b</i>
302. <i>R</i> .	509. N. 1	317. <i>b</i> . N. 2	531. <i>a</i> . N.
303	510	317. <i>c</i>	532
303. N. <i>R</i> .	510. N. 1-3	317. <i>c</i> . <i>R</i> .	532. N.
P. 320. Note	511	317. <i>c</i> . N. <i>R</i> .	531. 2. N. 2
304	512	318	533
304. <i>d</i>	513	P. 343. Note	534
305	514	319	536, 537
305. <i>R</i> .	514. C. N.	319. 3	568
306	515	319. 3. N. and <i>R</i> .	537. 2. N. 1, 2
307	516	319. <i>c</i>	558. <i>b</i>
307. <i>b</i> . <i>R</i> . <i>C</i> . <i>R</i>	516. <i>b</i> . N. C. N.	319. <i>d</i>	558, 559
308	517	319. <i>d</i> . <i>R</i> .	538

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
320	535	331. <i>i</i> . N. 1	565. N. 3
320. <i>f</i> . N.	535. <i>f</i> . N. 2	331. <i>i</i> . N. 3	565. N. 2
P. 348, mid. N.	539	P. 362, bottom. N.	567
321	540	332	568
321. N. 3	540. <i>a</i>	332. <i>a</i>	569
321. R.	540. N. 3	332. <i>b</i>	571. <i>a</i>
321. <i>a-c</i>	540. <i>b-d</i>	332. <i>c</i>	462. <i>a</i>
P. 349, bottom. N.	541	332. <i>d</i>	571. <i>b</i>
322	542	332. <i>e</i>	568. N. 1
322. R.	535. <i>a</i> . N. 3	332. <i>f</i>	571. <i>c</i>
323	545, 546	332. <i>g</i>	558
324	543	332. <i>g</i> . R.	558. <i>a</i>
325	545-548	332. <i>g</i> . N. 2	558. <i>a</i> . N. 2
325. <i>a</i>	545	332. <i>h</i>	580. <i>d</i>
325. <i>a</i> . N.	546. N. 4	333	572
325. <i>b</i>	546. <i>a</i>	333. <i>b</i> . R.	572. <i>b</i> . N.
325. <i>c</i>	547	334	573-575
326 and R.	549	334. <i>c</i>	576
326. <i>a</i> . R.	549. <i>a</i> . N.	334. <i>c</i> . R.	576. N.
327	550, 551	334. <i>d, e</i>	575. <i>c, d</i>
327. <i>a</i>	551. <i>c</i>	334. <i>f</i>	576. <i>a</i>
327. <i>b</i>	551. <i>c</i> . N. 2	334. <i>g</i>	447. <i>a, b</i>
328	552, 553	P. 369. Note	577
328. 2	554, 555	335	578
328. 2. N. 1	555. N. 2	335. R.	578. N.
328. <i>a</i>	556	336. 1	579
328. <i>a</i> . N.	556. <i>a</i> . N. 1	336. 2	580
328. R.	556. <i>a</i> . N. 1	336. 2. N. 2	580. <i>a</i>
328. R.	556. <i>a</i> . N. 2	336. 2. N. 3	580. <i>c</i>
329	560, 561	336. <i>a</i> . 1	581
329. N.	561. N. 1	336. <i>a</i> . R.	581. N. 2
329. R.	561. N. 2	336. <i>a</i> . 2	582
329. (classification)	562	336. <i>a</i> . 2. N. 2	582. <i>a</i> . N. 2
330	452	336. <i>b</i>	583
330. B.	459	336. <i>c</i>	583. <i>b</i>
330. B. 2, 3	563. <i>a, b</i>	336. <i>c</i> . N. 2	583. <i>c</i>
330. R.	562. N.	336. <i>d</i>	583. <i>a</i>
330. <i>a, b</i>	562	336. A	584
330. <i>a</i> . 2	566. <i>b</i>	336. A. N. 1	584. <i>a</i> and N
330. <i>b</i> . 2	566. <i>c</i>	336. B	585
330. <i>c</i>	582. <i>a</i>	336. B. N. 2	585. <i>a</i>
330. <i>d</i>	582. N.	336. B. <i>a</i>	585. <i>b</i>
330. <i>e</i>	579. <i>ftn.</i> 1	337	589
330. <i>f</i>	580. <i>c</i>	338	586
331 and <i>b</i> . N.	563 and <i>b</i>	338. <i>a</i>	587
331. <i>e</i> . 2	563. <i>b</i>	339	588
331. <i>f</i>	564	339. R.	588. <i>a</i>
331. <i>f</i> . <i>ftn.</i>	564. N.	P. 378, mid.	590
331. <i>f</i> . R.	565, <i>a</i> , 569. 2. N. 2	340	591
331. <i>g</i>	563. N.	341	592
331. <i>h</i>	566	341. <i>b-d</i>	592. 1-3
331. <i>i</i>	565	341. R.	592. N.

Old	New	Old	New
342	593	360	613
342. <i>ftn. 2d par.</i>	593. <i>n. 2</i>	360. <i>n.</i>	613. <i>n.</i>
P. 381 <i>ff.</i>	594	361	614
P. 386, <i>top. Note</i>	595	362	615
343	596 and <i>a</i>	362. <i>a</i>	615. <i>a, b</i>
344	597	362. <i>a. n.</i>	615. <i>n.</i>
344. <i>n.</i>	597. <i>a. n. 2</i>	362. <i>b and n.</i>	615. <i>c and n.</i>
P. 389, <i>top. R.</i>	597. <i>b</i>	362. <i>c</i>	615. <i>d</i>
P. 389, <i>top. a</i>	598. <i>a</i>	363	616
345	599	364	617
345. <i>a</i>	599. <i>d</i>	365	618
345. <i>d</i>	599. <i>a</i>	366	619
P. 392. <i>Note</i>	600	367	620
346	601	367. <i>b</i>	620. <i>c</i>
P. 394. <i>Note</i>	602	P. 414, <i>mid. Note</i>	621
347	603	368	622
347. <i>d</i>	603. <i>f</i>	369	623
347. <i>d. n. 1, 2</i>	603. <i>f. n. 2, 3</i>	370	624
347. <i>d. R.</i>	603. <i>f. n. 4</i>	371	625
347. <i>e. R.</i>	603. <i>f. n. 1</i>	372	626
348	604	373	627
348. 1-10	604. <i>a-j</i>	374	628
348. 9. <i>Exc.</i>	604. <i>i. 1-6</i>	375	629
349-351	—	375. <i>b, c, e</i>	629. <i>b. 1-3</i>
351. <i>b</i>	605	375. <i>d</i>	629. <i>c</i>
352, 353	—	375. <i>e</i>	629. <i>b. 3</i>
354	606	375. <i>f</i>	—
354. <i>d</i>	606. <i>c. n.</i>	375. <i>g</i>	629. <i>d</i>
P. 402. <i>Note</i>	607	375. <i>g. 3-5</i>	629. <i>d. 1-3</i>
355. <i>n.</i>	608. <i>n.</i>	375. <i>h</i>	629. <i>e</i>
356	609	P. 425. <i>Note</i>	630
356. <i>e</i>	609. <i>n.</i>	376	631
356. <i>f</i>	609. <i>e</i>	377	632
357	610	378	633
357. <i>b</i>	—	379	634
357. <i>c</i>	610. <i>b</i>	380	635
358	611	381	636
359	612	382	637
359. <i>b, c</i>	612. <i>d, e</i>	383	638
359. <i>b. R.</i>	612. <i>d. n.</i>	384	—
359. <i>c. R.</i>	612. <i>e. n.</i>	P. 429	639
359. <i>d and R.</i>	612. <i>f. n. 1, 2</i>	385	640
359. <i>e</i>	612. <i>g</i>	386	641
359. <i>f, g</i>	612. <i>b. c</i>	387	642

## ANNOUNCEMENTS





---

---

# ALLEN AND GREENOUGH

## SERIES OF LATIN TEXTBOOKS

---

THE well-known success of the Allen and Greenough Series of Latin Textbooks rests upon the foundation of scholarship in editing, excellence in mechanical detail, adaptability to classroom use, and a constant regard for educational progression. The editors have been and are the great scholars and teachers of their time. Their object is to fit each new text to the needs of the student. By constant revision the whole series is kept strictly up to date in equipment, arrangement, and form.

New Latin Grammar . . . . .	\$1.20
Shorter Latin Grammar . . . . .	.95
Second Year Latin . . . . .	1.25
Cæsar: Gallic War, Books I-VII (Revised Edition) . . . . .	1.25
Cæsar: Gallic War, Books I-IV (Revised Edition) . . . . .	1.00
Cicero: Select Orations (Revised Edition) . . . . .	1.40
Cicero: Select Orations and Letters . . . . .	1.30
Cicero: Six Orations . . . . .	1.00
Ovid: Selections, Chiefly the Metamorphoses	
With Vocabulary . . . . .	1.50
Without Vocabulary . . . . .	1.12
Sallust: Catiline (Revised Edition) . . . . .	.90
Virgil (Revised Edition)	
Æneid, Books I-VI . . . . .	1.50
Æneid, Books I-VI, and Bucolics . . . . .	1.60
Georgics and Æneid, Books VII-XII . . . . .	1.12

*Text editions of Cæsar, Cicero (either the Orations or the Orations and Letters), and Virgil's Æneid, Books I-VI, with Bucolics, each 40 cents. Text edition of Æneid, Books VII-XII, 35 cents. Text edition of Virgil complete, 75 cents.*

---

---

522

## GINN AND COMPANY PUBLISHERS

---

---

# THE ESSENTIALS OF LATIN SYNTAX

By CHARLES CHRISTOPHER MIEROW, Instructor in Classics  
in Princeton University

12mo, cloth, 98 pages, 90 cents

THE first part of this book aims to present very clearly and concisely the essential facts of Latin syntax in compact and orderly form, and every construction named is so treated that its relation to Latin grammar in general is immediately apparent.

Each grammatical principle is illustrated by one simple and pertinent English example with its Latin equivalent, and with each instance there are references to the grammars of Allen and Greenough, West, and Bennett.

The second part consists of two sets of exercises for Latin writing, the one derived from Cæsar and the other from Livy; and each separate exercise, while based on some particular continuous portion of the text, illustrates at the same time some definite set of grammatical constructions already explained in the first part of the book.

As a review of grammar, "Essentials of Latin Syntax" is particularly useful in presenting the chief principles of syntax in simple tabular form. The Noun, the Pronoun, and the Verb are treated separately. A full index renders it an easy matter to refer to any construction.

# THE ESSENTIALS OF GREEK SYNTAX

By CHARLES CHRISTOPHER MIEROW, Instructor in Classics  
in Princeton University

12mo, cloth, 165 pages, \$1.25

PART FIRST consists of an outline of Greek syntax as an organized whole. The various constructions are arranged in simple tabular form, and each separate grammatical principle is illustrated by an English example with its equivalent in Greek. References to four Greek grammars are given in every case. In the treatment of the verb, especial attention is paid to conditional and relative conditional sentences and to indirect discourse.

Part Second consists of two groups of exercises for translation into Greek, each group containing four separate sets of exercises. The first group is intended for advanced classes in preparatory schools and is based on the *Anabasis*; the second, consisting of exercises to accompany *Lysias* and *Plato's Apology*, is designed for use with college freshmen.

The book contains very complete English and Greek indexes to facilitate reference to any construction.

---

---

GINN AND COMPANY PUBLISHERS

79

---

---

# FOR SECOND YEAR LATIN

## SIGHT READING IN LATIN

Edited by HIRAM BICE

xii + 159 pages, with maps and illustrations, 50 cents

THE aim of this book is to provide all the helps that a pupil of small experience needs to gain power in sight reading.

The material for reading is taken from Cæsar, with a few exercises from Nepos. Each exercise is complete in itself. This material is preceded by thirty exercises of easy Latin taken from Eutropius, Aulus Gellius, Pliny, Cicero, and Livy.

The book may be used in class without previous preparation by the pupil, and for this use each exercise is provided with the customary notes and vocabulary of words which the pupil is not expected to know.

Each exercise is preceded, however, by (1) a list of references to the principal grammars; (2) a very brief list of words suggested as the basis for a drill in inflections; (3) a rule relating to the arrangement of words; (4) a list of words which the pupil would normally meet for the first time in this passage, given in the form in which they occur in the passage, without meanings. These helps, intended for previous preparation, accompany about two thirds of the exercises and are gradually withdrawn.

## PORTA LATINA: A READING METHOD

With an Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by FRANK GARDNER MOORE  
Columbia University

xviii + 62 + lxii pages, 60 cents

DESIGNED for pupils who have had one year of Latin, this book aims to develop a logical method of attack in translation, not upon straggling words but upon compact groups, in the exact order of the original; also to cultivate the habit of reading from the page in the only way in which it is possible to grasp the sense when listening to another person reading aloud. The book may be used to supplement work with the authors commonly read in the second year. The text consists of fifty of the fables of La Fontaine in Latin dress, punctuated in a novel manner to suggest the *viva vox*. Introduction and Notes reinforce the idea of method in translation.

GINN AND COMPANY PUBLISHERS

# COLLEGE SERIES OF LATIN AUTHORS

Edited under the Supervision of CLEMENT LAWRENCE SMITH, recently Professor  
of Latin in Harvard University, and TRACY PECK, Emeritus Profes-  
sor of the Latin Language and Literature in Yale University

CATULLUS, Edited by Professor Elmer T. Merrill of The University of Chicago. 1 + 273 pages . . . . .	\$1.40
CICERO, BRUTUS OR. Edited by Martin Kellogg, late of the University of California. xxix + 196 pages . . . . .	1.25
CICERO, SELECTED LETTERS. Edited by Professor Frank F. Abbott of Princeton University. lxxvi + 315 pages . . . . .	1.25
CICERO, TUSCULAN DISPUTATIONS (BOOK I), AND THE SOMNIUM SCIPIONIS. Edited by Professor Frank Ernest Rockwood of Bucknell University. xlv + 109 + xlii + 22 pages . . . . .	1.00
HORACE, ODES AND EPODES (REVISED EDITION). Edited by Professor Clement L. Smith, late of Harvard University. lxxxvii + 443 pages . . . . .	1.50
HORACE, ODES AND EPODES, SATIRES AND EPISTLES. Professor Smith's Edition of "Odes and Epodes" and Professor Greenough's Edition of "Satires and Epistles," in One Volume. lxxvii + 404 + 306 pages . . . . .	2.00
HORACE, SATIRES AND EPISTLES. Edited by the late Professor J. B. Greenough of Harvard University. ix + 306 pages . . . . .	1.25
JUVENAL, SATIRES. Edited by Professor Henry P. Wright of Yale University. xlv + 240 pages . . . . .	1.25
LIVY, BOOKS I AND II. Edited by the late Professor J. B. Greenough of Harvard University. xvii + 270 pages . . . . .	1.25
LIVY, BOOKS XXI AND XXII. Edited by the late Professor J. B. Greenough of Harvard University, and Emeritus Professor Tracy Peck of Yale University. xiv + 232 pages . . . . .	1.25
LIVY, BOOKS I, XXI, AND XXII. Edited by the late Professor J. B. Greenough of Harvard University, and Emeritus Professor Tracy Peck of Yale University. xvii + 379 pages . . . . .	1.35
LIVY, BOOKS I, II, XXI, AND XXII. Professor Greenough's Edition of Books I and II, and Professor Greenough and Professor Peck's Edition of Books XXI and XXII, in One Volume. xvii + 270 + xiv + 232 pages . . . . .	1.50
MARTIAL, SELECTED EPIGRAMS. Edited by Professor Edwin Post of De Pauw University. li + 402 pages . . . . .	1.50
PLAUTUS, CAPTIVES AND TRINUMMUS. Edited by Professor E. P. Morris of Yale University. xxxviii + 185 pages . . . . .	1.25
TACITUS, ANNALS, BOOKS I-VI. Edited by the late Professor W. F. Allen of the University of Wisconsin. xlii + 444 pages . . . . .	1.50
TACITUS, DIALOGUS DE ORATORIBUS. Edited by Professor Charles E. Bennett of Cornell University. xxviii + 87 pages . . . . .	.75

51

GINN AND COMPANY PUBLISHERS

=

1.45

1.25

1.25

1.00

1.50

2.00

1.25

1.25

1.25

1.25

1.35

1.50

.50

.25

.50

.75

=







